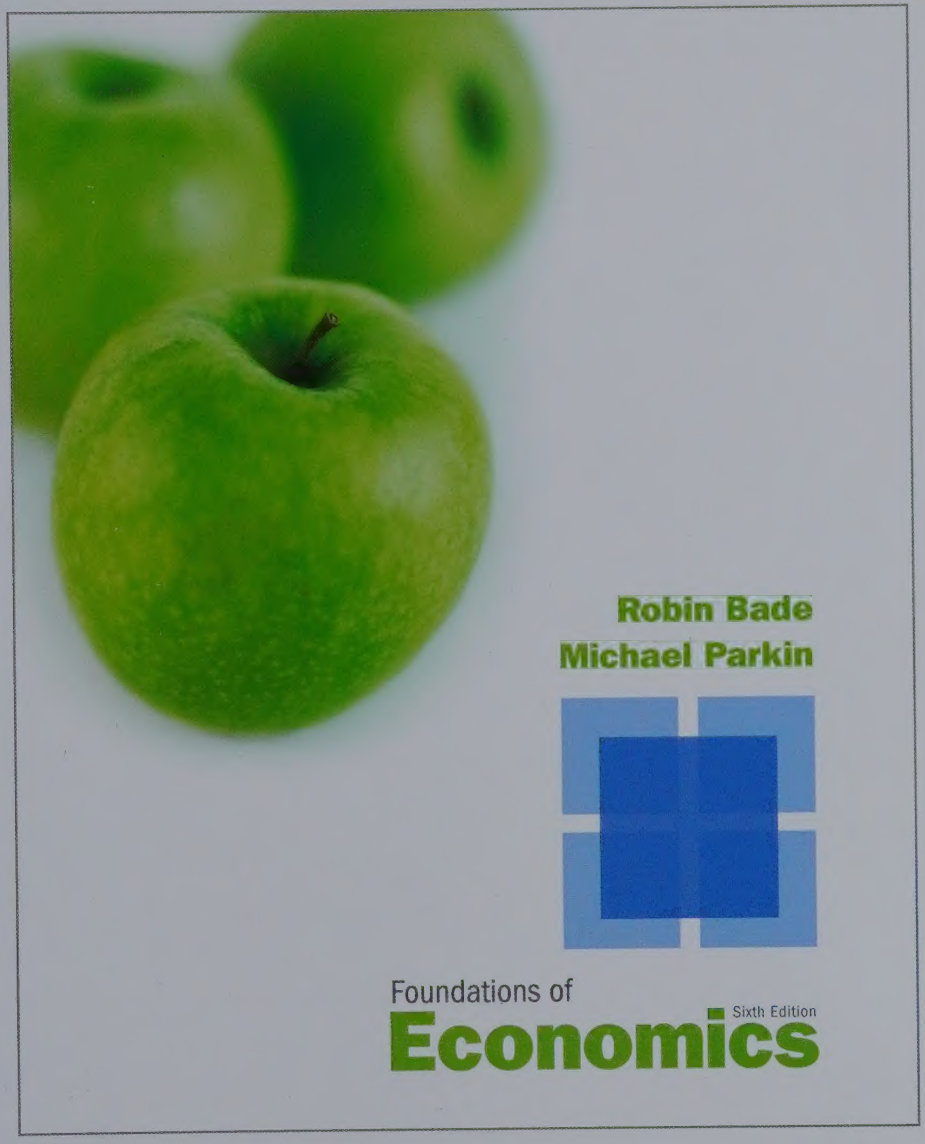
STUDENT VALUE EDITION



ISBN-13: 978-0-13-283138-3
ISBN-10: 0-13-283138-4

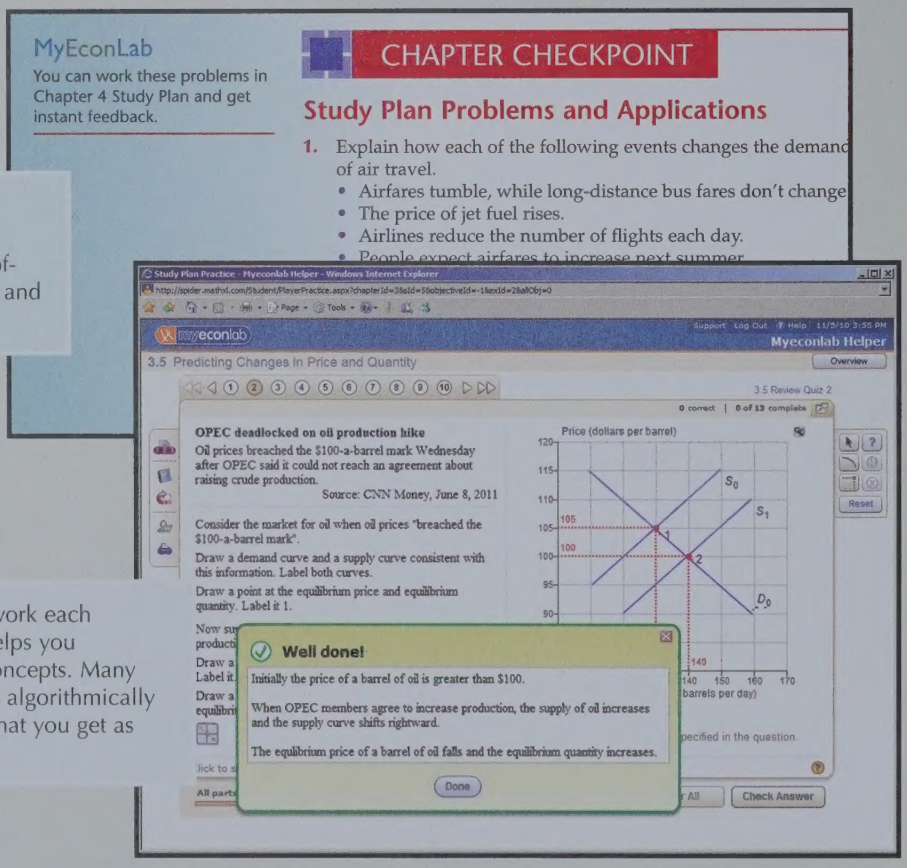
Before purchasing this text, please be sure this is the correct book for your course. Once this package has been opened, you may not be able to return it to your bookstore.

ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

MyEconLab PROVIDES THE POWER OF PRACTICE

Optimize your study time with MyEconLab, the online assessment and tutorial system. When you take a sample test online, **MyEconLab** gives you targeted feedback and a personalized Study Plan to identify the topics you need to review.


MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 4 Study Plan and get instant feedback.
CHAPTER CHECKPOINT
Study Plan Problems and Applications
1. Explain how each of the following events changes the demand of air travel.
• Airfares tumble, while long-distance bus fares don't change
• The price of jet fuel rises.
• Airlines reduce the number of flights each day.
• People expect airfares to increase next summer
Study Plan Practice - Myeconlab Helper - Windows Internet Explorer
myeconlab
Myeconlab Helper
3.5 Predicting Changes in Price and Quantity
Overview
3.5 Review Quiz 2
OPEC deadlocked on oil production hike
Oil prices breached the $100-a-barrel mark Wednesday after OPEC said it could not reach an agreement about raising crude production.
Source: CNN Money, June 8, 2011
Consider the market for oil when oil prices "breached the $100-a-barrel mark".
Draw a demand curve and a supply curve consistent with this information. Label both curves.
Draw a point at the equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity. Label it 1.
Price (dollars per barrel)
Reset
Well done!
Initially the price of a barrel of oil is greater than $100.
When OPEC members agree to increase production, the supply of oil increases and the supply curve shifts rightward.
The equilibrium price of a barrel of oil falls and the equilibrium quantity increases.
Done
Check Answer

Study Plan The Study Plan consists of practice problems taken directly from the end-of-chapter Study Plan Problems and Applications in the textbook.

Unlimited Practice As you work each exercise, instant feedback helps you understand and apply the concepts. Many Study Plan exercises contain algorithmically generated values to ensure that you get as much practice as you need.

Learning Resources

Study Plan problems link to learning resources that further reinforce concepts you need to master.

- **Help Me Solve This** learning aids help you break down a problem much the same way as an instructor would do during office hours. Help Me Solve This is available for select problems.
- Links to the **eText** promote reading of the text when you need to revisit a concept or explanation.
- **Animated graphs,** with audio narration, appeal to a variety of learning styles.
- A **graphing tool** enables you to build and manipulate graphs to better understand how concepts, numbers, and graphs connect.

MyEconLab

Find out more at www.myeconlab.com

FOUNDATIONS OF ECONOMICS

delivers a complete, hands-on learning system designed around active learning.

A Learning-by-Doing Approach

The **Checklist** that begins each chapter highlights the key topics covered and the chapter is divided into sections that directly correlate to the Checklist.

The **Checkpoint** that ends each section provides a full page of practice problems to encourage students to review the material while it is fresh in their minds.

Each chapter opens with a question about a central issue that sets the stage for the material.

Why did the price of coffee soar in 2010 and 2011?

4

Demand and Supply

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1 Distinguish between quantity demanded and demand, and explain what determines demand.

2 Distinguish between quantity supplied and supply, and explain what determines supply.

supply determine price and quantity in a
ffects of changes in demand and supply.

CHECKPOINT 4.1

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 4.1 and get instant feedback.

Distinguish between quantity demanded and demand, and explain what determines demand.

Practice Problems

The following events occur one at a time in the market for cell phones:

- The price of a cell phone falls.
- Everyone believes that the price of a cell phone will fall next month.
- The price of a call made from a cell phone falls.
- The price of a call made from a land-line phone increases.
- The introduction of camera phones makes cell phones more popular.

1. Explain the effect of each event on the demand for cell phones.
2. Use a graph to illustrate the effect of each event.
3. Does any event (or events) illustrate the law of demand?

In the News

Airlines, now flush, fear a downturn
So far this year, airlines have been able to raise fares but still fill their planes.
Source: *The New York Times*, June 10, 2011

FIGURE 4.3

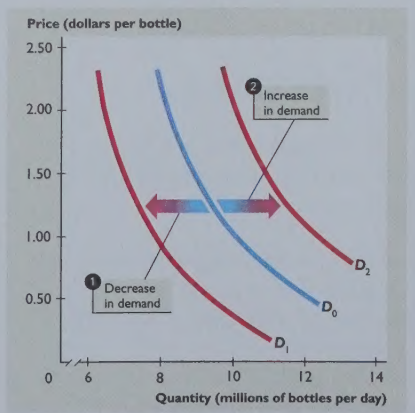
Changes in Demand

MyEconLab Animation

A change in any influence on buying plans, other than a change in the price of the good itself, changes demand and shifts the demand curve.

1 When demand decreases, the demand curve shifts leftward from D_0 to D_1.

2 When demand increases, the demand curve shifts rightward from D_0 to D_2.



Confidence-Building Graphs

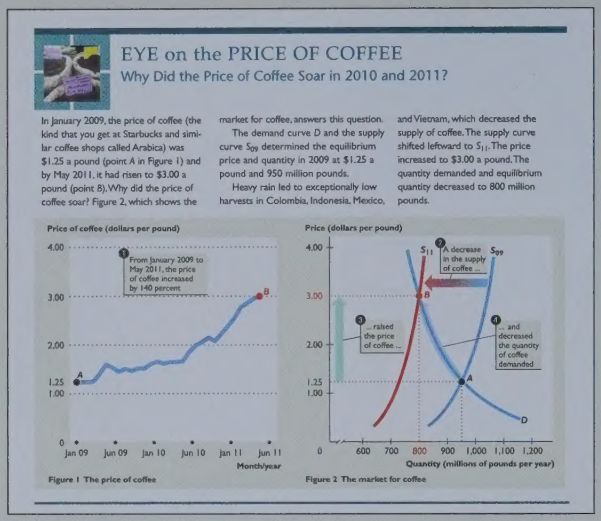
use color to show the direction of shifts and detailed, numbered captions guide students step-by-step through the action.

100% of the figures are animated in MyEconLab, with step-by-step audio narration.

Real Applications

Eye On Boxes apply theory to important issues and problems that shape our global society and individual decisions.

Eye On boxes that build off the chapter opening question help students see the economics behind key issues facing our world.



EYE on the PRICE OF COFFEE

Why Did the Price of Coffee Soar in 2010 and 2011?

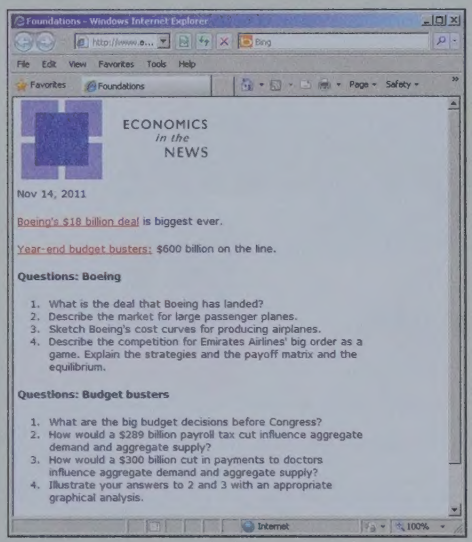
In January 2009, the price of coffee (the kind that you get at Starbucks and similar coffee shops called Arabica) was $1.25 a pound (point *A* in Figure 1) and by May 2011, it had risen to $3.00 a pound (point *B*). Why did the price of coffee soar? Figure 2, which shows the market for coffee, answers this question.

The demand curve *D* and the supply curve S_{09} determined the equilibrium price and quantity in 2009 at $1.25 a pound and 950 million pounds.

Heavy rain led to exceptionally low harvests in Colombia, Indonesia, Mexico, and Vietnam, which decreased the supply of coffee. The supply curve shifted leftward to S_{11}. The price increased to $3.00 a pound. The quantity demanded and equilibrium quantity decreased to 800 million pounds.

Figure 1 The price of coffee

Figure 2 The market for coffee



Foundations - Windows Internet Explorer

ECONOMICS *in the* NEWS

Nov 14, 2011

Boeing's $18 billion deal is biggest ever.

Year-end budget busters: $600 billion on the line.

Questions: Boeing

1. What is the deal that Boeing has landed?
2. Describe the market for large passenger planes.
3. Sketch Boeing's cost curves for producing airplanes.
4. Describe the competition for Emirates Airlines' big order as a game. Explain the strategies and the payoff matrix and the equilibrium.

Questions: Budget busters

1. What are the big budget decisions before Congress?
2. How would a $289 billion payroll tax cut influence aggregate demand and aggregate supply?
3. How would a $300 billion cut in payments to doctors influence aggregate demand and aggregate supply?
4. Illustrate your answers to 2 and 3 with an appropriate graphical analysis.

Economics in the News

MyEconLab

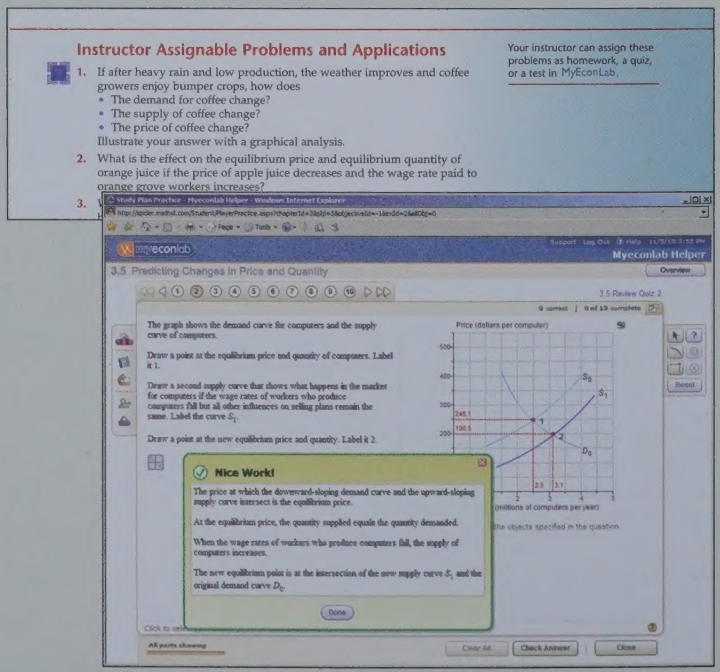
To keep you informed about the latest economic news, each day the authors upload two relevant news articles: a microeconomic topic and a macroeconomic topic. Each article includes discussion questions, links to additional online resources, and references to related textbook chapters.

Practice and Learning Aids in MyEconLab

An end-of-chapter problem based on the chapter-opening issue gives students further practice.

All of the Checkpoint problems are in MyEconLab and available for self-assessment or instructor assignment.

Immediate feedback and problem specific learning aids give students support when they need it most.



Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. If after heavy rain and low production, the weather improves and coffee growers enjoy bumper crops, how does
   - The demand for coffee change?
   - The supply of coffee change?
   - The price of coffee change?

   Illustrate your answer with a graphical analysis.
2. What is the effect on the equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity of orange juice if the price of apple juice decreases and the wage rate paid to orange grove workers increases?
3. W

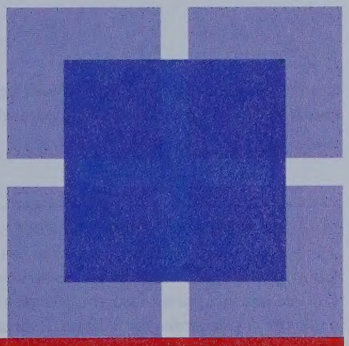
myeconlab
MyeconLab Helper
3.5 Predicting Changes in Price and Quantity
Overview
3.5 Review Quiz 2
The graph shows the demand curve for computers and the supply curve of computers.
Draw a point at the equilibrium price and quantity of computers. Label it 1.
Draw a second supply curve that shows what happens in the market for computers if the wage rates of workers who produce computers fall but all other influences on selling plans remain the same. Label the curve S_1.
Draw a point at the new equilibrium price and quantity. Label it 2.
Price (dollars per computer)
S_0
S_1
D_0
245.1
198.5
2.3
3.1
(millions of computers per year)
Nice Work!
The price at which the downward-sloping demand curve and the upward-sloping supply curve intersect is the equilibrium price.
At the equilibrium price, the quantity supplied equals the quantity demanded.
When the wage rates of workers who produce computers fall, the supply of computers increases.
The new equilibrium point is at the intersection of the new supply curve S_1 and the original demand curve D_0.
Done
Reset
Clear All
Check Answer
Close

Foundations of ECONOMICS

Robin Bade

Michael Parkin

University of Western Ontario



SIXTH EDITION

PEARSON

Boston Columbus Indianapolis New York San Francisco Upper Saddle River
Amsterdam Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montréal Toronto
Delhi Mexico City Sao Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

Editor in Chief: Donna Battista
Executive Acquisitions Editor: Adrienne D'Ambrosio
Editorial Project Manager: Sarah Dumouchelle
Editorial Assistant: Elissa Senra-Sargent
Executive Marketing Manager: Lori DeShazo
Senior Managing Editor: Nancy Fenton
Production Project Manager: Nancy Freihofer
Media Publisher: Denise Clinton
Content Lead for MyEconLab: Noel Lotz
Senior Media Producer: Melissa Honig
Image Permission Manager: Rachel Youdelman
Photo Researcher: Amy Dunleavy
Art Director, Cover: Jonathan Boylan
Cover Image: Mihails Jershovs/Dreamstime.com
Copyeditor: Catherine Baum
Technical Illustrator: Richard Parkin
Project Management, Page Makeup, Design: Integra
Printer/Binder: Courier/Kendallville
Cover Printer: Courier/Kendallville
Text Font: 10/12, Palatino-Roman

Credits and acknowledgments borrowed from other sources and reproduced, with permission, in this textbook appear on the appropriate page within text and on pages C-1–C-2.

Copyright © 2013, 2011, 2009, 2007, 2004 by Pearson Education, Inc., publishing as Addison-Wesley. All rights reserved. Manufactured in the United States of America. This publication is protected by Copyright, and permission should be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. To obtain permission(s) to use material from this work, please submit a written request to Pearson Education, Inc., Permissions Department, One Lake Street, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey 07458, or you may fax your request to 201-236-3290.

Many of the designations by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in initial caps or all caps.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

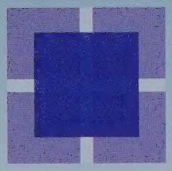
Bade, Robin.
Foundations of economics/Robin Bade, Michael Parkin.—6th ed.
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-13-283105-5
ISBN-10: 0-13-283105-8
1. Economics. I. Parkin, Michael, 1939– II. Title.
HB171.5.B155 2013
330—dc23

2011045330

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

PEARSON

ISBN 10: 0-13-283105-8
ISBN 13: 978-0-13-283105-5

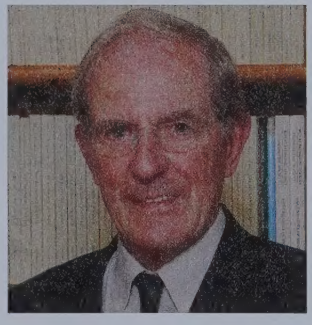


To Erin, Tessa, Jack, Abby, and Sophie

About the Authors

Robin Bade was an undergraduate at the University of Queensland, Australia, where she earned degrees in mathematics and economics. After a spell teaching high school math and physics, she enrolled in the Ph.D. program at the Australian National University, from which she graduated in 1970. She has held faculty appointments at the University of Edinburgh in Scotland, at Bond University in Australia, and at the Universities of Manitoba, Toronto, and Western Ontario in Canada. Her research on international capital flows appears in the *International Economic Review* and the *Economic Record*.

Robin first taught the principles of economics course in 1970 and has taught it (alongside intermediate macroeconomics and international trade and finance) most years since then. She developed many of the ideas found in this text while conducting tutorials with her students at the University of Western Ontario.



Michael Parkin studied economics in England and began his university teaching career immediately after graduating with a B.A. from the University of Leicester. He learned the subject on the job at the University of Essex, England's most exciting new university of the 1960s, and at the age of 30 became one of the youngest full professors. He is a past president of the Canadian Economics Association and has served on the editorial boards of the *American Economic Review* and the *Journal of Monetary Economics*. His research on macroeconomics, monetary economics, and international economics has resulted in more than 160 publications in journals and edited volumes, including the *American Economic Review*, the *Journal of Political Economy*, the *Review of Economic Studies*, the *Journal of Monetary Economics*, and the *Journal of Money, Credit, and Banking*. He is author of the best-selling textbook, *Economics* (Addison-Wesley), now in its Ninth Edition.

Robin and Michael are a wife-and-husband team. Their most notable joint research created the Bade-Parkin Index of central bank independence and spawned a vast amount of research on that topic. They don't claim credit for the independence of the new European Central Bank, but its constitution and the movement toward greater independence of central banks around the world were aided by their pioneering work. Their joint textbooks include *Macroeconomics* (Prentice-Hall), *Modern Macroeconomics* (Pearson Education Canada), and *Economics: Canada in the Global Environment*, the Canadian adaptation of Parkin, *Economics* (Addison-Wesley). They are dedicated to the challenge of explaining economics ever more clearly to an ever-growing body of students.

Music, the theater, art, walking on the beach, and five fast-growing grandchildren provide their relaxation and fun.

ECONOMICS

Brief Contents

PART 1 INTRODUCTION
1 Getting Started, 1
2 The U.S. and Global Economies, 31
3 The Economic Problem, 59
4 Demand and Supply, 83

PART 2 A CLOSER LOOK AT MARKETS
5 Elasticities of Demand and Supply, 111
6 Efficiency and Fairness of Markets, 137

PART 3 HOW GOVERNMENTS INFLUENCE THE ECONOMY
7 Government Actions in Markets, 167
8 Taxes, 189
9 Global Markets in Action, 213

PART 4 MARKET FAILURE AND ITS SOLUTIONS
10 Externalities, 241
11 Public Goods and Common Resources, 265
12 Markets with Private Information 291

PART 5 A CLOSER LOOK AT DECISION MAKERS
13 Consumer Choice and Demand, 315
14 Production and Cost, 343

PART 6 PRICES, PROFITS, AND INDUSTRY PERFORMANCE
15 Perfect Competition, 371
16 Monopoly, 399
17 Monopolistic Competition, 431
18 Oligopoly, 455

PART 7 INCOMES AND INEQUALITY
19 Markets for Factors of Production, 483
20 Economic Inequality, 507

PART 8 MONITORING THE MACROECONOMY
21 GDP: A Measure of Total Production and Income, 523
22 Jobs and Unemployment, 563
23 The CPI and the Cost of Living, 585

PART 9 THE REAL ECONOMY
24 Potential GDP and the Natural Unemployment Rate 609
25 Economic Growth, 633
26 Finance, Saving, and Investment, 659

PART 10 THE MONEY ECONOMY
27 The Monetary System, 685
28 Money, Interest, and Inflation, 715

PART 11 ECONOMIC FLUCTUATIONS
29 Aggregate Supply and Aggregate Demand, 743
30 Aggregate Expenditure Multiplier, 769
31 The Short-Run Policy Tradeoff, 795

PART 12 MACROECONOMIC POLICY
32 Fiscal Policy, 817
33 Monetary Policy, 843
34 International Finance, 871

Glossary G-1
Index I-1
Credits C-1

Contents

PART 1 INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER 1
Getting Started 1

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 1

1.1 Definition and Questions 2
Scarcity, 2
Economics Defined, 2
What, How, and For Whom? 3
When Is the Pursuit of Self-Interest in the Social Interest? 4
CHECKPOINT 1.1 7

1.2 The Economic Way of Thinking 8
Economic Ideas, 8
A Choice Is a Tradeoff, 8
Rational Choice, 8
Benefit: What You Gain, 9
Cost: What You *Must* Give Up, 9
How Much? Choosing at the Margin, 10
Choices Respond to Incentives, 11
Economics as Social Science, 12
Economics as Policy Tool, 14
CHECKPOINT 1.2 16

CHAPTER SUMMARY 17

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 18

Appendix: Making and Using Graphs 21
Interpreting Data Graphs, 22
Interpreting Graphs Used in Economic Models, 24
The Slope of a Relationship, 27
Relationships Among More Than Two Variables, 28
APPENDIX CHECKPOINT 30

■ EYE on the PAST
Adam Smith and the Birth of Economics as a Social Science, 13

■ EYE on the BENEFIT AND COST OF SCHOOL
Did You Make the Right Decision? 15

CHAPTER 2
The U.S. and Global Economies 31

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 31

2.1 What, How, and For Whom? 32
What Do We Produce? 32
How Do We Produce? 34
For Whom Do We Produce? 37
CHECKPOINT 2.1 38

2.2 The Global Economy 39
The People, 39
The Countries, 39
What in the Global Economy? 40
How in the Global Economy? 42
For Whom in the Global Economy? 43
CHECKPOINT 2.2 45

2.3 The Circular Flows 46
Households and Firms, 46
Markets, 46
Real Flows and Money Flows, 46
Governments, 48
Governments in the Circular Flow, 49
Federal Government Expenditures and Revenue, 50
State and Local Government Expenditures and Revenue, 51
Circular Flows in the Global Economy, 52
CHECKPOINT 2.3 54

CHAPTER SUMMARY 55

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 56

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
What We Produce, 33

■ EYE on the PAST
Changes in What We Produce, 34

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Changes in How We Produce in the Information Economy, 36

EYE on the iPHONE
Who Makes the iPhone? 41

EYE on YOUR LIFE
The U.S. and Global Economies in Your Life, 45

EYE on the PAST
Growing Government, 52

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
The Ups and Downs in International Trade, 54

CHAPTER 3
The Economic Problem 59

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 59

3.1 **Production Possibilities** 60
Production Possibilities Frontier, 60
CHECKPOINT 3.1 65

3.2 **Opportunity Cost** 66
The Opportunity Cost of a Cell Phone, 66
Opportunity Cost and the Slope of the *PPF*, 67
Opportunity Cost Is a Ratio, 67
Increasing Opportunity Costs Are Everywhere, 68
Your Increasing Opportunity Cost, 68
CHECKPOINT 3.2 70

3.3 **Economic Growth** 71
CHECKPOINT 3.3 72

3.4 **Specialization and Trade** 73
Comparative Advantage, 74
Achieving Gains from Trade, 76
CHECKPOINT 3.4 78

CHAPTER SUMMARY 79

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 80

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Production Possibilities Frontier, 64

EYE on the ENVIRONMENT
Is Wind Power Free? 68

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Guns Versus Butter, 69

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Hong Kong's Rapid Economic Growth, 72

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
No One Knows How to Make a Pencil 73

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Comparative Advantage, 76

CHAPTER 4
Demand and Supply 83

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 83

Competitive Markets 84

4.1 **Demand** 85
The Law of Demand, 85
Demand Schedule and Demand Curve, 85
Individual Demand and Market Demand, 87
Changes in Demand, 88
Change in Quantity Demanded Versus Change in Demand, 90
CHECKPOINT 4.1 91

4.2 **Supply** 92
The Law of Supply, 92
Supply Schedule and Supply Curve, 92
Individual Supply and Market Supply, 94
Changes in Supply, 95
Change in Quantity Supplied Versus Change in Supply, 97
CHECKPOINT 4.2 98

4.3 **Market Equilibrium** 99
Price: A Market's Automatic Regulator, 99
Predicting Price Changes: Three Questions, 100
Effects of Changes in Demand, 101
Effects of Changes in Supply, 102
Changes in Both Demand and Supply, 104
CHECKPOINT 4.3 106

CHAPTER SUMMARY 107

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 108

EYE on the PRICE OF COFFEE
Why Did the Price of Coffee Soar in 2010 and 2011? 103

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Using Demand and Supply, 103

PART 2 A CLOSER LOOK AT MARKETS

CHAPTER 5
Elasticities of Demand and Supply 111

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 111

5.1 The Price Elasticity of Demand 112
Percentage Change in Price, 112
Percentage Change in Quantity Demanded, 113
Elastic and Inelastic Demand, 114
Influences on the Price Elasticity of Demand, 114
Computing the Price Elasticity of Demand, 116
Interpreting the Price Elasticity of Demand Number, 117
Elasticity Along a Linear Demand Curve, 118
Total Revenue and the Price Elasticity of Demand, 120
Applications of the Price Elasticity of Demand, 122
CHECKPOINT 5.1 123

5.2 The Price Elasticity of Supply 124
Elastic and Inelastic Supply, 124
Influences on the Price Elasticity of Supply, 124
Computing the Price Elasticity of Supply, 126
CHECKPOINT 5.2 128

5.3 Cross Elasticity and Income Elasticity 129
Cross Elasticity of Demand, 129
Income Elasticity of Demand, 130
CHECKPOINT 5.3 132

CHAPTER SUMMARY 133

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 134

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Price Elasticities of Demand, 119

EYE on the PRICE OF GAS
What Do You Do When the Price of Gasoline Rises? 121

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Price Elasticities of Demand, 131

CHAPTER 6
Efficiency and Fairness of Markets 137

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 137

6.1 Allocation Methods and Efficiency 138
Resource Allocation Methods, 138
Using Resources Efficiently, 141
CHECKPOINT 6.1 145

6.2 Value, Price, and Consumer Surplus 146
Demand and Marginal Benefit, 146
Consumer Surplus, 147
CHECKPOINT 6.2 148

6.3 Cost, Price, and Producer Surplus 149
Supply and Marginal Cost, 149
Producer Surplus, 150
CHECKPOINT 6.3 151

6.4 Are Markets Efficient? 152
Marginal Benefit Equals Marginal Cost, 152
Total Surplus Is Maximized, 153
The Invisible Hand, 153
Market Failure 155
Sources of Market Failure 156
Alternatives to the Market, 157
CHECKPOINT 6.4 158

6.5 Are Markets Fair? 159
It's Not Fair If the *Rules* Aren't Fair, 159
It's Not Fair If the *Result* Isn't Fair, 159
Compromise, 161
CHECKPOINT 6.5 162

CHAPTER SUMMARY 163

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 164

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The Invisible Hand and e-Commerce, 154

EYE on PRICE GOUGING
Should Price Gouging Be Illegal? 160

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Allocation Methods, Efficiency, and Fairness, 161

PART 3 HOW GOVERNMENTS INFLUENCE THE ECONOMY

CHAPTER 7 Government Actions in Markets 167

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 167

7.1 Price Ceilings 168
A Rent Ceiling, 168
Are Rent Ceilings Efficient? 171
Are Rent Ceilings Fair? 172
If Rent Ceilings Are So Bad, Why Do We Have Them? 172
CHECKPOINT 7.1 173

7.2 Price Floors 174
The Minimum Wage, 175
Is the Minimum Wage Efficient? 178
Is the Minimum Wage Fair? 179
If the Minimum Wage Is So Bad, Why Do We Have It? 179
CHECKPOINT 7.2 180

7.3 Price Supports in Agriculture 181
How Governments Intervene in Markets for Farm Products, 181
Price Support: An Illustration, 181
CHECKPOINT 7.3 184

CHAPTER SUMMARY 185

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 186

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The Federal Minimum Wage, 177

■ EYE on PRICE REGULATION
Can the President Repeal the Laws of Supply and Demand? 179

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Price Ceilings and Price Floors, 183

CHAPTER 8 Taxes 189

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 189

8.1 Taxes on Buyers and Sellers 190
Tax Incidence, 190
Taxes and Efficiency, 191
Incidence, Inefficiency, and Elasticity, 192
Incidence, Inefficiency, and the Elasticity of Demand, 193
Incidence, Inefficiency, and the Elasticity of Supply, 194
CHECKPOINT 8.1 195

8.2 Income Tax and Social Security Tax 196
The Personal Income Tax, 196
The Effects of the Income Tax, 198
The Social Security Tax, 202
CHECKPOINT 8.2 205

8.3 Fairness and the Big Tradeoff 206
The Benefits Principle, 206
The Ability-to-Pay Principle, 206
The Marriage Tax Problem, 207
The Big Tradeoff, 208
CHECKPOINT 8.3 208

CHAPTER SUMMARY 209

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 210

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Taxes in the United States Today, 196

■ EYE on CONGRESS
Does Congress Decide Who Pays the Taxes? 200

■ EYE on the PAST
The Origins and History of the U.S. Income Tax, 204

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Tax Freedom Day, 204

CHAPTER 9 Global Markets in Action 213

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 213

9.1 How Global Markets Work 214
International Trade Today, 214
What Drives International Trade? 214
Why the United States Imports T-Shirts, 216
Why the United States Exports Airplanes, 217
CHECKPOINT 9.1 218

9.2 Winners, Losers, and Net Gains from Trades 219
Gains and Losses from Imports, 220
Gains and Losses from Exports, 221
CHECKPOINT 9.2 222

9.3 International Trade Restrictions 223
Tariffs, 223
Import Quotas, 227

Other Import Barriers, 229
Export Subsidies, 229
CHECKPOINT 9.3 230

9.4 The Case Against Protection 231
Three Traditional Arguments for Protection, 231
Four Newer Arguments for Protection, 233
Why Is International Trade Restricted? 234
CHECKPOINT 9.4 236

CHAPTER SUMMARY 237

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 238

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
U.S. Exports and Imports, 215

EYE on GLOBALIZATION
Who Wins and Who Loses from Globalization? 219

EYE on the PAST
The History of U.S. Tariffs, 223

EYE on YOUR LIFE
International Trade, 235

PART 4 MARKET FAILURE AND ITS SOLUTIONS

CHAPTER 10
Externalities 241
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 241

Externalities in Our Daily Lives 242
Negative Production Externalities 242
Positive Production Externalities 242
Negative Consumption Externalities 243
Positive Consumption Externalities 243

10.1 Negative Externalities: Pollution 244
Private Costs and Social Costs, 244
Production and Pollution: How Much? 246
Property Rights, 247
The Coase Theorem, 248
Government Actions in the Face of External Costs, 249
Switching to Clean Technologies 251
CHECKPOINT 10.1 253

10.2 Positive Externalities: Education 254
Private Benefits and Social Benefits 254
Government Actions in the Face of External Benefits 256
CHECKPOINT 10.2 260

CHAPTER SUMMARY 261

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 262

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
U.S. Air Pollution Trends, 251

EYE on CLIMATE CHANGE
How Can We Limit Climate Change? 252

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Education Quality: Charter Schools and Vouchers 259

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Externalities in Your Life, 259

CHAPTER 11
Public Goods and Common Resources 265
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 265

11.1 Classifying Goods and Resources 266
Excludable, 266
Rival, 266
A Fourfold Classification, 266
CHECKPOINT 11.1 268

11.2 Public Goods and the Free-Rider Problem 269
The Free-Rider Problem, 269
The Marginal Benefit from a Public Good, 270
The Marginal Cost of a Public Good, 270
The Efficient Quantity of a Public Good, 272
Private Provision: Underproduction, 272
Public Provision: Efficient Production, 273
Public Provision: Overproduction, 274
Why Government Is Large and Growing, 275
CHECKPOINT 11.2 277

11.3 Common Resources 278
Sustainable Use of a Renewable Resource 278
The Overuse of a Common Resource 279
Using the Commons Efficiently 282
CHECKPOINT 11.3 286

CHAPTER SUMMARY 287

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 288

EYE on the PAST
Is a Lighthouse a Public Good? 268

EYE on the U.S. INFRASTRUCTURE
Should America Build a High-Speed Rail Network like Europe's? 276

EYE on YOUR LIFE
A Student's Free-Rider Problem, 276

EYE on the PAST
The Commons of England's Middle Ages 278

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
The North Atlantic Cod Tragedy of the Commons 280

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
ITQs Work 285

CHAPTER 12
Markets with Private Information 291
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 291

12.1 The Lemons Problem and Its Solution 292
A Market for Used Cars with a Lemons Problem 292
A Used-Car Market with Dealers' Warranties 296
CHECKPOINT 12.1 298

12.2 Information Problems in Insurance Markets 299
Insurance Markets 299
Asymmetric Information in Insurance 300
Screening in Insurance Markets 302
Separating Equilibrium with Screening 302
CHECKPOINT 12.2 304

12.3 Health-Care Markets 305
Economic Problems in Health-Care Markets 305
Missing Insurance Market 306
Public-Health Externalities 307
Health-Care Systems in Other Countries 307
A Reform Idea 309
CHECKPOINT 12.3 310

CHAPTER SUMMARY 311

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 312

EYE on the MARKET FOR USED CARS
How Do You Avoid Buying a Lemon? 296

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Insurance in the United States 299

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Health Care in the United States: A Snapshot 306

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Health-Care Expenditures and Health Outcomes 308

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Signaling Your Ability 309

PART 5 A CLOSER LOOK AT DECISION MAKERS

CHAPTER 13
Consumer Choice and Demand 315
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 315

13.1 Consumption Possibilities 316
The Budget Line, 316
A Change in the Budget, 317
Changes in Prices, 318
Prices and the Slope of the Budget Line, 319
CHECKPOINT 13.1 321

13.2 Marginal Utility Theory 322
Total Utility, 322
Marginal Utility, 322
Graphing Tina's Utility Schedules, 324
Maximizing Total Utility, 324
Finding an Individual Demand Curve, 326
CHECKPOINT 13.2 328

13.3 Efficiency, Price, and Value 329
Consumer Efficiency, 329
The Paradox of Value, 329
CHECKPOINT 13.3 332

CHAPTER SUMMARY 333

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 334

Appendix: Indifference Curves 337
An Indifference Curve, 337
Marginal Rate of Substitution, 338
Consumer Equilibrium, 339
Deriving the Demand Curve, 340

Appendix Checkpoint 342

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Relative Prices on the Move, 320

■ EYE on the PAST
Jeremy Bentham, William Stanley Jevons, and the Birth of Utility, 323

■ EYE on SONG DOWNLOADS
How Much Would You Pay for a Song? 330

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Do You Maximize Your Utility? 332

CHAPTER 14
Production and Cost 343
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 343

14.1 Economic Cost and Profit 344
The Firm's Goal, 344
Accounting Cost and Profit, 344
Opportunity Cost, 344
Economic Profit, 345
CHECKPOINT 14.1 347
SHORT RUN AND LONG RUN 348

14.2 Short-Run Production 349
Total Product, 349
Marginal Product, 350
Average Product, 352
CHECKPOINT 14.2 354

14.3 Short-Run Cost 355
Total Cost, 355
Marginal Cost, 356
Average Cost, 357
Why the Average Total Cost Curve Is U-Shaped, 359
Cost Curves and Product Curves, 360
Shifts in the Cost Curves, 360
CHECKPOINT 14.3 362

14.4 Long-Run Cost 363
Plant Size and Cost, 363
The Long-Run Average Cost Curve, 364
CHECKPOINT 14.4 366

CHAPTER SUMMARY 367

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 368

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Average and Marginal Grades, 353

■ EYE on RETAILERS' COSTS
Which Store Has the Lower Costs: Wal-Mart or 7–Eleven? 365

PART 6 PRICES, PROFITS, AND INDUSTRY PERFORMANCE

CHAPTER 15
Perfect Competition 371
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 371

Market Types 372
Perfect Competition, 372
Other Market Types, 372

15.1 A Firm's Profit-Maximizing Choices 373
Price Taker, 373
Revenue Concepts, 373
Profit-Maximizing Output, 374
Marginal Analysis and the Supply Decision, 376
Temporary Shutdown Decision, 377
The Firm's Short-Run Supply Curve, 378
CHECKPOINT 15.1 380

15.2 Output, Price, and Profit in the Short Run 381
Market Supply in the Short Run, 381
Short-Run Equilibrium in Normal Times, 382
Short-Run Equilibrium in Good Times, 383
Short-Run Equilibrium in Bad Times, 384
CHECKPOINT 15.2 385

15.3 Output, Price, and Profit in the Long Run 386
Entry and Exit, 387
The Effects of Exit 388
Change in Demand, 389
Technological Change, 389
Is Perfect Competition Efficient? 392
Is Perfect Competition Fair? 393
CHECKPOINT 15.3 394

CHAPTER SUMMARY 395
CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 396

■ EYE on the AUTO INDUSTRY
Why Did GM Fail? 390
■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
The Perfect Competition that You Encounter, 393

CHAPTER 16
Monopoly 399
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 399

16.1 Monopoly and How it Arises 400
How Monopoly Arises, 400
Monopoly Price-Setting Strategies, 402
CHECKPOINT 16.1 403

16.2 Single-Price Monopoly 404
Price and Marginal Revenue, 404
Marginal Revenue and Elasticity, 405
Output and Price Decision, 406
CHECKPOINT 16.2 408

16.3 Monopoly and Competition Compared 409
Output and Price, 409
Is Monopoly Efficient? 410
Is Monopoly Fair? 411
Rent Seeking, 411
Create a Monopoly by Rent Seeking 412
Rent-Seeking Equilibrium 412
CHECKPOINT 16.3 413

16.4 Price Discrimination 414
Price Discrimination and Consumer Surplus, 414
Profiting by Price Discriminating, 415
Perfect Price Discrimination, 416
Price Discrimination and Efficiency, 418
CHECKPOINT 16.4 419

16.5 Monopoly Regulation 420
Efficient Regulation of a Natural Monopoly, 420
Second-Best Regulation of a Natural Monopoly, 421
CHECKPOINT 16.5 426

CHAPTER SUMMARY 427
CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 428

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Airline Price Discrimination, 418
■ EYE on MICROSOFT
Are Microsoft's Prices Too High? 423
■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Monopoly in Your Everyday Life, 425

CHAPTER 17
Monopolistic Competition 431
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 431

17.1 What Is Monopolistic Competition? 432
Large Number of Firms, 432
Product Differentiation, 432
Competing on Quality, Price, and Marketing, 432
Entry and Exit, 433
Identifying Monopolistic Competition, 433
CHECKPOINT 17.1 437

17.2 Output and Price Decisions 438
The Firm's Profit-Maximizing Decision, 438
Profit Maximizing Might Be Loss Minimizing, 439
Long Run: Zero Economic Profit, 440
Monopolistic Competition and Perfect Competition, 441
Is Monopolistic Competition Efficient? 442
CHECKPOINT 17.2 443

17.3 Product Development and Marketing 444
Product Development, 444
Marketing, 445
Using Advertising to Signal Quality, 448
Brand Names, 449
Efficiency of Advertising and Brand Names, 449
CHECKPOINT 17.3 450

CHAPTER SUMMARY 451
CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 452

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Examples of Monopolistic Competition, 436
■ EYE on CELL PHONES
Which Cell Phone? 445
■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Some Selling Costs You Pay, 448

CHAPTER 18
Oligopoly 455
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 455

18.1 What Is Oligopoly? 456
Small Number of Firms, 456
Barriers to Entry, 456
Identifying Oligopoly, 458
CHECKPOINT 18.1 459

18.2 The Oligopolists' Dilemma 460
Monopoly Outcome, 460
Perfect Competition Outcome, 461
Other Possible Cartel Breakdowns, 461
The Oligopoly Cartel Dilemma, 462
CHECKPOINT 18.2 464

18.3 Game Theory 465
What Is a Game? 465
The Prisoners' Dilemma, 465
The Duopolists' Dilemma, 467
The Payoff Matrix 467
Advertising and Research Games in Oligopoly, 468
Repeated Games, 470
Is Oligopoly Efficient? 471
CHECKPOINT 18.3 472

18.4 Antitrust Law 473
The Antitrust Laws, 473
Three Antitrust Policy Debates, 473
Recent Antitrust Showcase: The United States Versus Microsoft, 475
Merger Rules, 476
CHECKPOINT 18.4 478

CHAPTER SUMMARY 479

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 480

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Examples of Oligopoly, 458

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
The OPEC Global Oil Cartel, 463

EYE on YOUR LIFE
A Game You Might Play, 470

EYE on the CHIPS DUOPOLY
Is Two Too Few? 471

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
No Soda Merger, 477

PART 7 INCOMES AND INEQUALITY

CHAPTER 19
Markets for Factors of Production 483
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 483

The Anatomy of Factor Markets 484

19.1 The Demand for a Factor of Production 485
Value of Marginal Product, 485
A Firm's Demand for Labor, 486
A Firm's Demand for Labor Curve, 487
Changes in the Demand for Labor, 488
CHECKPOINT 19.1 489

19.2 Labor Markets 490
The Supply of Labor, 490
Influences on the Supply of Labor, 491
Competitive Labor Market Equilibrium, 492
Labor Unions, 494
CHECKPOINT 19.2 496

19.3 Capital and Natural Resource Markets 497
Capital Markets, 497
Land Markets, 498
Nonrenewable Natural Resource Markets, 499
CHECKPOINT 19.3 502

CHAPTER SUMMARY 503

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 504

EYE on the COACH
Why Is a Coach Worth $6 Million? 493

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Job Choice and Income Prospects, 499

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Oil and Metal Prices, 500

CHAPTER 20
Economic Inequality 507
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 507

20.1 Measuring Economic Inequality 508
Lorenz Curves, 509
Inequality over Time, 510
Economic Mobility, 510
Poverty, 513
CHECKPOINT 20.1 515

20.2 How Economic Inequality Arises 516
Human Capital, 516
Discrimination, 519
Financial and Physical Capital, 520
Entrepreneurial Ability, 520
Personal and Family Characteristics, 520
CHECKPOINT 20.2 521

20.3 Income Redistribution 522
How Governments Redistribute Income, 522
The Scale of Income Redistribution, 523
Why We Redistribute Income, 525
The Major Welfare Challenge, 526
CHECKPOINT 20.3 528

CHAPTER SUMMARY 529

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 530

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Global Inequality, 511

EYE on INEQUALITY
Who Are the Rich and the Poor? 512

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Does Education Pay? 518

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Sex and Race Earnings Differences, 519

EYE on YOUR LIFE
What You Pay and Gain Through Redistribution, 527

PART 8 MONITORING THE MACROECONOMY

CHAPTER 21
GDP: A Measure of Total Production and Income 533
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 533

21.1 GDP, Income, and Expenditure 534
GDP Defined, 534
Circular Flows in the U.S. Economy, 535
Expenditure Equals Income, 536
CHECKPOINT 21.1 538

21.2 Measuring U.S. GDP 539
The Expenditure Approach, 539
The Income Approach, 541
GDP and Related Measures of Production and Income, 543
Real GDP and Nominal GDP, 544
Calculating Real GDP, 544
Using the Real GDP Numbers, 545
CHECKPOINT 21.2 546

21.3 The Uses and Limitations of Real GDP 547
The Standard of Living Over Time, 547
Tracking the Course of the Business Cycle, 548
The Standard of Living Among Countries, 550
Goods and Services Omitted from GDP, 551
Other Influences on the Standard of Living, 552
CHECKPOINT 21.3 554

CHAPTER SUMMARY 555

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 556

Appendix: Measuring Real GDP 559
The Problem with Base-Year Prices, 559
Value Production in the Prices of Adjacent Years, 559
APPENDIX CHECKPOINT 562

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Is a Computer Program an Intermediate Good or a Final Good? 540

EYE on the BOOMS AND BUSTS
How Do We Track the Booms and Busts of Our Economy 550

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Making GDP Personal, 552

■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Which Country Has the Highest Standard of Living? 553

CHAPTER 22
Jobs and Unemployment 563
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 563

22.1 Labor Market Indicators 564
Current Population Survey, 564
Population Survey Criteria, 564
Two Main Labor Market Indicators, 565
Alternative Measures of Unemployment, 566
CHECKPOINT 22.1 568

22.2 Labor Market Trends and Fluctuations 569
Unemployment Rate, 569
The Participation Rate, 570
Alternative Measures of Unemployment, 572
A Closer Look at Part-Time Employment, 573
CHECKPOINT 22.2 574

22.3 Unemployment and Full Employment 575
Frictional Unemployment 575
Structural Unemployment 575
Cyclical Unemployment 576
"Natural" Unemployment 576
Unemployment and Real GDP, 577
CHECKPOINT 22.3 580

CHAPTER SUMMARY 581

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 582

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The Current Population Survey, 567

■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Unemployment Around the World, 570

■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Women in the Labor Force, 571

■ EYE on the UNEMPLOYED
How Long Does It Take to Find a New Job? 576

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Labor Market Status and Activity, 578

CHAPTER 23
The CPI and the Cost of Living 585
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 585

23.1 The Consumer Price Index 586
Reading the CPI Numbers, 586
Constructing the CPI, 586
The CPI Market Basket, 586
The Monthly Price Survey, 587
Calculating the CPI, 588
Measuring Inflation and Deflation, 589
CHECKPOINT 23.1 591

23.2 The CPI and Other Price Level Measures 592
Sources of Bias in the CPI, 592
The Magnitude of the Bias, 593
Two Consequences of the CPI Bias, 594
Alternative Measures of the Price Level and Inflation Rate, 595
CHECKPOINT 23.2 597

23.3 Nominal and Real Values 598
Dollars and Cents at Different Dates, 598
Nominal and Real Values in Macroeconomics, 599
Nominal GDP and Real GDP, 599
Nominal Wage Rate and Real Wage Rate, 600
Nominal Interest Rate and Real Interest Rate, 602
CHECKPOINT 23.3 604

CHAPTER SUMMARY 605

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 606

■ EYE on The PAST
700 Years of Inflation and Deflation, 590

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Deflating the GDP Balloon, 599

■ EYE on the PAST
The Nominal and Real Wage Rates of Presidents of the United States, 601

■ EYE on BOX OFFICE HITS
Which Movie *Really* Was the Biggest Box Office Hit? 602

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
A Student's CPI, 603

PART 9 THE REAL ECONOMY

CHAPTER 24 Potential GDP and the Natural Unemployment Rate 609

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 609

Macroeconomic Approaches and Pathways 610
The Three Main Schools of Thought, 610
Today's Consensus, 611
The Road Ahead, 612

24.1 Potential GDP 613
The Production Function, 614
The Labor Market, 615
CHECKPOINT 24.1 621

24.2 The Natural Unemployment Rate 622
Job Search, 623
Job Rationing, 624
CHECKPOINT 24.2 628

CHAPTER SUMMARY 629

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 630

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The Lucas Wedge and the Okun Gap, 612

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Potential GDP in the United States and European Union, 613

EYE on U.S. POTENTIAL GDP
Why Do American Earn More and Produce More Than Europeans? 620

EYE on the PAST
Average Unemployment Rates over Six Decades, 622

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Unemployment Benefits and the Natural Unemployment Rate, 624

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The Federal Minimum Wage, 627

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Natural Unemployment, 627

CHAPTER 25 Economic Growth 633

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 633

25.1 The Basics of Economic Growth 634
Calculating Growth Rates, 634
The Magic of Sustained Growth, 635
CHECKPOINT 25.1 637

25.2 Labor Productivity Growth 638
Labor Productivity 638
Saving and Investment in Physical Capital 638
Expansion of Human Capital and Discovery of New Technologies 640
Combined Influences Bring Labor Productivity Growth 642
CHECKPOINT 25.2 645

25.3 Economic Growth Theories: Old and New 646
Old Growth Theory 646
New Growth Theory 646
CHECKPOINT 25.3 649

25.4 Achieving Faster Growth 650
Preconditions for Economic Growth, 650
Policies to Achieve Faster Growth, 651
How Much Difference Can Policy Make? 652
CHECKPOINT 25.4 654

CHAPTER SUMMARY 655

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 656

EYE on the PAST
How Fast Has Real GDP per Person Grown? 636

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
U.S. Labor Productivity Growth Since 1960, 644

EYE on YOUR LIFE
How You Influence and Are Influenced by Economic Growth, 648

EYE on RICH AND POOR NATIONS
Why Are Some Nations Rich and Others Poor? 653

CHAPTER 26 Finance, Saving, and Investment 659

CHAPTER CHECKLIST 659

26.1 Financial Institutions and Markets 660
Some Finance Definitions, 660
Markets for Financial Capital, 661
Financial Institutions, 663
Insolvency and Illiquidity, 664
Interest Rates and Asset Prices, 664
CHECKPOINT 26.1 665

26.2 The Loanable Funds Market 666
Flows in the Loanable Funds 666
The Demand for Loanable Funds, 666
The Supply of Loanable Funds, 669
Equilibrium in the Loanable Funds Market, 672
Changes in Demand and Supply, 673
CHECKPOINT 26.2 675

26.3 Government in Loanable Funds Market 676
A Government Budget Surplus, 676
A Government Budget Deficit, 677
CHECKPOINT 26.3 680

CHAPTER SUMMARY 681

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 682

■ EYE on FINANCIAL CRISIS
What Created the Global Financial Crisis? 674

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Did The Rescue Plan Crowd Out Investment? 678

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Participation in the Loanable Funds Market, 679

PART 10 THE MONEY ECONOMY

CHAPTER 27
The Monetary System 685
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 685

27.1 What Is Money? 686
Definition of Money, 686
The Functions of Money, 686
Money Today, 688
Official Measures of Money: M1 and M2, 688
Checks, Credit Cards, Debit Cards, and E-Checks, 689
An Embryonic New Money: E-Cash, 690
CHECKPOINT 27.1 691

27.2 The Banking System 692
Commercial Banks, 692
Thrift Institutions, 695
Money Market Funds, 695
CHECKPOINT 27.2 696

27.3 The Federal Reserve System 697
The Structure of the Federal Reserve, 697
The Fed's Policy Tools, 698
How the Fed's Policy Tools Work, 699
CHECKPOINT 27.3 700

27.4 Regulating the Quantity of Money 701
Creating Deposits by Making Loans, 701
How Open Market Operations Change the Monetary Base, 703
The Multiplier Effect of an Open Market Operation, 706
The Money Multiplier, 707
CHECKPOINT 27.4 710

CHAPTER SUMMARY 711

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 712

■ EYE on the PAST
The "Invention" of Banking, 693

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Commercial Banks Under Stress in the Financial Crisis, 695

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Money and Your Role in Its Creation, 701

■ EYE on CREATING MONEY
How Does the Fed Create Money and Regulate Its Quantity? 708

CHAPTER 28
Money, Interest, and Inflation 715
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 715

Where We Are and Where We're Heading 716
The Real Economy, 716
The Money Economy, 716
Real and Money Interactions and Policy, 716

28.1 Money and the Interest Rate 717
The Demand for Money, 717
Changes in the Demand for Money, 719
The Supply of Money, 720
The Nominal Interest Rate, 720
Changing the Interest Rate, 722
CHECKPOINT 28.1 724

28.2 Money, the Price Level, and Inflation 725
The Money Market in the Long Run, 725
A Change in the Quantity of Money, 727
The Price Level in a Baby-Sitting Club, 728
The Quantity Theory of Money, 728
Inflation and the Quantity Theory of Money, 730
Hyperinflation, 732
CHECKPOINT 28.2 734

28.3 The Cost of Inflation 735
Tax Costs, 735
Shoe-Leather Costs, 736
Confusion Costs, 736
Uncertainty Costs, 737
How Big Is the Cost of Inflation? 737
CHECKPOINT 28.3 738

CHAPTER SUMMARY 739

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 740

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
Credit Cards and Money, 722

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Money Holding and Fed Watching, 723

■ EYE on the PAST
Hyperinflation in Germany in the 1920s, 732

■ EYE on INFLATION
What Causes Inflation? 733

PART 11 ECONOMIC FLUCTUATIONS

CHAPTER 29
Aggregate Supply and Aggregate Demand 743
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 743

29.1 Aggregate Supply 744
Aggregate Supply Basics, 744
Changes in Aggregate Supply, 747
CHECKPOINT 29.1 749

29.2 Aggregate Demand 750
Aggregate Demand Basics, 750
Changes in Aggregate Demand, 752
The Aggregate Demand Multiplier, 754
CHECKPOINT 29.2 755

29.3 Explaining Economic Trends and Fluctuations 756
Macroeconomic Equilibrium 756
Three Types of Macroeconomic Equilibrium 757
Economic Growth and Inflation Trends 758
The Business Cycle 759
Inflation Cycles 760
Deflation and the Great Depression 762
CHECKPOINT 29.3 764

CHAPTER SUMMARY 765

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 766

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
U.S. Economic Growth, Inflation, and the Business Cycle 758

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Using the *AS-AD* Model 762

■ EYE on the BUSINESS CYCLE
Why Did the U.S. Economy Go into Recession in 2008? 763

CHAPTER 30
Aggregate Expenditure Multiplier 769
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 769

30.1 Expenditure Plans and Real GDP 770
The Consumption Function, 770
Imports and Real GDP, 774
CHECKPOINT 30.1 775

30.2 Equilibrium Expenditure 776
Induced Expenditure and Autonomous Expenditure 776
Aggregate Planned Expenditure and Real GDP, 776
Equilibrium Expenditure, 778
Convergence to Equilibrium, 779
CHECKPOINT 30.2 781

30.3 Expenditure Multipliers 782
The Basic Idea of the Multiplier, 782
The Size of the Multiplier, 783
The Multiplier and the *MPC*, 783
The Multiplier, Imports, and Income Taxes, 784

Business-Cycle Turning Points, 786
CHECKPOINT 30.3 787

30.4 The *AD* Curve and Equilibrium Expenditure 788
Deriving the *AD* Curve from Equilibrium Expenditure, 788
CHECKPOINT 30.4 790

CHAPTER SUMMARY 791

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 792

■ EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The U.S. Consumption Function, 774
■ EYE on the PAST
Say's Law and Keynes' Principle of Effective Demand, 780
■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Looking for Multipliers, 785
■ EYE on the MULTIPLIER
How Big Is the Government Expenditure Multiplier? 786

CHAPTER 31
The Short-Run Policy Tradeoff 795
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 795

31.1 The Short-Run Phillips Curve 796
Aggregate Supply and the Short-Run Phillips Curve, 797
Why Bother with the Phillips Curve? 800
CHECKPOINT 31.1 801

31.2 Short-Run and Long-Run Phillips Curves 802
The Long-Run Phillips Curve, 802
Expected Inflation, 803
The Natural Rate Hypothesis, 804
Changes in the Natural Unemployment Rate, 805
Have Changes in the Natural Unemployment Rate Changed the Tradeoff? 806
CHECKPOINT 31.2 808

31.3 Influencing Inflation and Unemployment 809
Influencing the Expected Inflation Rate 809
Targeting the Unemployment Rate 810
CHECKPOINT 31.3 812

CHAPTER SUMMARY 813

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 814

■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Inflation and Unemployment, 799
■ EYE on the PAST
The U.S. Phillips Curve, 800
■ EYE on the PAST
A Live Test of the Natural Rate Hypothesis, 805
■ EYE on the TRADEOFF
Can We Have Low Unemployment *and* Low Inflation? 807
■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
The Short-Run Tradeoff in Your Life, 811

PART 12 MACROECONOMIC POLICY

CHAPTER 32
Fiscal Policy 817
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 817

32.1 The Federal Budget 818
The Institutions and Laws, 818
Budget Surplus, Deficit and Debt, 818
The Federal Budget in Fiscal 2012 819
A Social Security and Medicare Time-Bomb 820
CHECKPOINT 32.1 822

32.2 Fiscal Stimulus 823
Schools of Thought and Cracks in Today's Consensus, 823
Fiscal Policy and Aggregate Demand, 824
Automatic Fiscal Policy, 824
Cyclical and Structural Budget Balances 825
Discretionary Fiscal Policy, 826
A Successful Fiscal Stimulus 827
Limitations of Discretionary Fiscal Policy 828
CHECKPOINT 32.2 829

32.3 The Supply Side: Potential GDP and Growth 830
Full Employment and Potential GDP, 830
Fiscal Policy, Employment, and Potential GDP, 830
Fiscal Policy and Potential GDP: A Graphical Analysis, 832

Taxes, Deficits, and Economic Growth, 833
The Supply-Side Debate, 834
Combined Demand-Side and Supply-Side Effects, 836
Long-Run Fiscal Policy Effects, 837
CHECKPOINT 32.3 838

CHAPTER SUMMARY 839

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 840

EYE on the PAST
Federal Revenues, Outlays, Deficits, and Debt, 821

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
The U.S. Budget in Global Perspective, 822

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The U.S. Structural and Cyclical Budget Balances 825

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Some Real-World Tax Wedges, 831

EYE on FISCAL STIMULUS
Fiscal Stimulus End a Recession? 835

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Views on Fiscal Policy and How Fiscal Policy Affects You, 837

CHAPTER 33
Monetary Policy 843
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 843

33.1 How the Fed Conducts Monetary Policy 844
Monetary Policy Objectives, 844
Operational "Maximum Employment" Goal, 845
Operational "Stable Prices" Goal, 845
Responsibility for Monetary Policy, 846
Choosing a Policy Instrument, 846
The Federal Funds Rate, 846
The Fed's Decision-Making Strategy, 847
Hitting the Federal Funds Rate Target, 849
Restoring Financial Stability in a Financial Crisis, 850
CHECKPOINT 33.1 851

33.2 Monetary Policy Transmission 852
Quick Overview, 852
Interest Rate Changes, 852
Exchange Rate Changes, 854
Money and Bank Loans, 854
The Long-Term Real Interest Rate, 855
Expenditure Plans, 855
The Fed Fights Recession, 856
The Fed Fights Inflation, 858
Loose Links and Long and Variable Lags, 860
A Final Reality Check, 860
CHECKPOINT 33.2 861

33.3 Alternative Monetary Policy Strategies 862
Why Rules? 862
Inflation Targeting Rule, 862
Money Targeting Rule, 863
Nominal GDP Targeting Rule 865
CHECKPOINT 33.3 866

CHAPTER SUMMARY 867

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 868

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY
The Fed's Interest Rate Decisions and the Taylor Rule, 848

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Inflation Targeting Around the World, 863

EYE on THE FED IN A CRISIS
Did the Fed Save Us From Another Great Depression? 864

EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Views on Monetary Policy and How Monetary Policy Affects You, 865

CHAPTER 34
International Finance 871
CHAPTER CHECKLIST 871

34.1 Financing International Trade 872
Balance of Payments Accounts, 872
Borrowers and Lenders, Debtors and Creditors, 874
Current Account Balance, 875
Net Exports, 875
CHECKPOINT 34.1 878

34.2 The Exchange Rate 879
Demand in the Foreign Exchange Market, 880
The Law of Demand for Foreign Exchange, 880
Changes in the Demand for Dollars, 881
Supply in the Foreign Exchange Market, 883
The Law of Supply of Foreign Exchange, 883
Changes in the Supply of Dollars, 884
Market Equilibrium, 886
Exchange Rate Expectations, 888
Purchasing Power Parity 888
Monetary Policy and the Exchange Rate, 890
Pegging the Exchange Rate, 890

The People's Bank of China in the Foreign Exchange Market, 891

CHECKPOINT 34.2 894

CHAPTER SUMMARY 895

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT 896

■ EYE on the PAST
The U.S. Balance of Payments, 873

■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Current Account Balances Around the World, 877

■ EYE on the PAST
The Dollar and the Euro Since 1999, 879

■ EYE on the DOLLAR
Why Has Our Dollar Been Sinking? 887

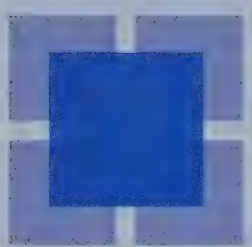
■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
Purchasing Power Parity, 889

■ EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY
The Managed Yuan, 893

■ EYE on YOUR LIFE
Your Foreign Exchange Transactions, 893

Glossary G-1
Index I-1
Credits C-1

Preface



Students know that throughout their lives they will make economic decisions and be influenced by economic forces. They want to understand the economic principles that can help them navigate these forces and guide their decisions. *Foundations of Economics* is our attempt to satisfy this want.

The response to our earlier editions from hundreds of colleagues across the United States and throughout the world tells us that most of you agree with our view that to achieve its goals, the principles course must do four things well. It must

- Motivate with compelling issues and questions
- Focus on core ideas
- Steer a path between an overload of detail and too much left unsaid
- Encourage and aid learning by doing

The Foundations icon with its four blocks (on the cover and throughout the book) symbolizes this four-point approach that has guided all our choices in writing this text and creating its comprehensive teaching and learning supplements.

WHAT'S NEW IN THE SIXTH EDITION

The extraordinary events in the U.S. and global economies provide a rich display of economic forces in action through which students can be motivated to discover the economic way of thinking. The global financial crisis, slump, and faltering recovery; headwinds from the European debt crisis; ongoing tensions that result from globalization and international outsourcing; the continued spectacular expansion of China and India in the information-age economy; enhanced concern about the depletion of the world's rainforests and fish stocks; climate change; relentless pressure on the federal budget from the demands of an aging population and increased defense and homeland security expenditures; the dilemma posed by slow recovery and rising government debt; a fluctuating dollar; an ongoing U.S. international deficit; and ever-growing national and international debt are just a few of these interest-arousing events. All of them feature at the appropriate points in our new edition, and the text and examples are all thoroughly updated to reflect the most recently available data and events.

Every chapter contains many small changes, all designed to enhance clarity and currency. We have also made a few carefully selected major changes that we describe below.

New Features

We have simplified the chapter openers to grab student attention and provide instant focus for the chapter. Each chapter opens with a question about a central issue that the chapter addresses and is illustrated with a carefully selected photograph. An *Eye On* box returns to and discusses the question and an end-of-chapter problem, that is also in the MyEconLab Homework and Test Manager, makes the issue available for assignment with automatic grading. This feature enables the student to get the point of the chapter quickly; ties the chapter together; and enables the instructor to focus on a core issue in class and for practice.

The Chapter Checkpoint (the last three pages of each chapter) has been thoroughly revised. The first page contains problems and applications for the student to work, which are replicated in the MyEconLab Study Plan. The second page contains problems and applications for the instructor to assign for homework, quiz, or test. Many of these problems and applications are new to the sixth edtion and include mini case studies from recent news stories. The third page contains a short multiple choice quiz. This quiz, also available in MyEconLab for student practice, hits the high points of the chapter and enables students to test themselves on the types of questions they are likely to encounter on tests and exams.

The Checkpoints at the end of each major section of a chapter have been reorganized to separate practice with basic analysis and "In the News" applications. Worked solutions are provided for both types of questions.

Major Content Changes in Introductory Chapters

You're in school! Did you make the right decision? Who makes the iPhone? Is wind power free? Why did the price of coffee soar in 2010 and 2011? These are the questions that motivate the four introductory chapters.

We reworked Chapter 1 to strengthen the explanation and illustration of the economic way of thinking by placing the student center stage and focusing on the decision to remain in school or get a full-time job. Our goal is to engage the student from the outset of the course, grab attention, and show the relevance of economics and its place in everyday life. We also revised and improved our explanation of the scientific method in economics.

Chapter 3 has a more gradual and fully illustrated explanation of the mutual gains from trade arising from comparative advantage and a new *Eye On* box on the power of specialization and trade through the classic story of the production of the pencil.

Major Content Changes in Micro Chapters

What do you do when the price of gasoline rises? Should price gouging be illegal? Can the President repeal the laws of supply and demand? Does Congress decide who pays the taxes? Who wins and who loses from globalization? How can we limit climate change? Should America build a high-speed rail network

like Europe's? How do you avoid buying a lemon? How much would you pay for a song? Which store has the lower costs: Wal-Mart or 7-Eleven? Why did GM fail? Are Microsoft's prices too high? Which cell phone? Is two too few? Why is a coach worth $6 million? Who are the rich and the poor? These are the motivating questions and features of *Eye On* boxes and end-of chapter problems in the 16 micro chapters.

Overall, these chapters have been well-received and positively reviewed, so for the most part we have limited our changes to refinements and updating data and examples. Beyond these many smaller innovations, we have made two larger structural changes.

The first of these is a reorganization of the chapters that deal with externalities, public goods, and common resources. In the fifth edition, we covered public goods and positive externalities on one chapter and negative externalities and common resources in another. In the sixth edition, we have reverted to our earlier organization of this material. Chapter 10 explains all types of externalities. It explains negative externalities, illustrated with pollution, and positive externalities, illustrated with knowledge (education and research). A new *Eye On* features Caroline Hoxby's research on charter schools and vouchers. Chapter 11 covers public goods and common resources and uses Obama's wish to create a high-speed rail network similar to Europe's to illustrate the efficient and inefficient provision of a public good. The analysis of common resources treats the tragedy of the commons as a type of externality problem.

The second major change in the micro chapters is an entirely new Chapter 12 "Markets with Private Information." This chapter explains the lemons problem and its solutions and the problems that arise from asymmetric information in insurance and health-care markets. A section of this new chapter is devoted to health care and the challenges that arise from asymmetric information, missing insurance markets, and public health externalities. The U.S. health-care market is compared with those in other countries and Laurence Kotlikoff's voucher-based "Medicare Part C for All" is described.

Major Content Changes in Macro Chapters

The macroeconomic events and debates triggered by the 2007 global financial crisis, the 2008–2009 recession, the stubbornly slow recovery, and the headwinds of the European debt problems of 2011 permeate the macro chapters, all of which have been radically updated and revised. Policy features at every possible opportunity throughout these chapters.

How do we track our economy's booms and busts? How long does it take to find a job? Which movie really was the biggest box office hit? Why do Americans earn more and produce more than Europeans? Why are some nations rich and others poor? What created the global financial crisis? How does the Fed create money and regulate its quantity? What causes inflation? Why did the U.S. economy go into recession in 2008? How big is the government expenditure multiplier? Can we have low unemployment *and* low inflation? Can fiscal stimulus end recession? Did the Fed save us from another Great Depression? Why has our dollar been sinking? These are the motivating questions and features of *Eye On* boxes and end-of-chapter problems in the 14 macro chapters.

Our macro coverage, like our micro, has been generally well-received, so again we have limited most of our revision to refining explanations and ensuring that our coverage is thoroughly up-to-date.

Beyond this careful updating and fine-tuning, we have made five more substantial change in the macro chapters. First, in Chapter 25 "Economic Growth," we have thoroughly revised the section on labor productivity growth. We have built the explanation of the effects on labor productivity around the productivity curve—the relationship between real GDP per hour of labor and capital per hour of labor. This change makes our treatment more mainstream and less reliant on the preceding chapter and potential GDP. It also makes the contrast between the effects of capital accumulation and technological change more vivid.

Second, in Chapter 27 "The Monetary System," we include a description of QE2 and "operation twist."

Third, in Chapter 29 "Aggregate Supply and Aggregate Demand," we have revised and developed a more graphic application section that shows how the *AS-AD* model explains economic growth, inflation, and the business cycle. This chapter also has a new explanation of "demand-pull" and "cost-push" inflation cycles. These applications and exercises using the *AS-AD* model provide additional practice in working with the model and show its relevance to the U.S. economy today.

Fourth, in Chapter 31 "The Short-Run Policy Tradeoff," we include an explanation of the danger of trying to lower the unemployment rate by stimulating aggregate demand.

Fifth, in Chapter 32 "Fiscal Policy," we have provided a new section on the Social Security and Medicare time-bomb and the challenge of addressing it. The chapter also now has an explanation of the distinction between a structural deficit and a cyclical deficit.

THE FOUNDATIONS VISION

Focus on Core Concepts

Each chapter of *Foundations* concentrates on a manageable number of main ideas (most commonly three or four) and reinforces each idea several times throughout the chapter. This patient, confidence-building approach guides students through unfamiliar terrain and helps them to focus their efforts on the most important tools and concepts of our discipline.

Many Learning Tools for Many Learning Styles

Foundations' integrated print and electronic package builds on the basic fact that students have a variety of learning styles. In MyEconLab, students have a powerful tool at their fingertips: They can complete all Checkpoint problems online and get instant feedback, work interactive graphs, assess their skills by taking Practice Tests, and receive a personalized Study Plan, and step-by-by help through the feature called "Help Me Solve This."

Diagrams That Tell the Whole Story

We developed the style of our diagrams with extensive feedback from faculty focus group participants and student reviewers. All of our figures make consistent use of color to show the direction of shifts and contain detailed, numbered

captions designed to direct students' attention step-by-step through the action. Because beginning students of economics are often apprehensive about working with graphs, we have made a special effort to present material in as many as three ways—with graphs, words, and tables—in the same figure. In an innovation that seems necessary, but is to our knowledge unmatched, nearly all of the information supporting a figure appears on the same page as the figure itself. No more flipping pages back and forth!

Real-World Connections That Bring Theory to Life

Students learn best when they can see the purpose of what they are studying, apply it to illuminate the world around them, and use it in their lives.

Eye On boxes offer fresh new examples to help students see that economics is everywhere. Current and recent events appear in *Eye On the U.S. Economy* boxes; we place current U.S. economic events in global and historical perspectives in our *Eye on the Global Economy* and *Eye on the Past* boxes; and we show how students can use economics in day-to-day decisions in *Eye On Your Life* boxes.

The *Eye On* boxes that build off of the chapter-opening question help students see the economics behind key issues facing our world and highlight a major aspect of the chapter's story.

ORGANIZATION

We have organized the sequence of material and chapters in what we think is the most natural order in which to cover the material. But we recognize that there are alternative views on the best order. We have kept this fact and the need for flexibility firmly in mind throughout the text. Many alternative sequences work, and the Flexibility Charts on pp. xxxiv–xxxv explains the alternative pathways through the chapters. In using the flexibility information, keep in mind that the best sequence is the one in which we present the material. And even chapters that the flexibility charts identify as strictly optional are better covered than omitted.

MYECONLAB MyEconLab

MyEconLab has been designed and refined with a single purpose in mind: to create those moments of understanding that transform the difficult into the clear and obvious. With comprehensive homework, quiz, test, and tutorial options, instructors can manage all their assessment needs in one program.

- All of the Checkpoint and Chapter Checkpoint Problems and Applications are assignable and automatically graded in MyEconLab.
- Extra problems and applications, including algorithmic, draw-graph, and numerical exercises are available for student practice or instructor assignment.
- Problems and applications that use real-time data continuously update.
- Test Item File questions are available for assignment as homework.
- Custom Exercise Builder gives instructors the flexibility of creating their own problems for assignment.
- Gradebook records each student's performance and time spent on the Tests and Study Plan and generates reports by student or by chapter.

Real-Time Data The real-time data problems are new. These problems load the latest available data from FRED, a comprehensive up-to-date data set maintained by the Federal Reserve Bank of St Louis. The questions are graded with feedback in exactly the same way as those based on static data.

Experiments in MyEconLab Experiments are a fun and engaging way to promote active learning and mastery of important economic concepts. Pearson's Experiments program is flexible and easy for instructors and students to use.

- Single-player experiments allow your students to play against virtual players from anywhere at anytime so long as they have an internet connection.
- Multiplayer experiments allow you to assign and manage a real-time experiment with your class.
- Pre and post-questions for each experiment are available for assignment in MyEconLab.

For a complete list of available experiments, visit www.myeconlab.com

Economics in the News Economics in the News is a turn-key solution to bringing daily news into the classroom. Updated daily during the academic year, the authors upload two relevant articles (one micro, one macro) and provide discussion questions.

Videos A comprehensive suite of ABC news videos, which address current topics such as education, energy, Federal Reserve policy, and business cycles, is available for classroom use. Video-specific exercises are available for instructor assignment.

AACSB and Learning Outcomes All end-of-chapter and Test Item File questions are tagged in two ways: to AACSB standards and to discipline-specific Learning Outcomes. These two separate tagging systems allow professors to build assessments around desired departmental and course outcomes and track results in MyEconLab's gradebook.

We are the authors of the MyEconLab content for *Foundations of Economics* and have worked hard to ensure that it is tightly integrated with the book's content and vision. For more information, visit the online demonstration at www.myeconlab.com.

MyEconLab Also Includes

- Enhanced Pearson eText, available within the online course materials and offline via an iPad app, allows instructors and students to highlight, bookmark, and take notes.
- Advanced Communication Tools enable students and instructors communication through email, discussion board, chat, and ClassLive.
- Customization options provide new and enhanced ways to share documents, add content, and rename menu items.
- Prebuilt courses offer a turn-key way for instructors to create a course that includes pre-built assignments distributed by chapter.
- Temporary Access for students who are awaiting financial aid provides a seventeen-day grace period of temporary access.
- One Place for students to access all their MyLab Courses. Students and instructors can register, create, and access all of their courses, regardless of discipline, from one convenient online location: www.pearsonmylab.com.

SUPPORT MATERIALS FOR INSTRUCTORS AND STUDENTS

Foundations of Economics is accompanied by the most comprehensive set of teaching and learning tools ever assembled. Each component of our package is organized by Checkpoint topic for a tight, seamless integration with both the textbook and the other components. In addition to authoring the MyEconLab and PowerPoint content, we have helped in the reviewing and revising of the Study Guide, Solutions Manual, Instructor's Manual, and Test Item Files to ensure that every element of the package achieves the consistency that students and teachers need.

Study Guide

Mark Rush of the University of Florida has prepared the Study Guide, which is available in both print and electronic formats in MyEconLab. It provides an expanded Chapter Checklist that enables the student to break the learning tasks down into smaller, bite-sized pieces; self-test materials; and additional practice problems. The Study Guide has been carefully coordinated with the text, MyEconLab, and the Test Item Files.

Solutions Manual

The Solutions Manual, written by Mark Rush, and checked for accuracy by Jeannie Gillmore, contains the solutions to all the Checkpoint Practice Problems and Chapter Checkpoint Problems and Applications. It is available for download in Word and PDF formats.

Instructor's Manual

The Instructor's Manual, written by Luke Armstrong and edited by Mark Rush, contains chapter outlines and road maps, additional exercises with solutions, a comprehensive Chapter Lecture resource, and a virtual encyclopedia of suggestions on how to enrich class presentation and use class time efficiently. Both the micro and macro portions have been updated to reflect changes in the main text as well as infused with a fresh and intuitive approach to teaching this course. It is available for download in Word and PDF formats.

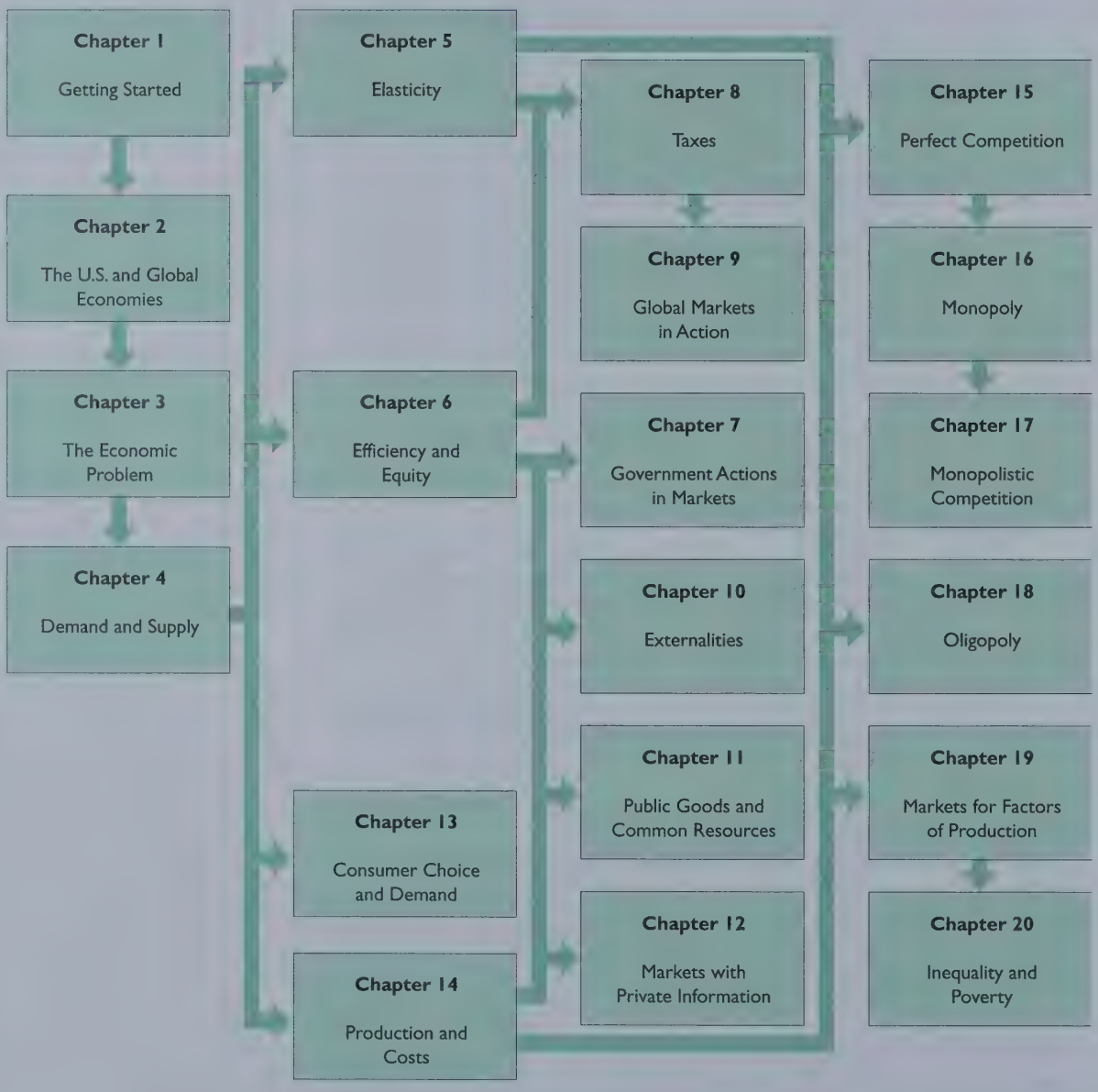
Three Test Item Files and TestGen

More than 12,000 multiple-choice, numerical, fill-in-the-blank, short answer, essay, and integrative questions make up the three Test Item Files that support *Foundations of Economics.* Mark Rush reviewed and edited questions from four dedicated principles instructors to form one of the most comprehensive testing systems on the market. Our microeconomics authors are Carol Dole (Jacksonville University); Luke Armstrong (Lee College); and Fola Odebunmi (Cypress College). Our macroeconomics questions were written by Carol Dole and Homer Guevara, Jr. (Northwest Vista College).The entire set of questions is available for download in Word, PDF, and TestGen formats.

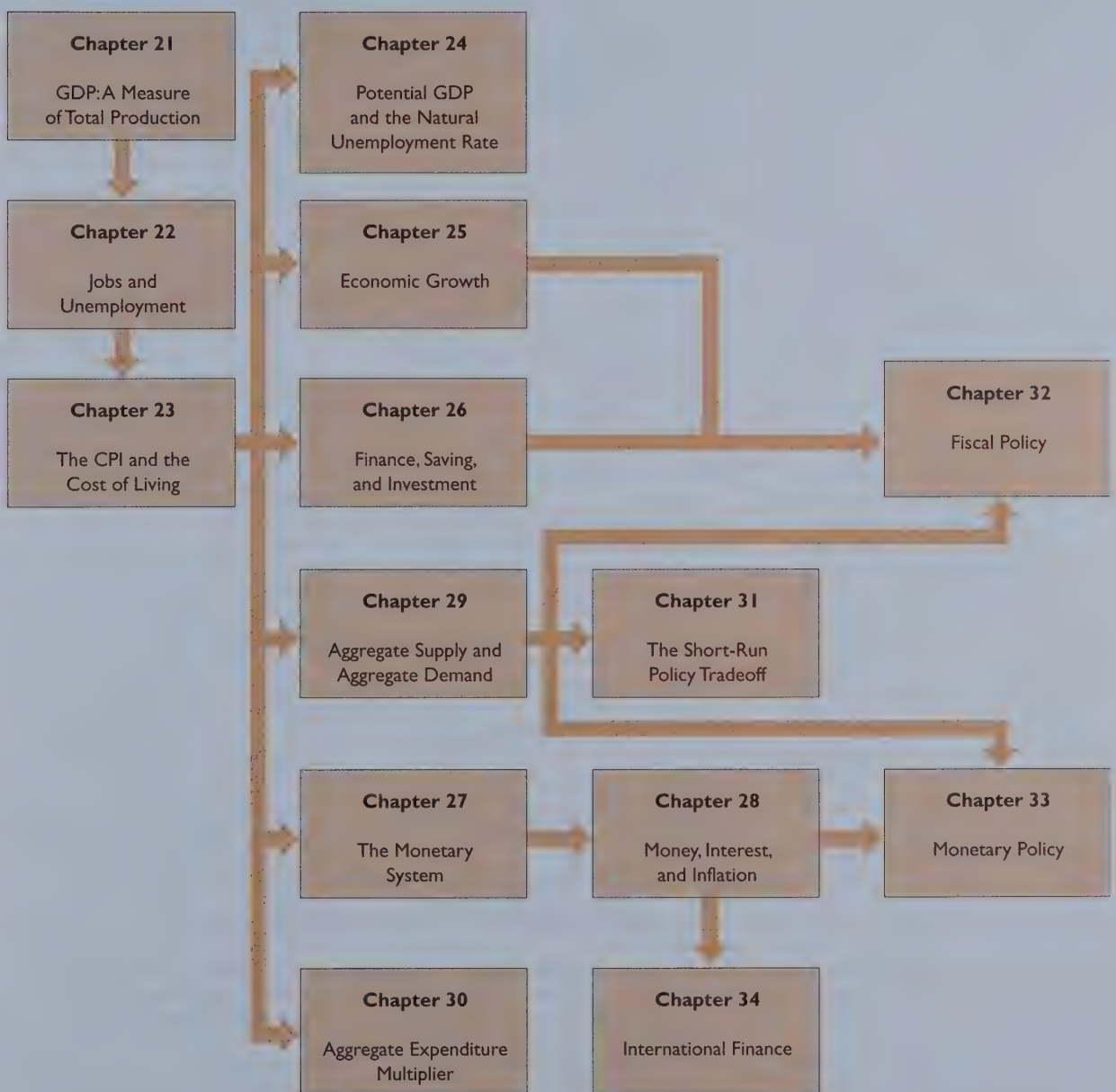
All three Test Item Files are available in test generator software (TestGen with QuizMaster). TestGen's graphical interface enables instructors to view, edit, and add questions; transfer questions to tests; and print different forms of tests. Instructors also have the option to reformat tests with varying fonts and styles,

FOUNDATIONS OF ECONOMICS: FLEXIBILITY CHART

Micro Flexibility



Macro Flexibility



Reviewers

Alfredo A. Romero Aguirre, North Carolina A&T State University
Seemi Ahmad, Dutchess Community College
William Aldridge, Shelton State Community College
Rashid B. Al-Hmoud, Texas Tech University
Neil Alper, Northeastern University
Nejat Anbarci, Deakin University
J.J. Arias, Georgia College & State University
Luke A. Armstrong, Lee College
Leland Ash, Skagit Valley College
Ali Ataiifar, Delaware County Community College
John Baffoe-Bonnie, Pennsylvania State University, Delaware County Campus
A. Paul Ballantyne, University of Colorado
Tyra D. Barrett, Pellissippi State Community College
Sue Bartlett, University of South Florida
Klaus Becker, Texas Tech University
Clive Belfield, Queen's College, City University of New York
William K. Bellinger, Dickinson College
John Bethune, Barton College
Gautam Bhattacharya, University of Kansas
Gerald W. Bialka, University of North Florida
David Bivin, Indiana University–Purdue University at Indianapolis
Geoffrey Black, Boise State University
Carey Anne Borkoski, Arundel Community College
Jurgen Brauer, Augusta State University
Greg Brock, Georgia Southern University
Barbara Brogan, Northern Virginia Community College
Bruce C. Brown, California State Polytechnic University, Pomona
Christopher Brown, Arkansas State University
James O. Brown, Delta State University
Brian Buckley, Clemson University
Donald Bumpass, Sam Houston State University
Seewoonundun Bunjun, East Stroudsburg University
Nancy Burnett, University of Wisconsin at Oshkosh
James L. Butkiewicz, University of Delaware
Barbara Caldwell, Saint Leo University
Bruce Caldwell, University of North Carolina, Greensboro
Joseph Calhoun, Florida State University
Robert Carlsson, University of South Carolina
Shawn Carter, Jacksonville State University
Regina Cassady, Valencia Community College
Jack Chambless, Valencia Community College
Joni Charles, Southwest Texas State University
Anoshua Chaudhuri, San Francisco State University
Robert Cherry, Brooklyn College
Chi-Young Choi, University of New Hampshire
Paul Cichello, Xavier University
Quentin Ciolfi, Brevard Community College
Victor V. Claar, Henderson State University
Jim Cobbe, Florida State University
John Cochran, University of Chicago
Mike Cohick, Collin County Community College
Ludovic Comeau, De Paul University
Carol Conrad, Cerro Coso Community College
Christopher Cornell, Vassar College
Richard Cornwall, University of California, Davis
Kevin Cotter, Wayne State University
Erik Craft, University of Richmond
Tom Creahan, Morehead State University
Elizabeth Crowell, University of Michigan at Dearborn
Susan Dadres, Southern Methodist University
David Davenport, McLennan Community College
Troy Davig, College of William and Mary
Jeffrey Davis, ITT Technical Institute (Utah)
Lewis Davis, Union College
Dennis Debrecht, Carroll College
Al DeCooke, Broward Community College
Vince DiMartino, University of Texas at San Antonio
Vernon J. Dobis, Minnesota State University–Moorhead
Carol Dole, Jacksonville University
Kathleen Dorsainvil, American University
John Dorsey, University of Maryland, College Park
Amrik Singh Dua, Mt. San Antonio College
Marie Duggan, Keene State College
Allen Dupont, North Carolina State University
David Eaton, Murray State University
Kevin J. Egan, University of Toledo
Harold W. Elder, University of Alabama
Harry Ellis, University of North Texas
Stephen Ellis, North Central Texas College
Carl Enomoto, New Mexico State University
Chuen-mei Fan, Colorado State University
Elena Ermolenko Fein, Oakton Community College
Gary Ferrier, University of Arkansas
Rudy Fichtenbaum, Wright State University
Donna K. Fisher, Georgia Southern University
Kaya Ford, Northern Virginia Community College
Robert Francis, Shoreline Community College
Roger Frantz, San Diego State University
Amanda S. Freeman, Kansas State University
Marc Fusaro, East Carolina University
Arthur Friedberg, Mohawk Valley Community College
Julie Gallaway, Southwest Missouri State University
Byron Gangnes, University of Hawaii
Gay GareschÈ, Glendale Community College
Neil Garston, California State University, Los Angeles

Lisa Geib-Gunderson, University of Maryland
Lisa M. George, City University of New York
Linda Ghent, Eastern Illinois University
Soma Ghosh, Bridgewater State College
Kirk Gifford, Ricks College
Scott Gilbert, Southern Illinois University
Maria Giuili, Diablo Valley Community College
Mark Gius, Quinnipiac College
Randall Glover, Brevard Community College
Stephan Gohmann, University of Louisville
Richard Gosselin, Houston Community College
John Graham, Rutgers University
Patricia E. Graham, University of Northern Colorado
Warren Graham, Tulsa Community College
Homer Guevara, Jr., Northwest Vista College
Osman Gulseven, North Carolina State University
Jang-Ting Guo, University of California, Riverside
Dennis Hammett, University of Texas at El Paso
Leo Hardwick, Macomb Community College
Mehdi Haririan, Bloomsburg University
Paul Harris, Camden County Community College
Mark Healy, William Rainey Harper College
Rey Hernandez-Julian, Metropolitan State College of Denver
Gus Herring, Brookhaven College
Michael Heslop, Northern Virginia Community College
Steven Hickerson, Mankato State University
Frederick Steb Hipple, East Tennessee State University
Lee Hoke, University of Tampa
Andy Howard, Rio Hondo College
Yu Hsing, Southeastern Louisiana University
Greg Hunter, California State Polytechnic University, Pomona
Matthew Hyle, Winona State University
Todd Idson, Boston University
Harvey James, University of Hartford
Russell Janis, University of Massachusetts at Amherst
Ricot Jean, Valencia College
Jay A. Johnson, Southeastern Louisiana University
Ted Joyce, City University of New York, Baruch College
Jonathan D. Kaplan, California State University, Sacramento
Arthur Kartman, San Diego State University
Chris Kauffman, University of Tennessee
Diane Keenan, Cerritos College
Brian Kench, University of Tampa
John Keith, Utah State University
Kristen Keith, University of Toledo
Joe Kerkvliet, Oregon State University
Randall Kesselring, Arkansas State University
Gary Kikuchi, University of Hawaii at Manoa
Douglas Kinnear, Colorado State University
Morris Knapp, Miami Dade Community College
Steven Koch, Georgia Southern University
Kate Krause, University of New Mexico
Stephan Kroll, California State University, Sacramento
Joyce Lapping, University of Southern Maine
Tom Larson, California State University, Los Angeles
Robert Lemke, Florida International University
J. Mark Leonard, University of Nebraska at Omaha
Tony Lima, California State University, Hayward
Joshua Long, Ivy Tech Community College
Kenneth Long, New River Community College
Noel Lotz, Middle Tennessee State University
Marty Ludlum, Oklahoma City Community College
Brian Lynch, Lake Land College
Michael Machiorlatti, Oklahoma City Community College
Roger Mack, De Anza College
Michael Magura, University of Toledo
Mark Maier, Glendale College
Svitlana Maksymenko, University of Pittsburgh
Paula Manns, Atlantic Cape Community College
Dan Marburger, Arkansas State University
Kathryn Marshall, Ohio State University
John V. Martin, Boise State University
Drew E. Mattson, Anoka-Ramsey Community College
Stephen McCafferty, Ohio State University
Thomas S. McCaleb, Florida State University
Katherine S. McCann, University of Delaware
William McLean, Oklahoma State University
Diego Mendez-Carbajo, Illinois Wesleyan University
Evelina Mengova, California State University, Fullerton
Thomas Meyer, Patrick Henry Community College
Meghan Millea, Mississippi State University
Michael Milligan, Front Range Community College
Jenny Minier, University of Miami
David Mitchell, Valdosta State University
Dr. Carl B. Montano, Lamar University
Christine Moser, Western Michigan University
William Mosher, Clark University
Mike Munoz, Northwest Vista College
John R. Mundy, St. Johns River State College
Kevin Murphy, Oakland University
Ronald Nate, Brigham Young University, Idaho
Nasrin Nazemzadeh, Rowan Cabarrus Community College
Michael Nelson, Texas A&M University
Rebecca Neumann, University of Wisconsin—Milwaukee
Charles Newton, Houston Community College Southwest
Melinda Nish, Salt Lake Community College
Lee Nordgren, Indiana University at Bloomington
Norman P. Obst, Michigan State University
Inge O'Connor, Syracuse University
William C. O'Connor, Western Montana College–University of Montana
Fola Odebunmi, Cypress College

Victor I. Oguledo, Florida A&M University
Charles Okeke, College of Southern Nevada
Lydia M. Ortega, St. Philip's College
P. Marcelo Oviedo, Iowa State University
Jennifer Pate, Ph.D., Loyola Marymount University
Sanjay Paul, Elizabethtown College
Ken Peterson, Furman University
Tim Petry, North Dakota State University
Charles Pflanz, Scottsdale Community College
Jonathon Phillips, North Carolina State University
Basharat Pitafi, Southern Illinois University
Anthony Plunkett, Harrison College
Paul Poast, Ohio State University
Greg Pratt, Mesa Community College
Fernando Quijano, Dickinson State University
Andy Radler, Butte Community College
Ratha Ramoo, Diablo Valley College
Karen Reid, University of Wisconsin, Parkside
Mary Rigdon, University of Texas, Austin
Helen Roberts, University of Illinois at Chicago
Greg Rose, Sacramento City College
Barbara Ross, Kapi'olani Community College
Elham Rouhani, Gwinnett Technical College
Jeffrey Rous, University of North Texas
June Roux, Salem Community College
Udayan Roy, Long Island University
Nancy C. Rumore, University of Louisiana–Lafayette
Mark Rush, University of Florida
Joseph Santos, South Dakota State University
Roland Santos, Lakeland Community College
Mark Scanlan, Stephen F. Austin State University
Ted Scheinman, Mount Hood Community College
Buffie Schmidt, Augusta State University
Jerry Schwartz, Broward Community College
Gautam Sethi, Bard College
Margaret Anne Shannon, Georgia Southern University
Mushtaq Sheikh, Union County College
Michelle Sheran-Andrews, University of North Carolina at Greensboro
Virginia Shingleton, Valparaiso University
Steven S. Shwiff, Texas A & M University—Commerce
Charles Sicotte, Rock Valley College
Issoufou Soumaila, Texas Tech University
Martin Spechler, Indiana University
Leticia Starkov, Elgin Community College
Stela Stefanova, University of Delaware
John Stiver, University of Connecticut
Richard W. Stratton, The University of Akron
Terry Sutton, Southeast Missouri State University
Janet M. Thomas, Bentley College
Donna Thompson, Brookdale Community College
Deborah Thorsen, Palm Beach State College
James Thorson, Southern Connecticut State University
Marc Tomljanovich, Colgate University
Cynthia Royal Tori, Valdosta State University
Ngoc-Bich Tran, San Jacinto College South
Nora Underwood, University of California, Davis
Jogindar S. Uppal, State University of New York
Va Nee L. Van Vleck, California State University, Fresno
Victoria Vernon, Empire State College / SUNY
Christian Weber, Seattle University
Ethel Weeks, Nassau Community College
Jack Wegman, Santa Rosa Junior College
Jason White, Northwest Missouri State University
Benjamin Widner, Colorado State University
Barbara Wiens-Tuers, Pennsylvania State University, Altoona
Katherine Wolfe, University of Pittsburgh
Kristen Wolfe, St. Johns River State College
William Wood, James Madison University
Ben Young, University of Missouri, Kansas City
Michael Youngblood, Rock Valley College
Bassam Yousif, Indiana State University
Sourushe Zandvakili, University of Cincinnati
Inske Zandvliet, Brookhaven College
Joachim Zietz, Middle Tennessee State University
David W. Zirkle, University of Virginia; Virginia Commonwealth University
Armand Zottola, Central Connecticut State University

You're in school!
Did you make the right decision?

1

Getting Started

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define economics and explain the kinds of questions that economists try to answer.
2. Explain the ideas that define the economic way of thinking.

1.1 DEFINITION AND QUESTIONS

We all want more than we can get. We want good health and long lives. We want spacious and comfortable homes. We want running shoes and jet skis. We want the time to enjoy our favorite sports, video games, novels, music, and movies; to travel to exotic places; and just to hang out with friends. Human wants exceed the resources available to satisfy them, and this fact is the source of all economic questions and problems.

Scarcity

Scarcity
The condition that arises because wants exceed the ability of resources to satisfy them.

Our inability to satisfy all our wants is called **scarcity**. The ability of each of us to satisfy our wants is limited by the time we have, the incomes we earn, and the prices we pay for the things we buy. These limits mean that everyone has unsatisfied wants. The ability of all of us as a society to satisfy our wants is limited by the productive resources that exist. These resources include the gifts of nature, our labor and ingenuity, and the tools and equipment that we have made.

Everyone, poor and rich alike, faces scarcity. A student wants Beyonce's latest album and a paperback but has only $10.00 in his pocket. He faces scarcity. Brad Pitt wants to spend a week in New Orleans discussing plans for his new eco-friendly housing and he also wants to spend the week promoting his new movie. He faces scarcity. The U.S. government wants to increase defense spending and cut taxes. It faces scarcity. An entire society wants improved health care, an Internet connection in every classroom, an ambitious space exploration program, clean lakes and rivers, and so on. Society faces scarcity.

Not only do I want a cracker—we all want a cracker!

© The New Yorker Collection 1985 Frank Modell from cartoonbank.com. All Rights Reserved.

Faced with scarcity, we must make choices. We must choose among the available alternatives. The student must choose the album or the paperback. Brad Pitt must choose New Orleans or promoting his new movie. The government must choose defense or tax cuts. And society must choose among health care, computers, space exploration, the environment, and so on. Even parrots face scarcity!

Economics Defined

Economics
The social science that studies the choices that individuals, businesses, governments, and entire societies make as they cope with *scarcity*, the *incentives* that influence those choices, and the arrangements that coordinate them.

Economics is the social science that studies the choices that individuals, businesses, governments, and entire societies make as they cope with *scarcity*, the *incentives* that influence those choices, and the arrangements that coordinate them.

The subject has two broad parts:

- Microeconomics, and
- Macroeconomics

Microeconomics

Microeconomics
The study of the choices that individuals and businesses make and the way these choices interact and are influenced by governments.

Microeconomics is the study of the choices that individuals and businesses make and the way these choices interact and are influenced by governments. Some examples of microeconomic questions are: Will you buy a 3-D television or a standard one? Will Nintendo sell more units of Wii if it cuts the price? Will a cut in the income tax rate encourage people to work longer hours? Will a hike in the gas tax encourage more people to drive hybrid or smaller automobiles? Are MP3 downloads killing CDs?

Macroeconomics

Macroeconomics is the study of the aggregate (or total) effects on the national economy and the global economy of the choices that individuals, businesses, and governments make. Some examples of macroeconomic questions are: Why did production and jobs expand slowly in the United States during 2010 and 2011? Why are incomes growing much faster in China and India than in the United States? Why are production and incomes stagnating in Japan? Why are Americans borrowing more than $2 billion a day from the rest of the world?

Macroeconomics
The study of the aggregate (or total) effects on the national economy and the global economy of the choices that individuals, businesses, and governments make.

Two big questions provide a useful summary of the scope of economics:

- How do choices end up determining *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services get produced?
- When do choices made in the pursuit of *self-interest* also promote the *social interest*?

What, How, and For Whom?

Goods and services are the objects and actions that people value and produce to satisfy human wants. Goods are *objects* that satisfy wants. Running shoes and ketchup are examples. Services are *actions* that satisfy wants. Haircuts and rock concerts are examples. We produce a dazzling array of goods and services that range from necessities such as food, houses, and health care to leisure items such as Blu-ray players and roller coaster rides.

Goods and services
The objects (goods) and the actions (services) that people value and produce to satisfy human wants.

What?

What determines the quantities of corn we grow, homes we build, and health-care services we produce? Sixty years ago, 25 percent of Americans worked on a farm. That number has shrunk to less than 3 percent today. Over the same period, the number of people who produce goods—in mining, construction, and manufacturing—has also shrunk, from 30 percent to 20 percent. The decrease in farming and the production of goods is matched by an increase in the production of services. How will these quantities change in the future as ongoing changes in technology make an ever-wider array of goods and services available to us?

How?

How are goods and services produced? In a vineyard in France, basket-carrying workers pick the annual grape crop by hand. In a vineyard in California, a huge machine and a few workers do the same job that a hundred grape pickers in France do. Look around you and you will see many examples of this phenomenon—the same job being done in different ways. In some stores, checkout clerks key in prices. In others, they use a laser scanner. One farmer keeps track of his livestock feeding schedules and inventories by using paper-and-pencil records, while another uses a computer. GM hires workers to weld auto bodies in some of its plants and uses robots to do the job in others.

Why do we use machines in some cases and people in others? Do mechanization and technological change destroy more jobs than they create? Do they make us better off or worse off?

In a California vineyard a machine and a few workers do the same job as a hundred grape pickers in France.

A doctor gets more of the goods and services produced than a nurse or a medical assistant gets.

For Whom?

For whom are goods and services produced? The answer to this question depends on the incomes that people earn and the prices they pay for the goods and services they buy. At given prices, a person who has a high income is able to buy more goods and services than a person who has a low income. Doctors earn much higher incomes than do nurses and medical assistants, so doctors get more of the goods and services produced than nurses and medical assistants get.

You probably know about many other persistent differences in incomes. Men, on average, earn more than women. Whites, on average, earn more than minorities. College graduates, on average, earn more than high school graduates. Americans, on the average, earn more than Europeans, who in turn earn more, on average, than Asians and Africans. But there are some significant exceptions. The people of Japan and Hong Kong now earn an average income similar to that of Americans. And there is a lot of income inequality throughout the world.

What determines the incomes we earn? Why do doctors earn larger incomes than nurses? Why do men earn more, on average, than women? Why do college graduates earn more, on average, than high school graduates? Why do Americans earn more, on average, than Africans?

Economics explains how the choices that individuals, businesses, and governments make and the interactions of those choices end up determining *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services get produced. In answering these questions, we have a deeper agenda in mind. We're not interested in just knowing how many Blu-ray players get produced, how they get produced, and who gets to enjoy them. We ultimately want to know the answer to the second big economic question that we'll now explore.

When Is the Pursuit of Self-Interest in the Social Interest?

Every day, you and 311 million other Americans, along with 7 billion people in the rest of the world, make economic choices that result in *"what," "how,"* and *"for whom"* goods and services are produced.

Are the goods and services produced, and the quantities in which they are produced, the right ones? Do the scarce resources get used in the best possible way? Do the goods and services that we produce go to the people who benefit most from them?

Self-Interest and the Social Interest

Self-interest
The choices that are best for the individual who makes them.

Social interest
The choices that are best for society as a whole.

Choices that are the best for the individual who makes them are choices made in the pursuit of **self-interest**. Choices that are the best for society as a whole are said to be in the **social interest**. The social interest has two dimensions: *efficiency* and *equity*. We'll explore these concepts in later chapters. For now, think of efficiency as being achieved by baking the biggest possible pie, and think of equity as being achieved by sharing the pie in the fairest possible way.

You know that your own choices are the best ones for you—or at least you *think* they're the best at the time that you make them. You use your time and other resources in the way that makes most sense to you. But you don't think much about how your choices affect other people. You order a home delivery pizza because you're hungry and want to eat. You don't order it thinking that the delivery person or the cook needs an income. You make choices that are in your self-interest—choices that you think are best for you.

When you act on your economic decisions, you come into contact with thousands of other people who produce and deliver the goods and services that you decide to buy or who buy the things that you sell. These people have made their own decisions—what to produce and how to produce it, whom to hire or whom to work for, and so on.

Like you, everyone else makes choices that they think are best for them. When the pizza delivery person shows up at your home, he's not doing you a favor. He's earning his income and hoping for a good tip.

Could it be possible that when each one of us makes choices that are in our own best interest—our self-interest—it turns out that these choices are also the best for society as a whole—in the social interest?

Much of the rest of this book helps you to learn what economists know about this question and its answer. To help you start thinking about the question, we're going to illustrate it with four topics that generate heated discussion in today's world. You're already at least a little bit familiar with each one of them. They are

- Globalization
- The Information Age
- Climate change
- A Social Security time bomb

Globalization

Globalization—the expansion of international trade and the production of components and services by firms in other countries—has been going on for centuries. But in recent years, its pace accelerated. Microchips, satellites, and fiber-optic cables have lowered the cost of communication. A video-conference of people who live 10,000 miles apart has become an everyday and easily affordable event.

This explosion of communication has globalized production decisions. When Nike produces more sports shoes, people in Malaysia get more work. When Steven Spielberg wants an animation sequence for a new movie, programmers in New Zealand write the code. And when China Airlines wants a new airplane, Americans who work for Boeing build it.

Workers in Asia make our shoes.

Globalization is bringing rapid income growth, especially in Asia. China, already the world's second largest economy, will become the largest in the 2020s.

But globalization is leaving some people behind. Jobs in manufacturing and routine services are shrinking in the United States and Europe. And the nations of Africa and parts of South America are not sharing in the prosperity that globalization is bringing to other parts of the world.

The owners of multinational firms benefit from lower production costs and consumers benefit from low-cost imported goods. But don't displaced American workers lose? And doesn't even the worker in Malaysia, who sews your new shoes for a few cents an hour, also lose? Is globalization in the social interest, or does globalization just benefit some at the expense of others?

The Information Age

We are living at a time of extraordinary economic change that has been called the *Information Revolution*. This name suggests a parallel with the *Industrial Revolution* that occurred around 1800 and the *Agricultural Revolution* of 12,000 years ago.

The computer chip has transformed our lives.

The changes that occurred during the last 25 years were based on one major technology: the microprocessor or computer chip. The spin-offs from faster and

cheaper computing have been widespread in telecommunications, music and movie recording, and the automation of millions of routine tasks that previously required human decision and action. You encounter these automated tasks every day when you check out at the grocery store, use an ATM, or call a government department or large business. All the new products and processes and the low-cost computing power that made them possible resulted from people pursuing their self-interest. They did not result from any grand design or government plan.

When Gordon Moore set up Intel and started making chips, and Bill Gates quit Harvard to set up Microsoft, they weren't thinking how much easier it would be for you to turn in your essay on time if you had a better computer. Moore and Gates and thousands of other entrepreneurs were in hot pursuit of the big payoffs that many of them achieved. Yet their actions made many other people better off. They advanced the social interest.

But were resources used in the best possible way? Or did Intel and Microsoft set their prices too high and put their products out of reach for too many people? And did they really need to be rewarded with billions of dollars?

Climate Change

Human activity is raising the Earth's temperature.

The Earth is getting hotter and the ice at the two poles is melting. Since the late nineteenth century, the Earth's surface temperature has increased about 1 degree Fahrenheit, and close to a half of that increase occurred over the past 25 years.

Most climate scientists believe that the current warming has come at least in part from human economic activity—from self-interested choices—and that, if left unchecked, the warming will bring large future economic costs.

Are the choices that each of us makes to use energy damaging the social interest? What needs to be done to make our choices serve the social interest? Would the United States joining with other nations to limit carbon emissions serve the social interest? What other measures might be introduced?

A Social Security Time Bomb

A Social Security time bomb is ticking as benefits grow faster than contributions.

Every year since 2001, the U.S. government has run a budget deficit. On average, the government has spent $1.8 billion a day more than it has received in taxes. The government's debt has increased each day by that amount. Over the ten years 2002 through 2011, government debt increased by $6.5 trillion. Your personal share of this debt is $21,600.

Also, since 2001, Americans bought goods and services from the rest of the world in excess of what foreigners have bought from the United States to the tune of $5.7 trillion. To pay for these goods and services, Americans borrowed from the rest of the world.

These large deficits are just the beginning of an even bigger problem. From about 2019 onwards, the retirement and health-care benefits to which older Americans are entitled are going to cost increasingly more than current taxes can cover. With no changes in taxes or benefit rates, the deficit and debt will swell ever higher.

Deficits and the debts they create cannot persist indefinitely, and debts must somehow be repaid. They will most likely be repaid by you, not by your parents. When we make our voter choices and our choices to buy from or sell to the rest of the world, we pursue our self-interest. Do our choices serve the social interest?

We'll return to all these questions at various points throughout this text.

CHECKPOINT 1.1

Define economics and explain the kinds of questions that economists try to answer.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 1.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Economics studies choices that arise from one fact. What is that fact?
2. Provide three examples of wants in the United States today that are especially pressing but not satisfied.
3. In the following three news items, find examples of the *what*, *how*, and *for whom* questions: "With more research, we will cure cancer"; "A good education is the right of every child"; "Congress raises taxes to curb the deficit."
4. How does a new Starbucks in Beijing, China, influence self-interest and the social interest?
5. How does Facebook influence self-interest and the social interest?

In the News

1. According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS), high-paying jobs in health care and jobs in leisure, hospitality, and education will expand quickly over the next five years. How does the BLS expect *what* and for *whom* goods and services are produced to change in the next five years?
2. In May 2011, businesses cut hiring because higher prices of gas pushed up costs and higher food prices forced consumers to cut spending.

   Source: CNNMoney, June 4, 2011

   Did businesses and consumers act in their self-interest or the social interest?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The fact is scarcity—human wants exceed the resources available.
2. Security from international terrorism, cleaner air in our cities, better public schools. (You can perhaps think of some more.)
3. More research is a *how* question, and a cure for cancer is a *what* question. Good education is a *what* question, and every child is a *for whom* question. Raising taxes is a *for whom* question.
4. Decisions made by Starbucks are in Starbucks' self-interest but they serve the self-interest of its customers and so contribute to the social interest.
5. Facebook serves the self-interest of its investors, users, and advertisers. It also serves the social interest by enabling people to share information.

Solutions to In the News

1. The BLS expects the goods and services produced by workers in health care, leisure, hospitality, and education to increase. For whom goods and services are produced are the people who work in these expanding industries.
2. Businesses made their decisions on the basis of their costs, so they acted in their self-interest. Consumers' decisions to cut spending was made on the basis of the prices they face, so they acted in their self-interest.

1.2 THE ECONOMIC WAY OF THINKING

The definition of economics and the kinds of questions that economists try to answer give you a flavor of the scope of economics. But they don't tell you how economists *think* about these questions and how they go about seeking answers to them. You're now going to see how economists approach their work.

We'll break this task into two parts. First, we'll explain the ideas that economists use to frame their view of the world. These ideas will soon have you thinking like an economist. Second, we'll look at economics both as a social science and as a policy tool that governments, businesses, and *you* can use.

Economic Ideas

Six ideas define the *economic way of thinking*:

- A choice is a *tradeoff*
- People make *rational choices* by comparing benefits and costs.
- *Benefit* is what you gain from something.
- *Cost* is what you *must give up* to get something.
- Most choices are "*how much*" choices made at the *margin*.
- Choices respond to *incentives*.

A Choice Is a Tradeoff

Because we face scarcity, we must make choices. And when we make a choice, we select from the available alternatives. For example, you can spend Saturday night studying for your next economics test or having fun with your friends, but you can't do both of these activities at the same time. You must choose how much time to devote to each. Whatever choice you make, you could have chosen something else.

Tradeoff
An exchange—giving up one thing to get something else.

You can think about your choices as tradeoffs. A **tradeoff** is an exchange—giving up one thing to get something else. When you choose how to spend your Saturday night, you face a tradeoff between studying and hanging out with your friends.

Rational Choice

The most basic idea of economics is that in making choices, people act rationally. A **rational choice** is one that uses the available resources to best achieve the objective of the person making the choice.

Rational choice
A choice that uses the available resources to best achieve the objective of the person making the choice.

Only the wants and preferences of the person making a choice are relevant to determine its rationality. For example, you might like chocolate ice cream more than vanilla ice cream, but your friend prefers vanilla. So it is rational for you to choose chocolate and for your friend to choose vanilla.

A rational choice might turn out not to have been the best choice after the event. For example, a farmer might decide to plant wheat rather than soybeans. Then, when the crop comes to market, the price of soybeans might be much higher than the price of wheat. The farmer's choice was rational when it was made, but subsequent events made it less profitable than the alternative choice.

The idea of rational choice provides an answer to the first economic question: What goods and services will be produced and in what quantities? The answer is: The goods and services that people rationally choose to buy.

But how do people choose rationally? Why have most people chosen to buy Microsoft's Windows operating system rather than another? Why do more people today choose an iPhone rather than a BlackBerry? Why has the U.S. government chosen to fund the building of an interstate highway system and not an interstate high-speed railroad system?

The answer is that we make rational choices by comparing *benefits* and *costs*.

Benefit: What You Gain

Benefit
The benefit of something is the gain or pleasure that it brings.

The **benefit** from something is the gain or pleasure that it brings and is determined by personal *preferences*—by what a person likes and dislikes and the intensity of those feelings. If you get a huge kick out of "Guitar Hero," that video game brings you a large benefit. And if you have little interest in listening to Yo Yo Ma playing a Vivaldi cello concerto, that activity brings you a small benefit.

Some benefits are large and easy to identify, such as the benefit that you get from being in school. A big piece of that benefit is the goods and services that you will be able to enjoy with the boost to your earning power when you graduate. Some benefits are small, such as the benefit you receive from a slice of pizza.

Economists measure benefit as the most that a person is *willing to give up* to get something. You are willing to give up a lot to be in school. But you would give up only an iTunes download for a slice of pizza.

Cost: What You *Must* Give Up

Opportunity cost
The opportunity cost of something is the best thing you *must* give up to get it.

The **opportunity cost** of something is the best alternative that must be given up to get it.

To make the idea of opportunity cost concrete, think about your opportunity cost of being in school. It has two components: the things you can't afford to buy and the things you can't do with your time.

Start with the things you can't afford to buy. You've spent all your income on tuition, residence fees, books, and a laptop. If you weren't in school, you would have spent this money on tickets to ball games and movies and all the other things that you enjoy. But that's only the start of the things you can't afford to buy because you're in school. You've also given up the opportunity to get a job and buy the things that you could afford with your higher income. Suppose that the best job you could get if you weren't in school is working at Citibank as a teller

For these students, the opportunity cost of being in school is worth bearing.

For the full-time bank teller, the opportunity cost of remaining in school is too high.

earning $24,000 a year. Another part of your opportunity cost of being in school is all the things that you could buy with that extra $24,000.

As you well know, being a student eats up many hours in class time, doing homework assignments, preparing for tests, and so on. To do all these school activities, you must give up many hours of what would otherwise be leisure time spent with your friends.

So the opportunity cost of being in school is the best alternative things that you can't afford and don't have the spare time to enjoy. You might want to put a dollar value on that cost or you might just list all the items that make up the opportunity cost.

The examples of opportunity cost that we've just considered are *all-or-nothing costs*—you're either in school or not in school. Most situations are not like this one. They involve choosing *how much* of an activity to do.

How Much? Choosing at the Margin

You can allocate the next hour between studying and instant messaging your friends, but the choice is not all or nothing. You must decide how many minutes to allocate to each activity. To make this decision, you compare the benefit of a little bit more study time with its cost—you make your choice *at the margin*.

Margin
A choice on the margin is a choice that is made by comparing *all* the relevant alternatives systematically and incrementally.

Other words for "margin"are "border" or "edge." You can think of a choice at the margin as one that adjusts the border or edge of a plan to determine the best course of action. Making a choice at the **margin** means comparing the relevant alternatives systematically and incrementally.

Marginal Cost

Marginal cost
The opportunity cost that arises from a one-unit increase in an activity. The marginal cost of something is what you *must* give up to get *one additional* unit of it.

The opportunity cost of a one-unit increase in an activity is called **marginal cost**. The marginal cost of something is what you *must* give up to get *one additional* unit of it. Think about your marginal cost of going to the movies for a third time in a week. Your marginal cost of seeing the movie is what you must give up to see that one additional movie. It is *not* what you give up to see all three movies. The reason is that you've already given up something for two movies, so you don't count that cost as resulting from the decision to see the third movie.

The marginal cost of any activity increases as you do more of it. You know that going to the movies decreases your study time and lowers your grade. Suppose that seeing a second movie in a week lowers your grade by five percentage points. Seeing a third movie will lower your grade by more than five percentage points. Your marginal cost of moviegoing is increasing as you see more movies.

Marginal Benefit

Marginal benefit
The benefit that arises from a one-unit increase in an activity. The marginal benefit of something is *measured* by what you *are willing* to give up to get *one additional* unit of it.

The benefit of a one-unit increase in an activity is called **marginal benefit**. Marginal benefit is what you gain from having *one more* unit of something. But the marginal benefit from something is *measured* by what you *are willing* to give up to get that *one additional* unit of it.

A fundamental feature of marginal benefit is that it diminishes. Think about your marginal benefit from movies. If you've been studying hard and haven't seen a movie this week, your marginal benefit from seeing your next movie is large. But if you've been on a movie binge this week, you now want a break and your marginal benefit from seeing your next movie is small.

Because the marginal benefit from a movie decreases as you see more movies, you are willing to give up less to see one additional movie. For example, you know that going to the movies decreases your study time and lowers your grade.

You pay for seeing a movie with a lower grade. You might be willing to give up ten percentage points to see your first movie in a week, but you won't be willing to take such a big hit on your grade to see a second movie in a week. Your willingness to pay to see a movie decreases as the number of movies increases.

Making a Rational Choice

So, will you go to the movies for that third time in a week? If the marginal cost of the movie is less than the marginal benefit from it, your rational choice will be to see the third movie. If the marginal cost exceeds the marginal benefit, your rational choice will be to spend the evening studying. As long as the marginal benefit from something exceeds or equals its marginal cost, our choice is rational and our scarce resources are used to make us as well off as possible.

Choices Respond to Incentives

Incentive
A reward or a penalty—a "carrot" or a "stick"—that encourages or discourages an action.

The choices we make depend on the incentives we face. An **incentive** is a reward or a penalty—a "carrot" or a "stick"—that encourages or discourages an action. We respond positively to "carrots" and negatively to "sticks." The carrots are marginal benefits; the sticks are marginal costs. A change in marginal benefit or a change in marginal cost changes the incentives that we face and leads us to change our actions.

Most students believe that the payoff from studying just before a test is greater than the payoff from studying a month before a test. In other words, as a test date approaches, the marginal benefit from studying increases and the incentive to study becomes stronger. For this reason, we observe an increase in study time and a decrease in leisure pursuits during the last few days before a test. And the more important the test, the greater is this effect.

A change in marginal cost also changes incentives. For example, suppose that last week, you found your course work easy and you scored 100 percent on your practice quizzes. You figured that the marginal cost of taking an evening off to enjoy a movie was low and that your grade on the next test would not suffer, so you had a movie feast. But this week the going has gotten tough. You're just not getting it, and your practice test scores are low. If you take off even one evening, your grade on next week's test will suffer. The marginal cost of seeing a movie is now high so you decide to give the movies a miss.

A central idea of economics is that by observing *changes in incentives*, we can predict how *choices change*.

Changes in marginal benefit and marginal cost change the incentive to study or to enjoy a movie.

Economics as Social Science

Economists try to understand and predict the effects of economic forces by using the *scientific method* first developed by physicists. The scientific method is a commonsense way of systematically checking what works and what doesn't work.

A scientist begins with a question or a puzzle about cause and effect arising from some observed facts. An economist might wonder why computers are getting cheaper and more computers are being used. Are computers getting cheaper because more people are buying them? Or are more people buying computers because they are getting cheaper? Or is some third factor causing both the price of a computer to fall and the quantity of computers bought to increase?

Economic Models

Economic model
A description of some feature of the economic world that includes only those features assumed necessary to explain the observed facts.

A scientist's second step is to build a model that provides a possible answer to the question of interest. All sciences use models. An **economic model** is a description of some feature of the economic world that includes only those features assumed necessary to explain the observed facts.

A model is analogous to a map. If you want to know about valleys and mountains, you use a physical map; if you're studying nations, you use a political map; if you want to drive from *A* to *B* in an unfamiliar city, you use a street map; and if you're a telephone engineer who is wanting to fix a broken connection, you use a map of the wires and tubes under the streets.

Sometimes, in the natural sciences, models are physical objects such as a plastic model of an atom or DNA. But models are also mathematical and often can be visualized in graphs. You can imagine a Lego model of an economy but you can also see that such a model wouldn't be very revealing. So in economics we use mathematical and graph-based models.

The questions we posed about the price and quantity of computers are answered by an economic model called the "demand and supply model" that you will study in Chapter 4.

Check Models Against Facts

A scientist's third step is to check the proposed model against the facts. Physicists can check whether their models correspond to the facts by doing experiments. For example, with a particle accelerator, a physicist can test a model of the structure of an atom.

Economists have a harder time than physicists but they still approach the task in a scientific manner. To check an economic model against the facts, economists use natural experiments, statistical investigations, and economic experiments.

A natural experiment is a situation that arises in the ordinary course of economic life in which the one factor of interest is different and other things are equal (or similar). For example, Canada has higher unemployment benefits than the United States, but the people in the two nations are similar. So to study the effect of unemployment benefits on the unemployment rate, economists might compare the United States with Canada.

Correlation
The tendency for the values of two variables to move together in a predictable and related way.

A statistical investigation looks for a **correlation**—a tendency for the values of two variables to move together (either in the same direction or in opposite directions) in a predictable and related way. For example, cigarette smoking and lung cancer are correlated. Sometimes a correlation shows a causal influence of one variable on the other. Smoking does cause lung cancer. But sometimes the direction of causation is hard to determine.

EYE on the PAST

Adam Smith and the Birth of Economics as a Social Science

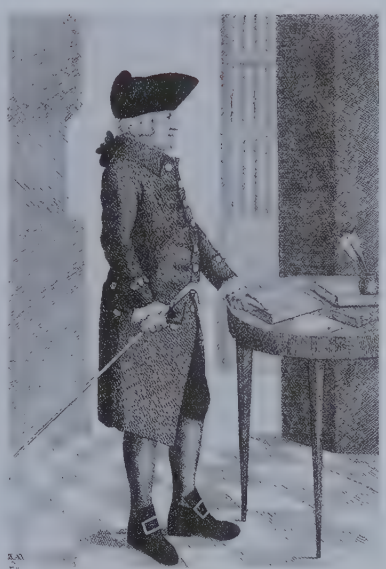
Many people had written about economics before Adam Smith did, but he made economics a social science.

Born in 1723 in Kirkcaldy, a small fishing town near Edinburgh, Scotland, Smith was the only child of the town's customs officer. Lured from his professorship (he was a full professor at 28) by a wealthy Scottish duke who gave him a pension of £300 a year—ten times the average income at that time—Smith devoted ten years to writing his masterpiece, *An Inquiry into the Nature and Causes of the Wealth of Nations,* published in 1776.

Why, Adam Smith asked in that book, are some nations wealthy while others are poor? He was pondering these questions at the height of the Industrial Revolution. During these years, new technologies were applied to the manufacture of textiles, iron, transportation, and agriculture.

Adam Smith answered his questions by emphasizing the role of the division of labor and free markets. To illustrate his argument, he used the example of a pin factory. He guessed that one person, using the hand tools available in the 1770s, might make 20 pins a day. Yet, he observed, by using those same hand tools but breaking the process into a number of individually small operations in which people specialize—by the division of labor—ten people could make a staggering 48,000 pins a day. One draws out the wire, another straightens it, a third cuts it, a fourth points it, a fifth grinds it. Three specialists make the head, and a fourth attaches it. Finally, the pin is polished and packaged.

But a large market is needed to support the division of labor: One factory employing ten workers would need to sell more than 15 million pins a year to stay in business!



An economic experiment puts people in a decision-making situation and varies the influence of one factor at a time to discover how they respond.

Disagreement: Normative versus Positive

Economists sometimes disagree about assumptions and models. They also sometimes disagree about what policy should be followed. Some disagreements can be settled by appealing to further facts, but others cannot.

Disagreements that can't be settled by facts are *normative statements*—statements about what *ought to be.* These statements depend on values and cannot be tested. The statement "We *ought to* cut back on our use of coal" is a normative statement. You may agree or disagree with it, but you can't test it. It doesn't assert a fact that can be checked. Economists as social scientists try to steer clear of normative statements.

Disagreements that *can* be settled by facts are *positive statements*—statements about *what is.* A positive statement might be right or wrong and we can discover which by careful observation of facts. "Our planet is warming because of the quantity of coal that we're burning" is a positive statement. It could be right or wrong, and it can be tested.

Economics as Policy Tool

Economics is useful, and you don't have to be an economist to think like one and to use the insights of economics as a policy tool. The subject provides a way of approaching problems in all aspects of our lives:

- Personal
- Business
- Government

Personal Economic Policy

Should you take out a student loan? Should you get a weekend job? Should you buy a used car or a new one? Should you rent an apartment or take out a loan and buy a condominium? Should you pay off your credit card balance or make just the minimum payment? How should you allocate your time between study, working for a wage, caring for family members, and having fun? How should you allocate your time between studying economics and your other subjects? Should you leave school after getting a bachelor's degree or should you go for a master's or a professional qualification?

All these questions involve a marginal benefit and a marginal cost. Although some of the numbers might be hard to pin down, you will make more solid decisions if you approach these questions with the tools of economics.

Business Economic Policy

Should Sony make only flat panel televisions and stop making conventional ones? Should Texaco get more oil and gas from the Gulf of Mexico or from Alaska? Should Palm outsource its online customer services to India or run the operation from California? Should Marvel Studios produce *Spider-Man 4*, a sequel to *Spider-Man 3*? Can Microsoft compete with Google in the search engine business? Can eBay compete with the surge of new Internet auction services? Is Alex Rodriguez really worth $32,000,000 to the New York Yankees?

Like personal economic questions, these business questions involve the evaluation of a marginal benefit and a marginal cost. Some of the questions require a broader investigation of the interactions of individuals and businesses. But again, by approaching these questions with the tools of economics and by hiring economists as advisers, businesses can make better decisions.

Government Economic Policy

How can California balance its budget? Should the federal government cut taxes or raise them? How can the tax system be simplified? Should people be permitted to invest their Social Security money in stocks that they pick themselves? Should Medicaid and Medicare be extended to the entire population? Should there be a special tax to penalize corporations that send jobs overseas? Should cheap foreign imports of furniture and textiles be limited? Should the farms that grow tomatoes and sugar beets receive a subsidy? Should water be transported from Washington and Oregon to California?

These government policy questions call for decisions that involve the evaluation of a marginal benefit and a marginal cost and an investigation of the interactions of individuals and businesses. Yet again, by approaching these questions with the tools of economics, governments can make better decisions.

Notice that all the policy questions we've just posed involve a blend of the positive and the normative. Economics can't help with the normative part—the objective. But for a given objective, economics provides a method of evaluating alternative solutions. That method is to evaluate the marginal benefits and marginal costs and to find the solution that brings the greatest available gain.

EYE on the BENEFIT AND COST OF SCHOOL

Did You Make the Right Decision?

Did you make the right decision when you chose school over looking for a full-time job? Or, if you have a full-time job and you're studying in what would be your leisure time, did you make the right choice? Does school provide a big enough benefit to justify its cost?

The Benefits of School

Being in school has many benefits but they fall into two broad categories: present enjoyment and a higher future income.

You can easily make a list of all the fun things you do with your friends in school that would be harder to do if you didn't have these friends and opportunities for social interaction that school provides.

Putting a dollar value on the items in your list would be hard but it is possible to put a dollar value, or rather an expected dollar value, on the other benefit—a higher future income.

On average, a high-school graduate earns $40,000 a year. A graduate with a bachelor's degree earns, on average, $76,000 a year.

So by being in school, you can expect (on average) to increase your annual earnings by $36,000 a year.

This number is likely to grow as the economy becomes more productive and prices and earnings rise.

The Costs of School

The costs of being in school for a full-time student are:

- Tuition
- Books
- Other study costs
- Forgone earnings

For a student in state university in her or his home state, tuition runs at around $7,000 per year.

Books and other study costs run at around $1,000 per year.

Forgone earnings are the wage of a high-school graduate in a starter job. That is around $24,000 a year.

So the total annual cost is about $32,000 or $96,000 for a 3-year degree and $128,000 for a 4-year degree.

Benefit-Cost Balance

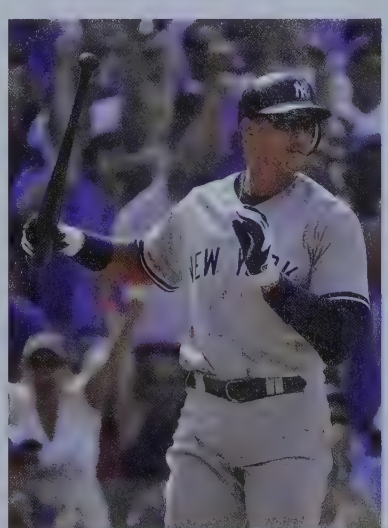
The benefit of extra earnings alone brings in $36,000 a year or $360,000 in 10 years and $1,440,000 in a working life of 40 years.

The costs are incurred in the present and the benefits accrue in the future, so we need to lower the benefits to be able to compare them properly with the costs. You'll learn how to do that later in your economics course. But even allowing for the fact that the costs are now and the benefits in the future, the net gain is big!

Is School Always Best?

Alex Rodriguez, the highest earning baseball player ($32,000,000 in 2011) ever, turned down a scholarship at the University of Miami and chose instead to sign with the Seattle Mariners right out of high school. With a 0.311 batting average, he quickly rose through the player ranks and played his first Major League game at the age of 18.

Alex Rodriguez's opportunity cost of a college education vastly exceeded the benefit he could expect to get from it. So Alex, like you, made the right decision.



MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 1.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 1.2

Explain the ideas that define the economic way of thinking.

Practice Problems

Every week, Kate plays tennis for two hours, and her grade on each math test is 70 percent. Last week, after playing for two hours, Kate considered playing for another hour. She decided to play for another hour and cut her study time by one hour. But last week, her math grade fell to 60 percent. Use this information to work Problems **1** to **4**.

1. What was Kate's opportunity cost of the third hour of tennis?
2. Given that Kate played the third hour, what can you conclude about her marginal benefit and marginal cost of the second hour of tennis?
3. Was Kate's decision to play the third hour of tennis rational?
4. Did Kate make her decision on the margin?

In the News

The *New York Times* reports that cruise lines have been slashing prices and cruise sales are up. It says this surge of interest tells us that despite the uncertain economic climate, people clearly need more fun in their lives and view their vacations as a valuable and necessary part of it.

1. In deciding whether to take a cruise would you face a tradeoff?
2. How would you make a rational choice about taking a cruise?
3. What would be the marginal benefit from a cruise? What would be the marginal cost of a cruise?
4. Why would you expect a lower price to increase the number of people who decide to take a cruise?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Kate's opportunity cost of the third hour of tennis was the drop in her grade of ten percentage points.
2. The marginal benefit from the second hour of tennis must have exceeded the marginal cost of the second hour because Kate chose to play the third hour.
3. If marginal benefit exceeded marginal cost, Kate's decision was rational.
4. Kate made her decision on the margin because she compared the benefit and cost of one more hour (marginal benefit and marginal cost).

Solutions to In the News

1. You would face a tradeoff because you would have to forgo something else that you might otherwise do with your resources (time and budget).
2. You would make a rational choice by comparing the marginal benefit from a cruise and the marginal cost of taking one.
3. The marginal benefit from a cruise is the most you are willing to pay for one. The marginal cost is what you would have to pay to take a cruise.
4. With a lower price, more people will have a marginal benefit that exceeds the price and they will chose to take a cruise.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1. Define economics and explain the kinds of questions that economists try to answer.

- Economics is the social science that studies the choices that we make as we cope with scarcity and the incentives that influence and reconcile our choices.
- Microeconomics is the study of individual choices and interactions, and macroeconomics is the study of the national economy and global economy.
- The first big question of economics is: How do the choices that people make end up determining *what, how,* and *for whom* goods and services are produced?
- The second big question is: When do choices made in the pursuit of *self-interest* also promote the *social interest*?

2. Explain the ideas that define the economic way of thinking.

- Six ideas define the economic way of thinking:
  1. A choice is a *tradeoff.*
  2. People make *rational* choices by comparing benefits and costs .
  3. *Benefit* is what you gain when you get something (measured by what you *are willing to* give up to get it).
  4. *Cost* is what you *must* give up to get something.
  5. A "how much" choice is made on the *margin* by comparing *marginal benefit* and *marginal cost.*
  6. Choices respond to *incentives.*
- Economists use the *scientific method* to try to understand how the economic world works. They create economic models and test them using natural experiments, statistical investigations, and economic experiments.
- Economics is a tool for personal, business, and government decisions.

Key Terms

Benefit, 9
Correlation, 12
Economic model, 12
Economics, 2
Goods and services, 3
Incentive, 11
Macroeconomics, 3
Margin, 10
Marginal benefit, 10
Marginal cost, 10
Microeconomics, 2
Opportunity cost, 9
Rational choice, 8
Scarcity, 2
Self-interest, 4
Social interest, 4
Tradeoff, 8

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 1 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Provide three examples of scarcity that illustrate why even the 1,210 billionaires in the world face scarcity.
2. Label each entry in List 1 as dealing with a microeconomic topic or a macroeconomic topic. Explain your answer.

LIST 1

- Local car sales in India grow at their slowest pace in two years.
- Coffee prices rocket.
- Globalization has reduced African poverty.
- The government must cut its deficit.
- Apple sells 2 million iPhones a month.

Use the following information to work Problems **3** to **6**.

The Social Network had world-wide box office receipts of $225 million. The movie had a production budget of about $70 million and additional marketing costs of about $50 million. Creating a successful movie brings pleasure to millions, generates work for thousands, and makes a few rich.

3. What contribution does a movie like *The Social Network* make to coping with scarcity? When you buy a ticket to see a movie in a theater, are you buying a good or a service?
4. Who decides whether a movie is going to be a blockbuster? How do you think the creation of a blockbuster movie influences *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services are produced?
5. What are some of the components of marginal cost and marginal benefit that the producer of a movie faces?
6. Suppose that Jesse Eisenberg had been offered a bigger and better part in another movie and that to hire him for *The Social Network*, the producer had to double Jesse's pay. What incentives would have changed? How might the changed incentives have changed the choices that people made?
7. Pam, Pru, and Pat are deciding how they will celebrate the New Year. Pam prefers to take a cruise, is happy to go to Hawaii, but does not want to go skiing. Pru prefers to go skiing, is happy to go to Hawaii, but does not want to take a cruise. Pat prefers to go to Hawaii or to take a cruise but does not want to go skiing. Their decision is to go to Hawaii. Is this decision rational? What is the opportunity cost of the trip to Hawaii for each of them? What is the benefit that each gets?
8. Label each of the entries in List 2 as a positive or a normative statement.
9. What is the social interest? Distinguish it from self-interest. In your answer give an example of self-interest and an example of social interest.

LIST 2

- Low-income people pay too much for housing.
- The number of U.S. farms has decreased over the past 50 years.
- Toyota expands parts production in the United States.
- Imports from China are swamping U.S. department stores.
- The population of rural United States is declining.

Use the following information to work Problems **10** to **12**.

Hundreds line up for 5 p.m. Eminem ticket giveaway

Hundreds of Eminem fans lined up to get a free ticket to the rapper's secret concert. Although tickets would be released at 5 p.m., people lined up all day. Eminem will release his new album *Relapse* (his first in 5 years) on the same day.

Source: *Detroit Free Press*, May 18, 2009

10. Eminem is giving away tickets to his show in a 1,500-seat theater in Detroit. What is free and what is scarce? Explain your answer.
11. What do you think Eminem's incentive is to give a free show? Was his decision made in self-interest or in the social interest? Explain.
12. Because all the tickets were free, was the marginal benefit from the concert zero? Explain your answer.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Which of the following are components of the opportunity cost of being a full-time student? The cost of:
   - Tuition and books
   - Residence and a meal plan
   - A subscription to the *New Yorker* magazine
   - The income a student will earn after graduating
2. Think about the following news items and label each as involving a *what*, *how*, or *for whom* question:
   - Today, most stores use computers to keep their inventory records, whereas 20 years ago most stores used paper records.
   - Health-care professionals and drug companies recommend that Medicaid drug rebates be made available to everyone in need.
   - A doubling of the gas tax might lead to a better public transit system.
3. On Friday June 16, 2011, the headlines in List 1 appeared in *The Wall Street Journal*. Classify each headline as a signal that the news article is about a microeconomic topic or a macroeconomic topic. Explain your answers.
4. Your school decides to increase the intake of new students next year. To make its decision, what economic concepts would it have considered? Would the school have used the "economic way of thinking" in reaching its decision? Would the school have made its decision on the margin?
5. Provide two examples of monetary and two examples of non-monetary incentives, a carrot and a stick of each, that government policies use to influence behavior.
6. Think about each of the items in List 2 and explain how they affect incentives and might change the choices that people make:
7. Does the decision to make a blockbuster movie mean that some other more desirable activities get fewer resources than they deserve? Is your answer positive or normative? Explain your answer.
8. Provide two examples of economics being used as a tool by each of a student, a business, and a government. Classify your examples as dealing with microeconomic topics and macroeconomic topics.

LIST 1

- Apple Opens Locker for Songs.
- U.S. Household Debt Falls.
- Indian Carriers Set to Order 60 Airbus Planes.
- U.S. Trade Gap Narrows.

LIST 2

- A hurricane hits Central Florida.
- The World Series begins tonight but a storm warning is in effect for the area around the stadium.
- The price of a personal computer falls to $50.
- Unrest in the Middle East sends the price of gas to $5 a gallon.

Use the following news clip to work Problems 9 to 12.

Obama will drive up miles-per-gallon requirements

Obama's revision of auto-emission and fuel-economy standards will require automakers to boost fuel economy to 35.5 miles per gallon by 2016, notching up 5% each year from 2012, to limit the amount of carbon dioxide cars can emit.

Source: *USA Today*, May 18, 2009

9. What are two benefits of the new miles-per-gallon requirements? Are these benefits in someone's self-interest or in the social interest?
10. What are two benefits of the new auto-emission standards?
11. What costs associated with the new miles-per-gallon requirements arise from decisions made in self-interest and in the social interest?
12. What costs associated with the new auto-emission standards arise from decisions made in self-interest and in the social interest?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 1 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Which of the following describes the reason why scarcity exists?

A. Governments make bad economic decisions.
B. The gap between the rich and the poor is too wide.
C. Wants exceed the resources available to satisfy them.
D. There is too much unemployment.

2. Which of the following defines economics?
Economics is the social science that studies _____.

A. the best way of eliminating scarcity
B. the choices made to cope with scarcity, how incentives influence those choices, and how the choices are coordinated
C. how money is created and used
D. the inevitable conflict between self-interest and the social interest

3. Of the three big questions, *what*, *how*, and *for whom*, which of the following is an example of a *how* question?

A. Why do doctors and lawyers earn high incomes?
B. Why don't we produce more small cars and fewer gas guzzlers?
C. Why do we use machines rather than migrant workers to pick grapes?
D. Why do college football coaches earn more than professors?

4. Which of the following is not a key idea in the economic way of thinking?

A. People make rational choices by comparing costs and benefits.
B. Poor people are discriminated against and should be treated more fairly.
C. A rational choice is made at the margin.
D. Choices respond to incentives.

5. A rational choice is _____.

A. the best thing you must forgo to get something
B. what you are willing to forgo to get something
C. made by comparing marginal benefit and marginal cost
D. the best for society

6. Which of the following best illustrates your marginal benefit from studying?

A. The knowledge you gain from studying 2 hours a night for a month
B. The best things forgone by studying 2 hours a night for a month
C. What you are willing to give up to study for one additional hour
D. What you must give up to be able to study for one additional hour

7. The scientific method uses models to _____.

A. clarify normative disagreements
B. avoid the need to study real questions
C. replicate all the features of the real world
D. focus on those features of reality assumed relevant for understanding a cause and effect relationship

8. Which of the following is a positive statement?

A. We should stop using corn to make ethanol because it is raising the cost of food.
B. You will get the most out of college life if you play a sport once a week.
C. Competition among cell phone providers across the borders of Canada, Mexico, and the United States has driven roaming rates down.
D. Bill Gates ought to spend more helping to eradicate malaria in Africa.

APPENDIX: MAKING AND USING GRAPHS

When you have completed your study of this appendix, you will be able to

1. Interpret graphs that display data.
2. Interpret the graphs used in economic models.
3. Define and calculate slope.
4. Graph relationships among more than two variables.

Basic Idea

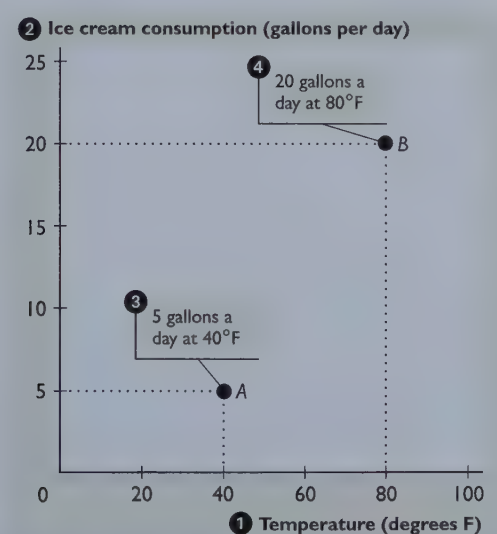
A graph represents a quantity as a distance and enables us to visualize the relationship between two variables. To make a graph, we set two lines called *axes* perpendicular to each other, like those in Figure A1.1. The vertical line is called the *y*-axis, and the horizontal line is called the *x*-axis. The common zero point is called the *origin*. In Figure A1.1, the *x*-axis measures temperature in degrees Fahrenheit. A movement to the right shows an increase in temperature, and a movement to the left shows a decrease in temperature. The *y*-axis represents ice cream consumption, measured in gallons per day.

To make a graph, we need a value of the variable on the *x*-axis and a corresponding value of the variable on the *y*-axis. For example, if the temperature is 40°F, ice cream consumption is 5 gallons a day at point *A* in Figure A1.1. If the temperature is 80°F, ice cream consumption is 20 gallons a day at point *B* in Figure A1.1. Graphs like that in Figure A1.1 can be used to show any type of quantitative data on two variables.

FIGURE A1.1

Making a Graph

MyEconLab Animation



All graphs have axes that measure quantities as distances.

1. The horizontal axis (*x*-axis) measures temperature in degrees Fahrenheit. A movement to the right shows an increase in temperature.
2. The vertical axis (*y*-axis) measures ice cream consumption in gallons per day. A movement upward shows an increase in ice cream consumption.
3. Point *A* shows that 5 gallons of ice cream are consumed on a day when the temperature is 40°F.
4. Point *B* shows that 20 gallons of ice cream are consumed on a day when the temperature is 80°F.

Interpreting Data Graphs

Scatter diagram
A graph of the value of one variable against the value of another variable.

A **scatter diagram** is a graph of the value of one variable against the value of another variable. It is used to reveal whether a relationship exists between two variables and to describe the relationship. Figure A1.2 shows two examples.

Figure A1.2(a) shows the relationship between expenditure and income. Each point shows expenditure per person and income per person in the United States in a given year from 2000 to 2010. The points are "scattered" within the graph. The label on each point shows its year. The point marked 04 shows that in 2004, income per person was $28,990 and expenditure per person was $27,401. This scatter diagram reveals that as income increases, expenditure also increases.

Figure A1.2(b) shows the relationship between the percentage of Americans who own a cell phone and the average monthly cell phone bill. This scatter diagram reveals that as the cost of using a cell phone falls, the number of cell phone subscribers increases.

Time-series graph
A graph that measures time on the *x*-axis and the variable or variables in which we are interested on the *y*-axis.

A **time-series graph** measures time (for example, months or years) on the *x*-axis and the variable or variables in which we are interested on the *y*-axis. Figure A1.2(c) shows an example. In this graph, time (on the *x*-axis) is measured in years, which run from 1980 to 2010. The variable that we are interested in is the price of coffee, and it is measured on the *y*-axis.

A time-series graph conveys an enormous amount of information quickly and easily, as this example illustrates. It shows when the value is

1. High or low. When the line is a long way from the *x*-axis, the price is high, as it was in 2008. When the line is close to the *x*-axis, the price is low, as it was in 1993.
2. Rising or falling. When the line slopes upward, as in 1994, the price is rising. When the line slopes downward, as in 1998, the price is falling.
3. Rising or falling quickly or slowly. If the line is steep, then the price is rising or falling quickly. If the line is not steep, the price is rising or falling slowly. For example, the price rose quickly in 1994 and slowly in 1984. The price fell quickly in 1998 and slowly in 2003.

Trend
A general tendency for the value of a variable to rise or fall over time.

A time-series graph also reveals whether the variable has a trend. A **trend** is a general tendency for the value of a variable to rise or fall over time. You can see that the price of coffee had a general tendency to rise from 1980 to the late 1990s. That is, although the price rose and fell, it had a general tendency to rise.

With a time-series graph, we can compare different periods quickly. Figure A1.2(c) shows that the period after 1990 was different from the period before 1990. The price of coffee jumped during the early 1990s, remained high for a number of years, then fell quickly before rising again to a new high. This graph conveys a wealth of information, and it does so in much less space than we have used to describe only some of its features.

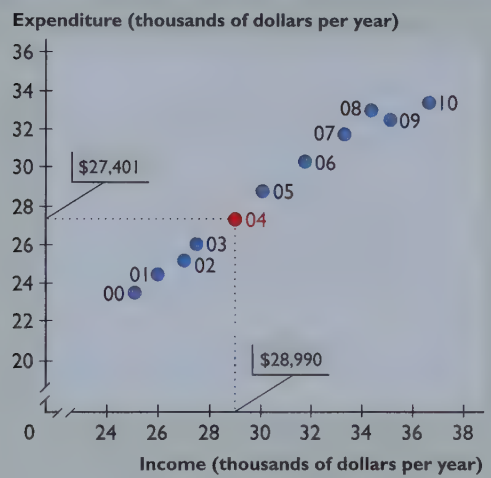
Cross-section graph
A graph that shows the values of an economic variable for different groups in a population at a point in time.

A **cross-section graph** shows the values of an economic variable for different groups in a population at a point in time. Figure A1.2(d) is an example of a cross-section graph. It shows the percentage of people who participate in selected sports activities in the United States. This graph uses bars rather than dots and lines, and the length of each bar indicates the participation rate. Figure A1.2(d) enables you to compare the participation rates in these ten sporting activities. And you can do so much more quickly and clearly than by looking at a list of numbers.

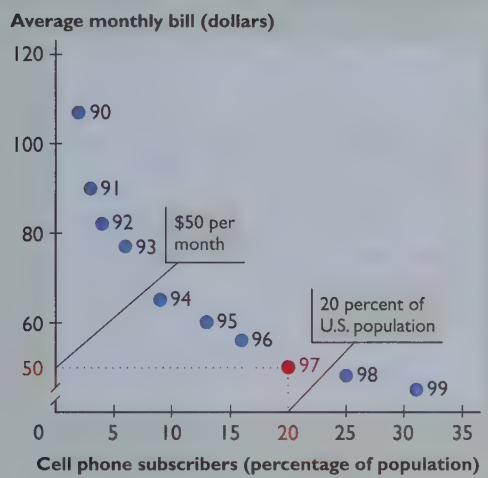
FIGURE A1.2

Data Graphs

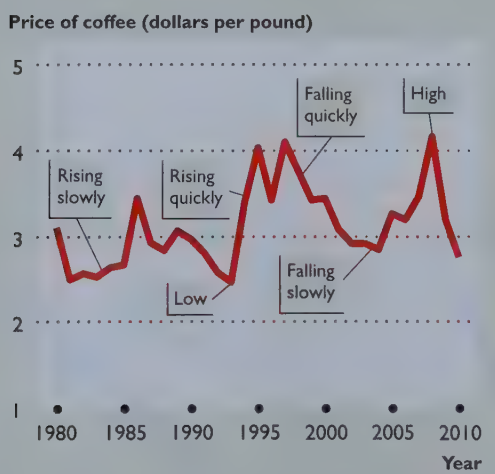
MyEconLab Animation



(a) Scatter Diagram: Expenditure and income



(b) Scatter Diagram: Subscribers and cost



(c) Time Series: The price of coffee

(d) Cross Section: Participation in selected sports activities

A scatter diagram reveals the relationship between two variables. In part (a), as income increases, expenditure almost always increases. In part (b), as the monthly cell phone bill falls, the percentage of people who own a cell phone increases.

A time-series graph plots the value of a variable on the *y*-axis against time on the *x*-axis. Part (c) plots the price of coffee each year from 1980 to 2010. The graph shows when the price of coffee was high and low, when it increased and decreased, and when it changed quickly and changed slowly.

A cross-section graph shows the value of a variable across the members of a population. Part (d) shows the participation rate in the United States in each of ten sporting activities.

Interpreting Graphs Used in Economic Models

We use graphs to show the relationships among the variables in an economic model. An *economic model* is a simplified description of the economy or of a component of the economy such as a business or a household. It consists of statements about economic behavior that can be expressed as equations or as curves in a graph. Economists use models to explore the effects of different policies or other influences on the economy in ways similar to those used to test model airplanes in wind tunnels and models of the climate.

Positive relationship or direct relationship
A relationship between two variables that move in the same direction.

Linear relationship
A relationship that graphs as a straight line.

Figure A1.3 shows graphs of the relationships between two variables that move in the same direction. Such a relationship is called a **positive relationship** or **direct relationship**.

Part (a) shows a straight-line relationship, which is called a **linear relationship**. The distance traveled in 5 hours increases as the speed increases. For example, point *A* shows that 200 miles are traveled in 5 hours at a speed of 40 miles an hour. And point *B* shows that the distance traveled in 5 hours increases to 300 miles if the speed increases to 60 miles an hour.

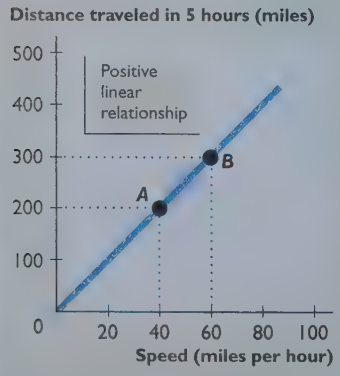
Part (b) shows the relationship between distance sprinted and recovery time (the time it takes the heart rate to return to its normal resting rate). An upward-sloping curved line that starts out quite flat but then becomes steeper as we move along the curve away from the origin describes this relationship. The curve slopes upward and becomes steeper because the extra recovery time needed from sprinting another 100 yards increases. It takes 5 minutes to recover from sprinting 100 yards but 15 minutes to recover from sprinting 200 yards.

Part (c) shows the relationship between the number of problems worked by a student and the amount of study time. An upward-sloping curved line that starts out quite steep and becomes flatter as we move away from the origin shows this

FIGURE A1.3

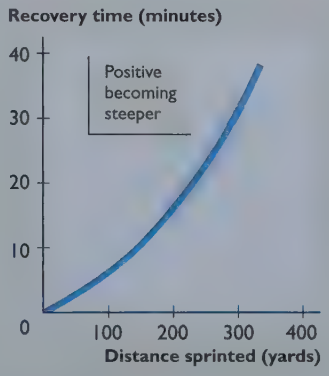
Positive (Direct) Relationships

MyEconLab Animation



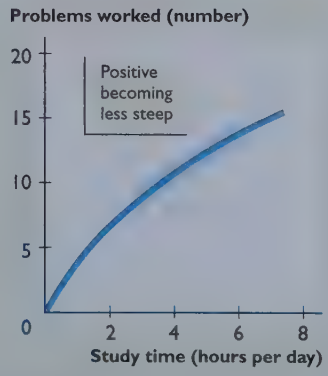
(a) Positive linear relationship

Part (a) shows that as speed increases, the distance traveled in a given number of hours increases along a straight line.



(b) Positive becoming steeper

Part (b) shows that as the distance sprinted increases, recovery time increases along a curve that becomes steeper.



(c) Positive becoming less steep

Part (c) shows that as study time increases, the number of problems worked increases along a curve that becomes less steep.

relationship. Study time becomes less effective as you increase the hours worked and become more tired.

Figure A1.4 shows relationships between two variables that move in opposite directions. Such a relationship is called a **negative relationship** or **inverse relationship**.

Negative relationship or inverse relationship
A relationship between two variables that move in opposite directions.

Part (a) shows the relationship between the number of hours spent playing squash and the number of hours spent playing tennis when the total number of hours available is five. One extra hour spent playing tennis means one hour less playing squash and vice versa. This relationship is negative and linear.

Part (b) shows the relationship between the cost per mile traveled and the length of a journey. The longer the journey, the lower is the cost per mile. But as the journey length increases, the fall in the cost per mile becomes smaller. This feature of the relationship is shown by the fact that the curve slopes downward, starting out steep at a short journey length and then becoming flatter as the journey length increases. This relationship arises because some of the costs, such as auto insurance, are fixed, and as the journey length increases, the fixed costs are spread over more miles.

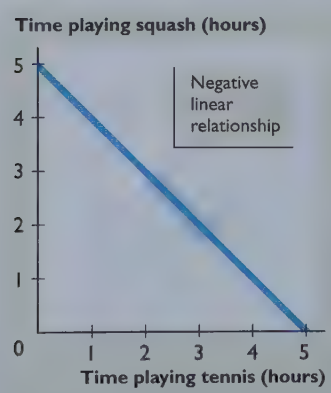
Part (c) shows the relationship between the amount of leisure time and the number of problems worked by a student. Increasing leisure time produces an increasingly large reduction in the number of problems worked. This relationship is a negative one that starts out with a gentle slope at a small number of leisure hours and becomes steeper as the number of leisure hours increases. This relationship is a different view of the idea shown in Figure A1.3 (c).

Many relationships in economic models have a maximum or a minimum. For example, firms try to make the largest possible profit and to produce at the lowest possible cost. Figure A1.5 shows relationships that have a maximum or a minimum.

FIGURE A1.4

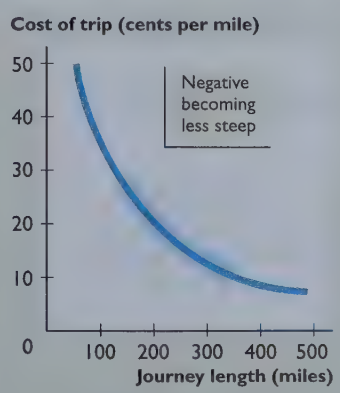
Negative (Inverse) Relationships

MyEconLab Animation



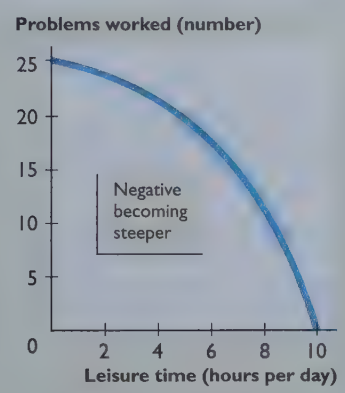
(a) Negative linear relationship

Part (a) shows that as the time playing tennis increases, the time playing squash decreases along a straight line.



(b) Negative becoming less steep

Part (b) shows that as the journey length increases, the cost of the trip falls along a curve that becomes less steep.



(c) Negative becoming steeper

Part (c) shows that as leisure time increases, the number of problems worked decreases along a curve that becomes steeper.

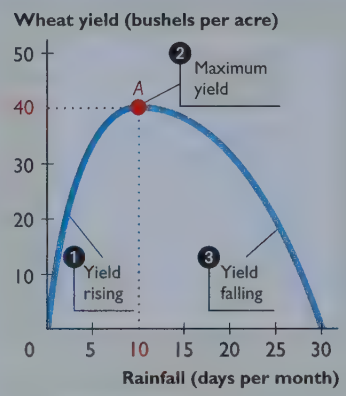
FIGURE A1.5

Maximum and Minimum Points

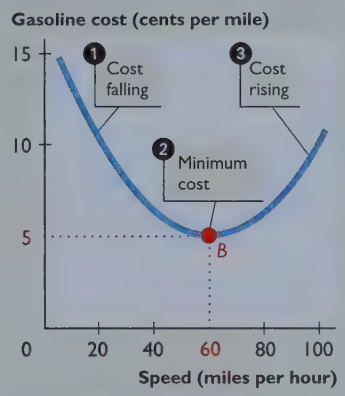
MyEconLab Animation

In part (a), as the rainfall increases, the curve ❶ slopes upward as the yield per acre rises, ❷ is flat at point *A*, the maximum yield, and then ❸ slopes downward as the yield per acre falls.

In part (b), as the speed increases, the curve ❶ slopes downward as the cost per mile falls, ❷ is flat at the minimum point *B*, and then ❸ slopes upward as the cost per mile rises.



(a) Relationship with a maximum



(b) Relationship with a minimum

Part (a) shows a relationship that starts out sloping upward, reaches a maximum, and then slopes downward. Part (b) shows a relationship that begins sloping downward, falls to a minimum, and then slopes upward.

Finally, there are many situations in which, no matter what happens to the value of one variable, the other variable remains constant. Sometimes we want to show two variables that are unrelated in a graph. Figure A1.6 shows two graphs in which the variables are unrelated.

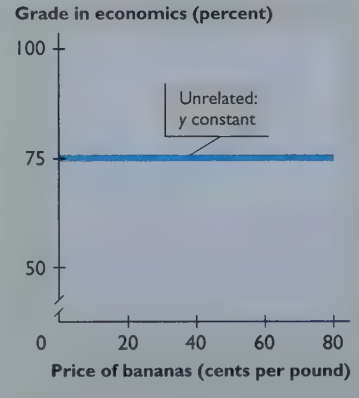
FIGURE A1.6

Variables That Are Unrelated

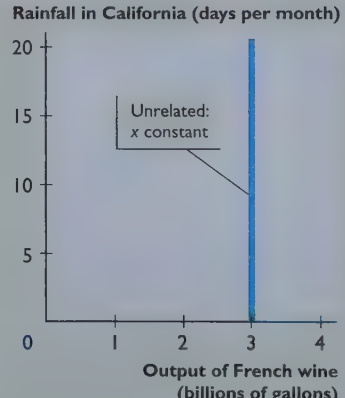
MyEconLab Animation

In part (a), as the price of bananas increases, the student's grade in economics remains at 75 percent. These variables are unrelated, and the curve is horizontal.

In part (b), the vineyards of France produce 3 billion gallons of wine no matter what the rainfall is in California. These variables are unrelated, and the curve is vertical.



(a) Unrelated: y constant



(b) Unrelated: x constant

The Slope of a Relationship

We can measure the influence of one variable on another by the slope of the relationship. The **slope** of a relationship is the change in the value of the variable measured on the y-axis divided by the change in the value of the variable measured on the x-axis. We use the Greek letter Δ (delta) to represent "change in." So Δy means the change in the value of y, and Δx means the change in the value of x. The slope of the relationship is

Slope
The change in the value of the variable measured on the y-axis divided by the change in the value of the variable measured on the x-axis.

$$\Delta y \div \Delta x$$

If a large change in y is associated with a small change in x, the slope is large and the curve is steep. If a small change in y is associated with a large change in x, the slope is small and the curve is flat.

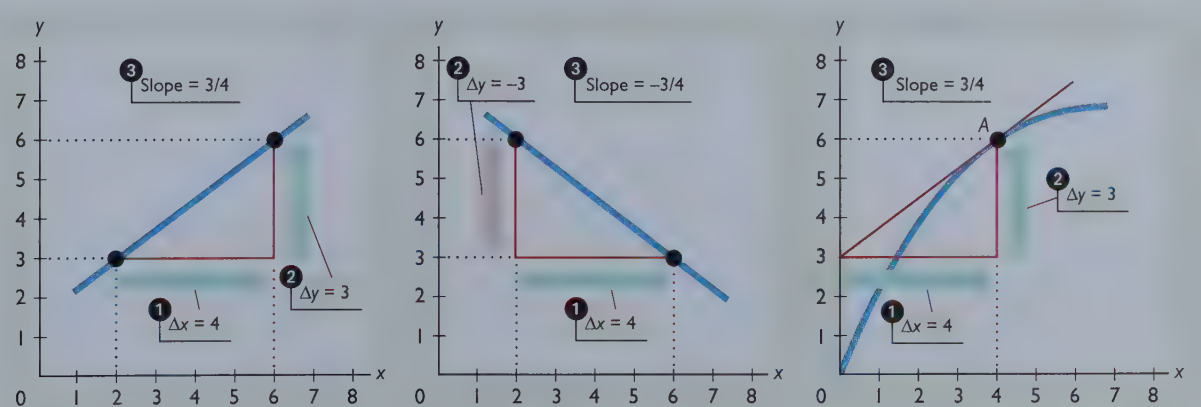
Figure A1.7 shows you how to calculate slope. The slope of a straight line is the same regardless of where on the line you calculate it—the slope is constant. In part (a), when x increases from 2 to 6, y increases from 3 to 6. The change in x is 4—that is, Δx is 4. The change in y is 3—that is, Δy is 3. The slope of that line is 3/4. In part (b), when x increases from 2 to 6, y *decreases* from 6 to 3. The change in y is *minus* 3—that is, Δy is -3 The change in x is plus 4—that is, Δx is 4. The slope of the curve is $-3/4$.

In part (c), we calculate the slope at a point on a curve. To do so, place a ruler on the graph so that it touches point A and no other point on the curve, then draw a straight line along the edge of the ruler. The slope of this straight line is the slope of the curve at point A. This slope is 3/4.

FIGURE A1.7

Calculating Slope

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Positive slope

In part (a), ❶ when Δx is 4, ❷ Δy is 3, so ❸ the slope ($\Delta y \div \Delta x$) is 3/4.

(b) Negative slope

In part (b), ❶ when Δx is 4, ❷ Δy is -3, so ❸ the slope ($\Delta y \div \Delta x$) is $-3/4$.

(c) Slope at a point

In part (c), the slope of the curve at point A equals the slope of the red line. ❶ When Δx is 4, ❷ Δy is 3, so ❸ the slope ($\Delta y \div \Delta x$) is 3/4.

Relationships Among More Than Two Variables

All the graphs that you have studied so far plot the relationship between two variables as a point formed by the x and y values. But most of the relationships in economics involve relationships among many variables, not just two. For example, the amount of ice cream consumed depends on the price of ice cream and the temperature. If ice cream is expensive and the temperature is low, people eat much less ice cream than when ice cream is inexpensive and the temperature is high. For any given price of ice cream, the quantity consumed varies with the temperature; and for any given temperature, the quantity of ice cream consumed varies with its price.

Figure A1.8 shows a relationship among three variables. The table shows the number of gallons of ice cream consumed per day at various temperatures and ice cream prices. How can we graph these numbers?

To graph a relationship that involves more than two variables, we use the *ceteris paribus* assumption.

Ceteris Paribus

The Latin phrase *ceteris paribus* means "other things remaining the same." Every laboratory experiment is an attempt to create *ceteris paribus* and isolate the relationship of interest. We use the same method to make a graph.

Figure A1.8(a) shows an example. This graph shows what happens to the quantity of ice cream consumed when the price of ice cream varies while the temperature remains constant. The curve labeled 70°F shows the relationship between ice cream consumption and the price of ice cream if the temperature is 70°F. The numbers used to plot that curve are those in the first and fourth columns of the table in Figure A1.8. For example, if the temperature is 70°F, 10 gallons are consumed when the price is $2.75 a scoop and 18 gallons are consumed when the price is $2.25 a scoop. The curve labeled 90°F shows the relationship between consumption and the price when the temperature is 90°F.

We can also show the relationship between ice cream consumption and temperature while the price of ice cream remains constant, as shown in Figure A1.8(b). The curve labeled $2.75 shows how the consumption of ice cream varies with the temperature when the price of ice cream is $2.75 a scoop. The numbers used to plot that curve are those in the fourth row of the table in Figure A1.8. For example, at $2.75 a scoop, 10 gallons are consumed when the temperature is 70°F and 20 gallons are consumed when the temperature is 90°F. A second curve shows the relationship when the price of ice cream is $2.00 a scoop.

Figure A1.8(c) shows the combinations of temperature and price that result in a constant consumption of ice cream. One curve shows the combinations that result in 10 gallons a day being consumed, and the other shows the combinations that result in 7 gallons a day being consumed. A high temperature and a high price lead to the same consumption as a lower temperature and a lower price. For example, 10 gallons of ice cream are consumed at 90°F and $3.25 a scoop, at 70°F and $2.75 a scoop, and at 50°F and $2.50 a scoop.

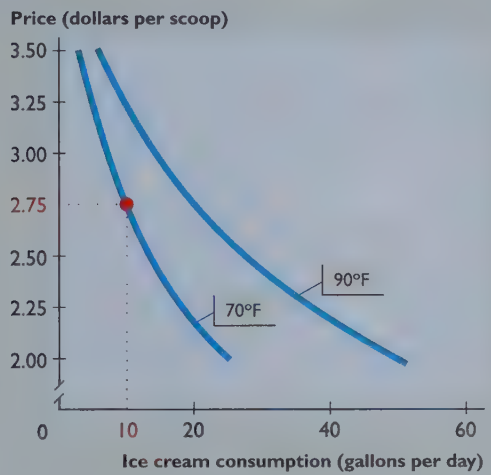
With what you've learned about graphs in this Appendix, you can move forward with your study of economics. There are no graphs in this textbook that are more complicated than the ones you've studied here.

FIGURE A1.8

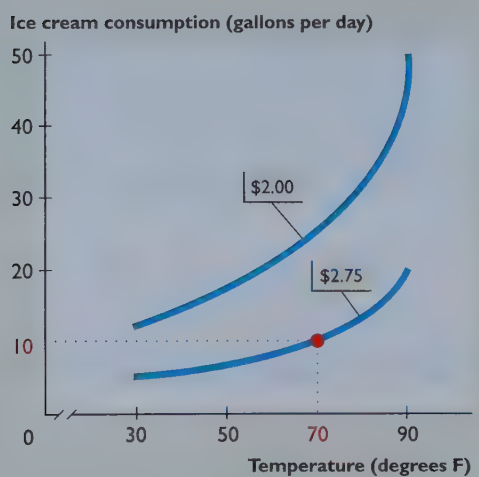
Graphing a Relationship Among Three Variables

MyEconLab Animation

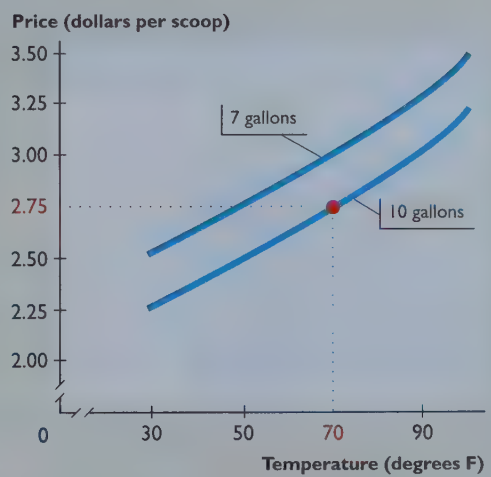
Price (dollars per scoop)	Ice cream consumption (gallons per day) 30°F	50°F	70°F	90°F
2.00	12	18	25	50
2.25	10	12	18	37
2.50	7	10	13	27
2.75	5	7	10	20
3.00	3	5	7	14
3.25	2	3	5	10
3.50	1	2	3	6



(a) Price and consumption at a given temperature



(b) Temperature and consumption at a given price



(c) Temperature and price at a given consumption

The table tells us how many gallons of ice cream are consumed at different prices and different temperatures. For example, if the price is $2.75 a scoop and the temperature is 70°F, 10 gallons of ice cream are consumed. This set of values is highlighted in the table and each part of the figure.

Part (a) shows the relationship between price and consumption when temperature is held constant. One curve holds temperature at 90°F, and the other at 70°F.

Part (b) shows the relationship between temperature and consumption when price is held constant. One curve holds the price at $2.75 a scoop, and the other at $2.00 a scoop.

Part (c) shows the relationship between temperature and price when consumption is held constant. One curve holds consumption at 10 gallons a day, and the other at 7 gallons a day.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 1 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

	A	B	C	D
1	2000	943	18	19
2	2002	803	15	51
3	2004	767	33	139
4	2006	620	23	586
5	2008	385	13	1,033
6	2010	226	9	1,162

TABLE 2

Price (dollars per ride)	Balloon rides (number per day)		
	50°F	70°F	90°F
5	32	50	40
10	27	40	32
15	18	32	27
20	10	27	18

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

TABLE 3

Price (dollars per cup)	Hot chocolate (number per week)		
	50°F	70°F	90°F
2.00	40	30	20
2.50	30	20	10
3.00	20	10	0
3.50	10	0	0

APPENDIX CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems

The spreadsheet in Table 1 provides data on the U.S. economy: Column A is the year; the other columns are quantities sold in millions per year of compact discs (column B), music videos (column C), and singles downloads (column D). Use this spreadsheet to work Problems 1 and 2.

1. Draw a scatter diagram to show the relationship between the quantities sold of compact discs and music videos. Describe the relationship.
2. Draw a time-series graph of the quantity of compact discs sold. Say in which year or years the quantity sold (a) was highest, (b) was lowest, (c) increased the most, and (d) decreased the most. If the data show a trend, describe it.
3. The following data shows the relationship between two variables x and y.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
y	32	31	28	23	16	7

Is the relationship between x and y positive or negative? Calculate the slope of the relationship when x equals 2 and when x equals 4. How does the slope change as the value of x increases?

4. Table 2 provides data on the price of a balloon ride, the temperature, and the number of rides a day. Draw graphs to show the relationship between
   - The price and the number of rides, when the temperature is 70°F.
   - The number of rides and the temperature, when the price is $15 a ride.

Instructor Assignable Problems

Use the following information in Table 1 to work Problems 1 and 2.

1. Draw a scatter diagram to show the relationship between quantities sold of music videos and singles downloads. Describe the relationship.
2. Draw a time-series graph of the quantity of music videos sold. Say in which year or years the quantity sold (a) was highest, (b) was lowest, (c) decreased the most, and (d) decreased the least. If the data show a trend, describe it.

Use the following data on the relationship between two variables x and y to work Problems 3 and 4.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
y	0	1	4	9	16	25

3. Is the relationship between x and y positive or negative? Explain.
4. Calculate the slope of the relationship when x equals 2 and x equals 4. How does the slope change as the value of x increases?
5. Table 3 provides data on the price of hot chocolate, the temperature, and the number of cups a week. Draw graphs to show the relationship between
   - The price and the number of cups of hot chocolate, when the temperature is constant.
   - The temperature and the number of cups of hot chocolate, when the price is constant.

Who makes the iPhone?

The U.S. and Global Economies

2

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the United States.
2. Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the global economy.
3. Use the circular flow model to provide a picture of how households, firms, and governments interact in the U.S. economy and how the U.S. and other economies interact in the global economy.

2.1 WHAT, HOW, AND FOR WHOM?

Walk around a shopping mall and pay close attention to the range of goods and services that are being offered for sale. Go inside some of the shops and look at the labels to see where various items are manufactured. The next time you travel on an interstate highway, look at the large trucks and pay attention to the names and products printed on their sides and the places in which the trucks are registered. Open the Yellow Pages and flip through a few sections. Notice the huge range of goods and services that businesses are offering.

You've just done a sampling of *what* goods and services are produced and consumed in the United States today.

What Do We Produce?

We place the goods and services produced into four large groups:

- Consumption goods and services
- Capital goods
- Government goods and services
- Export goods and services

Consumption goods and services
Goods and services that are bought by individuals and used to provide personal enjoyment and contribute to a person's quality of life.

Capital goods
Goods that are bought by businesses to increase their productive resources.

Government goods and services
Goods and services that are bought by governments.

Export goods and services
Goods and services that are produced in one country and sold in other countries.

Consumption goods and services are items that are bought by individuals and used to provide personal enjoyment and contribute to a person's quality of life. They include items such as housing, SUVs, bottled water and ramen noodles, chocolate bars and Po' Boy sandwiches, movies, downhill skiing lessons, and doctor and dental services.

Capital goods are goods that are bought by businesses to increase their productive resources. They include items such as auto assembly lines, shopping malls, airplanes, and oil tankers.

Government goods and services are items that are bought by governments. Governments purchase missiles and weapons systems, travel services, Internet services, police protection, roads, and paper and paper clips.

Export goods and services are items that are produced in one country and sold in other countries. U.S. export goods and services include the airplanes produced by Boeing that Singapore Airlines buys, the computers produced by Dell that Europeans buy, and licenses sold by U.S. film companies to show U.S. movies in European movie theaters.

Of the four groups of goods and services that we've just defined, consumption goods and services have the largest share and a share that doesn't fluctuate much. The volume of capital goods produced fluctuates as the economy cycles from boom to recession. Goods and services bought by governments are close to a fifth of total production and export goods around one tenth.

Breaking the goods and services down into smaller categories, health services is the largest category, with 17 percent of the value of total production. Real estate services come next at 12 percent. The main component of this item is the services of rental and owner-occupied housing. Education is the next largest service, followed by retail and wholesale trades and transportation and storage.

The categories of goods production are smaller than those of services. The largest category of goods—construction—accounts for only 4 percent of the value of total production, and the next three—utilities, food, and chemicals—each accounts for 2 percent or less.

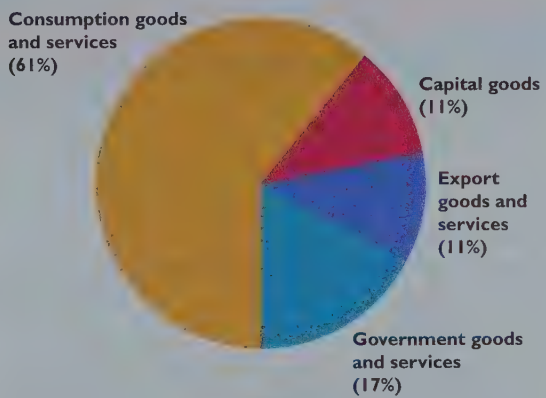
EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

What We Produce

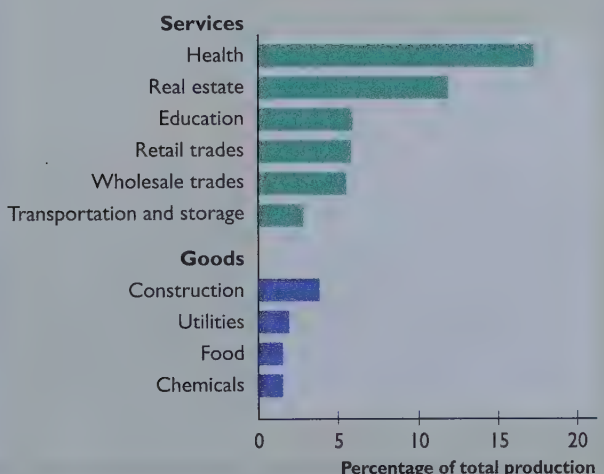
In 2011, consumption goods and services accounted for 61 percent of total production, both capital goods and export goods and services accounted for 11 percent, and government goods and services for 17 percent.

Health-care and real estate services, education, retail and wholesale trades, and transportation and storage are the six largest services produced. Construction, utilities, food, and chemicals are the largest categories of goods produced.

The production of services greatly exceeds goods production and is growing faster.



(a) The broad categories



(b) Some of the details

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis.

Health-care services ...

education services ...

retail trades ...

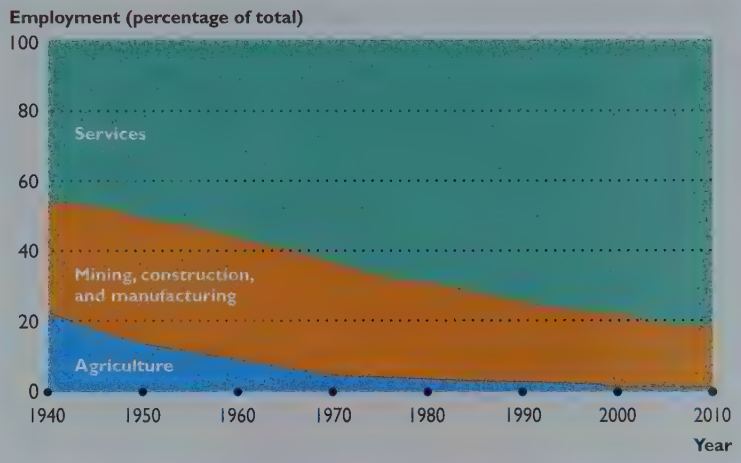
and chemicals are among the largest categories of goods and services produced.

EYE on the PAST

Changes in What We Produce

Seventy years ago, one American in four worked on a farm. That number has shrunk to one in thirty-five. The number of people who produce goods—in mining, construction, and manufacturing—has also shrunk, from one in three to one in five. In contrast, the number of people who produce services has expanded from one in two to almost four in five. These changes in employment reflect changes in what we produce—services.

We hear a lot about globalization and American manufacturing jobs going overseas, but the expansion of service jobs and shrinking of manufacturing jobs is not new. It has been going on over the past 60 years and is likely to continue.



SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Census Bureau, *Statistical Abstract of the United States*, 1999 and 2010.

How Do We Produce?

Factors of production
The productive resources that are used to produce goods and services—land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship.

Goods and services are produced by using productive resources. Economists call the productive resources **factors of production**. Factors of production are grouped into four categories:

- Land
- Labor
- Capital
- Entrepreneurship

Land

Land
The "gifts of nature," or *natural resources*, that we use to produce goods and services.

In economics, **land** includes all the "gifts of nature" that we use to produce goods and services. Land is what, in everyday language, we call *natural resources*. It includes land in the everyday sense, minerals, energy, water, air, and wild plants, animals, birds, and fish. Some of these resources are renewable, and some are nonrenewable. The U.S. Geological Survey maintains a national inventory of the quantity and quality of natural resources and monitors changes to that inventory.

The United States covers almost 2 billion acres. About 45 percent of the land is forest, lakes, and national parks. In 2009, almost 50 percent of the land was used for agriculture and 5 percent was urban, but urban land use is growing and agricultural land use is shrinking.

Our land surface and water resources are renewable, and some of our mineral resources can be recycled. But many mineral resources can be used only once. They are nonrenewable resources. Of these, the United States has vast known reserves of coal but much smaller known reserves of oil and natural gas.

Labor

Labor is the work time and work effort that people devote to producing goods and services. Labor includes the physical and mental efforts of all the people who work on farms and construction sites and in factories, shops, and offices. The Census Bureau and Bureau of Labor Statistics measure the quantity of labor at work every month.

Labor
The work time and work effort that people devote to producing goods and services.

In the United States in April 2011, 153 million people had jobs or were available for work. Some worked full time, some worked part time, and some were unemployed but looking for an acceptable vacant job. The total amount of time worked during 2011 was about 250 billion hours.

The quantity of labor increases as the adult population increases. The quantity of labor also increases if a larger percentage of the population takes jobs. During the past 50 years, a larger proportion of women have taken paid work and this trend has increased the quantity of labor. At the same time, a slightly smaller proportion of men have taken paid work and this trend has decreased the quantity of labor.

The *quality* of labor depends on how skilled people are. A laborer who can push a hand cart but can't drive a truck is much less productive than one who can drive. An office worker who can use a computer is much more productive than one who can't. Economists use a special name for human skill: human capital. **Human capital** is the knowledge and skill that people obtain from education, on-the-job training, and work experience.

Human capital
The knowledge and skill that people obtain from education, on-the-job training, and work experience.

You are building your own human capital right now as you work on your economics course and other subjects. Your human capital will continue to grow when you get a full-time job and become better at it. Human capital improves the *quality* of labor and increases the quantity of goods and services that labor can produce.

Capital

Capital consists of the tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other items that have been produced in the past and that businesses now use to produce goods and services. Capital includes hammers and screwdrivers, computers, auto assembly lines, office towers and warehouses, dams and power plants, airplanes, shirt factories, and shopping malls.

Capital
Tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other items that have been produced in the past and that businesses now use to produce goods and services.

Capital also includes inventories of unsold goods or of partly finished goods on a production line. And capital includes what is sometimes called *infrastructure capital*, such as highways and airports.

Capital, like human capital, makes labor more productive. A truck driver can produce vastly more transportation services than the pusher of a hand cart; the Interstate highway system enables us to produce vastly more transportation services than was possible on the old highway system that preceded it.

The Bureau of Economic Analysis in the U.S. Department of Commerce keeps track of the total value of capital in the United States and how it grows over time. Today, the value of capital in the U.S. economy is around $50 trillion.

Financial Capital Is Not Capital

In everyday language, we talk about money, stocks, and bonds as being capital. These items are *financial capital*, and they are not productive resources. They enable people to provide businesses with financial resources, but they are *not* used to produce goods and services. They are not capital.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Changes in How We Produce in the Information Economy

The information economy consists of the jobs and businesses that produce and use computers and equipment powered by computer chips. This information economy is highly visible in your daily life.

The pairs of images here illustrate two examples. In each pair, a new technology enables capital to replace labor.

The top pair of pictures illustrate the replacement of bank tellers (labor) with ATMs (capital). Although the ATM was invented almost 40 years ago, when it made its first appearance, it was located only inside banks and was not able to update customers' accounts. It is only in the last decade that ATMs have spread to corner stores and enable us to get cash and check our bank balance from almost anywhere in the world.

The bottom pair of pictures illustrate a more recent replacement of labor with capital: self-check-in. Air passengers today issue their own boarding pass, often at their own computer before leaving home. For international flights, some of these machines now even check passport details.

The number of bank teller and airport check-in clerk jobs is shrinking, but these new technologies are creating a whole range of new jobs for people who make, program, install, and repair the vast number of machines.

Entrepreneurship
The human resource that organizes labor, land, and capital to produce goods and services.

Entrepreneurship

Entrepreneurship is the human resource that organizes land, labor, and capital to produce goods and services. Entrepreneurs are creative and imaginative. They come up with new ideas about what and how to produce, make business decisions, and bear the risks that arise from these decisions. If their ideas work out, they earn a profit. If their ideas turn out to be wrong, they bear the loss.

The quantity of entrepreneurship is hard to describe or measure. During some periods, there appears to be a great deal of imaginative entrepreneurship around. People such as Sam Walton, who created Wal-Mart, one of the world's largest retailers; Bill Gates, who founded the Microsoft empire; and Mark Zuckerberg, who founded Facebook, are examples of extraordinary entrepreneurial talent. But these highly visible entrepreneurs are just the tip of an iceberg that consists of hundreds of thousands of people who run businesses, large and small.

For Whom Do We Produce?

Who gets the goods and services depends on the incomes that people earn. A large income enables a person to buy large quantities of goods and services. A small income leaves a person with a small quantity of goods and services.

People earn their incomes by selling the services of the factors of production they own. **Rent** is paid for the use of land, **wages** are paid for the services of labor, **interest** is paid for the use of capital, and entrepreneurs receive a **profit** (or incur a **loss**) for running their businesses. What are the shares of these four factor incomes in the United States? Which factor receives the largest share?

Figure 2.1(a) answers these questions. It shows that wages were 69 percent of total income in 2010 and rent, interest, and profit were 31 percent of total income. These percentages remain remarkably constant over time. We call the distribution of income among the factors of production the *functional distribution of income.*

Figure 2.1(b) shows the *personal distribution of income*—the distribution of income among households. Some households, like that of Carlos Rodriguez, earn many million of dollars a year. These households are in the richest 20 percent who earn 51 percent of total income. Households at the other end of the scale, like those of fast-food servers, are in the poorest 20 percent who earn only 3 percent of total income. The distribution of income has been changing and becoming more unequal. The rich have become richer. But it isn't the case, on the whole, that the poor have become poorer. They just haven't become richer as fast as the rich have.

Rent
Income paid for the use of land.

Wages
Income paid for the services of labor.

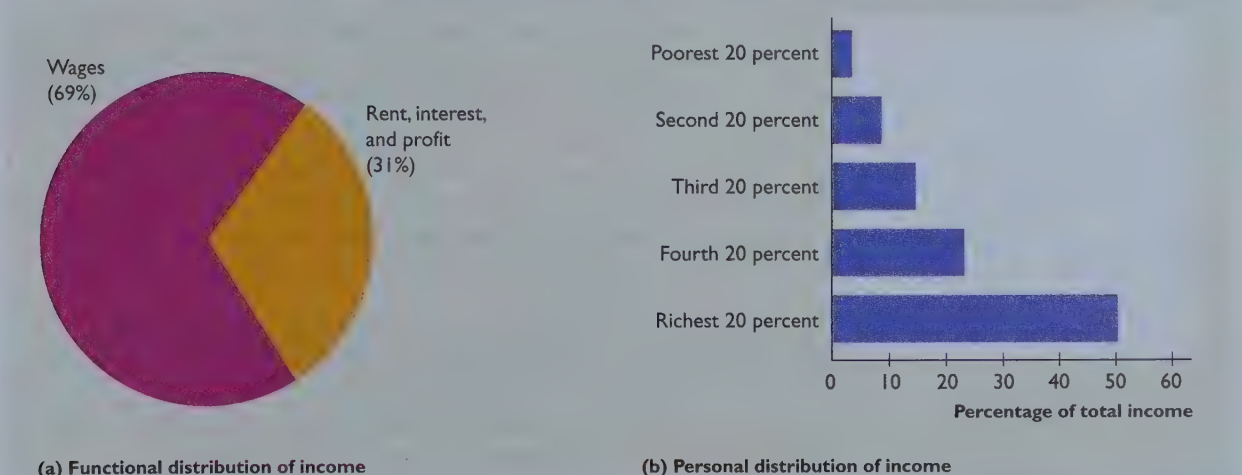
Interest
Income paid for the use of capital.

Profit (or loss)
Income earned by an entrepreneur for running a business.

FIGURE 2.1

For Whom in 2010?

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Functional distribution of income

(b) Personal distribution of income

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis, *National Income and Product Accounts,* Table 1.10 and U.S. Census Bureau, *Income, Poverty, and Health Insurance in the United States*: 2010, Current Population Reports P60-235, 2010.

In 2010, wages (the income from labor) were 69 percent of total income. Rent, interest, and profit (the income from the services of land, capital, and entrepreneurship) totaled the remaining 31 percent.

In 2010, the 20 percent of the population with the highest incomes received 51 percent of total income. The 20 percent with the lowest incomes received only 3 percent of total income.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 2.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 2.1

Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the United States.

Practice Problems

1. Name the four broad categories of goods and services that we use in economics. Provide an example of each (different from those in the chapter) and say what percentage of total production each accounted for in 2011.
2. Name the four factors of production and the incomes they earn.
3. Distinguish between the functional distribution of income and the personal distribution of income.
4. In the United States, which factor of production earned the largest share of income in 2010 and what percentage did it earn?

In the News

What microloans miss
The 2006 Nobel Peace Prize winner Muhammad Yunus has said that "all people are entrepreneurs" and that microloans will pull poor people out of poverty. Only 14 percent of Americans are entrepreneurs while almost 40 percent of Peruvians are.

Source: James Surowiecki, *The New Yorker*, March 17, 2008

With only 14 percent of Americans earning their income from entrepreneurship, from what factor of production do most Americans earn their income? What is that income called? Why might so many people in Peru be entrepreneurs?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The four categories are consumption goods and services, capital goods, government goods and services, and export goods and services. A shirt is a consumption good and a haircut is a consumption service. An oil rig is a capital good, police protection is a government service, and a computer chip sold to Ireland is an export good. Of total production in 2011, consumption goods and services were 61 percent; capital goods, 11 percent; government goods and services, 17 percent; and export goods and services, 11 percent.
2. The factors of production are land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship. Land earns rent; labor earns wages; capital earns interest; and entrepreneurship earns profit or incurs a loss.
3. The functional distribution of income shows the percentage of total income received by each factor of production. The personal distribution of income shows how total income is shared among households.
4. Labor is the factor of production that earns the largest share of income in the United States. In 2010, labor earned 69 percent of total income.

Solution to In the News

Most Americans earn their income from labor and the income they earn is called a wage. Peru is a poor country in which jobs are more limited than in the United States. So to earn an income, many people are self-employed and work as small entrepreneurs.

2.2 THE GLOBAL ECONOMY

We're now going to look at *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services get produced in the global economy. We'll begin with a brief overview of the people and countries that form the global economy.

The People

Visit the Web site of the U.S. Census Bureau and go to the population clocks to find out how many people there are today in both the United States and the entire world.

On the day these words were written, June 5, 2011, the U.S. clock recorded a population of 311,495,726. The world clock recorded a global population of 6,923,027,156. The U.S. clock ticks along showing a population increase of one person every 12 seconds. The world clock spins faster, adding 30 people in the same 12 seconds.

The Countries

The world's 7 billion (and rising) population lives in 176 countries, which the International Monetary Fund classifies into two broad groups of economies:

- Advanced economies
- Emerging market and developing economies

Advanced Economies

Advanced economies are the richest 29 countries (or areas). The United States, Japan, Italy, Germany, France, the United Kingdom, and Canada belong to this group. So do four new industrial Asian economies: Hong Kong, South Korea, Singapore, and Taiwan. The other advanced economies include Australia, New Zealand, and most of the rest of Western Europe. Almost 1 billion people (15 percent of the world's population) live in the advanced economies.

Emerging Market and Developing Economies

Emerging market economies are the 28 countries in Central and Eastern Europe and Asia that were, until the early 1990s, part of the Soviet Union or one of its satellites. Russia is the largest of these economies. Others include the Czech Republic, Hungary, Poland, Ukraine, and Mongolia.

Almost 500 million people live in these countries—only about half of the number in the advanced economies. But these countries are important because they are emerging (hence the name) from a system of state-owned production, central economic planning, and heavily regulated markets to a system of free enterprise and unregulated markets.

Developing economies are the 119 countries in Africa, Asia, the Middle East, Europe, and Central and South America that include China, India, Indonesia, and Brazil. These economies have not yet achieved high average incomes for their people. Average incomes in these economies vary a great deal, but in all cases, these average incomes are much lower than those in the advanced economies, and in some cases, they are extremely low. More than 5 billion people—almost four out of every five people—live in developing economies.

What in the Global Economy?

First, let's look at the big picture. Imagine that each year the global economy produces an enormous pie. In 2011, the pie was worth about $70 trillion! To give this number some meaning, if the pie were shared equally among the world's 6.9 billion people, each of us would get a slice worth a bit more than $10,145.

Where Is the Global Pie Baked?

Figure 2.2 shows us where in the world the pie is baked. The advanced economies produce 53 percent—20 percent in the United States, 15 percent in the Euro area, and 18 percent in the other advanced economies. The emerging market economies produce another 8 percent. These economies, which produce 61 percent of the world's output (by value) are home to only 20 percent of the world's population.

Most of the rest of the global pie comes from Asia. China produces 13 percent of the total and other developing Asian economies produce 10 percent. The developing countries of Africa and the Middle East produce 7 percent, and the Western Hemisphere—Mexico and South America—produces the rest.

The sizes of the slices in the global production pie are gradually changing—the U.S. share is shrinking and China's share is expanding.

Unlike the slices of an apple pie, those of the global pie have different fillings. Some slices have more oil, some more food, some more clothing, some more housing services, some more autos, and so on. Let's look at some of these different fillings, and at some similarities too.

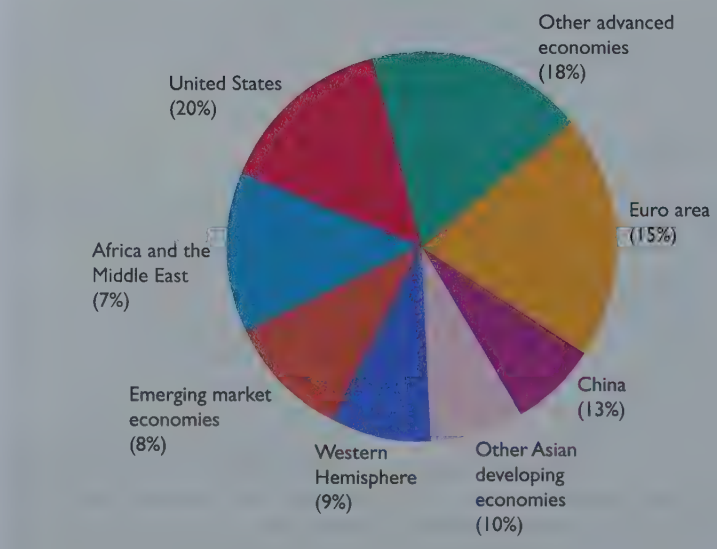
FIGURE 2.2

What in the Global Economy in 2010

MyEconLab Animation

If we show the value of production in the world economy as a pie, the United States produces a slice that is 20 percent of the total. The Euro zone and other advanced economies produce 33 percent of the total.

Most of the rest of the global pie comes from Asia. China produces a slice that is 13 percent of the total, and the rest of the developing Asian economies produce 10 percent. The developing countries of Africa, the Middle East, and the Western Hemisphere produce 16 percent, and the emerging market economies produce the rest.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, World Economic Outlook Database, April 2011.

EYE on the iPHONE

Who Makes the iPhone?

Apple designed and markets the iPhone but it doesn't make it. Apple wants to get the iPhone manufactured at the lowest possible cost. It achieves this goal by assigning the task to more than 30 companies on 3 continents who employ thousands of workers. The table identifies some of the companies and the costs of the components they make.

Apple and these firms make decisions and pay their workers, investors, and raw material suppliers to influence *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services are produced.

4Gbyte iPhone costs and producers

Item	Cost	Producer (incomplete list)	Country
Processing chips	31.40	Taiwan Semiconductor	Taiwan
		United Microelectronics Corp	Taiwan
		Samsung	Korea
		Marvell	United States
		Micron	United States
Memory chips	45.80	Intel, SST	United States
Bluetooth	19.10	Cambridge Silicon Radio	United Kingdom
Printed circuit board	36.05	Cheng Uei, Entery	Taiwan
		Cyntec	Taiwan
Phone interface	19.25	Infineon Technology	Germany
Camera module	11.00	Largan Precision	Taiwan
		Altus-Tech, Primax, Lite On	Taiwan
Display	33.50	National Semiconductor	United States
		Novatek	Taiwan
		Sanyo, Epson, Sharp, TMD	Japan
Touch screen controller	1.15	Balda	Germany
		Broadcom	United States
Battery and power management	8.60	Delta Electronics	Taiwan
Case	8.50	Catcher, Foxconn Tech	Taiwan
Assembly	15.50	Foxconn Quanta	Taiwan
Royalties	15.98		
Total cost	**245.83**		

Some Differences in What Is Produced

What is produced in the developing economies contrasts sharply with that of the advanced economies. Manufacturing is the big story. Developing economies have large and growing industries producing textiles, footwear, sports gear, toys, electronic goods, furniture, steel, and even automobiles and airplanes.

Food production is a small part of the U.S. and other advanced economies and a large part of the developing economies such as Brazil, China, and India. But the advanced economies produce about one third of the world's food. How come? Because *total* production is much larger in the advanced economies than in the developing economies, and a small percentage of a big number can be greater than a large percentage of a small number!

Some Similarities in What Is Produced

If you were to visit a shopping mall in Canada, England, Australia, Japan, or any of the other advanced economies, you would wonder whether you had left the United States. You would see Starbucks, Burger King, Pizza Hut, Domino's Pizza, KFC, Kmart, Wal-Mart, Target, the United Colors of Benetton, Gap, Tommy Hilfiger, Tie Rack, the upscale Louis Vuitton and Burberry, and a host of other familiar names. And, of course, you would see McDonald's golden arches. You would see them in any of the 119 countries in which one or more of McDonald's 30,000 restaurants are located.

The similarities among the advanced economies go beyond the view from main street and the shopping mall. The structure of *what* is produced is similar in these economies. As percentages of the total economy, agriculture and manufacturing are small and shrinking whereas services are large and expanding.

McDonald's in Shanghai.

How in the Global Economy?

Goods and services are produced using land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurial resources, and the combinations of these resources used are chosen to produce at the lowest possible cost. Energy production illustrates this point.

Energy is produced from oil, coal, natural gas, waterfalls and dams, nuclear reactors, windmills, and solar panels. Each of these sources of power uses different combinations of land (which includes natural resources), labor, and capital.

Figure 2.3 shows some interesting facts about energy use and production. Some 80 percent of the energy we use is in the form of electricity. The other 20 percent is for transportation—part (a). Most of the world's electricty is generated using coal (33 percent), natural gas (29 percent), and oil (21 percent), and only 1 percent is generated using wind and solar power —part (b). And almost all the world's transportation is powered by oil (gasoline and diesel), and only 2 percent is powered by ethanol—part (c).

Each country or region has its own blend of land, labor, and capital. But there are some interesting common patterns and crucial differences between the advanced and developing economies that we'll now examine.

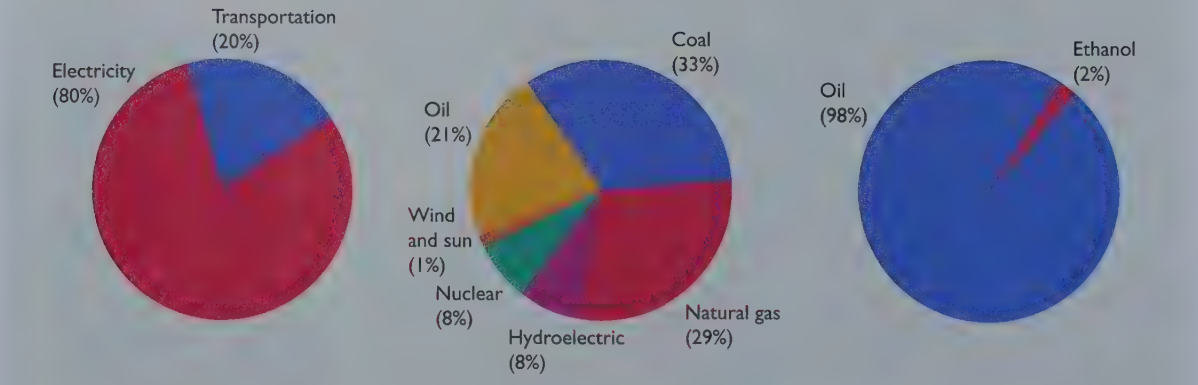
Human Capital Differences

The proportion of the population with a degree or that has completed high school is small in developing economies. And in the poorest of the developing economies, many children even miss out on basic primary education. They just don't go to school at all. On-the-job training and experience are also much less extensive in the developing economies than in the advanced economies.

FIGURE 2.3

How Energy is Used and Produced in the Global Economy

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Energy uses

Energy is used to generate electricity (80 percent) and for transportation (20 percent) shown in part (a).

(b) Energy to produce electricity

Most electricity is produced using coal, natural gas, and oil. Only 9 percent comes from water, wind, and sun power—in part (b).

(c) Energy used in transportation

Almost all transportation is powered by oil (gasoline and diesel) and only 2 percent is powered by ethanol—in part (c).

SOURCES OF DATA: Energy Information Administration and BP Review of World Energy, June 2011.

Physical Capital Differences

The major feature of an advanced economy that differentiates it from a developing economy is the amount of capital available for producing goods and services. The differences begin with the basic transportation system. In the advanced economies, a well-developed highway system connects all the major cities and points of production. You can see this difference most vividly by opening a road atlas of North America and contrasting the U.S. interstate highway system with the sparse highways of Mexico. You would see a similar contrast if you flipped through a road atlas of Western Europe and Africa.

But it isn't the case that the developing economies have no highways. In fact, some of them have the newest and the best. But the new and best are usually inside and around the major cities. The smaller centers and rural areas of developing economies often have some of the worst roads in the world.

The contrast in vehicles is perhaps even greater than that in highways. You're unlikely to run across a horse-drawn wagon in an advanced economy, but in a developing economy, animal power can still be found, and trucks are often old and unreliable.

The contrasts in the transportation system are matched by those on farms and in factories. In general, the more advanced the economy, the greater are the amount and sophistication of the capital equipment used in production. But again, the contrast is not all black and white. Some factories in India, China, and other parts of Asia use the very latest technologies. Furniture manufacture is an example. To make furniture of a quality that Americans are willing to buy, firms in Asia use machines like those in the furniture factories of North Carolina.

Again, it is the extensiveness of the use of modern capital-intensive technologies that distinguishes a developing economy from an advanced economy. All the factories in the advanced economies are capital intensive compared with only some in the developing economies.

The differences in human and physical capital between advanced and developing economies have a big effect on who gets the goods and services.

Beijing has a highway system to match that of any advanced country. But away from the major cities, many of China's roads are unpaved and driving on them is slow and sometimes hazardous.

For Whom in the Global Economy?

Who gets the world's goods and services depends on the incomes that people earn. So how are incomes distributed across the world?

Personal Distribution of Income

You saw earlier (on p. 37) that in the United States, the lowest-paid 20 percent of the population receives 3 percent of total income and the highest-paid 20 percent receives 51 percent of total income. The personal distribution of income in the world economy is much more unequal. According to World Bank data, the lowest-paid 20 percent of the world's population receives 2 percent of world income, and the highest-paid 20 percent receives about 70 percent of world income.

International Distribution

Much of the greater inequality at the global level arises from differences in average incomes among countries. Figure 2.4 shows some of these differences. It shows the dollar value of what people can afford each day on average. You can see that in the United States, that number is $129 a day—an average person in the United States can buy goods and services that cost $129. This amount is around

five times the world average. Canada is close to the United States at $126 a day and Japan at $116 a day. The United Kingdom and Euro zone have average incomes of around 80 percent of that of the United States. Income levels fall off quickly as we move farther down the graph, with Africa achieving an average income of only $4 a day and India only $3 a day.

As people have lost well-paid manufacturing jobs and found lower-paid service jobs, inequality has increased in the United States and in most other advanced economies. Inequality is also increasing in the developing economies. People with skills enjoy rapidly rising incomes but the incomes of the unskilled are falling.

A Happy Paradox and a Huge Challenge

Despite the increase in inequality inside most countries, inequality across the entire world has decreased during the past 20 years. And most important, according to Xavier Sala-i-Martin, an economics professor at Columbia University, extreme poverty has declined. Professor Sala-i-Martin estimates that between 1976 and 1998, the number of people who earn $1 a day or less fell by 235 million and the number who earn $2 a day or less fell by 450 million. This happy situation arises because in China, the largest nation, incomes have increased rapidly and lifted millions from extreme poverty. Incomes are growing quickly in India too.

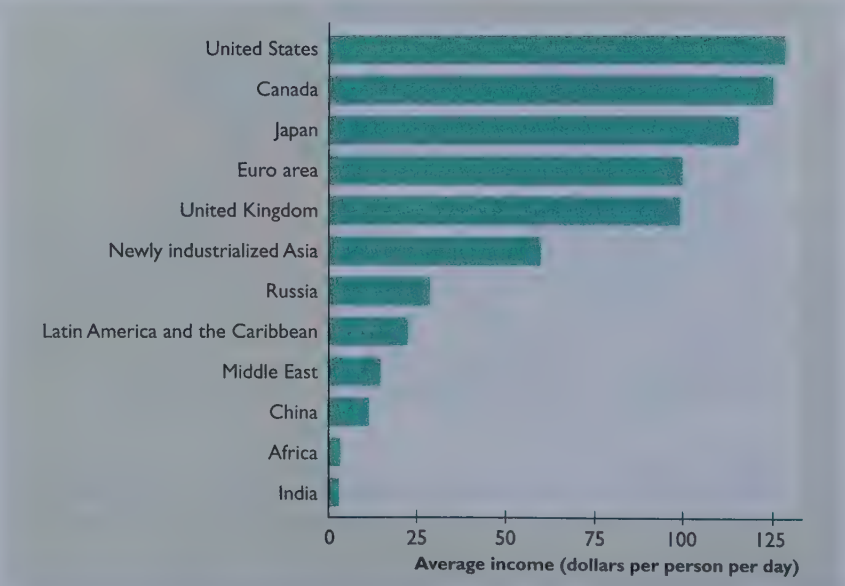
Lifting Africa from poverty is today's big challenge. In 1960, 11 percent of the world's poor lived in Africa, but in 1998, 66 percent did. Between 1976 and 1998, the number of people in Africa who earn $1 a day or less rose by 175 million, and the number who earn $2 a day or less rose by 227 million.

FIGURE 2.4

For Whom in the Global Economy in 2010

MyEconLab Animation

In 2010, the average income per person per day in the United States was $129. It was $126 in Canada and $99 in the United Kingdom. It was $116 in Japan and $100 in the Euro area. The number falls off rapidly to $29 in Russia, $12 in China, $4 in Africa, and $3 in India.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, World Economic Outlook Database, April 2011.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

The U.S. and Global Economies in Your Life

You've encountered a lot of facts and trends about what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the U.S. economy and the global economy. How can you use this information? You can use it in two ways:

1. To inform your choice of career
2. To inform your stand on the politics of protecting U.S. jobs

Career Choices

As you think about your future career, you are now better informed about some of the key trends. You know that manufacturing is shrinking. The U.S. economy is what is sometimes called a *post-industrial economy.* Industries that provided the backbone of the economy in previous generations have fallen to barely a fifth of the economy today, and the trend continues. It is possible that by the middle of the current century, manufacturing will be as small a source of jobs as agriculture is today.

So, a job in a manufacturing business is likely to lead to some tough situations and possibly the need for several job changes over a working life.

As manufacturing shrinks, so services expand, and this expansion will continue. The provision of health care, education, communication, wholesale and retail trades, and entertainment are all likely to expand in the future and be sources of increasing employment and rising wages. A job in a service-oriented business is more likely to lead to steady advances in income.

Political Stand on Job Protection

As you think about the stand you will take on the political question of protecting U.S. jobs, you are better informed about the basic facts and trends. When you hear that manufacturing jobs are disappearing to China, you will be able to place that news in historical perspective. You might reasonably be concerned, especially if you or a member of your family has lost a job. But you know that trying to reverse or even halt this process is flying in the face of stubborn historical trends.

In later chapters, you will learn that there are good economic reasons to be skeptical about any form of protection and placing limits on competition.

CHECKPOINT 2.2

Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the global economy.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 2.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in developing economies.
2. A Clinton Foundation success story is that it loaned $23,000 to Rwandan coffee growers to support improvements to coffee washing stations and provided technical support. What was the source of the success?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. In developing countries, agriculture is the largest percentage, manufacturing is an increasing percentage, and services are a small percentage of total production. Most production does not use modern capital-intensive technologies, but some industries do. People who work in factories have rising incomes while those who work in rural industries are left behind.
2. Rwandan coffee growers improved their knowledge of coffee farming, which increased their human capital. The improvements to washing stations was a change in physical capital that allowed farmers to increase the quantity of washed coffee.

2.3 THE CIRCULAR FLOWS

Circular flow model
A model of the economy that shows the circular flow of expenditures and incomes that result from decision makers' choices and the way those choices interact to determine what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced.

We can organize the data you've just studied using the **circular flow model**—a model of the economy that shows the circular flow of expenditures and incomes that result from decision makers' choices and the way those choices interact to determine what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced. Figure 2.5 shows the circular flow model.

Households and Firms

Households
Individuals or groups of people living together.

Firms
The institutions that organize the production of goods and services.

Households are individuals or groups of people living together. The 118 million households in the United States own the factors of production—land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship—and choose the quantities of these resources to provide to firms. Households also choose the quantities of goods and services to buy.

Firms are the institutions that organize the production of goods and services. The 20 million firms in the United States choose the quantities of the factors of production to hire and the quantities of goods and services to produce.

Markets

Households choose the quantities of the factors of production to provide to firms, and firms choose the quantities of the services of the factors of production to hire. Firms choose the quantities of goods and services to produce, and households choose the quantities of goods and services to buy. How are these choices coordinated and made compatible? The answer is: by markets.

Market
Any arrangement that brings buyers and sellers together and enables them to get information and do business with each other.

Goods markets
Markets in which goods and services are bought and sold.

Factor markets
Markets in which the services of factors of production are bought and sold.

A **market** is any arrangement that brings buyers and sellers together and enables them to get information and do business with each other. An example is the market in which oil is bought and sold—the world oil market. The world oil market is not a place. It is the network of oil producers, oil users, wholesalers, and brokers who buy and sell oil. In the world oil market, decision makers do not meet physically. They make deals by telephone, fax, and the Internet.

Figure 2.5 identifies two types of markets: goods markets and factor markets. Goods and services are bought and sold in **goods markets**; and the services of factors of production are bought and sold in **factor markets**.

Real Flows and Money Flows

When households choose the quantities of services of land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship to offer in factor markets, they respond to the incomes they receive—rent for land, wages for labor, interest for capital, and profit for entrepreneurship. When firms choose the quantities of factor services to hire, they respond to the rent, wages, interest, and profits they must pay to households.

Similarly, when firms choose the quantities of goods and services to produce and offer for sale in goods markets, they respond to the amounts that they receive from the expenditures that households make. And when households choose the quantities of goods and services to buy, they respond to the amounts they must pay to firms.

Figure 2.5 shows the flows that result from these choices made by households and firms. The flows shown in orange are *real flows:* the flows of the factors of production that go from households through factor markets to firms and of the goods and services that go from firms through goods markets to households. The flows in the opposite direction are *money flows:* the flows of payments made in exchange

for the services of factors of production (shown in blue) and of expenditures on goods and services (shown in red).

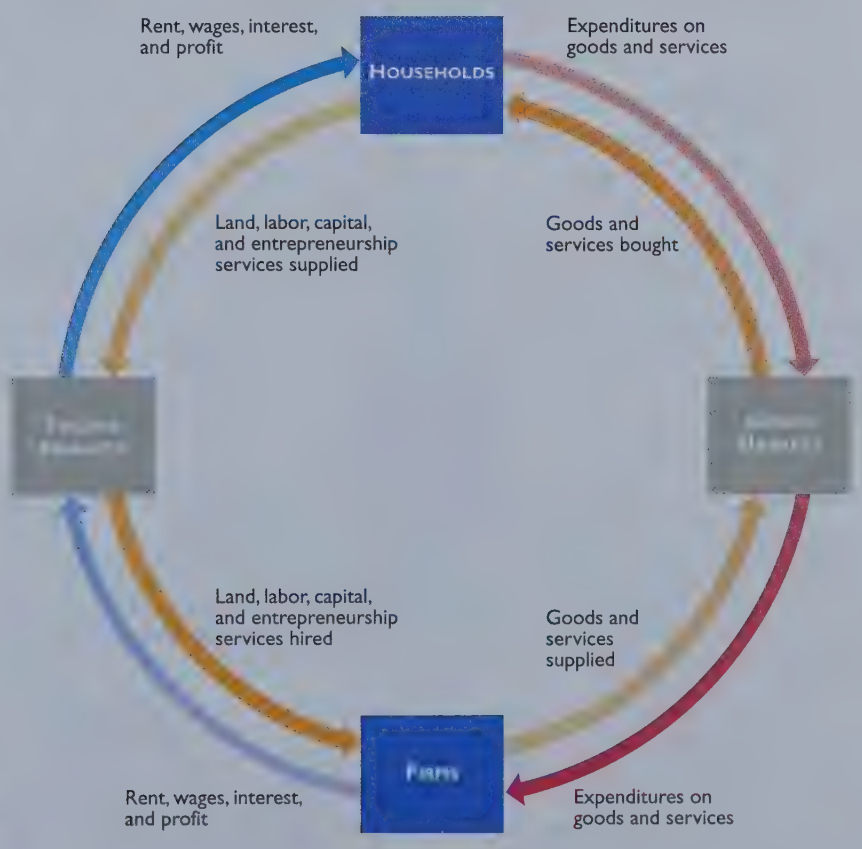
Lying behind these real flows and money flows are millions of individual choices about what to consume and what and how to produce. These choices result in buying plans by households and selling plans by firms in goods markets. And the choices result in selling plans by households and buying plans by firms in factor markets that interact to determine the prices that people pay and the incomes they earn, and so determine for whom goods and services are produced. You'll learn in Chapter 4 how markets coordinate the buying plans and selling plans of households and firms and make them compatible.

Firms produce most of the goods and services that we consume, but governments provide some of the services that we enjoy. Governments also play a big role in modifying for whom goods and services are produced by changing the personal distribution of income. We're now going to look at the role of governments in the U.S. economy and add them to the circular flow model.

FIGURE 2.5

The Circular Flow Model

MyEconLab Animation


Rent, wages, interest, and profit
Households
Expenditures on goods and services
Land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship services supplied
Goods and services bought
Land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship services hired
Goods and services supplied
Firms
Rent, wages, interest, and profit
Expenditures on goods and services

The orange flows are the services of factors of production that go from households through factor markets to firms and the goods and services that go from firms through goods markets to households. These flows are *real* flows.

The blue flow is the income earned by the factors of production, and the red flow is the expenditures on goods and services. These flows are *money* flows.

The choices that generate these real and money flows determine *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services are produced.

Governments

More than 86,000 organizations operate as governments in the United States. Some are tiny like the Yuma, Arizona, school district and some are enormous like the U.S. federal government. We divide governments into two levels:

- Federal government
- State and local government

Federal Government

The federal government's major expenditures provide

1. Good and services
2. Social Security and welfare payments
3. Transfers to state and local governments

The goods and services provided by the federal government include the legal system, which protects property and enforces contracts, and national defense. Social Security and welfare benefits, which include income for retired people and programs such as Medicare and Medicaid, are transfers from the federal government to households. Federal government transfers to state and local governments are payments designed to provide more equality across the states and regions.

The federal government finances its expenditures by collecting a variety of taxes. The main taxes paid to the federal government are

1. Personal income taxes
2. Corporate (business) income taxes
3. Social Security taxes

In 2010, the federal government spent $3.5 trillion—about 24 percent of the total value of all the goods and services produced in the United States in that year. The taxes they raised were less than this amount—the government had a deficit.

State and Local Government

The state and local governments' major expenditures are to provide

1. Goods and services
2. Welfare benefits

The goods and services provided by state and local governments include the state courts and police, schools, roads, garbage collection and disposal, water supplies, and sewage management. Welfare benefits provided by state governments include unemployment benefits and other aid to low-income families.

State and local governments finance these expenditures by collecting taxes and receiving transfers from the federal government. The main taxes paid to state and local governments are

1. Sales taxes
2. Property taxes
3. State income taxes

In 2007-08, state and local governments spent $2.1 trillion or 17 percent of the total value of all the goods and services produced in the United States.

Governments in the Circular Flow

Figure 2.6 adds governments to the circular flow model. As you study this figure, first notice that the outer circle is the same as in Figure 2.5. In addition to these flows, governments buy goods and services from firms. The red arrows that run from governments through the goods markets to firms show this expenditure.

Households and firms pay taxes to governments. The green arrows running directly from households and firms to governments show these flows. Also, governments make money payments to households and firms. The green arrows running directly from governments to households and firms show these flows. Taxes and transfers are direct transactions with governments and do not go through the goods markets and factor markets.

Not part of the circular flow and not visible in Figure 2.6, governments provide the legal framework within which all transactions occur. For example, governments operate the courts and legal system that enable contracts to be written and enforced.

FIGURE 2.6

Governments in the Circular Flow

MyEconLab Animation

The green flows from households and firms to governments are taxes, and the green flows from governments to households and firms are money transfers.

The red flow from governments through the goods markets to firms is the expenditure on goods and services by governments.

Federal Government Expenditures and Revenue

What are the main items of expenditure by the federal government on goods and services and transfers? And what are its main sources of tax revenue? Figure 2.7 answers these questions.

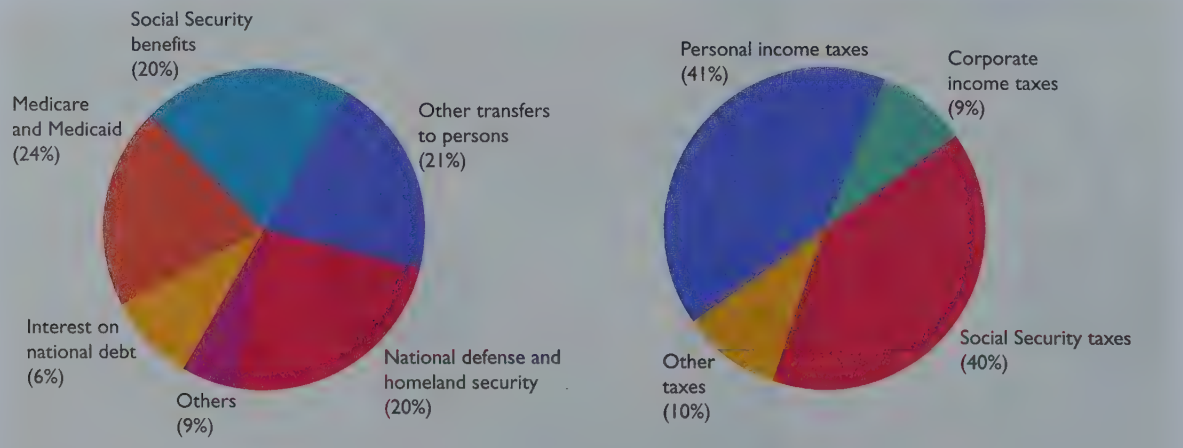
Three items of expenditure are similar in magnitude—and large. They are Social Security benefits, Medicare and Medicaid, and national defense and homeland security. The combined total of these items is 64 percent of the government's expenditures. Other transfers to persons, which includes unemployment benefits, are also large. The "Others" category covers a wide range of items and includes transfers to state governments, NASA's space program, and the National Science Foundation's funding of research in the universities.

National debt
The total amount that the federal government has borrowed to make expenditures that exceed tax revenue—to run a government budget deficit.

The interest payment on the national debt is another significant item. The **national debt** is the total amount that the federal government has borrowed to make expenditures that exceed tax revenue—to run a government budget deficit. The national debt is a bit like a large credit card balance, and paying the interest on the national debt is like paying the minimum required monthly payment.

Most of the tax revenue of the federal government comes from personal income taxes and Social Security taxes. Corporate income taxes and other taxes are a small part of the federal government's revenue.

FIGURE 2.7
Federal Government Expenditures and Revenue
MyEconLab Animation


Social Security benefits (20%)
Medicare and Medicaid (24%)
Other transfers to persons (21%)
Interest on national debt (6%)
Others (9%)
National defense and homeland security (20%)
Personal income taxes (41%)
Corporate income taxes (9%)
Social Security taxes (40%)
Other taxes (10%)

(a) Federal government expenditures **(b) Federal government revenue**

SOURCE OF DATA: Budget of the United States Government, Historical Tables, Table 2.1 and Table 3.1, 2010 data.

Social Security benefits, Medicare and Medicaid, and national defense and homeland security absorb 64 percent of the federal government's expenditures. Interest on the national debt is also a significant item.

Most of the federal government's revenue comes from personal income taxes and Social Security taxes. Corporate income taxes and other taxes are a small part of total revenue.

State and Local Government Expenditures and Revenue

What are the main items of expenditure by the state and local governments on goods and services and transfers? And what are the main sources of state and local government revenue? Figure 2.8 answers these questions.

You can see that education is by far the largest part of the expenditures of state and local governments. This item covers the cost of public schools, colleges, and universities. It absorbs 34 percent of total expenditures—approximately $826 billion, or $2,650 per person.

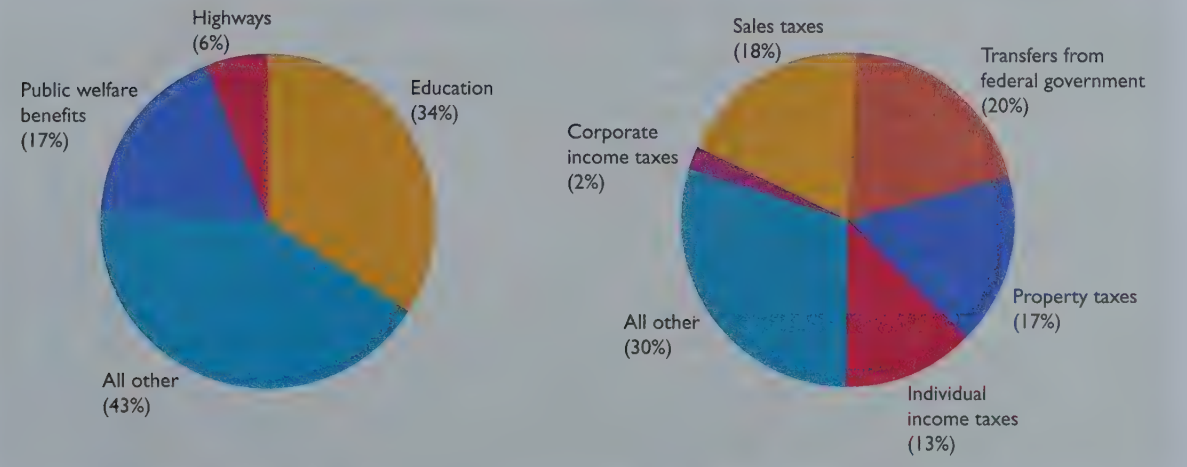
Public welfare benefits are the second largest item and they take 17 percent of total expenditures. Highways are the next largest item, and they account for 6 percent of total expenditures. The remaining 43 percent is spent on other local public goods and services such as police services, garbage collection and disposal, sewage management, and water supplies.

Sales taxes and transfers from the federal government bring in similar amounts—about 18 percent and 20 percent of total revenue, respectively. Property taxes account for 17 percent of total revenue. Individual income taxes account for 13 percent, and corporate income taxes account for 2 percent. The remaining revenue comes from other taxes such as those on gasoline, cigarettes, and beer and wine.

FIGURE 2.8

State and Local Government Expenditures and Revenue

MyEconLab Animation



(a) State and local government expenditures

(b) State and local government revenue

SOURCES OF DATA: *Economic Report of the President 2009*, Table B-86, 2007–2008 data.

The largest slices of state and local government expenditures are education (34 percent of total expenditure), public welfare benefits (17 percent), and highways (6 percent).

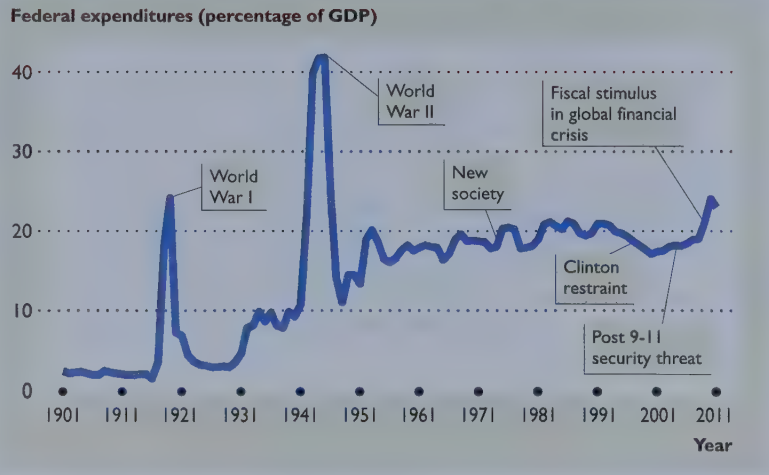
Most of the state and local government revenue comes from sales taxes (18 percent of total revenue), property taxes (17 percent), and transfers from the federal government (20 percent).

EYE on the PAST

Growing Government

One hundred years ago, the federal government spent 2 cents out of each dollar earned. Today, the federal government spends 23 cents. Government grew during the two world wars and during the 1960s and 1970s as social programs expanded.

Only during the 1980s and 1990s did big government begin to shrink in a process begun by Ronald Reagan and continued by Bill Clinton. But 9/11 saw the start of a new era of growing government, and fiscal stimulus and bailouts to cope with the global financial crisis sent spending soaring.



SOURCE OF DATA: Budget of the United States Government, Historical Tables, Table 1.1.

Circular Flows in the Global Economy

Households and firms in the U.S. economy interact with households and firms in other economies in two main ways: They buy and sell goods and services and they borrow and lend. We call these two activities:

- International trade
- International finance

International Trade

Many of the goods that you buy were not made in the United States. Your iPod, Wii games, Nike shoes, cell phone, T-shirt, and bike were made somewhere in Asia or possibly Europe or South or Central America. The goods and services that we buy from firms in other countries are U.S. *imports*.

Much of what is produced in the United States doesn't end up being sold here. Boeing, for example, sells most of the airplanes it makes to foreign airlines. And the banks of Wall Street sell banking services to Europeans and Asians. The goods and services that we sell to households and firms in other countries are U.S. *exports*.

International Finance

When firms or governments want to borrow, they look for the lowest interest rate available. Sometimes, that is outside the United States. Also, when the value of our imports exceeds the value of our exports, we must borrow from the rest of the world.

Firms and governments in the rest of the world behave in the same way. They look for the lowest interest rate at which to borrow and the highest at which to lend. They might borrow from or lend to Americans.

Figure 2.9 shows the flows through goods markets and financial markets in the global economy. Households and firms in the U.S. economy interact with those in the rest of the world (other economies) in goods markets and financial markets.

The red flow shows the expenditure by Americans on imports of goods and services, and the blue flow shows the expenditure by the rest of the world on U.S. exports (other countries' imports). The green flow shows U.S. lending to the rest of the world, and the orange flow shows U.S. borrowing from the rest of the world.

It is these international trade and international finance flows that tie nations together in the global economy and through which global booms and slumps are transmitted.

FIGURE 2.9

Circular Flows in the Global Economy

MyEconLab Animation

Households and firms in the U.S. economy interact with those in the rest of the world (other economies) in goods markets and financial markets.

The red flow shows the expenditure by Americans on imports of goods and services, and the blue flow shows the expenditure by the rest of the world on U.S. exports (other countries' imports).

The green flow shows U.S. lending to the rest of the world, and the orange flow shows U.S. borrowing from the rest of the world.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

The Ups and Downs in International Trade

International trade has expanded rapidly during the past 25 years. At an average growth rate of close to 7 percent a year, world trade has doubled every decade.

In 2001, a mini-recession in the United States slowed world trade growth to a crawl.

But the 2001 slowdown looks mild compared to the collapse in world trade during the 2009 global economic slump. Despite the slump in 2009, world trade was back to a normal level in 2010 and 2011.

SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, World Economic Outlook Database, April 2011.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 2.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 2.3

Use the circular flow model to provide a picture of how households, firms, and governments interact in the U.S. economy and how the U.S. and other economies interact in the global economy.

Practice Problems

1. Describe the flows in the circular flow model in which consumption expenditure, purchases of new national defense equipment, and payments for labor services appear. Through which market does each of these flows pass?
2. Of the flows that run between households, firms, and governments in the circular flow model, which ones are real flows and which are money flows?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Consumption expenditure flows from households to firms through the goods market. Purchases of national defense flow from governments to firms through the goods market. Payments for labor services flow from firms to households through the factor market.
2. The real flows are the services of factors of production that go from households to firms through factor markets and the goods and services that go from firms to households and from firms to governments through goods markets. The money flows are factor incomes, household and government expenditures on goods and services, taxes, and transfers.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1. **Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the United States.**
   - Consumption goods and services represent 61 percent of total production; capital goods represent 11 percent.
   - Goods and services are produced by using the four factors of production: land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship.
   - The incomes people earn (rent for land, wages for labor, interest for capital, and profit for entrepreneurship) determine who gets the goods and services produced.
2. **Describe what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced in the global economy.**
   - Sixty-one percent of the world's production (by value) comes from the advanced industrial countries and the emerging market economies.
   - Production in the advanced economies uses more capital (both machines and human), but some developing economies use the latest capital and technologies.
   - The global distribution of income is more unequal than the U.S. distribution. Poverty has fallen in Asia but has increased in Africa.
3. **Use the circular flow model to provide a picture of how households, firms, and governments interact in the U.S. economy and how the U.S. and other economies interact in the global economy.**
   - The circular flow model of the U.S. economy shows the real flows of factors of production and goods and the corresponding money flows of incomes and expenditures.
   - Governments in the circular flow receive taxes, make transfers, and buy goods and services.
   - The circular flow model of the global economy shows the flows of U.S. exports and imports and the international financial flows that result from lending to and borrowing from other countries.

Key Terms

Capital, 35
Capital goods, 32
Circular flow model, 46
Consumption goods and services, 32
Entrepreneurship, 36
Export goods and services, 32
Factor markets, 46
Factors of production, 34
Firms, 46
Goods markets, 46
Government goods and services, 32
Households, 46
Human capital, 35
Interest, 37
Labor, 35
Land, 34
Market, 46
National debt, 50
Profit (or loss), 37
Rent, 37
Wages, 37

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 2 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Explain which of the following items are *not* consumption goods and services:
   - A chocolate bar
   - A ski lift
   - A golf ball
2. Explain which of the following items are *not* capital goods:
   - An auto assembly line
   - A shopping mall
   - A golf ball
3. Explain which of the following items are *not* factors of production:
   - Vans used by a baker to deliver bread
   - 1,000 shares of Amazon.com stock
   - Undiscovered oil in the Arctic Ocean
4. Which of the four factors of production earns the highest percentage of total U.S. income? Define that factor of production. What is the income it earns called?
5. With more job training and more scholarships to poor American students, which special factor of production is likely to grow faster than in the past?
6. Define the factor of production called capital. Give three examples of capital, different from those in the chapter. Distinguish between the factor of production capital and financial capital.
7. A Job Creation through Entrepreneurship Act, debated in the House of Representatives in 2009, would award grants to small business owners, some of which would be aimed at women, Native Americans, and veterans. The Act would provide $189 million in 2010 and $531 million between 2010 and 2014. Explain how you would expect this Act to influence *what*, *how*, and *for whom* goods and services are produced in the United States.
8. Indicate on a graph of the circular flow model, the real or money flow in which the following items belong:
   - You pay your tuition.
   - The University of Texas buys some Dell computers.
   - A student works at FedEx Kinko's.
   - Donald Trump rents a Manhattan building to a hotel.
   - You pay your income tax.
9. **For-profit colleges may face aid cuts**

   The Obama administration proposes a new rule: Federal aid to for-profit colleges will be cut if students in vocational programs graduate with worthless degrees. Millions of low-income students are borrowing heavily to attend colleges and too many of them are dropping out, and failing to get a job.

   Source: *USA Today*, June 2, 2011

   How do you think the personal distribution of income would change if all graduates could obtain a well-paying job that uses their knowledge gained in college?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Buzz surrounds Apple's iPhone. Can you explain:
- Why doesn't Apple manufacture the iPhone at its own factory in the United States?
- Why doesn't Apple offer a cheaper version of the iPhone with no camera?
- In view of the cost of producing an iPhone (in the table on p. 41), why do you think the price of an iPhone is so high? What other costs must be incurred to bring the iPhone to market other than the cost of manufacturing it?

2. The global economy has three cell phone users for every fixed line user. Two in every three cell phone users lives in a developing nation and the growth rate is fastest in Africa. In 2000, 1 African in 50 had a cell phone; in 2009, it was 14 in 50. Describe the changes in *what, how,* and *for whom* telecommunication services the global economy produces.

3. Which of the entries in List 1 are consumption goods and services and which are government goods? Explain your choice.

4. Which of the entries in List 1 are capital goods? Explain your choice.

5. Which of the entries in List 1 are factors of production? Explain your choice.

6. In the African nation of Senegal, to enroll in school a child needs a Birth Certificate that costs $25. This price is several weeks' income for many families. Explain how this requirement is likely to affect the growth of human capital in Senegal.

7. **China's prosperity brings income gap**

The Asian Development Bank [ADB] reports that China has the largest gap between the rich and the poor in Asia. Ifzal Ali, the ADB's chief economist, claims it is not that the rich are getting richer and the poor are getting poorer, but that the rich are getting richer faster than the poor.

Source: *Financial Times*, August 9, 2007

Explain how the distribution of personal income in China can be getting more unequal even though the poorest 20 percent are getting richer.

8. Compare the scale of agricultural production in the advanced and developing economies. In which is the percentage higher? In which is the total amount produced greater?

9. On a graph of the circular flow model, indicate in which real or money flow each entry in List 2 belongs.

Use the following information to work Problems **10** and **11**.

Poor India makes millionaires at fastest pace

India, with the world's largest population of poor people, also paradoxically created millionaires at the fastest pace in the world. Millionaires increased by 22.7 percent to 123,000. In contrast, the number of Indians living on less than a dollar a day is 350 million and those living on less than $2 a day is 700 million. In other words, there are 7,000 very poor Indians for every millionaire.

Source: *The Times of India*, June 25, 2008

10. How is the personal distribution of income in India changing?

11. Why might incomes of $1 a day and $2 a day underestimate the value of the goods and services that these households actually consume?

LIST 1

- An interstate highway
- An airplane
- A school teacher
- A stealth bomber
- A garbage truck
- A pack of bubble gum
- President of the United States
- A strawberry field
- A movie
- An ATM

LIST 2

- General Motors pays its workers wages.
- IBM pays a dividend to its stockholders.
- You buy your groceries.
- Chrysler buys robots.
- Southwest rents some aircraft.
- Nike pays Roger Federer for promoting its sports shoes.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 2 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Which of the following classifications is correct?
   A. City streets are consumption goods because they wear out with use.
   B. Stocks are capital goods because when people buy and sell them they make a profit.
   C. The coffee maker in the coffee shop at an airport is a consumption good because people buy the coffee it produces.
   D. White House security is a government service because it is paid for by the government.
2. Which of the following statements about U.S. production is correct?
   A. Government goods and services and export goods and services each account for the same percentage of total production.
   B. Capital goods account for a larger percentage of total production than do consumption goods and services.
   C. Most of U.S. production is consumption goods and services.
   D. Most of what the United States produces is goods not services.
3. Which of the following items is *not* a factor of production?
   A. An oil rig in the Gulf of Mexico
   B. A ski jump in Utah
   C. A bank loan to a farmer
   D. An orange grove in Florida
4. What is human capital?
   A. Immigrant labor
   B. Someone who operates heavy equipment
   C. Your professor's knowledge of the economy
   D. A car assembly line robot
5. Which of the following statements is correct?
   A. Labor earns wages and entrepreneurship earns bonuses
   B. Land earns interest and capital earns rent
   C. Entrepreneurship earns interest and capital earns profit
   D. Capital earns interest and labor earns wages
6. How are goods and services produced in the global economy?
   A. Developing countries use less human capital but just as much physical capital as advanced economies.
   B. Emerging economies use more capital-intensive technology than do developing economies.
   C. Human capital in all economies is similar.
   D. Advanced economies use less capital than developing economies.
7. In the circular flow model, which of the following items is a real flow?
   A. The flow of government expenditures to firms for the goods bought
   B. The flow of income from firms to households for the services of the factors of production hired
   C. The flow of U.S. borrowing from the rest of the world
   D. The flow of labor services from households to firms

Is wind power free?

3

The Economic Problem

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain and illustrate the concepts of scarcity, production efficiency, and tradeoff using the production possibilities frontier.
2. Calculate opportunity cost.
3. Explain what makes production possibilities expand.
4. Explain how people gain from specialization and trade.

3.1 PRODUCTION POSSIBILITIES

Every working day in mines, factories, shops, and offices and on farms and construction sites across the United States, we produce a vast array of goods and services. In the United States in 2011, 250 billion hours of labor equipped with $50 trillion worth of capital produced $15 trillion worth of goods and services.

Although our production capability is enormous, it is limited by our available resources and by technology. At any given time, we have fixed quantities of the factors of production and a fixed state of technology. Because our wants exceed our resources, we must make choices. We must rank our wants and decide which to satisfy and which to leave unsatisfied. In using our scarce resources, we make rational choices. And to make a rational choice, we must determine the costs and benefits of the alternatives.

Your first task in this chapter is to learn about an economic model of scarcity, choice, and opportunity cost—a model called the production possibilities frontier.

Production Possibilities Frontier

Production possibilities frontier
The boundary between the combinations of goods and services that can be produced and the combinations that cannot be produced, given the available factors of production and the state of technology.

The **production possibilities frontier** is the boundary between the combinations of goods and services that can be produced and the combinations that cannot be produced, given the available factors of production—land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship—and the state of technology.

Although we produce millions of different goods and services, we can visualize the limits to production most easily if we imagine a simpler world that produces just two goods. Imagine an economy that produces only DVDs and cell phones. All the land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship available gets used to produce these two goods.

Land can be used for movie studios and DVD factories or cell-phone factories. Labor can be trained to work as movie actors, camera and sound crews, movie producers and DVD makers or as cell-phone makers. Capital can be used for making movies, making and coating disks, and transferring images to disks, or for the equipment that makes cell phones. Entrepreneurs can put their creative talents to managing movie studios and running electronics businesses that make DVDs or to running cell-phone businesses. In every case, the more resources that are used to produce DVDs, the fewer are left to produce cell phones.

Suppose that if no factors of production are allocated to producing cell phones, the maximum number of DVDs that can be produced is 15 million a year. So one production possibility is no cell phones and 15 million DVDs. Another possibility is to allocate sufficient resources to produce 1 million cell phones a year. But these resources must be taken from DVD factories. Suppose that the economy can now produce only 14 million DVDs a year. As resources are moved from producing DVDs to producing cell phones, the economy produces more cell phones but fewer DVDs.

The table in Figure 3.1 illustrates these two combinations of cell phones and DVDs as possibilities *A* and *B*. Suppose that *C*, *D*, *E*, and *F* are other combinations of the quantities of these two goods that the economy can produce. Possibility *F* uses all the resources to produce 5 million cell phones a year and allocates no resources to producing DVDs. These six possibilities are alternative combinations of the quantities of the two goods that the economy can produce by *using all of its resources, given the technology.*

The graph in Figure 3.1 illustrates the production possibilities frontier, *PPF*, for cell phones and DVDs. Each point on the graph labeled *A* through *F* represents the possibility in the table identified by the same letter. For example, point *B* represents the production of 1 million cell phones and 14 million DVDs. These quantities also appear in the table as possibility *B*.

The *PPF* shows the limits to production *with the available resources and technology*. If either resources or technology change, the *PPF* shifts. More resources or better technology shift it outward and a loss of resources shifts it inward.

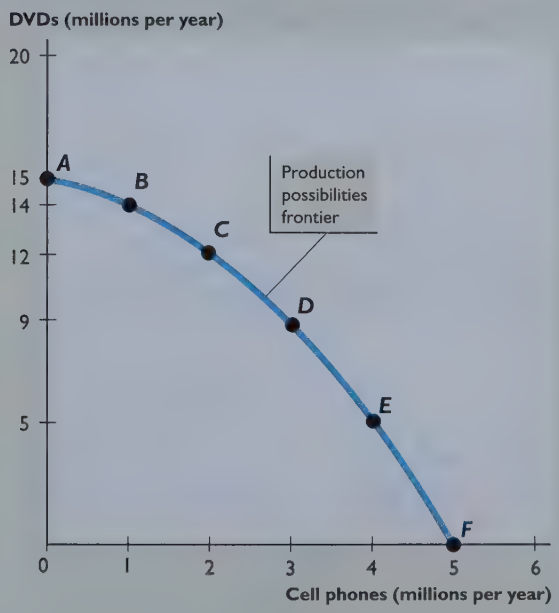
The *PPF* is a valuable tool for illustrating the effects of scarcity and its consequences. The *PPF* puts three features of production possibilities in sharp focus. They are the distinctions between

- Attainable and unattainable combinations
- Efficient and inefficient production
- Tradeoffs and free lunches

FIGURE 3.1

The Production Possibilities Frontier

MyEconLab Animation



Cell phones (millions)	0	1	2	3	4	5
DVDs (millions)	15	14	12	9	5	0
Possibility	*A*	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*

The table and the graph show the production possibilities frontier for cell phones and DVDs.

Point *A* tells us that if the economy produces no cell phones, the maximum quantity of DVDs it can produce is 15 million a year. Each point *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, *E*, and *F* on the graph represents the possibility in the table identified by the same letter. The line passing through these points is the production possibilities frontier.

Attainable and Unattainable Combinations

Because the *PPF* shows the *limits* to production, it separates attainable combinations from unattainable ones. The economy can produce combinations of cell phones and DVDs that are smaller than those on the *PPF*, and it can produce any of the combinations *on* the *PPF*. These combinations of cell phones and DVDs are attainable. But it is impossible to produce combinations that are larger than those on the *PPF*. These combinations are unattainable.

Figure 3.2 emphasizes the attainable and unattainable combinations. Only the points on the *PPF* and inside it (in the orange area) are attainable. The combinations of cell phones and DVDs beyond the *PPF* (in the white area), such as the combination at point *G*, are unattainable. These points illustrate combinations that cannot be produced with the current resources and technology. The *PPF* tells us that the economy can produce 4 million cell phones and 5 million DVDs at point *E or* 2 million cell phones and 12 million DVDs at point *C*. But the economy cannot produce 4 million cell phones and 12 million DVDs at point *G*.

Efficient and Inefficient Production

Production efficiency
A situation in which the economy is getting all that it can from its resources and cannot produce more of one good or service without producing less of something else.

Production efficiency occurs when the economy is getting all that it can from its resources. When production is efficient it is not possible to produce more of one good or service without producing less of something else. For production to be efficient, there must be full employment—not just of labor but of all the available factors of production—and each resource must be assigned to the task that it performs comparatively better than other resources can.

FIGURE 3.2
Attainable and Unattainable Combinations

MyEconLab Animation

The production possibilities frontier, *PPF*, separates attainable combinations from unattainable ones. The economy can produce at any point *inside* the *PPF* (the orange area) or at any point *on* the frontier. Any point outside the production possibilities frontier, such as point *G*, is unattainable.

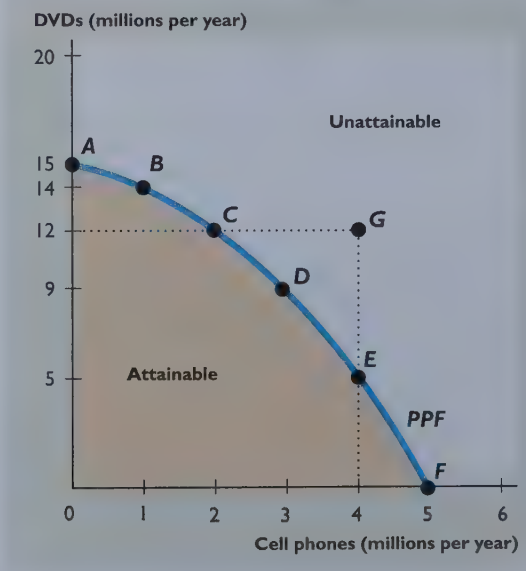


Figure 3.3 illustrates the distinction between efficient and inefficient production. With *inefficient* production, the economy might be producing 3 million cell phones and 5 million DVDs at point *H*. With an *efficient* use of the economy's resources, it is possible to produce at a point on the *PPF* such as point *D* or *E*. At point *D*, there are more DVDs and the same quantity of cell phones as at point *H*. And at point *E*, there are more cell phones and the same quantity of DVDs as at point *H*. At points *D* and *E*, production is efficient.

Tradeoffs and Free Lunches

A **tradeoff** is an exchange—giving up one thing to get something else. You trade off income for a better grade when you decide to cut back on the hours you spend on your weekend job and allocate the time to extra study. The Ford Motor Company faces a tradeoff when it cuts the production of trucks and uses the resources saved to produce more hybrid SUVs. The federal government faces a tradeoff when it cuts NASA's space exploration program and allocates more resources to homeland security. As a society, we face a tradeoff when we decide to cut down a forest and destroy the habitat of the spotted owl.

Tradeoff
An exchange—giving up one thing to get something else.

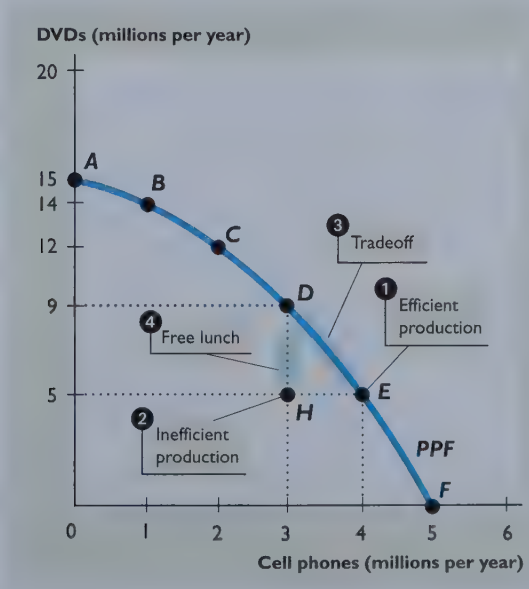
The production possibilities frontier illustrates the idea of a tradeoff. The *PPF* in Figure 3.3 shows how. If the economy produces at point *E* and people want to produce more DVDs, they must forgo some cell phones. In the move from point *E* to point *D*, people trade off cell phones for DVDs.

Economists often express the central idea of economics—that choices involve tradeoff—with the saying "There is no such thing as a free lunch." A *free lunch* is a gift—getting something without giving up something else. What does the

FIGURE 3.3

Efficient and Inefficient Production, Tradeoffs, and Free Lunches

MyEconLab Animation



1. When production occurs at a point on the *PPF*, such as point *E*, resources are used efficiently.
2. When production occurs at a point inside the *PPF*, such as point *H*, resources are used inefficiently.
3. When production is efficient—on the *PPF*—the economy faces a tradeoff. To move from point *E* to point *D* requires that some cell phones be given up for more DVDs.
4. When production is inefficient—inside the *PPF*—there is a free lunch. To move from point *H* to point *D* does not involve a tradeoff.

famous saying mean? Suppose some resources are not being used or are not being used efficiently. Isn't it then possible to avoid a tradeoff and get a free lunch?

The answer is yes. You can see why in Figure 3.3. If production is taking place *inside* the *PPF* at point *H*, then it is possible to move to point *D* and increase the production of DVDs by using currently unused resources or by using resources in their most productive way. Nothing is forgone to increase production—there is a free lunch.

When production is efficient—at a point on the *PPF*—choosing to produce more of one good involves a tradeoff. But if production is inefficient—at a point inside the *PPF*—there is a free lunch. More of some goods and services can be produced without producing less of any others.

So "there is no such thing as a free lunch" means that when resources are used efficiently, every choice involves a tradeoff. Because economists view people as making rational choices, they expect that resources will be used efficiently. That is why they emphasize the tradeoff idea and deny the existence of free lunches. We might *sometimes* get a free lunch, but we *almost always* face a tradeoff.

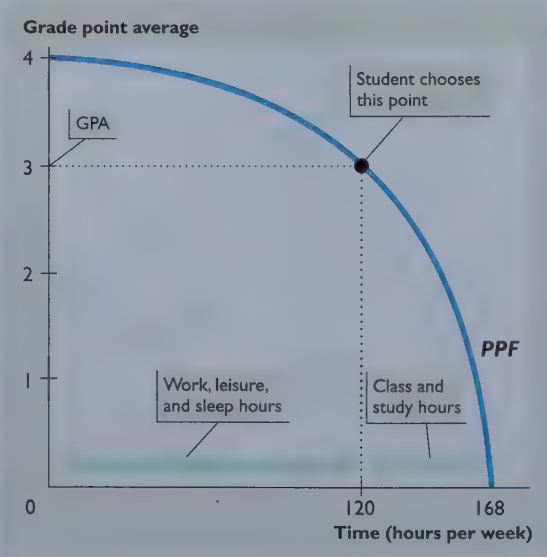
EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Production Possibilities Frontier

Two "goods" that concern you a great deal are your grade point average (GPA) and the amount of time you have available for leisure or earning an income. You face a tradeoff. To get a higher GPA you must give up leisure or income. Your forgone leisure or forgone income is the opportunity cost of a higher GPA. Similarly, to get more leisure or more income, you must accept a lower grade. A lower grade is the opportunity cost of increased leisure or increased income.

The figure illustrates a student's *PPF*. Any point on or beneath the *PPF* is attainable and any point above the *PPF* is unattainable. A student who wastes time or doesn't study efficiently ends up with a lower GPA than the highest attainable from the time spent studying. But a student who works efficiently achieves a point *on* the *PPF* and achieves production efficiency.

The student in the figure allocates the scarce 168 hours a week between studying (class and study hours) and other activities (work, leisure, and sleep hours). The student attends class and studies for 48 hours each week and works or has fun (and sleeps) for the other 120 hours. With this allocation of time, and studying efficiently, the student's GPA is 3.



CHECKPOINT 3.1

Explain and illustrate the concepts of scarcity, production efficiency, and tradeoff using the production possibilities frontier.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 3.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Table 1 sets out the production possibilities of a small Pacific island economy. Draw the economy's *PPF*.

Figure 1 shows an economy's *PPF* and identifies some production points. Use this figure to work Problems **2** to **4**.

2. Which points are attainable? Explain why.
3. Which points are efficient and which points are inefficient? Explain why.
4. Which points illustrate a tradeoff? Explain why.

TABLE 1

Possibility	Fish (pounds)		Berries (pounds)
A	0	and	20
B	1	and	18
C	2	and	15
D	3	and	11
E	4	and	6
F	5	and	0

In the News

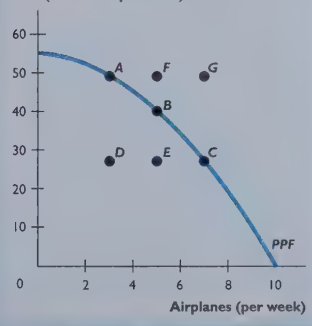
Loss of honeybees is less but still a threat

Honeybees are crucial for the pollination of almonds in California's Central Valley. During 2008, 30 percent of U.S. honeybees died.

Source: *USA Today*, May 20, 2009

Explain how this loss of honeybees affected the Central Valley's *PPF*.

FIGURE 1

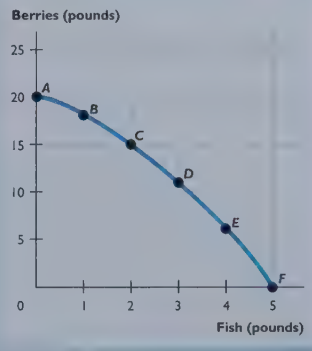


Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The *PPF* is the boundary between attainable and unattainable combinations of goods. Figure 2 shows the economy's *PPF*. The graph plots each row of the table as a point with the corresponding letter.
2. Attainable points: Any point on the *PPF* is attainable and any point below (inside) the *PPF* is attainable. Points outside the *PPF* (*F* and *G*) are unattainable. In Figure 1, the attainable points are *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E*.
3. Efficient points: Production is efficient when it is not possible to produce more of one good without producing less of another good. To be efficient, a point must be attainable, so points *F* and *G* can't be efficient. Points inside the *PPF* can't be efficient because more goods can be produced, so *D* and *E* are not efficient. The only efficient points are those *on* the *PPF*—*A*, *B*, and *C*.

   Inefficient points: Inefficiency occurs when resources are misallocated or unemployed. Such points are *inside* the *PPF*. These points are *D* and *E*.
4. Tradeoff: Begin by recalling that a tradeoff is an exchange—giving up something to get something else. A tradeoff occurs when moving along the *PPF* from one point to another point. So moving from any point *on* the *PPF*, point *A*, *B*, or *C*, to another point *on* the *PPF* illustrates a tradeoff.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

Honeybees are a resource used in the production of almonds. At the start of 2008, Central Valley farmers were at a point on their *PPF*. A 30 percent drop in honeybees reduced the quantity of almonds produced by about 30 percent. With no change in the quantity of other crops produced, the Central Valley *PPF* shifted inward.

3.2 OPPORTUNITY COST

You've seen that moving from one point to another on the *PPF* involves a tradeoff. But what are the terms of the tradeoff? *How much* of one item must be forgone to obtain an additional unit of another item—a large amount or a small amount? The answer is given by opportunity cost—the best thing you must give up to get something (see p. 9). We can use the *PPF* to calculate opportunity cost.

The Opportunity Cost of a Cell Phone

The opportunity cost of a cell phone is the number of DVDs forgone to get an additional cell phone. It is calculated as the number of DVDs forgone divided by the number of cell phones gained.

Figure 3.4 illustrates the calculation. At point *A*, the quantities produced are zero cell phones and 15 million DVDs; and at point *B*, the quantities produced are 1 million cell phones and 14 million DVDs. To gain 1 million cell phones by moving from point *A* to point *B*, 1 million DVDs are forgone, so the opportunity cost of 1 cell phone is 1 DVD.

At point *C*, the quantities produced are 2 million cell phones and 12 million DVDs. To gain 1 million cell phones by moving from point *B* to point *C*, 2 million DVDs are forgone. Now the opportunity cost of 1 cell phone is 2 DVDs.

If you repeat these calculations, moving from *C* to *D*, *D* to *E*, and *E* to *F*, you will obtain the opportunity costs shown in the table and the graph.

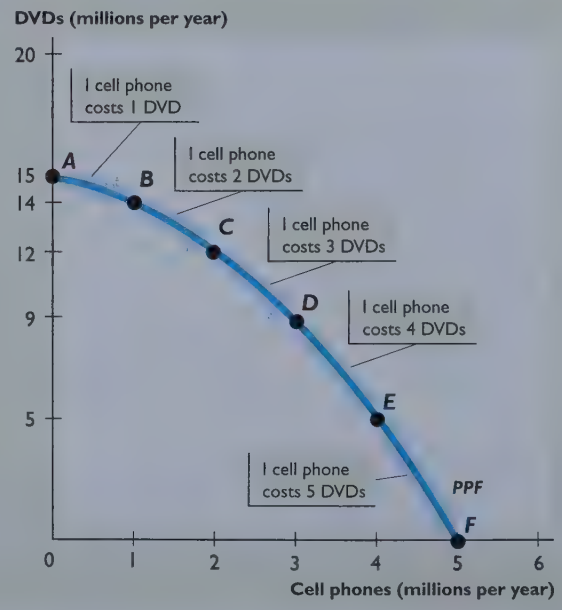
FIGURE 3.4

Calculating the Opportunity Cost of a Cell Phone

MyEconLab Animation

Movement along *PPF*	Decrease in quantity of DVDs	Increase in quantity of cell phones	Decrease in DVDs divided by increase in cell phones
A to *B*	1 million	1 million	1 DVD per phone
B to *C*	2 million	1 million	2 DVDs per phone
C to *D*	3 million	1 million	3 DVDs per phone
D to *E*	4 million	1 million	4 DVDs per phone
E to *F*	5 million	1 million	5 DVDs per phone

Along the *PPF* from *A* to *F*, the opportunity cost of a cell phone increases as the quantity of cell phones produced increases.



Opportunity Cost and the Slope of the *PPF*

Look at the numbers that we've just calculated for the opportunity cost of a cell phone and notice that they follow a striking pattern. The opportunity cost of a cell phone increases as the quantity of cell phones produced increases.

The magnitude of the *slope* of the *PPF* measures the opportunity cost. Because the *PPF* in Figure 3.4 is bowed outward, its slope changes and gets steeper as the quantity of cell phones produced increases.

When a small quantity of cell phones is produced—between points *A* and *B*—the *PPF* has a gentle slope and the opportunity cost of a cell phone is low. A given increase in the quantity of cell phones costs a small decrease in the quantity of DVDs. When a large quantity of cell phones is produced—between points *E* and *F*—the *PPF* is steep and the opportunity cost of a cell phone is high. A given increase in the quantity of cell phones costs a large decrease in the quantity of DVDs. Figure 3.5 shows the increasing opportunity cost of a cell phone.

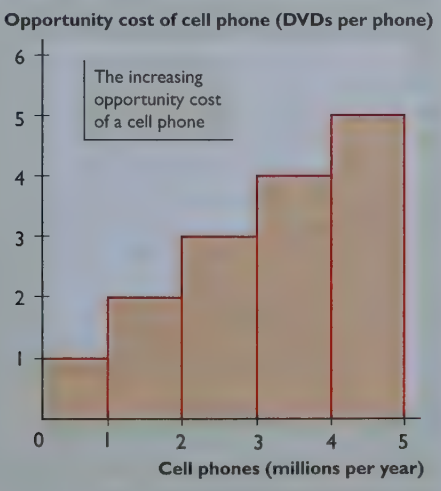
Opportunity Cost Is a Ratio

The opportunity cost of a cell phone is the *ratio* of DVDs forgone to cell phones gained. Similarly, the opportunity cost of a DVD is the *ratio* of cell phones forgone to DVDs gained. So the opportunity cost of a DVD is equal to the inverse of the opportunity cost of a cell phone. For example, moving along the *PPF* in Figure 3.4 from *C* to *D* the opportunity cost of a cell phone is 3 DVDs. Moving along the *PPF* in the opposite direction, from *D* to *C*, the opportunity cost of a DVD is 1/3 of a cell phone.

FIGURE 3.5

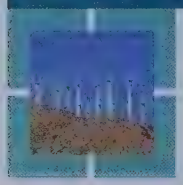
The Opportunity Cost of a Cell Phone

MyEconLab Animation



Cell phones (millions)	0 to 1	1 to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5
Opportunity cost (DVDs per phone)	1	2	3	4	5

Because the *PPF* in Figure 3.4 is bowed outward, the opportunity cost of a cell phone increases as the quantity of cell phones produced increases.



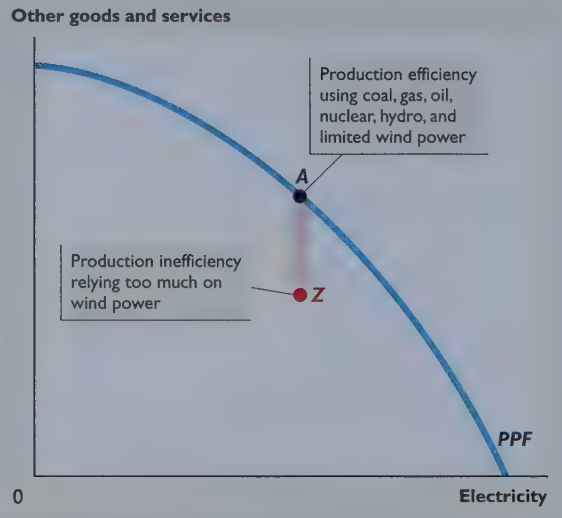
EYE on the ENVIRONMENT

Is Wind Power Free?

Wind power is not free. To use it, we must give up huge amounts of other goods and services to build wind turbines and transmission lines.

Wind turbines can produce electricity only when there is wind, which turns out, at best, to be 40 percent of the time and, on average, about 25 percent of the time. Also some of the best wind farm locations are a long way from major population centers, so transmission lines would be long and power transmission losses large.

If we produced 55 percent of our electricity using South Dakota wind power, we would be operating inside the *PPF* at a point such as *Z*.



Increasing Opportunity Costs Are Everywhere

Just about every production activity that you can think of has increasing opportunity cost. We allocate the most skillful farmers and the most fertile land to producing food, and we allocate the best doctors and the least fertile land to producing health-care services. Some resources are equally productive in both activities. If we shift these equally productive resources away from farming to hospitals, we get an increase in health care at a low opportunity cost. But if we keep increasing health-care services, we must eventually build hospitals on the most fertile land and get the best farmers to become hospital porters. The production of food drops drastically and the increase in the production of health-care services is small. The opportunity cost of a unit of health-care services rises. Similarly, if we shift resources away from health care toward farming, we must eventually use more skilled doctors and nurses as farmers and more hospitals as hydroponic tomato factories. The decrease in the production of health-care services is large, but the increase in food production is small. The opportunity cost of a unit of food rises.

Your Increasing Opportunity Cost

Flip back to the *PPF* in *Eye on Your Life* on page 64 and think about its implications for your opportunity cost of a higher grade.

What is the opportunity cost of spending time with your friends in terms of the grade you might receive on your exam? What is the opportunity cost of a higher grade in terms of the activities you give up to study? Do you face increasing opportunity costs in these activities?

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Guns Versus Butter

Guns versus butter is the classic economic tradeoff. "Guns" stand for defense goods and services and "butter" stands for food and more generally for all other goods and services. Recently, the U.S. economy has been producing more guns and less butter.

Figure 1 shows the fluctuations in the quantity of defense goods and services produced. (The quantity is measured by expenditure on defense using the prices in 2005 to remove the effects of price changes.) The quantity of defense goods and services produced increases in times of war and decreases in times of peace.

Figure 2 illustrates the recent changes in the production of defense goods and services using the *PPF*.

During the late 1980s and the 1990s, the *PPF* was PPF_0. President Reagan raised the stakes in the Cold War between the United States and the (former) Soviet Union by a big expansion of military expenditure and we were at point *A*. By the mid-1990s, the Soviet Union had collapsed and we enjoyed a peace dividend by moving along PPF_0 to *B*.

During the next decade, production possibilities expanded from PPF_0 to PPF_1. Defense production and the production of other goods and services increased, and in 2001 we operated at point *C*. Then, in response to the attacks of September 11, 2001, defense spending increased again and by 2011 we had moved along PPF_1 to point *D*.

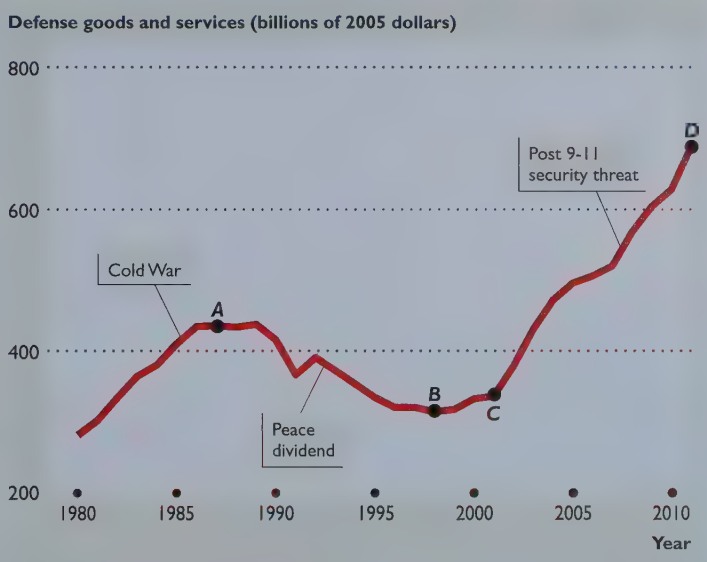


Figure 1 The quantity of defense goods produced

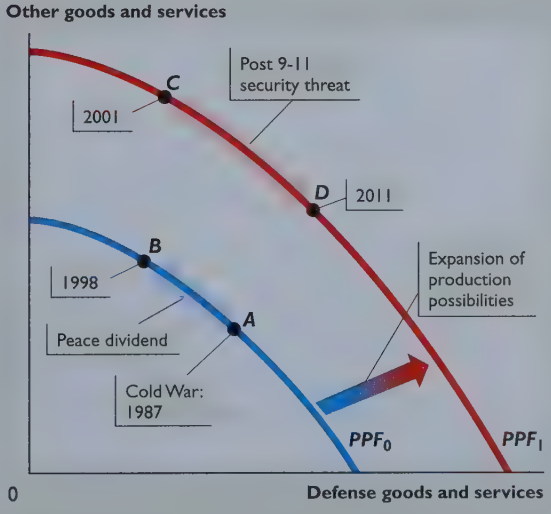


Figure 2 The guns versus butter tradeoff

SOURCE OF DATA: Budget of the United States Government and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 3.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 3.2

Calculate opportunity cost.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows Robinson Crusoe's production possibilities.

TABLE 1

Possibility	Fish (pounds)		Berries (pounds)
A	0	and	36
B	4.0	and	35
C	7.5	and	33
D	10.5	and	30
E	13.0	and	26
F	15.0	and	21
G	16.5	and	15
H	17.5	and	8
I	18.0	and	0

1. What is his opportunity cost of a pound of berries when Crusoe increases the quantity of berries from 21 pounds to 26 pounds and production is efficient? Does this opportunity cost increase as he produces more berries?
2. If Crusoe is producing 10 pounds of fish and 21 pounds of berries, what is his opportunity cost of an extra pound of berries? And what is his opportunity cost of an extra pound of fish? Explain your answers.

In the News

Obama drives up miles-per-gallon requirements

Emissions from all new vehicles must be cut from 354 grams to 250 grams. To meet this new standard, the price of a new vehicle will rise by $1,300.

Source: *USA Today*, May 20, 2009

Calculate the opportunity cost of reducing the emission level by 1 gram.

Solutions to Practice Problems

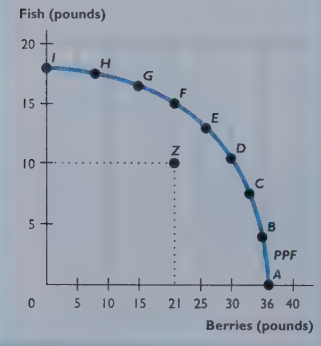
1. If Crusoe's production is efficient, he is producing at a point *on* his *PPF*. His opportunity cost of an extra pound of berries is the quantity of fish he must give up to get the berries. It is calculated as the decrease in the quantity of fish divided by the increase in the quantity of berries as he moves along his *PPF* in the direction of producing more berries.

   To increase the quantity of berries from 21 pounds to 26 pounds (from row *F* to row *E* of Table 1), production of fish decreases from 15 pounds to 13 pounds. To gain 5 pounds of berries, Crusoe must forgo 2 pounds of fish. The opportunity cost of 1 pound of berries is the 2 pounds of fish forgone divided by 5 pounds of berries gained—2/5 of a pound of fish.

   Crusoe's opportunity cost of berries increases as he produces more berries. To see why, move Crusoe from row *E* to row *D* in Table 1. His production of berries increases by 4 pounds and his production of fish falls by 2.5 pounds. His opportunity cost of 1 pound of berries increases to 5/8 of a pound of fish.

2. Figure 1 graphs the data in Table 1 and shows Crusoe's *PPF*. If Crusoe is producing 10 pounds of fish and 21 pounds of berries, he is producing at point *Z*. Point *Z* is a point *inside* Crusoe's *PPF*. When Crusoe produces 21 pounds of berries, he has enough time available to produce 15 pounds of fish at point *F* on his *PPF*. To produce more fish, Crusoe can move from *Z* toward *F* on his *PPF* and forgo no berries. His opportunity cost of a pound of fish is zero.

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

By spending $1,300 extra on a new car, you forgo $1,300 of other goods. With a new car, your emissions fall from 354 grams to 250 grams, a reduction of 104 grams. The opportunity cost of a 1-gram reduction in emissions is $1,300 of other goods divided by 104 grams, or $12.50 of other goods.

3.3 ECONOMIC GROWTH

Economic growth is the sustained expansion of production possibilities. Our economy grows when we develop better technologies for producing goods and services; improve the quality of labor by education, on-the-job training, and work experience; and acquire more machines to help us produce.

Economic growth
The sustained expansion of production possibilities.

To study economic growth, we must change the two goods and look at the production possibilities for a consumption good and a capital good. A cell phone is a consumption good and a cell-phone factory is a capital good. By using today's resources to produce cell-phone factories, the economy can expand its future production possibilities. The greater the production of new capital—number of new cell-phone factories—the faster is the expansion of production possibilities.

Figure 3.6 shows how the *PPF* can expand. If no new factories are produced (at point *L*), production possibilities do not expand and the *PPF* stays at its original position. By producing fewer cell phones and using resources to produce 2 new cell-phone factories (at point *K*), production possibilities expand and the *PPF* rotates outward to the new *PPF*.

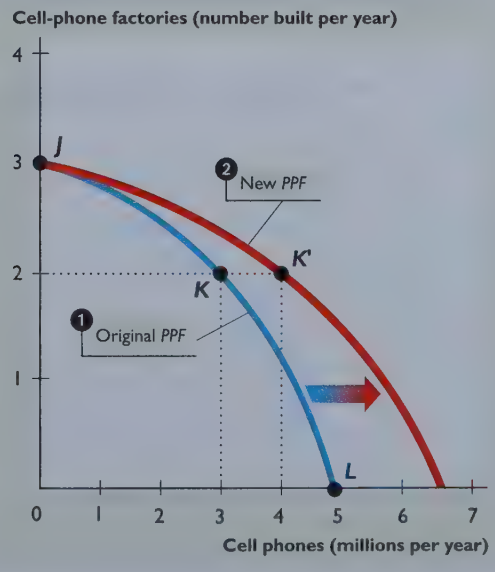
But economic growth is *not* free. To make it happen, consumption must decrease. The move from *L* to *K* in Figure 3.6 means forgoing 2 million cell phones now. The opportunity cost of producing more cell-phone factories is producing fewer cell phones today.

Also, economic growth is no magic formula for abolishing scarcity. Economic growth shifts the *PPF* outward, but on the new *PPF* we continue to face opportunity costs. To keep producing capital, current consumption must be less than its maximum possible level.

FIGURE 3.6

Expanding Production Possibilities

MyEconLab Animation



1. If firms allocate no resources to producing cell-phone factories and produce 5 million cell phones a year at point *L*, the *PPF* doesn't change.
2. If firms decrease cell-phone production to 3 million a year and produce 2 cell-phone factories, at point *K*, production possibilities will expand. After a year, the *PPF* shifts outward to the new *PPF* and production can move to point *K'*.

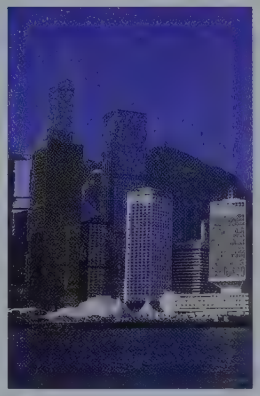
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

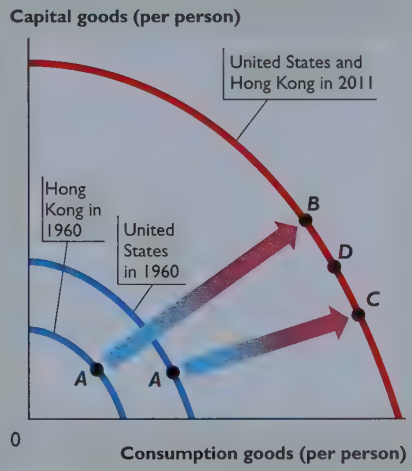
Hong Kong's Rapid Economic Growth

Hong Kong's production possibilities per person were 25 percent of those of the United States in 1960. By 2011, they had grown to become equal to U.S. production possibilities per person. Hong Kong grew faster than the United States because it allocated more of its resources to accumulating capital and less to consumption than did the United States.

In 1960, the United States and Hong Kong produced at point *A* on their respective *PPFs*. In 2011, Hong Kong was at point *B* and the United States was at point *C*.

If Hong Kong continues to produce at a point such as *B*, it will grow more rapidly than the United States and its *PPF* will eventually shift out beyond the *PPF* of the United States. But if Hong Kong produces at a point such as *D*, the pace of expansion of its *PPF* will slow.





MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 3.3 and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Possibility	Education services (graduates)	Consumption goods (units)
A	1,000	0
B	750	1,000
C	500	2,000
D	0	3,000

CHECKPOINT 3.3

Explain what makes production possibilities expand.

Practice Problems

1. Table 1 shows an economy that produces education services and consumption goods. If the economy currently produces 500 graduates a year and 2,000 units of consumption goods, what is the opportunity cost of one additional graduate?
2. How does an economy grow? Explain why economic growth is not free.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. By increasing the number of graduates from 500 to 750, the quantity of consumption goods produced decreases from 2,000 to 1,000 units. The opportunity cost of a graduate is the decrease in consumption goods divided by the increase in the number of graduates. That is, the opportunity cost of a graduate is 1,000 units divided by 250, or 4 units of consumption goods.
2. An economy grows if it expands its production possibilities—if it develops better technologies; improves the quality of labor by education, on-the-job training, and work experience; and acquires more machines to use in production. Economic growth occurs when resources are used today to produce better technologies, better quality labor, or more machines. Those resources cannot be used to produce goods and services today, so the cost of economic growth is the goods and services forgone today. Economic growth is not free.

3.4 SPECIALIZATION AND TRADE

When Adam Smith visited a pin factory (see p. 13), he discovered that 10 people, each specializing in a small task, could make 48,000 pins a day. By dividing pin-making into small parts, what he called the *division of labor*, he found that people were 240 times as productive as they would be if each person performed all the tasks needed to make a pin.

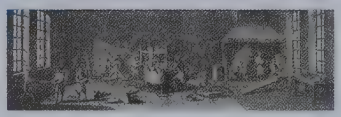
You can see the productivity of specialization and the division of labor in many everyday places. One of these is a fast-food restaurant. One person specializes in keeping the kitchen stocked with bread, salad materials, meat, sauces, boxes, and wrappers. One works the grill and another the fry maker. Another specializes in assembling the meals. Yet another takes the customers' orders and handles payment. Another has the job of keeping things clean and hygenic.

Imagine how long you would have to wait for your burger if one person performed all these tasks. You place your order and then wait while your friendly server disappeared into the kitchen and emerged 15 minutes later with your not-so-fast-food order.

The productivity gain from specialization makes some people more productive than others. The server at McDonald's can take orders and payment in less time than the grill operator would take to do the same job. And the grill operator can make more burgers per hour than the server could make.

When one person (or nation) is more productive than another—needs fewer inputs or takes less time to produce a good or perform a production task, we say that person (or nation) has an **absolute advantage**.

You are going to discover another way in which people gain by specializing: by producing the good in which they have a *comparative advantage.*



In an 18th century pin factory ...

... and a 21st century fast-food kitchen, specialization boosts productivity.

Absolute advantage
When one person (or nation) is more productive than another—needs fewer inputs or takes less time to produce a good or perform a production task.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

No One Knows How to Make a Pencil

Not many products in today's world are as simple as a pencil. Yet the story of how the pencil in your hand got there illustrates the astonishing power of specialization and trade.

When you hold a pencil, you're holding cedar grown in Oregon, graphite mined in Sri Lanka, clay from Mississippi, wax from Mexico, rapeseed oil grown in the Dutch East Indies, pumice from Italy, copper from Arizona and zinc from Alaska.

These materials were harvested and mined by thousands of workers equipped with hundreds of specialized tools, all of which were manufactured by thousands of other workers using hundreds more specialized tools. These tools were in turn made of steel, itself made from iron ore, and from other minerals and materials.

Rail, road, and ocean transportation systems moved all these things to custom-built factories that made graphite "leads," erasers, brass to hold the erasers, paint, and glue.

Finally, all these components were bought by a pencil factory, which, with its millions of dollar's worth of custom machinery, put them all together.

Millions of people contributed to making that pencil, many of whom don't even know what a pencil is and *not one of whom knows how to make a pencil.* No one directed all these people. Each worker and business went about its self-interested specialized task trading with each other in markets.

Adapted from *I Pencil*, by Leonard Read, Foundation for Economic Education, 1958.

Comparative Advantage

Comparative advantage
The ability of a person to perform an activity or produce a good or service at a lower opportunity cost than anyone else.

A person has a **comparative advantage** in an activity if that person can perform the activity at a lower opportunity cost than anyone else. Notice the contrast between *absolute* advantage and *comparative* advantage. Absolute advantage is about productivity—how long does it take to produce a unit of a good. Comparative advantage is about opportunity cost—how much of some other good must be forgone to produce a unit of a good.

Let's explore the idea of comparative advantage and make it more concrete by looking at production in two quite different smoothie bars: one operated by Liz and the other operated by Joe.

Liz's Smoothie Bar

Liz produces smoothies and salads. In Liz's high-tech bar, she can turn out *either* a smoothie *or* a salad every 2 minutes. If she spends all her time making smoothies, she produces 30 an hour. If she spends all her time making salads, she also produces 30 an hour. If she splits her time equally between the two, she can produce 15 smoothies *and* 15 salads an hour. For each additional smoothie Liz produces, she must decrease her production of salads by one, and for each additional salad Liz produces, she must decrease her production of smoothies by one. So

Liz's opportunity cost of producing 1 smoothie is 1 salad,

and

Liz's opportunity cost of producing 1 salad is 1 smoothie.

Liz's customers buy smoothies and salads in equal quantities, so Liz splits her time equally between the items and produces 15 smoothies and 15 salads an hour.

TABLE 3.1 LIZ'S PRODUCTION POSSIBILITIES

Item	Minutes to produce 1	Quantity per hour
Smoothies	2	30
Salads	2	30

Joe's Smoothie Bar

Joe also produces both smoothies and salads. Joe's bar is smaller than Liz's, and he has only one blender—a slow, old machine. Even if Joe uses all his resources to produce smoothies, he can produce only 6 an hour. But Joe is pretty good in the salad department, so if he uses all his resources to make salads, he can produce 30 an hour. Joe's ability to make smoothies and salads is the same regardless of how he splits an hour between the two tasks. He can make a salad in 2 minutes or a smoothie in 10 minutes. For each additional smoothie Joe produces, he must decrease his production of salads by 5. And for each additional salad Joe produces, he must decrease his production of smoothies by 1/5 of a smoothie. So

Joe's opportunity cost of producing 1 smoothie is 5 salads,

and

Joe's opportunity cost of producing 1 salad is 1/5 of a smoothie.

Joe's customers, like Liz's, buy smoothies and salads in equal quantities. Joe spends 50 minutes of each hour making smoothies and 10 minutes of each hour making salads. With this division of his time, Joe produces 5 smoothies and 5 salads an hour.

TABLE 3.2 JOE'S PRODUCTION POSSIBILITIES

Item	Minutes to produce 1	Quantity per hour
Smoothies	10	6
Salads	2	30

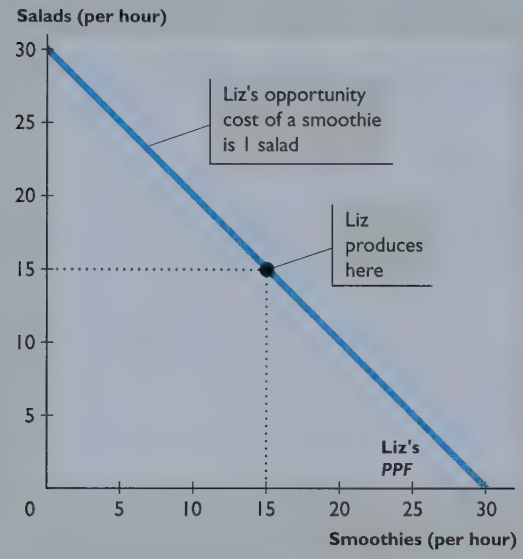
Liz's and Joe's *PPFs*

The *PPF*s in Figure 3.7 illustrate the situation we've just described. In part (a), Liz faces a *PPF* that enables her to produce 15 smoothies and 15 salads. In part (b), Joe

FIGURE 3.7

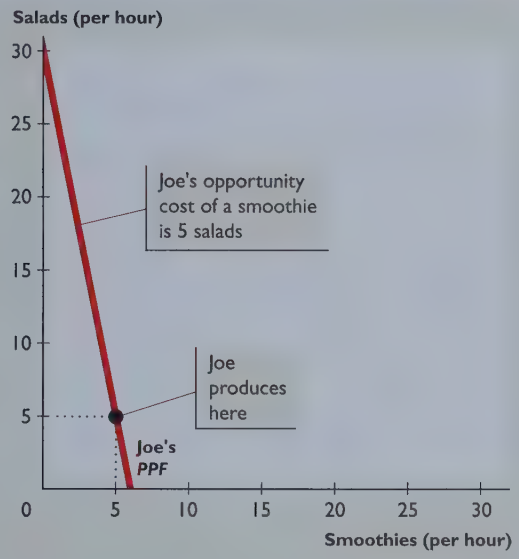
Production Possibilities Frontiers

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Liz's *PPF* and production

Liz can produce 30 smoothies per hour or 30 salads per hour or any other combination along her *PPF* in part (a). Liz chooses to produce 15 smoothies and 15 salads per hour.



(b) Joe's *PPF* and production

Joe can produce 6 smoothies per hour or 30 salads per hour or any other combination along his *PPF* in part (b). Joe chooses to produce 5 smoothies and 5 salads per hour.

faces a *PPF* that enables him to produce 5 smoothies and 5 salads. On Liz's *PPF*, one smoothie costs one salad. On Joe's *PPF*, one smoothie costs 5 salads.

Liz's Greater Productivity

You can see from the numbers that describe the two smoothie bars that Liz is three times as productive as Joe—her 15 smoothies and 15 salads an hour are three times Joe's 5 smoothies and 5 salads. Liz is more productive than Joe in producing both smoothies and salads. But Liz has a comparative advantage in only one of the activities.

Liz's Comparative Advantage

In which of the two activities does Liz have a *comparative* advantage? Recall that comparative advantage is a situation in which one person's opportunity cost of producing a good is lower than another person's opportunity cost of producing that same good.

You've seen that Liz's opportunity cost of a smoothie is 1 salad, whereas Joe's opportunity cost of a smoothie is 5 salads. To produce 1 smoothie, Liz must forgo 1 salad, while Joe must forgo 5 salads. So, because Liz forgoes fewer salads to make a smoothie, she has a comparative advantage in producing smoothies.

What about Joe? Doesn't he have a comparative advantage at anything? He does as you're about to see.

Joe's Comparative Advantage

Look at the opportunity costs of producing salads. For Liz, that opportunity cost is 1 smoothie. But for Joe, a salad costs only 1/5 of a smoothie. Because Joe's opportunity cost of a salad is less than Liz's, Joe has a comparative advantage in producing salads.

It is always true that if one person has a comparative advantage in producing a good, others have a comparative advantage in producing some other good.

TABLE 3.3 LIZ AND JOE GAIN FROM TRADE

(a) Before Trade	Liz	Joe
Smoothies	15	5
Salads	15	5
(b) Specialization	**Liz**	**Joe**
Smoothies	30	0
Salads	0	30
(c) Trade		
Smoothies	sell 10	buy 10
Salads	buy 20	sell 20
(d) After Trade		
Smoothies	20	10
Salads	20	10
(e) Gains from Trade		
Smoothies	+5	+5
Salads	+5	+5

Achieving Gains from Trade

Liz and Joe run into each other one evening in a singles bar. After a few minutes of getting acquainted, Liz tells Joe about her amazingly profitable smoothie business. Her only problem, she tells Joe, is that she wishes she could produce more because potential customers leave when her lines get too long.

Joe isn't sure whether to risk spoiling his chances by telling Liz about his own struggling business. But he takes the risk. When he explains to Liz that he spends 50 minutes of every hour making 5 smoothies and 10 minutes making 5 salads, Liz's eyes pop. "Have I got a deal for you!" she exclaims.

Here's the deal that Liz sketches on a paper napkin. Joe stops making smoothies and allocates all his time to producing salads. Liz stops making salads and allocates all her time to producing smoothies. That is, they both specialize in producing the good in which they have a comparative advantage—see Table 3.3(b). They then trade: Liz sells Joe 10 smoothies and Joe sells Liz 20 salads—the price of a smoothie is 2 salads—see Table 3.3(c).

After the trade, Joe has 10 salads (the 30 he produces minus the 20 he sells to Liz) and the 10 smoothies that he buys from Liz. So Joe doubles the quantities of smoothies and salads he can sell. Liz has 20 smoothies (the 30 she produces minus the 10 she sells to Joe) and the 20 salads she buys from Joe. See Table 3.3(d). From specialization and trade, each gains 5 smoothies and 5 salads—see Table 3.3(e).

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Comparative Advantage

What you have learned in this chapter has huge implications for the way you organize your life. It also has implications for the position that you take on the controversial issue of offshore outsourcing.

Just as an economy expands its production possibilities by accumulating capital, so also will you expand your production possibilities by accumulating human capital. That is what you're doing right now in school.

By discovering your comparative advantage, you will be able to focus on producing the items that make you as well off as possible. Think hard about what you enjoy doing and that you do comparatively better than others. That, most likely, is where your comparative advantage lies.

In today's world, it is a good idea to try to remain flexible so that you can switch jobs if you discover that your comparative advantage has changed.

Looking beyond your own self-interest, are you going to be a voice that supports or opposes offshore outsourcing?

You've learned in this chapter that regardless of whether outsourcing remains inside the United States, as it does with Liz and Joe at their smoothie bars, or is global like the outsourcing of jobs by U. S. producers to India, both parties gain from trade.

Americans pay less for goods and services and Indians earn higher incomes. But some Americans lose, at least in the short run.

Liz draws a figure (Figure 3.8) to illustrate her idea. The blue *PPF* is Liz's and the red *PPF* is Joe's. They are each producing at the points marked *A*. Liz's proposal is that they each produce at the points marked *B*. They then trade smoothies and salads.

There is a range of prices at which they might trade. If the price is 5 salads per smoothie (or equivalently, 1/5 smoothies per salad), Liz gets all the gains. If the price is 1 salad per smoothie (1 smoothie per salad), Joe gets all the gains.

Liz suggests that they trade at a price of 2 salads per smoothie (1/2 a smoothie per salad). This price turns out to give each of them equal gains.

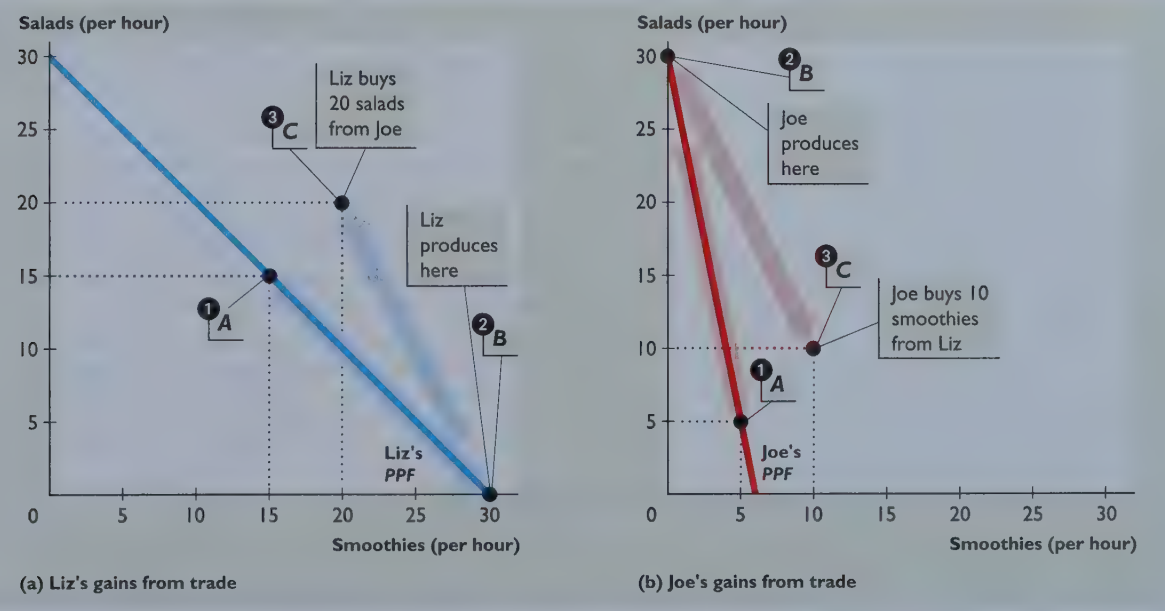
Liz gets salads for 1/2 a smoothie each, which is less than the 1 smoothie that it costs her to produce them. Joe gets smoothies for 2 salads each, which is less than the 5 salads it costs him to produce them. Each moves to the points marked *C* where Liz has 20 smoothies and 20 salads, 5 of each more than she has producing only for herself. And Joe has 10 smoothies and 10 salads, also 5 more of each than he has producing only for himself. Because of the gains from trade, total production increases by 10 smoothies and 10 salads.

Notice that the points *C* are *outside* Liz's and Joe's *PPF*s. This is the magic of the gains from trade. Everyone gains and everyone can enjoy quantities of goods and services that exceed their own ability to produce.

FIGURE 3.8

The Gains from Specialization and Trade

MyEconLab Animation



1. Liz and Joe each produce at point *A* on their respective *PPF*s. Liz has a comparative advantage in producing smoothies, and Joe has a comparative advantage in producing salads.
2. Joe specializes in salads and Liz specializes in smoothies, so they each produce at point *B* on their respective *PPF*s.
3. They exchange smoothies for salads at a price of 2 salads per smoothie. Each goes to point *C*—a point *outside* their individual *PPF*s. They each gain 5 salads and 5 smoothies—the quantities at point *C* minus the quantities at point *A*.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 3.4 and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1 TONY'S PRODUCTION POSSIBILITIES

Snowboards (per week)		Skis (per week)
25	and	0
20	and	10
15	and	20
10	and	30
5	and	40
0	and	50

TABLE 2 PATTY'S PRODUCTION POSSIBILITIES

Snowboards (per week)		Skis (per week)
20	and	0
10	and	5
0	and	10

CHECKPOINT 3.4

Explain how people gain from specialization and trade.

Practice Problems

Tony and Patty produce skis and snowboards. Tables 1 and 2 show their production possibilities. Each week, Tony produces 5 snowboards and 40 skis and Patty produces 10 snowboards and 5 skis.

1. Who has a comparative advantage in producing snowboards? Who has a comparative advantage in producing skis?
2. If Tony and Patty specialize and trade, what are the gains from trade?

In the News

With big boost from sugar cane, Brazil is satisfying its fuel needs

Brazil is almost self-sufficient in ethanol. Brazilian ethanol is made from sugar and costs 83¢ per gallon whereas U.S. ethanol, made from corn, costs $1.14 per gallon. The United States does not import ethanol.

Source: *The New York Times*, April 12, 2006

Which country has a comparative advantage in producing ethanol? Explain why both the United States and Brazil can gain from specialization and trade.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The person with a comparative advantage in snowboards is the one who has the lower opportunity cost of producing a snowboard. Tony's production possibilities show that to produce 5 more snowboards he must produce 10 fewer skis. So Tony's opportunity cost of a snowboard is 2 skis.

   Patty's production possibilities show that to produce 10 more snowboards, she must produce 5 fewer skis. So Patty's opportunity cost of a snowboard is 1/2 a ski. Patty has a comparative advantage in snowboards because her opportunity cost of a snowboard is less than Tony's. Tony's comparative advantage is in skis. For each ski produced, Tony must forgo making 1/2 a snowboard, whereas Patty must forgo making 2 snowboards for a ski. So Tony's opportunity cost of a ski is lower than Patty's.
2. Patty has a comparative advantage in snowboards, so she specializes in snowboards. Tony has a comparative advantage in skis, so he specializes in skis. Patty makes 20 snowboards and Tony makes 50 skis. Before specializing, they made 15 snowboards and 45 skis. By specializing, total output increases by 5 snowboards and 5 skis. They share this gain by trading.

Solution to In the News

The cost of producing a gallon of ethanol is less in Brazil than in the United States, so Brazil has a comparative advantage in producing ethanol. If Brazil specialized in producing ethanol and the United States specialized in producing other goods (for example, movies or food) and the two countries engaged in free trade, each country can gain because it would get to a point outside its own *PPF*.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1. Explain and illustrate the concepts of scarcity, production efficiency, and tradeoff using the production possibilities frontier.

- The production possibilities frontier, *PPF*, describes the limits to what can be produced by using all the available resources efficiently.
- Points inside and on the *PPF* are attainable. Points outside the *PPF* are unattainable.
- Production at any point on the *PPF* achieves production efficiency. Production at a point inside the *PPF* is inefficient.
- When production is efficient—on the *PPF*—people face a tradeoff. If production is at a point inside the *PPF*, there is a free lunch.

2. Calculate opportunity cost.

- Along the *PPF*, the opportunity cost of x (the item measured on the x-axis) is the decrease in y (the item measured on the y-axis) divided by the increase in x.
- The opportunity cost of Y is the inverse of the opportunity cost of X.
- The opportunity cost of producing a good increases as the quantity of the good produced increases.

3. Explain what makes production possibilities expand.

- Technological change and increases in capital and human capital expand production possibilities.
- The opportunity cost of economic growth is the decrease in current consumption.

4. Explain how people gain from specialization and trade.

- A person has a comparative advantage in an activity if he or she can perform that activity at a lower opportunity cost than someone else.
- People gain by increasing the production of the item in which they have a comparative advantage and trading.

Key Terms

Absolute advantage, 73
Comparative advantage, 74
Economic growth, 71
Production efficiency, 62
Production possibilities frontier, 60
Tradeoff, 63

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 3 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Corn (bushels)		Beef (pounds)
250	and	0
200	and	300
100	and	500
0	and	600

TABLE 2

Labor (hours)	Entertainment (units)		Good food (units)
0	0	or	0
10	20	or	30
20	40	or	50
30	60	or	60
40	80	or	65
50	100	or	67

FIGURE 1

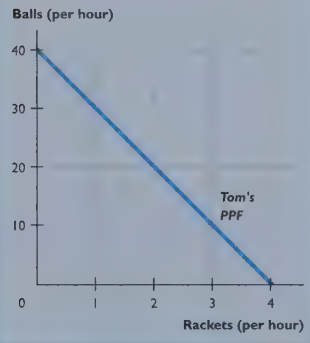
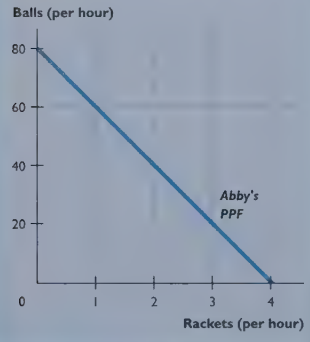


FIGURE 2



CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Table 1 shows the quantities of corn and beef that a farm can produce in a year. Draw a graph of the farm's *PPF*. Mark on the graph:
   - An inefficient combination of corn and beef—label this point *A*.
   - An unattainable combination of corn and beef—label this point *B*.
   - An efficient combination of corn and beef—label this point *C*.

Use the following information to work Problems **2** and **3**.

The people of Leisure Island have 50 hours of labor a day that can be used to produce entertainment and good food. Table 2 shows the maximum quantity of *either* entertainment *or* good food that Leisure Island can produce with different quantities of labor.

2. Is an output of 50 units of entertainment and 50 units of good food attainable and efficient? With a production of 50 units of entertainment and 50 units of good food, do the people of Leisure Island face a tradeoff?
3. What is the opportunity cost of producing an additional unit of entertainment? Explain how the opportunity cost of producing a unit of entertainment changes as more entertainment is produced.

Use the following information to work Problems **4** and **5**.

Malaria can be controlled

The World Health Organization's malaria chief says that it is too costly to try to fully eradicate the disease. He says that by using nets, medicine, and DDT it is possible to eliminate 90 percent of malaria cases. But to eliminate 100 percent of cases would be extremely costly.

Source: *The New York Times*, March 4, 2008

4. Make a graph of the production possibilities frontier with malaria control on the *x*-axis and other goods and services on the *y*-axis.
5. Describe how the opportunity cost of controlling malaria changes as more resources are used to reduce the number of malaria cases.
6. Explain how the following events influence U.S. production possibilities:
   - Some retail workers are re-employed building dams and wind farms.
   - More people take early retirement.
   - Drought devastates California's economy.

Use the following information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

Figure 1 shows Tom's production possibilities and Figure 2 shows Abby's production possibilities. Tom uses all his resources and produces 2 rackets and 20 balls an hour. Abby uses all her resources and produces 2 rackets and 40 balls an hour.

7. What is Tom's opportunity cost of producing a racket? What is Abby's opportunity cost of a racket? Who has a comparative advantage in producing rackets? Who has a comparative advantage in producing balls?
8. If Tom and Abby specialize and trade 15 balls for 1 racket, what are the gains from trade?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

Use the following information to work Problems 1 to 4.

Representatives Waxman of California and Markey of Massachusetts proposed a law to limit greenhouse gas emissions from electricity generation and require electricity producers to generate a minimum percentage of power using renewable fuels, with some rights to emit to be auctioned. The Congressional Budget Office estimated that the government would receive $846 billion from auctions and would spend $821 billion on incentive programs and compensation for higher energy prices. Electricity producers would spend $208 million a year to comply with the new rules. (Think of these dollar amounts as dollars' worth of other goods and services.)

1. Would the Waxman-Markey law achieve production efficiency?
2. Is the $846 billion that electricity producers would pay for the right to emit greenhouse gasses part of the opportunity cost of producing electricity?
3. Is the $821 billion that the government would spend on incentive programs and compensation for higher energy prices part of the opportunity cost of producing electricity?
4. Is the $208 million that electricity producers will spend to comply with the new rules part of the opportunity cost of producing electricity?
5. The people of Foodland have 40 hours of labor a day to bake pizza and bread. Table 1 shows the maximum quantity of *either* pizza *or* bread that Foodland can bake with different quantities of labor. Can Foodland produce 30 pizzas and 30 loaves of bread a day? If it can, is this output efficient, do the people of Foodland face a tradeoff, and what is the opportunity cost of producing an additional pizza?

TABLE 1

Labor (hours)	Pizzas		Bread (loaves)
0	0	or	0
10	30	or	10
20	50	or	20
30	60	or	30
40	65	or	40

Use Table 2, which shows a farm's production possibilities, to work Problems 6 and 7.

6. If the farm uses its resources efficiently, what is the opportunity cost of an increase in chicken production from 300 pounds to 500 pounds a year? Explain your answer.
7. If the farm adopted a new technology, which allows it to use fewer resources to fatten chickens, explain how the farm's production possibilities will change. Explain how the opportunity cost of producing a bushel of soybean will be affected.

TABLE 2

Soybean (bushels per year)		Chicken (pounds per year)
500	and	0
400	and	300
200	and	500
0	and	400

8. In an hour, Sue can produce 40 caps or 4 jackets and Tessa can produce 80 caps or 4 jackets. Who has a comparative advantage in producing caps? If Sue and Tessa specialize and trade, who will gain?

Use the following information to work Problems 9 to 11.

Cheap broadband's a winner

Inexpensive broadband access has created a new generation of television producers and the Internet is their native medium.

Source: *The New York Times*, December 2, 2007

9. How has inexpensive broadband changed the production possibilities of video entertainment and other goods and services?
10. Sketch a *PPF* for video entertainment and other goods and services before broadband.
11. Explain how the arrival of inexpensive broadband has changed the *PPF*.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 3 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Possibility	Fish (pounds)		Berries (pounds)
A	0	and	40
B	1	and	36
C	2	and	30
D	3	and	22
E	4	and	12
F	5	and	0

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Table 1 shows the *PPF* of an island community. Choose the best statement.
   A. This community has enough resources to produce 2 pounds of fish and 36 pounds of berries.
   B. This community cannot produce 2 pounds of fish and 36 pounds of berries because this combination is inefficient.
   C. This community will waste resources if it produces 2 pounds of fish and 22 pounds of berries.
   D. This community can produce 2 pounds of fish and 30 pounds of berries but this combination is inefficient.
2. Table 1 shows the *PPF* of an island community. Choose the best statement.
   A. Suppose that this community produces 3 pounds of fish and 20 pounds of berries. If it decides to gather more berries, it faces a tradeoff.
   B. When this community produces 4 pounds of fish and 12 pounds of berries it faces a tradeoff, but it is inefficient.
   C. Suppose that this community produces 5 pounds of fish and 0 pounds of berries. If it decides to gather some berries, it will get a free lunch.
   D. If this community produces 3 pounds of fish and 22 pounds of berries, production is efficient but to produce more fish it faces a tradeoff.
3. Table 1 shows the *PPF* of an island community. This community's opportunity cost of producing 1 pound of fish _____.
   A. is the increase in the quantity of berries gathered as the quantity of fish increases by 1 pound
   B. increases as the quantity of berries gathered increases
   C. is 10 pounds of berries if the quantity of fish increases from 2 to 3 pounds
   D. increases as the quantity of fish caught increases
4. Table 1 shows the *PPF* of an island community. Choose the best statement.
   A. When a drought hits the island, its *PPF* shifts outward.
   B. When the islanders discover a better way of catching fish, the island's *PPF* shifts outward.
   C. When islanders reduce the time they spend gathering berries, the *PPF* shifts inward.
   D. If the islanders decide to spend more time gathering berries but continue to spend the same amount of time fishing, they face a tradeoff.
5. Mary makes 10 pies and 20 cakes a day and her opportunity cost of a cake is 2 pies. Tim makes 20 pies and 10 cakes a day and his opportunity cost of a cake is 4 pies. If they specialize in the good in which they have a comparative advantage _____.
   A. Mary produces pies
   B. Tim produces pies and cakes
   C. Mary produces cakes while Tim produces pies
   D. Tim produces cakes while Mary produces pies

Why did the price of coffee soar in 2010 and 2011?

4

Demand and Supply

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Distinguish between quantity demanded and demand, and explain what determines demand.
2. Distinguish between quantity supplied and supply, and explain what determines supply.
3. Explain how demand and supply determine price and quantity in a market, and explain the effects of changes in demand and supply.

COMPETITIVE MARKETS

When you need a new pair of running shoes, want a bagel and a latte, or need to fly home for Thanksgiving, you must find a place where people sell those items or offer those services. The place where you find them is a *market*.

You learned in Chapter 2 that a market is any arrangement that brings buyers and sellers together. A market has two sides: buyers (demanders) and sellers (suppliers). There are markets for *goods* such as apples and hiking boots, for *services* such as haircuts and tennis lessons, for *resources* such as computer programmers and tractors, and for other manufactured *inputs* such as memory chips and auto parts. There are also markets for money such as Japanese yen and for financial securities such as Yahoo! stock. Only imagination limits what can be traded in markets.

Some markets are physical places where buyers and sellers meet and where an auctioneer or a broker helps to determine the prices. Examples of this type of market are the New York Stock Exchange; wholesale fish, meat, and produce markets; and used car auctions.

Some markets are virtual spaces where buyers and sellers never meet face-to-face but connect over telephone lines or the Internet. Examples include currency markets, e-commerce Web sites such as Amazon.com and bananarepublic.com, and auction sites such as eBay.

But most markets are unorganized collections of buyers and sellers. You do most of your trading in this type of market. An example is the market for basketball shoes. The buyers in this $3-billion-a-year market are the 45 million Americans who play basketball (or who want to make a fashion statement) and are looking for a new pair of shoes. The sellers are the tens of thousands of retail sports equipment and footwear stores. Each buyer can visit several different stores, and each seller knows that the buyer has a choice of stores.

Markets vary in the intensity of competition that buyers and sellers face. In this chapter, we're going to study a *competitive market* that has so many buyers and so many sellers that no single buyer or seller can influence the price.

Markets for running shoes ...

coffee and bagel ...

and airline travel.

4.1 DEMAND

First, we'll study the behavior of buyers in a competitive market. The **quantity demanded** of any good, service, or resource is the amount that people are willing and able to buy during a specified period at a specified price. For example, when spring water costs $1 a bottle, you decide to buy 2 bottles a day. The 2 bottles a day is your quantity demanded of spring water.

Quantity demanded
The amount of any good, service, or resource that people are willing and able to buy during a specified period at a specified price.

The quantity demanded is measured as an amount *per unit of time*. For example, your quantity demanded of water is 2 bottles *per day*. We could express this quantity as 14 bottles per week, or some other number per month or per year. A particular number of bottles without a time dimension has no meaning.

Many things influence buying plans, and one of them is price. We look first at the relationship between quantity demanded and price. To study this relationship, we keep all other influences on buying plans the same and we ask: How, other things remaining the same, does the quantity demanded of a good change as its price varies? The law of demand provides the answer.

The Law of Demand

The **law of demand** states

> **Other things remaining the same, if the price of a good rises, the quantity demanded of that good decreases; and if the price of a good falls, the quantity demanded of that good increases.**

So the law of demand states that when all other things remain the same, if the price of an iPhone falls, people will buy more iPhones; or if the price of a baseball ticket rises, people will buy fewer baseball tickets.

Why does the quantity demanded increase if the price falls, all other things remaining the same?

The answer is that, faced with a limited budget, people always have an incentive to find the best deals available. If the price of one item falls and the prices of all other items remain the same, the item with the lower price is a better deal than it was before, so some people buy more of this item. Suppose, for example, that the price of bottled water fell from $1 a bottle to 25 cents a bottle while the price of Gatorade remained at $1 a bottle. Wouldn't some people switch from Gatorade to water? By doing so, they save 75 cents a bottle, which they can spend on other things they previously couldn't afford.

Think about the things that you buy and ask yourself: Which of these items does *not* obey the law of demand? If the price of a new textbook were lower, other things remaining the same (including the price of a used textbook), would you buy more new textbooks? Then think about all the things that you do not now buy but would if you could afford them. How cheap would a PC have to be for you to buy *both* a desktop and a laptop? There is a price that is low enough to entice you!

Demand Schedule and Demand Curve

Demand is the relationship between the quantity demanded and the price of a good when all other influences on buying plans remain the same. The quantity demanded is *one* quantity at *one* price. *Demand* is a *list of quantities at different prices* illustrated by a demand schedule and a demand curve.

Demand
The relationship between the quantity demanded and the price of a good when all other influences on buying plans remain the same.

Demand schedule
A list of the quantities demanded at each different price when all the other influences on buying plans remain the same.

Demand curve
A graph of the relationship between the quantity demanded of a good and its price when all the other influences on buying plans remain the same.

A **demand schedule** is a list of the quantities demanded at each different price when *all the other influences on buying plans remain the same.* The table in Figure 4.1 is one person's (Tina's) demand schedule for bottled water. It tells us that if the price of water is $2.00 a bottle, Tina buys no water. Her quantity demanded is 0 bottles a day. If the price of water is $1.50 a bottle, her quantity demanded is 1 bottle a day. Tina's quantity demanded increases to 2 bottles a day at a price of $1.00 a bottle and to 3 bottles a day at a price of 50 cents a bottle.

A **demand curve** is a graph of the relationship between the quantity demanded of a good and its price when all the other influences on buying plans remain the same. The points on the demand curve labeled *A* through *D* represent the rows *A* through *D* of the demand schedule. For example, point *B* on the graph represents row *B* of the demand schedule and shows that the quantity demanded is 1 bottle a day when the price is $1.50 a bottle. Point *C* on the demand curve represents row *C* of the demand schedule and shows that the quantity demanded is 2 bottles a day when the price is $1.00 a bottle.

The downward slope of the demand curve illustrates the law of demand. Along the demand curve, when the price of the good *falls*, the quantity demanded *increases*. For example, in Figure 4.1, when the price of a bottle of water falls from $1.00 to 50 cents, the quantity demanded increases from 2 bottles a day to 3 bottles a day. Conversely, when the price *rises*, the quantity demanded *decreases*. For example, when the price rises from $1.00 to $1.50 a bottle, the quantity demanded decreases from 2 bottles a day to 1 bottle a day.

FIGURE 4.1

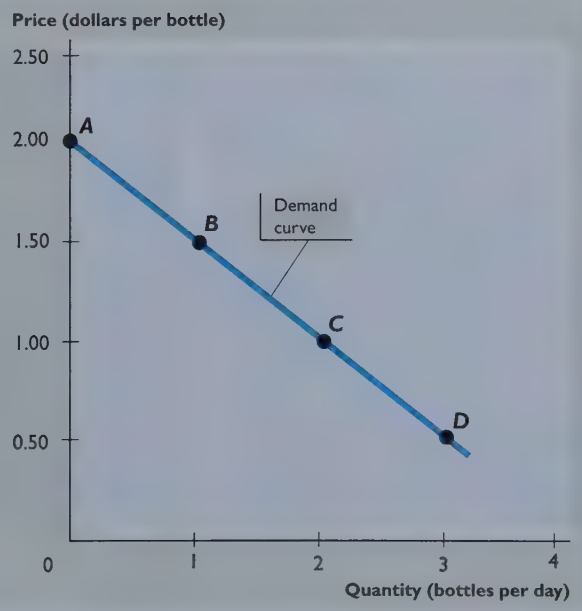
Demand Schedule and Demand Curve

MyEconLab Animation

The table shows Tina's demand schedule that lists the quantity of water demanded at each price if all other influences on buying plans remain the same. At a price of $1.50 a bottle, the quantity demanded is 1 bottle a day.

The demand curve shows the relationship between the quantity demanded and price, other things remaining the same. The downward-sloping demand curve illustrates the law of demand. When the price falls, the quantity demanded increases; and when the price rises, the quantity demanded decreases.

	Price (dollars per bottle)	Quantity demanded (bottles per day)
A	2.00	0
B	1.50	1
C	1.00	2
D	0.50	3



Individual Demand and Market Demand

The demand schedule and the demand curve that you've just studied are for one person. To study a market, we must determine the market demand.

Market demand is the sum of the demands of all the buyers in a market. To find the market demand, imagine a market in which there are only two buyers: Tina and Tim. The table in Figure 4.2 shows three demand schedules: Tina's, Tim's, and the market demand schedule. Tina's demand schedule is the same as before. It shows the quantity of water demanded by Tina at each different price. Tim's demand schedule tells us the quantity of water demanded by Tim at each price. To find the quantity of water demanded in the market, we sum the quantities demanded by Tina and Tim. For example, at a price of $1.00 a bottle, the quantity demanded by Tina is 2 bottles a day, the quantity demanded by Tim is 1 bottle a day, and so the quantity demanded in the market is 3 bottles a day.

Tina's demand curve in part (a) and Tim's demand curve in part (b) are graphs of the two individual demand schedules. The market demand curve in part (c) is a graph of the market demand schedule. At a given price, the quantity demanded on the market demand curve equals the horizontal sum of the quantities demanded on the individual demand curves.

Market demand
The sum of the demands of all the buyers in the market.

FIGURE 4.2

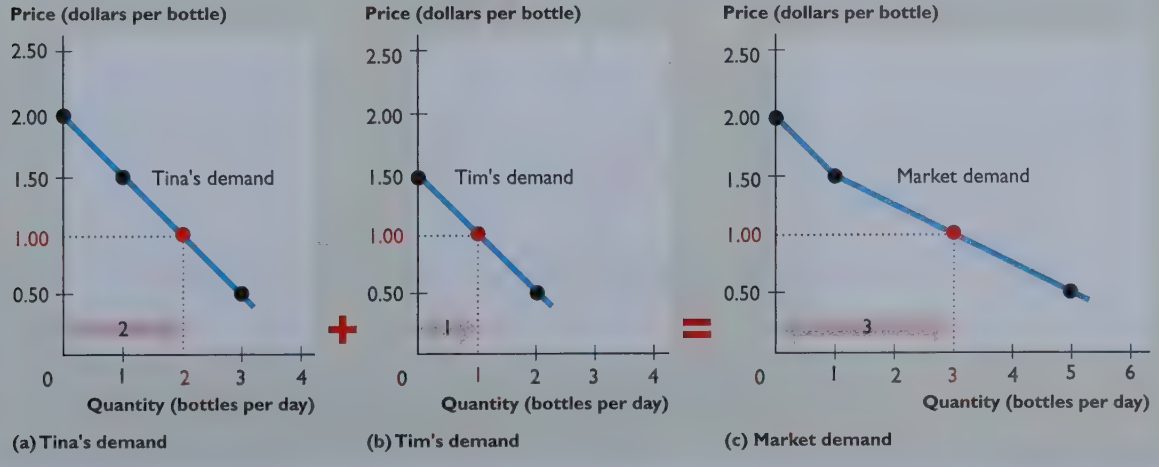
Individual Demand and Market Demand

MyEconLab Animation

Price (dollars per bottle)	Quantity demanded (bottles per day)		
	Tina	Tim	Market
2.00	0	0	0
1.50	1	0	1
1.00	2	1	3
0.50	3	2	5

The market demand schedule is the sum of the individual demand schedules, and the market demand curve is the horizontal sum of the individual demand curves.

At a price of $1 a bottle, the quantity demanded by Tina is 2 bottles a day and the quantity demanded by Tim is 1 bottle a day, so the total quantity demanded in the market is 3 bottles a day.



Changes in Demand

Change in demand
A change in the quantity that people plan to buy when any influence on buying plans other than the price of the good changes.

The demand curve shows how the quantity demanded changes when the price of the good changes but *all other influences on buying plans remain the same*. When any of these other influences on buying plans change, there is a **change in demand**, which means that there is a new demand schedule and new demand curve. *The demand curve shifts.*

Demand can either increase or decrease and Figure 4.3 illustrates the two cases. Initially, the demand curve is D_0. When demand decreases, the demand curve shifts leftward to D_1. On demand curve D_1, the quantity demanded at each price is smaller. When demand increases, the demand curve shifts rightward to D_2. On demand curve D_2 the quantity demanded at each price is greater.

The main influences on buying plans that change demand are

- Prices of related goods
- Expected future prices
- Income
- Expected future income and credit
- Number of buyers
- Preferences

Prices of Related Goods

Substitute
A good that can be consumed in place of another good.

Complement
A good that is consumed with another good.

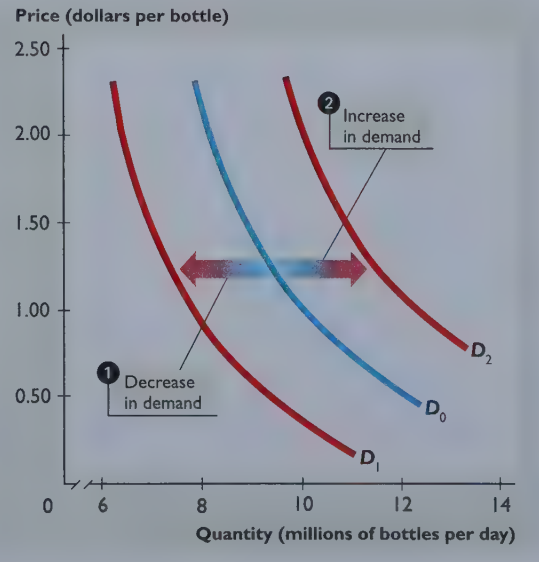
Goods have substitutes and complements. A **substitute** for a good is another good that can be consumed in its place. Chocolate cake is a substitute for cheesecake, and bottled water is a substitute for Gatorade. A **complement** of a good is another good that is consumed with it. Wrist guards are a complement of in-line skates, and bottled water is a complement of fitness center services.

FIGURE 4.3
Changes in Demand

MyEconLab Animation

A change in any influence on buying plans, other than a change in the price of the good itself, changes demand and shifts the demand curve.

1. When demand decreases, the demand curve shifts leftward from D_0 to D_1.
2. When demand increases, the demand curve shifts rightward from D_0 to D_2.



The demand for a good and the price of one of its substitutes move in the *same direction*. The demand for a good *increases* if the price of one of its substitutes *rises* and *decreases* if the price of one of its substitutes *falls*. For example, the demand for cheesecake increases when the price of chocolate cake rises.

The demand for a good and the price of one of its complements move in *opposite directions*. The demand for a good *decreases* if the price of one of its complements *rises* and *increases* if the price of one of its complements *falls*. For example, the demand for wrist guards decreases when the price of in-line skates rises.

Expected Future Prices

A rise in the expected *future* price of a good increases the *current* demand for that good and a fall in the expected *future* price decreases *current* demand. If you expect the price of noodles to rise next week, you buy a big enough stockpile to get you through the next few weeks. Your demand for noodles today has increased. If you expect the price of noodles to fall next week, you buy none now and plan to buy next week. Your demand for noodles today has decreased.

Income

A rise in income brings an increase in demand and a fall in income brings a decrease in demand for a **normal good**. A rise in income brings a *decrease* in demand and a fall in income brings an *increase* in demand for an **inferior good**. For example, if your income increases and you decide to buy more chicken and less pasta, for you, chicken is a normal good and pasta is an inferior good.

Normal good
A good for which demand increases when income increases and demand decreases when income decreases.

Inferior good
A good for which demand decreases when income increases and demand increases when income decreases.

Expected Future Income and Credit

When income is expected to increase in the future, or when credit is easy to get and the cost of borrowing is low, the demand for some goods increases. And when income is expected to decrease in the future, or when credit is hard to get and the cost of borrowing is high, the demand for some goods decreases.

Changes in expected future income and the availability and cost of credit has the greatest effect on the demand for big ticket items such as homes and automobiles. Modest changes in expected future income or credit availability bring large swings in the demand for these items.

Number of Buyers

The greater the number of buyers in a market, the larger is demand. For example, the demand for parking spaces, movies, bottled water, or just about anything is greater in New York City than it is in Boise, Idaho.

Preferences

Tastes or *preferences*, as economists call them, influence demand. When preferences change, the demand for one item increases and the demand for another item (or items) decreases. For example, preferences have changed as people have become better informed about the health hazards of tobacco. This change in preferences has decreased the demand for cigarettes and has increased the demand for nicotine patches. Preferences also change when new goods become available. For example, the development of MP3 technology has decreased the demand for CDs and has increased the demand for Internet service and MP3 players.

Change in Quantity Demanded Versus Change in Demand

Change in the quantity demanded
A change in the quantity of a good that people plan to buy that results from a change in the price of the good with all other influences on buying plans remaining the same.

The influences on buyers' plans that you've just seen bring a *change in demand*. These are all the influences on buying plans *except for the price of the good*. To avoid confusion, when *the price of the good changes* and all other influences on buying plans remain the same, we say there has been a **change in the quantity demanded**.

The distinction between a change in demand and a change in the quantity demanded is crucial for figuring out how a market responds to the forces that hit it. Figure 4.4 illustrates and summarizes the distinction:

- If the price of bottled water *rises* when other things remain the same, the quantity demanded of bottled water *decreases* and there is a *movement up* along the demand curve D_0. If the price *falls* when other things remain the same, the quantity demanded *increases* and there is a *movement down* along the demand curve D_0.
- If some influence on buyers' plans other than the price of bottled water changes, there is a change in demand. When the demand for bottled water *decreases*, the demand curve *shifts leftward* to D_1. When the demand for bottled water *increases*, the demand curve *shifts rightward* to D_2.

When you are thinking about the influences on demand, try to get into the habit of asking: Does this influence change the quantity demanded or does it change demand? The test is: Did the price of the good change or did some other influence change? If the price changed, then quantity demanded changed. If some other influence changed and the price remained constant, then demand changed.

FIGURE 4.4

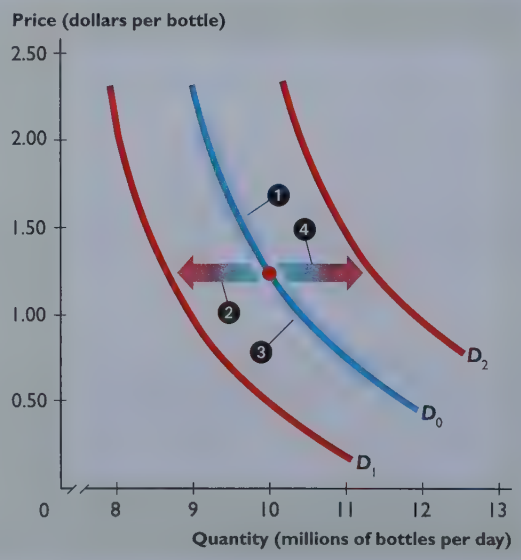
Change in Quantity Demanded Versus Change in Demand

MyEconLab Animation

1 A decrease in the quantity demanded
If the price of a good rises, *cet. par.*, the quantity demanded decreases. There is a movement up along the demand curve D_0.

2 A decrease in demand
Demand decreases and the demand curve shifts leftward (from D_0 to D_1) if

- The price of a substitute falls or the price of a complement rises.
- The price of the good is expected to fall.
- Income decreases.*
- Expected future income or credit decreases.
- The number of buyers decreases.



3 An increase in the quantity demanded
If the price of a good falls, *cet. par.*, the quantity demanded increases. There is a movement down along the demand curve D_0.

4 An increase in demand
Demand increases and the demand curve shifts rightward (from D_0 to D_2) if

- The price of a substitute rises or the price of a complement falls.
- The price of the good is expected to rise.
- Income increases.
- Expected future income or credit increases.
- The number of buyers increases.

* Bottled water is a normal good.

CHECKPOINT 4.1

Distinguish between quantity demanded and demand, and explain what determines demand.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 4.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

The following events occur one at a time in the market for cell phones:

- The price of a cell phone falls.
- Everyone believes that the price of a cell phone will fall next month.
- The price of a call made from a cell phone falls.
- The price of a call made from a land-line phone increases.
- The introduction of camera phones makes cell phones more popular.

1. Explain the effect of each event on the demand for cell phones.
2. Use a graph to illustrate the effect of each event.
3. Does any event (or events) illustrate the law of demand?

In the News

Airlines, now flush, fear a downturn

So far this year, airlines have been able to raise fares but still fill their planes.

Source: *The New York Times*, June 10, 2011

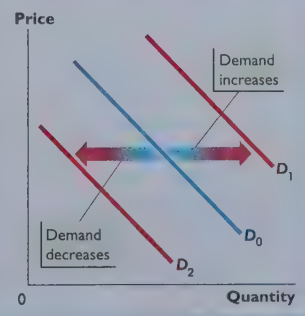
Does this news clip imply that the law of demand doesn't work in the real world? Explain why or why not.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. A fall in the price of a cell phone increases the quantity of cell phones demanded but has no effect on the demand for cell phones.
   An expected fall in the price of a cell phone next month decreases the demand for cell phones today as people wait for the lower price.
   A fall in the price of a call from a cell phone increases the demand for cell phones because a cell phone call and a cell phone are complements.
   A rise in the price of a call from a land-line phone increases the demand for cell phones because a land-line phone and a cell phone are substitutes.
   With cell phones more popular, the demand for cell phones increases.
2. Figure 1 illustrates the effect of a fall in the price of a cell phone as a movement along the demand curve D.
   Figure 2 illustrates the effect of an increase in the demand for cell phones as the shift of the demand curve from D_0 to D_1 and a decrease in the demand for cell phones as the shift of the demand curve from D_0 to D_2.
3. A fall in the price of a cell phone (other things remaining the same) illustrates the law of demand. Figure 1 illustrates the law of demand. The other events change demand and do not illustrate the law of demand.

FIGURE 1

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

The law of demand states: If the price of an airline ticket rises, other things remaining the same, the quantity demanded of airline tickets will decrease. The demand curve for airline tickets slopes downward. The law of demand does work in the real world. Airlines can still fill their planes because "other things" did not remain the same. Some event increased the demand for air tickets.

4.2 SUPPLY

A market has two sides. On one side are the buyers, or demanders, that we've just studied. On the other side of the market are the sellers, or suppliers. We now study the forces that determine suppliers' plans.

Quantity supplied
The amount of any good, service, or resource that people are willing and able to sell during a specified period at a specified price.

The **quantity supplied** of a good, service, or resource is the amount that people are willing and able to sell during a specified period at a specified price. For example, when the price of spring water is $1.50 a bottle, a spring owner decides to sell 2,000 bottles a day. The 2,000 bottles a day is the quantity supplied of spring water by this individual producer. (As in the case of demand, the quantity supplied is measured as an amount *per unit of time*.)

Many things influence selling plans, and one of them is the price. We look first at the relationship between quantity supplied of a good and its price. To study this relationship, we keep all other influences on selling plans the same, and we ask: Other things remaining the same, how does the quantity supplied of a good change as its price varies? The law of supply provides the answer.

The Law of Supply

The **law of supply** states

> **Other things remaining the same, if the price of a good rises, the quantity supplied of that good increases; and if the price of a good falls, the quantity supplied of that good decreases.**

So the law of supply states that when all other things remain the same, if the price of bottled water rises, spring owners will offer more water for sale; if the price of a flat panel TV falls, Sony Corp. will offer fewer flat panel TVs for sale.

Why, other things remaining the same, does the quantity supplied increase if the price rises and decrease if the price falls? Part of the answer lies in the principle of increasing opportunity cost (see p. 68). Because factors of production are not equally productive in all activities, as more of a good is produced, the opportunity cost of producing it increases. A higher price provides the incentive to bear the higher opportunity cost of increased production. Another part of the answer is that for a given cost, the higher price brings a larger profit, so sellers have greater incentive to increase production.

Think about the resources that you own and can offer for sale to others and ask yourself: Which of these items does *not* obey the law of supply? If the wage rate for summer jobs increased, would you have an incentive to work longer hours and bear the higher opportunity cost of forgone leisure? If the bank offered a higher interest rate on deposits, would you have an incentive to save more and bear the higher opportunity cost of forgone consumption? If the used book dealer offered a higher price for last year's textbooks, would you have an incentive to sell that handy math text and bear the higher opportunity cost of visiting the library (or finding a friend) whenever you needed the book?

Supply Schedule and Supply Curve

Supply
The relationship between the quantity supplied and the price of a good when all other influences on selling plans remain the same.

Supply is the relationship between the quantity supplied and the price of a good when all other influences on selling plans remain the same. The quantity supplied is *one* quantity at *one* price. *Supply* is a *list of quantities at different prices* illustrated by a supply schedule and a supply curve.

A **supply schedule** lists the quantities supplied at each different price when all the other influences on selling plans remain the same. The table in Figure 4.5 is one firm's (Agua's) supply schedule for bottled water. It tells us that if the price of water is 50 cents a bottle, Agua plans to sell no water. Its quantity supplied is 0 bottles a day. If the price of water is $1.00 a bottle, Agua's quantity supplied is 1,000 bottles a day. Agua's quantity supplied increases to 2,000 bottles a day at a price of $1.50 a bottle and to 3,000 bottles a day at a price of $2.00 a bottle.

Supply schedule
A list of the quantities supplied at each different price when all the other influences on selling plans remain the same.

A **supply curve** is a graph of the relationship between the quantity supplied of a good and its price when all the other influences on selling plans remain the same. The points on the supply curve labeled *A* through *D* represent the rows *A* through *D* of the supply schedule. For example, point *C* on the supply curve represents row *C* of the supply schedule and shows that the quantity supplied is 1,000 bottles a day when the price is $1.00 a bottle. Point *B* on the supply curve represents row *B* of the supply schedule and shows that the quantity supplied is 2,000 bottles a day when the price is $1.50 a bottle.

Supply curve
A graph of the relationship between the quantity supplied of a good and its price when all the other influences on selling plans remain the same.

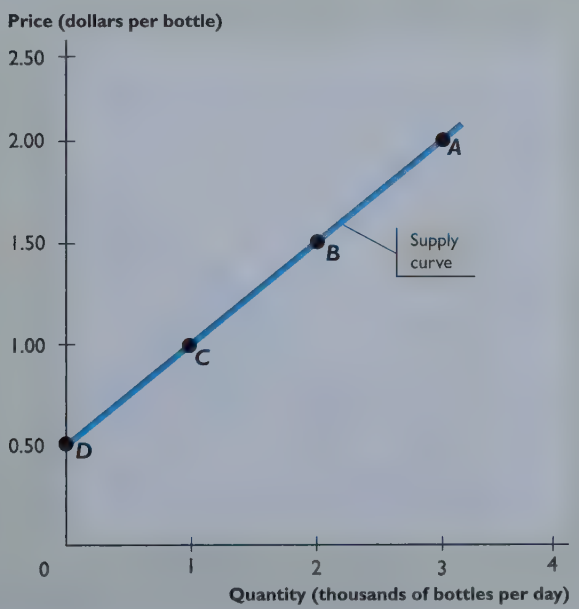
The upward slope of the supply curve illustrates the law of supply. Along the supply curve, when the price of the good *rises*, the quantity supplied *increases*. For example, in Figure 4.5, when the price of a bottle of water rises from $1.50 to $2.00, the quantity supplied increases from 2,000 bottles a day to 3,000 bottles a day. And when the price *falls*, the quantity supplied *decreases*. For example, when the price falls from $1.50 to $1.00 a bottle, the quantity supplied decreases from 2,000 bottles a day to 1,000 bottles a day.

FIGURE 4.5

Supply Schedule and Supply Curve

MyEconLab Animation

	Price (dollars per bottle)	Quantity supplied (thousands of bottles per day)
A	2.00	3
B	1.50	2
C	1.00	1
D	0.50	0



The table shows a supply schedule that lists the quantity of water supplied at each price if all other influences on selling plans remain the same. At a price of $1.50 a bottle, the quantity supplied is 2,000 bottles a day.

The supply curve shows the relationship between the quantity supplied and price, other things remaining the same. The upward-sloping supply curve illustrates the law of supply. When the price rises, the quantity supplied increases; and when the price falls, the quantity supplied decreases.

Individual Supply and Market Supply

The supply schedule and the supply curve that you've just studied are for one seller. To study a market, we must determine the market supply.

Market supply
The sum of the supplies of all the sellers in the market.

Market supply is the sum of the supplies of all the sellers in the market. To find the market supply of water, imagine a market in which there are only two sellers: Agua and Prima. The table in Figure 4.6 shows three supply schedules: Agua's, Prima's, and the market supply schedule. Agua's supply schedule is the same as before. Prima's supply schedule tells us the quantity of water that Prima plans to sell at each price. To find the quantity of water supplied in the market, we sum the quantities supplied by Agua and Prima. For example, at a price of $1.00 a bottle, the quantity supplied by Agua is 1,000 bottles a day, the quantity supplied by Prima is 2,000 bottles a day, and the quantity supplied in the market is 3,000 bottles a day.

Agua's supply curve in part (a) and Prima's supply curve in part (b) are graphs of the two individual supply schedules. The market supply curve in part (c) is a graph of the market supply schedule. At a given price, the quantity supplied on the market supply curve equals the horizontal sum of the quantities supplied on the individual supply curves.

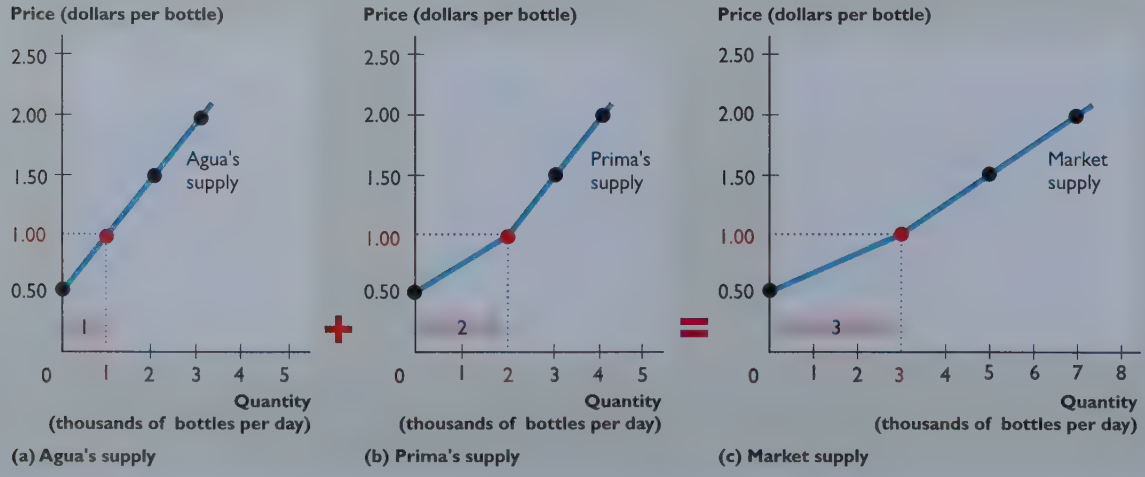
FIGURE 4.6

Individual Supply and Market Supply — MyEconLab Animation

Price (dollars per bottle)	Quantity supplied (thousands of bottles per day)				
	Agua		Prima		Market
2.00	3		4		7
1.50	2		3		5
1.00	1	+	2	=	3
0.50	0		0		0

The market supply schedule is the sum of the individual supply schedules, and the market supply curve is the horizontal sum of the individual supply curves.

At a price of $1 a bottle, the quantity supplied by Agua is 1,000 bottles a day and the quantity supplied by Prima is 2,000 bottles a day, so the total quantity supplied in the market is 3,000 bottles a day.



Changes in Supply

The supply curve shows how the quantity supplied changes when the price of the good changes but *all other influences on selling plans remain the same*. When any of these other influences on selling plans change, there is a **change in supply,** which means that there is a new supply schedule and new supply curve. *The supply curve shifts.*

Change in supply
A change in the quantity that suppliers plan to sell when any influence on selling plans other than the price of the good changes.

Supply can either increase or decrease, and Figure 4.7 illustrates the two cases. Initially, the supply curve is S_0. When supply decreases, the supply curve shifts leftward to S_1. On supply curve S_1, the quantity supplied at each price is smaller. When supply increases, the supply curve shifts rightward to S_2. On supply curve S_2 the quantity supplied at each price is greater.

The main influences on selling plans that change supply are

- Prices of related goods
- Prices of resources and other inputs
- Expected future prices
- Number of sellers
- Productivity

Prices of Related Goods

Related goods are either substitutes *in production* or complements *in production*. A **substitute in production** for a good is another good that can be produced in its place. Skinny jeans are substitutes in production for boot cut jeans in a clothing factory.

Substitute in production
A good that can be produced in place of another good.

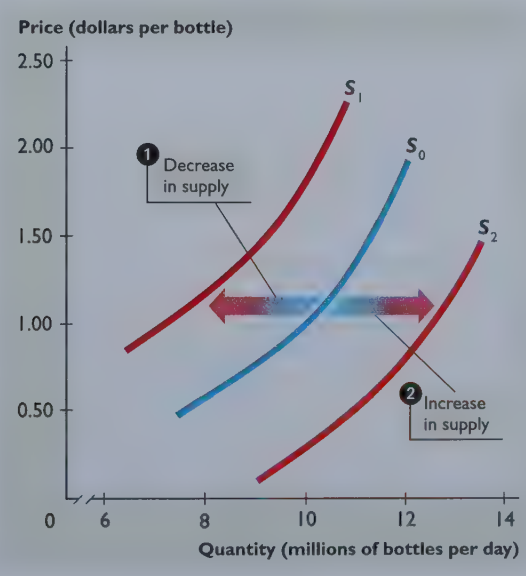
A **complement in production** of a good is another good that is produced along with it. Cream is a complement in production of skim milk in a dairy.

Complement in production
A good that is produced along with another good.

FIGURE 4.7

Changes in Supply

MyEconLab Animation



A change in any influence on selling plans other than a change in the price of the good itself changes supply and shifts the supply curve.

1. When supply decreases, the supply curve shifts leftward from S_0 to S_1.
2. When supply increases, the supply curve shifts rightward from S_0 to S_2.

A Change in the Price of a Substitute in Production The supply of a good *decreases* if the price of one of its substitutes in production *rises;* and the supply of a good *increases* if the price of one of its substitutes in production *falls*. That is, the supply of a good and the price of one of its substitutes in production move in *opposite directions*. For example, a clothing factory can produce cargo pants or button-fly jeans, so these goods are substitutes in production. When the price of button-fly jeans rises, the clothing factory switches production from cargo pants to button-fly jeans, so the supply of cargo pants decreases.

A Change in the Price of a Complement in Production The supply of a good *increases* if the price of one of its complements in production *rises;* and the supply of a good *decreases* if the price of one of its complements in production *falls*. That is, the supply of a good and the price of one of its complements in production move in the *same direction*. For example, when a dairy produces skim milk, it also produces cream, so these goods are complements in production. When the price of skim milk rises, the dairy produces more skim milk, so the supply of cream increases.

Prices of Resources and Other Inputs

Supply changes when the price of a resource or other input used to produce the good changes. The reason is that resource and input prices influence the cost of production. The more it costs to produce a good, the smaller is the quantity supplied of that good at each price (other things remaining the same). For example, if the wage rate of bottling-plant workers rises, it costs more to produce a bottle of water, so the supply of bottled water decreases.

Expected Future Prices

Expectations about future prices influence supply. For example, a severe frost that wipes out Florida's citrus crop doesn't change the production of orange juice today, but it does decrease production later in the year when the current crop would normally have been harvested. Sellers of orange juice will expect the price to rise in the future. To get the higher future price, some sellers will increase their inventory of frozen juice, and this action decreases the supply of juice today.

Number of Sellers

The greater the number of sellers in a market, the larger is the supply. For example, many new sellers have developed springs and water-bottling plants in the United States, and the supply of bottled water has increased.

Productivity

Productivity is output per unit of input. An increase in productivity lowers the cost of producing the good and increases its supply. A decrease in productivity has the opposite effect and decreases supply.

Technological change and the increased use of capital increase productivity. For example, advances in electronic technology have lowered the cost of producing a computer and increased the supply of computers. Technological change brings new goods such as the iPod, the supply of which was previously zero.

Natural events such as severe weather and earthquakes decrease productivity and decrease supply. For example, the tsunami of 2004 decreased the supply of agricultural products and seafood in many places surrounding the Indian Ocean.

Change in Quantity Supplied Versus Change in Supply

The influences on sellers' plans you've just considered bring a *change in supply*. These are all the influences on sellers' plans *except the price of the good*. To avoid confusion, when the *price of the good changes* and all other influences on selling plans remain the same, we say there has been a **change in the quantity supplied**.

Change in the quantity supplied
A change in the quantity of a good that suppliers plan to sell that results from a change in the price of the good.

The distinction between a change in supply and a change in the quantity supplied is crucial for figuring out how a market responds to the forces that hit it. Figure 4.8 illustrates and summarizes the distinction:

- If the price of bottled water *falls* when other things remain the same, the quantity supplied of bottled water *decreases* and there is a *movement down* along the supply curve S_0. If the price *rises* when other things remain the same, the quantity supplied *increases* and there is a *movement up* along the supply curve S_0.
- If any influence on water bottlers' plans other than the price of bottled water changes, there is a change in the supply of bottled water. When the supply of bottled water *decreases*, the supply curve *shifts leftward* to S_1. When the supply of bottled water *increases*, the supply curve *shifts rightward* to S_2.

When you are thinking about the influences on supply, get into the habit of asking: Does this influence change the quantity supplied or does it change supply? The test is: Did the price change or did some other influence change? If the price of the good changed, then quantity supplied changed. If some other influence changed and the price of the good remained constant, then supply changed.

FIGURE 4.8

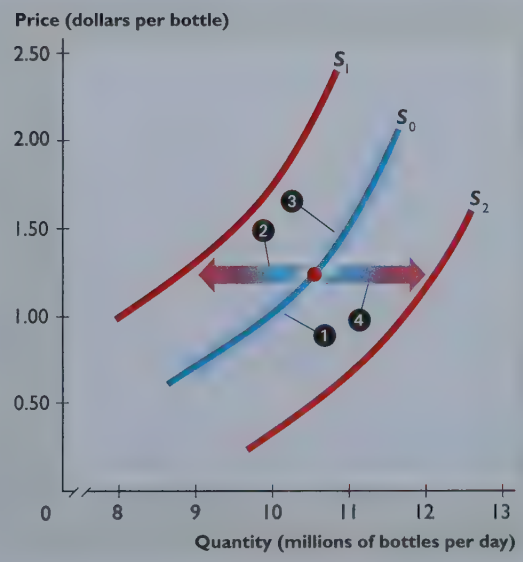
Change in Quantity Supplied Versus Change in Supply

MyEconLab Animation

1 A decrease in the quantity supplied
If the price of a good falls, *cet. par.*, the quantity supplied decreases. There is a movement down along the supply curve S_0.

2 A decrease in supply
Supply decreases and the supply curve shifts leftward (from S_0 to S_1) if

- The price of a substitute in production rises.
- The price of a complement in production falls.
- A resource price or other input price rises.
- The price of the good is expected to rise.
- The number of sellers decreases.
- Productivity decreases.



3 An increase in the quantity supplied
If the price of a good rises, *cet. par.*, the quantity supplied increases. There is a movement up along the supply curve S_0.

4 An increase in supply
Supply increases and the supply curve shifts rightward (from S_0 to S_2) if

- The price of a substitute in production falls.
- The price of a complement in production rises.
- A resource price or other input price falls.
- The price of the good is expected to fall.
- The number of sellers increases.
- Productivity increases.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 4.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 4.2

Distinguish between quantity supplied and supply, and explain what determines supply.

Practice Problems

Lumber companies make timber beams from logs. In the process of making beams, the mill produces sawdust, which is made into pressed wood. In the market for timber beams, the following events occur one at a time:

- The wage rate of sawmill workers rises.
- The price of sawdust rises.
- The price of a timber beam rises.
- The price of a timber beam is expected to rise next year.
- A new law reduces the amount of forest that can be cut for timber.
- A new technology lowers the cost of producing timber beams.

1. Explain the effect of each event on the supply of timber beams.
2. Use a graph to illustrate the effect of each event.
3. Does any event (or events) illustrate the law of supply?

In the News

GM, UAW reach crucial cost-cutting pact

GM and the UAW agree on restructuring workers' jobs. This restructuring, with no change in the wage rate, will save GM billions in labor costs.

Source: *Wall Street Journal*, May 22, 2009

How will this cost-cutting agreement change GM's supply of vehicles? Explain.

FIGURE 1

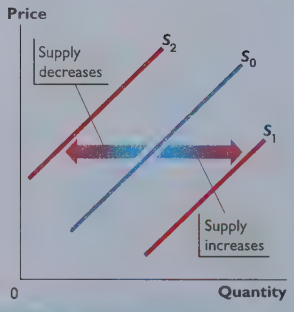


FIGURE 2

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. A rise in workers' wage rates increases the cost of producing a timber beam and decreases the supply of timber beams. A rise in the price of sawdust increases the supply of timber beams because sawdust and timber beams are complements in production. A rise in the price of a timber beam increases the quantity of timber beams supplied but has no effect on the supply of timber beams. An expected rise in the price of a timber beam decreases the supply of timber beams today as producers hold back and wait for the higher price. The new law decreases the supply of timber beams. The new technology increases the supply of timber beams.
2. In Figure 1, an increase in the supply shifts the supply curve from S_0 to S_1, and a decrease in the supply shifts the supply curve from S_0 to S_2. In Figure 2, the rise in the price of a beam creates a movement along the supply curve.
3. A rise in the price of a beam, other things remaining the same, is the only event that illustrates the law of supply—see Figure 2.

Solution to In the News

The cut in labor costs with no change in the wage rate is an increase in productivity, which will increase GM's supply of vehicles.

4.3 MARKET EQUILIBRIUM

In everyday language, "equilibrium" means "opposing forces are in balance." In a market, demand and supply are the opposing forces. **Market equilibrium** occurs when the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied—when buyers' and sellers' plans are in balance. At the **equilibrium price,** the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied. The **equilibrium quantity** is the quantity bought and sold at the equilibrium price.

In the market for bottled water in Figure 4.9, equilibrium occurs where the demand curve and the supply curve intersect. The equilibrium price is $1.00 a bottle, and the equilibrium quantity is 10 million bottles a day.

Market equilibrium
When the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied—buyers' and sellers' plans are in balance.

Equilibrium price
The price at which the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied.

Equilibrium quantity
The quantity bought and sold at the equilibrium price.

Price: A Market's Automatic Regulator

When equilibrium is disturbed, market forces restore it. The **law of market forces** states

When there is a surplus, the price falls; and when there is a shortage, the price rises.

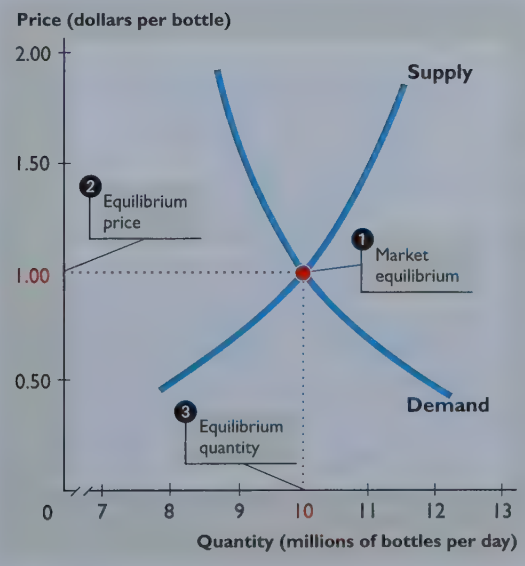
A *surplus* is a situation in which the quantity supplied exceeds the quantity demanded. If there is a surplus, suppliers must cut the price to sell more. Buyers are pleased to take the lower price, so the price falls. Because a surplus arises when the price is above the equilibrium price, a falling price is exactly what the market needs to restore equilibrium.

A *shortage* is a situation in which the quantity demanded exceeds the quantity supplied. If there is a shortage, buyers must pay a higher price to get more. Sellers are pleased to take the higher price, so the price rises. Because a shortage arises when the price is below the equilibrium price, a rising price is exactly what is

FIGURE 4.9

Equilibrium Price and Equilibrium Quantity

MyEconLab Animation

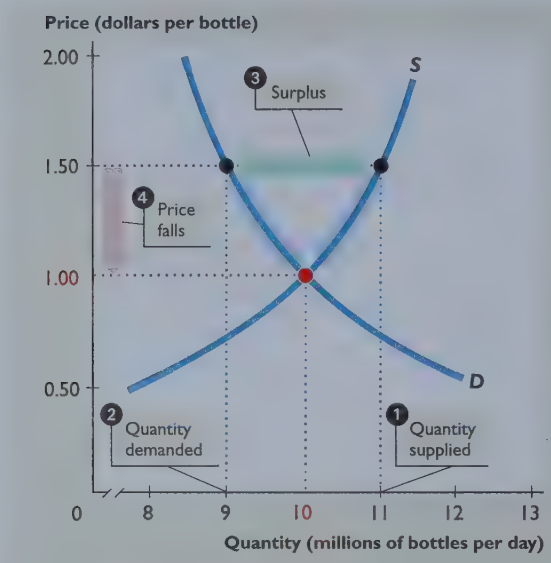


1. Market equilibrium occurs at the intersection of the demand curve and the supply curve.
2. The equilibrium price is $1.00 a bottle.
3. At the equilibrium price, the quantity demanded and the quantity supplied are 10 million bottles a day, which is the equilibrium quantity.

FIGURE 4.10

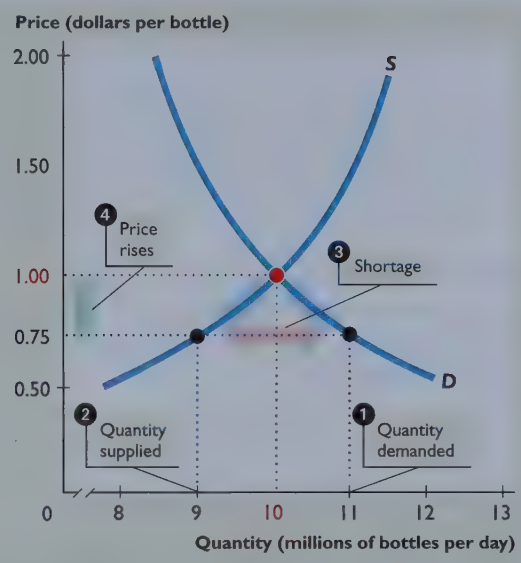
The Forces That Achieve Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Surplus and price falls

At $1.50 a bottle, ❶ the quantity supplied is 11 million bottles, ❷ the quantity demanded is 9 million bottles, ❸ the surplus is 2 million bottles, and ❹ the price falls.



(b) Shortage and price rises

At 75 cents a bottle, ❶ the quantity demanded is 11 million bottles, ❷ the quantity supplied is 9 million bottles, ❸ the shortage is 2 million bottles, and ❹ the price rises.

needed to restore equilibrium.

In Figure 4.10(a), at $1.50 a bottle, there is a surplus: The price falls, the quantity demanded increases, the quantity supplied decreases, and the surplus is eliminated at $1.00 a bottle.

In Figure 4.10(b), at 75 cents a bottle, there is a shortage of water: The price rises, the quantity demanded decreases, the quantity supplied increases, and the shortage is eliminated at $1.00 a bottle.

Predicting Price Changes: Three Questions

Because price adjustments eliminate shortages and surpluses, markets are normally in equilibrium. When an event disturbs an equilibrium, a new equilibrium soon emerges. To explain and predict changes in prices and quantities, we need to consider only changes in the *equilibrium* price and the *equilibrium* quantity. We can work out the effects of an event on a market by answering three questions:

1. Does the event influence demand or supply?
2. Does the event *increase* or *decrease* demand or supply—shift the demand curve or the supply curve *rightward* or *leftward*?
3. What are the new *equilibrium* price and *equilibrium* quantity and how have they changed?

Effects of Changes in Demand

Let's practice answering the three questions by working out the effects of an event in the market for bottled water: A new study says that tap water is unsafe.

1. With tap water unsafe, the demand for bottled water changes.
2. The demand for bottled water *increases*, and the demand curve *shifts rightward*. Figure 4.11(a) shows the shift from D_0 to D_1.
3. There is now a *shortage* at $1.00 a bottle. The *price rises* to $1.50 a bottle, and the quantity increases to 11 million bottles.

Note that there is *no change in supply;* the rise in price brings an *increase in the quantity supplied*—a movement along the supply curve.

Let's work out what happens if the price of a zero-calorie sports drink falls.

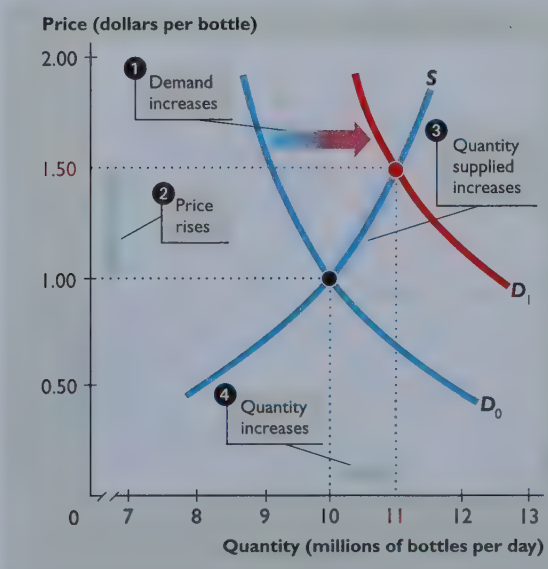
1. The sports drink is a substitute for bottled water, so when its price changes, the demand for bottled water changes.
2. The demand for bottled water *decreases*, and the demand curve *shifts leftward*. Figure 4.11(b) shows the shift from D_0 to D_2.
3. There is now a *surplus* at $1.00 a bottle. The price *falls* to 75 cents a bottle, and the quantity decreases to 9 million bottles.

Note again that there is *no change in supply;* the fall in price brings a *decrease in the quantity supplied*—a movement along the supply curve.

FIGURE 4.11

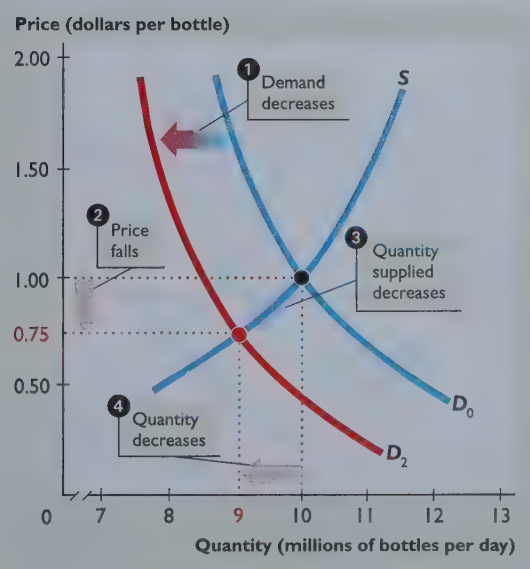
The Effects of a Change in Demand

MyEconLab Animation



(a) An increase in demand

1 An increase in demand shifts the demand curve rightward to D_1 and creates a shortage. 2 The price rises, 3 the quantity supplied increases, and 4 the equilibrium quantity increases.



(b) A decrease in demand

1 A decrease in demand shifts the demand curve leftward to D_2 and creates a surplus. 2 The price falls, 3 the quantity supplied decreases, and 4 the equilibrium quantity decreases.

Effects of Changes in Supply

You can get more practice working out the effects of another event in the market for bottled water: European water bottlers buy springs and open new plants in the United States.

1. With more suppliers of bottled water, the supply changes.
2. The supply of bottled water *increases*, and the supply curve *shifts rightward*. Figure 4.12(a) shows the shift from S_0 to S_1.
3. There is now a *surplus* at $1.00 a bottle. The *price falls* to 75 cents a bottle, and the quantity increases to 11 million bottles.

Note that there is *no change in demand*; the fall in price brings an *increase in the quantity demanded*—a movement along the demand curve.

What happens if a drought dries up some springs?

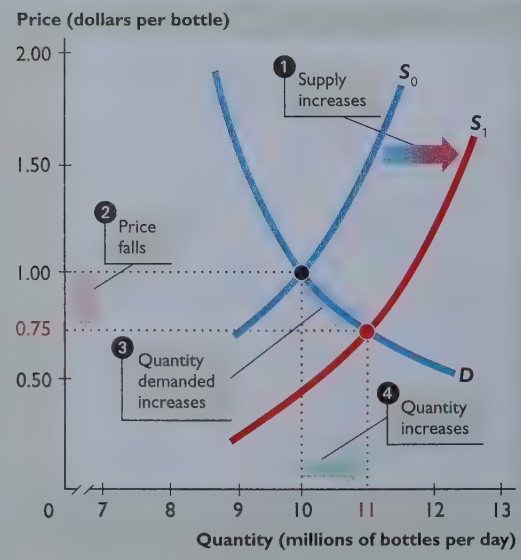
1. The drought is a change in productivity, so the supply of water changes.
2. With fewer springs, the supply of bottled water *decreases*, and the supply curve *shifts leftward*. Figure 4.12(b) shows the shift from to S_0 to S_2.
3. There is now a *shortage* at $1.00 a bottle. The *price rises* to $1.50 a bottle, and the quantity decreases to 9 million bottles.

Again, there is *no change in demand*; the rise in price brings a *decrease in the quantity demanded*—a movement along the demand curve.

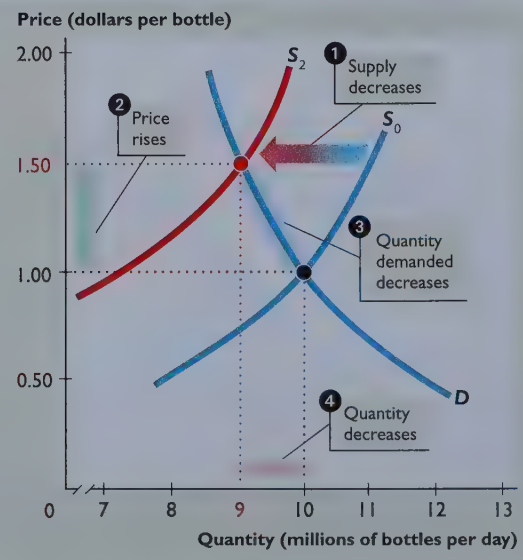
FIGURE 4.12

The Effects of a Change in Supply

MyEconLab Animation



(a) An increase in supply



(b) A decrease in supply

❶ An increase in supply shifts the supply curve rightward to S_1 and creates a surplus. ❷ The price falls, ❸ the quantity demanded increases, and ❹ the equilibrium quantity increases.

❶ A decrease in supply shifts the supply curve leftward to S_2 and creates a shortage. ❷ The price rises, ❸ the quantity demanded decreases, and ❹ the equilibrium quantity decreases.

EYE on the PRICE OF COFFEE

Why Did the Price of Coffee Soar in 2010 and 2011?

In January 2009, the price of coffee (the kind that you get at Starbucks and similar coffee shops called Arabica) was $1.25 a pound (point *A* in Figure 1) and by May 2011, it had risen to $3.00 a pound (point *B*). Why did the price of coffee soar? Figure 2, which shows the market for coffee, answers this question.

The demand curve *D* and the supply curve S_{09} determined the equilibrium price and quantity in 2009 at $1.25 a pound and 950 million pounds.

Heavy rain led to exceptionally low harvests in Colombia, Indonesia, Mexico, and Vietnam, which decreased the supply of coffee. The supply curve shifted leftward to S_{11}. The price increased to $3.00 a pound. The quantity demanded and equilibrium quantity decreased to 800 million pounds.

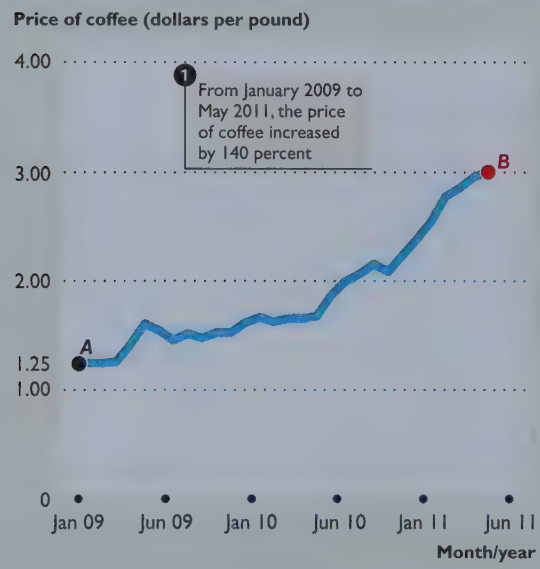


Figure 1 The price of coffee

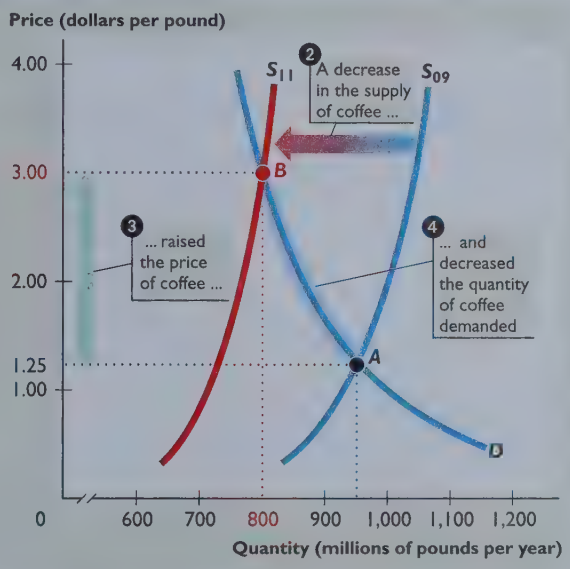


Figure 2 The market for coffee

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Using Demand and Supply

The demand and supply model is going to be a big part of the rest of your life!

First, you will use it again and again during your economics course. The demand and supply model is one of your major tools, so having a firm grasp of it will bring an immediate payoff.

But second, and much more important, by understanding the laws of demand and supply and being aware of how prices adjust to balance these two opposing forces, you will have a much better appreciation of how your economic world works.

Every time you hear someone complaining about a price hike and blaming it on someone's greed, think about the law of market forces and how demand and supply determine that price.

As you shop for your favorite clothing, music, and food items, try to describe how supply and demand influence the prices of these goods.

Changes in Both Demand and Supply

When events occur that change *both* demand and supply, you can find the resulting change in the equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity by combining the cases you've just studied. Figure 4.13 summarizes all the possible cases.

Increase in Both Demand and Supply

An increase in demand or an increase in supply increases the equilibrium quantity. So when demand and supply increase together, the *quantity increases*. But the price rises when demand increases and falls when supply increases. So when demand and supply increase together, we can't say what happens to the price unless we know the magnitudes of the changes. If demand increases by more than supply increases, the price rises. But if supply increases by more than demand increases, the price falls. Figure 4.13(e) shows the case when supply increases by the same amount as demand increases, so the price remains unchanged.

Decrease in Both Demand and Supply

A decrease in demand or a decrease in supply decreases the equilibrium quantity. So when demand and supply decrease together, the *quantity decreases*. But the price falls when demand decreases and rises when supply decreases. So when demand and supply decrease together, we can't say what happens to the price unless we know the magnitudes of the changes. If demand decreases by more than supply decreases, the price falls. But if supply decreases by more than demand decreases, the price rises. Figure 4.13(i) shows the case when supply decreases by the same amount as demand decreases, so the price remains unchanged.

Increase in Demand and Decrease in Supply

An increase in demand or a decrease in supply raises the equilibrium price, so combined, these changes *raise the price*. But an increase in demand increases the quantity, and a decrease in supply decreases the quantity. So when these changes occur together, we can't say what happens to the quantity unless we know the magnitudes of the changes. If demand increases by more than supply decreases, the quantity increases. But if supply decreases by more than demand increases, the quantity decreases. Figure 4.13(h) shows the case when demand increases by the same amount as supply decreases, so the quantity remains unchanged.

Decrease in Demand and Increase in Supply

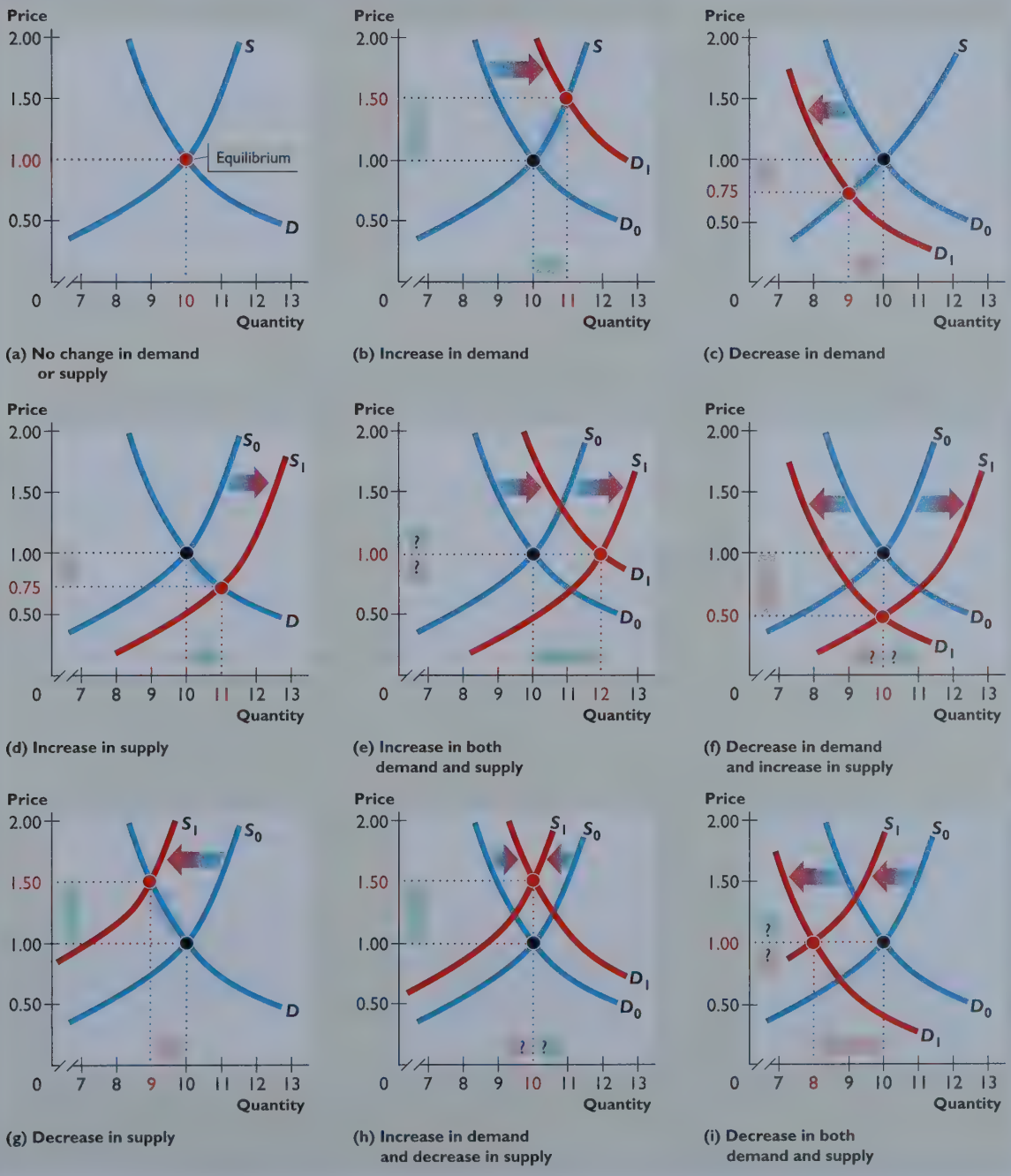
A decrease in demand or an increase in supply lowers the equilibrium price, so combined, these changes *lower the price*. But a decrease in demand decreases the quantity, and an increase in supply increases the quantity. So when these changes occur together, we can't say what happens to the quantity unless we know the magnitudes of the changes. If demand decreases by more than supply increases, the quantity decreases. But if supply increases by more than demand decreases, the quantity increases. Figure 4.13(f) shows the case when demand decreases by the same amount as supply increases, so the quantity remains unchanged.

For the cases in Figure 4.13 where you "can't say" what happens to price or quantity, make some examples that go in each direction.

FIGURE 4.13

The Effects of All the Possible Changes in Demand and Supply

MyEconLab Animation



MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 4.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 4.3

Explain how demand and supply determine price and quantity in a market, and explain the effects of changes in demand and supply.

Practice Problems

Table 1 sets out the demand and supply schedules for milk.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per carton)	Quantity demanded (cartons per day)	Quantity supplied (cartons per day)
1.00	200	110
1.25	175	130
1.50	150	150
1.75	125	170
2.00	100	190

1. What is the equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity of milk?
2. Describe the situation in the milk market if the price were $1.75 a carton and explain how the market reaches equilibrium.
3. A drought decreases the quantity supplied by 45 cartons a day at each price. What is the new equilibrium and how does the market adjust to it?
4. If milk becomes more popular and better feeds increase milk production, describe how the equilibrium price and quantity of milk will change.

In the News

After wild weather, higher food prices on horizon

After heavy rain this year, the corn harvest will be less than expected while the demand for corn will continue to increase. Food prices will continue to rise.

Source: npr, June 9, 2011

Using the demand and supply model explain why food prices are expected to rise.

FIGURE 1

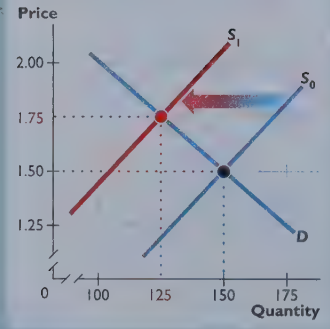
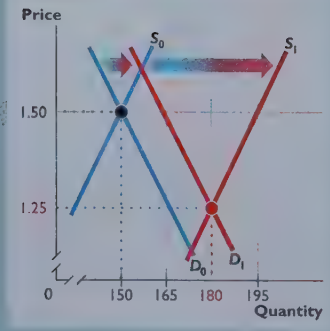


FIGURE 2



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Equilibrium price is $1.50 a carton; equilibrium quantity is 150 cartons a day.
2. At $1.75 a carton, the quantity demanded (125 cartons) is less than the quantity supplied (170 cartons), so there is a surplus of 45 cartons a day. The price begins to fall, and as it does, the quantity demanded increases, the quantity supplied decreases, and the surplus decreases. The price will fall until the surplus is eliminated. The price falls to $1.50 a carton.
3. The supply decreases by 45 cartons a day so at $1.50 a carton there is a shortage of milk. The price begins to rise, and as it does, the quantity demanded decreases, the quantity supplied increases, and the shortage decreases. The price will rise until the shortage is eliminated. The new equilibrium occurs at $1.75 a carton and 125 cartons a day (Figure 1).
4. With milk more popular, demand increases. With better feeds, supply increases. If supply increases by more than demand, a surplus arises. The price falls, and the quantity increases (Figure 2). If demand increases by more than supply, a shortage arises. The price rises, and the quantity increases. If demand and supply increase by the same amount, there is no shortage or surplus, so the price does not change, but the quantity increases.

Solution to In the News

A fall in the corn harvest will decrease the supply of corn and shift the supply curve of corn leftward. The increase in the demand for corn will shift the demand curve rightward. The price of corn will rise. The higher price of corn will decrease the supply of food made from corn and raise the price of this food.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1. Distinguish between quantity demanded and demand, and explain what determines demand.

- Other things remaining the same, the quantity demanded increases as the price falls and decreases as the price rises—the law of demand.
- The demand for a good is influenced by the prices of related goods, expected future prices, income, expected future income and credit, the number of buyers, and preferences. A change in any of these influences changes the demand for the good.

2. Distinguish between quantity supplied and supply, and explain what determines supply.

- Other things remaining the same, the quantity supplied increases as the price rises and decreases as the price falls—the law of supply.
- The supply of a good is influenced by the prices of related goods, prices of resources and other inputs, expected future prices, the number of sellers, and productivity. A change in any of these influences changes the supply of the good.

3. Explain how demand and supply determine price and quantity in a market, and explain the effects of changes in demand and supply.

- The law of market forces brings market equilibrium—the equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity at which buyers and sellers trade.
- The price adjusts to maintain market equilibrium—to keep the quantity demanded equal to the quantity supplied. A surplus brings a fall in the price to restore market equilibrium; a shortage brings a rise in the price to restore market equilibrium.
- Market equilibrium responds to changes in demand and supply. An increase in demand increases both the price and the quantity; a decrease in demand decreases both the price and the quantity. An increase in supply increases the quantity but decreases the price; and a decrease in supply decreases the quantity but increases the price.

Key Terms

Change in demand, 88
Change in the quantity demanded, 90
Change in the quantity supplied, 97
Change in supply, 95
Complement, 88
Complement in production, 95
Demand, 85
Demand curve, 86
Demand schedule, 86
Equilibrium price, 99
Equilibrium quantity, 99
Inferior good, 89
Law of demand, 85
Law of market forces, 99
Law of supply, 92
Market demand, 87
Market equilibrium, 99
Market supply, 94
Normal good, 89
Quantity demanded, 85
Quantity supplied, 92
Substitute, 88
Substitute in production, 95
Supply, 92
Supply curve, 93
Supply schedule, 93

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 4 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Explain how each of the following events changes the demand for or supply of air travel.
   - Airfares tumble, while long-distance bus fares don't change.
   - The price of jet fuel rises.
   - Airlines reduce the number of flights each day.
   - People expect airfares to increase next summer.
   - The price of train travel falls.
   - The price of a pound of air cargo increases.

Use the laws of demand and supply to explain whether the statements in Problems **2** and **3** are true or false. In your explanation, distinguish between a change in demand and a change in the quantity demanded and between a change in supply and a change in the quantity supplied.

2. The United States does not allow oranges from Brazil (the world's largest producer of oranges) to enter the United States. If Brazilian oranges were sold in the United States, oranges and orange juice would be cheaper.
3. If the price of frozen yogurt falls, the quantity of ice cream consumed will decrease and the price of ice cream will rise.
4. Table 1 shows the demand and supply schedules for running shoes. What is the market equilibrium? If the price is $70 a pair, describe the situation in the market. Explain how market equilibrium is restored. If a rise in income increases the demand for running shoes by 100 pairs a day at each price, explain how the market adjusts to its new equilibrium.
5. "As more people buy fuel-efficient hybrid cars, the demand for gasoline will decrease and the price of gasoline will fall. The fall in the price of gasoline will decrease the supply of gasoline." Is this statement true? Explain.
6. **OPEC deadlocked on oil production hike**
   Oil prices breached the $100-a-barrel mark Wednesday after OPEC said it could not reach an agreement about raising crude production.
   Source: CNN Money, June 8, 2011

   Draw a graph to show the oil market in equilibrium. Suppose that OPEC members had agreed to increase production. Show on your graph, the effect of this decision on the market equilibrium.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per pair)	Quantity demanded (pairs per day)	Quantity supplied (pairs per day)
60	1,000	400
70	900	500
80	800	600
90	700	700
100	600	800
110	500	900

Use the following information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

Pricier bread and cereal. Coming soon?
Wheat and corn prices surged about 10 percent last week and could hit the items in your grocery basket by mid-summer. It's a case of two extremes: dry weather conditions in parts of the southern United States and in Europe have sparked fears of a supply crunch of wheat, while supplies of corn are being threatened by flooding and heavy rain in the Midwest.
Source: CNN Money, May 19, 2011

7. Explain why the dry weather will lead to a rise in the price of bread.
8. Use graphs to show why the price of corn has risen and show its effect on the price of cereals.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. If after heavy rain and low production, the weather improves and coffee growers enjoy bumper crops, how does
   - The demand for coffee change?
   - The supply of coffee change?
   - The price of coffee change?

   Illustrate your answer with a graphical analysis.
2. What is the effect on the equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity of orange juice if the price of apple juice decreases and the wage rate paid to orange grove workers increases?
3. What is the effect on the equilibrium in the orange juice market if orange juice becomes more popular and a cheaper robot is used to pick oranges?

Table 1 shows the demand and supply schedules for boxes of chocolates in an average week. Use this information to work Problems 4 and 5.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per box)	Quantity demanded (boxes per week)	Quantity supplied (boxes per week)
13.00	1,600	1,200
14.00	1,500	1,300
15.00	1,400	1,400
16.00	1,300	1,500
17.00	1,200	1,600
18.00	1,100	1,700

4. If the price of chocolates is $17.00 a box, describe the situation in the market. Explain how market equilibrium is restored.
5. During Valentine's week, more people buy chocolates and chocolatiers offer their chocolates in special red boxes, which cost more to produce than the everyday box. Set out the three-step process of analysis and show on a graph the adjustment process to the new equilibrium. Describe the changes in the equilibrium price and the equilibrium quantity.
6. After a severe bout of foreclosures and defaults on home loans, banks made it harder for people to borrow. How does this change influence
   - The demand for new homes?
   - The supply of new homes?
   - The price of new homes?

   Illustrate your answer with a graphical analysis.
7. **Alabama food prices jump in May**
   Alabama Farmers Federation announced that food prices in May will increase. In previous unprofitable years, farmers reduced their herds with the result that in 2009 meat production will fall. Bacon is expected to rise by 32 cents a pound to $4.18 and steaks by 57 cents to $8.41 a pound.

   Source: *The Birmingham News*, May 21, 2009

   Explain why the reduction of herds will lead to a rise in meat prices today. Draw a graph to illustrate.
8. "As more people buy computers, the demand for Internet service increases and the price of Internet service decreases. The fall in the price of Internet service decreases the supply of Internet service." Is this statement true or false? Explain.
9. **Steel output set for historic drop**
   Steel producers expect to cut output by 10 percent in 2009 in response to cancelled orders from construction companies and car and household appliance producers.

   Source: *Financial Times*, December 28, 2008

   Does the cancellation of orders change the demand for steel, the quantity demanded, the supply of steel, or the quantity supplied? What happens to the equilibrium price of steel?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 4 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Which of the following events illustrates the law of demand: Other things remaining the same, a rise in the price of a good will _____ .
   A. decrease the quantity demanded of that good
   B. increase the demand for a substitute of that good
   C. decrease the demand for the good
   D. increase the demand for a complement of that good
2. In the market for jeans, which of the following events increases the demand for a pair of jeans?
   A. rise in the wage rate paid to garment workers
   B. rise in the price of a denim skirt (a substitute for jeans)
   C. fall in the price of denim cloth
   D. new technology, which reduces the time it takes to make a pair of jeans
3. Other things remaining the same, a fall in the price of peanuts will _____.
   A. increase the supply of peanuts
   B. decrease the supply of peanut butter
   C. decrease the quantity supplied of peanuts
   D. decrease the supply of peanuts
4. In the market for cell phones, which of the following events increases the supply of cell phones?
   A. New technology lowers the cost of making a cell phone
   B. Rise in the price of an e-book reader (a substitute in production)
   C. An increase in people's incomes
   D. A rise in the wage rate paid to electronics workers
5. When floods wiped out the banana crop in Central America, the equilibrium price of bananas _____ and the equilibrium quantity of bananas _____.
   A. rose; increased
   B. rose; decreased
   C. fell; increased
   D. fell; decreased
6. A decrease in the demand for chocolate with no change in the supply of chocolate will create a _____ of chocolate at today's price, but gradually the price will _____.
   A. surplus; fall
   B. shortage; fall
   C. surplus; rise
   D. shortage; rise
7. Many Americans are selling their used cars and buying new fuel-efficient hybrids. Other things remaining the same, in the market for used cars, _____ and in the market for hybrids _____.
   A. supply increases and the price falls; demand increases and the price rises
   B. demand decreases and the price rises; supply increases and the price falls
   C. both demand and supply decrease and the price might rise, fall, or not change; demand increases and the price rises
   D. demand decreases, supply increases, and the price falls; supply increases and the price falls

What do you do when the price of gasoline rises?

Elasticities of Demand and Supply

5

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define the price elasticity of demand, and explain the factors that influence it and how to calculate it.
2. Define the price elasticity of supply, and explain the factors that influence it and how to calculate it.
3. Define the cross elasticity of demand and the income elasticity of demand, and explain the factors that influence them.

5.1 THE PRICE ELASTICITY OF DEMAND

A decrease in supply of gasoline brings a large rise in its price and a small decrease in the quantity that people buy. The reason is that buying plans for gasoline are not very responsive to a change in price. But an increase in the supply of airline services brings a small decrease in its price and a large increase in the quantity of air travel. In the case of air travel, buying plans are highly sensitive to a change in price. By knowing how sensitive or responsive buying plans are to price changes, we can predict how a given change in supply will change price and quantity.

But we often want to go further and predict by how much a price will change when an event occurs. To make more precise predictions about the magnitudes of price and quantity changes, we need to know more about a demand curve than the fact that it slopes downward. We need to know how responsive the quantity demanded is to a price change. Elasticity provides this information.

Price elasticity of demand
A measure of the responsiveness of the quantity demanded of a good to a change in its price when all other influences on buyers' plans remain the same.

The **price elasticity of demand** is a measure of the responsiveness of the quantity demanded of a good* to a change in its price when all other influences on buyers' plans remain the same.

To determine the price elasticity of demand, we compare the percentage change in the quantity demanded with the percentage change in price. But we calculate percentage changes in a special way.

Percentage Change in Price

Suppose that Starbucks raises the price of a latte from $3 to $5 a cup. What is the percentage change in price? The change in price is the new price minus the initial price. The percentage change is calculated as the change in price divided by the initial price, all multiplied by 100. The formula for the percentage change is

$$\text{Percentage change in price} = \left(\frac{\text{New price} - \text{Initial price}}{\text{Initial price}}\right) \times 100.$$

In this example, the initial price is $3 and the new price is $5, so

$$\text{Percentage change in price} = \left(\frac{\$5 - \$3}{\$3}\right) \times 100 = \left(\frac{\$2}{\$3}\right) \times 100 = 66.67 \text{ percent.}$$

Now suppose that Starbucks cuts the price of a latte from $5 to $3 a cup. Now what is the percentage change in price? The initial price is now $5 and the new price is $3, so the percentage change in price is calculated as

$$\text{Percentage change in price} = \left(\frac{\$3 - \$5}{\$5}\right) \times 100 = \left(\frac{-\$2}{\$5}\right) \times 100 = -40 \text{ percent.}$$

The same price change, $2, over the same interval, $3 to $5, is a different percentage change (different absolute value or magnitude) depending on whether the price rises or falls.

Because elasticity compares the percentage change in the quantity demanded with the percentage change in price, we need a measure of percentage change that does not depend on the direction of the price change. The measure that economists use is called the *midpoint method*.

*What you learn in this chapter also applies to services and factors of production.

The Midpoint Method

To calculate the percentage change in price using the midpoint method, we divide the change in the price by the *average price*—the *average* of the new price and the initial price—and then multiply by 100. The average price is at the midpoint between the initial and the new price, hence the name *midpoint method.*

The formula for the percentage change using the midpoint method is

$$\text{Percentage change in price} = \left(\frac{\text{New price} - \text{Initial price}}{(\text{New price} + \text{Initial price}) \div 2}\right) \times 100.$$

In this formula, the numerator, (New price − Initial price), is the same as before. The denominator, (New price + Initial price) ÷ 2, is the average of the new price and the initial price.

To calculate the percentage change in the price of a Starbucks latte using the midpoint method, put $5 for new price and $3 for initial price in the formula:

$$\text{Percentage change in price} = \left(\frac{\$5 - \$3}{(\$5 + \$3) \div 2}\right) \times 100 = \left(\frac{\$2}{\$8 \div 2}\right) \times 100$$

$$= \left(\frac{\$2}{\$4}\right) \times 100 = 50 \text{ percent.}$$

Because the average price is the same regardless of whether the price rises or falls, the percentage change in price calculated by the midpoint method is the same (absolute value or magnitude) for a price rise and a price fall. In this example, it is 50 percent.

Percentage Change in Quantity Demanded

Suppose that when the price of a latte rises from $3 to $5 a cup, the quantity demanded decreases from 15 cups to 5 cups an hour. The percentage change in the quantity demanded using the midpoint method is

$$\text{Percentage change in quantity} = \left(\frac{\text{New quantity} - \text{Initial quantity}}{(\text{New quantity} + \text{Initial quantity}) \div 2}\right) \times 100$$

$$= \left(\frac{5 - 15}{(5 + 15) \div 2}\right) \times 100 = \left(\frac{-10}{20 \div 2}\right) \times 100$$

$$= \left(\frac{-10}{10}\right) \times 100 = -100 \text{ percent.}$$

When the price of a good *rises,* the quantity demanded of it *decreases*—a *positive* change in price brings a *negative* change in the quantity demanded. Similarly, when the price of a good *falls,* the quantity demanded of it *increases*—this time a *negative* change in price brings a *positive* change in the quantity demanded.

To compare the percentage change in the price and the percentage change in the quantity demanded, we use the absolute values or magnitudes of the percentage changes and we ignore the minus sign.

Elastic and Inelastic Demand

To determine the responsiveness of the quantity of Starbucks latte demanded to its price, we need to compare the two percentage changes we've just calculated. The percentage change in quantity is 100 and the percentage change in price is 50, so the percentage change in quantity demanded is twice the percentage change in price. If we collected data on the prices and quantities of a number of goods and services (and we were careful to check that other things had remained the same), we could calculate lots of percentage changes. Our calculations would fall into three groups: The percentage change in the quantity demanded might exceed the percentage change in price, equal the percentage change in price, or be less than the percentage change in price. Which of these three possibilities arises depends on the elasticity of demand:

Elastic demand
When the percentage change in the quantity demanded exceeds the percentage change in price.

Unit elastic demand
When the percentage change in the quantity demanded equals the percentage change in price.

Inelastic demand
When the percentage change in the quantity demanded is less than the percentage change in price.

Perfectly elastic demand
When the quantity demanded changes by a very large percentage in response to an almost zero percentage change in price.

Perfectly inelastic demand
When the percentage change in the quantity demanded is zero for any percentage change in the price.

- When the percentage change in the quantity demanded exceeds the percentage change in price, demand is **elastic.**
- When the percentage change in the quantity demanded equals the percentage change in price, demand is **unit elastic.**
- When the percentage change in the quantity demanded is less than the percentage change in price, demand is **inelastic.**

Figure 5.1 shows the different types of demand curves that illustrate the range of possible price elasticities of demand. Part (a) shows an extreme case of an elastic demand called a **perfectly elastic demand**—an almost zero percentage change in the price brings a very large percentage change in the quantity demanded. Consumers are willing to buy any quantity of the good at a given price but none at a higher price. Part (b) shows an elastic demand—the percentage change in the quantity demanded exceeds the percentage change in price. Part (c) shows a unit elastic demand—the percentage change in the quantity demanded equals the percentage change in price. Part (d) shows an inelastic demand—the percentage change in the quantity demanded is less than the percentage change in price. Finally, part (e) shows an extreme case of an inelastic demand called a **perfectly inelastic demand**—the percentage change in the quantity demanded is zero for any percentage change in price.

Influences on the Price Elasticity of Demand

What makes the demand for some things elastic and the demand for others inelastic? The influences on the price elasticity of demand fall into two groups:

- Availability of substitutes
- Proportion of income spent

Availability of Substitutes

The demand for a good is elastic if a substitute for it is easy to find. Soft drink containers can be made of either aluminum or plastic and it doesn't matter which, so the demand for aluminum is elastic.

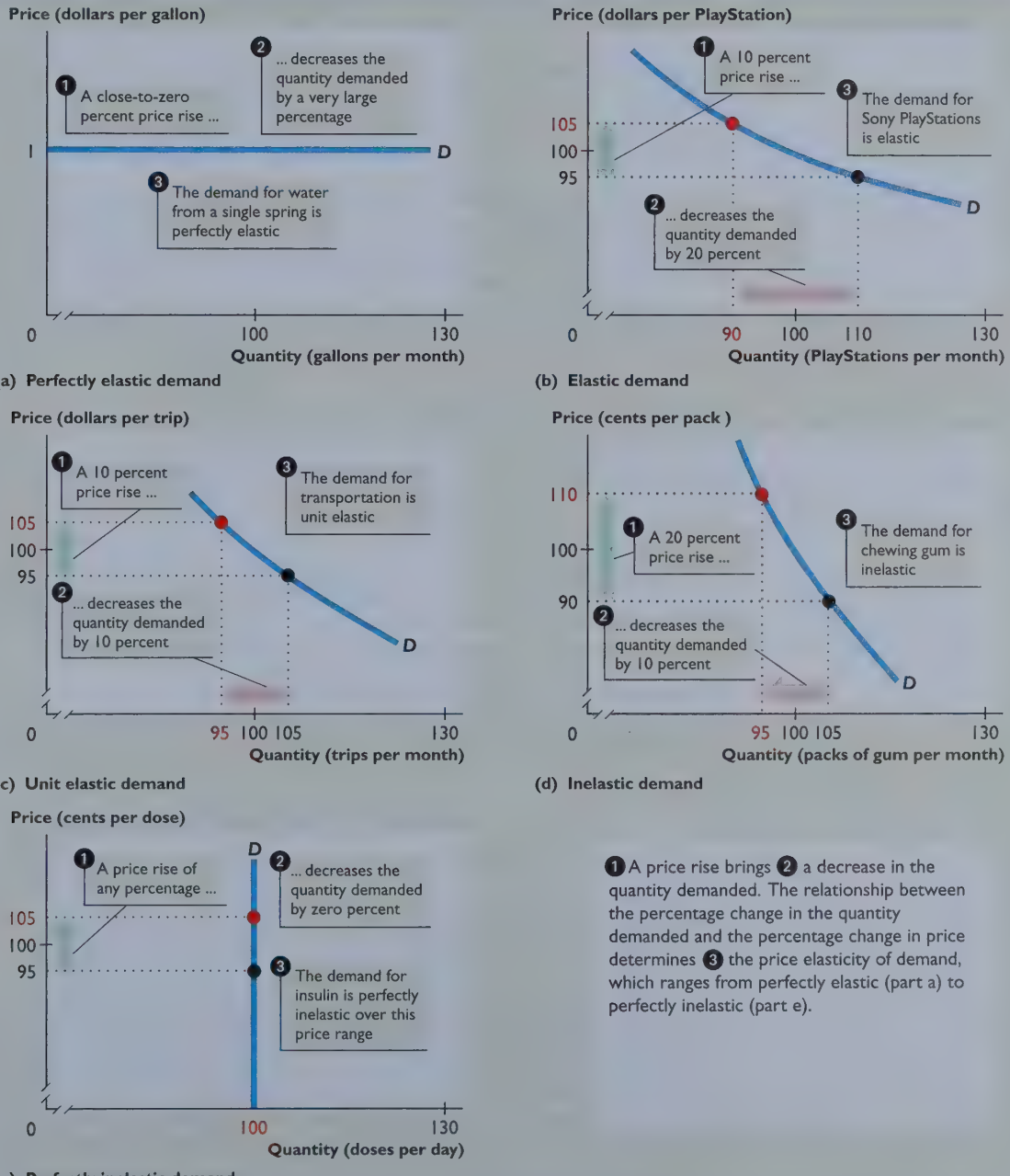
The demand for a good is inelastic if a substitute for it is hard to find. Oil has poor substitutes (imagine a coal-fueled car), so the demand for oil is inelastic.

Three main factors influence the ability to find a substitute for a good: whether the good is a luxury or a necessity, how narrowly it is defined, and the amount of time available to find a substitute for it.

FIGURE 5.1

The Range of Price Elasticities of Demand

MyEconLab Animation



1 A price rise brings 2 a decrease in the quantity demanded. The relationship between the percentage change in the quantity demanded and the percentage change in price determines 3 the price elasticity of demand, which ranges from perfectly elastic (part a) to perfectly inelastic (part e).

Luxury Versus Necessity We call goods such as food and housing *necessities* and goods such as exotic vacations *luxuries*. A necessity has poor substitutes—you must eat—so the demand for a necessity is inelastic. A luxury has many substitutes—you don't absolutely have to go to the Galapagos Islands this summer—so the demand for a luxury is elastic.

Narrowness of Definition The demand for a narrowly defined good is elastic. For example, the demand for a Starbucks latte is elastic because a New World latte is a good substitute for it. The demand for a broadly defined good is inelastic. For example, the demand for coffee is inelastic because tea is a poor substitute for it.

Time Elapsed Since Price Change The longer the time that has elapsed since the price of a good changed, the more elastic is the demand for the good. For example, when the price of gasoline increased steeply during the 1970s and 1980s, the quantity of gasoline demanded didn't change much because many people owned gas-guzzling automobiles—the demand for gasoline was inelastic. But eventually, fuel-efficient cars replaced gas guzzlers and the quantity of gasoline demanded decreased—the demand for gasoline became more elastic.

Proportion of Income Spent

A price rise, like a decrease in income, means that people cannot afford to buy the same quantities of goods and services as before. The greater the proportion of income spent on a good, the greater is the impact of a rise in its price on the quantity of that good that people can afford to buy and the more elastic is the demand for the good. For example, toothpaste takes a tiny proportion of your budget and housing takes a large proportion. If the price of toothpaste doubles, you buy almost as much toothpaste as before. Your demand for toothpaste is inelastic. If your apartment rent doubles, you shriek and look for more roommates. Your demand for housing is more elastic than is your demand for toothpaste.

Computing the Price Elasticity of Demand

To determine whether the demand for a good is elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic, we compute a numerical value for the price elasticity of demand by using the following formula:

$$\text{Price elasticity of demand} = \frac{\text{Percentage change in quantity demanded}}{\text{Percentage change in price}}.$$

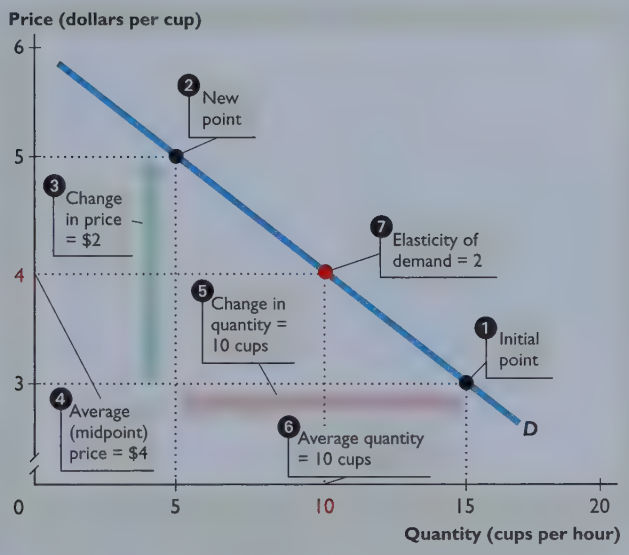
- If the price elasticity of demand is greater than 1, demand is elastic.
- If the price elasticity of demand equals 1, demand is unit elastic.
- If the price elasticity of demand is less than 1, demand is inelastic.

Figure 5.2 illustrates and summarizes the calculation for the Starbucks latte example. Initially, the price is $3 a cup and 15 cups an hour are demanded—the initial point in the figure. Then the price rises to $5 a cup and the quantity demanded decreases to 5 cups an hour—the new point in the figure. The price rises by $2 a cup and the average (midpoint) price is $4 a cup, so the percentage change in price is 50. The quantity demanded decreases by 10 cups an hour and the average (midpoint) quantity is 10 cups an hour, so the percentage change in quantity demanded is 100.

FIGURE 5.2

Price Elasticity of Demand Calculation

MyEconLab Animation



1. At the initial point, the price is $3 a cup and the quantity demanded is 15 cups an hour.
2. At the new point, the price is $5 a cup and the quantity demanded is 5 cups an hour.
3. The change in price is $2 and
4. the average price is $4, so the percentage change in price equals ($2 ÷ $4) × 100, which is 50 percent.
5. The change in the quantity demanded is 10 cups and
6. the average quantity demanded is 10 cups, so the percentage change in quantity demanded equals (10 cups ÷ 10 cups) × 100, which is 100 percent.
7. The price elasticity of demand equals 100 percent ÷ 50 percent, which is 2.

Using the above formula, you can see that the price elasticity of demand for a Starbucks latte is

$$\text{Price elasticity of demand} = \frac{100 \text{ percent}}{50 \text{ percent}} = 2.$$

The price elasticity of demand is 2 at the midpoint between the initial price and the new price on the demand curve. Over this price range, the demand for a Starbucks latte is elastic.

Interpreting the Price Elasticity of Demand Number

The number we've just calculated for a Starbucks latte is only an example. We don't have real data on the price and quantity. But suppose we did have real data and we discovered that the price elasticity of demand for a Starbucks latte is 2. What does this number tell us?

It tells us three main things:

1. The demand for Starbucks latte is elastic. Being elastic, the good has plenty of convenient substitutes (such as other brands of latte) and takes only a small proportion of buyers' incomes.
2. Starbucks must be careful not to charge too high a price for its latte. Pushing the price up brings in more revenue per cup but wipes out a lot of potential business.
3. The flip side of the second point: Even a slightly lower price could create a lot of potential business and end up bringing in more revenue.

Elasticity Along a Linear Demand Curve

Slope measures responsiveness. But elasticity is *not* the same as *slope*. You can see the distinction most clearly by looking at the price elasticity of demand along a linear (straight-line) demand curve. The slope is constant, but the elasticity varies. Figure 5.3 shows the same demand curve for a Starbucks latte as that in Figure 5.2 but with the axes extended to show lower prices and larger quantities demanded.

Let's calculate the elasticity of demand at point *A*. If the price rises from $3 to $5 a cup, the quantity demanded decreases from 15 to 5 cups an hour. The average price is $4 a cup, and the average quantity is 10 cups—point *A*. The elasticity of demand at point *A* is 2, and demand is elastic.

Let's calculate the elasticity of demand at point *C*. If the price falls from $3 to $1 a cup, the quantity demanded increases from 15 to 25 cups an hour. The average price is $2 a cup, and the average quantity is 20 cups—point *C*. The elasticity of demand at point *C* is 0.5, and demand is inelastic.

Finally, let's calculate the elasticity of demand at point *B*, which is the midpoint of the demand curve. If the price rises from $2 to $4 a cup, the quantity demanded decreases from 20 to 10 cups an hour. The average price is $3 a cup, and the average quantity is 15 cups—point *B*. The elasticity of demand at point *B* is 1, and demand is unit elastic.

Along a linear demand curve,

- Demand is unit elastic at the midpoint of the curve.
- Demand is elastic at all points above the midpoint of the curve.
- Demand is inelastic at all points below the midpoint of the curve.

FIGURE 5.3

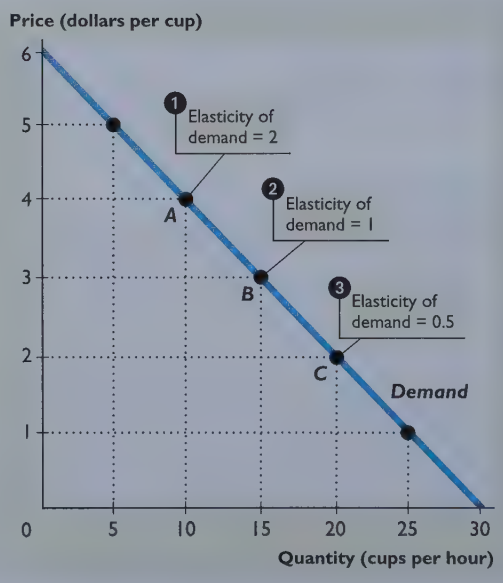
Elasticity Along a Linear Demand Curve

MyEconLab Animation

On a linear demand curve, the slope is constant but the elasticity decreases as the price falls and the quantity demanded increases.

1. At point *A*, demand is elastic.
2. At point *B*, which is the midpoint of the demand curve, demand is unit elastic.
3. At point *C*, demand is inelastic.

Demand is elastic at all points above the midpoint of the demand curve and inelastic at all points below the midpoint of the demand curve.



EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Price Elasticities of Demand

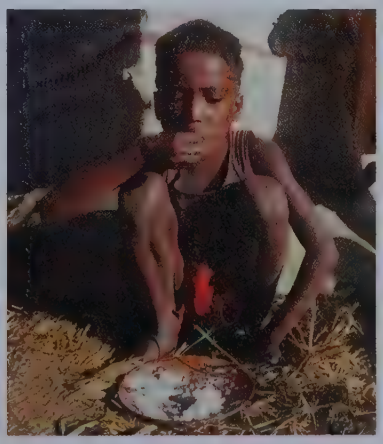
A rich American student is casual about her food. It costs only a few dollars a day, and she's going to have her burger, even at double the price. But a poor Tanzanian boy takes his food with deadly seriousness. He has a tough time getting, preparing, and even defending his food. A rise in the price of food means that he must cut back and eat even less.

The figure shows the percentage of income spent on food and the price elasticity of demand for food in ten countries. The larger the proportion of income spent on food, the larger is the price elasticity of demand for food.

As the low-income countries become richer, the proportion of income they spend on food will decrease and their demand for food will become more inelastic. Consequently, the world's demand for food will become more inelastic.

Harvests fluctuate and bring fluctuations in the price of food. And as the world demand for food becomes more and more inelastic, the fluctuations in the prices of food items will become larger.

The table shows a few real-world price elasticities of demand. The numbers in the table range from 1.52 for metals to 0.12 for food. Metals have good substitutes, such as plastics, while food has virtually no substitutes. As we move down the list of items, they have fewer good substitutes and are more likely to be regarded as necessities.



Some Price Elasticities of Demand

Good or Service	Elasticity
Elastic Demand	
Metals	1.52
Electrical engineering products	1.39
Mechanical engineering products	1.30
Furniture	1.26
Motor vehicles	1.14
Instrument engineering products	1.10
Professional services	1.09
Transportation services	1.03
Inelastic Demand	
Gas, electricity, and water	0.92
Oil	0.91
Chemicals	0.89
Beverages (all types)	0.78
Clothing	0.64
Tobacco	0.61
Banking and insurance services	0.56
Housing services	0.55
Agricultural and fish products	0.42
Books, magazines, and newspapers	0.34
Food	0.12

SOURCES OF DATA: See page C1.

Total Revenue and the Price Elasticity of Demand

Total revenue
The amount spent on a good and received by its seller and equals the price of the good multiplied by the quantity sold.

Total revenue is the amount spent on a good and received by its sellers and equals the price of the good multiplied by the quantity of the good sold. For example, suppose that the price of a Starbucks latte is $3 and that 15 cups an hour are sold. Then total revenue is $3 a cup multiplied by 15 cups an hour, which equals $45 an hour.

We can use the demand curve for Starbucks latte to illustrate total revenue. Figure 5.4(a) shows the total revenue from the sale of latte when the price is $3 a cup and the quantity of latte demanded is 15 cups an hour. Total revenue is shown by the blue rectangle, the area of which equals $3, its height, multiplied by 15, its length, which equals $45.

When the price changes, total revenue can change in the same direction, the opposite direction, or remain constant. Which of these outcomes occurs depends on the price elasticity of demand. By observing the change in total revenue that results from a price change (with all other influences on the quantity remaining

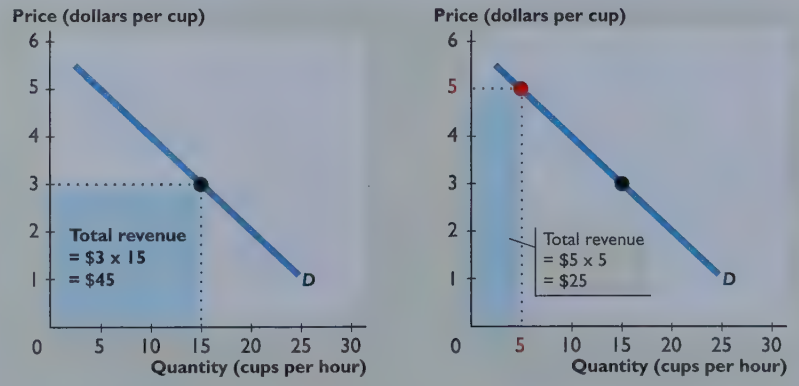
FIGURE 5.4

Total Revenue and the Price Elasticity of Demand

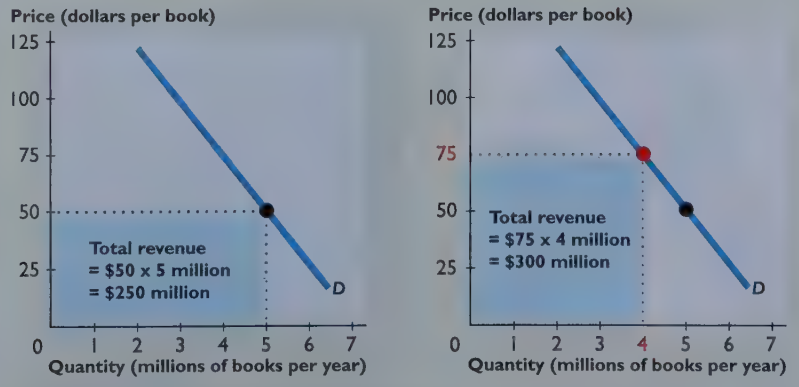
MyEconLab Animation

Total revenue equals price multiplied by quantity. In part (a), when the price is $3 a cup, the quantity demanded is 15 cups an hour and total revenue equals $45 an hour. When the price rises to $5 a cup, the quantity demanded decreases to 5 cups an hour and total revenue decreases to $25 an hour. Demand is elastic.

In part (b), when the price is $50 a book, the quantity demanded is 5 million books a year and total revenue equals $250 million a year. When the price rises to $75 a book, the quantity demanded decreases to 4 million books a year and total revenue increases to $300 million a year. Demand is inelastic.



(a) Total revenue and elastic demand: Starbucks latte



(b) Total revenue and inelastic demand: textbooks

unchanged), we can estimate the price elasticity of demand. This method of estimating the price elasticity of demand is called the **total revenue test**.

Total revenue test
A method of estimating the price elasticity of demand by observing the change in total revenue that results from a price change (with all other influences on the quantity sold remaining unchanged).

If demand is elastic, a given percentage rise in price brings a larger percentage decrease in the quantity demanded, so total revenue—price multiplied by quantity—decreases. Figure 5.4(a) shows this outcome. When the price of a latte is \$3, the quantity demanded is 15 cups an hour and total revenue is \$45 (\$3 × 15). If the price of a latte rises to \$5, the quantity demanded decreases to 5 cups an hour and total revenue *decreases* to \$25 (\$5 × 5).

If demand is inelastic, a given percentage rise in price brings a smaller percentage decrease in the quantity demanded, so total revenue increases. Figure 5.4(b) shows this outcome. When the price of a textbook is \$50, the quantity demanded is 5 million textbooks a year and total revenue is \$250 million (\$50 × 5 million). If the price of a textbook rises to \$75, the quantity demanded decreases to 4 million textbooks a year and total revenue *increases* to \$300 million (\$75 × 4 million).

The relationship between the price elasticity of demand and total revenue is

- If price and total revenue change in opposite directions, demand is elastic.
- If a price change leaves total revenue unchanged, demand is unit elastic.
- If price and total revenue change in the same direction, demand is inelastic.

EYE on the PRICE OF GAS

What Do You Do When the Price of Gasoline Rises?

If you are like most people, you complain when the price of gasoline rises, but you don't cut back very much on your gas purchases.

University of London economists Phil Goodwin, Joyce Dargay, and Mark Hanly studied the effects of a hike in the price of gasoline on the quantity of gasoline demanded and on the volume of road traffic.

By using data for the United States and a large number of other countries, they estimated that a 10 percent rise in the price of gasoline decreases the quantity of gasoline used by 2.5 percent within one year and by 6 percent after five years.

Price Elasticity of Demand

We can translate these numbers into price elasticities of demand for gasoline.

The short-run (up to one year) price elasticity of demand is 2.5 percent divided by 10 percent, which equals 0.25. The long-run (after five years) price elasticity of demand is 6 percent divided by 10 percent, which equals 0.6. Because these price elasticities are less than one, the demand for gasoline is inelastic.

When the price of gasoline rises, the quantity of gasoline demanded decreases but the amount spent on gasoline increases.

The effect of a rise in the price of gasoline on the volume of traffic is smaller than on the quantity of gasoline used.

A 10-percent rise in the price of gasoline decreases the volume of traffic by only 1 percent within one year and by 3 percent after five years.

How can the volume of traffic fall by less than the quantity of gasoline used? The answer is by switching to smaller, more fuel-efficient vehicles.

The price elasticity of demand for gasoline is low—the demand for gasoline is inelastic—because gasoline has poor substitutes, but it does have a substitute—a smaller vehicle.

Applications of the Price Elasticity of Demand

Does a frost in Florida bring a massive or a modest rise in the price of oranges? And does a smaller orange crop mean bad news or good news for orange growers? Knowledge of the price elasticity of demand for oranges enables us to answer these questions.

Orange Prices and Total Revenue

A Florida frost is bad news for buyers of orange juice and for growers who lose their crops, but good news for growers who escape the frost.

Economists have estimated the price elasticity of demand for agricultural products to be about 0.4—an inelastic demand. If this number applies to the demand for oranges, then

$$\text{Price elasticity of demand} = 0.4 = \frac{\text{Percentage change in quantity demanded}}{\text{Percentage change in price}}.$$

If supply changes and demand doesn't, the percentage change in the quantity demanded equals the percentage change in the equilibrium quantity. So if a frost in Florida decreases the orange harvest and decreases the equilibrium quantity of oranges by 1 percent, the price of oranges will rise by 2.5 percent. The percentage change in the quantity demanded (1 percent) divided by the percentage change in price (2.5 percent) equals the price elasticity of demand (0.4).

So the answer to the first question is that when the frost strikes, the price of oranges will rise by a larger percentage than the percentage decrease in the quantity of oranges. But what happens to the total revenue of the orange growers?

The answer is again provided by knowledge of the price elasticity of demand. Because the price rises by a larger percentage than the percentage decrease in quantity, total revenue increases. A frost is bad news for consumers and those growers who lose their crops, but good news for growers who escape the frost.

Addiction and Elasticity

Cracking down on imports of illegal drugs limits supply, which leads to a large price increase. But it also increases the expenditure on drugs by addicts and increases the amount of crime that finances addiction.

We can gain important insights that might help to design potentially effective policies for dealing with addiction to drugs, whether legal (such as tobacco and alcohol) or illegal (such as crack cocaine or heroin). Nonusers' demand for addictive substances is elastic. A moderately higher price leads to a substantially smaller number of people trying a drug and so exposing themselves to the possibility of becoming addicted to it. But the existing users' demand for addictive substances is inelastic. Even a substantial price rise brings only a modest decrease in the quantity demanded.

These facts about the price elasticity of demand mean that high taxes on cigarettes and alcohol limit the number of young people who become habitual users of these products, but high taxes have only a modest effect on the quantities consumed by established users.

Similarly, effective policing of imports of an illegal drug that limits its supply leads to a large price rise and a substantial decrease in the number of new users but only a small decrease in the quantity consumed by addicts. Expenditure on the drug by addicts increases. Further, because many drug addicts finance their purchases with crime, the amount of theft and burglary increases.

Because the price elasticity of demand for drugs is low for addicts, any successful policy to decrease drug use will be one that focuses on the demand for drugs and attempts to change preferences through rehabilitation programs.

CHECKPOINT 5.1

Define the price elasticity of demand, and explain the factors that influence it and how to calculate it.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 5.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

When the price of a good increased by 10 percent, the quantity demanded of it decreased by 2 percent.

1. Is the demand for this good elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic?
2. Does this good have close substitutes or poor substitutes? Is this good more likely to be a necessity or a luxury and to be narrowly or broadly defined? Why?
3. Calculate the price elasticity of demand for this good; explain how the total revenue from the sale of the good has changed; and explain which of the following goods this good is most likely to be: orange juice, bread, toothpaste, theater tickets, clothing, blue jeans, or Super Bowl tickets.

In the News

Music giant chops price to combat downloads

In 2003, when music downloading first took off, Universal Music slashed the price of a CD from $21 to $15. The company said that it expected the price cut to boost the quantity of CDs sold by 30 percent, other things remaining the same.

Source: *Globe and Mail*, September 4, 2003

What was Universal Music's estimate of the price elasticity of demand for CDs? Was the demand estimated to be elastic or inelastic?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The demand for a good is *inelastic* if the percentage decrease in the quantity demanded is less than the percentage increase in its price. In this example, a 10 percent price rise brings a 2 percent decrease in the quantity demanded, so demand is inelastic.
2. Because the good has an inelastic demand, it most likely has poor substitutes, is a necessity rather than a luxury, and is broadly defined.
3. Price elasticity of demand = Percentage change in the quantity demanded ÷ Percentage change in price. In this example, the price elasticity of demand is 2 percent divided by 10 percent, or 0.2. An elasticity less than 1 means that demand is inelastic. When demand is inelastic, a price rise increases total revenue. This good is most likely a necessity (bread), or has poor substitutes (toothpaste), or is broadly defined (clothing).

Solution to In the News

Price elasticity of demand = Percentage change in the quantity demanded ÷ Percentage change in price. The percentage change in the price equals [($21 − $15)/($18)] × 100, which is 33.3 percent. The percentage change in the quantity is 30 percent. So Universal Music's estimate of the price elasticity of demand for CDs was 30 percent ÷ 33.3 percent, or 0.9. Because the percentage change in the quantity is less than the percentage change in the price, demand is estimated to be inelastic, which is what an elasticity of 0.9 means.

5.2 THE PRICE ELASTICITY OF SUPPLY

You know that when demand increases, the equilibrium price rises and the equilibrium quantity increases. But does the price rise by a large amount and the quantity increase by a little? Or does the price barely rise and the quantity increase by a large amount? To answer this question, we need to know the price elasticity of supply.

Price elasticity of supply
A measure of the responsiveness of the quantity supplied of a good to a change in its price when all other influences on sellers' plans remain the same.

The **price elasticity of supply** is a measure of the responsiveness of the quantity supplied of a good to a change in its price when all other influences on sellers' plans remain the same. We determine the price elasticity of supply by comparing the percentage change in the quantity supplied with the percentage change in price.

Elastic and Inelastic Supply

The supply of a good might be

- Elastic
- Unit elastic
- Inelastic

Perfectly elastic supply
When the quantity supplied changes by a very large percentage in response to an almost zero percentage change in price.

Elastic supply
When the percentage change in the quantity supplied exceeds the percentage change in price.

Unit elastic supply
When the percentage change in the quantity supplied equals the percentage change in price.

Inelastic supply
When the percentage change in the quantity supplied is less than the percentage change in price.

Perfectly inelastic supply
When the percentage change in the quantity supplied is zero for any percentage change in the price.

Figure 5.5 illustrates the range of supply elasticities. Figure 5.5(a) shows the extreme case of a **perfectly elastic supply**—an almost zero percentage change in price brings a very large percentage change in the quantity supplied. Figure 5.5 (b) shows an **elastic supply**—the percentage change in the quantity supplied exceeds the percentage change in price. Figure 5.5(c) shows a **unit elastic supply**—the percentage change in the quantity supplied equals the percentage change in price. Figure 5.5(d) shows an **inelastic supply**—the percentage change in the quantity supplied is less than the percentage change in price. And Figure 5.5(e) shows the extreme case of a **perfectly inelastic supply**—the percentage change in the quantity supplied is zero when the price changes.

Influences on the Price Elasticity of Supply

What makes the supply of some things elastic and the supply of others inelastic? The two main influences on the price elasticity of supply are

- Production possibilities
- Storage possibilities

Production Possibilities

Some goods can be produced at a constant (or very gently rising) opportunity cost. These goods have an elastic supply. The silicon in your computer chips is an example of such a good. Silicon is extracted from sand at a tiny and almost constant opportunity cost, so the supply of silicon is perfectly elastic.

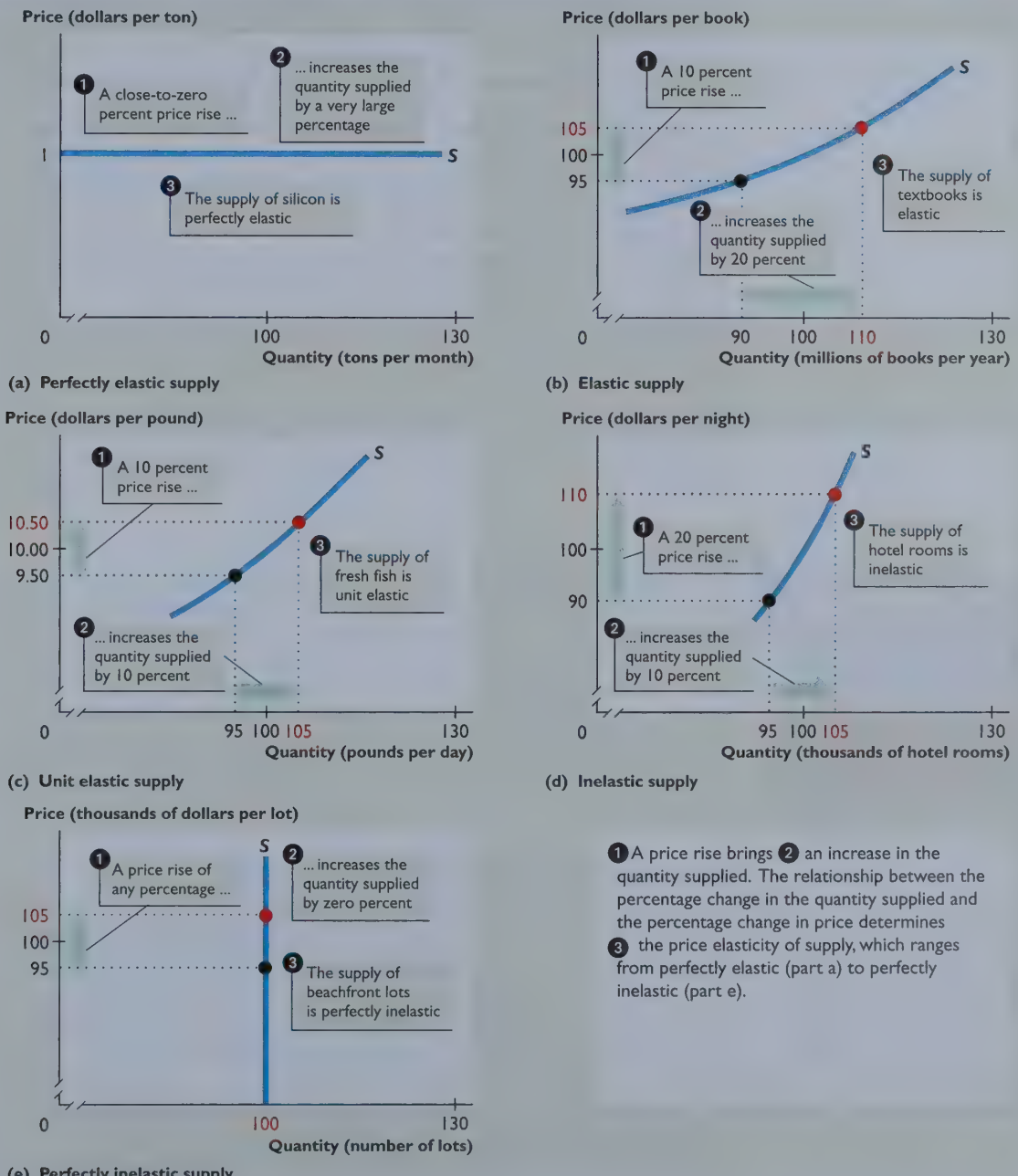
Some goods can be produced in only a fixed quantity. These goods have a perfectly inelastic supply. A beachfront home in Malibu can be built only on a unique beachfront lot, so the supply of these homes is perfectly inelastic.

Hotel rooms in New York City can't easily be used as office accommodation and office space cannot easily be converted into hotel rooms, so the supply of hotel rooms in New York City is inelastic. Paper and printing presses can be used to produce textbooks or magazines, and the supplies of these goods are elastic.

FIGURE 5.5

The Range of Price Elasticities of Supply

MyEconLab Animation



1 A price rise brings 2 an increase in the quantity supplied. The relationship between the percentage change in the quantity supplied and the percentage change in price determines 3 the price elasticity of supply, which ranges from perfectly elastic (part a) to perfectly inelastic (part e).

Time Elapsed Since Price Change As time passes after a price change, it becomes easier to change production plans and supply becomes more elastic. For some items—fruits and vegetables are examples—it is difficult or perhaps impossible to change the quantity supplied immediately after a price change. These goods have a perfectly inelastic supply on the day of a price change. The quantities supplied depend on crop-planting decisions that were made earlier. In the case of oranges, for example, planting decisions have to be made many years in advance of the crop being available.

Many manufactured goods also have an inelastic supply if production plans have had only a short period in which to change. For example, before it launched the Wii in November 2006, Nintendo made a forecast of demand, set a price, and drew up a production plan to supply the United States with the quantity that it believed people would be willing to buy. It turned out that demand outstripped Nintendo's earlier forecast. The price of the Wii increased on eBay, an Internet auction market, to bring market equilibrium. At the high price that emerged, Nintendo would have liked to ship more units of Wii, but it could do nothing to increase the quantity supplied in the near term. The supply of the Wii was inelastic.

As time passes, the elasticity of supply increases. After all the technologically possible ways of adjusting production have been exploited, supply is extremely elastic—perhaps perfectly elastic—for most manufactured items. In 2007, Nintendo was able to step up the production rate of the Wii and the price on eBay began to fall. The supply of Wii had become more elastic as production continued to expand.

Storage Possibilities

Fresh strawberries must be sold before they deteriorate, so their supply is inelastic.

The elasticity of supply of a good that cannot be stored (for example, a perishable item such as fresh strawberries) depends only on production possibilities. But the elasticity of supply of a good that can be stored depends on the decision to keep the good in storage or offer it for sale. A small price change can make a big difference to this decision, so the supply of a storable good is highly elastic. The cost of storage is the main influence on the elasticity of supply of a storable good. For example, rose growers in Colombia, anticipating a surge in demand on Valentine's Day in February, hold back supplies in late January and early February and increase their inventories of roses. They then release roses from inventory for Valentine's Day.

Computing the Price Elasticity of Supply

To determine whether the supply of a good is elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic, we compute a numerical value for the price elasticity of supply in a way similar to that used to calculate the price elasticity of demand. We use the formula:

$$\text{Price elasticity of supply} = \frac{\text{Percentage change in quantity supplied}}{\text{Percentage change in price}}.$$

- If the price elasticity of supply is greater than 1, supply is elastic.
- If the price elasticity of supply equals 1, supply is unit elastic.
- If the price elasticity of supply is less than 1, supply is inelastic.

Let's calculate the price elasticity of supply of roses. Suppose that in a normal month, the price of roses is $40 a bouquet and 6 million bouquets are supplied. And suppose that in February, the price rises to $80 a bouquet and the quantity supplied increases to 24 million bouquets. Figure 5.6 illustrates the supply of roses and summarizes the calculation. The figure shows the initial point at $40 a bouquet and the new point at $80 a bouquet. The price increases by $40 a bouquet and the average, or midpoint, price is $60 a bouquet, so the percentage change in the price is 66.67 percent. The quantity supplied increases by 18 million bouquets and the average, or midpoint, quantity is 15 million bouquets, so the percentage change in the quantity supplied is 120 percent.

Using the above formula, you can see that the price elasticity of supply of roses is

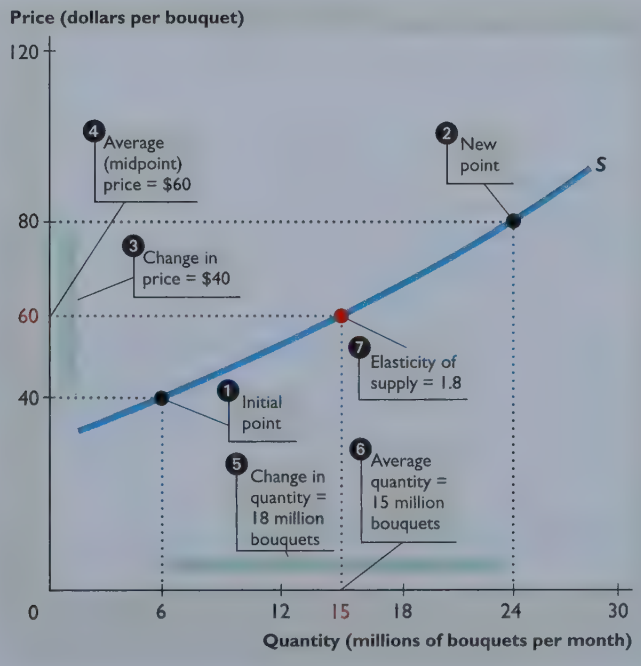
$$\text{Price elasticity of supply} = \frac{120 \text{ percent}}{66.67 \text{ percent}} = 1.8.$$

The price elasticity of supply is 1.8 at the midpoint between the initial point and the new point on the supply curve. In this example, over this price range, the supply of roses is elastic.

FIGURE 5.6

Price Elasticity of Supply Calculation

MyEconLab Animation



1. At the initial point, the price is $40 a bouquet and the quantity supplied is 6 million bouquets a month.
2. At the new point, the price is $80 a bouquet and the quantity supplied is 24 million bouquets a month.
3. The change in price is $40, and
4. the average price is $60, so the percentage change in price equals ($40 ÷ $60) × 100, which is 66.67 percent.
5. The change in the quantity supplied is 18 million bouquets and
6. the average quantity supplied is 15 million bouquets, so the percentage change in quantity supplied is (18 million ÷ 15 million) × 100, which is 120 percent.
7. The price elasticity of supply equals 120 percent ÷ 66.6 percent, which is 1.8.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 5.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 5.2

Define the price elasticity of supply, and explain the factors that influence it and how to calculate it.

Practice Problems

A 10 percent increase in the price of a good increased the quantity supplied of the good by 1 percent after one month and by 25 percent after one year.

1. Is the supply of this good elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic? Is this good likely to be produced using factors of production that are easily obtained? What is the price elasticity of supply of this good?
2. What is the price elasticity of supply after one year? Has the supply of this good become more elastic or less elastic? Why?

In the News

Weak coal prices hit China's third-largest coal miner

The chairman of Yanzhou Coal Mining, Wang Xin, reported that the demand for coal has fallen by 11.9 percent to 7.92 million tons from 8.99 million tons a year earlier, despite the price falling by 10.6 percent.

Source: Dow Jones, April 27, 2009

Calculate the price elasticity of supply of coal. Is the supply of coal elastic or inelastic?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The supply of a good is *inelastic* if the percentage increase in the quantity supplied is less than the percentage increase in price. In this example, a 10 percent price rise brings a 1 percent increase in the quantity supplied, so supply is inelastic. Because the quantity supplied increases by such a small percentage after one month, the factors of production that are used to produce this good are more likely to be difficult to obtain.
   The price elasticity of supply = Percentage change in the quantity supplied ÷ Percentage change in the price. In this example, the price elasticity of supply equals 1 percent divided by 10 percent, or 0.1.
2. The price elasticity of supply = Percentage change in the quantity supplied ÷ Percentage change in the price. After one year, the price elasticity of supply is 25 percent divided by 10 percent, or 2.5. The supply of the good has become more elastic over the year since the price rise. Possibly other producers have gradually started producing the good and with the passage of time more factors of production can be reallocated.

Solution to In the News

The demand for coal decreased, so we can use these data to calculate the price elasticity of supply. The price elasticity of supply equals the percentage change in the quantity supplied divided by the percentage change in the price. The price elasticity of supply equals 11.9 percent divided by 10.6 percent, or 1.12. The quantity supplied fell by a larger percentage than the price, so the supply of coal is elastic, which is what a price elasticity of supply of 1.12 means.

5.3 CROSS ELASTICITY AND INCOME ELASTICITY

Domino's Pizza in Chula Vista has a problem. Burger King has just cut its prices. Domino's manager, Pat, knows that pizzas and burgers are substitutes. He also knows that when the price of a substitute for pizza falls, the demand for pizza decreases. But by how much will the quantity of pizza bought decrease if Pat maintains his current price?

Pat also knows that pizza and soda are complements. He knows that if the price of a complement of pizza falls, the demand for pizza increases. So he wonders whether he might keep his customers by cutting the price he charges for soda. But he wants to know by how much he must cut the price of soda to keep selling the same quantity of pizza with cheaper burgers all around him.

To answer these questions, Pat needs to calculate the cross elasticity of demand. Let's examine this elasticity measure.

Cross Elasticity of Demand

Cross elasticity of demand
A measure of the responsiveness of the demand for a good to a change in the price of a substitute or complement when other things remain the same.

The **cross elasticity of demand** is a measure of the responsiveness of the demand for a good to a change in the price of a substitute or complement when other things remain the same. It is calculated by using the formula:

$$\text{Cross elasticity of demand} = \frac{\text{Percentage change in quantity demanded of a good}}{\text{Percentage change in price of one of its substitutes or complements}}.$$

Suppose that when the price of a burger falls by 10 percent, the quantity of pizza demanded decreases by 5 percent.* The cross elasticity of demand for pizza with respect to the price of a burger is

$$\text{Cross elasticity of demand} = \frac{-5 \text{ percent}}{-10 \text{ percent}} = 0.5.$$

The cross elasticity of demand for a substitute is positive. A *fall* in the price of a substitute brings a *decrease* in the quantity demanded of the good. The quantity demanded of a good and the price of one of its substitutes change in the *same* direction.

Suppose that when the price of soda falls by 10 percent, the quantity of pizza demanded increases by 2 percent. The cross elasticity of demand for pizza with respect to the price of soda is

$$\text{Cross elasticity of demand} = \frac{+2 \text{ percent}}{-10 \text{ percent}} = -0.2.$$

The cross elasticity of demand for a complement is negative. A *fall* in the price of a complement brings an *increase* in the quantity demanded of the good. The quantity demanded of a good and the price of one of its complements change in *opposite* directions.

*As before, these percentage changes are calculated by using the midpoint method.

FIGURE 5.7

Cross Elasticity of Demand

MyEconLab Animation

1. A burger is a *substitute* for pizza. When the price of a burger falls, the demand curve for pizza shifts leftward from D_0 to D_1. At the price of $10 a pizza, people plan to buy fewer pizzas. The cross elasticity of the demand for pizza with respect to the price of a burger is *positive*.

2. Soda is a *complement* of pizza. When the price of soda falls, the demand for pizza increases and the demand curve for pizza shifts rightward from D_0 to D_2. At the price of $10 a pizza, people plan to buy more pizzas. The cross elasticity of the demand for pizza with respect to the price of soda is *negative*.

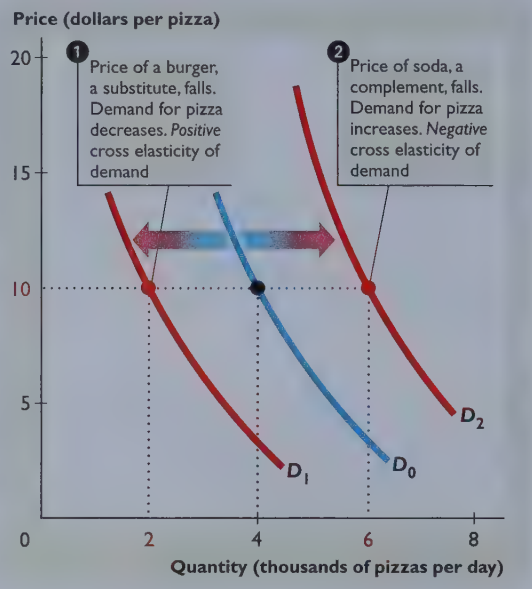


Figure 5.7 illustrates these two cross elasticities of demand for pizza. With the price of a pizza constant at $10, when the price of a burger falls, the demand for pizza decreases and the demand curve for pizza shifts leftward from D_0 to D_1. When the price of soda falls, the demand for pizza increases and the demand curve for pizza shifts rightward from D_0 to D_2. The magnitude of the cross elasticity determines how far the demand curve shifts.

Income Elasticity of Demand

The U.S. and global economies are expanding, and people are enjoying rising incomes. This increasing prosperity brings an increasing demand for most types of goods. But by how much will the demand for different items increase? Will the demand for some items increase so rapidly that we spend an increasing percentage of our incomes on them? And will the demand for some items decrease?

Income elasticity of demand
A measure of the responsiveness of the demand for a good to a change in income when other things remain the same.

The answer depends on the income elasticity of demand. The **income elasticity of demand** is a measure of the responsiveness of the demand for a good to a change in income when other things remain the same. It is calculated by using the following formula:

$$\text{Income elasticity of demand} = \frac{\text{Percentage change in quantity demanded}}{\text{Percentage change in income}}.$$

The income elasticity of demand falls into three ranges:

- Greater than 1 (normal good, income elastic)
- Between zero and 1 (normal good, income inelastic)
- Less than zero (inferior good)

As our incomes increase: items that have

- An income elastic demand take an increasing share of income
- An income inelastic demand take a decreasing share of income
- A negative income elasticity of demand take an absolutely smaller amount of income.

You can make some strong predictions about how the world will change over the coming years by knowing the income elasticities of demand of different goods and services. The table provides a sampling of numbers.

These estimated income elasticities of demand tell us that we can expect air travel—both domestic and international—to become hugely more important; increasing share of our incomes will be spent on watching movies, eating out in restaurants, using public transporation and getting haircuts. Two other prominent items not shown in the table, items for which demand is income elastic, are health care and education. As our incomes grow, we can expect education and health care to take increasing shares of our incomes.

As our incomes grow, we'll spend a decreasing percentage on clothing, phone calls, and food. The income elasticity of demand for food is less than one, even for the poorest people. So we can predict a continuation of the trends of the past—shrinking agriculture and manufacturing, and expanding services.

Table 5.1

Some Income Elasticities of Demand

Good or Service	Elasticity
Income Elastic	
Airline travel	5.82
Movies	3.41
Foreign travel	3.08
Electricity	1.94
Restaurant meals	1.61
Local buses and trains	1.38
Haircuts	1.36
Income Inelastic	
Tobacco	0.86
Alcoholic beverages	0.62
Clothing	0.51
Newspapers	0.38
Telephone	0.32
Food	0.14

SOURCES OF DATA: See page C1.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Price Elasticities of Demand

Pay close attention the next time the price of something that you buy rises. Did you spend more, the same, or less on this item?

Your expenditure on a good is equal to the price of the good multiplied by the quantity that you buy.

But recall that a seller's total revenue is equal to the price of the good multiplied by the quantity sold.

Because the buyer's expenditure on a good is equal to the seller's total revenue, the total revenue test that the seller uses to estimate the price elasticity of demand for the good sold can also be used by a buyer.

You can determine whether your demand for a good is elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic by noting what happens to your total expenditure on the good when its price changes.

When the price of a good rises, your demand for that good is

- *Elastic* if your expenditure on it decreases.
- *Unit elastic* if your expenditure on it remains constant.
- *Inelastic* if your expenditure on it increases.

Think about why your demand for a good might be elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic by checking back to the list of influences on the price elasticity of demand on page 116.

Most likely, as we noted in the chapter opener, when the price of gasoline rises, you use almost as much as you did at the lower price. Gasoline has poor substitutes and your demand for gasoline is inelastic.

What do you do if the price of using your cell phone falls? Do you spend less on your cell phone, as you would if your demand for cell phone service is inelastic? Or do you spend more on your cell phone, which would indicate an elastic demand for cell phone service?

What about your iPod and iTunes? Is your demand for these items elastic or inelastic? And is your demand for textbooks elastic or inelastic? You can estimate all these elasticities.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 5.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 5.3

Define the cross elasticity of demand and the income elasticity of demand, and explain the factors that influence them.

Practice Problems

1. The quantity demanded of good *A* increases by 5 percent when the price of good *B* rises by 10 percent and other things remain the same. Are goods *A* and *B* complements or substitutes? Describe how the demand for good *A* changes and calculate the cross elasticity of demand.
2. When income rises by 5 percent and other things remain the same, the quantity demanded of good *C* increases by 1 percent. Is good *C* a normal good or an inferior good? Describe how the demand for good *C* changes and calculate the income elasticity of demand for good *C*.

In the News

Rising incomes make China the world's largest luxury goods market

China is estimated to become the world's largest luxury goods market over the next decade, boosted by rising incomes and a transition from saving to spending culture.

Source: ibtimes.com, February 2, 2011

Are luxury goods normal goods or just not necessities? Explain your answer.

FIGURE 1

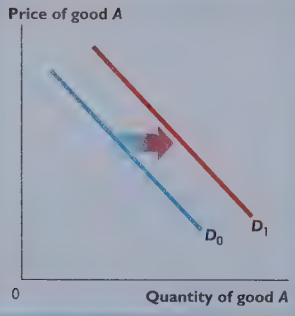


FIGURE 2

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Goods *A* and *B* are substitutes because when the price of good *B* rises, the quantity demanded of good *A* increases. People switch from good *B* to good *A*. The demand for good *A* increases (Figure 1).
   Cross elasticity of demand = Percentage change in the quantity demanded of good *A* ÷ Percentage increase in the price of good *B*.
   Cross elasticity of demand = 5 ÷ 10, or 0.5.
2. Good *C* is a normal good; as income rises, the quantity demanded increases. The demand for good *C* increases (Figure 2).
   Income elasticity of demand = Percentage change in the quantity demanded of good *C* ÷ Percentage increase in income.
   Income elasticity of demand = 1 ÷ 5, or 0.2.

Solution to In the News

To know whether a good is a normal good, we need to calculate the income elasticity of demand. A normal good is a good that has a positive income elasticity of demand. The source of the increase in the sales of luxury goods is rising incomes and people spending their past savings. As people spend more, the quantity of luxury goods bought increases, so the income elasticity of demand for luxury goods is positive. Luxury goods are normal goods.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Define the price elasticity of demand, and explain the factors that influence it and how to calculate it.

- The demand for a good is elastic if, when its price changes, the percentage change in the quantity demanded exceeds the percentage change in price.
- The demand for a good is inelastic if, when its price changes, the percentage change in the quantity demanded is less than the percentage change in price.
- The price elasticity of demand for a good depends on how easy it is to find substitutes for the good and on the proportion of income spent on it.
- Price elasticity of demand equals the percentage change in the quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in price.
- If demand is elastic, a rise in price leads to a decrease in total revenue. If demand is unit elastic, a rise in price leaves total revenue unchanged. And if demand is inelastic, a rise in price leads to an increase in total revenue.

2 Define the price elasticity of supply, and explain the factors that influence it and how to calculate it.

- The supply of a good is elastic if, when its price changes, the percentage change in the quantity supplied exceeds the percentage change in price.
- The supply of a good is inelastic if, when its price changes, the percentage change in the quantity supplied is less than the percentage change in price.
- The main influences on the price elasticity of supply are the flexibility of production possibilities and storage possibilities.

3 Define the cross elasticity of demand and the income elasticity of demand, and explain the factors that influence them.

- Cross elasticity of demand shows how the demand for a good changes when the price of one of its substitutes or complements changes.
- Cross elasticity is positive for substitutes and negative for complements.
- Income elasticity of demand shows how the demand for a good changes when income changes. For a normal good, the income elasticity of demand is positive. For an inferior good, the income elasticity of demand is negative.

Key Terms

Cross elasticity of demand, 129
Elastic demand, 114
Elastic supply, 124
Income elasticity of demand, 130
Inelastic demand, 114
Inelastic supply, 124
Perfectly elastic demand, 114
Perfectly elastic supply, 124
Perfectly inelastic demand, 114
Perfectly inelastic supply, 124
Price elasticity of demand, 112
Price elasticity of supply, 124
Total revenue, 120
Total revenue test, 121
Unit elastic demand, 114
Unit elastic supply, 124

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 5 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

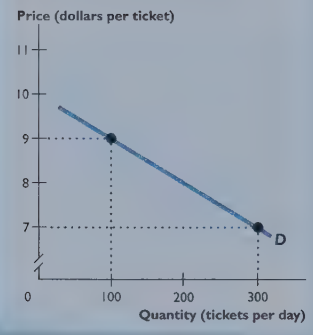
CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

When the price of home heating oil increased by 20 percent, the quantity demanded decreased by 2 percent and the quantity of wool sweaters demanded increased by 10 percent. Use this information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

1. Use the total revenue test to determine whether the demand for home heating oil is elastic or inelastic.
2. If the price of a wool sweater did not change, calculate the cross elasticity of demand for wool sweaters with respect to the price of home heating oil. Are home heating oil and wool sweaters substitutes or complements? Why?
3. Figure 1 shows the demand for movie tickets. Is the demand for movie tickets elastic or inelastic over the price range \$7 to \$9 a ticket? If the price falls from \$9 to \$7 a ticket, explain how the total revenue from the sale of movie tickets will change. Calculate the price elasticity of demand for movie tickets when the price is \$8 a ticket.
4. The price elasticity of demand for Pete's chocolate chip cookies is 1.5. Pete wants to increase his total revenue. Would you recommend that Pete raise or lower his price of cookies? Explain your answer.

FIGURE 1



Use the following information to work Problems **5** and **6**.

The price of a plane ride rises by 10 percent. The price elasticity of demand for plane rides is 0.5 and the price elasticity of demand for train rides is 0.2. The cross elasticity of demand for train rides with respect to the price of a plane ride is 0.4.

5. Calculate the percentage changes in the quantity demanded of plane rides and train rides.
6. Given the rise in the price of a plane ride, what percentage change in the price of a train ride will leave the quantity demanded of train rides unchanged?
7. A survey found that when incomes increased by 10 percent, the following changes in quantities demanded occurred: spring water up by 5 percent; sports drinks down by 2 percent; cruises up by 15 percent. Which demand is income elastic? Which is income inelastic? Which are normal goods?

Use the following information to work Problems **8** and **9**.

Record U.S. corn crop, up 24%, is forecast

The USDA reported that world corn production will be 9.9 percent greater than last year's, while U.S. corn production will be 24 percent larger. The price of corn is expected to be 46 percent higher than last year's price.

Source: *Bloomberg News*, August 11, 2007

8. Calculate the U.S. price elasticity of supply of corn. Is this supply elastic?
9. Calculate the world price elasticity of supply of corn.
10. In May 2011, higher food prices forced consumers to cut spending.

Source: CNN Money, June 4, 2011

Is the demand for food elastic or inelastic? Explain your answer.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

Use the following information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

Why the tepid response to higher gasoline prices?

Most studies report that when U.S. gas prices rise by 10 percent, the quantity purchased falls by 1 to 2 percent. In September 2005, the retail gasoline price was $2.90 a gallon, about $1.00 higher than in September 2004, but purchases of gasoline fell by only 3.5 percent.

Source: *The New York Times*, October 13, 2005

1. Calculate the price elasticity of demand for gasoline implied by what most studies have found.

2. Compare the elasticity implied by the data for the period from September 2004 to September 2005 with that implied by most studies. What might explain the difference?

3. When heavy rain ruined the banana crop in Central America, the price of bananas rose from $1 a pound to $2 a pound. Banana growers sold fewer bananas, but their total revenue remained unchanged. By how much did the quantity of bananas demanded change? Is the demand for bananas from Central America elastic, unit elastic, or inelastic?

4. The income elasticity of demand for haircuts is 1.5, and the income elasticity of demand for food is 0.14. You take a weekend job, and the income you have to spend on food and haircuts doubles. If the prices of food and haircuts remain the same, will you double your expenditure on haircuts and double your expenditure on food? Explain why or why not.

5. Drought cuts the quantity of wheat grown by 2 percent. If the price elasticity of demand for wheat is 0.5, by how much will the price of wheat rise? If pasta makers estimate that this change in the price of wheat will increase the price of pasta by 25 percent and decrease the quantity demanded of pasta by 8 percent, what is the pasta makers' estimate of the price elasticity of demand for pasta? If pasta sauce makers estimate that, with the change in the price of pasta, the quantity of pasta sauce demanded will decrease by 5 percent, what is the pasta sauce makers' estimate of the cross elasticity of demand for pasta sauce with respect to the price of pasta?

6. "In a market in which demand is price inelastic, producers can gouge consumers and the government must set high standards of conduct for producers to ensure that consumers gets a fair deal." Do you agree or disagree with each part of this statement? Explain how you might go about testing the parts of the statement that are positive and lay bare the normative parts.

Use the following information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

Almonds galore!

The quantity of almonds harvested in 2008–2009 was expected to increase by 22 percent, while total receipts of growers was expected to increase by 17 percent.

Source: Almond Board of California

7. Was the price of almonds expected to rise or fall? Did a change in the supply of or demand for almonds bring about this expected change in the price?

8. If the price of almonds changed as a result of a change in the supply of almonds, is the demand for almonds elastic or inelastic? Explain your answer.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 5 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. When the price of ice cream rises from $3 to $5 a scoop, the quantity of ice cream bought decreases by 10 percent. The price elasticity of demand for ice cream is _____.
   A. 5
   B. 0.2
   C. 50
   D. 2.5

2. In Pioneer Ville, the price elasticity of demand for bus rides is 0.5. When the price of a bus ticket rises by 5 percent, _____.
   A. the demand for bus rides increases by 10 percent
   B. the quantity of bus rides demanded increases by 2.5 percent
   C. the demand for bus rides decreases by 2.5 percent
   D. the quantity of bus rides demanded decreases by 2.5 percent

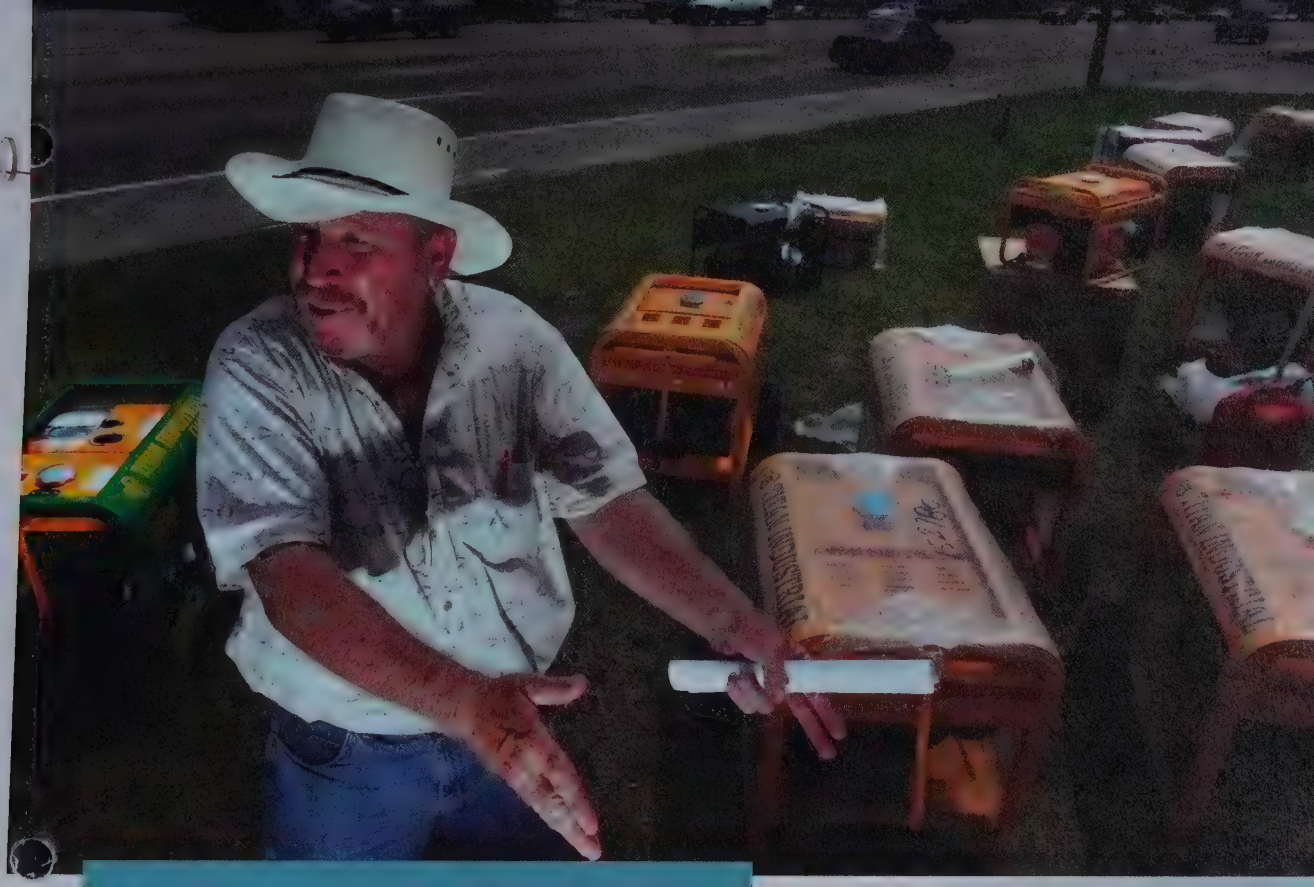
3. The price elasticity of demand for a good is 0.2. A 10 percent rise in the price will _____ the total revenue from sales of the good.
   A. decrease
   B. increase
   C. decrease the quantity sold with no change in
   D. not change

4. If the price of a good falls and expenditure on the good rises, the demand for the good is _____.
   A. elastic
   B. perfectly elastic
   C. inelastic
   D. unit elastic

5. When the price of a good rises from $5 to $7 a unit, the quantity supplied increases from 110 to 130 units a day. The price elasticity of supply is _____. The supply of the good is _____.
   A. 60; elastic
   B. 10; elastic
   C. 0.5; inelastic
   D. 2; inelastic

6. The cross elasticity of demand for good *A* with respect to good *B* is 0.2. A 10 percent change in the price of good *B* will lead to a ____ percent change in the quantity of good *A* demanded. Goods *A* and *B* are _____.
   A. 2; substitutes
   B. 0.5; complements
   C. −2; complements
   D. −0.5; substitutes

7. A 2 percent increase in income increases the quantity demanded of a good by 1 percent. The income elasticity of demand for this good is _____. The good is a _____ good.
   A. 2; normal
   B. –2; inferior
   C. 1/2; normal
   D. 2; inferior



Should price gouging be illegal?

Efficiency and Fairness of Markets

6

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the alternative methods of allocating scarce resources and define and explain the features of an efficient allocation.
2. Distinguish between value and price and define consumer surplus.
3. Distinguish between cost and price and define producer surplus.
4. Evaluate the efficiency of the alternative methods of allocating resources.
5. Explain the main ideas about fairness and evaluate the fairness of the alternative methods of allocating scarce resources.

6.1 ALLOCATION METHODS AND EFFICIENCY

Because resources are scarce, they must be allocated somehow among their competing uses. Doing nothing and leaving the allocation to chance is one method of allocation. The goal of this chapter is to evaluate the ability of markets to allocate resources efficiently and fairly—to allocate them in the social interest.

But trading in markets is only one of several methods of allocating resources. To know whether the market does a good job, we need to compare it with its alternatives. We also need to know what is meant by an efficient and fair allocation.

Economists have much more to say about efficiency than about fairness, so efficiency is the main focus of this chapter. We leave the difficult issue of fairness until the final section. We begin by describing the alternative ways in which resources might be allocated. Then we explain the characteristics of an efficient allocation.

Resource Allocation Methods

Resources might be allocated by using any one or some combination of the following methods:

- Market price
- Command
- Majority rule
- Contest
- First-come, first-served
- Sharing equally
- Lottery
- Personal characteristics
- Force

Let's see how each method works and look at an example of each.

Market Price

Market price allocates resources to those who are willing and able to pay.

When a market price allocates a scarce resource, the people who get the resource are those who are willing and able to pay the market price. People who don't value the resource as highly as the market price leave it for others to buy and use.

Most of the scarce resources that you supply get allocated by market price. For example, you sell your labor services in a market, and you buy most of what you consume in markets.

Two kinds of people decide not to pay the market price: those who can afford to pay but choose not to buy and those who are too poor and simply can't afford to pay.

For many goods and services, distinguishing between those who choose not to buy and those who can't afford to pay doesn't matter. For a few items, that distinction does matter. For example, some poor people can't afford to pay school fees and doctor's fees. The inability of poor people to buy items that most people consider to be essential is not handled well by the market price method and is usually dealt with by one of the other allocation methods.

But for most goods and services, the market turns out to do a good job. We'll examine just how good a job it does later in this chapter.

Command

A **command system** allocates resources by the order (command) of someone in authority. Many resources get allocated by command. In the U.S. economy, the command system is used extensively inside firms and government bureaus. For example, if you have a job, it is most likely that someone tells you what to do. Your labor time is allocated to specific tasks by a command.

Sometimes, a command system allocates the resources of an entire economy. The former Soviet Union is an example. North Korea and Cuba are the only remaining command economies.

A command system works well in organizations in which the lines of authority and responsibility are clear and it is easy to monitor the activities being performed. But a command system works badly when applied to an entire economy. The range of activities to be monitored is just too large, and it is easy for people to fool those in authority. The system works so badly in North Korea that it fails even to deliver an adequate supply of food.

Command system
A system that allocates resources by the order of someone in authority.

A command allocates resources by the order of someone in authority.

Majority Rule

Majority rule allocates resources in the way that a majority of voters choose. Societies use majority rule for some of their biggest decisions. For example, majority rule decides the tax rates that end up allocating scarce resources between private use and public use. And majority rule decides how tax dollars are allocated among competing uses such as national defense and health care for the aged.

Having 200 million people vote on every line in a nation's budget would be extremely costly, so instead of direct majority rule, the United States (and most other countries) use the system of representative government. Majority rule determines who will represent the people, and majority rule among the representatives decides the detailed allocation of scarce resources.

Majority rule works well when the decisions being made affect large numbers of people and self-interest must be suppressed to use resources most effectively.

Voting allocates resources in the way that the majority wants.

Contest

A contest allocates resources to a winner (or a group of winners). The most obvious contests are sporting events. Maria Sharapova and Serena Williams do battle on a tennis court, and the winner gets twice as much in prize money as the loser.

But contests are much more general than those in a sports arena, though we don't call them contests in ordinary speech. For example, Bill Gates won a big contest to provide the world's personal computer operating system, and Natalie Portman won a type of contest to rise to the top of the movie-acting business.

Contests do a good job when the efforts of the "players" are hard to monitor and reward directly. By dangling the opportunity to win a big prize, people are motivated to work hard and try to be the "winner." Even though only a few people end up with a big prize, many people work harder in the process of trying to win and so total production is much greater than it would be without the contest.

A contest allocates resources to the winner, in sport and business.

First-Come, First-Served

A first-come, first-served method allocates resources to those who are first in line. Most national parks allocate campsites in this way. Airlines use first-come, first-served to allocate standby seats at the departure gate. A freeway is an everyday example of first-come, first-served. This scarce transportation resource gets allo-

First-come, first-served allocates resources to the first in line.

cated to the first to arrive at the on-ramp. If too many vehicles enter the freeway, the speed slows and people, in effect, wait in line for a bit of the "freeway" to become free!

First-come, first-served works best when, as in the above examples, a scarce resource can serve just one user at a time in a sequence. By serving the user who arrives first, this method minimizes the time spent waiting in line for the resource to become free.

Sharing allocates resources by mutual agreement.

Sharing Equally

When a resource is shared equally, everyone gets the same amount of it. You perhaps use this method to share dessert at a restaurant. People sometimes jointly own a vacation apartment and share its use equally.

To make equal shares work, people must agree on how to use the resource and must make an arrangement to implement the agreement. Sharing equally can work for small groups who share a set of common goals and ideals.

A lottery allocates resources to the one who draws the winning number.

Lottery

Lotteries allocate resources to those who pick the winning number, draw the lucky cards, or come up lucky on some other gaming system. State lotteries and casinos reallocate millions of dollars worth of goods and services every year.

But lotteries are far more widespread than state jackpots and roulette wheels in casinos. They are used in a variety of situations to allocate scarce resources. For example, some marathon organizers use lotteries to determine who gets to participate and some airports use them to allocate landing slots to airlines.

Lotteries work well when there is no effective way to distinguish among potential users of a scarce resource.

Personal characteristics allocate resources based on whom we like.

Personal Characteristics

When resources are allocated on the basis of personal characteristics, people with the "right" characteristics get the resources. Some of the resources that matter most to you are allocated in this way. The people you like are the ones you spend the most time with. You try to avoid having to spend time with people you don't like. People choose marriage partners on the basis of personal characteristics. The use of personal characteristics to allocate resources is regarded as completely natural and acceptable.

But this method also gets used in unacceptable ways. Allocating the best jobs to white, Anglo-Saxon males and discriminating against minorities and women is an example.

Force protects the rule of law and facilitates economic activity.

Force

Force plays a crucial role, for both good and ill, in allocating scarce resources. Let's start with the ill.

War, the use of military force by one nation against another, has played an enormous role historically in allocating resources. The economic supremacy of European settlers in the Americas and Australia owes much to the use of this method.

Theft, the taking of the property of others without their consent, also plays a large role. Both large-scale organized crime and small-scale petty crime collectively allocate billions of dollars worth of resources annually. A large amount of

theft today is conducted by using sophisticated electronic methods that move resources from banks and thousands of innocent people.

But force plays a crucial positive role in allocating resources. It provides an effective method for the state to transfer wealth from the rich to the poor and the legal framework in which voluntary exchange in markets takes place.

Most income and wealth redistribution in modern societies occurs through a taxation and benefits system that is enforced by the power of the state. We vote for taxes and benefits—a majority vote allocation—but we use the power of the state to ensure that everyone complies with the rules and pays their allotted share.

A legal system is the foundation on which our market economy functions. Without courts to enforce contracts, it would be difficult to do business. But the courts could not enforce contracts without the ability to apply force if necessary. The state provides the ultimate force that enables the courts to do their work.

More broadly, the force of the state is essential to uphold the principle of the *rule of law.* This principle is the bedrock of civilized economic (and social and political) life. With the rule of law upheld, people can go about their daily economic lives with the assurance that their property will be protected—that they can sue for violations of their property (and be sued if they violate the property of others).

Free from the burden of protecting their property and confident in the knowledge that those with whom they trade will honor their agreements, people can get on with focusing on the activity at which they have a comparative advantage and trading for mutual gain.

In the next sections of this chapter, we're going to see how a market achieves an efficient use of resources, examine obstacles to efficiency, and see how sometimes, an alternative method might improve on the market. But first we need to be clear about the meaning of efficiency. What are the characteristics of an efficient allocation of resources?

Using Resources Efficiently

In everyday language, *efficiency* means getting the most out of something. An efficient automobile is one that gets the best possible gas mileage; an efficient furnace is one that uses as little fuel as possible to deliver its heat. In economics, efficiency means getting the most out of the entire economy.

Efficiency and the *PPF*

The **production possibilities frontier** (*PPF*) is the boundary between the combinations of goods and services that can be produced and those that cannot be produced given the available factors of production and state of technology (p. 60). Production is efficient when the economy is *on* its *PPF* (Chapter 3, pp. 62–63). Production at a point *inside* the *PPF* is *inefficient.*

Allocative efficiency is achieved when the quantities of goods and services produced are those that people *value most highly.* To put it another way, resources are allocated efficiently when we cannot produce more of one thing without giving up something else *that people value more highly.* If we can give up some units of one good to get more of something that is *valued more highly,* we haven't achieved the most valued point on the *PPF.*

The *PPF* tells us what it is *possible* to produce but it doesn't tell us about the *value* of what we produce. To find the *highest-valued* point on the *PPF,* we need some information about value. *Marginal benefit* provides that information.

Production possibilities frontier
The boundary between the combinations of goods and services that can be produced and the combinations that cannot be produced, given the available factors of production and the state of technology.

Allocative efficiency
A situation in which the quantities of goods and services produced are those that people *value most highly*—it is not possible to produce more of a good or service without giving up some of another good that people *value more highly.*

Marginal Benefit

Marginal benefit is the benefit that people receive from consuming *one more unit* of a good or service. People's *preferences* determine marginal benefit and we can measure the marginal benefit from a good or service by what people *are willing to* give up to get *one more* unit of it.

The more we have of any good or service, the smaller is our marginal benefit from it—*the principle of decreasing marginal benefit*. Think about your own marginal benefit from pizza. You really enjoy the first slice. A second slice is fine, too, but not quite as satisfying as the first one. But eat three, four, five, six, and more slices, and each additional slice is less enjoyable than the previous one. You get diminishing marginal benefit from pizza. The more pizza you have, the less of some other good or service you are willing to give up to get one more slice.

Figure 6.1 illustrates the economy's marginal benefit schedule and marginal benefit curve for pizza. The schedule and curve show the same information. In the schedule and on the curve, the quantity of other goods that people *are willing to give up* to get one more pizza *decreases* as the quantity of pizza available *increases*.

Marginal Cost

To achieve allocative efficiency, we must compare the marginal benefit from pizza with its marginal cost. *Marginal cost* is the opportunity cost of producing one more unit of a good or service (see p. 10) and is measured by the slope of the production possibilities frontier (see pp. 66–67). The marginal cost of a good increases as the quantity produced of that good increases.

FIGURE 6.1

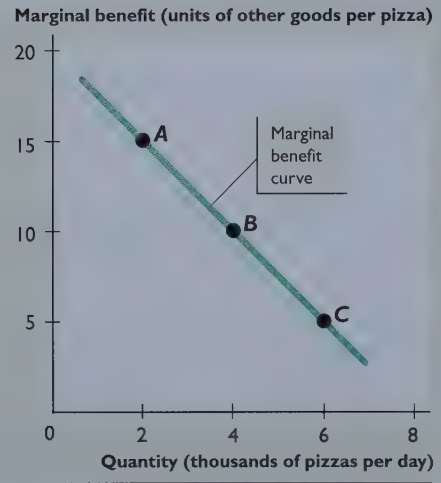
Marginal Benefit from Pizza

MyEconLab Animation

The table and the graph show the marginal benefit from pizza.

Possibility *A* and point *A* tell us that if 2,000 pizzas a day are produced, people are willing to give up 15 units of other goods for a pizza. Each point *A*, *B*, and *C* in the graph represents the possibility in the table identified by the same letter.

The line passing through these points is the marginal benefit curve. The marginal benefit from pizza decreases as the quantity of pizza available increases.



Quantity (thousands of pizzas per day)	2	4	6
Willingness to give up (units of other goods per pizza)	15	10	5
Possibility	*A*	*B*	*C*

Figure 6.2 illustrates the economy's marginal cost schedule and marginal cost curve. In the schedule and along the curve, which show the same information, the quantity of other goods that people *must give up* to get one more pizza *increases* as the quantity of pizza produced *increases*.

We can now use the concepts of marginal benefit and marginal cost to discover the efficient quantity of pizza to produce.

Efficient Allocation

The efficient allocation is the highest-valued allocation. To find this allocation, we compare marginal benefit and marginal cost.

If the marginal benefit from pizza exceeds its marginal cost, we're producing too little pizza (and too many units of other goods). If we increase the quantity of pizza produced, we incur a cost but receive a larger benefit from the additional pizza. Our allocation of resources becomes more efficient.

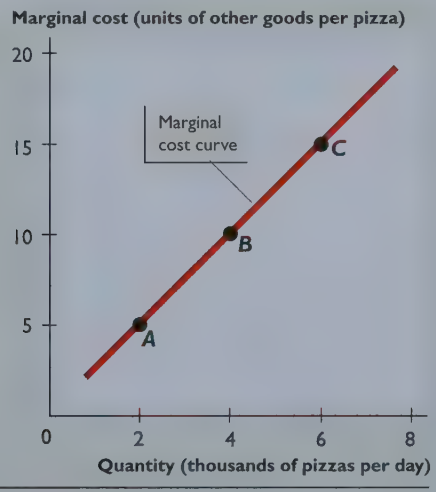
If the marginal cost of pizza exceeds its marginal benefit, we're producing too much pizza (and too little of other goods). Now if we decrease the quantity of pizza produced, we receive a smaller benefit from pizza but save an even greater cost of pizza. Again, our allocation of resources becomes more efficient.

Only when the marginal benefit and marginal cost of pizza are equal are we allocating resources efficiently. Figure 6.3 on the next page illustrates this efficient allocation and provides a graphical summary of the above description of allocative efficiency.

FIGURE 6.2

Marginal Cost of Pizza

MyEconLab Animation



Quantity (thousands of pizzas per day)	2	4	6
Must give up (units of other goods per pizza)	5	10	15
Possibility	*A*	*B*	*C*

The table and the graph show the marginal cost of a pizza. Marginal cost is the opportunity cost of producing one more unit. It is derived from the *PPF* and is measured by the slope of the *PPF*.

Points *A*, *B*, and *C* in the graph represent the possibilities in the table. The marginal cost curve shows that the marginal cost of a pizza increases as the quantity of pizza produced increases.

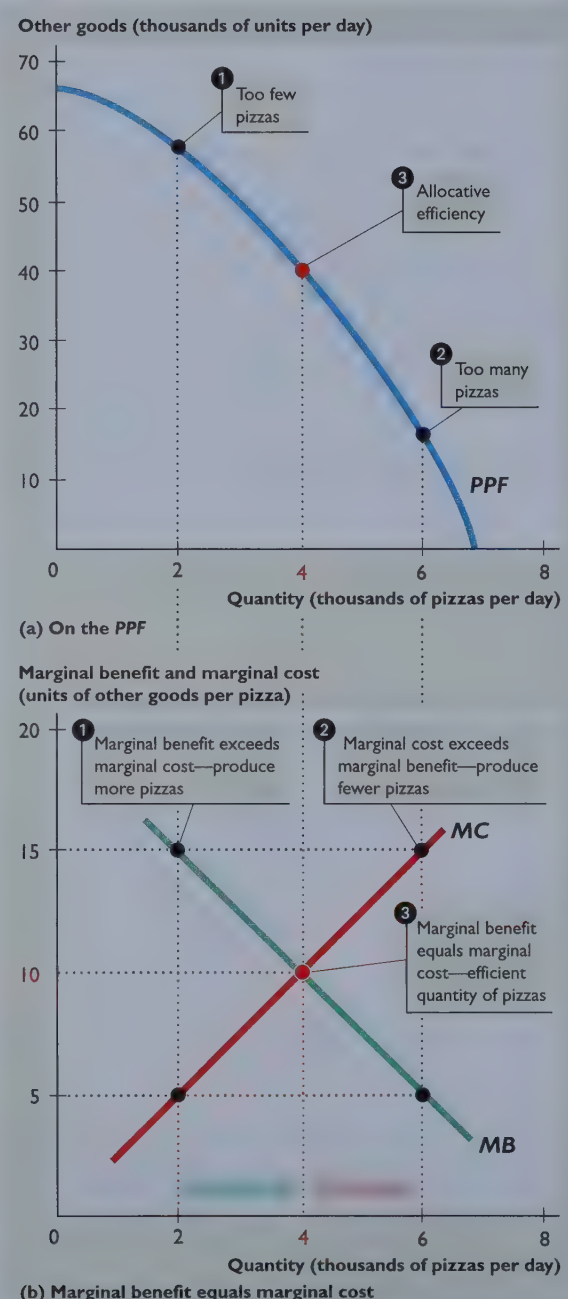
FIGURE 6.3

The Efficient Quantity of Pizza

MyEconLab Animation

Production efficiency occurs at all points on the *PPF*, but *allocative efficiency* occurs at only one point on the *PPF*.

1. When 2,000 pizzas are produced in part (a), the marginal benefit from pizza exceeds its marginal cost in part (b). Too few pizzas are being produced. If more pizzas and less of other goods are produced, the value of production increases and resources are used more efficiently.
2. When 6,000 pizzas are produced in part (a), the marginal cost of a pizza exceeds its marginal benefit in part (b). Too many pizzas are being produced. If fewer pizzas and more of other goods are produced, the value of production increases and resources are used more efficiently.
3. When 4,000 pizzas a day are produced in part (a), the marginal cost of a pizza equals its marginal benefit in part (b). The efficient quantity of pizzas is being produced. It is not possible to get greater value from the economy's scarce resources. If one less pizza and more other goods are produced, the value of the lost pizza exceeds the value of the additional other goods, so total value falls. And if one more pizza and less other goods are produced, the value of the gained pizza is less than the value of the lost other goods, so again total value falls.



CHECKPOINT 6.1

Describe the alternative methods of allocating scarce resources and define and explain the features of an efficient allocation.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 6.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Which method is used to allocate the following scarce resources?
   - Campus parking space between student areas and faculty areas
   - A spot in a restricted student parking area
   - Textbooks
   - Host city for the Olympic Games

Use Figure 1, which shows a nation's *PPF*, and Table 1, which shows its marginal benefit and marginal cost schedules, to work Problems **2** and **3**.

2. What is the marginal benefit from bananas when 1 pound of bananas is grown? What is the marginal cost of growing 1 pound of bananas?
3. On Figure 1, mark two points: Point *A* at which production is efficient but too much coffee is produced for allocative efficiency; and point *B*, the point of allocative efficiency.

FIGURE 1

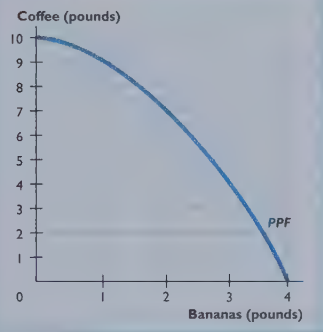


TABLE 1 MARGINAL BENEFIT AND MARGINAL COST

Bananas (pounds)	Willing to give up (pounds of coffee per pound of bananas)	Must give up (pounds of coffee per pound of bananas)
1	3	1
2	2	2
3	1	3

In the News

AC/DC's "Black Ice" tour breaks records down under

The 40,000 tickets for the March 6 gig sold out in seven minutes—a record. Many people who camped out overnight missed getting a ticket.

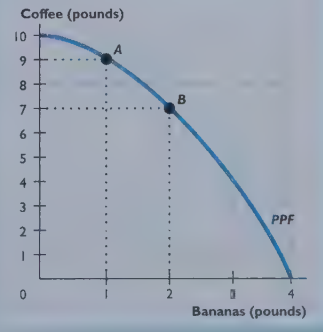
Source: *WAToday*, May 25, 2009

What method was used to allocate AC/DC concert tickets? Was it efficient?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Campus parking is allocated by command. The spot in a restricted student parking area is allocated by first-come, first-served. Textbooks are allocated by market price. The Olympic Games' host city is allocated by contest.
2. The marginal benefit from 1 pound of bananas is 3 pounds of coffee. Marginal benefit is the amount of coffee that the nation is *willing to give up* to get *one additional* pound of bananas. The marginal cost of growing 1 pound of bananas is 1 pound of coffee. Marginal cost is the amount of coffee that the nation *must give up* to get *one additional* pound of bananas.
3. Point *A* on Figure 2 shows production efficiency (on the *PPF*) but not allocative efficiency because from Table 1 marginal benefit from bananas exceeds the marginal cost—too few bananas are produced. Point *B* is the point of allocative efficiency: It is on the *PPF* and marginal benefit equals marginal cost.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

The concert organizer used first-come, first-served to allocate tickets. The allocation was efficient if the concert-goer's willingness to pay (the ticket price plus the opportunity cost of time spent in the line), which is also the marginal benefit, equaled the organizer's marginal cost of providing one more seat.

6.2 VALUE, PRICE, AND CONSUMER SURPLUS

To investigate whether a market is efficient, we need to understand the connection between demand and marginal benefit and between supply and marginal cost.

Demand and Marginal Benefit

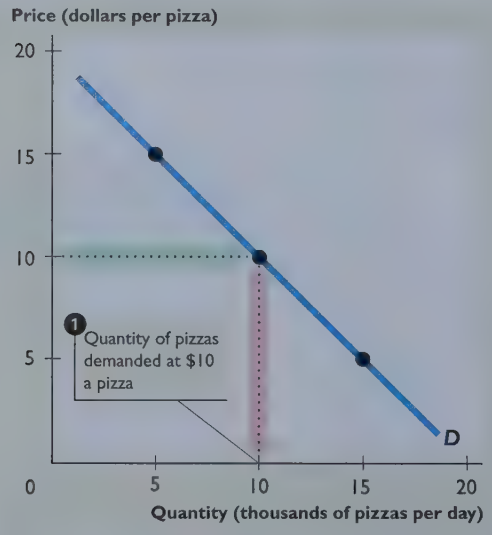
In everyday life, when we talk about "getting value for money," we're distinguishing between *value* and *price*. Value is what we get, and price is what we pay. In economics, the everyday idea of value is *marginal benefit*, which we measure as the maximum price that people are willing to pay for another unit of the good or service. The demand curve tells us this price. In Figure 6.4(a), the demand curve shows the quantity demanded at a given price—when the price is $10 a pizza, the quantity demanded is 10,000 pizzas a day. In Figure 6.4(b), the demand curve shows the maximum price that people are willing to pay when there is a given quantity—when 10,000 pizzas a day are available, the most that people are willing to pay for the 10,000th pizza is $10. The marginal benefit from the 10,000th pizza is $10.

A demand curve is a marginal benefit curve. The demand curve for pizza tells us the dollars' worth of other goods and services that people are willing to forgo to consume one more pizza.

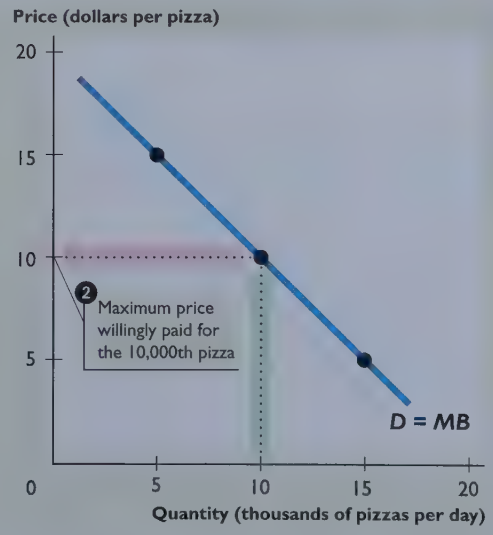
FIGURE 6.4

Demand, Willingness to Pay, and Marginal Benefit

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Price determines quantity demanded



(b) Quantity determines willingness to pay

1 The demand curve for pizza, *D*, shows the quantity of pizza demanded at each price, other things remaining the same. At $10 a pizza, the quantity demanded is 10,000 pizzas a day.

2 The demand curve shows the maximum price willingly paid (marginal benefit) for a given quantity. If 10,000 pizzas are available, the maximum price willingly paid for the 10,000th pizza is $10. The demand curve is also the marginal benefit curve *MB*.

Consumer Surplus

We don't always have to pay as much as we're willing to pay. When people buy something for less than it is worth to them, they receive a consumer surplus. **Consumer surplus** is the excess of marginal benefit from a good over the price paid for it, summed over the quantity consumed.

Consumer surplus
The marginal benefit from a good or service in excess of the price paid for it, summed over the quantity consumed.

Figure 6.5 illustrates consumer surplus. The demand curve for pizza tells us the quantity of pizza that people plan to buy at each price and the marginal benefit from pizza at each quantity. If the price of a pizza is $10, people buy 10,000 pizzas a day. Expenditure on pizza is $100,000, which is shown by the area of the blue rectangle.

To calculate consumer surplus, we must find the consumer surplus on each pizza and add these consumer surpluses together. For the 10,000th pizza, marginal benefit equals $10 and people pay $10, so the consumer surplus on this pizza is zero. For the 5,000th pizza (highlighted in the figure), marginal benefit is $15. So on this pizza, consumer surplus is $15 minus $10, which is $5. For the first pizza, marginal benefit is almost $20, so on this pizza, consumer surplus is almost $10.

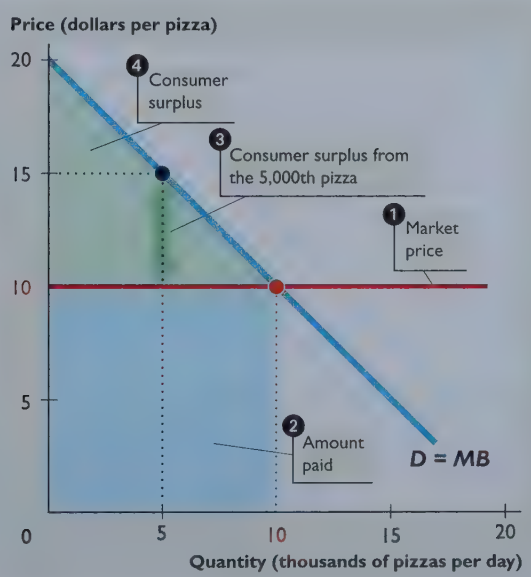
Consumer surplus—the sum of the consumer surpluses on the 10,000 pizzas that people buy—is $50,000 a day, which is shown by the area of the green triangle. (The base of the triangle is 10,000 pizzas a day and its height is $10, so its area is (10,000 × $10) ÷ 2 = $50,000.)

The total benefit is the amount paid, $100,000 (blue rectangle), plus consumer surplus, $50,000 (green triangle), and is $150,000. Consumer surplus is the total benefit minus the amount paid, or net benefit to consumers.

FIGURE 6.5

Demand and Consumer Surplus

MyEconLab Animation



1. The market price of a pizza is $10.
2. At the market price, people buy 10,000 pizzas a day and spend $100,000 on pizza—the blue rectangle.
3. The demand curve tells us that people are willing to pay $15 for the 5,000th pizza, so consumer surplus on the 5,000th pizza is $5.
4. Consumer surplus from the 10,000 pizzas that people buy is $50,000—the area of the green triangle.

The total benefit from pizza is the $100,000 that people pay plus the $50,000 consumer surplus they receive, or $150,000.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 6.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 6.2

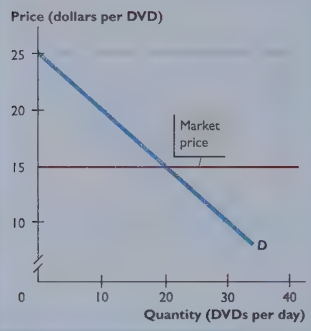
Distinguish between value and price and define consumer surplus.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the demand curve for DVDs and the market price of a DVD.

1. What is the willingness to pay for the 20th DVD? Calculate the value of the 10th DVD and the consumer surplus on the 10th DVD.
2. What is the quantity of DVDs bought? Calculate the consumer surplus, the amount spent on DVDs, and the total benefit from the DVDs bought.
3. If the price of a DVD rises to $20, what is the change in consumer surplus?

FIGURE 1



In the News

Airfares stacked against consumers

The airlines change prices from day to day. For example, the fare on one Delta flight from New York to Los Angeles jumped from $755 to $1,143 from a Friday to Saturday in April, then fell to $718 on Sunday.

Source: boston.com, June 22, 2011

Jodi planned a trip from New York to Los Angeles and was equally happy to travel on Friday, Saturday, or Sunday. The Saturday price was the most she was willing to pay. On which day do you predict she travelled and how much consumer surplus did she receive?

FIGURE 2

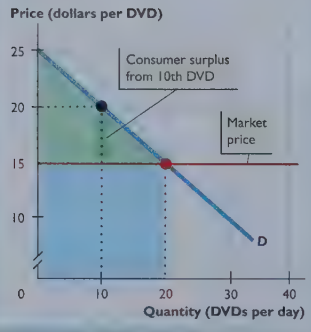
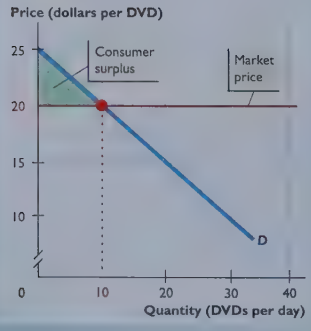


FIGURE 3



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The willingness to pay for the 20th DVD is the price on the demand curve at 20 DVDs, which is $15 (Figure 2). The value of the 10th DVD is its marginal benefit which is also the maximum price that someone is willing to pay for it. In Figure 2, the value of the 10th DVD is $20. The consumer surplus on the 10th DVD is its marginal benefit minus the price paid for the DVD, which is $20 − $15 = $5 (the length of the green arrow in Figure 2).
2. The quantity of DVDs bought is 20 a day, and the consumer surplus is ($25 − $15) × 20 ÷ 2 = $100 (the green triangle in Figure 2). The amount spent on DVDs is the price multiplied by the quantity bought, which is $15 × 20 = $300 (the area of the blue rectangle in Figure 2). The total benefit from DVDs is the amount spent on DVDs plus the consumer surplus from DVDs, which is $300 + $100 = $400.
3. If the price rises to $20, the quantity bought decreases to 10 a day. Consumer surplus decreases to ($25 − $20) × 10 ÷ 2 = $25 (the area of the green triangle in Figure 3). Consumer surplus decreases by $75 (from $100 to $25).

Solution to In the News

Being equally happy to travel on any of the three days means that Jodi's marginal benefit from the trip was the same on each day. Because Saturday's price of $1,143 was the most she was willing to pay, that is her marginal benefit. Being rational, Jodi would travel on the day with the lowest price, Sunday, and pay a fare of $718. Her consumer surplus would be her marginal benefit of $1,143 minus the price she paid, $718, which equals $425.

6.3 COST, PRICE, AND PRODUCER SURPLUS

You are now going to learn about cost, price, and producer surplus, which parallels what you've learned about value, price, and consumer surplus.

Supply and Marginal Cost

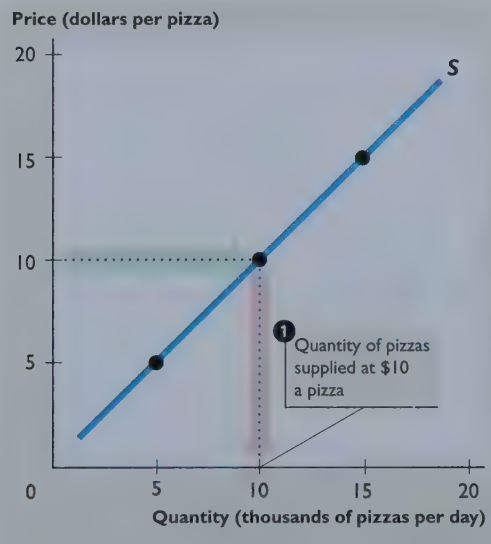
Just as buyers distinguish between *value* and *price*, so sellers distinguish between *cost* and *price*. Cost is what a seller must give up to produce the good, and price is what a seller receives when the good is sold. The cost of producing one more unit of a good or service is its *marginal cost*. It is just worth producing one more unit of a good or service if the price for which it can be sold equals marginal cost. The supply curve tells us this price. In Figure 6.6(a), the supply curve shows the quantity supplied at a given price—when the price of a pizza is $10, the quantity supplied is 10,000 pizzas a day. In Figure 6.6(b), the supply curve shows the minimum price that producers must receive to supply a given quantity—to supply 10,000 pizzas a day, producers must be able to get at least $10 for the 10,000th pizza. The marginal cost of the 10,000th pizza is $10. So:

A supply curve is a marginal cost curve. The supply curve of pizza tells us the dollars' worth of other goods and services that people must forgo if firms produce one more pizza.

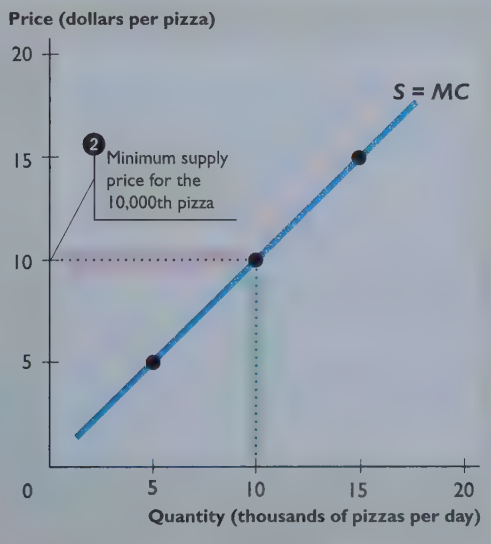
FIGURE 6.6

Supply, Minimum Supply Price, and Marginal Cost

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Price determines quantity supplied



(b) Quantity determines minimum supply price

1 The supply curve of pizza, *S*, shows the quantity of pizza supplied at each price, other things remaining the same. At $10 a pizza, the quantity supplied is 10,000 pizzas a day.

2 The supply curve shows the minimum price that firms must be offered to supply a given quantity. The minimum supply price equals marginal cost, which for the 10,000th pizza is $10. The supply curve is also the marginal cost curve *MC*.

Producer Surplus

Producer surplus
The price of a good in excess of the marginal cost of producing it, summed over the quantity produced.

When the price exceeds marginal cost, the firm obtains a producer surplus. **Producer surplus** is the excess of the price of a good over the marginal cost of producing it, summed over the quantity produced.

Figure 6.7 illustrates the producer surplus for pizza producers. The supply curve of pizza tells us the quantity of pizza that producers plan to sell at each price. The supply curve also tells us the marginal cost of pizza at each quantity produced. If the price of a pizza is $10, producers plan to sell 10,000 pizzas a day. The total revenue from pizza is $100,000 per day.

To calculate producer surplus, we must find the producer surplus on each pizza and add these surpluses together. For the 10,000th pizza, marginal cost equals $10 and producers receive $10, so the producer surplus on this pizza is zero. For the 5,000th pizza (highlighted in the figure), marginal cost is $6. So on this pizza, producer surplus is $10 minus $6, which is $4. For the first pizza, marginal cost is $2, so on this pizza, producer surplus is $10 minus $2, which is $8.

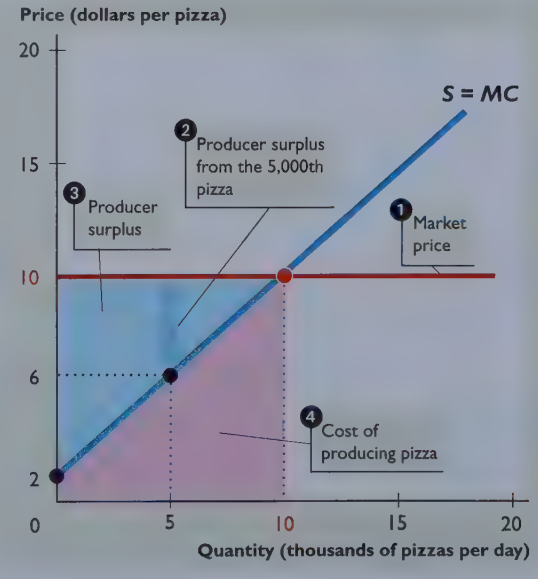
Producer surplus—the sum of the producer surpluses on the 10,000 pizzas that firms produce—is $40,000 a day, which is shown by the area of the blue triangle. The base of the triangle is 10,000 pizzas a day and its height is $8, so its area is (10,000 × $8) ÷ 2 = $40,000.

The total cost of producing pizza is the amount received from selling it, $100,000, minus the producer surplus, $40,000 (blue triangle), and is $60,000 (the red area). Producer surplus is the total amount received minus the total cost, or net benefit to producers.

FIGURE 6.7
Supply and Producer Surplus

MyEconLab Animation

1. The market price of a pizza is $10. At this price, producers plan to sell 10,000 pizzas a day and receive a total revenue of $100,000 a day.
2. The supply curve shows that the marginal cost of the 5,000th pizza a day is $6, so producers receive a producer surplus of $4 on the 5,000th pizza.
3. Producer surplus from the 10,000 pizzas sold is $40,000 a day—the area of the blue triangle.
4. The cost of producing 10,000 pizzas a day is the red area beneath the marginal cost curve. It equals total revenue of $100,000 minus producer surplus of $40,000 and is $60,000 a day.



CHECKPOINT 6.3

Distinguish between cost and price and define producer surplus.

MyEconLab

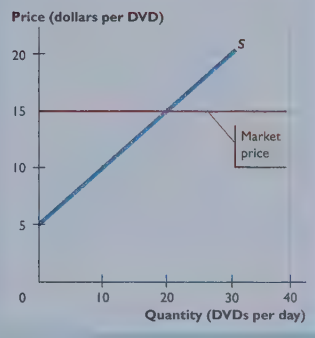
You can work these problems in Study Plan 6.3 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the supply curve of DVDs and the market price of a DVD.

1. What is the minimum supply price of the 20th DVD? Calculate the marginal cost of the 10th DVD and the producer surplus on the 10th DVD.
2. What is the quantity of DVDs sold? Calculate the producer surplus, the total revenue from the DVDs sold, and the cost of producing the DVDs sold.
3. If the price of a DVD falls to $10, what is the change in producer surplus?

FIGURE 1



In the News

Is Australia's ski season headed for a wipeout?

The Australian dollar has soared 26% against the U.S. dollar since last June, making those foreign lift tickets cheaper than those in Australia, and travel agents report a jump in interest in travel to North American ski destinations like Vail and Aspen.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, June 6, 2011

As Australians switch from skiing in Australia and flock to Vail and Aspen, how will the Australian ski operators' producer surplus change? How will the Vail and Aspen ski operators' producer surplus change?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The minimum supply price of the 20th DVD is the marginal cost of the 20th DVD, which is $15 (Figure 2). The marginal cost of the 10th DVD is equal to the minimum supply price for the 10th DVD, which is $10. The producer surplus on the 10th DVD is its market price minus the marginal cost of producing it, which is $15 − $10 = $5 (the blue arrow in Figure 2).
2. The quantity sold is 20 a day. Producer surplus equals ($15 − $5) × 20 ÷ 2, which is $100 (the area of the blue triangle in Figure 2). The total revenue is price multiplied by quantity sold. Total revenue is $15 × 20 = $300. The cost of producing DVDs equals total revenue minus producer surplus, which is $300 − $100 = $200 (the red area in Figure 2).
3. The quantity sold decreases to 10 a day. The producer surplus decreases to ($10 − $5) × 10 ÷ 2 = $25 (the area of the blue triangle in Figure 3). The change in producer surplus is a decrease of $75 (from $100 down to $25).

FIGURE 2

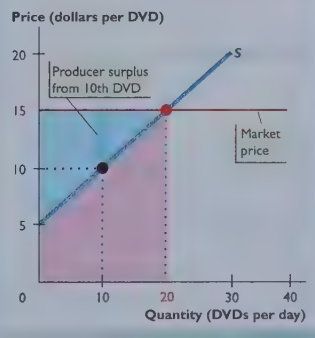
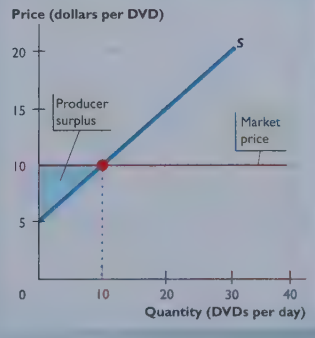


FIGURE 3



Solution to In the News

Producer surplus is the excess of the price of a good over the marginal cost of producing it, summed over the quantity produced.

In Australia, the demand for ski tickets decreases, the price and quantity of tickets sold decreases, and Australian ski operators' producer surplus decreases.

In Vail and Aspen, the demand for ski tickets increases, the price and quantity of tickets sold increases, and ski operators' producer surplus increases.

6.4 ARE MARKETS EFFICIENT?

Figure 6.8 shows the market for pizza. The demand curve is *D*, the supply curve is *S*, the equilibrium price is $10 a pizza, and the equilibrium quantity is 10,000 pizzas a day. The market forces that you studied in Chapter 4 (pp. 99–100) pull the pizza market to its equilibrium and coordinate the plans of buyers and sellers. But does this competitive equilibrium deliver the efficient quantity of pizza?

If the equilibrium is efficient, it does more than coordinate plans. It coordinates them in the best possible way. Resources are used to produce the quantity of pizza that people value most highly. It is not possible to produce more pizza without giving up some of another good or service that is valued more highly. And if a smaller quantity of pizza is produced, resources are used to produce some other good that is not valued as highly as the pizza that is forgone.

Marginal Benefit Equals Marginal Cost

To check whether the equilibrium in Figure 6.8 is efficient, recall the interpretation of the demand curve as a marginal benefit curve and the supply curve as a marginal cost curve. The demand curve tells us the marginal benefit from pizza. The supply curve tells us the marginal cost of pizza. Where the demand curve and the supply curve intersect, marginal benefit equals marginal cost.

FIGURE 6.8

An Efficient Market for Pizza

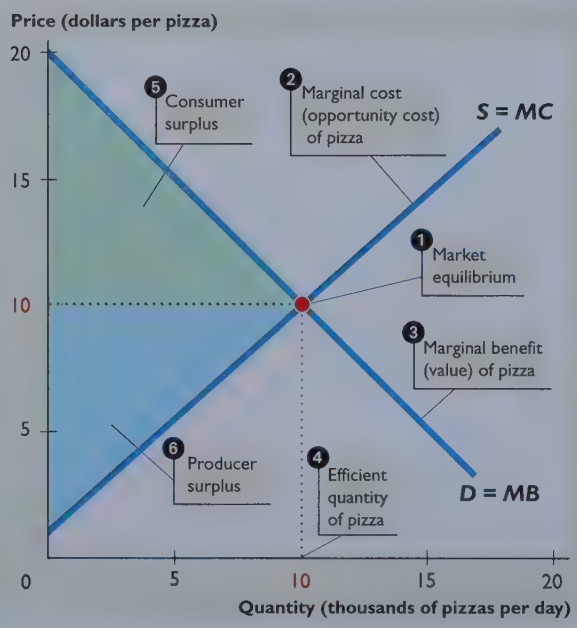
MyEconLab Animation

❶ Market equilibrium occurs at a price of $10 a pizza and a quantity of 10,000 pizzas a day.

❷ The supply curve is also the marginal cost curve.

❸ The demand curve is also the marginal benefit curve.

Because at the market equilibrium, marginal benefit equals marginal cost, the ❹ efficient quantity of pizza is produced. The sum of the ❺ consumer surplus and ❻ producer surplus is maximized.



This condition—marginal benefit equals marginal cost—is the condition that delivers an efficient use of resources. Because a competitive equilibrium allocates resources to the activities that create the greatest possible value, it is efficient.

Total Surplus Is Maximized

Another way of checking that the equilibrium is efficient is to look at the total surplus that it generates. **Total surplus** is the sum of producer surplus and consumer surplus. A price above the equilibrium might increase producer surplus, but it would decrease consumer surplus by more. And a price below the equilibrium price might increase consumer surplus, but it would decrease producer surplus by more. The competitive equilibrium price maximizes total surplus.

Total surplus
The sum of producer surplus and consumer surplus.

In Figure 6.8, if production is less than 10,000 pizzas a day, someone is willing to buy a pizza for more than it costs to produce. Buyers and sellers will gain if production increases. If production exceeds 10,000 pizzas a day, it costs more to produce a pizza than anyone is willing to pay for it. Buyers and sellers will gain if production decreases. Only when 10,000 pizzas a day are produced is there no unexploited gain from changing the quantity of pizza produced, and total surplus is maximized.

Buyers and sellers each attempt to do the best they can for themselves—they pursue their self-interest. No one plans for an efficient outcome for society as a whole. No one worries about the social interest. Buyers seek the lowest possible price, and sellers seek the highest possible price. But as buyers and sellers pursue their self-interest, this astonishing outcome occurs: The social interest is served.

The Invisible Hand

Writing in his *Wealth of Nations* in 1776, Adam Smith was the first to suggest that competitive markets send resources to the uses in which they have the highest value. Smith believed that each participant in a competitive market is "led by an invisible hand to promote an end [the efficient use of resources] which was no part of his intention."

You can see the effects of the invisible hand at work every day. Your campus bookstore is stuffed with texts at the start of each term. It has the quantities that it predicts students will buy. The coffee shop has the variety and quantities of drinks and snacks that people plan to buy. Your local clothing store has the sweatpants and socks and other items that you plan to buy. Truckloads of textbooks, coffee and cookies, and sweatpants and socks roll along our highways and bring these items to where you and your friends want to buy them. Firms that don't know you anticipate your wants and work hard to help you satisfy them.

No government organizes all this production, and no government auditor monitors producers to ensure that they serve the social interest. The allocation of scarce resources is not planned. It happens because prices adjust to make buying plans and selling plans compatible, and it happens in a way that sends resources to the uses in which they have the highest value.

Adam Smith explained why all this amazing activity occurs. "It is not from the benevolence of the butcher, the brewer, or the baker that we expect our dinner," he wrote, "but from their regard to their own interest."

Publishing companies, coffee growers, garment manufacturers, and a host of other producers are led by their regard for *their* own interest to serve *your* interest.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

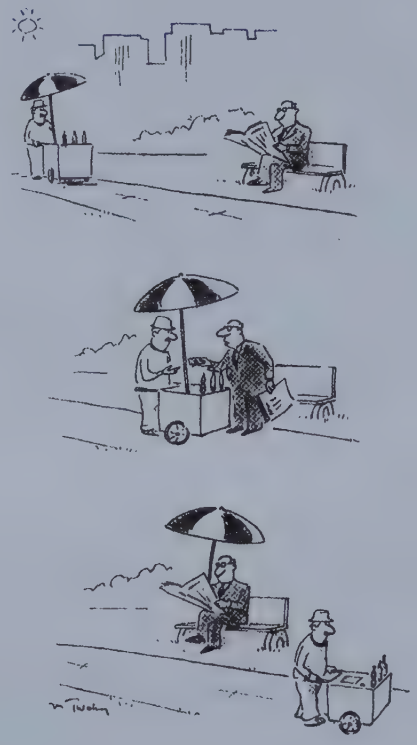
The Invisible Hand and e-Commerce

You can see the influence of the invisible hand at work in the cartoon and in today's information economy.

The cold drinks vendor has both cold drinks and shade. He has an opportunity cost and a minimum supply price of each item. The park bench reader has a marginal benefit from a cold drink and from shade. The transaction that occurs tells us that for shade, the reader's marginal benefit exceeds the vendor's marginal cost but for a cold drink, the vendor's marginal cost exceeds the reader's marginal benefit. The transaction creates consumer surplus and producer surplus. The vendor obtains a producer surplus from selling the shade for more than its opportunity cost, and the reader obtains a consumer surplus from buying the shade for less than its marginal benefit. In the third frame of the cartoon, both the consumer and the producer are better off than they were in the first frame. The umbrella has moved to its highest-valued use.

The market economy relentlessly performs the activity illustrated in the cartoon to achieve an efficient allocation of resources. New technologies have cut the cost of using the Internet and during the past few years, hundreds of Web sites have been established that are dedicated to facilitating trade in all types of goods, services, and factors of production.

The electronic auction site eBay (http://www.ebay.com/), has brought a huge increase in consumer surplus and producer surplus, and helps to achieve ever greater allocative efficiency.



© The New Yorker Collection 1985
Mike Twohy from cartoonbank.com. All Rights Reserved.

Market Failure

Markets do not always achieve an efficient outcome. We call a situation in which a market delivers an inefficient outcome one of **market failure**. Market failure can occur because either too little of an item is produced—underproduction—or too much is produced—overproduction.

Market failure
A situation in which the market delivers an inefficient outcome.

Underproduction

In Figure 6.9(a), the quantity of pizza produced is 5,000 a day. At this quantity, consumers are willing to pay $15 for a pizza that costs only $6 to produce. The quantity produced is inefficient—there is underproduction.

A **deadweight loss**, which is the decrease in total surplus that results from an inefficient underproduction or overproduction, measures the scale of the inefficiency. The area of the gray triangle in Figure 6.9(a) measures the deadweight loss.

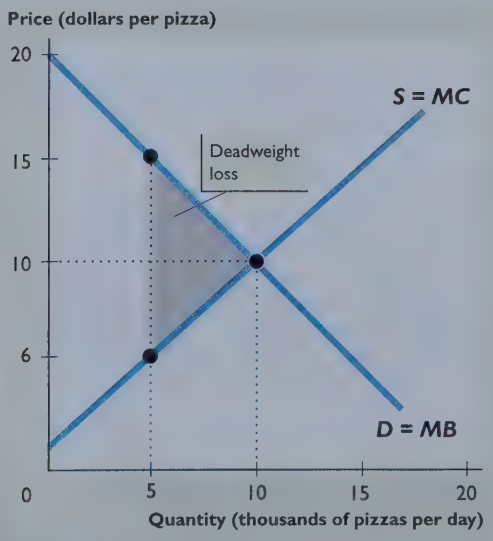
Deadweight loss
The decrease in total surplus that results from an inefficient underproduction or overproduction.

Overproduction

In Figure 6.9(b), the quantity of pizza produced is 15,000 a day. At this quantity, consumers are willing to pay only $5 for a pizza that costs $14 to produce. By producing the 15,000th pizza, $9 is lost. Again, the gray triangle shows the deadweight loss. The total surplus is smaller than its maximum by the amount of the deadweight loss. The deadweight loss is borne by the entire society. It is not a loss for the producer and a gain for the consumers. It is a *social* loss.

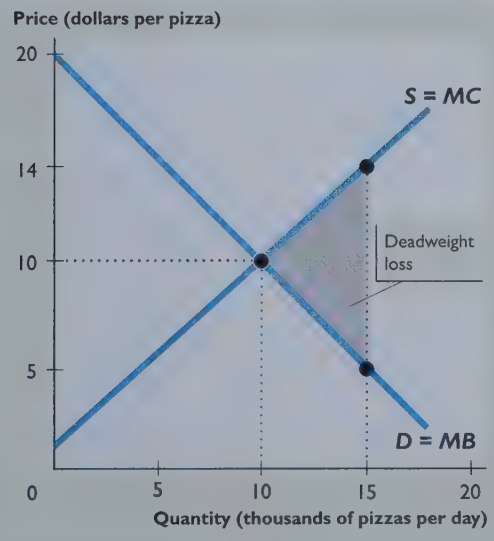
FIGURE 6.9
Inefficient Outcomes

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Underproduction

If production is restricted to 5,000 pizzas a day, a deadweight loss (the gray triangle) arises. Total surplus is reduced by the area of the deadweight loss triangle. Underproduction is inefficient.



(b) Overproduction

If production increases to 15,000 pizzas, a deadweight loss arises. Total surplus is reduced by the area of the deadweight loss triangle. Overproduction is inefficient.

Sources of Market Failure

Obstacles to efficiency that bring market failure and create deadweight losses are

- Price and quantity regulations
- Taxes and subsidies
- Externalities
- Public goods and common resources
- Monopoly
- High transactions costs

Price and Quantity Regulations

Price regulations that put a cap on the rent a landlord is permitted to charge and laws that require employers to pay a minimum wage sometimes block the price adjustments that balance the quantity demanded and the quantity supplied and lead to underproduction. *Quantity regulations* that limit the amount that a farm is permitted to produce also lead to underproduction.

Taxes and Subsidies

Taxes increase the prices paid by buyers and lower the prices received by sellers. So taxes decrease the quantity produced and lead to underproduction. *Subsidies,* which are payments by the government to producers, decrease the prices paid by buyers and increase the prices received by sellers. So subsidies increase the quantity produced and lead to overproduction.

Externalities

An *externality* is a cost or a benefit that affects someone other than the seller and the buyer of a good. An electric utility creates an *external cost* by burning coal that brings acid rain and crop damage. The utility doesn't consider the cost of pollution when it decides how much power to produce. The result is overproduction.

A condominium owner would provide an *external benefit* if she installed a smoke detector. But she doesn't consider her neighbor's marginal benefit and decides not to install a smoke detector. The result is underproduction.

Public Goods and Common Resources

A *public good* benefits everyone and no one can be excluded from its benefits. National defense is an example. It is in everyone's self-interest to avoid paying for a public good (called the *free-rider problem*), which leads to its underproduction.

A *common resource* is owned by no one but used by everyone. Atlantic salmon is an example. It is in everyone's self-interest to ignore the costs of their own use of a common resource that fall on others (called the *tragedy of the commons*), which leads to overproduction.

Monopoly

A *monopoly* is a firm that is the sole provider of a good or service. Local water supply and cable television are supplied by firms that are monopolies.

The self-interest of a monopoly is to maximize its profit. Because the monopoly has no competitors, it can set the price to achieve its self-interested goal. To achieve its goal, a monopoly produces too little and charges too high a price, which leads to underproduction.

High Transactions Costs

Stroll around a shopping mall and observe the retail markets in which you participate. You'll see that these markets employ enormous quantities of scarce labor and capital resources. It is costly to operate any market. Economists call the opportunity costs of making trades in a market **transactions costs.**

Transactions costs
The opportunity costs of making trades in a market.

To use market prices as the allocators of scarce resources, it must be worth bearing the opportunity cost of establishing a market. Some markets are just too costly to operate. For example, when you want to play tennis on your local "free" court, you don't pay a market price for your slot on the court. You hang around until the court becomes vacant, and you "pay" with your waiting time.

When transactions costs are high, the market might underproduce.

Alternatives to the Market

When a market is inefficient, can one of the alternative non-market methods that we described at the beginning of this chapter do a better job? Sometimes it can.

Table 6.1 summarizes the sources of market failure and the possible remedies. Often, majority rule might be used, but majority rule has its own shortcomings. A group that pursues the self-interest of its members can become the majority. For example, price and quantity regulations that create deadweight loss are almost always the result of a self-interested group becoming the majority and imposing costs on the minority. Also, with majority rule, votes must be translated into actions by bureaucrats who have their own agendas.

Managers in firms issue commands and avoid the transactions costs that they would incur if they went to a market every time they needed a job done. First-come, first-served saves a lot of hassle in waiting lines. These lines could have markets in which people trade their place in the line—but someone would have to enforce the agreements. Can you imagine the hassle at a busy Starbucks if you had to buy your spot at the head of the line?

There is no one mechanism for allocating resources efficiently. But markets bypassed by command systems inside firms and supplemented by majority rule and first-come, first-served do an amazingly good job.

Table 6.1

Market Failure and Some Possible Remedies

Reason for market failure	Possible remedy
1. Price and quantity regulations	Remove regulation by majority rule
2. Taxes and subsidies	Minimize deadweight loss by majority rule
3. Externalities	Minimize deadweight loss by majority rule
4. Public goods	Allocate by majority rule
5. Common resources	Allocate by majority rule
6. Monopoly	Regulate by majority rule
7. High transactions costs	Command or first-come, first-served

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 6.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 6.4

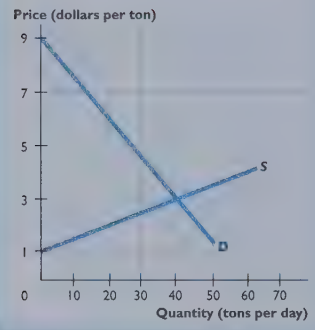
Evaluate the efficiency of the alternative methods of allocating resources.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the market for paper.

1. At the market equilibrium, what are consumer surplus, producer surplus, and total surplus? Is the market for paper efficient? Why or why not?
2. Lobbyists for a group of news magazines persuade the government to pass a law that requires producers to sell 50 tons of paper a day. Is the market for paper efficient? Why or why not? Shade the deadweight loss on the figure.
3. An environmental lobbying group persuades the government to pass a law that limits the quantity of paper that producers sell to 20 tons a day. Is the market for paper efficient? If not, what is the deadweight loss?

FIGURE 1



In the News

Senate votes to end ethanol subsidies

The Senate has voted to end the $6 billion a year in subsidies paid to the ethanol industry for the past three decades. Refiners would lose the 45-cent-a-gallon subsidy, and the tax on imported ethanol would be eliminated.

Source: *USA Today*, June 16, 2011

Describe the efficiency of the market for ethanol with the $6 billion subsidies in place. If the subsidies and taxes are eliminated, explain how the efficiency of the market for ethanol would change.

FIGURE 2

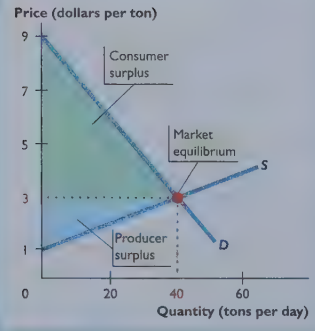
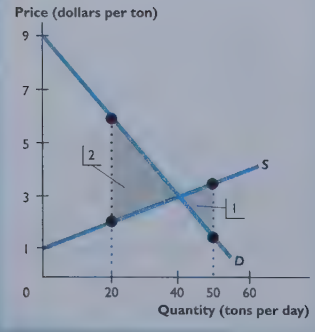


FIGURE 3



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Market equilibrium is 40 tons a day at a price of $3 a ton (Figure 2). Consumer surplus = ($9 − $3) × 40 ÷ 2 = $120 (the area of the green triangle in Figure 2). Producer surplus is ($3 − $1) × 40 ÷ 2, which equals $40 (the area of the blue triangle in Figure 2). Total surplus is the sum of consumer surplus and producer surplus, which is $160.
   The market is efficient because marginal benefit (on the demand curve) equals marginal cost (on the supply curve) and total surplus (consumer surplus plus producer surplus) is maximized.
2. The market is inefficient because marginal cost exceeds marginal benefit. Deadweight loss is the area of the gray triangle 1 in Figure 3.
3. This market is now inefficient because marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost. The deadweight loss is the area of the gray triangle 2 in Figure 3.

Solution to In the News

Subsidies to producers increase the supply of the good, which decreases the market price. The price received by producers equals the market price plus the subsidy per gallon, which results in overproduction and inefficiency. A deadweight loss arises. By eliminating the subsidies and taxes, overproduction will decrease. The market for ethanol will be more efficient, and the deadweight loss will decrease.

6.5 ARE MARKETS FAIR?

Following a severe winter storm or hurricane, the prices of many essential items jump. Is it fair that disaster victims should be hit with higher prices? Many low-skilled people work for a wage that is below what most would regard as a living wage. Is that fair? How do we decide whether something is fair or unfair?

Economists have a clear definition of efficiency but they do not have a similarly clear definition of fairness. Also, ideas about fairness are not exclusively economic ideas. They involve the study of ethics.

To study ideas about fairness, think of economic life as a game—a serious game—that has *rules* and a *result*. Two broad and generally conflicting approaches to fairness are

- It's not fair if the *rules* aren't fair.
- It's not fair if the *result* isn't fair.

It's Not Fair If the *Rules* Aren't Fair

Harvard philosopher Robert Nozick argued for the fair rules view in a book entitled *Anarchy, State, and Utopia*, published in 1974. Nozick argued that fairness requires two rules:

- The state must establish and protect private property rights.
- Goods and services and the services of factors of production may be transferred from one person to another only by voluntary exchange with everyone free to engage in such exchange.

The first rule says that everything that is valuable—all scarce resources and goods—must be owned by individuals and that the state must protect private property rights. The second rule says that the only way a person can acquire something is to buy it in voluntary trade.

If these rules are followed, says Nozick, the outcome is fair. It doesn't matter how unequally the economic pie is shared provided that the people who bake it supply their services voluntarily in exchange for the share of the pie offered in compensation. Opportunity is equal but the result might be unequal. This fair rules approach is consistent with allocative efficiency.

It's Not Fair If the *Result* Isn't Fair

Most people think that the fair rules approach leads to too much inequality—to an unfair result: For example, that it is unfair for a bank president to earn millions of dollars a year while a bank teller earns only thousands of dollars a year.

But what is "too unequal"? Is it fair for some people to receive twice as much as others but not ten times as much or a hundred times as much? Or is all that matters that the poorest people shouldn't be "too poor"?

There is no easy answer to these questions. Generally, greater equality is regarded as good but there is no measure of the most desirable shares.

The fair result approach conflicts with allocative efficiency and leads to what is called the **big tradeoff**—a tradeoff between efficiency and fairness that recognizes the cost of making income transfers.

Big tradeoff
A tradeoff between efficiency and fairness that recognizes the cost of making income transfers.

The big tradeoff is based on the fact that income can be transferred to people with low incomes only by taxing people with high incomes. But taxing people's

EYE on PRICE GOUGING

Should Price Gouging Be Illegal?

Price gouging is the practice of selling an essential item for a much higher price than normal, and usually occurs following a natural disaster. In Florida and Texas, where hurricanes happen all too often, price gouging is illegal.

Whether price gouging *should* be illegal depends on the view of fairness employed and on the facts about whether the buyers or the sellers are the poorer group.

The standard view of economists is that price gouging should *not* be illegal and that it is the expected and *efficient* response to a change in demand.

After a hurricane, the demand for items such as generators, pumps, lamps, gasoline, and camp stoves increases and the prices of these items rise in a natural response to the change in demand.

The figure illustrates the market for camp stoves. The supply of stoves is the curve *S*, and in normal times, the demand for stoves is D_0. The price is $20 per stove and the equilibrium quantity is 5 stoves per day.

Following a hurricane that results in a lengthy power failure, the demand for camp stoves increases to D_1. Provided there is no price gouging law, the equilibrium price of a stove jumps to $40 and the equilibrium quantity increases to 7 stoves per day.

This outcome is efficient because the marginal cost of a stove (on the supply curve) equals the marginal benefit from a stove (on the demand curve).

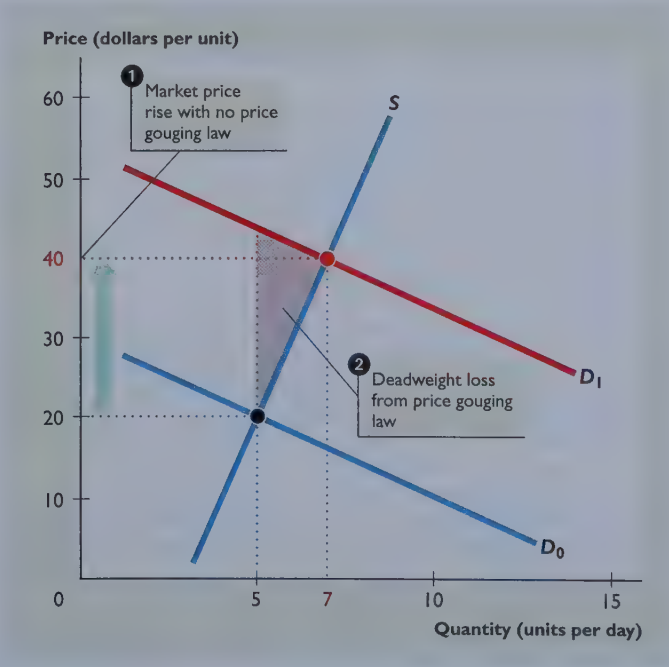
If a strict price gouging law requires the price after the hurricane to be the *same* as the price before the hurricane, the price of a stove is stuck at $20.

At this price, the quantity of stoves supplied remains at 5 per day and a deadweight loss shown by the gray triangle arises. The price gouging law is inefficient, and the price rise is efficient.

Whether a doubling of the price is *fair* depends on the idea of fairness used. On the *fair rules* view, the price rise is fair. Trade is voluntary and both the buyer and the seller are better off. On the *fair outcome* view, the price rise might be considered unfair if the buyers are poor and the sellers are rich. But if the buyers are rich and the sellers are poor, the price rise would be considered fair even on the fair result view.

After Hurricane Katrina, John Shepperson bought 19 generators, loaded them into a rented U-Haul vehicle, and drove the 600 miles from his home in Kentucky to a place in Mississippi that had no power. He offered his generators to eager buyers for twice the price he had paid for them. But before he could complete a sale, the Mississippi police swooped in on him. They confiscated his generators and put him in jail for four days. His crime: price gouging.

Was it efficient to stop Mr. Shepperson from selling his generators? Was it fair either to him or his deprived customers?



EYE on YOUR LIFE

Allocation Methods, Efficiency, and Fairness

You live in the national economy, your state economy, your regional economy, and your own household economy. The many decisions you must make affect efficiency and fairness at all these levels. Think about your household economy.

Make a spreadsheet and on it identify all the factors of production that your household owns. Count all the person-hours available and any capital. Show how these resources are allocated.

By what methods are your household's scarce resources allocated? Identify those allocated by market price; by command; by first-come, first-served; and by equal shares. Are any resources allocated by majority vote?

Now the tough part: Are these resources allocated efficiently—is the value of your household's resources maximized? Think about how you can check whether marginal benefit equals marginal cost for each of your household's activities.

And now an even tougher question: Are your household's resources allocated fairly? Think about the two ideas of fairness and how they apply in your household.

income from employment discourages work. It results in the quantity of labor being less than the efficient quantity. Taxing people's income from capital discourages saving. It results in the quantity of capital being less than the efficient quantity. With smaller quantities of both labor and capital, the quantity of goods and services produced is less than the efficient quantity. The economic pie shrinks.

Income redistribution creates a tradeoff between the size of the economic pie and the equality with which it is shared. The greater the scale of income redistribution through income taxes, the greater is the inefficiency—the smaller is the pie.

There is a second source of inefficiency: A dollar taken from a rich person does not end up as a dollar in the hands of a poorer person. Some of the dollar is spent on administration of the tax and transfer system, which includes the cost of accountants, auditors, and lawyers. These activities use skilled labor and capital resources that could otherwise be used to produce other goods and services that people value.

You can see that when all these costs are taken into account, transferring a dollar from a rich person does not give a dollar to a poor person. It is even possible that those with low incomes end up being worse off. For example, if a highly taxed entrepreneur decides to work less hard and shut down a business, low-income workers get fired and must seek other, perhaps even lower-paid, work.

Compromise

Most people, and probably most economists, have sympathy with the Nozick view but think it too extreme. They see a role for taxes and government income support schemes to transfer some income from the rich to the poor. Such transfers could be considered voluntary in the sense that they are decided by majority voting, and even those who vote against such transfers voluntarily participate in the political process.

Once we agree that using the tax system to make transfers from the rich to the poor is fair, we need to determine just what we mean by a fair tax. We'll look at this big question when we study the tax system in Chapter 8.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 6.5 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 6.5

Explain the main ideas about fairness and evaluate the fairness of the alternative methods of allocating scarce resources.

Practice Problems

A winter storm cuts the power supply and isolates a small town in the mountains. The people rush to buy candles from the town store, which is the only source of candles. The store owner decides to ration the candles to one per family but to keep the price of a candle unchanged.

1. Who gets to use the candles? Who receives the consumer surplus and who receives the producer surplus on candles?
2. Is the allocation efficient? Is the allocation fair?

In the News

National parks to offer free-entry weekends
Interior Secretary Ken Salazar said he hoped American families would take the opportunity during these hard times to enjoy an affordable weekend vacation in our national parks. Most Americans live within an hour's drive of a national park.

Source: *Los Angeles Times*, June 3, 2009

Which families will be most likely to visit the national parks on the free weekends? Is the policy to waive the admission fair?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The people who buy candles from the town store are not necessarily the people who use the candles. A buyer from the town store can sell a candle and will do so if he or she can get a price that exceeds his or her marginal benefit. The people who value the candles most—who are willing to pay the most—will use the candles.
   Only the people who are willing to pay the most for candles receive the consumer surplus on candles, and the store owner receives the same producer surplus as normal. People who sell the candles they buy from the store receive additional producer surplus.
2. The allocation is efficient because the people who value the candles most use them. Two views of fairness: The rules view is that if the rule of one candle per family is followed and exchange is voluntary, then the outcome is fair. But the results view is that if the candles are allocated unequally, then the allocation is unfair.

Solution to In the News

Most of the families will be those who own a car and do not work on weekends. The idea of waiving the admission is to allow families to enjoy an affordable vacation in these hard times. If the families hit by the hard times are the ones that visit the national parks, then, in the fair result view, the policy is fair. But if families hit by the hard times are the ones who do not visit, then, in the fair result view, the policy is unfair. If the families who visit the national parks do so voluntarily, then, no matter which families visit, in the fair rules view, the policy is fair.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the alternative methods of allocating scarce resources and define and explain the features of an efficient allocation.

- The methods of allocating scarce resources are market price; command; majority rule; contest; first-come, first-served; sharing equally; lottery; personal characteristics; and force.
- Allocative efficiency occurs when resources are used to create the greatest value, which means that marginal benefit equals marginal cost.

2 Distinguish between value and price and define consumer surplus.

- Marginal benefit is measured by the maximum price that consumers are willing to pay for another unit of a good or service.
- A demand curve is a marginal benefit curve.
- Value is what people are *willing to* pay; price is what they *must* pay.
- Consumer surplus equals the excess of marginal benefit over price, summed over the quantity consumed.

3 Distinguish between cost and price and define producer surplus.

- Marginal cost is measured by the minimum price producers must be offered to increase production by one unit.
- A supply curve is a marginal cost curve.
- Opportunity cost is what producers *must* pay; price is what they *receive*.
- Producer surplus equals the excess of price over marginal cost, summed over the quantity produced.

4 Evaluate the efficiency of the alternative methods of allocating resources.

- In a competitive equilibrium, marginal benefit equals marginal cost and resource allocation is efficient.
- Price and quantity regulations, taxes, subsidies, externalities, public goods, common resources, monopoly, and high transactions costs lead to market failure and create deadweight loss.

5 Explain the main ideas about fairness and evaluate the fairness of the alternative methods of allocating scarce resources.

- Ideas about fairness divide into two groups: fair *results* and fair *rules*.
- Fair rules require private property rights and voluntary exchange, and fair results require income transfers from the rich to the poor.

Key Terms

Allocative efficiency, 141
Big tradeoff, 159
Command system, 139
Consumer surplus, 147
Deadweight loss, 155
Market failure, 155
Producer surplus, 150
Production possibilities frontier, 141
Total surplus, 153
Transactions costs, 157

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 6 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

At McDonald's, no reservations are accepted; at Puck's at the St. Louis Art Museum, reservations are accepted; at the Bissell Mansion restaurant, reservations are essential. Use this information to answer Problems **1** to **3**.

1. Describe the method of allocating table resources in these three restaurants.
2. Why do you think restaurants have different reservation policies, and why might each restaurant be using an efficient allocation method?
3. Why don't all restaurants use the market price to allocate their tables?

Table 1 shows the demand and supply schedules for sandwiches. Use Table 1 to work Problems **4** to **7**.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per sandwich)	Quantity demanded (sandwiches per hour)	Quantity supplied (sandwiches per hour)
0	400	0
1	350	50
2	300	100
3	250	150
4	200	200
5	150	250
6	100	300
7	50	350
8	0	400

4. Calculate the equilibrium price of a sandwich, the consumer surplus, and the producer surplus. What is the efficient quantity of sandwiches?
5. If the quantity demanded decreases by 100 sandwiches an hour at each price, what is the equilibrium price and what is the change in total surplus?
6. If the quantity supplied decreases by 100 sandwiches an hour at each price, what is the equilibrium price and what is the change in total surplus?
7. If Sandwiches To Go, Inc., buys all the sandwich producers and cuts production to 100 sandwiches an hour, what is the deadweight loss that is created? If Sandwiches To Go, Inc., rations sandwiches to two per person, by what view of fairness would the allocation be unfair?

Use the following information to work Problems **8** and **9**.

Table 2 shows the demand and supply schedules for sandbags before and during a major flood. During the flood, suppose that the government gave all families an equal quantity of sandbags. Resale of sandbags is not permitted.

TABLE 2

Price (dollars per bag)	Quantity demanded before flood (thousands of bags)	Quantity demanded during flood (thousands of bags)	Quantity supplied (thousands of bags)
0	40	70	0
1	35	65	5
2	30	60	10
3	25	55	15
4	20	50	20
5	15	45	25
6	10	40	30
7	5	35	35
8	0	30	40

8. How would total surplus and the price of a sandbag change?
9. Would the outcome be more efficient than if the government took no action? Explain.
10. The winner of the men's or women's tennis singles at the U.S. Open is paid twice as much as the runner-up, but it takes two players to have a singles final. Is this compensation arrangement efficient? Is it fair? Explain why it might illustrate the big tradeoff.

Use the following information to work Problems **11** and **12**.

eBay saves billions for bidders

On eBay, the bidder who places the highest bid wins the auction and pays only what the second highest bidder offered. Researchers Wolfgang Jank and Galit Shmueli reported that purchasers on eBay in 2003 paid $7 billion less than their winning bids. Because each bid shows the buyer's willingness to pay, the winner receives an estimated consumer surplus of $4 or more.

Source: *InformationWeek*, January 28, 2008

11. What method is used to allocate goods on eBay? How does an eBay auction influence consumer surplus from the good?
12. Does the seller receive a producer surplus? Are auctions on eBay efficient?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Panic in paradise: Are high fares the new reality for Hawaii?

On March 31, 2008, Hawaii lost 15 percent of its air service as Aloha Airlines and the cheap-flight airline ATA suddenly shut down. Stranded travelers were offered flights to West coast cities at $1,000 one way. Within a month, the fare to west coast cities dropped to about $200 a round trip. Stranded travelers complained of price gouging.

Source: *USA Today*, April 23, 2008

Under what conditions would the $1,000 fare be considered "price gouging"? Under what conditions would the $1,000 fare be an example of the market price method of allocating scarce airline seats?

Table 1 shows the demand schedule for haircuts and the supply schedule of haircuts. Use Table 1 to work Problems **2** and **3**.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per haircut)	Quantity demanded (haircuts per day)	Quantity supplied (haircuts per day)
0	100	0
10	80	0
20	60	20
30	40	40
40	20	60
50	0	80

2. What is the quantity of haircuts bought, the value of a haircut, and the total surplus from haircuts?

3. Suppose that all salons agree to charge $40 a haircut. What is the change in consumer surplus, the change in producer surplus, and the deadweight loss created?

In California, farmers pay a lower price for water than do city residents. Use this information to work Problems **4** to **6**.

4. What is this method of allocation of water resources? Is this allocation of water efficient? Is this use of scarce water fair? Why or why not?

5. If farmers were charged the same price as city residents pay, how would the price of agricultural produce, the quantity of produce grown, consumer surplus, and producer surplus change?

6. If all water in California is sold for the market equilibrium price, would the allocation of water be more efficient? Why or why not?

Use the following information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

The world's largest tulip and flower market

Every day over 19 million tulips and flowers are auctioned at the Dutch market called "The Bloemenveiling." These Dutch auctions match buyers and sellers.

Source: Tulip-Bulbs.com

In a Dutch auction, the auctioneer announces the highest price. If no one offers to buy the flowers, the auctioneer lowers the price until a buyer is found.

7. What method is used to allocate flowers at the Bloemenveiling?

8. How does a Dutch flower auction influence consumer surplus and producer surplus? Are the flower auctions at the Bloemenveiling efficient?

9. New Zealand's private forests

In the early 1990s, the government auctioned half the national forests, converting these forests from public ownership to private ownership. The government's decision was an incentive to get the owners to operate like farmers—that is, take care of the resource and to use it to make a profit.

Source: *Reuters*, September 7, 2007

Was the timber industry efficient before the auction and did logging companies operate in the social interest or self-interest? What effect has private ownership had on efficiency of the timber industry?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 6 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The method of allocation that most stores use during Thanksgiving sales is:
   A. a combination of market price and lottery
   B. first-come, first-served
   C. a combination of contest and command
   D. a combination of market price and first-come, first-served
2. All of the following statements are correct *except* _____.
   A. the value of an additional unit of the good equals the marginal benefit from the good
   B. marginal benefit is the excess of value over the price paid, summed over the quantity consumed
   C. the maximum price willingly paid for a unit of a good is the marginal benefit from it
   D. price is what we pay for a good but value is what we get from it
3. Choose the best statement.
   A. An increase in the demand for a good increases producer surplus.
   B. If producers decrease the supply of the good, their producer surplus will increase.
   C. Producer surplus equals the total revenue from selling the good.
   D. Producer surplus is the excess of the value of the good over the market price, summed over the quantity produced.
4. The market for a good is efficient if _____.
   A. the marginal cost of producing the good is minimized
   B. the marginal benefit from the good is maximized
   C. the consumer surplus is maximized
   D. the total surplus is maximized
5. When the marginal benefit from a good exceeds its marginal cost, _____.
   A. there is overproduction of the good
   B. a deadweight loss, which is the excess of marginal benefit over marginal cost, arises
   C. producer surplus decreases and consumer surplus increases
   D. total production increases and efficiency increases
6. Market failure arises if _____.
   A. there is overproduction of the good but not if there is underproduction
   B. the deadweight loss is zero
   C. producer surplus exceeds consumer surplus
   D. total surplus is not maximized
7. The allocation of resources is fair _____.
   A. in the rules view if everyone has equal opportunity
   B. in the results view if most resources are distributed to the poorest people
   C. in the rules view if owners of the resources are protected by property rights and all transfers of resources are voluntary
   D. in the results view if resources are transferred voluntarily so that everyone has the same quantity

Can the President repeal the laws of supply and demand?

Government Actions in Markets

7

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain how a price ceiling works and show how a rent ceiling creates a housing shortage, inefficiency, and unfairness.
2. Explain how a price floor works and show how the minimum wage creates unemployment, inefficiency, and unfairness.
3. Explain how a price support in the market for an agricultural product creates a surplus, inefficiency, and unfairness.

7.1 PRICE CEILINGS

Price ceiling or price cap
A government regulation that places an *upper* limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded.

A **price ceiling** (also called a **price cap**) is a government regulation that places an *upper* limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded. Trading at a higher price is illegal.

A price ceiling has been used in several markets, but the one that looms largest in everyone's budget is the housing market. The price of housing is the rent that people pay for a house or apartment. Demand and supply in the housing market determine the rent and the quantity of housing available.

Figure 7.1 illustrates the apartment rental market in Biloxi, Mississippi. The rent is $550 a month, and 4,000 apartments are rented.

Suppose that Biloxi apartment rents have increased by $100 a month in the past two years and that a Citizens' Action Group asks the mayor to roll rents back.

A Rent Ceiling

Rent ceiling
A regulation that makes it illegal to charge more than a specified rent for housing.

Responding to the demand, the mayor imposes a **rent ceiling**—a regulation that makes it illegal to charge more than a specified rent for housing.

The effect of a rent ceiling depends on whether it is imposed at a level above or below the equilibrium rent. In Figure 7.1, if the rent ceiling is set *above* $550 a month, nothing would change because people are already paying $550 a month.

But a rent ceiling that is set *below* the equilibrium rent has powerful effects on the market outcome. The reason is that the rent ceiling attempts to prevent the rent from rising high enough to regulate the quantities demanded and supplied. The law and the market are in conflict, and one (or both) of them must yield.

FIGURE 7.1
A Housing Market

MyEconLab Animation

The figure shows the demand curve, *D*, and the supply curve, *S*, for rental housing.

1. The market is in equilibrium when the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied.
2. The equilibrium price (rent) is $550 a month.
3. The equilibrium quantity is 4,000 units of housing.

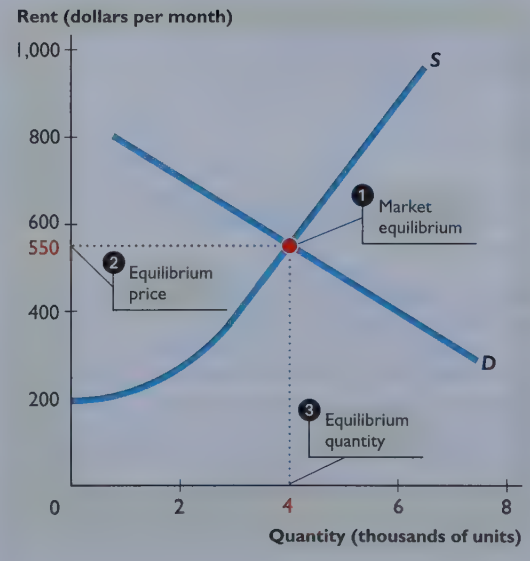


Figure 7.2 shows a rent ceiling that is set below the equilibrium rent at $400 a month. We've shaded the area *above* the rent ceiling because any rent in this region is illegal. The first effect of a rent ceiling is a housing shortage. At a rent of $400 a month, the quantity of housing supplied is 3,000 units and the quantity demanded is 6,000 units. So at $400 a month, there is a shortage of 3,000 units of housing.

But the story does not end here. The 3,000 units of housing that owners are willing to make available must somehow be allocated among people who are seeking 6,000 units. This allocation might be achieved in two ways:

- A black market
- Increased search activity

A Black Market

A **black market** is an illegal market that operates alongside a government-regulated market. A rent ceiling sometimes creates a black market in housing as frustrated renters and landlords try to find ways of raising the rent above the legally imposed ceiling. Landlords want higher rents because they know that renters are willing to pay more for the existing quantity of housing. Renters are willing to pay more to jump to the front of the line.

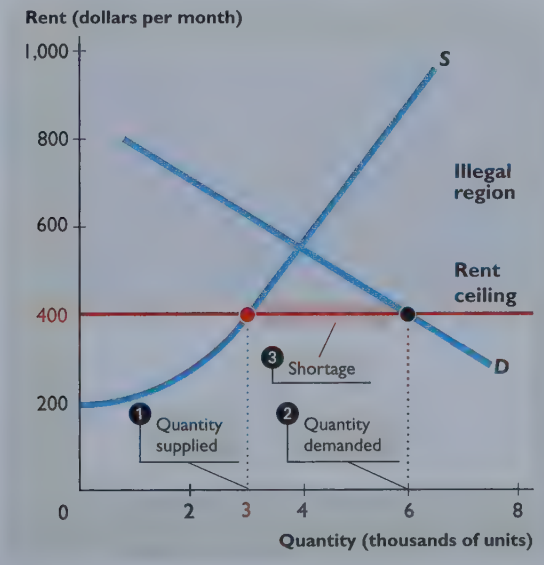
Black market
An illegal market that operates alongside a government-regulated market.

Because raising the rent is illegal, landlords and renters use creative tricks to get around the law. One of these tricks is for a new tenant to pay a high price for worthless fittings—perhaps paying $2,000 for threadbare drapes. Another is for the tenant to pay a high price for new locks and keys—called "key money."

Figure 7.3 shows how high the black market rent might go in Biloxi. With strict enforcement of the rent ceiling, the quantity of housing available is 3,000

FIGURE 7.2
A Rent Ceiling Creates a Shortage

MyEconLab Animation



A rent ceiling is imposed below the equilibrium rent. In this example, the rent ceiling is $400 a month.

1. The quantity of housing supplied decreases to 3,000 units.
2. The quantity of housing demanded increases to 6,000 units.
3. A shortage of 3,000 units arises.

units. But at this quantity, renters are willing to offer as much as $625 a month—the amount determined on the demand curve.

So a small number of landlords illegally offer housing for rents up to $625 a month. The black market rent might be at any level between the rent ceiling of $400 and the maximum that a renter is willing to pay of $625.

Increased Search Activity

Search activity
The time spent looking for someone with whom to do business.

The time spent looking for someone with whom to do business is called **search activity**. We spend some time in search activity almost every time we buy something, and especially when we buy a big item such as a car or a home. When a price ceiling creates a shortage of housing, search activity *increases*. In a rent-controlled housing market, frustrated would-be renters scan the newspapers. Keen apartment seekers race to be first on the scene when news of a possible apartment breaks.

The *opportunity cost* of a good is equal to its price *plus* the value of the search time spent finding the good. So the opportunity cost of housing is equal to the rent plus the value of the search time spent looking for an apartment. Search activity is costly. It uses time and other resources, such as telephones, automobiles, and gasoline that could have been used in other productive ways. In Figure 7.3, to find accommodation at $400 a month, someone who is willing to pay a rent of $625 a month would be willing to spend on search activity an amount that is equivalent to adding $225 a month to the rent ceiling.

A rent ceiling controls the rent portion of the cost of housing but not the search cost. So when the search cost is added to the rent, some people end up paying a higher opportunity cost for housing than they would if there were no rent ceiling.

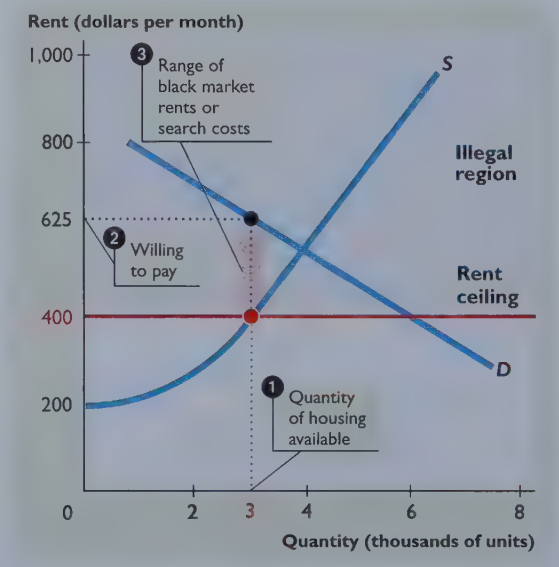
FIGURE 7.3

A Rent Ceiling Creates a Black Market and Housing Search

MyEconLab Animation

With a rent ceiling of $400 a month,

1. 3,000 units of housing are available.
2. Someone is willing to pay $625 a month for the 3,000th unit of housing.
3. Black market rent might be as high as $625 a month or search activity might be equivalent to adding $225 a month to the rent ceiling.



Are Rent Ceilings Efficient?

In a housing market with no rent ceiling, market forces determine the equilibrium rent. The quantity of housing demanded equals the quantity of housing supplied. In this situation, scarce housing resources are allocated efficiently because the marginal cost of housing equals the marginal benefit. Figure 7.4(a) shows this efficient outcome in the Biloxi apartment rental market. In this efficient market, total surplus—the sum of *consumer surplus* (the green area) and *producer surplus* (the blue area)—is maximized at the equilibrium rent and quantity of housing (see Chapter 6, p. 153).

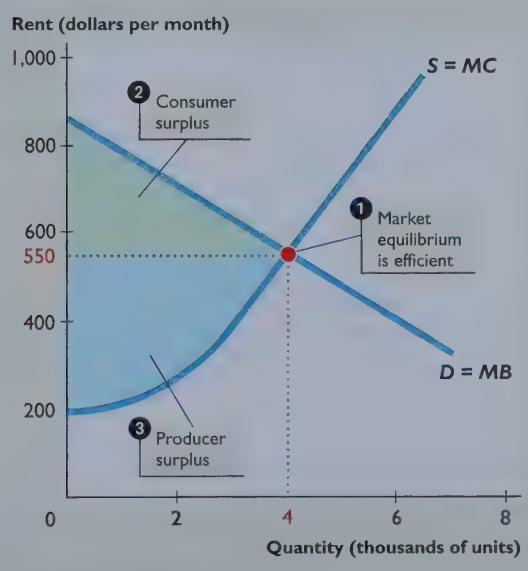
Figure 7.4(b) shows that with a rent ceiling, the outcome is inefficient. Marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost. Producer surplus and consumer surplus shrink, and a deadweight loss (the gray area) arises. This loss is borne by the people who can't find housing and by landlords who can't offer housing at the lower rent ceiling.

But the total loss exceeds the deadweight loss. Resources get used in costly search activity or in evading the law in the black market. The value of these resources might be as large as the red rectangle. There is yet a further loss: the cost of enforcing the rent ceiling law. This loss, which is borne by taxpayers, is not visible in the figure.

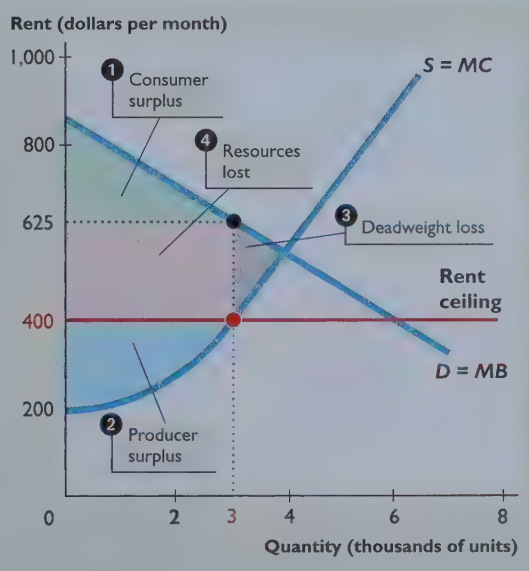
FIGURE 7.4

The Inefficiency of a Rent Ceiling

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Efficient housing market



(b) Inefficient housing market

❶ The market equilibrium is efficient with marginal benefit equal to marginal cost. Total surplus, the sum of ❷ consumer surplus (green area) and ❸ producer surplus (blue area), is maximized.

A rent ceiling is inefficient. ❶ Consumer surplus and ❷ producer surplus shrink, a ❸ deadweight loss arises, and ❹ resources are lost in search activity and evading the rent ceiling law.

With rent ceilings, landlords have no incentive to maintain buildings, and both the quality and quantity of housing supplied decrease.

Although a rent ceiling creates inefficiency, not everyone loses. The people who pay the rent ceiling get an increase in consumer surplus, and landlords who charge a black market rent get an increase in producer surplus.

The costs of a rent ceiling that we've just considered are only the initial costs. With the rent below the market equilibrium rent, landlords have no incentive to maintain their buildings. So over time, both the quality and quantity of housing supplied *decrease* and the loss arising from a rent ceiling increases.

The size of the loss from a rent ceiling depends on the elasticities of supply and demand. If supply is inelastic, a rent ceiling brings a small decrease in the quantity of housing supplied. And if demand is inelastic, a rent ceiling brings a small increase in the quantity of housing demanded. So the more inelastic the supply or the demand, the smaller is the shortage of housing and the smaller is the deadweight loss.

Are Rent Ceilings Fair?

We've seen that rent ceilings prevent scarce resources from being allocated efficiently—resources do not flow to their highest-valued use. But don't they ensure that scarce housing resources are allocated more fairly?

You learned in Chapter 6 (pp. 159–161) that fairness is a complex idea about which there are two broad views: fair *results* versus fair *rules*. Rent controls violate the fair rules view of fairness because they block voluntary exchange. But do they deliver a fair result? Do rent ceilings ensure that scarce housing goes to the poor people whose need is greatest?

Blocking rent adjustments that bring the quantity of housing demanded into equality with the quantity supplied doesn't end scarcity. So when the law prevents the rent from adjusting and blocks the price mechanism from allocating scarce housing, some other allocation mechanism must be used. If that mechanism were one that provided the housing to the poorest, then the allocation might be regarded as fair.

But the mechanisms that get used do not usually achieve such an outcome. First-come, first-served is one allocation mechanism. Discrimination based on race, ethnicity, or sex is another. Discrimination against young newcomers and in favor of old established families is yet another. None of these mechanisms delivers a fair outcome.

Rent ceilings in New York City provide examples of these mechanisms at work. The main beneficiaries of rent ceilings in New York City are families that have lived in the city for a long time—including some rich and famous ones. These families enjoy low rents while newcomers pay high rents for hard-to-find apartments.

If Rent Ceilings Are So Bad, Why Do We Have Them?

The economic case against rent ceilings is now widely accepted, so *new* rent ceiling laws are rare. But when governments try to repeal rent control laws, as the New York City government did in 1999, current renters lobby politicians to maintain the ceilings. Also, people who are prevented from finding housing would be happy if they got lucky and managed to find a rent-controlled apartment. For these reasons, there is plenty of political support for rent ceilings.

Apartment owners who oppose rent ceilings are a minority, so their views are not a powerful influence on politicians. Because more people support rent ceilings than oppose them, politicians are sometimes willing to support them too.

CHECKPOINT 7.1

Explain how a price ceiling works and show how a rent ceiling creates a housing shortage, inefficiency, and unfairness.

MyEconLab

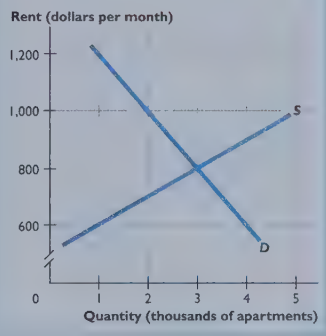
You can work these problems in Study Plan 7.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the rental market for apartments in Corsicana, Texas.

1. What is the rent and how many apartments are rented? If a rent ceiling of $900 a month is set, what is the rent and how many apartments are rented?
2. If the city government imposes a rent ceiling of $600 a month, what is the rent and how many apartments are rented? If a black market develops, how high could the black market rent be? Explain.
3. With a strictly enforced rent ceiling of $600 a month, is the housing market efficient? What is the deadweight loss? Is the housing market fair? Explain.

FIGURE 1



In the News

Rising oil prices worry U.S. finance chiefs

Tupperware's CFO says rising oil prices would cause the company to pay $15 million more for resin, which is based on oil, than it did a year ago. Resin prices are closely tied to the price of oil, which peaked at $114 a barrel in April.

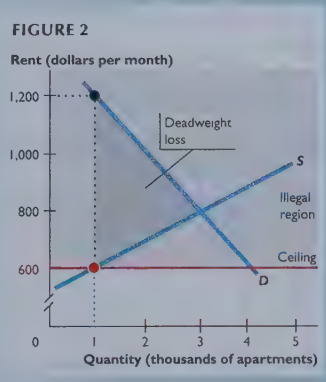
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, June 27, 2011

If the government puts a price cap on resin at today's price ($100 a barrel), explain why a shortage will occur. Which allocation method would most likely be used to distribute resin?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The equilibrium rent is $800 a month, and 3,000 apartments are rented. A rent ceiling of $900 a month is above the equilibrium rent, so the outcome is the market equilibrium rent of $800 a month with 3,000 apartments rented.
2. With the rent ceiling at $600 a month, the number of apartments rented is 1,000 and the rent is $600 a month (Figure 2). In a black market, some people are willing to rent an apartment for more than the rent ceiling. The highest rent that someone would offer is $1,200 a month. This rent equals someone's willingness to pay for the 1,000th apartment (Figure 2).
3. The housing market is not efficient. With 1,000 apartments rented, marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost and a deadweight loss arises (Figure 2). The deadweight loss equals to the area of the gray triangle, which is $(1{,}200 - 600) \times (3{,}000 - 1{,}000) \div 2$. The deadweight loss is $600,000, The allocation of housing is less fair on both views of fairness: It blocks voluntary transactions and does not provide more housing to those most in need.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

Resin is made from oil, so if the price of oil increases, then the cost of making resin increases, and the supply of resin decreases. The equilibrium price of resin rises. The higher equilibrium price will exceed the price cap of $100 a barrel, and there is a shortage of resin. Resin will most likely be allocated by first-come, first-served. Alternatively, the government could ration resin, in which case it would be allocated by command.

7.2 PRICE FLOORS

Price floor
A government regulation that places a *lower* limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded.

A **price floor** is a government regulation that places a *lower* limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded. Trading at a lower price is illegal.

Price floors are used in many markets, but the one that looms largest is the labor market. The price of labor is the wage rate that people earn. Demand and supply in the labor market determine the wage rate and the quantity of labor employed.

Figure 7.5 illustrates the market for fast-food servers in Yuma, Arizona. In this market, the demand for labor curve is *D*. On this demand curve, at a wage rate of $10 an hour, the quantity of fast-food servers demanded is zero. If A&W, Burger King, Taco Bell, McDonald's, Wendy's, and the other fast-food places had to pay servers $10 an hour, they wouldn't hire any. They would replace servers with vending machines! But at wage rates below $10 an hour, they would hire servers. At a wage rate of $5 an hour, firms would hire 5,000 servers.

On the supply side of the market, no one is willing to work for $2 an hour. To attract servers, firms must pay more than $2 an hour.

Equilibrium in this market occurs at a wage rate of $5 an hour with 5,000 people employed as servers.

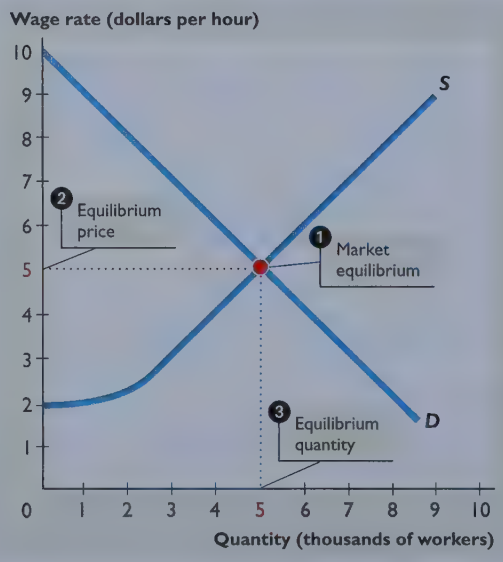
Suppose that the government thinks that no one should have to work for a wage rate as low as $5 an hour and decides that it wants to increase the wage rate. Can the government improve conditions for these workers by passing a minimum wage law? Let's find out.

FIGURE 7.5
A Market for Fast-Food Servers

MyEconLab Animation

The figure shows the demand curve, *D*, and the supply curve, *S*, for fast-food servers.

1. The market is in equilibrium when the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied.
2. The equilibrium price (wage rate) is $5 an hour.
3. The equilibrium quantity is 5,000 servers.



The Minimum Wage

Minimum wage law
A government regulation that makes hiring labor services for less than a specified wage illegal.

A **minimum wage law** is a government regulation that makes hiring labor services for less than a specified wage illegal. Firms are free to pay a wage rate that exceeds the minimum wage but may not pay less than the minimum. A minimum wage is an example of a price floor.

The effect of a price floor depends on whether it is set below or above the equilibrium price. In Figure 7.5, the equilibrium wage rate is $5 an hour, and at this wage rate, firms hire 5,000 workers. If the government introduced a minimum wage below $5 an hour, nothing would change. The reason is that firms are already paying $5 an hour, and because this wage exceeds the minimum wage, the wage rate paid doesn't change. Firms continue to hire 5,000 workers.

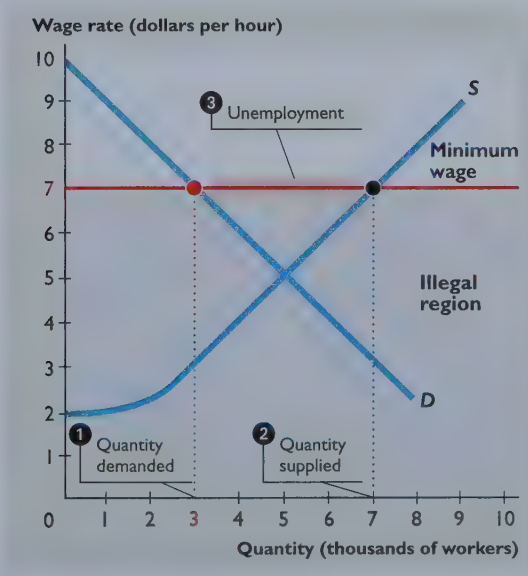
But the aim of a minimum wage is to boost the incomes of low-wage earners. So in the markets for the lowest-paid workers, the minimum wage will exceed the equilibrium wage.

Suppose that the government introduces a minimum wage of $7 an hour. Figure 7.6 shows the effects of this law. Wage rates below $7 an hour are illegal, so we've shaded the illegal region *below* the minimum wage. Firms and workers are no longer permitted to operate at the equilibrium point in this market because it is in the illegal region. Market forces and political forces are in conflict.

The government can set a minimum wage, but it can't tell employers how many workers to hire. If firms must pay a wage rate of $7 an hour, they will hire only 3,000 workers. At the equilibrium wage rate of $5 an hour, firms hired 5,000 workers. So when the minimum wage is introduced, firms lay off 2,000 workers.

FIGURE 7.6
A Minimum Wage Creates Unemployment

MyEconLab Animation



A minimum wage is introduced above the equilibrium wage rate. In this example, the minimum wage rate is $7 an hour.

1. The quantity of labor demanded decreases to 3,000 workers.
2. The quantity of labor supplied increases to 7,000 people.
3. 4,000 people are unemployed.

But at a wage rate of $7 an hour, 2,000 people who didn't want to work for $5 an hour will now try to find work as servers. So at $7 an hour, the quantity supplied is 7,000 people. With 2,000 workers fired and another 2,000 looking for work at the higher wage rate, 4,000 people who would like to work as servers are unemployed.

The 3,000 jobs available must somehow be allocated among the 7,000 people who are willing to work as servers. How is this allocation achieved? The answer is by increased job-search activity and illegal hiring.

Increased Job-Search Activity

Finding a good job takes a great deal of time and other resources. With a minimum wage, more people are looking for jobs than the number of jobs available. Frustrated unemployed people spend time and other resources searching for hard-to-find jobs. In Figure 7.7, to find a job at $7 an hour, someone who is willing to work for $3 an hour (on the supply curve) would be willing to spend $4 an hour (the minimum wage rate of $7 an hour minus $3 an hour) on job-search activity. For a job that might last a year or more, this amount is large.

Illegal Hiring

With more people looking for work than the number of jobs available, some firms and workers might agree to do business at an illegal wage rate below the minimum wage in a black market. An illegal wage rate might be at any level between the minimum wage rate of $7 an hour and the lowest wage rate at which someone is willing to work, $3 an hour.

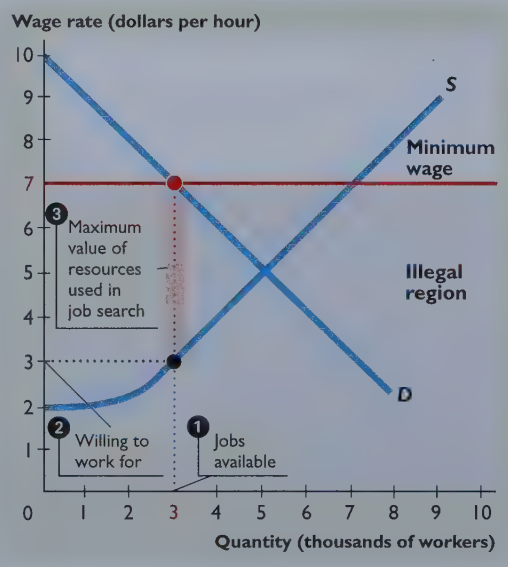
FIGURE 7.7

A Minimum Wage Creates Job Search and Illegal Hiring

MyEconLab Animation

The minimum wage rate is set at $7 an hour:

1. 3,000 jobs are available.
2. The lowest wage rate for which someone is willing to work is $3 an hour. In a black market, illegal wage rates might be as low as $3 an hour.
3. The maximum that might be spent on job search is an amount equivalent to $4 an hour—the $7 they would receive if they found a job minus the $3 they are willing to work for.



EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

The Federal Minimum Wage

The *Fair Labor Standards Act* sets the federal minimum wage, but most states set their own minimum at a higher level than the federal minimum.

The figure shows the minimum wage since 1991 in terms of what it would buy at 2011 prices.

The minimum wage creates unemployment, but how much? Between 2007 and 2009, when the minimum wage increased by 38 percent (see figure), the employment of 16 to 19 year olds fell by 28 percent. Part of that increase most likely was caused by the rise in the minimum wage.

Most economists believe that a 10 percent rise in the minimum wage decreases teenage employment by between 1 and 3 percent.

David Card of the University of California at Berkeley and Alan Krueger of Princeton University have challenged this consensus view. They say that a rise in the minimum wage in California, New Jersey, and Texas *increased* the employment rate of low-income workers. They suggest three reasons why a rise in the wage rate might increase employment:

(1) Workers become more conscientious and productive.

(2) Workers are less likely to quit, so costly labor turnover is reduced.

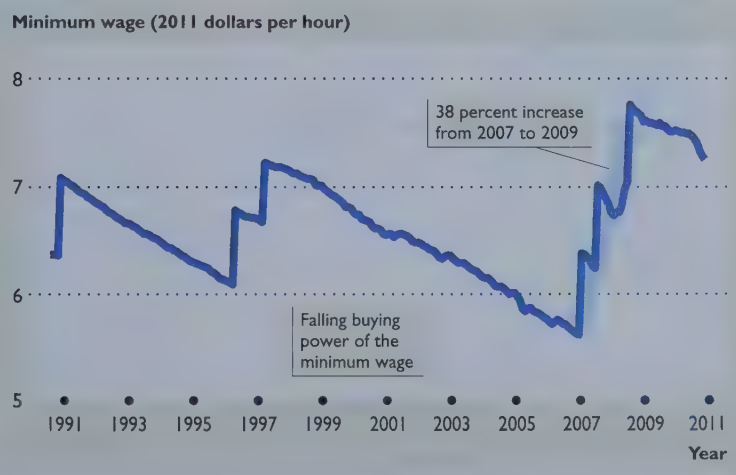
(3) Managers make a firm's operations more efficient.

Most economists are skeptical about these ideas and say that if higher wages make workers more productive and reduce labor turnover, firms will freely pay workers a higher wage. They also argue that there are other explanations for the employment increase that Card and Krueger found.

Daniel Hamermesh of the University of Texas at Austin says that Card and Krueger got the timing wrong. Firms anticipated the wage rise and so cut employment before it occurred. Looking at employment changes after the minimum wage increased missed its main effect. Finis Welch of Texas A&M University and Kevin Murphy of the University of Chicago say that the employment effects that Card and Krueger found are caused by regional differences in economic growth, not by changes in the minimum wage.

Pizza delivery people gain from the minimum wage.

Also, looking only at employment misses the supply-side effect of the minimum wage. It brings an increase in the number of people who drop out of high school to look for work.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

Is the Minimum Wage Efficient?

The efficient allocation of a factor of production is similar to that of a good or service, which you studied in Chapter 6. The demand for labor tells us about the marginal benefit of labor to the firms that hire it. Firms benefit because the labor they hire produces the goods or services that they sell. Firms are willing to pay a wage rate equal to the benefit they receive from an additional hour of labor. In Figure 7.8(a), the demand curve for labor tells us the marginal benefit that the firms in Yuma receive from hiring fast-food servers. The marginal benefit minus the wage rate is a surplus for the firms.

The supply of labor tells us about the marginal cost of working. To work, people must forgo leisure or working in the home, activities that they value. The wage rate received minus the marginal cost of working is a surplus for workers.

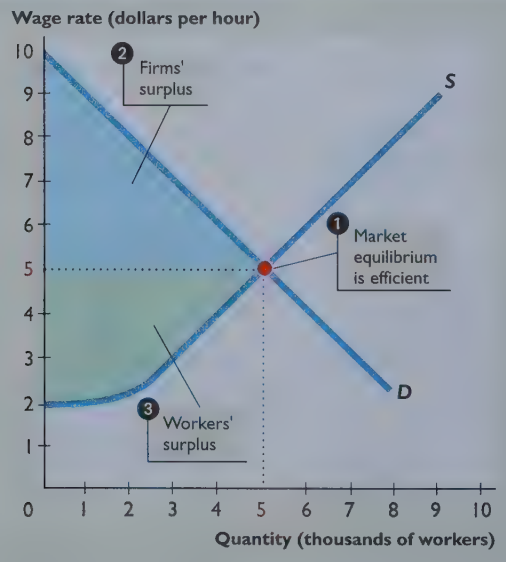
An efficient allocation of labor occurs when the marginal benefit to firms equals the marginal cost borne by workers. Such an allocation occurs in the labor market in Figure 7.8(a). Firms enjoy a surplus (the blue area), and workers enjoy a surplus (the green area). The sum of these surpluses is maximized.

Figure 7.8(b) shows the loss from a minimum wage. With a minimum wage of $7 an hour, 3,000 workers are hired. Marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost. The firms' surplus and workers' surplus shrink, and a deadweight loss (the gray area) arises. This loss falls on the firms that cut back employment and the people who can't find jobs at the higher wage rate.

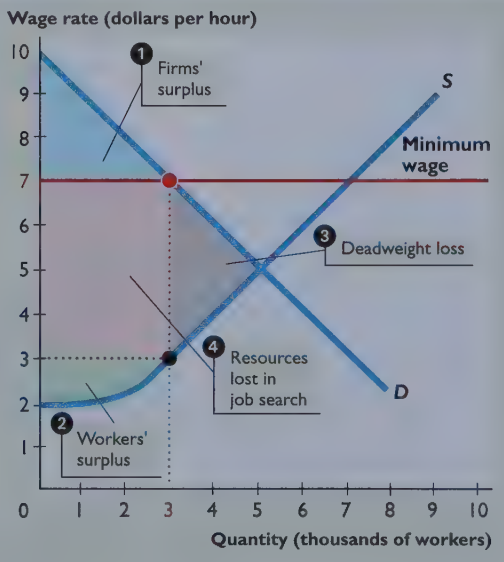
FIGURE 7.8

The Inefficiency of the Minimum Wage

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Efficient labor market



(b) Inefficient labor market

❶ The market equilibrium is efficient with marginal benefit equal to marginal cost. The sum of ❷ the firms' surplus (blue area) and ❸ workers' surplus (green area) is maximized.

A minimum wage is inefficient. ❶ The firms' surplus and ❷ workers' surplus shrink, a ❸ deadweight loss arises, and ❹ resources are lost in job search.

But the total loss exceeds the deadweight loss. Resources get used in costly job-search activity as each unemployed person keeps looking for a job—writing letters, making phone calls, going to interviews, and so on. The value of these resources might be as large as the red rectangle.

Is the Minimum Wage Fair?

The minimum wage is unfair on both views of fairness: It delivers an unfair *result* and imposes unfair *rules*. The *result* is unfair because only those people who find jobs benefit. The unemployed end up worse off than they would be with no minimum wage. And those who get jobs were probably not the least well off. Personal characteristics, which means discrimination, allocates jobs and is another source of unfairness. The minimum wage imposes unfair *rules* because it blocks voluntary exchange. Firms are willing to hire more labor and people are willing to work more, but they are not permitted by the minimum wage law to do so.

If the Minimum Wage Is So Bad, Why Do We Have It?

Although the minimum wage is inefficient, not everyone loses from it. The people who find jobs at the minimum wage rate are better off. Other supporters of the minimum wage believe that the elasticities of demand and supply in the labor market are low, so not much unemployment results. Labor unions support the minimum wage because it puts upward pressure on all wage rates, including those of union workers. Nonunion labor is a substitute for union labor, so when the minimum wage rises, the demand for union labor increases.

EYE on PRICE REGULATION

Can the President Repeal the Laws of Supply and Demand?

The President has a powerful pen, but one that holds no magical powers. When the President signs a Bill or an Executive Order to bring in a new law or regulation, the outcome is not always exactly what was intended. A mismatch between intention and outcome is almost inevitable when a law or regulation seeks to block the laws of supply and demand.

You've seen the problems created by the federal minimum wage law, which leaves teenagers without jobs. There would also be problems at the other extreme of the labor market if the law tried to place a cap on executive pay.

In the spring of 2009, the "Cap Executive Officer Pay Act of 2009" was introduced in the Senate. The goal of the Act was to limit the compensation of executives and directors of firms receiving government handouts. The Act defined compensation broadly as all forms of cash receipts, property, and any perks. The cap envisaged was an annual compensation no greater than that of the President of the United States.

This Act never made it to the President's desk for his signature, but you can see some of the problems that would have risen if it had. Setting aside the difficult task of determining the President's compensation (does it include the use of the White House and Air Force One?), placing a cap on executive pay would work like putting a ceiling on home rents that you've studied in this chapter. The quantity of executive services supplied would decrease and the most talented executives would seek jobs with the unregulated employers. The firms in the most difficulty—those receiving government funding—would face the added challenge of recruiting and keeping competent executives and directors. The deadweight loss from this action would be large. It is fortunate that the idea didn't have legs!

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 7.2 and get instant feedback.

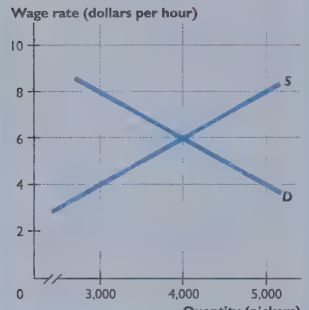
CHECKPOINT 7.2

Explain how a price floor works and show how the minimum wage creates unemployment, inefficiency, and unfairness.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the market for tomato pickers in southern California.

FIGURE 1



1. What is the equilibrium wage rate and how many tomato pickers are employed? If California introduces a minimum wage of $4 an hour, how many tomato pickers are employed and how many are unemployed?
2. If California introduces a minimum wage of $8 an hour, how many tomato pickers are employed and how many are unemployed? What is the lowest wage that some workers might be able to earn if a black market develops?
3. Is the minimum wage of $8 an hour efficient? Who gains and who loses from the minimum wage of $8 an hour? Is it fair?

In the News

Hong Kong introduces a minimum wage

Hong Kong's first minimum wage is set at $HK28 an hour—$HK5 less than labor unions wanted, but $HK5 more than the employers had offered. About 315,000 people will be affected by the new wage.

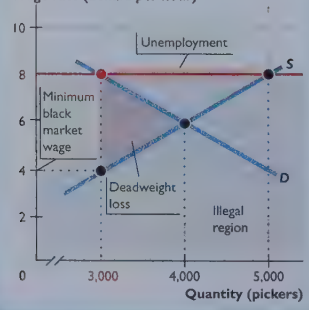
Source: *The Economist*, January 11, 2011

What will be the effects of the minimum wage if the employers' offer is equal to the equilibrium wage? What will be the effects of the minimum wage if the labor unions' demand is equal to the equilibrium wage?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The equilibrium wage rate is $6 an hour, and 4,000 pickers are employed. The minimum wage of $4 an hour is below the equilibrium wage rate, so 4,000 tomato pickers are employed and no worker is unemployed.
2. The minimum wage of $8 an hour is above the equilibrium wage rate, so 3,000 pickers are employed (determined by the demand) and 5,000 people would like to work as pickers for $8 an hour (determined by the supply), so 2,000 are unemployed (Figure 2). If a black market developed, the lowest wage that someone might be able to earn would be $4 an hour (Figure 2).
3. The minimum wage of $8 an hour is not efficient because it creates a deadweight loss—the marginal benefit to growers exceeds the marginal cost to workers. Tomato pickers who find work at $8 an hour gain. Tomato growers and unemployed pickers lose. The minimum wage is unfair on both the fair rules and fair results views of fairness.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

If the employers' offer of $HK23 an hour is the equilibrium wage rate, then the minimum wage exceeds the equilibrium wage and some of the 315,000 workers will become unemployed. If the union's demand of $HK33 an hour is the equilibrium wage rate, then the minimum wage is below the equilibrium wage and the minimum wage has no effect on the quantity of labor employed.

7.3 PRICE SUPPORTS IN AGRICULTURE

"The nation has got to eat," declared President George W. Bush when he asked Congress to spend $170 billion to support U.S. farmers. The United States is not alone among the advanced economies in spending billions of dollars each year on farm support. Governments in all the advanced economies do it, and none more than those of the European Union and Japan.

How Governments Intervene in Markets for Farm Products

The methods that governments use to support farms vary, but they almost always involve three elements:

- Isolate the domestic market from global competition
- Introduce a price floor
- Pay farmers a subsidy

Isolate the Domestic Market

A government can't regulate a market price without first isolating the domestic market from global competition. If the cost of production in the rest of the world is lower than that in the domestic economy and if foreign producers are free to sell in the domestic market, the forces of demand and supply drive the price down and swamp any efforts by the government to influence the price.

To isolate the domestic market, the government restricts imports from the rest of the world.

Introduce a Price Floor

A price floor in an agricultural market is called a **price support**, because the floor is maintained by a government guarantee to buy any surplus output at that price. You saw that a price floor in the labor market—a minimum wage—creates a surplus of labor that shows up as unemployment. A price support in an agricultural market also generates a surplus. At the support price, the quantity supplied exceeds the quantity demanded. What happens to the surplus makes the effects of a price support different from those of a minimum wage. The government buys the surplus.

Price support
A price floor in an agricultural market maintained by a government guarantee to buy any surplus output at that price.

Pay Farmers a Subsidy

A **subsidy** is a payment by the government to a producer to cover part of the cost of production. When the government buys the surplus produced by farmers, it provides them with a subsidy. Without the subsidy, farmers could not cover their costs because they would not be able to sell the surplus.

Let's see how a price support works.

Subsidy
A payment by the government to a producer to cover part of the cost of production.

Price Support: An Illustration

To see the effects of a price support, we'll look at the market for sugar beets. Both the United States and the European Union have price supports for sugar beets.

Figure 7.9 shows the market. This market is isolated from rest-of-world influences. The demand curve, *D*, tells us the quantities demanded at each price in the domestic economy only. And the supply curve, *S*, tells us the quantity supplied at each price by domestic farmers.

Free Market Reference Point

With no price support, the equilibrium price is $25 a ton and the equilibrium quantity is 25 million tons a year. The market is efficient only if the price in the rest of the world is also $25 a ton. If the price in the rest of the world is less than $25 a ton, it is efficient for the domestic farmers to produce less and for some sugar beets to be imported at the lower price (lower opportunity cost) available in the rest of the world. But if the price in the rest of the world exceeds $25 a ton, it is efficient for domestic farmers to increase production and export some sugar beets.

Price Support and Subsidy

Suppose the government introduces a price support and sets the support price at $35 a ton. To make the price support work, the government agrees to pay farmers $35 for every ton of sugar beets they produce and can't sell in the market.

The farmers produce the quantity shown by the market supply curve. At a price of $35 a ton, the quantity supplied is 30 million tons a year, so production increases to this amount.

Domestic users of sugar beets cut back their purchases. At $35 a ton, the quantity demanded is 20 million tons a year, and purchases decrease to this amount.

Because farmers produce a greater quantity than domestic users are willing to buy, something must be done with the surplus. If the farmers just dumped the surplus on the market, you can see what would happen. The price would fall to that at which consumers are willing to pay for the quantity produced.

To make the price support work, the government buys the surplus. In this example, the government buys 10 million tons for $35 a ton and provides a subsidy to the farmers of $350 million.

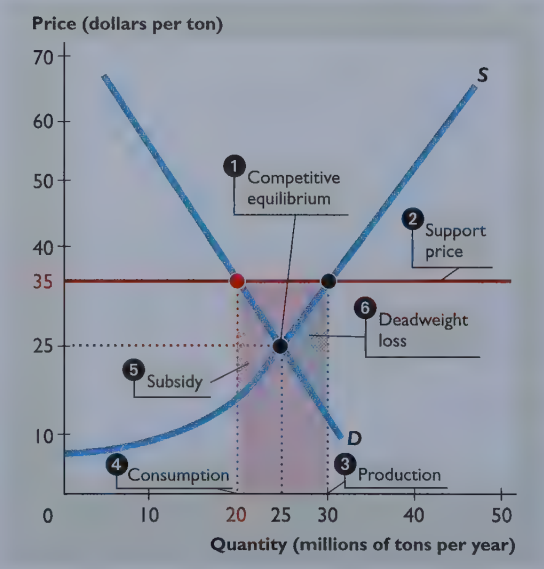
FIGURE 7.9

The Domestic Market for Sugar Beets

MyEconLab Animation

The market for sugar beets is isolated from global competition.

1. With no intervention, the competitive equilibrium price is $25 a ton and the equilibrium quantity is 25 million tons a year.
2. The government intervenes in this market and sets a support price at $35 a ton.
3. The quantity produced increases to 30 million tons a year.
4. The quantity bought by domestic users decreases to 20 million tons a year.
5. The government buys the surplus of 10 million tons a year and pays farmers a subsidy of $350 million.
6. A deadweight loss arises.



The price support increases farmers' total revenue. Without a subsidy, farmers would receive a total revenue of $625 million ($25 a ton multiplied by 25 million tons). With a subsidy, they receive a total revenue of $1,050 million ($35 a ton multiplied by 30 million tons).

The price support is inefficient because it creates a deadweight loss. Farmers gain but consumers, who are also the tax-payers who end up paying the subsidy, lose. And consumers' losses exceed the farmers' gains by the amount of the deadweight loss.

Effects on the Rest of the World

The rest of the world receives a double-whammy from price supports. First, import restrictions in advanced economies deny developing economies access to the food markets of the advanced economies. The result is lower prices and smaller farm production in the developing economies.

Second, the surplus produced in the advanced economies gets sold in the rest of the world. Both the price and the quantity produced in the rest of the world are depressed even further.

The subsidies received by U.S. farmers are paid not only by U.S. taxpayers and consumers but also by poor farmers in the developing economies.

We explore global markets in action in Chapter 9. There you will see other ways in which intervention in markets brings inefficiencies and redistributes the gains from trade.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Price Ceilings and Price Floors

Price ceilings and price floors operate in many of the markets in which you trade, and they require you to take a stand as a citizen and voter.

Unless you live in New York City, you're not likely to live in a rent controlled house or apartment. Because economists have explained the unwanted effects of rent ceilings that you've learned about in this chapter, this type of market intervention is now rare.

But you run into a price ceiling almost every time you use a freeway. The zero price for using a freeway is a type of price ceiling. The next time you're stuck in traffic and moving at a crawl, think about how a free market in road use would cut the congestion and allow you to zip along.

In Singapore, a transponder on your dashboard would be clocking up the dollars and cents as you drive around the city. The price varies with the time of day, the traffic density, and where in the city you are. As a result, you would never be stuck in slow-moving traffic.

You encounter a price floor in the labor market. Have you wanted a job and been willing and available to work, but unable to get hired? Would you have taken a job for a slightly lower wage if one had been available?

You also encounter price floors (price supports) in markets for food. You pay more for tomatoes, sugar, oranges, and many other food items than the minimum cost of producing them.

Develop your own policy position on price floors and price ceilings.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 7.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 7.3

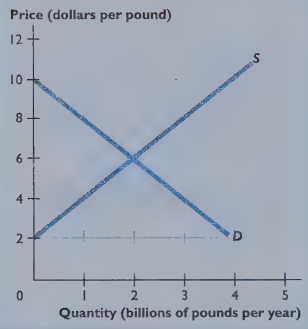
Explain how a price support in the market for an agricultural product creates a surplus, inefficiency, and unfairness.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the market for tomatoes.

1. What are the equilibrium price and quantity of tomatoes? Is the market for tomatoes efficient?
2. If the government introduces a price support at $8 per pound, what is the quantity of tomatoes produced, the quantity demanded, and the subsidy received by tomato farmers?
3. With a price support set at $8 per pound, is the market for tomatoes efficient? Who gains and who loses from the price support? What is the deadweight loss? Could the price support be regarded as being fair?

FIGURE 1



In the News

French farmers man the blockades in Brussels

Farmers want the dairy industry to guarantee a minimum (powdered) milk price of 300 euros a ton—against 210 euros a ton this month. Max Bottier, a dairy farmer in Normandy, said that he needs 300 euros a ton to break even.

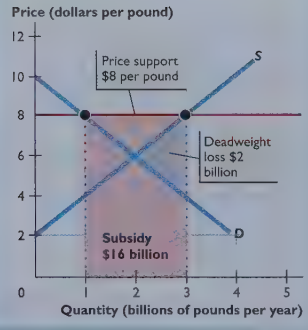
Source: *The Times*, May 26, 2009

If a support price for milk is set at 300 euros a ton, how will the quantity of milk produced and the quantity bought by consumers change? Who buys the surplus? Will the European milk market be more or less efficient than it is today?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The equilibrium price is $6 a pound; the equilibrium quantity is 2 billion pounds. The market is efficient—marginal benefit equals marginal cost.
2. At a support price of $8 a pound, 3 billion pounds are produced and 1 billion pounds are demanded, so there is a surplus of 2 billion pounds (Figure 2). The subsidy is $8 per pound on 2 billion pounds, which is $16 billion.
3. The market is not efficient because at the quantity produced, the marginal benefit (on the demand curve) is less than the marginal cost (on the supply curve). Farmers gain. They produce more and receive a higher price on what they sell in the market as well as the government subsidy. Consumers/taxpayers lose. They pay more for tomatoes and pay taxes to fund the subsidy. The deadweight loss is $2 billion (the area of the gray triangle). The outcome is unfair on both views of fairness unless farmers are poorer than consumers, in which case it might be fair to boost farmers' incomes.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

The market price of powdered milk is 210 euros a ton. A support price of 300 euros a ton will increase the quantity supplied, decrease the quantity demanded, and create a surplus of milk. To maintain the price at 300 euros a ton, the government will have to buy the surplus at the support price. The market will be less efficient because it creates a deadweight loss.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain how a price ceiling works and show how a rent ceiling creates a housing shortage, inefficiency, and unfairness.

- A price ceiling set above the equilibrium price has no effects.
- A price ceiling set below the equilibrium price creates a shortage and increased search activity or a black market.
- A price ceiling is inefficient and unfair.
- A rent ceiling is an example of a price ceiling.

2 Explain how a price floor works and show how the minimum wage creates unemployment, inefficiency, and unfairness.

- A price floor set below the equilibrium price has no effects.
- A price floor set above the equilibrium price creates a surplus and increased search activity or illegal trading.
- A price floor is inefficient and unfair.
- A minimum wage is an example of a price floor.

3 Explain how a price support in the market for an agricultural product creates a surplus, inefficiency, and unfairness.

- A price support increases the quantity produced, decreases the quantity consumed, and creates a surplus.
- To maintain the support price, the government buys the surplus and subsidizes the producer.
- A price support benefits the producer but costs the consumer/taxpayer more than the producer gains—it creates a deadweight loss.
- A price support is inefficient and is usually unfair.

Key Terms

Black market, 169
Minimum wage law, 175
Price cap, 168
Price ceiling, 168
Price floor, 174
Price support, 181
Rent ceiling, 168
Search activity, 170
Subsidy, 181

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 7 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Rent (dollars per month)	Quantity demanded (rooms)	Quantity supplied (rooms)
500	2,500	2,000
550	2,250	2,000
600	2,000	2,000
650	1,750	2,000
700	1,500	2,000
750	1,250	2,000

TABLE 2

Wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity demanded (student workers)	Quantity supplied (student workers)
10.00	600	300
10.50	500	350
11.00	400	400
11.50	300	450
12.00	200	500
12.50	100	550

TABLE 3

Price (dollars per pound)	Quantity demanded (pounds per week)	Quantity supplied (pounds per week)
1.00	5,000	2,000
2.00	4,500	2,500
3.00	4,000	3,000
4.00	3,500	3,500
5.00	3,000	4,000
6.00	2,500	4,500

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Table 1 shows the demand and supply schedules for on-campus housing. Use Table 1 to work Problems **1** to **3**.

1. If the college puts a rent ceiling on rooms of $650 a month, what is the rent, how many rooms are rented, and is the on-campus housing market efficient?
2. If the college puts a strictly enforced rent ceiling on rooms of $550 a month, what is the rent, how many rooms are rented, and is the on-campus housing market efficient? Explain why or why not.
3. Suppose that with a strictly enforced rent ceiling on rooms of $550 a month, a black market develops. How high could the black market rent be and would the on-campus housing market be fair? Explain your answer.

Use Table 2, which shows the demand and supply schedules for student workers at on-campus venues, to work Problems **4** to **6**.

4. If the college introduces a minimum wage of $10.50 an hour, how many students are employed at on-campus venues and how many are unemployed?
5. If the college introduces a strictly enforced minimum wage of $11.50 an hour, how many students are employed, how many are unemployed, and what is the lowest wage at which some students would be willing to work?
6. If the college introduces a strictly enforced minimum wage of $11.50 an hour, who gains and who loses from the minimum wage, and is the campus labor market efficient or fair?

Use Table 3, which shows the demand and supply schedules for mushrooms, to work Problems **7** and **8**.

7. Suppose that the government introduces a price support for mushrooms of $4 per pound. What are the quantity of mushrooms produced, the surplus of mushrooms, and the deadweight loss created?
8. Suppose that the government introduces a price support for mushrooms of $6 per pound. Who gains and who loses? What are the quantity of mushrooms produced, the surplus of mushrooms, and the deadweight loss?

Use the following news clip to work Problems **9** and **10**.

Coal shortage at China plants

The government of China has set price controls on coal and gasoline in an attempt to shield poor urban families and farmers from rising world energy prices. Chinese power plants have run short of coal, sales of luxury, gas-guzzling cars have increased, and gasoline consumption has risen. Oil refiners are incurring losses and plan to cut production.

Source: CNN, May 20, 2008

9. Are China's price controls price floors or price ceilings? Draw a graph to illustrate the shortages of coal and gasoline created by the price controls.
10. Explain how China's price controls have changed consumer surplus, producer surplus, total surplus, and the deadweight loss in the markets for coal and gasoline. Draw a graph to illustrate your answer.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Suppose that Congress caps executive pay at a level below the equilibrium.
   - Explain how the quantity of executives demanded, the quantity supplied, and executive pay will change, and explain why the outcome is inefficient.
   - Draw a graph of the market for corporate executives. On your graph, show the market equilibrium, the pay cap, the quantity of executives supplied and the quantity demanded at the pay cap, and the deadweight loss created. Also show the highest pay that an executive might be offered in a black market.

Use the following information to work Problems 2 to 4.

Concerned about the political fallout from rising gas prices, suppose that the U.S. government imposes a price ceiling of $3.00 a gallon on gasoline.

2. Explain how the market for gasoline would react to this price ceiling if the oil-producing nations increased production and drove the equilibrium price of gasoline to $2.50 a gallon. Would the U.S. gasoline market be efficient?
3. Explain how the market for gasoline would react to this price ceiling if a global shortage of oil sent the equilibrium price of gasoline to $3.50 a gallon. Would the U.S. gasoline market be efficient?
4. Under what conditions would the price ceiling create lines at the pumps?
5. Suppose the government introduced a ceiling on lawyers' fees. How would the amount of work done by lawyers, the consumer surplus of people who hire lawyers, and the producer surplus of law firms change? Would this fee ceiling result in an efficient and fair use of resources? Why or why not?

Use the following information to work Problems 6 and 7.

Australian unions lobbying for $21 wage rise for lowest paid

Australia's Fair Trade Commission (FTC) sets the minimum wage for the year. In 2008, the minimum wage was set at $544 a week. In the current negotiations, unions are lobbying for a $21 a week rise and businesses for a $8 a week rise.

Source: Bloomberg, March 23, 2009

Suppose that in 2009 the equilibrium wage turns out to be $560 a week.

6. If the FTC raises the minimum wage by $8 a week, what wage per week will low-skilled workers be paid? Will the outcome be efficient?
7. If the FTC raises the minimum wage by $21 a week, what wage per week will low-skilled workers be paid? Will the outcome be efficient?

Use the following information to work Problems 8 and 9.

Crop prices erode farm subsidy program

High corn and soybean prices mean farmers are making the most money in their lives. The reason: Grain prices are far too high to trigger payouts under the U.S. primary farm-subsidy program's "price support" formula. The market has done what Congress couldn't do and that is "slash farm subsidies."

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, July 25, 2011

8. Draw a graph to illustrate the soybean market when the soybean price was low. Show the quantity of soybeans produced, the subsidy farmers received, and the deadweight loss created.
9. In the market for corn with a price support, explain why the corn price has risen and ended up being too high to "trigger payouts."

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 7 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A rent ceiling creates a _____ of housing if it _____ the equilibrium rent.
   A. surplus; is less than
   B. shortage; is less than
   C. surplus; exceeds
   D. shortage; exceeds

2. A price ceiling imposed below the equilibrium price _____.
   A. creates a black market in which the price might equal or exceed the equilibrium price
   B. creates a black market in which the price equals the price ceiling
   C. leads to increased search activity, which reduces the shortage of the good
   D. increases the demand for the good, which makes the shortage even larger

3. A price ceiling is _____ if it is set _____ the market equilibrium price.
   A. efficient and fair; below
   B. unfair but efficient; equal to
   C. efficient and unfair; above
   D. inefficient and unfair; below

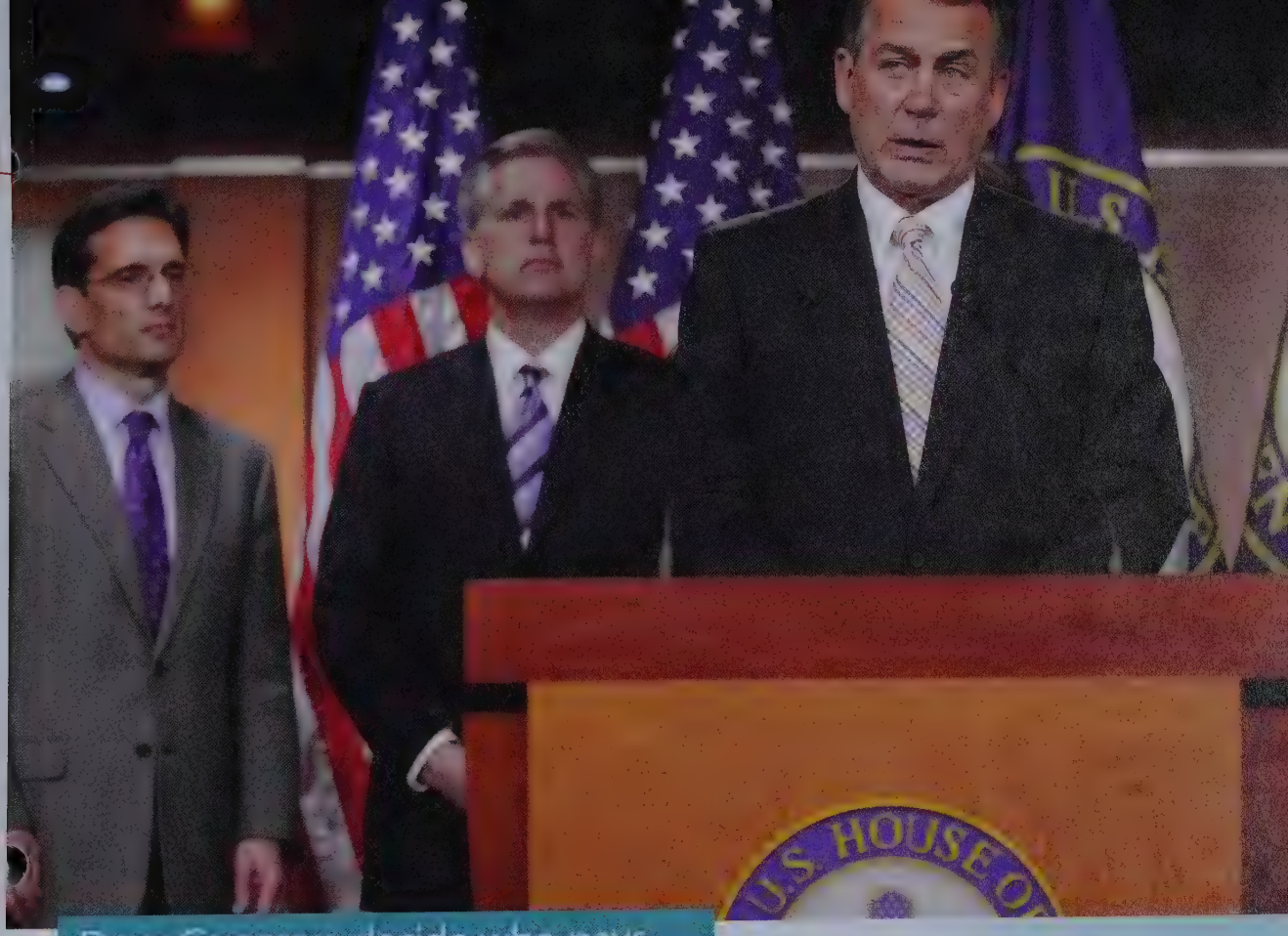
4. A price floor influences the outcome of a market if it is _____.
   A. set below the equilibrium price
   B. set above the equilibrium price
   C. an incentive for buyers to increase demand for the good
   D. an incentive for sellers to decrease supply of the good

5. A minimum wage set above the market equilibrium wage rate _____.
   A. increases both employment and the quantity of labor supplied
   B. decreases unemployment and raises the wage rate of those employed
   C. raises the wage rate of those employed and increases the supply of jobs
   D. increases unemployment and decreases employment

6. A minimum wage is _____.
   A. efficient if the wage paid rises and more people look for jobs
   B. inefficient if workers' surplus decreases and firms' surplus increases
   C. inefficient if job search increases and total surplus decreases
   D. efficient if workers' surplus increases and firms' surplus decreases

7. A support price set above the equilibrium price _____.
   A. creates a shortage, increases farmers' total revenue, and is efficient
   B. creates a surplus, which the government buys and dumps on the rest of the world to keep the U.S. market price equal to the price support
   C. is inefficient because farmers' marginal cost exceeds U.S. consumers' marginal benefit
   D. is efficient because farmers' marginal cost equals U.S. consumers' marginal benefit

8. Choose the best statement.
   A. A subsidy to peanut growers lowers peanut growers' costs, lowers the market price of peanuts, and increases the demand for peanuts.
   B. A price support for peanut growers is a guaranteed price for peanuts, which increases the quantity of peanuts produced.
   C. A price support and a subsidy to peanut growers will make the peanut market more efficient if the support price is below the market price.
   D. For a support price set above the equilibrium price to increase peanut growers' incomes, they must also receive a subsidy.



Does Congress decide who pays the taxes?

8

Taxes

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain how taxes change prices and quantities, are shared by buyers and sellers, and create inefficiency.
2. Explain how income taxes and Social Security taxes change wage rates and employment, are shared by employers and workers, and create inefficiency.
3. Review ideas about the fairness of the tax system.

8.1 TAXES ON BUYERS AND SELLERS

Almost every time you buy something—a late-night order of chow mein, a plane ticket, a tank of gasoline—you pay a tax. On some items, you pay a sales tax that is added to the advertised price. On other items, you pay an excise tax—often at a high rate like the tax on gasoline—that is included in the advertised price.

But do you really pay these taxes? When a tax is added to the advertised price, isn't it obvious that *you* pay the tax? Isn't the price higher than it otherwise would be by an amount equal to the tax?

What about a tax that is buried in the price, such as that on gasoline? Who pays that tax? Does the seller just pass on the full amount of the tax to you, the buyer? Or does the seller pay the tax by taking a lower price and leaving the price you pay unchanged?

To answer these questions, let's suppose that TIFS, the Tax Illegal File Sharing lobby, has persuaded the government to collect a $10 tax on every new MP3 player and to use the tax revenue to compensate artists. But an argument is raging between those who claim that the buyer benefits from using the MP3 player and should pay the tax and those who claim that the seller profits and should pay the tax.

Does "tax free" really mean that the seller pays the tax?

Tax Incidence

Tax incidence
The division of the burden of a tax between the buyer and the seller.

Tax incidence is the division of the burden of a tax between the buyer and the seller. We're going to find the incidence of a $10 tax on MP3 players with two different taxes: a tax on the buyer and a tax on the seller.

Figure 8.1 shows the market for MP3 players. With no tax, the equilibrium price is $100 and the equilibrium quantity is 5,000 players a week.

When a good is taxed, it has two prices: a price that excludes the tax and a price that includes the tax. Buyers respond only to the price that includes the tax, because that is the price they pay. Sellers respond only to the price that excludes the tax, because that is the price they receive. The tax is like a wedge between these two prices.

Figure 8.1(a) shows what happens if the government taxes the buyer. The tax doesn't change the buyer's willingness and ability to pay. The demand curve, D, tells us the *total* amount that buyers are willing and able to pay. Because buyers must pay $10 to the government on each item bought, the red curve $D - tax$ tells us what the buyers are willing to pay to the sellers. The red curve, $D - tax$, lies $10 *below* the blue demand curve.

Market equilibrium occurs where the red $D - tax$ curve intersects the supply curve, S. The buyer pays the equilibrium net-of-tax price $95 plus the $10 tax: $105. The seller receives the net-of-tax price $95. The government collects a tax revenue of $10 a player on 2,000 players, or $20,000 (shown by the purple rectangle).

Figure 8.1(b) shows what happens if the government taxes the seller. The tax acts like an increase in the suppliers' cost, so supply decreases and the supply curve shifts to the red curve labeled $S + tax$. This curve tells us what sellers are willing to accept, given that they must pay the government $10 on each item sold. The red curve, $S + tax$, lies $10 *above* the blue supply curve.

Market equilibrium occurs where the red $S + tax$ curve intersects the demand curve, D. The buyer pays the equilibrium price $105. The seller receives the net-of-tax price $95. The government collects a tax revenue of $20,000.

In both cases, the buyer and the seller split the $10 tax and pay $5 each.

FIGURE 8.1

A Tax on MP3 Players

MyEconLab Animation

1. In both parts of the figure, with no tax, the price of an MP3 player is $100 and 5,000 players a week are bought.
2. In part (a), a $10 tax on buyers of MP3 players shifts the demand curve down to $D - tax$ and in part (b), a $10 tax on sellers of MP3 players shifts the supply curve up to $S + tax$.

In both parts of the figure:

3. The price paid by the buyer rises to $105—an increase of $5;
4. The price received by the seller falls to $95—a decrease of $5;
5. The quantity decreases to 2,000 players a week; and
6. The government collects tax revenue of $20,000 a week—the purple rectangle.

In both cases, the burden of the tax is split equally between the buyer and the seller—each pays $5 per player.

You can now see that the argument about making the buyer pay or the seller pay is futile. The buyer pays the same price, the seller receives the same price, and the government receives the same tax revenue on the same quantity regardless of whether the government taxes the buyer or the seller.

In this example, the buyer and the seller share the burden of the tax equally. But in most cases, the burden will be shared unequally and might even fall entirely on one side of the market. We'll explore what determines the incidence of a tax, but first, let's see how a tax creates inefficiency.

Taxes and Efficiency

You've seen that resources are used efficiently when marginal benefit equals marginal cost. You've also seen that a tax places a wedge between the price the buyer pays and the price the seller receives. But the buyer's price equals marginal benefit and the seller's price equals marginal cost. So a tax puts a wedge between marginal benefit and marginal cost. The equilibrium quantity is less than the efficient quantity, and a deadweight loss arises.

Figure 8.2 shows the inefficiency of a tax. We'll assume that the government taxes the seller. In part (a), with no tax, marginal benefit equals marginal cost and the market is efficient. In part (b), with a tax, marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost. Consumer surplus and producer surplus shrink. Part of each surplus goes to the government as tax revenue—the purple area—and part of each surplus becomes a deadweight loss—the gray area.

Excess burden
The amount by which the burden of a tax exceeds the tax revenue received by the government—the deadweight loss from a tax.

Because a tax creates a deadweight loss, the burden of the tax exceeds the tax revenue. To remind us of this fact, we call the deadweight loss that arises from a tax the **excess burden** of the tax. But because the government uses the tax revenue to provide goods and services that people value, only the excess burden measures the inefficiency of the tax.

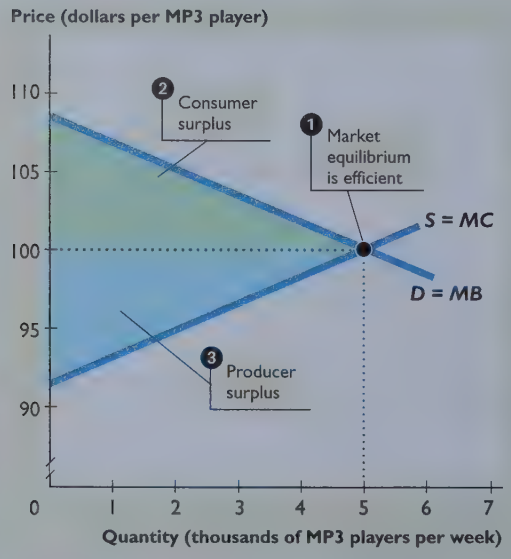
In this example, the excess burden is large. You can see how large by calculating the area of the deadweight loss triangle. This area is \$15,000 (\$10 × 3,000 ÷ 2). The tax revenue is \$20,000, so the excess burden is 75 percent of the tax revenue.

Incidence, Inefficiency, and Elasticity

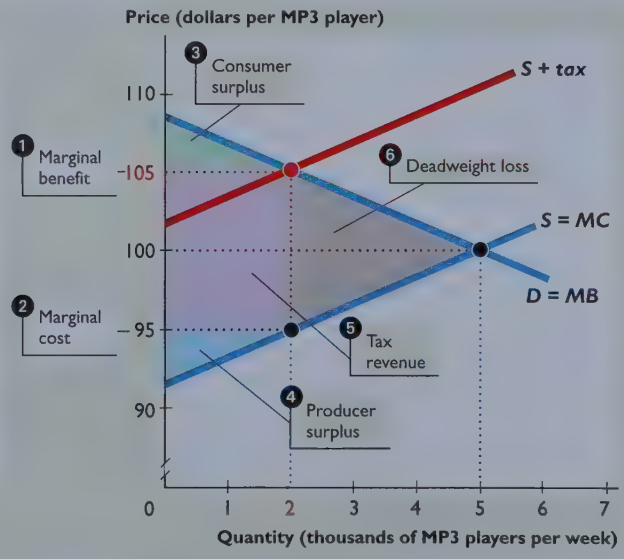
In the example of a \$10 tax on MP3 players, the buyer and the seller split the tax equally and the excess burden is large. What determines how the tax is split and the size of its excess burden?

FIGURE 8.2
Taxes and Efficiency

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Efficient outcome



(b) Burden of tax

❶ The market is efficient with marginal benefit equal to marginal cost. Total surplus—the sum of ❷ consumer surplus (green area) and ❸ producer surplus (blue area)—is at its maximum possible level.

A \$10 tax drives a wedge between ❶ marginal benefit and ❷ marginal cost. ❸ Consumer surplus and ❹ producer surplus shrink by the amount of the ❺ tax revenue plus the ❻ deadweight loss. The deadweight loss is the excess burden of the tax.

The incidence of a tax and its excess burden depend on the elasticities of demand and supply in the following ways:

- For a given elasticity of supply, the more inelastic the demand for the good, the larger is the share of the tax paid by the buyer.
- For a given elasticity of demand, the more inelastic the supply of the good, the larger is the share of the tax paid by the seller.
- The excess burden is smaller, the more inelastic is demand *or* supply.

Incidence, Inefficiency, and the Elasticity of Demand

To see how the division of a tax between the buyer and the seller and the size of the excess burden depend on the elasticity of demand, we'll look at two extremes.

Perfectly Inelastic Demand: Buyer Pays and Efficient

Figure 8.3(a) shows the market for insulin, a vital daily medication of diabetics. Demand is perfectly inelastic at 100,000 doses a week, as shown by the vertical demand curve. With no tax, the price is $2 a dose. A 20¢ a dose tax raises the price to $2.20, but the quantity does not change. The tax leaves the price received by the seller unchanged but raises the price paid by the buyer by the entire tax. The outcome is efficient (there is no deadweight loss) because marginal benefit equals marginal cost.

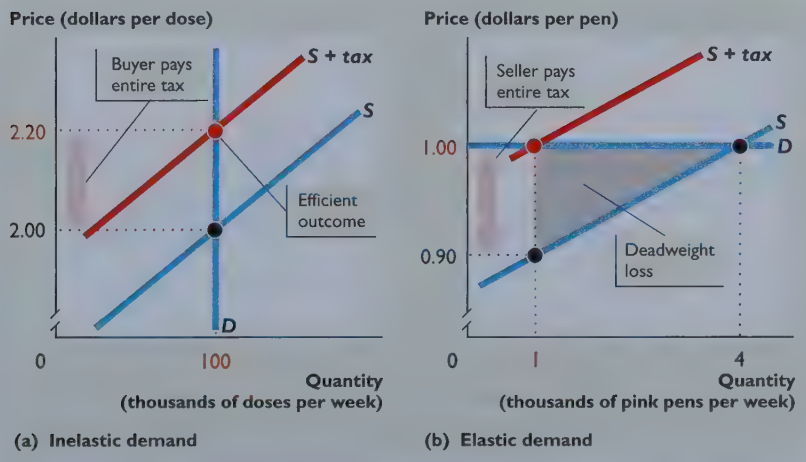
Perfectly Elastic Demand: Seller Pays and Inefficient

Figure 8.3(b) shows the market for pink marker pens. Demand is perfectly elastic at $1 a pen, as shown by the horizontal demand curve. If pink pens are less expensive than other pens, everyone uses pink. If pink pens are more expensive than other pens, no one uses a pink pen. With no tax, the price of a pink pen is $1 and the quantity is 4,000 pens a week. A 10¢ a pen tax leaves the price at $1 a pen, but

FIGURE 8.3

Incidence, Inefficiency, and the Elasticity of Demand

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), the demand for insulin is perfectly inelastic. A tax of 20¢ a dose raises the price by 20¢, and the buyer pays all the tax. But marginal benefit still equals marginal cost, so the outcome is efficient.

In part (b), the demand for pink marker pens is perfectly elastic. A tax of 10¢ a pen lowers the price received by the seller by 10¢, and the seller pays all the tax. Marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost, so the outcome is inefficient. The deadweight loss is the excess burden of the tax and measures its inefficiency.

the quantity decreases to 1,000 a week. The price paid by the buyer is unchanged and the seller pays the entire tax. The outcome is inefficient because marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost and a deadweight loss arises.

Incidence, Inefficiency, and the Elasticity of Supply

To see how the division of a tax between the buyer and the seller depends on the elasticity of supply, we'll again look at two extremes.

Perfectly Inelastic Supply: Seller Pays and Efficient

Figure 8.4(a) shows the market for spring water that flows at a constant rate that can't be controlled. Supply is perfectly inelastic at 100,000 bottles a week, as shown by the vertical supply curve. With no tax, the price is 50¢ a bottle and the 100,000 bottles that flow from the spring are bought. A tax of 5¢ a bottle leaves the quantity unchanged at 100,000 bottles a week. Buyers are willing to buy 100,000 bottles a week only if the price is 50¢ a bottle. The price remains at 50¢ a bottle, but the tax lowers the price received by the seller by 5¢ a bottle. The seller pays the entire tax.

Because marginal benefit equals marginal cost, there is no deadweight loss and the outcome is efficient.

Perfectly Elastic Supply: Buyer Pays and Inefficient

Figure 8.4(b) shows the market for sand from which computer-chip makers extract silicon. Supply of this sand is perfectly elastic at a price of 10¢ a pound as shown by the horizontal supply curve. With no tax, the price is 10¢ a pound and 5,000 pounds a week are bought. A 1¢ a pound sand tax raises the price to 11¢, and the quantity decreases to 3,000 pounds a week. The buyer pays the entire tax.

Because marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost, a deadweight loss arises and the outcome is inefficient.

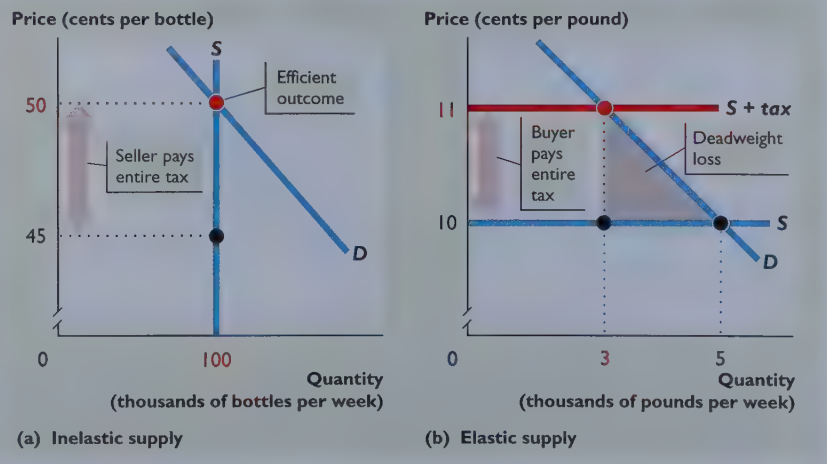
FIGURE 8.4

Incidence, Inefficiency, and the Elasticity of Supply

MyEconLab Animation

In part (a), the supply of bottled spring water is perfectly inelastic. A tax of 5¢ a bottle lowers the price received by the seller by 5¢ a bottle, and the seller pays all the tax. Marginal benefit equals marginal cost, so the outcome is efficient.

In part (b), the supply of sand is perfectly elastic. A tax of 1¢ a pound increases the price by 1¢ a pound, and the buyer pays all the tax. Marginal benefit exceeds marginal cost, so the outcome is inefficient. The deadweight loss is the excess burden of the tax and measures its inefficiency.



CHECKPOINT 8.1

Explain how taxes change prices and quantities, are shared by buyers and sellers, and create inefficiency.

MyEconLab

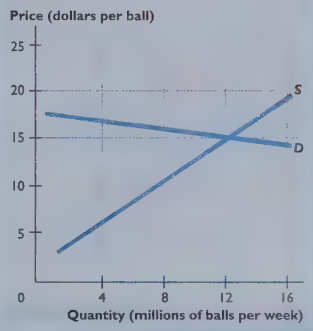
You can work these problems in Study Plan 8.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the market for basketballs in which basketballs are not taxed.

1. If buyers of basketballs are taxed $6 a ball, what price does the buyer pay and how many do they buy? What is the tax revenue collected?
2. If sellers of basketballs are taxed $6 a ball, what price does the seller receive and how many do they sell? What is the tax revenue collected?
3. If basketballs are taxed at $6 a ball, what is the excess burden of the tax? Is the demand for basketballs or the supply of basketballs more inelastic? Explain your answer.

FIGURE 1



In the News

Biggest U.S. tax hike on tobacco takes effect

The tax on cigarettes has risen from 39¢ to $1.01 a pack—an increase of 62¢ a pack. Before the tax hike, cigarettes were $5 a pack. In the past, a price increase of 10 percent cut cigarette consumption by 4 percent. With this new tax, at least 1 million of the 45 million smokers are expected to quit.

Source: *USA Today*, April 3, 2009

Is the demand for cigarettes elastic or inelastic? Will the price rise to $5.62 a pack? Who pays most of the tax increase—smokers or tobacco companies?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. With a $6 tax on buyers, the demand curve shifts downward by $6 a ball as shown in Figure 2. The price that the buyer pays is $16 a basketball and 8 million basketballs a week are bought. The tax revenue is $6 × 8 million, which is $48 million a week (the purple rectangle in Figure 2).
2. With a $6 tax on sellers, the supply curve shifts upward by $6 a ball as shown in Figure 3. The price that the seller receives is $10 a basketball and 8 million basketballs a week are sold (Figure 3). The tax revenue is $6 × 8 million, which is $48 million a week (the purple rectangle in Figure 3).
3. The excess burden of the tax is $12 million. Excess burden equals the deadweight loss, the gray triangle, which is 4 million balls × $6 a ball ÷ 2. The $6 tax increases the price paid by buyers by $1 and lowers the price received by sellers by $5. Because the seller pays the larger share of the tax, the supply of basketballs is more inelastic than the demand for basketballs.

FIGURE 2

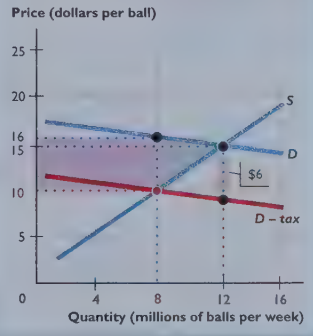
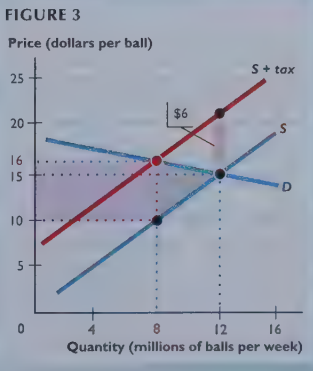


FIGURE 3



Solution to In the News

If a 10 percent price increase decreases consumption by 4 percent, the price elasticity of demand for cigarettes is 4/10, or 0.4. The demand for cigarettes is inelastic. With the demand inelastic, the 62¢ tax increase will not increase the price to $5.62. The price would rise to $5.62 only if the demand were perfectly inelastic. Buyers and sellers share the tax. Because demand is inelastic, buyers (smokers) will pay more of the 62¢ tax than the sellers (tobacco companies).

8.2 INCOME TAX AND SOCIAL SECURITY TAX

Income taxes are paid on personal incomes and corporate profits. In 2009, personal income taxes raised $1.25 trillion for the federal government and another $300 billion for state and local governments. Corporation income taxes raised $300 billion for the federal government and $50 billion for the state governments. We'll look first at the effects of personal income taxes, then at corporation income taxes, and finally at Social Security taxes.

The Personal Income Tax

Taxable income
Total income minus a personal exemption and a standard deduction (or other allowable deductions).

The amount of income tax that a person pays depends on her or his **taxable income**, which equals total income minus a *personal exemption* and a *standard deduction* (or other allowable deductions). For the federal income tax in 2011, the personal exemption was $3,650 and the standard deduction was $5,700 for a single person. So for a single person, taxable income equals total income minus $9,350.

The tax rate depends on the income level, and Figure 8.5 shows how the tax rate for a single person increases with income. The percentages in the table are

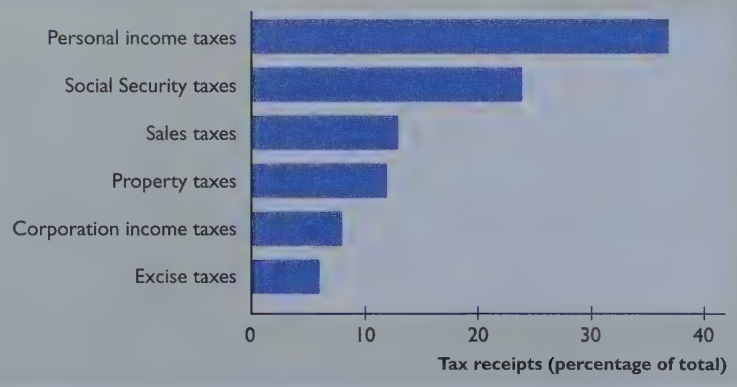
EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Taxes in the United States Today

Federal, state, and local governments in the United States have six main revenue sources:

- Personal income taxes
- Social Security taxes
- Sales taxes
- Property taxes
- Corporation income taxes
- Excise taxes

The figure shows the relative amounts raised by these taxes in 2011. Personal income taxes are the biggest tax source at 37 percent of total tax revenues. Social Security taxes are the next biggest revenue source at 24 percent of tax revenues. Sales taxes raised 13 percent; property taxes raised 12 percent, taxes on corporate profits raised 8 percent, and excise taxes (such as the taxes on tobacco and alcoholic drinks) raised 6 percent.



SOURCE OF DATA: *Economic Report of the President*, 2011.

Personal income taxes and Social Security taxes combine to create a high marginal tax rate on labor services that falls more on workers than on employers (see p. 198).

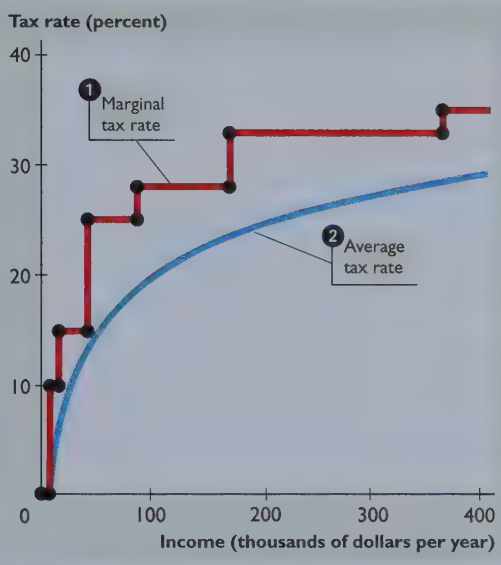
Taxes on corporate income mean that dividends on stocks get taxed twice, once as corporate income and once as personal income. These taxes fall mainly on firms rather than on the suppliers of capital and create a large deadweight loss (see p. 199).

FIGURE 8.5

U.S. Marginal Tax Rates and Average Tax Rates in 2011

MyEconLab Animation

Taxable income (dollars)	Marginal tax rate (percent)
$0 to $8,500	10
$8,501 to $34,500	15
$34,501 to $83,600	25
$83,601 to $174,400	28
$174,401 to $379,150	33
Over $379,150	35



1. The marginal tax rate increases with income. The table provides the data for 2011.
2. The average tax rate increases with income, but the average rate is less than the marginal rate.

SOURCE OF DATA: Internal Revenue Service.

marginal tax rates. A **marginal tax rate** is the percentage of an additional dollar of income that is paid in tax. For example, if taxable income increases from $8,499 to $8,500, the tax paid on the additional dollar is 10¢ and the marginal tax rate is 10 percent. If taxable income increases from $379,150 to $379,151, the tax paid on the additional dollar is 35¢ and the marginal tax rate is 35 percent.

The **average tax rate** is the percentage of income that is paid in tax. The average tax rate is less than the marginal tax rate. For example, suppose a single person earns $50,000 in a year. Tax paid is zero on the first $9,350 plus $850 (10 percent) on the next $8,500 plus $3,900 (15 percent) on the next $26,000 plus $1,538 (25 percent) on the remaining $6,150. Total taxes equal $6,288, which is 12.6 percent of $50,000. The average tax rate is 12.6 percent.

If the average tax rate increases as income increases, the tax is a **progressive tax**. The personal income tax is a progressive tax. To see this feature of the income tax, calculate another average tax rate for someone whose income is $100,000 a year. Tax paid is zero on the first $9,350 plus $850 (10 percent) on the next $8,500 plus $3,900 (15 percent) on the next $26,000 plus $12,275 (25 percent) on the next $49,100 plus $1,974 (28 percent) on the remaining $7,050. Total taxes equal $18,999, which is 19.0 percent of $100,000. The average tax rate is 19.0 percent.

A progressive tax contrasts with a **proportional tax**, which has the same average tax rate at all income levels, and a **regressive tax**, which has a decreasing average tax rate as income increases.

Marginal tax rate
The percentage of an additional dollar of income that is paid in tax.

Average tax rate
The percentage of income that is paid in tax.

Progressive tax
A tax whose average rate increases as income increases.

Proportional tax
A tax whose average rate is constant at all income levels.

Regressive tax
A tax whose average rate decreases as income increases.

The Effects of the Income Tax

Income tax is a tax on sellers of the services of labor, capital, and land. You know that the incidence and inefficiency of a tax depend on the elasticities of demand and supply. Because these elasticities are different for each factor of production, we must examine the effects of the income tax on each factor separately. Let's look first at the effects of the tax on labor income.

Tax on Labor Income

Figure 8.6 shows the demand curve, *LD*, and the supply curve, *LS*, in a competitive labor market. Firms can substitute machines for labor in many tasks, so the demand for labor is elastic. But most people have few good options other than to work for their income, so the supply of labor is inelastic. In this example, with no income tax, workers would earn $19 an hour and work 40 hours a week.

With a 20 percent income tax, the labor supply curve shifts to *LS* + *tax*. If workers are willing to supply the 40th hour a week for $19 with no tax, then with a 20 percent tax, they are willing to supply the 40th hour only if the wage is $23.75 an hour. That is, they want to get the $19 they received before plus $4.75 (20 percent of $23.75) that they now must pay to the government.

The equilibrium wage rate rises to $20 an hour, but the after-tax wage rate falls to $16 an hour—the tax is $4 an hour. Employment decreases to 35 hours a week. The worker pays most of the tax—$3 compared to the $1 the employer pays—because the demand for labor is elastic and the supply of labor is inelastic. The tax creates a deadweight loss shown by the gray triangle.

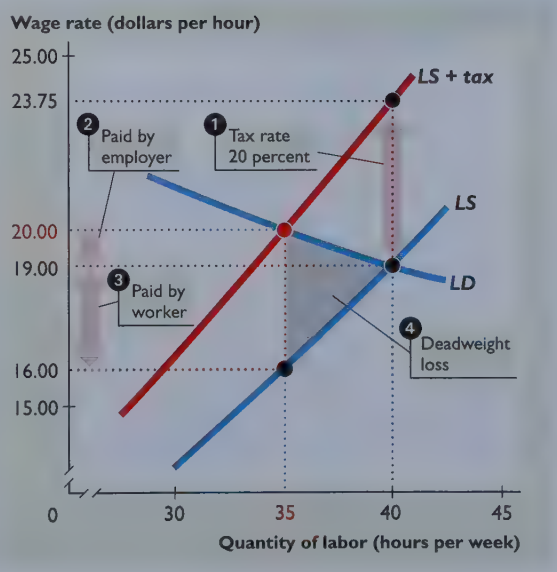
FIGURE 8.6

A Tax on Labor Income

MyEconLab Animation

With no income tax, workers would earn $19 an hour and work 40 hours a week.

❶ Workers face a 20 percent marginal income tax rate. The income tax decreases the supply of labor, raises the wage rate, and lowers the after-tax wage rate. Because the demand for labor is elastic and the supply of labor is inelastic, the tax ❷ paid by the employer is less than that ❸ paid by the worker. The quantity of labor employed is less than the efficient quantity, so ❹ a deadweight loss arises.



Tax on Capital Income

Capital income in the form of interest on bonds and bank deposits is taxed at the normal income tax rate. But capital income in the form of dividends on stocks is taxed twice. It is taxed as a dividend at 15 percent and it is taxed as corporate profit at the corporation income tax rate. (From 2008 to 2010, low-income earners will pay no tax on dividends.)

Figure 8.7 shows the demand curve, *KD*, and the supply curve, *KS*, in a competitive capital market. Because many tasks can be done by machines or labor, the demand for capital is elastic. Capital is internationally mobile, and its supply is highly elastic. In this example, firms can obtain all the capital they wish at an interest rate of 6 percent a year, so the supply of capital is perfectly elastic. With no capital income tax, firms use $40 billion worth of capital.

With a 40 percent tax on capital income, the supply curve shifts to *KS* + *tax*. Lenders want to receive an additional 4 percent interest to pay their capital income tax and are not willing to lend for less than 10 percent a year.

With the capital income tax, the quantity of capital decreases to $20 billion and the interest rate rises to 10 percent a year. Firms pay the entire capital income tax, and lenders receive the same after-tax interest rate as they receive in the absence of a capital income tax. The tax creates a deadweight loss shown by the gray triangle.

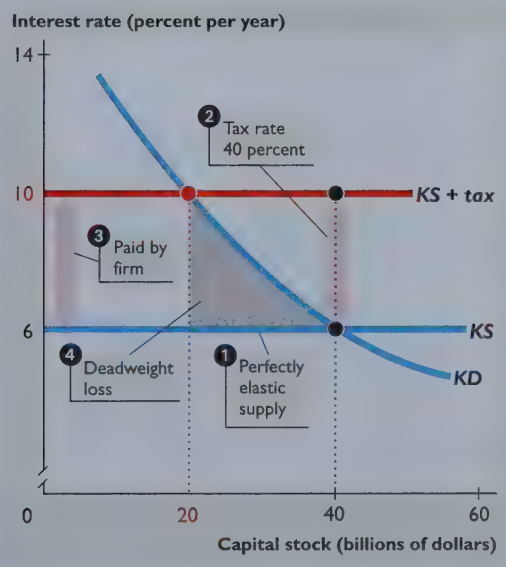
Tax on the Income from Land and Other Unique Resources

Each plot of land and reserve of mineral or other natural resource is unique, so its supply is perfectly inelastic. A fixed amount of the resource is supplied regardless of the rent offered for its use.

FIGURE 8.7

A Tax on Capital Income

MyEconLab Animation



1 The supply of capital is highly elastic (here perfectly elastic). With no tax on capital income, the interest rate is 6 percent a year and firms use $40 billion of capital.

With a 2 40 percent tax on income from capital, the supply curve becomes *KS* + *tax*. The interest rate rises to 10 percent a year, and 3 firms pay the entire tax. The quantity of capital used is less than the efficient quantity, so 4 a deadweight loss arises.

EYE on CONGRESS

Does Congress Decide Who Pays the Taxes?

Congress says that employers and workers pay the same Social Security tax contributions (7.65 percent each in 2011). But because the elasticity of demand for labor is much greater than the elasticity of supply of labor, workers end up paying most of the Social Security tax (see pp. 202–203).

Similarly, because the elasticity of demand for labor is greater than the elasticity of supply, the tax on wage income is paid mainly by workers. In contrast, the tax on capital income falls mainly on borrowers because the supply of capital is highly elastic.

But there is one thing that Congress can do to influence who pays a tax. It can pass a tax law (or tax rebate law) that doesn't impact the margin on which decisions turn. Recently, Congress passed such a law.

On February 17, 2009, the President signed the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act. Among the Act's many provisions is a "Making Work Pay" tax credit of $400 for a single worker and $800 for a couple.

A tax credit is a fixed reduction in the amount paid in personal income tax (in the current case, $400). For most people, a tax credit has no effect on their supply of labor. A worker gets the $400 tax credit regardless of how many hours he or she works. The tax credit doesn't influence the work-hours choice.

What influences the work-hours choice is the after-tax hourly wage rate, and that depends on the *marginal* income tax rate.

The figure illustrates the effects of a tax credit. The figure is similar to Figure 8.6 on p. 198. A 20 percent income tax rate shifts the labor supply curve from *LS* to *LS* + *tax*. With the demand for labor curve *LD*, the 20 percent tax raises the pre-tax wage rate by $1 to $20 per hour, lowers the after-tax wage rate by $3 to $16 per hour, and lowers the average workweek from 40 hours to 35 hours. With no tax rebate, the worker pays 75 percent of the tax and the employer pays 25 percent.

Suppose that Congress now passes an Act that gives workers a tax rebate of $30 a week. This rebate has no effect on the supply of labor because it isn't a rebate per hour worked. It is a fixed rebate amount independent of the hours worked. Workers now pay only 68 percent of the tax and employers pay 32 percent. Congress has worked around the elasticities!

Jacob Lew, with the President at the announcement of his appointment as Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

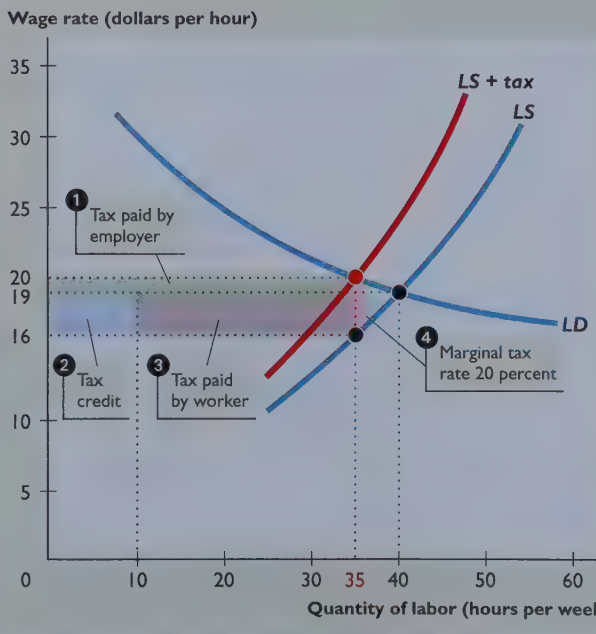


Figure 8.8(a) illustrates a tax on land income. In this example, a fixed 250 billion acres is supplied regardless of the rent. The equilibrium quantity of land is determined purely by supply and the equilibrium rent is determined by the demand for land. In this example, the equilibrium rent is $1,000 an acre.

When a 40 percent tax is imposed on rent income, landowners pay all of the tax. Their after-tax income falls to $600 an acre. This tax is efficient because the equilibrium quantity of land used is the same with the tax as without it. The tax generates no deadweight loss (excess burden) and is ideal from the perspective of efficiency.

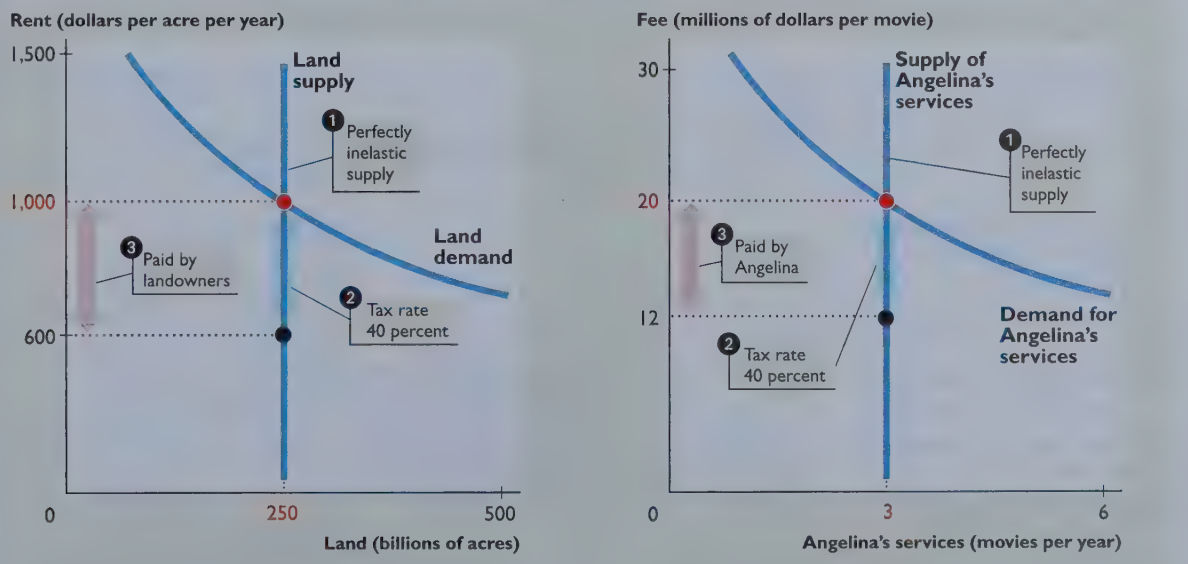
The principle that applies to a tax on income from land also applies to the income from any unique resource that has a perfectly inelastic supply. Another example of such a resource is the talent of an outstanding movie star or television personality.

Figure 8.8(b) illustrates this case. Suppose that Angelina Jolie is willing to make an average of 3 movies per year. Her supply of services is perfectly inelastic at that quantity. Hollywood studios compete for her services, and the demand curve reflects their willingness to pay for them. The equilibrium price is $20 million per movie. If Angelina pays a 40 percent tax on this income, she receives an after-tax income of $12 million per movie. Angelina pays the entire tax. The price paid by the studios is unaffected by this tax, and Angelina makes the same number of movies with the tax as without it. This tax creates no deadweight loss (excess burden).

FIGURE 8.8

A Tax on Land and Other Unique Resource Income

MyEconLab Animation



1 In the markets for land and for the services of Angelina Jolie, supply is highly inelastic (here perfectly inelastic). With a 2 40 percent tax on income from these resources, the equilibrium quantity and the market price remain unchanged, and 3 landowners and Angelina pay the entire tax. Because the quantity of the resource used is unchanged, the tax is efficient.

The Social Security Tax

Social Security is never far from the headlines. As the population gets older and more and more people begin to receive Social Security benefits, the cry to "fix Social Security" can only keep getting louder. The fundamental problem of ever-growing outlays must somehow be addressed.

One possible solution to the Social Security problem in the United States is to change the entitlements and cut the outlays. But this possibility is not popular and probably will not be the solution that is chosen. The other possibility is to increase the Social Security tax.

Currently, the law says that Social Security taxes fall equally on workers and employers. But does this outcome actually occur? If Congress decides to increase the Social Security tax, can Congress target employers and shield workers?

The Social Security tax is just like the other taxes you've studied in this chapter. Its incidence depends on the elasticities of demand and supply in the labor market and not on the wishes of Congress. Let's confirm this assertion by looking at two distinct arrangements: First, the tax is imposed only on workers, and second, the tax is imposed only on employers.

A Social Security Tax on Workers

Figure 8.9 shows the effects of a Social Security tax when the law says that workers must pay the entire tax. Without any taxes, the wage rate is $12 an hour and 4,000 people are employed. Now suppose that the government introduces a 20 percent Social Security tax on workers. If 4,000 people were willing to work for $12 an hour, this quantity of labor will now be supplied only if people can earn

FIGURE 8.9

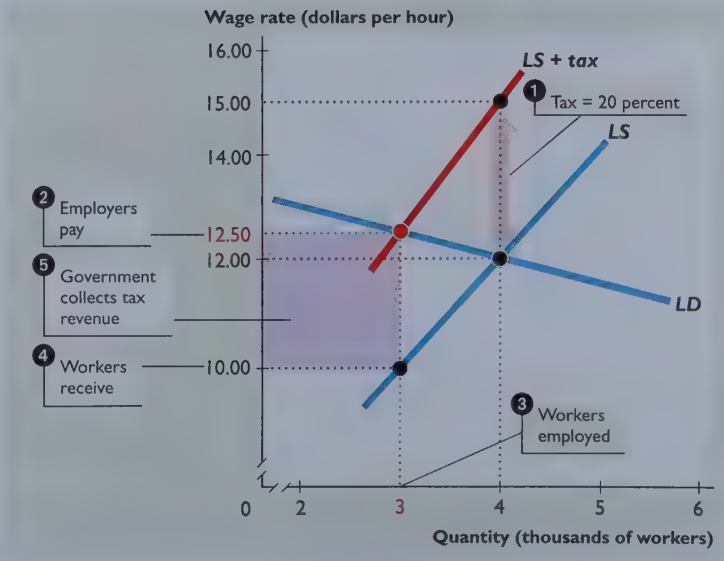
A Social Security Tax on Workers

MyEconLab Animation

With no taxes, 4,000 people are employed at a wage rate of $12 an hour.

1. A Social Security tax on workers of 20 percent shifts the supply curve to *LS + tax*.
2. The wage rate rises to $12.50 an hour, an increase of 50¢ an hour.
3. The quantity of labor employed decreases to 3,000 workers.
4. Workers receive $10 an hour—a decrease of $2 an hour.
5. The government collects tax revenue shown by the purple rectangle.

Workers pay most of the tax because the supply of labor is more inelastic than the demand for labor.



$12 an hour *after tax*. With a tax rate of 20 percent, the *pre-tax* wage rate will need to be $15 an hour to deliver an after-tax wage rate of $12 an hour. (Check that 20 percent of $15 is $3, so the wage rate *after* the tax is paid is $12.) The supply of labor curve shifts to the curve labeled *LS* + *tax*—a decrease in the supply of labor.

The wage rate rises to $12.50 an hour, and 3,000 workers are employed. Employees *receive* $12.50 an hour minus a 20 percent tax, which is $10 an hour. (Check that $2.50 equals 20 percent, or one fifth, of $12.50.)

So when the government puts a Social Security tax on workers, employers pay 50¢ an hour and workers pay $2 an hour. This division of the burden of the tax arises because the demand for labor is more elastic than the supply of labor.

A Social Security Tax on Employers

Figure 8.10 shows the effects of a Social Security tax on employers. As before, with no taxes, the equilibrium wage rate is $12 an hour and 4,000 people are employed. With a $2.50 an hour tax, firms are no longer willing to hire 4,000 people at a $12 an hour wage rate. Because firms must pay $2.50 an hour to the government, they will hire 4,000 people at a wage rate of $12 minus $2.50, which is $9.50 an hour.

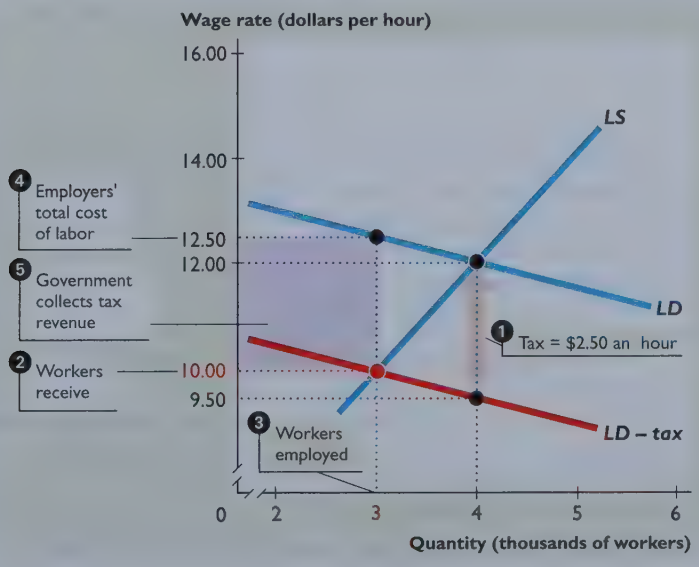
The demand for labor decreases, and the demand curve shifts to *LD* − *tax*. The wage rate falls to $10 an hour, and 3,000 workers are employed. The total cost of labor to the firm is $12.50 an hour—the $10 an hour wage plus the $2.50 an hour tax.

The tax on employers delivers the same outcome as the tax on workers. Workers receive the same take-home wage, and firms pay the same total wage. Congress cannot decide who pays the Social Security tax. When the laws of Congress come into conflict with the laws of economics, economics wins. Congress can't repeal the laws of supply and demand!

FIGURE 8.10

A Social Security Tax on Employers

MyEconLab Animation



With no taxes, 4,000 people are employed at a wage rate of $12 an hour.

1. A tax on employers of $2.50 an hour shifts the demand curve leftward to *LD* − *tax*.
2. The wage rate falls to $10 an hour, a decrease of $2 an hour.
3. The quantity of labor employed decreases to 3,000 workers.
4. Employers' total cost of labor rises to $12.50 an hour—the wage rate of $10 an hour plus the $2.50 an hour tax.
5. The government collects tax revenue shown by the purple rectangle.

EYE on the PAST

The Origins and History of the U.S. Income Tax

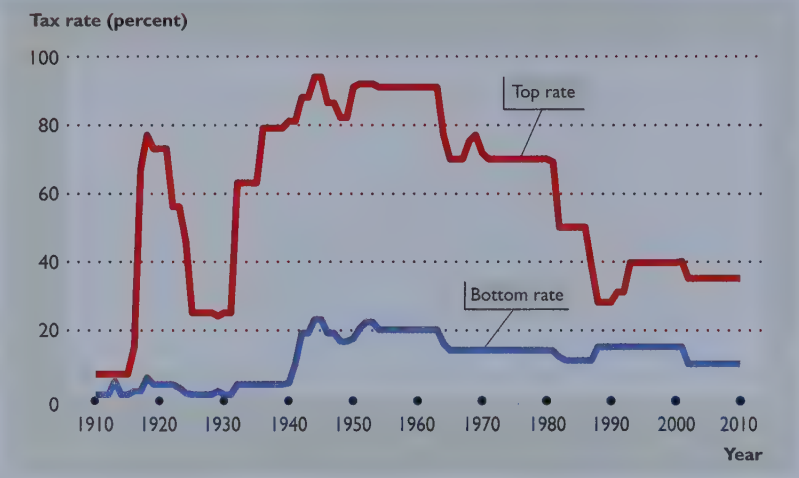
1861 First federal income tax—3 percent on all incomes above $800 a year.

1872 Income tax was repealed. (Tariffs on imports provided government revenue.)

1895 Income tax reestablished, but the Supreme Court ruled it unconstitutional.

1913 The 16th Amendment to the Constitution made the federal income tax legal.

1913–2011 Tax rates fluctuated. The top rate increased until 1920, decreased during the 1920s, and then increased until 1945 before decreasing in a number of steps to today's rate of 35 percent.



SOURCE OF DATA: Congressional Joint Committee on Taxation.

The bottom rate remained below 5 percent until the 1940s when it increased to 20 percent. In 1963 it decreased and since then, it has fluctuated between 10 percent and 15 percent.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Tax Freedom Day

The Tax Foundation is an organization that seeks to promote a tax system that is as simple, transparent, and stable as possible, that minimizes excess burden, and that promotes trade and income growth.

Each year, to make the level of taxes as transparent as possible, the Tax Foundation calculates and publicizes "Tax Freedom Day"—the date by when an average U.S. citizen has worked long enough to pay the year's tax bill.

In 2011, "Tax Freedom Day" for Americans was April 12, the 102nd day of the year.

The 102 days Americans had to work to pay 2011 taxes break down as:

Personal income taxes	36 days
Social Security taxes	22 days
Sales and excise taxes	15 days
Corporate income taxes	12 days
Property taxes	12 days

To work out your own "Tax Freedom Day," record the taxes you pay in a year. Express this number as a percentage of your annual income and then find the number of days (as a percentage of 365) that this amount of tax represents.

If you think taxes are high in the United States, think again.

Here are some "Tax Freedom Days" in a few other countries in 2011:

United Kingdom	May 30
Canada	June 6
Belgium	June 10
Germany	July 8
Sweden	July 20

Of the world's major countries, only Australia has a similar tax freedom day to the United States. Down Under, they paid their taxes in 2011 by April 12.

The "Tax Freedom Day" is a dramatic way of drawing attention to high *average* taxes, but it is high *marginal* taxes that create inefficiency.

CHECKPOINT 8.2

Explain how income taxes and Social Security taxes change wage rates and employment, are shared by employers and workers, and create inefficiency.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 8.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Florida levies the following taxes: a 5.5 percent corporate income tax; a 6 percent sales tax; taxes of 4¢ a gallon on gasoline, 33.9¢ a pack on cigarettes, $0.48 a gallon on beer, and $2.25 a gallon on wine; and property taxes that vary across the counties and range from 1.4 percent to 2.0 percent of property values. Classify Florida's taxes into progressive, proportional, and regressive taxes.
2. Explain why Phil Mickelson pays his own Social Security tax and the PGA (the Professional Golf Association) pays none of it.
3. Is a tax on land rent or a tax on capital income more inefficient? Explain.

In the News

Illinois Governor proposes broad array of tax increases
Faced with a huge budget deficit, Illinois Governor Patrick Quinn has proposed a 50 percent increase in the personal income tax rate.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, March 20, 2009

Explain the effects of the tax hike on labor income. Will workers or employers pay most of the tax increase? How will the deadweight loss change?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. If counties with the higher rates are those with high property values, then Florida's property taxes are progressive. The corporate income tax does not vary with income, so this tax is a proportional tax. Because saving increases with income, expenditure as a fraction of income decreases as income increases. The taxes on expenditure (sales tax, gasoline tax, cigarette tax, beer tax, and wine tax) are regressive taxes.
2. Phil Mickelson pays his Social Security tax and the PGA pays none of it because the supply of Phil Mickelson's services is (most likely) perfectly inelastic. The elasticities of demand and supply determine who pays the tax.
3. A tax on capital income is more inefficient than a tax on land rent. A tax on capital income has the larger effect on the quantity of factors of production employed than does a tax on land rent because the supply of land is perfectly inelastic, whereas the supply of capital is highly elastic. The larger the decrease in the quantity, the larger the deadweight loss created by the tax (the excess burden of the tax) and the more inefficient is the tax.

Solution to In the News

A tax on labor income will decrease the quantity of labor employed. The wage rate paid by employers will rise, the wage rate received by workers will fall, and the deadweight loss will increase. Because the demand for labor is elastic and the supply of labor is inelastic, most of the tax hike will be paid by the worker.

8.3 FAIRNESS AND THE BIG TRADEOFF

We've examined the incidence and the efficiency of different types of taxes. These topics have occupied most of this chapter because they are the issues about taxes that economics can address. But when political leaders debate tax issues, it is fairness, not just incidence and efficiency, that gets the most attention. Democrats complain that Republican tax cuts are unfair because they give the benefits of lower taxes to the rich. Republicans counter that because the rich pay most of the taxes, it is fair that they get most of the tax cuts. No easy answers are available to the questions about the fairness of taxes. Economists have proposed two conflicting principles of fairness to apply to a tax system:

- The benefits principle
- The ability-to-pay principle

The Benefits Principle

Benefits principle
The proposition that people should pay taxes equal to the benefits they receive from public goods and services.

The **benefits principle** is the proposition that people should pay taxes equal to the benefits they receive from public goods and services. This arrangement is fair because those who benefit most pay the most. The benefit principle makes tax payments and the consumption of government-provided services similar to private consumption expenditures. If taxes are based on the benefits principle, the people who enjoy the largest benefits pay the most for them.

To implement the benefits principle, it would be necessary to have an objective method of measuring each individual's marginal benefit from government-provided goods. In the absence of such a method, the principle can be used to justify a wide range of different taxes.

For example, the benefits principle can justify high fuel taxes to pay for public highways. Here, the argument would be that those who value the highways most are the people who use them most, and so they should pay most of the cost of providing them. Similarly, the benefits principle can justify high taxes on alcoholic beverages and tobacco products. Here, the argument would be that those who drink and smoke the most place the largest burden on public health-care services and so they should pay the greater part of the cost of those services.

The benefits principle can also be used to justify a progressive income tax. Here, the argument would be that the rich receive a disproportionately large share of the benefit from law and order and from living in a secure environment, so they should pay the largest share of providing these services.

The Ability-to-Pay Principle

Ability-to-pay principle
The proposition that people should pay taxes according to how easily they can bear the burden.

The **ability-to-pay principle** is the proposition that people should pay taxes according to how easily they can bear the burden. A rich person can more easily bear the burden of providing public goods than a poor person can, so the rich should pay higher taxes than the poor. The ability-to-pay principle involves comparing people along two dimensions: horizontally and vertically.

Horizontal Equity

Horizontal equity
The requirement that taxpayers with the same ability to pay should pay the same taxes.

If taxes are based on ability to pay, taxpayers with the same ability to pay should pay the same taxes, a situation called **horizontal equity.** While horizontal equity is easy to agree with in principle, it is difficult to implement in practice. If two peo-

ple are identical in every respect, horizontal equity is easy to apply. But how do we compare people who are similar but not identical? The greatest difficulty arises in working out differences in ability to pay that arise from the state of a person's health and from a person's family responsibilities. The U.S. income tax has many special deductions and other rules that aim to achieve horizontal equity.

Vertical Equity

If horizontal comparisons are difficult, vertical comparisons are impossible. **Vertical equity** is the requirement that taxpayers with a greater ability to pay bear a greater share of the taxes. This proposition easily translates into the requirement that people with higher incomes should pay higher taxes. But it provides no help in determining how steeply taxes should increase as income increases. Should taxes be proportional to income? Should they be regressive? Should they be progressive? All of these arrangements have higher-income people paying higher taxes, so they all satisfy the basic idea of vertical equity. But most people have strong views that include the extent to which the rich should pay more.

Vertical equity
The requirement that taxpayers with a greater ability to pay bear a greater share of the taxes.

You've seen that the U.S. tax code uses progressive income taxes—average tax rates that increase with income. Progressive taxes are justified as fair on the basis of the principle of vertical equity. But their use to achieve vertical equity produces a problem for the attainment of horizontal equity. The problem shows up most clearly in the U.S. tax code in its treatment of single people and married couples.

The Marriage Tax Problem

Should a married couple (or two people living together) be treated as two individual taxpayers or as a single taxpayer? Until some changes were introduced in 2003, the U.S. tax code treated a married couple as a single taxpayer. This arrangement means that when a man and a woman get married, they stop paying income tax as two individuals and instead pay as one individual. To see the marriage tax problem, suppose the tax code (simpler than that in the United States) is as follows: no deductions or exemptions, incomes up to $20,000 a year bear no tax, and incomes in excess of $20,000 are taxed at 10 percent.

Now think about Al and Judy, two struggling young journalists, each of whom earns $20,000 a year and who get married. As single people, they paid no tax. Married, their income is $40,000, so they pay $2,000 a year in tax (10 percent of $20,000). Their marriage tax is $2,000 a year. (This example is *much* more severe than the marriage tax in the United States, but it serves to highlight the source of the problem.)

We could make a simple change to the tax law to overcome this problem for Al and Judy: Tax married couples as two single persons. That is what is done in most countries and what some economists say should be done in the United States. If we make this change in the tax law, Al and Judy pay no tax after their marriage just as before. We've solved the marriage tax problem.

A married couple or two individuals?

Before we conclude that this small change to the tax code would clean up a source of unfairness, let's think about its effect on Denise and Frank. Frank is a painter whose work just doesn't sell. He has no income. Denise is a successful artist whose work is in steady demand and earns her $40,000 a year. As two single artists, Frank pays no tax and Denise pays $2,000 a year (10 percent of $20,000). If they marry, under the arrangement that taxes a married couple as a single taxpayer, they still pay $2,000 in tax.

Now compare Frank and Denise with Al and Judy. If we tax married couples as a single taxpayer, both couples earn $40,000 a year and both pay income tax of $2,000 a year. But if we tax married couples as single persons, Frank and Denise pay $2,000 a year and Al and Judy pay nothing. So which is fair?

Horizontal equity requires Frank and Denise to be treated like Al and Judy. Taxing couples as a single taxpayer rather than taxing couples as single people achieves this outcome. But it taxes marriage, which seems unfair.

This problem arises from the progressive tax. It would not arise if taxes were proportional. Because horizontal equity conflicts with progressive taxes, some people say that only proportional taxes are fair.

The Big Tradeoff

Questions about the fairness of taxes conflict with efficiency questions and create the *big tradeoff* that you met in Chapter 6. The taxes that generate the greatest deadweight loss are those on the income from capital. But most capital is owned by a relatively small number of people who have the greatest ability to pay taxes. So there is a conflict between efficiency and fairness. We want a tax system that is efficient, in the sense that it raises the revenue that the government needs to provide public goods and services, but we want a tax system that shares the burden of providing these goods and services fairly. Our tax system is an evolving compromise that juggles these two goals.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 8.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 8.3

Review ideas about the fairness of the tax system.

Practice Problem

1. In Hong Kong, the marginal income tax rates range from 2 percent to 20 percent. Does Hong Kong or the United States place greater weight on the ability-to-pay principle? Does Hong Kong or the United States place a greater weight on efficiency and a smaller weight on fairness?

In the News

Mayor Michael Nutter of Philadelphia is pushing the 2-cents-per-ounce tax on soda to help prevent cuts in the city's cash-strapped school system.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, June 14, 2011

Which principle of fairness will the mayor use to justify a tax on soda?

Solution to Practice Problem

1. Hong Kong's income tax rates are lower than those in the United States, so Hong Kong places a lower weight on the ability-to-pay principle. With lower income tax rates, Hong Kong places a greater weight on efficiency and a smaller weight on fairness.

Solution to In the News

The two principles of fairness are the benefits principle and the ability-to-pay principle. The mayor will justify the tax on the ability-to-pay principle and use the tax revenue raised to help finance the city's school system.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain how taxes change prices and quantities, are shared by buyers and sellers, and create inefficiency.

- Regardless of whether a tax is imposed on buyers or sellers, it has the same effects: The price paid by the buyer rises and the price received by the seller falls.
- A tax creates inefficiency by driving a wedge between marginal benefit and marginal cost and creating a deadweight loss.
- The less elastic the demand or the more elastic the supply, the greater is the price increase and the larger is the share of the tax paid by the buyer.
- If demand is perfectly elastic or supply is perfectly inelastic, the seller pays all the tax; if demand is perfectly inelastic or supply is perfectly elastic, the buyer pays all the tax.
- If demand or supply is perfectly inelastic, the tax creates no deadweight loss and is efficient.

2 Explain how income taxes and Social Security taxes change wage rates and employment, are shared by employers and workers, and create inefficiency.

- Taxes can be progressive (the average tax rate rises with income), proportional (the average tax rate is constant), or regressive (the average tax rate falls with income).
- The U.S. income tax is progressive.
- The shares of the income tax paid by firms and households depend on the elasticity of demand and the elasticity of supply of the factors of production.
- The elasticities of demand and supply, not Congress, determine who pays the income tax and who pays the Social Security tax.
- The more elastic is either the demand or supply of a factor of production, the greater is the excess burden of an income tax.

3 Review ideas about the fairness of the tax system.

- The two main principles of fairness of taxes—the benefits principle and the ability-to-pay principle—do not deliver universally accepted standards of fairness, and vertical equity and horizontal equity can come into conflict.

Key Terms

Ability-to-pay principle, 206
Average tax rate, 197
Benefits principle, 206
Excess burden, 192
Horizontal equity, 206
Marginal tax rate, 197
Progressive tax, 197
Proportional tax, 197
Regressive tax, 197
Taxable income, 196
Tax incidence, 190
Vertical equity, 207

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 8 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. In Florida, sunscreen and sunglasses are vital items. If the tax on sellers of these items is doubled from 5.5 percent to 11 percent, who will pay most of the tax increase: the buyer or the seller? Will the tax increase halve the quantity of sunscreen and sunglasses bought?
2. Suppose that the government imposes a $2 a cup tax on coffee. What determines by how much Starbucks will raise its price? How will the quantity of coffee bought in coffee shops change? Will this tax raise much revenue?

Concerned about the political fallout from rising gas prices, the government cuts the tax on gasoline. Use this information to work Problems 3 and 4.

3. Explain the effect of this tax cut on the price of gasoline and the quantity bought if, at the same time, the oil-producing nations increase production.
4. Explain the effect of this tax cut on the price of gasoline and the quantity bought if, at the same time, a global shortage of oil sends the price up.

Table 1 illustrates the market for Internet service. Use the information in Table 1 and a demand-supply graph to work Problems 5 and 6.

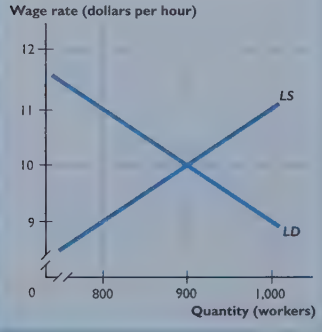
TABLE 1

Price (dollars per month)	Quantity demanded (units per month)	Quantity supplied (units per month)
0	30	0
10	25	10
20	20	20
30	15	30
40	10	40
50	5	50
60	0	60

5. What is the market price of Internet service? If the government taxes Internet service $15 a month, what price would the buyer of Internet service pay? What price would the seller of Internet service receive?
6. If the government taxes Internet service $15 a month, does the buyer or the seller pay more of the tax? What is the tax revenue? What is the excess burden of the tax? Is the tax proportional, progressive, or regressive?

Figure 1 illustrates the labor market in a country that does not tax labor income. Suppose that the government introduces a Social Security tax on workers of $2 per hour. Use this information to work Problems 7 and 8.

FIGURE 1



7. How many workers are employed? What is the wage rate paid by employers and what is the workers' after-tax wage rate? How many workers are no longer employed?
8. If the government splits the Social Security tax equally between workers and employers, how many workers are employed? What is the wage rate paid by employers and what is the workers' after-tax wage rate?
9. In 2010, California legislators pledged to pass a soda tax in light of a new study linking soft drink consumption to obesity and related problems that cost California $41 billion a year in medical expenses. On the basis of what principle would this tax be fair?
10. **The downside of lower gas taxes**
The federal gas tax is 18.4¢ a gallon and state gas taxes range from 20¢ to 40¢ a gallon. As motorists switch to more efficient cars, government gas tax revenue will fall. To raise revenue for infrastructure repairs, states are considering dropping the gas tax and introducing a mileage tax, perhaps 2.3¢ per mile.

Source: CNNMoney, June 9, 2009

How would a mileage tax differ from the gas tax in its effects on an owner of a gas guzzler and an owner of a fuel-efficient hybrid? Which tax would be fairer: the mileage tax or the gas tax?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

Use the following information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

In 2002, New York State raised the cigarette tax by 39¢ to $1.50 a pack. Then New York City raised the tax from 8¢ to $1.50 a pack. The total tax increased to $3 a pack, and the price of cigarettes rose to $7.50 a pack—the highest in the nation. The average income of smokers is less than that of non-smokers.

1. Draw a graph to show the effects of the $3 tax on the buyer's price, the seller's price, the quantity of cigarettes bought, the tax revenue, the consumer surplus, the producer surplus, and the excess burden of the tax. Does the buyer or seller pay more of the tax? Why?

2. Is this tax on cigarettes a progressive, regressive, or proportional tax?

Use the following information to work Problems **3** and **4**.

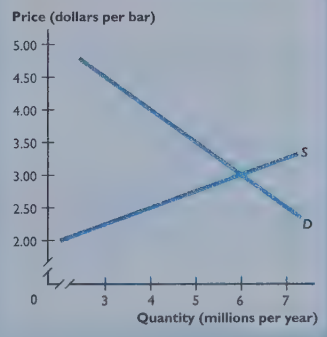
The supply of luxury boats is perfectly elastic, the demand for luxury boats is unit elastic, and with no tax on luxury boats, the price is $1 million and 240 luxury boats a week are bought. Now luxury boats are taxed at 20 percent.

3. What is the price that buyers pay? How is the tax split between the buyer and the seller? What is the government's tax revenue?

4. On a graph, show the excess burden of this tax. Is this tax efficient?

5. Figure 1 illustrates the market for chocolate bars. Suppose that the government levies a $1.50 tax on a chocolate bar. What is the change in the quantity of chocolate bars bought, who pays most of the tax, and what is the deadweight loss?

FIGURE 1



6. In an hour, a baker earns $10, a gas pump attendant earns $6, and a copy shop worker earns $7. Suppose that the government introduces an income tax of $1 an hour. Calculate the marginal tax rates for bakers, gas pump attendants, and copy shop workers. Is this tax progressive or regressive?

7. Larry earns $25,000 and pays $2,500 in tax, while Suzy earns $50,000 and pays $15,000 in tax. If Larry's income increases by $100, his tax increases by $12, but if Suzy's income increases by $100, her tax increases by $35. Calculate the average tax rate and marginal tax rate that Larry pays and that Suzy pays. Is this income tax fair? Explain.

8. A study of the Bush tax cuts of 2001 noted that the top 1 percent of income earners reaped the biggest benefits. What assumptions about the elasticities of demand and supply for high-wage labor and capital might be consistent with this assessment? What other facts about demand and supply and market outcomes would you need to know to verify this claim?

Use the following news clip to work Problems **9** and **10**.

Tax bites on travelers go deeper

Travelers complain about delayed flights, but they don't seem to be bothered by increased taxes on flights, car rentals, and hotel rooms. Taxes raise the average car rental bill 28 percent at airport locations. More municipalities are taxing airport rental customers to fund local venues, such as sports stadiums.

Source: *The New York Times*, April 10, 2007

9. Describe the effect of these municipal taxes on car rentals at airports. Who pays more of the tax: the renter or the car company?

10. Why do you think municipalities tax things that travelers buy as a way of raising the revenue to build local venues?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 8 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. If a tax of $1 a can is imposed on the buyers of sugary drinks, the demand for sugary drinks _____ and the price that buyers pay _____.
   A. doesn't change; doesn't change
   B. doesn't change; rises by $1 a can
   C. decreases; rises by more than $1 a can
   D. decreases; rises by less than $1 a can
2. A tax on candy will be paid by only _____.
   A. buyers if the supply of candy is perfectly elastic
   B. sellers if the demand for candy is perfectly inelastic
   C. buyers if the demand for candy is perfectly elastic
   D. sellers if the supply of candy is perfectly elastic
3. If the government imposes a new tax on plastic bags, _____.
   A. total surplus from bags shrinks by more than the amount of tax collected
   B. total surplus from bags shrinks by the amount of the tax revenue collected
   C. a deadweight loss arises equal to the amount of tax revenue collected
   D. the market for plastic bags remains efficient if the tax is fair
4. The demand for labor is more elastic than the supply of labor. An income tax _____ the wage rate paid by employers and _____.
   A. lowers; workers pay all the tax
   B. raises; workers pay most of the tax
   C. does not change; employers pay all the tax
   D. raises; employers pay most of the tax
5. The supply of low-skilled workers in China is perfectly elastic. In 2011, when China cut the tax on these workers' incomes from 5 percent to zero, _____.
   A. employers cut the wage rate but hired the same number of workers
   B. employers cut the wage rate and hired more workers
   C. employers didn't change the wage rate but hired more workers
   D. employers didn't change the wage rate and hired the same number of workers
6. The supply of land is perfectly inelastic so a tax on land rent is _____.
   A. efficient and the landowner pays all of the tax
   B. inefficient because the renter pays all of the tax
   C. inefficient if the tax is too high
   D. efficient and the renter pays all of the tax
7. The demand for labor is more elastic than the supply of labor. A Social Security tax imposed equally on workers and employers _____.
   A. raises the wage rate by more than the Social Security tax
   B. decreases employment and workers pay most of the tax
   C. increases the wage rate paid by employers by the amount of the tax
   D. is fair because workers and employers pay the same amount of tax
8. The _____ principle of fairness is the proposition that _____.
   A. benefit; people should pay taxes equal to the benefits they receive from the public goods bought with the tax revenue
   B. benefit; people should receive benefits equal to their ability to pay
   C. ability-to-pay; people should pay taxes equal to the benefits they receive
   D. ability-to-pay; people should receive benefits equal to their ability to pay

Who wins and who loses from globalization?

9

Global Markets in Action

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain how markets work with international trade.
2. Identify the gains from international trade and its winners and losers.
3. Explain the effects of international trade barriers.
4. Explain and evaluate arguments used to justify restricting international trade.

9.1 HOW GLOBAL MARKETS WORK

Imports
The goods and services that firms in one country buy from people and firms in other countries.

Exports
The goods and services that people and firms in one country sell to firms in other countries.

Because we trade with people in other countries, the goods and services that we buy and consume are not limited by what we produce. The goods and services that we buy from people and firms in other countries are our **imports**; the goods and services that we sell to firms in other countries are our **exports**.

International Trade Today

Global trade today is enormous. In 2009, global exports and imports (the two numbers are the same because what one country exports another imports) were about $15 trillion, which is 27 percent of the value of global production. The United States is the world's largest international trader and accounts for 10 percent of world exports and 15 percent of world imports. Germany and China, which rank 2 and 3 behind the United States, lag by a large margin.

In 2009, total U.S. exports were $1.5 trillion, which is about 11 percent of the value of U.S. production. Total U.S. imports were $1.9 trillion, which is about 13 percent of the value of total expenditure in the United States.

The United States trades both goods and services. In 2009, exports of services were $0.5 trillion (33 percent of total exports) and imports of services were $0.4 trillion (21 percent of total imports).

Our largest exports are services such as royalties, license fees, banking, business consulting, and other private services. Our largest exports of goods are chemicals and plastics and airplanes. Our largest imports are crude oil and automobiles. *Eye on the U.S. Economy* (p. 215) provides a bit more detail on our ten largest exports and imports.

What Drives International Trade?

Comparative advantage is the fundamental force that drives international trade. We defined comparative advantage in Chapter 3 (p. 74) as the ability of a person to perform an activity or produce a good or service at a lower opportunity cost than anyone else. This same idea applies to nations. We can define *national comparative advantage* as the ability of a *nation* to perform an activity or produce a good or service at a lower opportunity cost than *any other nation*.

The opportunity cost of producing a T-shirt is lower in China than in the United States, so China has a comparative advantage in producing T-shirts. The opportunity cost of producing an airplane is lower in the United States than in China, so the United States has a comparative advantage in producing airplanes.

You saw in Chapter 3 how Liz and Joe reaped gains from trade by specializing in the production of the good at which they have a comparative advantage and then trading. Both were better off. This same principle applies to trade among nations. Because China has a comparative advantage at producing T-shirts and the United States has a comparative advantage at producing airplanes, the people of both countries can gain from specialization and trade. China can buy airplanes from the United States at a lower opportunity cost than that at which it can produce them. And Americans can buy T-shirts from China for a lower opportunity cost than that at which U.S. firms can produce them. Also, through international trade, Chinese producers can get higher prices for their T-shirts and Boeing can sell airplanes for a higher price. Both countries gain from international trade.

Let's now illustrate the gains from trade that we've just described by studying demand and supply in the global markets for T-shirts and airplanes.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

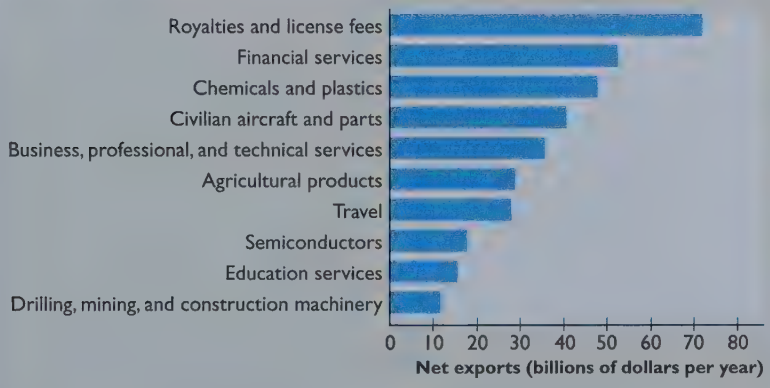
U.S. Exports and Imports

The blue bars in part (a) of the figure show the ten largest U.S. exports and the red bars in part (b) show the ten largest U.S. imports. The values are graphed as *net exports* and *net imports* because we both export and import items in most of the categories.

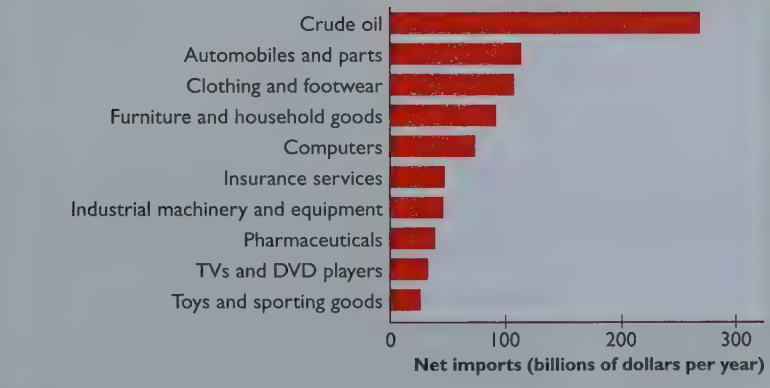
Five of our top ten exports are services—royalties and license fees (such as fees received by Hollywood movie producers on films shown abroad); financial services; business, professional, and technical services (such as the sale of advertising by Google to Adidas, a European sportswear maker); travel (such as the expenditure on a Florida vacation by a visitor from England); and education services (foreign students in our colleges and universities).

Automobiles and the fuel that runs them are our largest imports. We also import large quantities of clothing, furniture, TVs, DVD players, computers; and industrial machinery and equipment. Insurance services also feature in our ten largest imports.

Although we import a large quantity of computers, we export many of the semiconductors (computer chips) inside those computers. The Intel chip in a Lenovo laptop built in China and imported into the United States is an example. This chip is made in the United States and exported to China.



(a) The 10 largest U.S. exports



(b) The 10 largest U.S. imports

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The United States exports airplanes …

and imports crude oil.

Why the United States Imports T-Shirts

Figure 9.1 illustrates the effects of international trade in T-shirts. The demand curve D_{US} and the supply curve S_{US} show the demand and supply in the U.S. domestic market only. The demand curve tells us the quantity of T-shirts that Americans are willing to buy at various prices. The supply curve tells us the quantity of T-shirts that U.S. garment makers are willing to sell at various prices.

Figure 9.1(a) shows what the U.S. T-shirt market would be like with no international trade. The price of a T-shirt would be $8 and 40 million T-shirts a year would be produced by U.S. garment makers and bought by U.S. consumers.

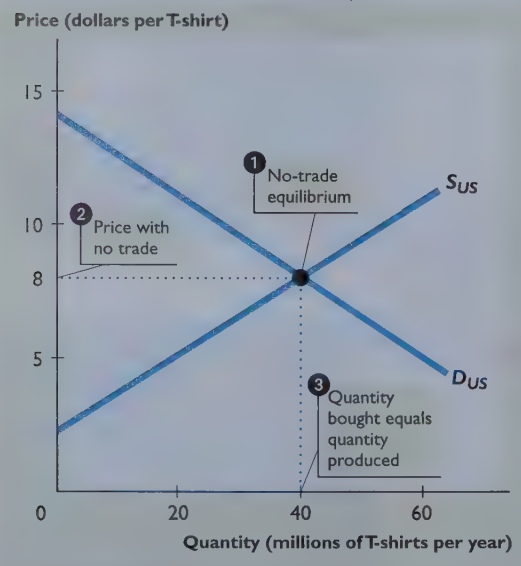
Figure 9.1(b) shows the market for T-shirts *with* international trade. Now the price of a T-shirt is determined in the world market, not the U.S. domestic market. The world price is *less than* $8 a T-shirt, which means that the rest of the world has a comparative advantage in producing T-shirts. The world price line shows the world price as $5 a T-shirt.

The U.S. demand curve, D_{US}, tells us that at $5 a T-shirt, Americans buy 60 million T-shirts a year. The U.S. supply curve, S_{US}, tells us that at $5 a T-shirt, U.S. garment makers produce 20 million T-shirts. To buy 60 million T-shirts when only 20 million are produced in the United States, we must import T-shirts from the rest of the world. The quantity of T-shirts imported is 40 million a year.

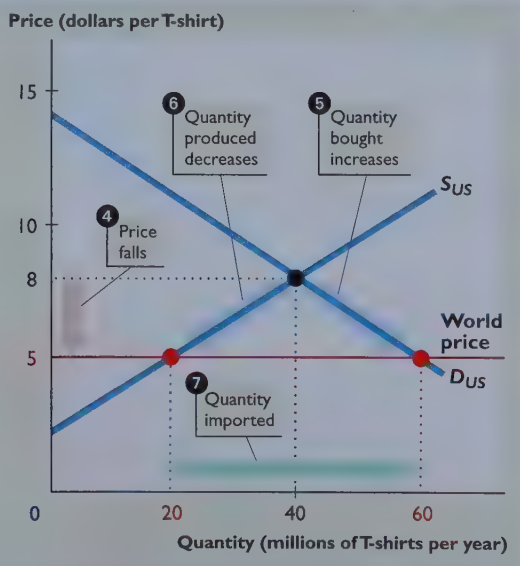
FIGURE 9.1

A Market with Imports

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Equilibrium with no international trade



(b) Equilibrium in a market with imports

With no international trade, in part (a), ❶ domestic demand and domestic supply determine ❷ the equilibrium price at $8 a T-shirt and ❸ the quantity at 40 million T-shirts a year.

With international trade, in part (b), world demand and world supply determine the world price, which is $5 per T-shirt. ❹ The domestic price falls to $5 a T-shirt. ❺ Domestic purchases increase to 60 million T-shirts a year, and ❻ domestic production decreases to 20 million T-shirts a year. ❼ 40 million T-shirts a year are imported.

Why the United States Exports Airplanes

Figure 9.2 illustrates the effects of international trade in airplanes. The demand curve D_{US} and the supply curve S_{US} show the demand and supply in the U.S. domestic market only. The demand curve tells us the quantity of airplanes that U.S. airlines are willing to buy at various prices. The supply curve tells us the quantity of airplanes that U.S. aircraft makers are willing to sell at various prices.

Figure 9.2(a) shows what the U.S. airplane market would be like with no international trade. The price of an airplane would be $100 million and 400 airplanes a year would be produced by U.S. aircraft makers and bought by U.S. airlines.

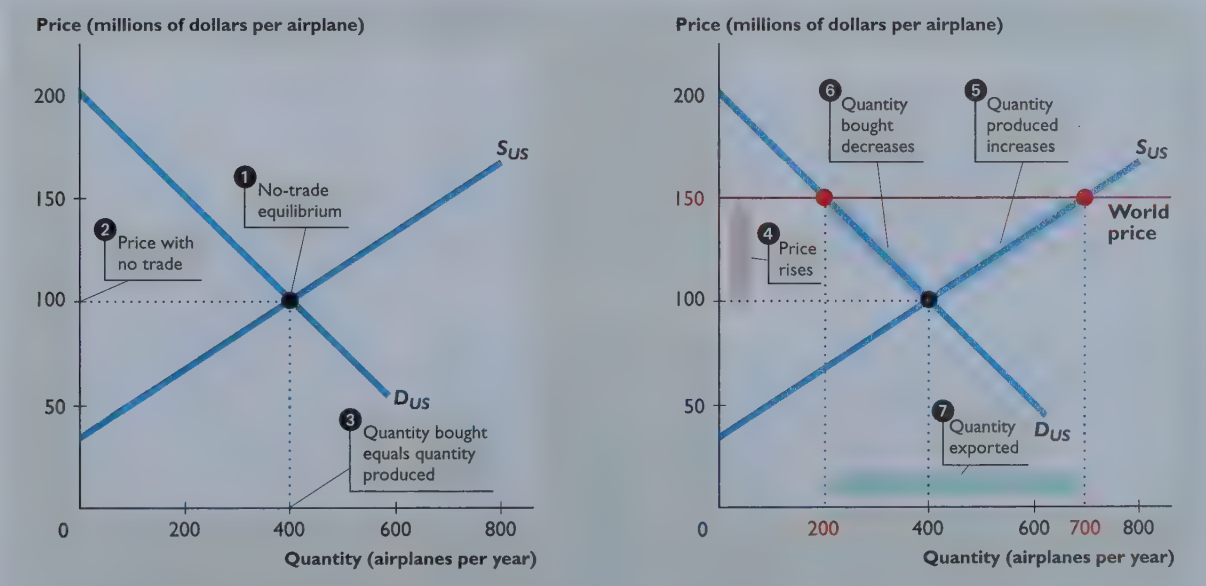
Figure 9.2(b) shows the U.S. airplane market *with* international trade. Now the price of an airplane is determined in the world market, not the U.S. domestic market. The world price is *higher than* $100 million, which means that the United States has a comparative advantage in producing airplanes. The world price line shows the world price as $150 million.

The U.S. demand curve, D_{US}, tells us that at $150 million an airplane, U.S. airlines buy 200 airplanes a year. The U.S. supply curve, S_{US}, tells us that at $150 million an airplane, U.S. aircraft makers produce 700 airplanes a year. The quantity produced in the United States (700 a year) minus the quantity purchased by U.S. airlines (200 a year) is the quantity of U.S. exports, which is 500 airplanes a year.

FIGURE 9.2

A Market with Exports

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Equilibrium without international trade

(b) Equilibrium in a market with exports

With no international trade, in part (a), ❶ domestic demand and domestic supply determine ❷ the equilibrium price at $100 million an airplane and ❸ the quantity at 400 airplanes a year. With international trade, in part (b), world demand and world supply determine the world price, which is $150 million an airplane. ❹ The domestic price rises. ❺ Domestic production increases to 700 airplanes a year, ❻ domestic purchases decrease to 200 airplanes a year, and ❼ 500 airplanes a year are exported.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 9.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 9.1

Explain how markets work with international trade.

Practice Problems

1. Suppose that the world price of sugar is 10 cents a pound, the United States does *not* trade internationally, and the U.S. equilibrium price of sugar is 20 cents a pound. The United States then begins to trade internationally.
   - How does the price of sugar in the United States change?
   - Do U.S. consumers buy more or less sugar?
   - Do U.S. sugar growers produce more or less sugar?
   - Does the United States export or import sugar?
2. Suppose that the world price of steel is $100 a ton, India does *not* trade internationally, and the equilibrium price of steel in India is $60 a ton. India then begins to trade internationally.
   - How does the price of steel in India change?
   - How does the quantity of steel produced in India change?
   - How does the quantity of steel bought by India change?
   - Does India export or import steel?

In the News

Underwater oil discovery to transform Brazil into a major exporter

The discovery of a huge oil field could make Brazil a large exporter of gasoline. Until two years ago Brazil imported oil; then it became self-sufficient in oil. With this discovery, Brazil will become a major exporter of oil.

Source: *The New York Times*, January 11, 2008

Describe Brazil's comparative advantage in producing oil, and explain why its comparative advantage has changed.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. With no international trade, the U.S. domestic price of sugar exceeds the world price so we know that the rest of the world has a comparative advantage at producing sugar. With international trade, the price of sugar in the United States falls to the world price, U.S. consumers buy more sugar, and U.S. sugar growers produce less sugar. The United States imports sugar.
2. With no international trade, the domestic price of steel in India is below the world price so we know that India has a comparative advantage at producing steel. With international trade, the price of steel in India rises to the world price, steel mills in India increase the quantity they produce, and the quantity of steel bought by Indians decreases. India exports steel.

Solution to In the News

Before 2008, Brazil did not have a comparative advantage in producing oil. Its cost of producing a barrel of oil was higher than the world market price, so Brazil imported oil. With the discovery of the new oil field, the cost of producing a barrel of oil in Brazil will be below the world price. Now Brazil will have a comparative advantage in the production of oil. With this new comparative advantage, Brazil will become an exporter of oil.

9.2 WINNERS, LOSERS, AND NET GAINS FROM TRADE

You've seen how international trade lowers the price of an imported good and raises the price of an exported good. Buyers of imported goods benefit from lower prices, and sellers of exported goods benefit from higher prices. But some people complain about international competition: Not everyone gains. We're now going to see who wins and who loses from free international trade. You will then be able to understand who complains about international competition and why.

We'll also see why we never hear the consumers of imported goods complaining and why we never hear exporters complaining, except when they want greater access to foreign markets. And we'll see why we *do* hear complaints from producers about cheap foreign imports.

EYE on GLOBALIZATION

Who Wins and Who Loses from Globalization

Economists generally agree that the gains from globalization vastly outweigh the losses. But there are both winners and losers.

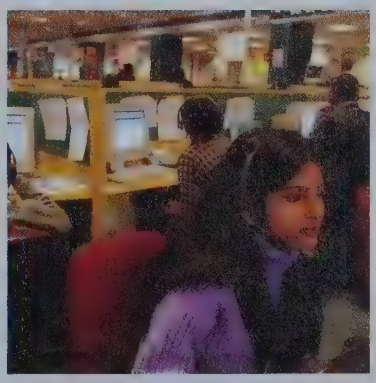
The U.S. consumer is a big winner. Globalization has brought iPods, Wii games, Nike shoes, and a wide range of other products to our shops at ever lower prices.

The Indian (and Chinese and other Asian) worker is another big winner. Globalization has brought a wider range of more interesting jobs and higher wages.

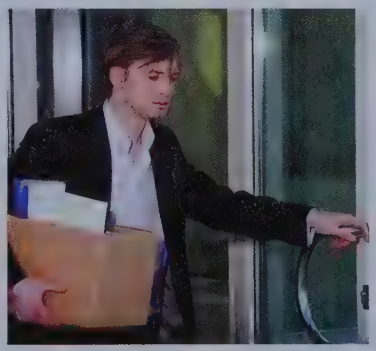
The U.S. (and European) textile workers and furniture makers are big losers. Their jobs have disappeared and many of them have struggled to find new jobs even when they've been willing to take a pay cut.

But one of the biggest losers is the African farmer. Blocked from global food markets by trade restrictions and subsidies in the United States and Europe, globalization is leaving much of Africa on the sidelines.

The U.S. consumer ...



and Indian workers gain from globalization.



But some U.S. workers and ...

African farmers lose.

Gains and Losses from Imports

We measure the gains and losses from imports by examining their effect on consumer surplus, producer surplus, and total surplus. The winners are those whose surplus increases and the losers are those whose surplus decreases.

Figure 9.3(a) shows what consumer surplus and producer surplus would be with no international trade. Domestic demand, D_{US}, and domestic supply, S_{US}, determine the price and quantity. The green area shows consumer surplus and the blue area shows producer surplus. Total surplus is the sum of consumer surplus and producer surplus.

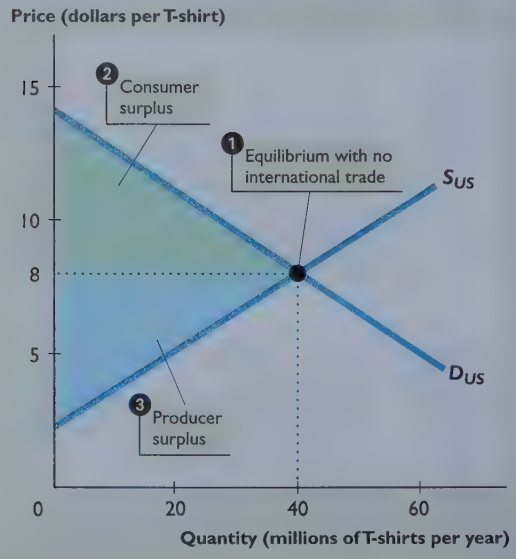
Figure 9.3(b) shows how these surpluses change when the market opens to imports. The price falls to the world price. The quantity purchased increases to the quantity demanded at the world price, and consumer surplus expands to the larger green area $A + B + D$. The quantity produced decreases to the quantity supplied at the world price, and producer surplus shrinks to the smaller blue area C.

Part of the gain in consumer surplus, the area B, is a loss of producer surplus—a redistribution of total surplus. But the other part of the increase in consumer surplus, the area D, is a net gain. This increase in total surplus is the gain from imports and results from the lower price and increased purchases.

FIGURE 9.3

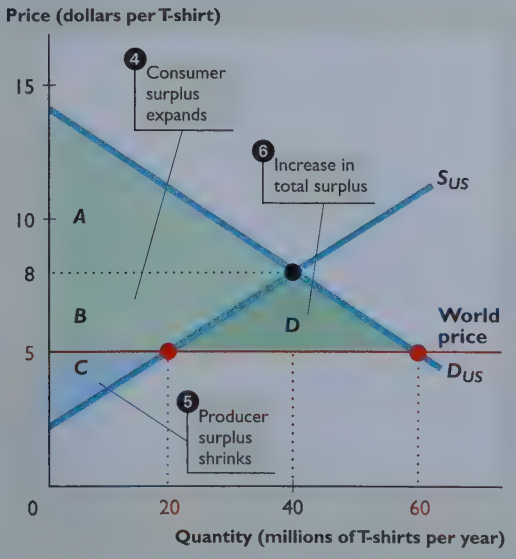
Gains and Losses in a Market with Imports

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Consumer surplus and producer surplus with no international trade

With no international trade, ❶ equilibrium at the intersection of the domestic demand and domestic supply curves determines the price and quantity. ❷ The green area shows the consumer surplus and ❸ the blue area shows the producer surplus.



(b) Gains and losses from imports

With international trade, the domestic price falls to the world price. ❹ Consumer surplus expands to the area $A + B + D$. Area B is a transfer of surplus from producers to consumers, and ❺ producer surplus shrinks to area C. ❻ Area D is an increase in total surplus.

Gains and Losses from Exports

We measure the gains and losses from exports just like we measured those from imports, by examining their effect on consumer surplus, producer surplus, and total surplus.

Figure 9.4(a) shows what the consumer surplus and producer surplus would be with no international trade. Domestic demand, D_{US}, and domestic supply, S_{US}, determine the price and quantity. The green area shows consumer surplus and the blue area shows producer surplus. The two surpluses sum to total surplus.

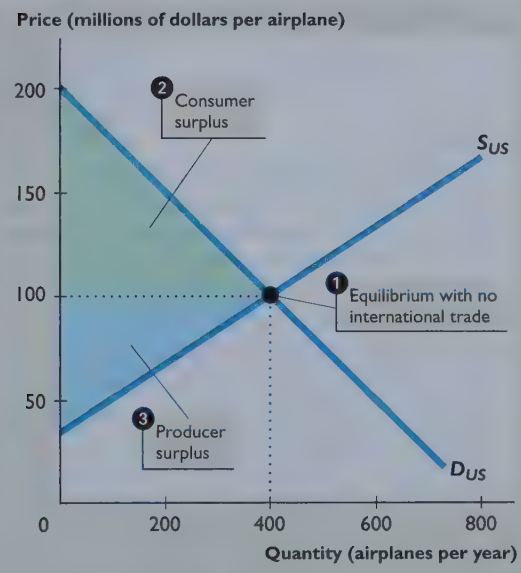
Figure 9.4(b) shows how the consumer surplus and producer surplus change when the good is exported. The price rises to the world price. The quantity bought decreases to the quantity demanded at the world price, and the consumer surplus shrinks to the green area *A*. The quantity produced increases to the quantity supplied at the world price, and the producer surplus expands from the blue area *C* to the larger blue area *B* + *C* + *D*.

Part of the gain of producer surplus, the area *B*, is a loss in consumer surplus—a redistribution of the total surplus. But the other part of the increase in producer surplus, the area *D*, is a net gain. This increase in total surplus is the gain from exports and results from the higher price and increased production.

FIGURE 9.4

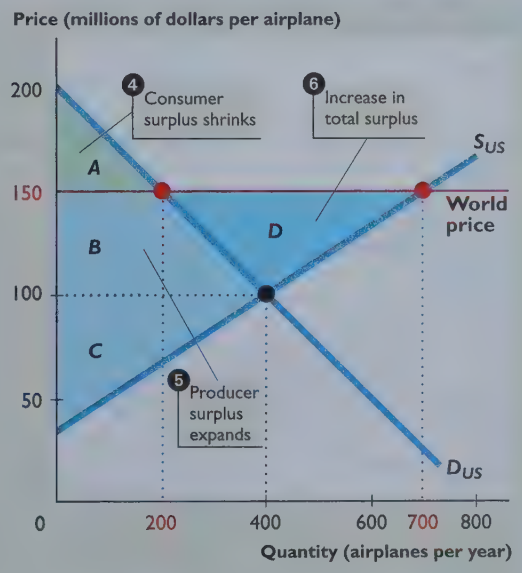
Gains and Losses in a Market with Exports

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Consumer surplus and producer surplus with no international trade

With no international trade, ❶ equilibrium at the intersection of the domestic demand and domestic supply curves determines the price and quantity. ❷ The green area shows the consumer surplus and ❸ the blue area shows the producer surplus.



(b) Gains and losses from exports

With international trade, the domestic price rises to the world price. ❹ Consumer surplus shrinks to the area *A*. ❺ Producer surplus expands to the area *B* + *C* + *D*. Area *B* is transferred from consumers to producers. ❻ Area *D* is an increase in total surplus.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 9.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 9.2

Identify the gains from international trade and its winners and losers.

Practice Problems

Before the 1980s, China did not trade internationally: It was self-sufficient in coal and shoes. Then China began to trade internationally. The world price of coal was less than China's domestic price and the world price of shoes was higher than its domestic price.

1. Does China import or export coal? Who, in China, gains and who loses from international trade in coal? Does China gain from this trade in coal? On a graph of the market for coal in China show the gains, losses, and net gain or loss from international trade in coal.
2. Does China import or export shoes? Who, in China, gains and who loses from international trade in shoes? Does China gain from this trade in shoes? On a graph of the market for shoes in China, show the gains, losses, and net gain or loss from international trade in shoes.

In the News

Commodities post big drop

World commodity prices have fallen in the past six weeks. Crude oil prices dropped 7%, beef prices fell 5 %, and corn prices fell 4%.

Source: *Global Commodity Watch*, June 15, 2011

The United States imports crude oil and exports beef. How do these price falls change the U.S. gains from trade in each good and the distribution of the gains?

FIGURE 1

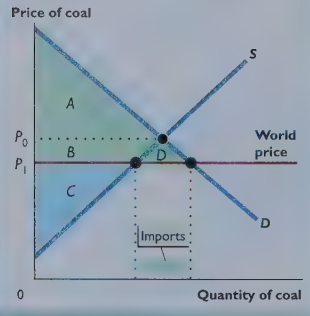
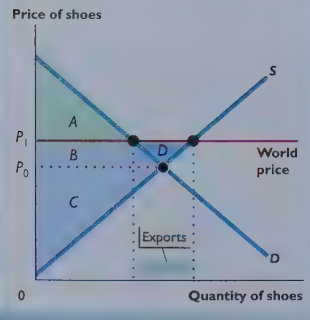


FIGURE 2



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The rest of the world has a comparative advantage in producing coal. China imports coal, Chinese coal users gain, and Chinese coal producers lose. The gains exceed the losses: China gains from international trade in coal. Figure 1 shows the market for coal in China. The price before trade is P_0. With trade, the price falls to the world price, P_1. Consumers gain the area $B + D$, producers lose the area B, and the net gain from trade in coal is D.
2. China has a comparative advantage in producing shoes. China exports shoes, Chinese shoe producers gain, and Chinese shoe consumers lose. The gains exceed the losses: China gains from international trade in shoes. Figure 2 shows the shoe market in China. The price before trade is P_0. With trade, the price rises to the world price, P_1. Producers gain the area $B + D$, consumers lose the area B, and the net gain from trade in shoes is area D.

Solution to In the News

The United States does not have a comparative advantage in producing crude oil, so the fall in the world price increases imports and decreases U.S. production. Consumer surplus increases, producer surplus decreases, but consumers gain more than producers lose. The United States has a comparative advantage in producing beef, so the fall in the world price decreases U.S. production. Producer surplus decreases, consumer surplus increases, but producers lose more than consumers gain.

9.3 INTERNATIONAL TRADE RESTRICTIONS

Governments use four sets of tools to influence international trade and protect domestic industries from foreign competition. They are

- Tariffs
- Import quotas
- Other import barriers
- Export subsidies

Tariffs

A **tariff** is a tax that is imposed on a good when it is imported. For example, the government of India imposes a 100 percent tariff on wine imported from California. When an Indian firm imports a $10 bottle of Californian wine, it pays the Indian government a $10 import duty.

Tariff
A tax imposed on a good when it is imported.

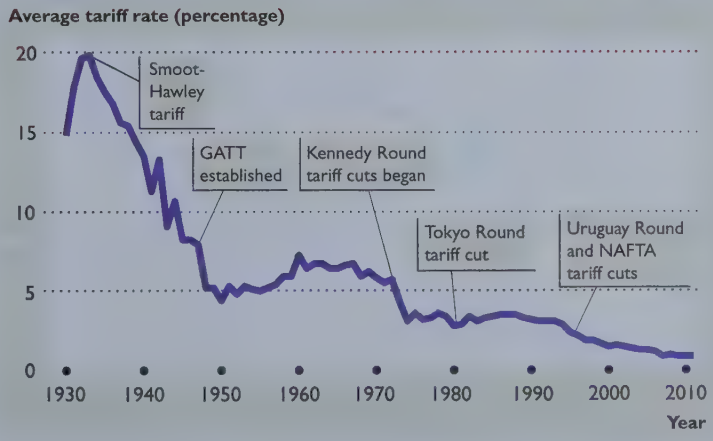
The incentive for governments to impose tariffs is strong. First, they provide revenue to the government. Second, they enable the government to satisfy the self-interest of people who earn their incomes in import-competing industries. As you will see, tariffs and other restrictions on free international trade decrease the gains from trade and are not in the social interest. Let's see how.

EYE on the PAST

The History of U.S. Tariffs

The figure shows the average tariff rate on U.S. imports since 1930. Tariffs peaked during the 1930s when Congress passed the Smoot-Hawley Act. With other nations, the United States signed the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) in 1947. In a series of rounds of negotiations, GATT achieved widespread tariff cuts for the United States and many other nations. Today, the World Trade Organization (WTO) continues the work of GATT and seeks to promote unrestricted trade among all nations.

The United States is a party to many trade agreements with individual countries or regions. These include the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) and the Central American Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA). These agreements have eliminated tariffs on most goods traded between the United States and the countries of Central and North America.



SOURCES OF DATA: The Budget for Fiscal Year 2006, Historical Tables, Table 2.5 and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The Effects of a Tariff

To see the effects of a tariff, let's return to the example in which, with international free trade, the United States imports T-shirts. The T-shirts are imported and sold at the world price. Then, under pressure from U.S. garment makers, the U.S. government imposes a tariff on imported T-shirts. Buyers of T-shirts must now pay the world price plus the tariff. Several consequences follow in the market for T-shirts. Figure 9.5 illustrates these consequences.

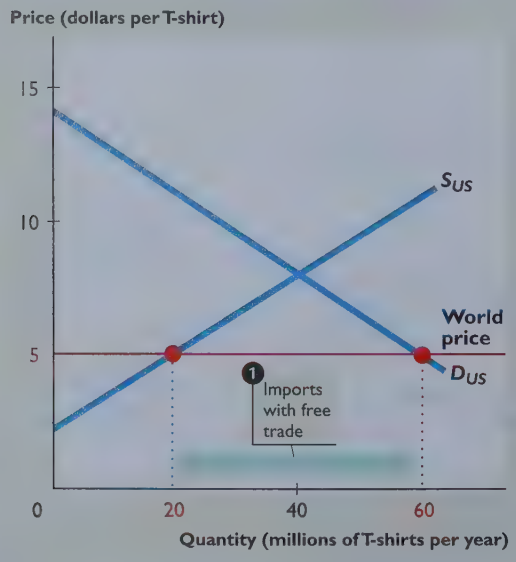
Figure 9.5(a) is the same as Figure 9.1(b) and shows the situation with free international trade. The United States produces 20 million T-shirts and imports 40 million T-shirts a year at the world price of $5 a T-shirt.

Figure 9.5(b) shows what happens with a tariff, which is set at $2 per T-shirt. The following changes occur in the U.S. market for T-shirts:

- The price of a T-shirt in the United States rises by $2.
- The quantity of T-shirts bought in the United States decreases.
- The quantity of T-shirts produced in the United States increases.
- The quantity of T-shirts imported into the United States decreases.
- The U.S. government collects a tariff revenue.

FIGURE 9.5
The Effects of a Tariff

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Free trade

(b) Market with tariff

The world price of a T-shirt is $5. With free trade, in part (a), Americans buy 60 million T-shirts. The United States produces 20 million T-shirts and ❶ imports 40 million T-shirts. ❷ With a tariff of $2 per T-shirt in part (b), the domestic price rises to $7 a T-shirt (the world price plus the tariff). Domestic production increases, purchases decrease, and ❸ the quantity imported decreases. ❹ The U.S. government collects tariff revenue of $2 on each T-shirt imported, which is shown by the purple rectangle.

Rise in Price of a T-Shirt To buy a T-shirt, Americans must pay the world price plus the tariff, so the price of a T-shirt rises by $2 to $7. Figure 9.5(b) shows the new domestic price line, which lies $2 above the world price line.

Decrease in Purchases The higher price of a T-shirt brings a decrease in the quantity demanded, which Figure 9.5(b) shows as a movement along the demand curve from 60 million T-shirts at $5 a T-shirt to 45 million T-shirts at $7 a T-shirt.

Increase in Domestic Production The higher price of a T-shirt stimulates domestic production, which Figure 9.5(b) shows as a movement along the supply curve from 20 million T-shirts at $5 a T-shirt to 35 million T-shirts at $7 a T-shirt.

Decrease in Imports T-shirt imports decrease by 30 million from 40 million to 10 million a year. Both the decrease in purchases and the increase in domestic production contribute to this decrease in imports.

Tariff Revenue The government's tariff revenue is $20 million—$2 per T-shirt on 10 million imported T-shirts—shown by the purple rectangle.

Winners, Losers, and the Social Loss from a Tariff

A tariff on an imported good creates winners and losers. When the U.S. government imposes a tariff on an imported good,

- U.S. producers of the good gain.
- U.S. consumers of the good lose.
- U.S. consumers lose more than U.S. producers gain.

U.S. Producers of the Good Gain Because the price of an imported T-shirt rises by the tariff, U.S. T-shirt producers are now able to sell their T-shirts for a higher price—the world price plus the tariff. As the price of a T-shirt rises, U.S. producers increase the quantity supplied. Because the marginal cost of producing a T-shirt in the United States is less than the higher price of all the T-shirts sold except for the marginal T-shirt, producer surplus increases. This increase in producer surplus is the gain to U.S. producers.

U.S. Consumers of the Good Lose Because the price of a T-shirt in the United States rises, the quantity of T-shirts demanded decreases. The combination of a higher price and smaller quantity bought decreases consumer surplus.This loss of consumer surplus represents the loss to U.S. consumers that arises from a tariff.

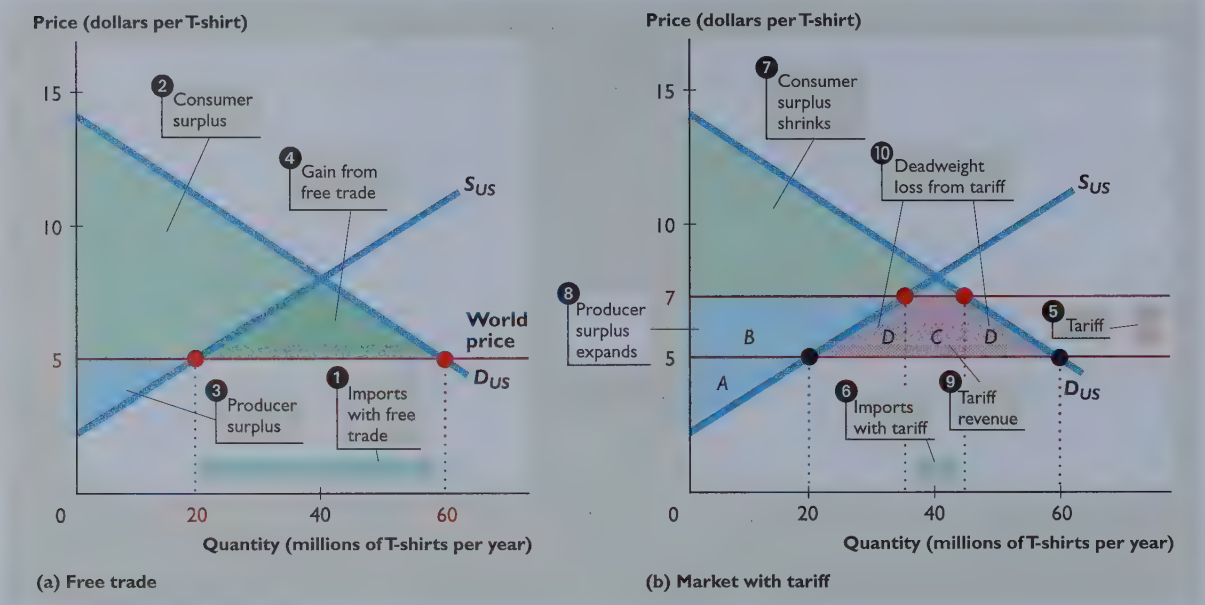
U.S. Consumers Lose More Than U.S. Producers Gain You've just seen that consumer surplus decreases and producer surplus increases, but which changes by more? Do consumers lose more than producers gain, or do producers gain more than consumers lose? Or is there just a straight transfer from consumers to producers? To answer these questions, we need to return to the demand and supply analysis of the market for T-shirts and compare the changes in consumer surplus and producer surplus.

Figure 9.6(a) is the same as Figure 9.3(b) and shows the consumer surplus and producer surplus with free international trade in T-shirts. The dark green area is the increase in total surplus that comes from free international trade. By comparing

FIGURE 9.6

The Winners and Losers from a Tariff

MyEconLab Animation



The world price of a T-shirt is $5. With free trade, ❶ the United States imports 40 million T-shirts. ❷ Consumer surplus, ❸ producer surplus, and ❹ the gains from free international trade are as large as possible. ❺ A tariff of $2 per T-shirt raises the price of a T-shirt to $7. ❻ The quantity imported decreases. ❼ Consumer surplus shrinks by the areas *B*, *C*, and *D*. ❽ Producer surplus expands by area *B*. ❾ The government's tariff revenue is area *C*, and ❿ the tariff creates a deadweight loss equal to the areas *D*.

Figure 9.6(b) with Figure 9.6(a), you can see how a $2 tariff on imported T-shirts changes the surpluses. Producer surplus—the blue area—increases by the area labeled *B*. The increase in producer surplus is the gain by U.S. producers from the tariff. Consumer surplus—the green area—shrinks.

The decrease in consumer surplus divides into three parts. First, some of the consumer surplus is transferred to producers. The blue area *B* represents this loss of consumer surplus (and gain of producer surplus). Second, part of the consumer surplus is transferred to the government. The purple area *C* represents this loss of consumer surplus (and gain of government revenue). When the tariff revenue is spent, both consumers and producers receive some benefit, but there is no expectation that the buyers of T-shirts will receive the benefits of the expenditure of this tariff revenue from T-shirts. The tariff revenue is a loss to buyers of T-shirts.

The third part of the loss of consumer surplus is a transfer to no one: it is a *deadweight loss*. Consumers buy a smaller quantity at a higher price. The two gray areas labeled *D* represent this loss of consumer surplus. Total surplus decreases by this amount, which is the social loss from the tariff.

Let's now look at the second tool for restricting trade: quotas.

Import Quotas

An **import quota** is a quantitative restriction on the import of a good that limits the maximum quantity of a good that may be imported in a given period. The United States imposes import quotas on many items, including sugar, bananas, and textiles.

Import quota
A quantitative restriction on the import of a good that limits the maximum quantity of a good that may be imported in a given period.

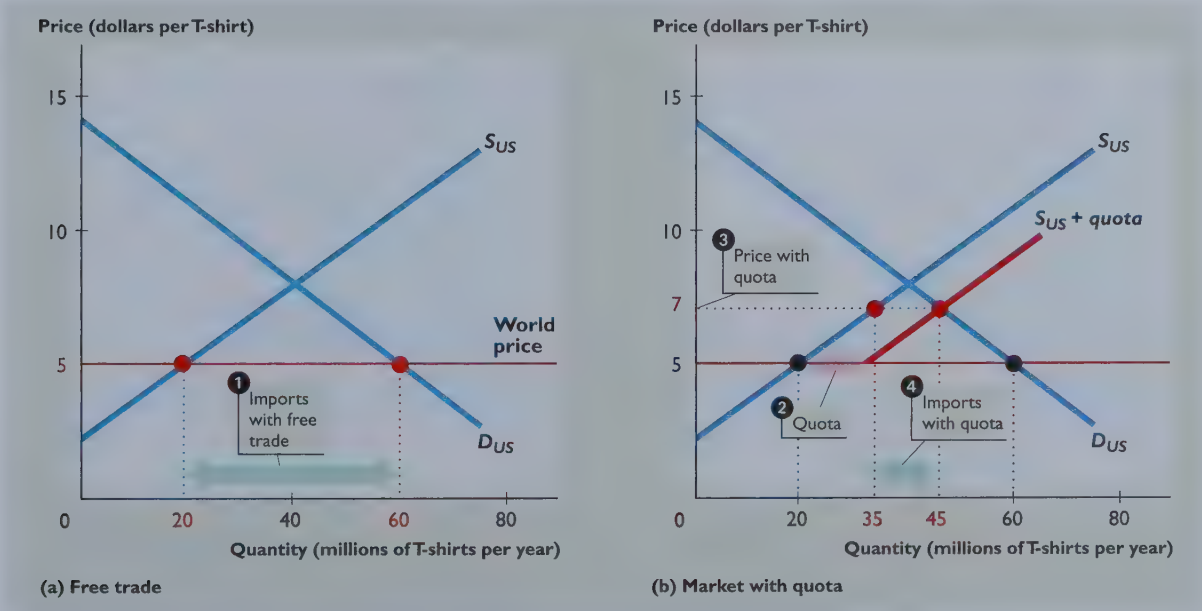
Quotas enable the government to satisfy the self-interest of people who earn their incomes in import-competing industries. You will see that like a tariff, a quota on imports decreases the gains from trade and is not in the social interest.

The Effects of an Import Quota

The effects of an import quota are similar to those of a tariff. The price rises, the quantity bought decreases, and the quantity produced in the United States increases. Figure 9.7 illustrates the effects.

Figure 9.7(a) shows the situation with free international trade. Figure 9.7(b) shows what happens with a quota that limits imports to 10 million T-shirts a year. The U.S. supply curve of T-shirts becomes the domestic supply curve, S_{US}, plus the quantity that the quota permits to be imported. So the U.S. supply curve becomes the curve labeled S_{US} + *quota*. The price of a T-shirt rises to $7, the

FIGURE 9.7
The Effects of an Import Quota
MyEconLab Animation



With free trade, in part (a), Americans buy 60 million T-shirts at the world price. The United States produces 20 million T-shirts and ❶ imports 40 million T-shirts. ❷ With an import quota of 10 million T-shirts, in part (b), the U.S. supply curve becomes S_{US} + *quota*. ❸ The price rises to $7 a T-shirt. Domestic production increases, purchases decrease, and ❹ the quantity imported decreases.

quantity of T-shirts bought in the United States decreases to 45 million a year, the quantity of T-shirts produced in the United States increases to 35 million a year, and the quantity of T-shirts imported into the United States decreases to the quota quantity of 10 million a year. All these effects of a quota are identical to the effects of a $2 per T-shirt tariff, as you can check in Figure 9.6(b).

Winners, Losers, and the Social Loss from an Import Quota

An import quota creates winners and losers that are similar to those of a tariff but with an interesting difference. When the government imposes an import quota,

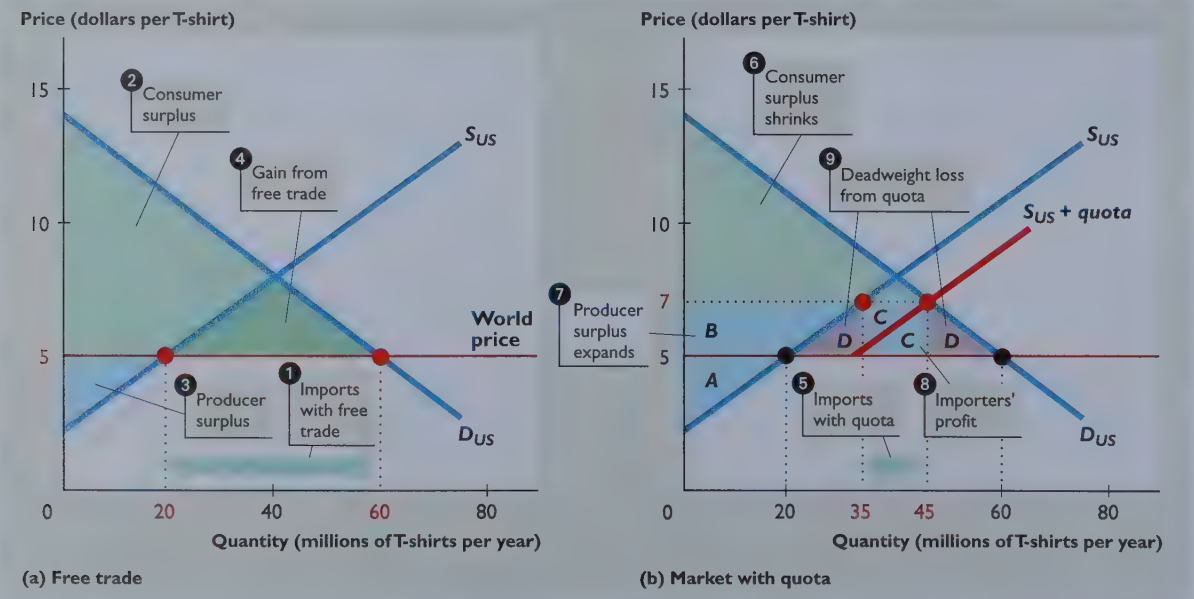
- U.S. producers of the good gain.
- U.S. consumers of the good lose.
- Importers of the good gain.
- U.S. consumers lose more than U.S. producers and importers gain.

Figure 9.8 compares the gains from trade under free trade with those under a quota. Figure 9.8(a) shows the consumer surplus and producer surplus with free international trade in T-shirts. By comparing Figure 9.8(b) with Figure 9.8(a), you can see how an import quota of 10 million T-shirts changes the surpluses. Producer surplus—the blue area—increases by the area labeled *B*. The increase in

FIGURE 9.8

The Winners and Losers from an Import Quota

MyEconLab Animation



The world price of a T-shirt is $5. With free trade, ❶ the United States imports 40 million T-shirts. ❷ Consumer surplus, ❸ producer surplus, and ❹ the gains from free trade are as large as possible. In part (b), an import quota raises the domestic price to $7 a T-shirt. ❺ The quantity imported decreases. ❻ Consumer surplus shrinks by the areas *B*, *C*, and *D*. ❼ Producer surplus expands by area *B*. ❽ Importers' profit is the areas *C*, and ❾ the quota creates a deadweight loss equal to the areas *D*.

producer surplus is the gain by U.S. producers from the import quota. Consumer surplus—the green area—shrinks. This decrease is the loss to consumers from the import quota.

The decrease in consumer surplus divides into three parts. First, some of the consumer surplus is transferred to producers. The blue area *B* represents this loss of consumer surplus (and gain of producer surplus). Second, part of the consumer surplus is transferred to importers who buy T-shirts for $5 (the world price) and sell them for $7 (the domestic price). The blue areas *C* represent this loss of consumer surplus and profit for importers.

The third part of the loss of consumer surplus is a transfer to no one: it is a *deadweight loss*. Consumers buy a smaller quantity at a higher price. The two gray areas labeled *D* represent this loss of consumer surplus. Total surplus decreases by this amount, which is the social loss from the import quota.

You can now see the one difference between an import quota and a tariff. A tariff brings in revenue for the government while an import quota brings a profit for the importer. All the other effects are the same, provided the quota is set at the same level of imports that results from the tariff.

Other Import Barriers

Two sets of policies that influence imports are

- Health, safety, and regulation barriers
- Voluntary export restraints

Health, Safety, and Regulation Barriers

Thousands of detailed health, safety, and other regulations restrict international trade. For example, U.S. food imports are examined by the Food and Drug Administration to determine whether the food is "pure, wholesome, safe to eat, and produced under sanitary conditions." The discovery of BSE (mad cow disease) in just one U.S. cow in 2003 was enough to close down international trade in U.S. beef. The European Union bans imports of most genetically modified foods, such as U.S.-produced soybeans. Although regulations of the type we've just described are not designed to limit international trade, they have that effect.

Voluntary Export Restraints

A *voluntary export restraint* is like a quota allocated to a foreign exporter of the good. A voluntary export restraint decreases imports just like an import quota does, but the foreign exporter gets the profit from the gap between the domestic price and the world price.

Export Subsidies

A **subsidy** is a payment by the government to a producer. An *export subsidy* is a payment by the government to the producer of an exported good. The U.S. and European Union governments subsidize farm products. These subsidies stimulate the production and export of farm products, but they make it harder for producers in other countries, notably in Africa and Central and South America, to compete in global markets. Export subsidies bring gains to domestic producers, but they result in overproduction in the domestic economy and underproduction in the rest of the world and so create a deadweight loss (see Chapter 6, p. 155).

Subsidy
A payment by the government to a producer.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 9.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 9.3

Explain the effects of international trade barriers.

Practice Problems

Before 1995, the United States imposed tariffs on goods imported from Mexico and Mexico imposed tariffs on goods imported from the United States. In 1995, Mexico joined NAFTA. U.S. tariffs on imports from Mexico and Mexican tariffs on imports from the United States are gradually being removed.

1. Explain how the price that U.S. consumers pay for goods imported from Mexico and the quantity of U.S. imports from Mexico have changed. Who, in the United States, are the winners and losers from this free trade?
2. Explain how the quantity of U.S. exports to Mexico and the U.S. government's tariff revenue from trade with Mexico have changed.
3. Suppose that this year, tomato growers in Florida lobby the U.S. government to impose an import quota on Mexican tomatoes. Explain who, in the United States, would gain and who would lose from such a quota.

In the News

Indonesians bemoan Hollywood blockbuster blackout

Four months ago Indonesia imposed an import tariff on Hollywood movies. The tariff was meant "to protect local film makers." The major Hollywood studios responded by withdrawing their films from Indonesia.

Source: *The Jakarta Post*, July 6, 2011

Explain how this tariff influences the price of seeing a movie in Indonesia, the quantity of movies produced in Indonesia, and Indonesia's gains from trade with the United States. Who, in Indonesia, gains from the tariff and who loses?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The price that U.S. consumers pay for goods imported from Mexico has fallen and the quantity of U.S. imports from Mexico has increased. The winners are U.S. consumers of goods imported from Mexico and the losers are U.S. producers of goods imported from Mexico.
2. The quantity of U.S. exports to Mexico has increased and the U.S. government's tariff revenue from trade with Mexico has fallen.
3. With an import quota, the price of tomatoes in the United States would rise and the quantity bought would decrease. Consumer surplus would decrease. Growers would receive a higher price, produce a larger quantity, and producer surplus would increase. The U.S. total surplus in the tomato market would be redistributed from consumers to producers, but it would decrease.

Solution to In the News

The tariff raises the price of seeing a movie in Indonesia. The production of movies in Indonesia increases, and imports of Hollywood movies fall to zero. Indonesia's gains from trade with the United States decrease. With the higher price, consumer surplus decreases—consumers lose. Producer surplus increases—producers gain. The government collected zero tariff revenue.

9.4 THE CASE AGAINST PROTECTION

For as long as nations and international trade have existed, people have debated whether free international trade or protection from foreign competition is better for a country. The debate continues, but most economists believe that free trade promotes prosperity for all countries while protection reduces the potential gains from trade. We've seen the most powerful case for free trade: All countries benefit from their comparative advantage. But there is a broader range of issues in the free trade versus protection debate. Let's review these issues.

Three Traditional Arguments for Protection

Three traditional arguments for protection and restricting international trade are

- The national security argument
- The infant-industry argument
- The dumping argument

Let's look at each in turn.

The National Security Argument

The national security argument is that a country must protect industries that produce defense equipment and armaments and those on which the defense industries rely for their raw materials and other intermediate inputs. This argument for protection can be taken too far.

First, it is an argument for international isolation, for in a time of war, there is no industry that does not contribute to national defense. Second, if the case is made for boosting the output of a strategic industry—say aerospace—it is more efficient to achieve this outcome with a subsidy financed out of taxes than with a tariff or import quota. A subsidy would keep the industry operating at the scale that is judged appropriate, and free international trade would keep the prices faced by consumers at their world market levels.

The Infant-Industry Argument

The **infant-industry argument** is that it is necessary to protect a new industry to enable it to grow into a mature industry that can compete in world markets. The argument is based on an idea called *learning-by-doing*. By working repeatedly at a task, workers become better at that task and can increase the amount they produce in a given period.

Infant-industry argument
The argument that it is necessary to protect a new industry to enable it to grow into a mature industry that can compete in world markets.

There is nothing wrong with the idea of learning-by-doing. It is a powerful engine of human capital accumulation and economic growth. Learning-by-doing can change comparative advantage. If on-the-job experience lowers the opportunity cost of producing a good, a country might develop a comparative advantage in producing that good. Learning-by-doing does not justify protection.

It is in the self-interest of firms and workers who benefit from learning-by-doing to produce the efficient quantities. If the government protected these firms to boost their production, there would be an inefficient overproduction (just like the overproduction in Chapter 6, p. 156).

The historical evidence is against the protection of infant industries. Countries in East Asia that have not given such protection have performed well. Countries that have protected infant industries, as India once did, have performed poorly.

The Dumping Argument

Dumping
When a foreign firm sells its exports at a lower price than its cost of production.

Dumping occurs when a foreign firm sells its exports at a lower price than its cost of production. You might be wondering why a firm would ever want to sell any of its output at a price below the cost of production. Wouldn't such a firm be better off either selling nothing, or, if it could do so, raising its price to at least cover its costs? Two possible reasons why a firm might sell at a price below cost and therefore engage in dumping are

- Predatory pricing
- Subsidy

Predatory Pricing A firm that engages in *predatory pricing* sets its price below cost in the hope that it can drive its competitors out of the market. If a firm in one country tries to drive out competitors in another country, it will be *dumping* its product in the foreign market. The foreign firm sells its output at a price below its cost to drive domestic firms out of business. When the domestic firms have gone, the foreign firm takes advantage of its monopoly position and charges a higher price for its product. The higher price will attract new competitors, which makes it unlikely that this strategy will be profitable. For this reason, economists are skeptical that this type of dumping occurs.

Subsidy A *subsidy* is a payment by the government to a producer. A firm that receives a subsidy is able to sell profitably for a price below cost. Subsidies are very common in almost all countries. The United States and the European Union subsidize the production of many agricultural products and dump their surpluses on the world market. This action lowers the prices that farmers in developing nations receive and weakens the incentive to expand farming in poor countries. India and Europe have been suspected of dumping steel in the United States.

Whatever its source, dumping is illegal under the rules of the WTO, NAFTA, and CAFTA and is regarded as a justification for temporary tariffs. Consequently, anti-dumping tariffs have become important in today's world.

But there are powerful reasons to resist the dumping argument for protection. First, it is virtually impossible to detect dumping because it is hard to determine a firm's costs. As a result, the test for dumping is whether a firm's export price is below its domestic price. This test is a weak one because it can be rational for a firm to charge a lower price in markets in which the quantity demanded is highly sensitive to price and a higher price in a market in which demand is less price-sensitive.

Second, it is hard to think of a good that is produced by a single firm. Even if all the domestic firms were driven out of business in some industry, it would always be possible to find several and usually many alternative foreign sources of supply and to buy at prices determined in competitive markets.

Third, if a good or service were a truly global natural monopoly, the best way to deal with it would be by regulation—just as in the case of domestic monopolies. Such regulation would require international cooperation.

The three arguments for protection that we've just examined have an element of credibility. The counterarguments are in general stronger, so these arguments do not make the case for protection. They are not the only arguments that you might encounter. There are many others, four of which we'll now examine.

Four Newer Arguments for Protection

Four newer and commonly made arguments for restricting international trade are that protection

- Saves jobs
- Allows us to compete with cheap foreign labor
- Brings diversity and stability
- Penalizes lax environmental standards

Saves Jobs

When Americans buy imported goods such as shoes from Brazil, U.S. workers who produce shoes lose their jobs. With no earnings and poor prospects, these workers become a drain on welfare and spend less, which creates a ripple effect of further job losses. The proposed solution is to protect U.S. jobs by banning imports of cheap foreign goods. The proposal is flawed for the following reasons.

First, free trade does cost some jobs, but it also creates other jobs. It brings about a global rationalization of labor and allocates labor resources to their highest-valued activities. Because of international trade in textiles, tens of thousands of workers in the United States have lost jobs because textile mills and other factories have closed. Tens of thousands of workers in other countries now have jobs because textile mills have opened there. And tens of thousands of U.S. workers now have better-paying jobs than as textile workers because other export industries have expanded and created more jobs than have been destroyed.

Second, imports create jobs. They create jobs for retailers that sell imported goods and for firms that service those goods. They also create jobs by creating incomes in the rest of the world, some of which are spent on imports of U.S.-made goods and services.

Protection saves some particular jobs, but it does so at a high cost. For example, until 2005, textile jobs in the United States were protected by import quotas imposed under an international agreement called the Multifiber Arrangement (or MFA). The U.S. International Trade Commission (ITC) estimated that because of import quotas, 72,000 jobs existed in textiles that would otherwise disappear and annual clothing expenditure in the United States was $15.9 billion ($160 per family) higher than it would be with free trade. An implication of the ITC estimate is that each textile job saved cost consumers $221,000 a year. The end of the MFA led to the destruction of a large number of textile jobs in the United States and Europe in 2005.

Allows Us to Compete with Cheap Foreign Labor

With the removal of protective tariffs in U.S. trade with Mexico, some people said that jobs would be sucked into Mexico and that the United States would not be able to compete with its southern neighbor. Let's see what's wrong with this view.

Labor costs depend on the wage rate and the quantity a worker produces. For example, if a U.S. auto worker earns $30 an hour and produces 15 units of output an hour, the average labor cost of a unit of output is $2. If a Mexican auto worker earns $3 an hour and produces 1 unit of output an hour, the average labor cost of a unit of output is $3. Other things remaining the same, the greater the output a worker produces, the higher is the worker's wage rate. High-wage workers produce a large output. Low-wage workers produce a small output.

Although high-wage U.S. workers are more productive, on the average, than lower-wage Mexican workers, there are differences across industries. U.S. labor is relatively more productive in some activities than in others. For example, the productivity of U.S. workers in producing movies, financial services, and customized computer chips is relatively higher than their productivity in the production of metals and some standardized machine parts. The activities in which U.S. workers are relatively more productive than their Mexican counterparts are those in which the United States has a comparative advantage. By engaging in free trade, increasing our production and exports of the goods and services in which we have a comparative advantage, and decreasing our production and increasing our imports of the goods and services in which our trading partners have a comparative advantage, we can make ourselves and the citizens of other countries better off.

Brings Diversity and Stability

A diversified investment portfolio is less risky than one that has all of its eggs in one basket. The same is true for an economy's production. A diversified economy fluctuates less than an economy that produces only one or two goods.

Most economies, whether the rich, advanced United States, Japan, and Europe or the developing China and Brazil, have diversified production and do not have this type of stability problem. A few economies, such as Saudi Arabia, have a comparative advantage that leads to the specialized production of only one good. But even these economies can stabilize their income and consumption by investing in a wide range of production activities in other countries.

Penalizes Lax Environmental Standards

A new argument for protection is that many poorer countries, such as Mexico, do not have the same environmental standards that we have, and because they are willing to pollute and we are not, we cannot compete with them without tariffs. If these countries want free trade with the richer and "greener" countries, then they must raise their environmental standard.

This argument for trade restrictions is not entirely convincing. A poor country is less able than a rich one to devote resources to achieving high environmental standards. If free trade helps a poor country to become richer, then it will also help that country to develop the means to improve its environment. But there probably is a case for using the negotiation of free trade agreements such as NAFTA and CAFTA to hold member countries to higher environmental standards. There is an especially large payoff from using such bargaining to try to avoid irreversible damage to resources such as tropical rainforests.

So the four common arguments that we've just considered do not provide overwhelming support for protection. They all have flaws and leave the case for free international trade a strong one.

Why Is International Trade Restricted?

Why, despite all the arguments against protection, is international trade restricted? One reason that applies to developing nations is that the tariff is a convenient source of government revenue, but this reason does not apply to the United States where the government has access to income taxes and sales taxes.

Political support for international trade restrictions in the United States and most other developed countries arises from rent seeking. **Rent seeking** is lobbying and other political activity that seeks to capture the gains from trade. You've seen that free trade benefits consumers but shrinks the producer surplus of firms that compete in markets with imports.

Rent seeking
Lobbying and other political activity that aims to capture the gains from trade.

The winners from free trade are the millions of consumers of low-cost imports, but the benefit per individual consumer is small. The losers from free trade are the producers of import-competing items. Compared to the millions of consumers, there are only a few thousand producers.

Now think about imposing a tariff on clothing. Millions of consumers will bear the cost in the form of a smaller consumer surplus and a few thousand garment makers and their employees will share the gain in producer surplus.

Because the gain from a tariff is large, producers have a strong incentive to incur the expense of lobbying *for* a tariff and *against* free trade. On the other hand, because each consumer's loss is small, consumers have little incentive to organize and incur the expense of lobbying *for* free trade. The gain from free trade for any one person is too small for that person to spend much time or money on a political organization to lobby for free trade. The loss from free trade will be seen as being so great by those bearing that loss that they will find it profitable to join a political organization to prevent free trade. Each group weighs benefits against costs and chooses the best action for themselves, but the anti-free-trade group will undertake more political lobbying than will the pro-free-trade group.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

International Trade

International trade plays an extraordinarily large role in your life in three broad ways. It affects you as a

- Consumer
- Producer
- Voter

As a *consumer*, you benefit from the availability of a wide range of low-cost, high-quality goods and services that are produced in other countries.

Look closely at the labels on the items you buy. Where was your computer made? Where were your shirt and your shoes made? Where are the fruits and vegetables that you buy, especially in winter, grown?

The answers to all these questions are most likely Asia, Mexico, or South America. A few items were produced in Europe, Canada, and the United States.

As a *producer* (or as a potential producer if you don't yet have a job), you benefit from huge global markets for U.S. products. Your job prospects would be much dimmer if the firm for which you work didn't have global markets in which to sell its products.

People who work in the aircraft industry, for example, benefit from the huge global market for large passenger jets. Airlines from Canada to China are buying Boeing 777 aircraft as fast as they can be pushed out of the production line.

Even if you were to become a college professor, you would benefit from international trade in education services when your school admits foreign students.

As a *voter*, you have a big stake in the politics of free trade versus protection. As a buyer, your self-interest is hurt by tariffs and quotas on imported goods. Each time you buy a $20 sweater, you contribute $5 to the government in tariff revenue. But as a worker, your self-interest might be hurt by offshoring and by freer access to U.S. markets for foreign producers.

So as you decide how to vote, you must figure out what trade policy serves your self-interest and what best serves the social interest.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 9.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 9.4

Explain and evaluate arguments used to justify restricting international trade.

Practice Problems

1. Japan sets an import quota on rice. California rice growers would like to export more rice to Japan. What are Japan's arguments for restricting imports of Californian rice? Are these arguments correct? Who loses from this restriction in trade?
2. The United States has, from time to time, limited imports of steel from Europe. What argument has the United States used to justify this quota? Who wins from this restriction? Who loses?
3. The United States maintains an import quota on sugar. What is the argument for this import quota? Is this argument flawed? If so, explain why.

In the News

Indonesians bemoan Hollywood blockbuster blackout
The Indonesian import tariff on Hollywood movies was meant "to protect local film makers," but major Hollywood studios withdrew their films.
Source: *The Jakarta Post*, July 6, 2011

What argument is Indonesia using against free trade with the United States? What is wrong with Indonesia's argument?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The main arguments are that Japanese rice is a better quality rice and that the quota limits competition faced by Japanese farmers. The arguments are not correct. If Japanese consumers do not like the quality of Californian rice, they will not buy it. The quota does limit competition and the quota allows Japanese farmers to use their land less efficiently. The big losers are the Japanese consumers who pay about three times the U.S. price for rice.
2. The U.S. argument is that European producers dump steel on the U.S. market. With an import quota, U.S. steel producers will face less competition and U.S. jobs will be saved. Workers in the steel industry and owners of steel companies will win at the expense of U.S. buyers of steel.
3. The argument is that the import quota protects the jobs of U.S. workers. The argument is flawed because the United States does not have a comparative advantage in producing sugar and so an import quota allows the U.S. sugar industry to be inefficient. With free international trade in sugar, the U.S. sugar industry would exist but it would be much smaller and more efficient.

Solution to In the News

Indonesia is using the infant-industry argument: Protection is needed to allow its movie industry to mature and, through learning-by-doing, Indonesia will develop a comparative advantage in movie production. What's wrong with this argument is that protected industries generally perform poorly and the country does not develop the comparative advantage.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain how markets work with international trade.

- Comparative advantage drives international trade.
- When the world price of a good is lower than the price that balances domestic demand and supply, a country gains by decreasing production and importing the good.
- When the world price of a good is higher than the price that balances domestic demand and supply, a country gains by increasing production and exporting the good.

2 Identify the gains from international trade and its winners and losers.

- Compared to a no-trade situation, in a market with imports, consumer surplus is larger, producer surplus is smaller, and total surplus is larger with free international trade.
- Compared to a no-trade situation, in a market with exports, consumer surplus is smaller, producer surplus is larger, and total surplus is larger with free international trade.

3 Explain the effects of international trade barriers.

- Countries restrict international trade by imposing tariffs, import quotas, other import barriers, and export subsidies.
- Trade restrictions raise the domestic price of imported goods, lower the quantity imported, decrease consumer surplus, increase producer surplus, and create a deadweight loss.

4 Explain and evaluate arguments used to justify restricting international trade.

- The arguments that protection is necessary for national security, for infant industries, and to prevent dumping are weak.
- Arguments that protection saves jobs, allows us to compete with cheap foreign labor, makes the economy diversified and stable, and is needed to penalize lax environmental standards are flawed.
- Trade is restricted because protection brings small losses to a large number of people and large gains to a small number of people.

Key Terms

Dumping, 232
Exports, 214
Import quota, 227
Imports, 214
Infant-industry argument, 231
Rent seeking, 235
Subsidy, 229
Tariff, 223

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 9 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

FIGURE 1 U.S. SHOE MARKET

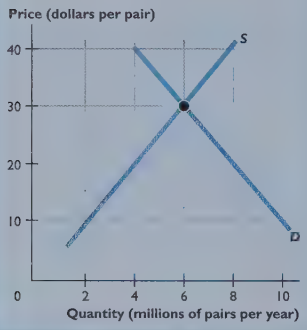
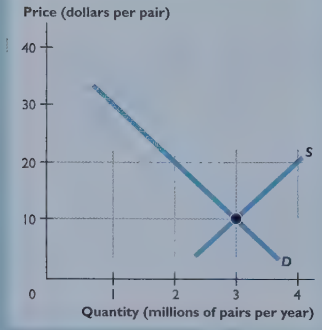


FIGURE 2 BRAZIL'S SHOE MARKET



CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Use Figures 1 and 2 to work Problems **1** to **4**. Figure 1 shows the U.S. market for shoes and Figure 2 shows Brazil's market for shoes if there is no international trade in shoes between the United States and Brazil.

1. Which country has a comparative advantage in producing shoes? With international trade, explain which country would export shoes and how the price of shoes in the importing country and the quantity produced by the importing country would change. Explain which country gains from this trade.
2. The world price of a pair of shoes is $20. Explain how consumer surplus and producer surplus in the United States change as a result of international trade. On the graph, show the change in U.S. consumer surplus (label it *A*) and the change in U.S. producer surplus (label it *B*).
3. The world price of a pair of shoes is $20. Explain how consumer surplus and producer surplus in Brazil change as a result of international trade. Show the change in Brazil's consumer surplus (label it *C*) and the change in Brazil's producer surplus (label it *D*).
4. Who in the United States loses from free trade in shoes with Brazil? Explain why.

Use the following information to work Problems **5** to **7**.

5. The supply of roses in the United States is made up of U.S. grown roses and imported roses. Draw a graph to illustrate the U.S. rose market with free international trade. On your graph, mark the price of roses and the quantities of roses bought, produced, and imported into the United States.
6. Who in the United States loses from this trade in roses and would lobby for a restriction on the quantity of imported roses? If the U.S. government put a tariff on rose imports, show on your graph the U.S. consumer surplus that is redistributed to U.S. producers and also the government's tariff revenue.
7. Suppose that the U.S. government puts an import quota on roses. Show on your graph the consumer surplus that is redistributed to producers and importers and also the deadweight loss created by the import quota.

Use the following information to work Problems **8** to **10**.

U.S. expands China paper anti-dumping tariff

The U.S. Commerce Department has raised the tariff on glossy paper imports from China up to 99.65 percent, as a result of complaints by NewPage Corp. of Dayton, Ohio. Imports from China increased 166 percent from 2005 to 2006. This glossy paper is used in art books, high-end magazines, and textbooks.

Source: *Reuters*, May 30, 2007

8. Explain who, in the United States, gains and who loses from this tariff on paper. How do you expect the prices of magazines and textbooks to change?
9. What is dumping? Who in the United States loses from China's dumping of glossy paper?
10. Explain what an anti-dumping tariff is. What argument might NewPage Corp. have used to persuade the U.S. Commerce Department to impose a 99.65 percent tariff?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

Use the following information to work Problems 1 and 2.

The future of U.S.–India relations

In May 2009, Secretary of State Hillary Clinton gave a major speech covering all the issues in U.S.–India relations. On economic and trade relations she noted that India maintains significant barriers to U.S. trade. The United States also maintains barriers against Indian imports such as textiles. Mrs. Clinton, President Obama, and Anand Sharma, the Indian Minister of Commerce and Industry, say they want to dismantle these trade barriers.

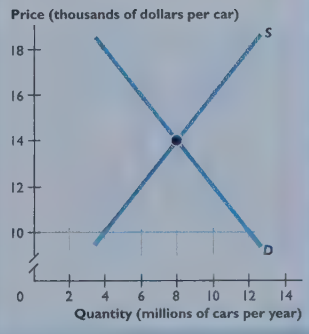
Source: www.state.gov

1. Explain who in the United States would gain and who might lose from dismantling trade barriers between the United States and India.
2. Draw a graph of the U.S. market for textiles and show how removing a tariff would change producer surplus, consumer surplus, and the deadweight loss from the tariff.
3. The United States exports wheat. Draw a graph to illustrate the U.S. wheat market if there is free international trade in wheat. On your graph, mark the price of wheat and the quantities bought, produced, and exported by the United States.
4. Suppose that the world price of sugar is 20 cents a pound, Brazil does not trade internationally, and the equilibrium price of sugar in Brazil is 10 cents a pound. Brazil then begins to trade internationally.
   - How does the price of sugar in Brazil change? Do Brazilians buy more or less sugar? Do Brazilian sugar growers produce more or less sugar?
   - Does Brazil export or import sugar and why?
5. The United States exports services and imports coffee. Why does the United States gain from exporting services and importing coffee? How do economists measure the net gain from this international trade?

Use Figure 1 and the following information to work Problems 6 to 8.

Figure 1 shows the car market in Mexico when Mexico places no restriction on the quantity of cars imported. The world price of a car is $10,000.

FIGURE 1



6. If the government of Mexico introduces a $2,000 tariff on car imports, what will be the price of a car in Mexico, the quantity of cars produced in Mexico, the quantity imported into Mexico, and the government's tariff revenue?
7. If the government of Mexico introduces an import quota of 4 million cars a year, what will be the price of a car in Mexico, the quantity of cars produced in Mexico, and the quantity imported?
8. What argument might be used to encourage the government of Mexico to introduce a $2,000 tariff on car imports from the United States? Who will gain and who will lose as a result of Mexico's tariff?
9. In the 1950s, Ford and General Motors established a small car-producing industry in Australia and argued for a high tariff on car imports. The tariff has remained through the years. Until 2000, the tariff was 22.5 percent. What might have been Ford's and General Motors' argument for the high tariff? Is the tariff the best way to achieve the goals of the argument?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 9 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The fundamental force driving international trade is comparative _____.
   A. advantage: a country exports those goods that have high prices
   B. abundance: the country that produces more than it needs exports the good
   C. advantage: the country with the lower opportunity cost of production exports the good
   D. cost: a country trades with other countries that produce cheaper goods
2. A country will export wheat if, with no international trade, _____.
   A. it produces a surplus of wheat
   B. its opportunity cost of producing wheat is below the world price
   C. it's domestic price of wheat exceeds the world price
   D. other countries have a shortage of wheat
3. With free trade between the United States and Canada, the United States exports tomatoes and Canada exports maple syrup. U.S. consumers _____.
   A. of tomatoes gain and Canadian consumers of maple syrup lose
   B. of both tomatoes and maple syrup gain more than either producer
   C. of maple syrup gain more than U.S. producers of maple syrup lose
   D. of tomatoes gain more than U.S. producers of tomatoes lose
4. With free trade between China and the United States, the winners are _____ and the losers are _____.
   A. U.S. consumers of U.S. imports; U.S. producers of the U.S. import good
   B. China's consumers of China's imports; China's producers of its export good
   C. U.S. producers of the U.S. export good; U.S. consumers of U.S. imports
   D. China's consumers of China's export good; China's producers of its imported good
5. The U.S. tariff on paper ____ the U.S. price of paper, _____ U.S. production of paper and _____the U.S. gains from trade.
   A. raises; increases; increases
   B. doesn't change; increases; increases
   C. doesn't change; doesn't change; decreases
   D. raises; increases; decreases
6. If Korea imposes an import quota on U.S. oranges, losers include Korean _____ of oranges and U.S. _____ of oranges.
   A. consumers; consumers
   B. consumers; producers
   C. producers; consumers
   D. producers; producers
7. The people who support restricted international trade say that _____.
   A. protection saves jobs, in both the U.S. and foreign economies
   B. U.S. firms won't be able to compete with low-wage foreign labor if trade is free
   C. outsourcing sends jobs abroad, which brings diversification and makes our economy more stable
   D. protection is needed to enable U.S. firms to produce the things at which they have a comparative advantage

How can we limit climate change?

10

Externalities

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain why negative externalities lead to inefficient overproduction and how property rights, pollution charges, and taxes can achieve a more efficient outcome.
2. Explain why positive externalities lead to inefficient underproduction and how public provision, subsidies, and vouchers can achieve a more efficient outcome.

EXTERNALITIES IN OUR DAILY LIVES

Externality
A cost or a benefit that arises from production and that falls on someone other than the producer; or a cost or benefit that arises from consumption and that falls on someone other than the consumer.

Negative externality
A production or consumption activity that creates an external cost.

Positive externality
A production or consumption activity that creates an external benefit.

An **externality** is a cost or a benefit that arises from production and that falls on someone other than the producer or a cost or a benefit that arises from consumption and that falls on someone other than the consumer. Before we embark on the two main tasks of this chapter, we're going to review the range of externalities, classify them, and give some everyday examples.

First, an externality can arise from either a production activity or a consumption activity. Second, it can be either a **negative externality**, which imposes an external cost, or a **positive externality**, which provides an external benefit. So there are four types of externalities:

- Negative production externalities
- Positive production externalities
- Negative consumption externalities
- Positive consumption externalities

Negative Production Externalities

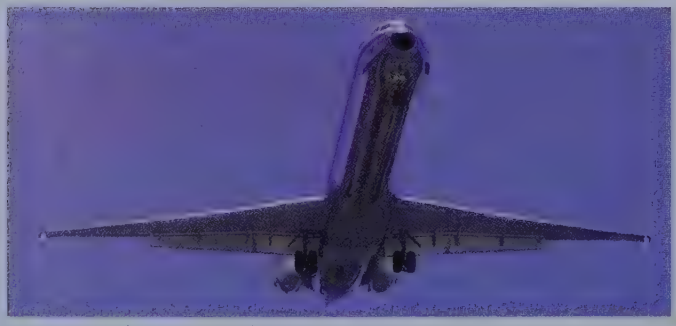
When the U.S. Open tennis tournament is being played at Flushing Meadows, players, spectators, and television viewers around the world share a negative production externality that many New Yorkers experience every day: the noise of airplanes taking off from LaGuardia Airport. Aircraft noise imposes a large cost on millions of people who live under the flight paths to airports in every major city.

Logging and the clearing of forests are sources of another negative production externality. These activities destroy the habitat of wildlife and influence the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, which has a long-term effect on temperature. So these external costs are borne by everyone and by future generations.

Pollution, which we examine in more detail in the next section, is a major example of this type of externality.

Positive Production Externalities

To produce orange blossom honey, Honey Run Honey of Chico, California, locates beehives next to an orange orchard. The honeybees collect pollen and nectar from the orange blossoms to make the honey. At the same time, they transfer pollen



Negative production externality.

Positive production externality.

between the blossoms, which helps to fertilize the blossoms. Two positive production externalities are present in this example. Honey Run Honey gets a positive production externality from the owner of the orange orchard; and the orange grower gets a positive production externality from Honey Run.

Negative Consumption Externalities

Negative consumption externalities are a source of irritation for most of us. Smoking tobacco in a confined space creates fumes that many people find unpleasant and that pose a health risk. So smoking in restaurants and on airplanes generates a negative externality. To avoid this negative externality, many restaurants and all airlines ban smoking. But while a smoking ban avoids a negative consumption externality for most people, it imposes a negative external cost on smokers who would prefer to enjoy the consumption of tobacco while dining or taking a plane trip.

Noisy parties and outdoor rock concerts are other examples of negative consumption externalities. They are also examples of the fact that a simple ban on an activity is not a solution. Banning noisy parties avoids the external cost on sleep-seeking neighbors, but it results in the sleepers imposing an external cost on the fun-seeking partygoers.

Permitting dandelions to grow in lawns, not picking up leaves in the fall, allowing a dog to bark loudly or to foul a neighbor's lawn, and letting a cell phone ring in class are other examples of negative consumption externalities.

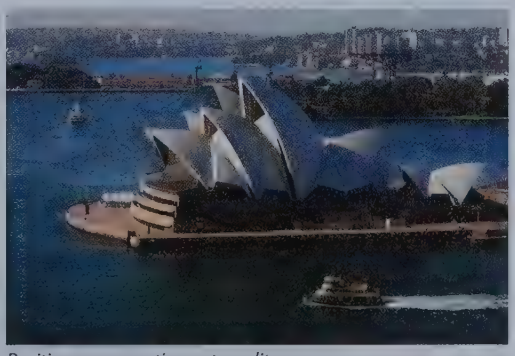
Positive Consumption Externalities

When you get a flu vaccination, you lower your risk of being infected. If you avoid the flu, your neighbor, who didn't get vaccinated, has a better chance of remaining healthy. Flu vaccinations generate positive consumption externalities.

When the owner of a historic building restores it, everyone who sees the building gets pleasure from it. Similarly, when someone erects a spectacular home—such as those built by Frank Lloyd Wright during the 1920s and 1930s—or other exciting building—such as the Chrysler and Empire State Buildings in New York or the Opera House in Sydney, Australia—an external consumption benefit flows to everyone who has an opportunity to view it.

Education, which we examine in more detail in this chapter, is a major example of this type of externality.

Negative consumption externality.



Positive consumption externality.

10.1 NEGATIVE EXTERNALITIES: POLLUTION

Pollution is an example of a *negative externality*. Both production and consumption activities create pollution. Here, we'll focus on pollution as a negative production externality. When a chemical factory dumps waste into a river, the people who live by the river and use it for fishing and boating bear the cost of the pollution. The chemical factory does not consider the cost of pollution when it decides the quantity of chemicals to produce. The factory's supply curve is based on its own costs, not on the costs that it inflicts on others. You're going to see that when external costs are present, we produce more output than the efficient quantity and we get more pollution than the efficient quantity.

Pollution and other environmental problems are not new. Preindustrial towns and cities in Europe had severe sewage disposal problems that created cholera epidemics and plagues that killed millions. Nor is the desire to find solutions to environmental problems new. The development in the fourteenth century of a pure water supply and the hygienic disposal of garbage and sewage are examples of early efforts to improve the quality of the environment.

Popular discussions about pollution focus on physical aspects of the environment, not on costs and benefits. A common assumption is that activities that damage the environment are wrong and must cease. An economic study of the environment emphasizes costs and benefits and economists talk about the efficient amount of pollution or environmental damage. This emphasis on costs and benefits does not mean that economists, as citizens, don't have the same goals as others and value a healthy environment. Nor does it mean that economists have the right answers and everyone else has the wrong ones. Rather, economics provides a set of tools and principles that help to clarify the issues.

The starting point for an economic analysis of the environment is the distinction between private costs and social costs.

Private Costs and Social Costs

A *private cost* of production is a cost that is borne by the producer of a good or service. *Marginal cost* is the cost of producing an *additional unit* of a good or service. So **marginal private cost** (*MC*) is the cost of producing an additional unit of a good or service that is borne by the producer of that good or service.

Marginal private cost
The cost of producing an additional unit of a good or service that is borne by the producer of that good or service.

You've seen that an *external cost* is a cost of producing a good or service that is *not* borne by the producer but borne by other people. A **marginal external cost** is the cost of producing an additional unit of a good or service that falls on people other than the producer.

Marginal external cost
The cost of producing an additional unit of a good or service that falls on people other than the producer.

Marginal social cost (*MSC*) is the marginal cost incurred by the entire society—by the producer and by everyone else on whom the cost falls—and is the sum of marginal private cost and marginal external cost. That is,

Marginal social cost
The marginal cost incurred by the entire society—by the producer and by everyone else on whom the cost falls. It is the sum of marginal private cost and marginal external cost.

$$MSC = MC + \text{Marginal external cost.}$$

We express costs in dollars, but we must always remember that a cost is an opportunity cost—the best thing we give up to get something. A marginal external cost is what someone other than the producer of a good or service must give up when the producer makes one more unit of the item. Something real that people value, such as a clean river or clean air, is given up.

Valuing an External Cost

Economists use market prices to put a dollar value on the cost of pollution. For example, suppose that there are two similar rivers, one polluted and the other clean. Five hundred identical homes are built along the side of each river. The homes on the clean river rent for $2,500 a month, and those on the polluted river rent for $1,500 a month. If the pollution is the only detectable difference between the two rivers and the two locations, the rent decrease of $1,000 per month is the cost of the pollution. For the 500 homes, the external cost is $500,000 a month.

External Cost and Output

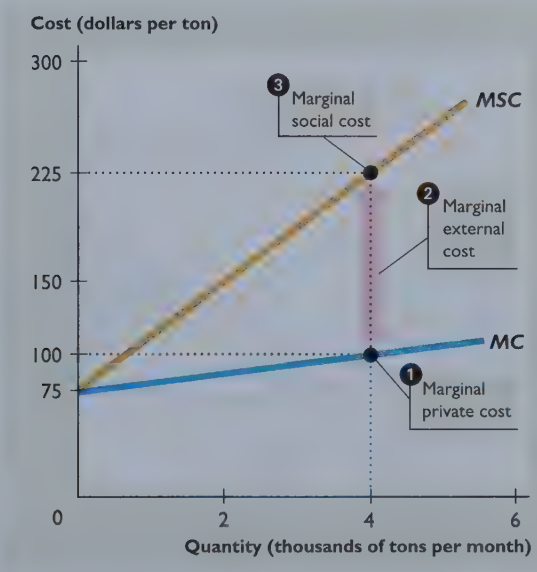
Figure 10.1 shows an example of the relationship between output and cost in a chemical industry that pollutes. The marginal cost curve, *MC*, describes the private marginal cost borne by the firms that produce the chemical. Marginal cost increases as the quantity of the chemical produced increases. If the firms dump waste into a river, they impose an external cost that increases with the amount of the chemical produced. The marginal social cost curve, *MSC*, is the sum of marginal private cost and marginal external cost. For example, when firms produce 4,000 tons of chemical a month, marginal private cost is $100 a ton, marginal external cost is $125 a ton, and marginal social cost is $225 a ton.

In Figure 10.1, as the quantity of the chemical produced increases, the amount of pollution increases and the external cost of pollution increases. The quantity of the chemical produced and the pollution created depend on how the market for the chemical operates. First, we'll see what happens when the industry is free to pollute.

FIGURE 10.1

An External Cost

MyEconLab Animation



The *MC* curve shows the marginal private cost borne by the factories that produce a chemical. The *MSC* curve shows the sum of marginal private cost and marginal external cost.

When the quantity of chemical produced is 4,000 tons a month, ❶ marginal private cost is $100 a ton, ❷ marginal external cost is $125 a ton, and ❸ marginal social cost is $225 a ton.

Production and Pollution: How Much?

When an industry is unregulated, the amount of pollution it creates depends on the market equilibrium price and quantity of the good produced. Figure 10.2 illustrates the outcome in the market for a pollution-creating chemical.

The demand curve for the chemical is *D*. This curve also measures the marginal benefit, *MB*, to the buyers of the chemical (see Chapter 6, p. 146). The supply curve is *S*. This curve also measures the marginal private cost, *MC*, of the producers (see Chapter 6, p. 149). The supply curve is the marginal private cost curve because when firms make their production and supply decisions, they consider only the costs that they will bear. Market equilibrium occurs at a price of $100 a ton and a quantity of 4,000 tons of chemical a month.

This equilibrium is inefficient. You learned in Chapter 6 that the allocation of resources is efficient when marginal benefit equals marginal cost. But we must count all the costs—private and external—when we compare marginal benefit and marginal cost. With an external cost, the allocation is efficient when marginal benefit equals marginal *social* cost. This outcome occurs when the quantity of the chemical produced is 2,000 tons a month. The market equilibrium *overproduces* by 2,000 tons of chemical a month and creates a deadweight loss, the gray triangle.

Because the pollution creates a deadweight loss, reducing the amount of pollution and eliminating the deadweight loss brings potential gains for everyone. If some method can be found to achieve this outcome, everyone—the owners of the factories and the residents of the riverside homes—can gain. How can the people who live by the polluted river get the chemical factories to decrease their output of the chemical and create less pollution? Let's explore some solutions.

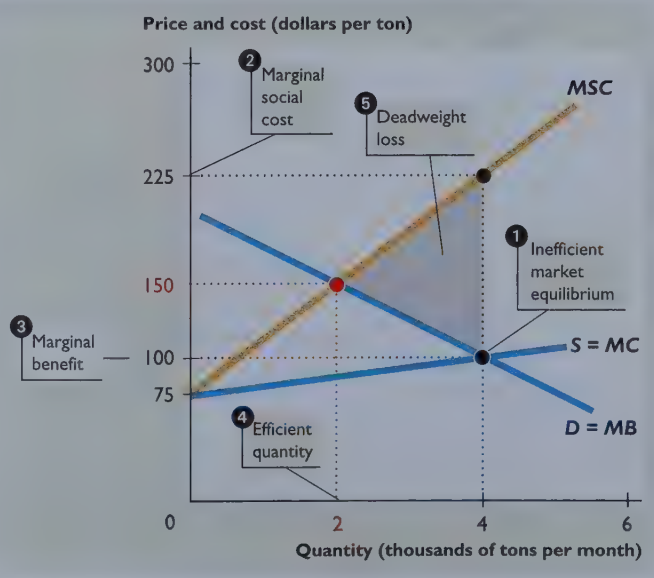
FIGURE 10.2

Inefficiency with an External Cost

MyEconLab Animation

The market supply curve is the marginal private cost curve, $S = MC$. The demand curve is the marginal benefit curve, $D = MB$. The marginal social cost curve is *MSC*.

1. Market equilibrium at a price of $100 a ton and 4,000 tons of chemical a month is inefficient because 2 marginal social cost exceeds 3 marginal benefit.
4. The efficient quantity of chemical is 2,000 tons a month where marginal benefit equals marginal social cost.
5. The gray triangle shows the deadweight loss created by the pollution externality.



Property Rights

Sometimes it is possible to reduce the inefficiency arising from an externality by establishing a property right where one does not currently exist. **Property rights** are legally established titles to the ownership, use, and disposal of factors of production and goods and services that are enforceable in the courts.

Property rights
Legally established titles to the ownership, use, and disposal of factors of production and goods and services that are enforceable in the courts.

Suppose that the chemical factories own the river and the 500 homes alongside it. The rent that people are willing to pay depends on the amount of pollution. Using the earlier example, suppose that people are willing to pay $2,500 a month to live alongside a pollution-free river but only $1,500 a month to live with the pollution created by 4,000 tons of chemical a month. If the factories produce this quantity of chemical, they forgo $1,000 a month for each home and a total of $500,000 a month.

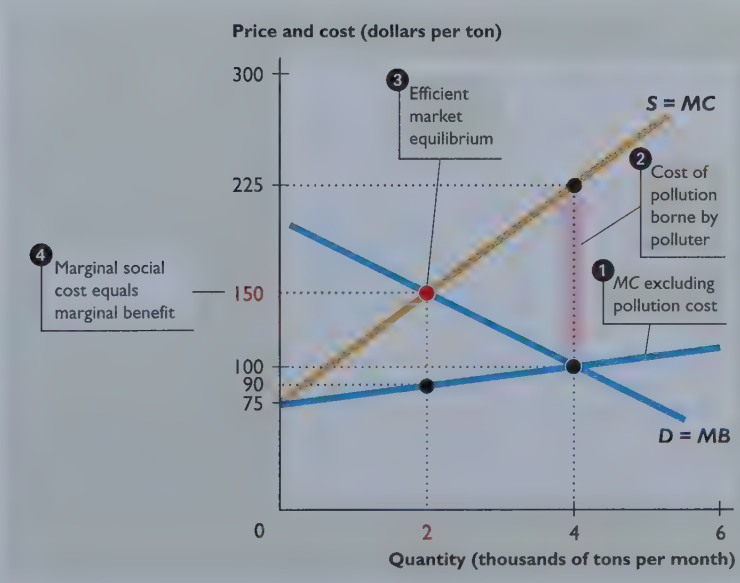
Because they own the homes of the people who suffer from the pollution, the chemical factories are now confronted with the cost of their pollution decision. They might still decide to pollute, but if they do, they face the opportunity cost of their actions—forgone rent from the people who live by the river.

Figure 10.3 illustrates the outcome. With property rights in place, the marginal cost curve in Figure 10.2 no longer measures all the factories' costs of producing the chemical. It excludes the pollution cost that they must now bear. The former *MSC* curve now becomes the marginal private cost curve *MC*. The market supply curve is based on all the marginal costs and is the curve labeled $S = MC$.

Market equilibrium now occurs at a price of $150 a ton and a quantity of 2,000 tons a month. This outcome is efficient. The factories still produce some pollution, but it is the efficient quantity.

FIGURE 10.3
Property Rights Achieve an Efficient Outcome

MyEconLab Animation



1 With property rights, the marginal cost curve that excludes the cost of pollution shows only part of the producers' marginal cost.

The marginal private cost curve includes 2 the cost of pollution, so the supply curve is $S = MC$.

3 Market equilibrium is at a price of $150 a ton and a quantity of 2,000 tons of chemical a month and is efficient because 4 marginal social cost equals marginal benefit.

The Coase Theorem

Does it matter how property rights are assigned? Does it matter whether the polluter or the victim of the pollution owns the resource that might be polluted? Until 1960, everyone—including economists who had thought long and hard about the problem—thought that it did matter. But in 1960, Ronald Coase had a remarkable insight, now called the Coase theorem.

Coase theorem
The proposition that if property rights exist, only a small number of parties are involved, and transactions costs are low, then private transactions are efficient and the outcome is not affected by who is assigned the property right.

The **Coase theorem** is the proposition that if property rights exist, only a small number of parties are involved, and transactions costs are low, then private transactions are efficient. There are no externalities because the transacting parties take all the costs and benefits into account. Furthermore, it doesn't matter who has the property right.

Application of the Coase Theorem

Let's apply the Coase theorem to the polluted river. In the example that we've just studied, the factories own both the river and the homes. Suppose that instead, the residents own both their homes and the river. Now the factories must pay a fee to the homeowners for the right to dump their waste. The greater the quantity of waste dumped into the river, the more the factories must pay. Again, the factories face the opportunity cost of the pollution they create. The quantity of chemical produced and the amount of waste dumped are the same, whoever owns the homes and the river. If the factories own them, they bear the cost of pollution because they receive a lower income from home rents. And if the residents own the homes and the river, the factories bear the cost of pollution because they must pay a fee to the homeowners. In both cases, the factories bear the cost of their pollution and dump the efficient amount of waste into the river.

Transactions costs
The opportunity costs of conducting a transaction.

The Coase solution works only when transactions costs are low. **Transactions costs** are the opportunity costs of conducting a transaction. For example, when you buy a house, you incur a series of transactions costs. You might pay a real estate agent to help you find the best place and a financial planner to help you get the best loan, and you pay a lawyer to run checks that assure you that the seller owns the property and that after you've paid for it, the ownership has been properly transferred to you.

In the example of the homes alongside a river, the transactions costs that are incurred by a small number of chemical factories and a few homeowners might be low enough to enable them to negotiate the deals that produce an efficient outcome. But in many situations, transactions costs are so high that it would be inefficient to incur them. In these situations, the Coase solution is not available.

Suppose, for example, that everyone owns the airspace above their homes up to, say, 10 miles. If someone pollutes your airspace, you can charge a fee. But to collect the fee, you must identify who is polluting your airspace and persuade them to pay you. Imagine the cost to you and the 50 million people who live in your part of the United States (and perhaps in Canada or Mexico) of negotiating and enforcing agreements with the several thousand factories that emit sulfur dioxide and create acid rain that falls on your property!

In this situation, we use public choices through governments to cope with externalities. Public choices avoid the private transactions costs that would arise if we used the Coase solution. But public choices are costly to make and monitor, so attempts by the government to deal with externalities offer no easy solution. Let's look at some of these attempts.

Government Actions in the Face of External Costs

The three main methods that governments use to cope with external costs are

- Pollution limits
- Pollution charges or taxes
- Marketable pollution permits (cap-and-trade)

Pollution Limits

A pollution limit seeks an efficient outcome by placing a quantity limit on a polluting activity. The 1990 Clean Air Act administered by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) employs this method and Figure 10.4 shows how it works. If the quantity produced is limited to the efficient quantity, the price rises so that marginal benefit equals marginal social cost. But because price exceeds marginal private cost, *MC*, a producer surplus arises.

Pollution limits are difficult to implement. The overall limit must be translated into a limit for each firm and compliance is costly to monitor. Also, because price exceeds marginal private cost, each firm has an incentive to increase its producer surplus by producing a quantity that exceeds the limit. The other two methods overcome some of these problems.

Pollution limits, charges or taxes, and cap-and-trade aim to curb greenhouse gas emissions.

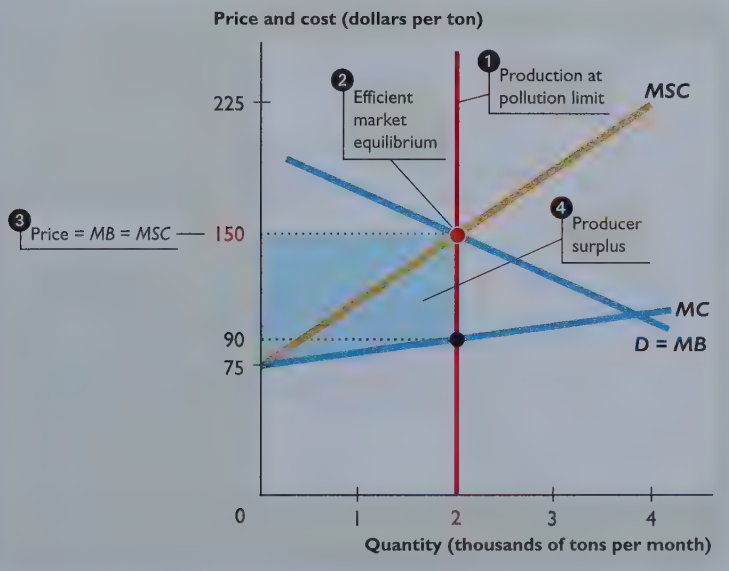
Pollution Charges or Taxes

Pollution charges or pollution taxes seek an efficient outcome by making a polluter pay the marginal external cost of pollution. Pollution charges have been used only modestly in the United States, but are common in Europe.

FIGURE 10.4

A Pollution Limit

MyEconLab Animation



1. A pollution limit is imposed that restricts production to the efficient quantity.
2. The efficient market equilibrium is achieved.
3. The market price is equal to marginal benefit, *MB*, and marginal social cost, *MSC*.
4. Because the price exceeds marginal cost, producers get a producer surplus equal to the area of the blue rectangle.

Figure 10.5 illustrates the effects of a pollution charge or pollution tax. By charging or taxing the producer at a rate equal to marginal external cost, the marginal social cost curve becomes the market supply curve. The market price rises, the quantity produced decreases to the efficient quantity, and the government collects a tax or pollution charge revenue shown by the purple rectangle.

Marketable Pollution Permits (Cap-and-Trade)

Marketable pollution permits (also called cap-and-trade) seek an efficient outcome by assigning or selling pollution rights to individual producers who are then free to trade permits with each other. The 1990 Clean Air Act and the 1994 Regional Clean Air Incentives Market (RECLAIM) in the Los Angeles basin successfully use this method of dealing with air pollution. This approach is also the centerpiece of a proposed American Clean Energy and Security Act of 2009 (see p. 252).

If marginal external cost is assessed correctly, an efficient outcome is achieved with any of the methods. But governments cannot make an accurate determination of external costs. Also, more importantly, some producers have a lower marginal cost of avoiding pollution than others.

In practice, pollution limits and pollution charges and taxes end up failing to achieve an efficient outcome because they confront all producers with the same incentives to avoid pollution. Cap-and-trade overcomes this problem and is the most effective of the three methods. Cap-and-trade requires an accurate determination of the overall quantity of pollution that brings efficiency, but it provides the strongest available incentive to individual producers to find cost effective technologies that achieve the pollution targets.

FIGURE 10.5

A Pollution Charge or Pollution Tax

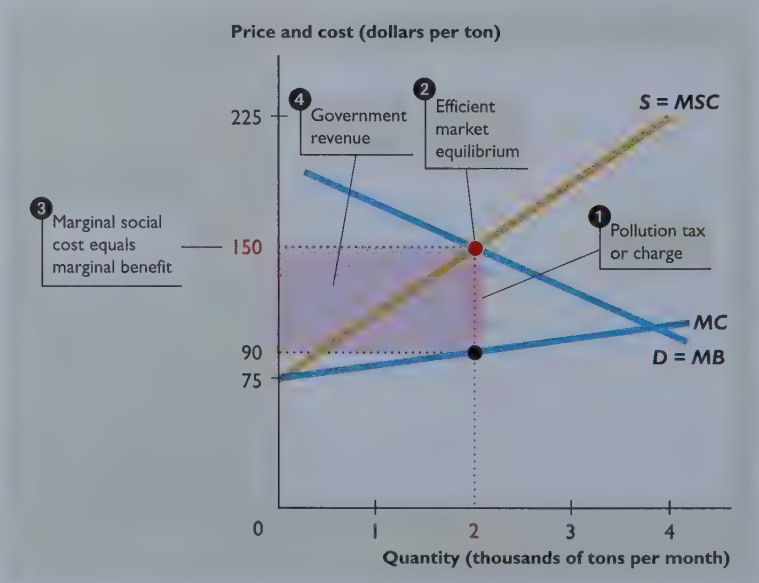
MyEconLab Animation

1. A pollution charge or tax is imposed that is equal to the marginal external cost of pollution.

   Because the pollution charge or tax equals the marginal external cost, the supply curve is the marginal social cost curve: S = *MSC*.

2. Market equilibrium is efficient because 3 marginal social cost equals marginal benefit.

4. The government collects tax revenue equal to the area of the purple rectangle.



Switching to Clean Technologies

In explaining the effects of alternative ways of coping with negative externalities, we have focused on getting the efficient quantity of production of a polluting activity. There is another way of coping with negative externalities: change the technology from one that pollutes to one that is clean.

Most of the improvements in the quality of our air (described in *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below) have come from improved technologies rather than from producing less. These trend improvements in air quality have occurred despite increases in transportation and electricity production, two of the main polluters.

Confronted with the marginal external cost of their actions by any of the means we have described above, if the marginal cost of production using a clean technology is lower than the marginal *social* cost of using the polluting technology, producers will adopt the clean technology.

The switch to electric cars and trucks to avoid the pollution that comes from burning gasoline and diesel is already happening. But unless we produce the electricity used by these vehicles with a clean technology, we're not gaining much.

Whether the cost of producing electricity with clean technologies such as solar, wind, and tidal power is lower than the social cost of using natural gas, coal, and oil is hard to say and controversial. There is no agreed estimate of the marginal external cost of carbon emissions. There is no doubt that the external costs are present and possibly large. But we need precise measurement to determine the efficient mix of polluting and clean technologies.

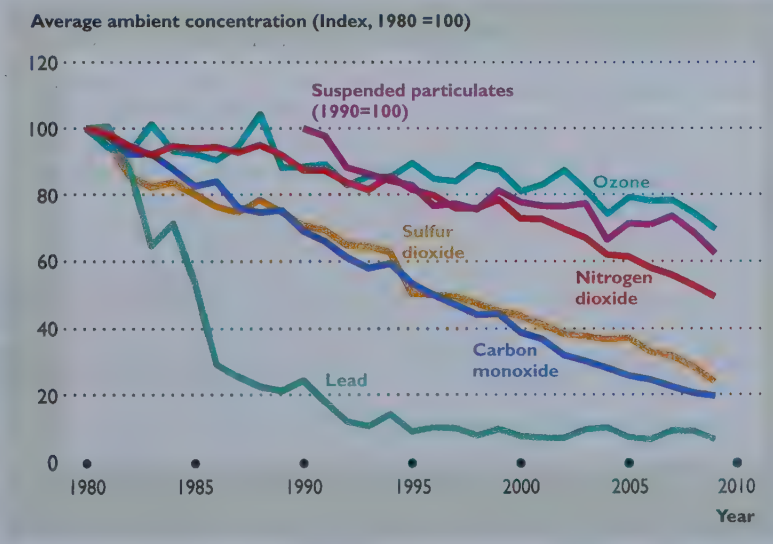
EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

U.S. Air Pollution Trends

Air quality in the United States has improved. The figure shows the trends since 1980 for the atmospheric concentrations of five main air pollutants monitored by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and a sixth pollutant (suspended particulates) monitored since 1990.

By using a mix of regulation, pollution limits, economic incentives, and permit trading, the EPA has almost eliminated lead and has substantially decreased sulfur dioxide, carbon monoxide, nitrogen dioxide, and suspended particulates.

Ozone is harder to eliminate, but it has nonetheless fallen to 70 percent of its 1980 level.



SOURCE OF DATA: Environmental Protection Agency, http://www.epa.gov/airtrends.

EYE on CLIMATE CHANGE

How Can We Limit Climate Change?

The average temperature of the Earth is rising and so is the atmospheric concentration of carbon dioxide, CO_2. The top figure shows these upward trends.

Scientists debate the contribution of human economic activity to the trends, but most believe it to be the source. Economists debate the costs and benefits of alternative ways of slowing CO_2 and other greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, but most favor action.

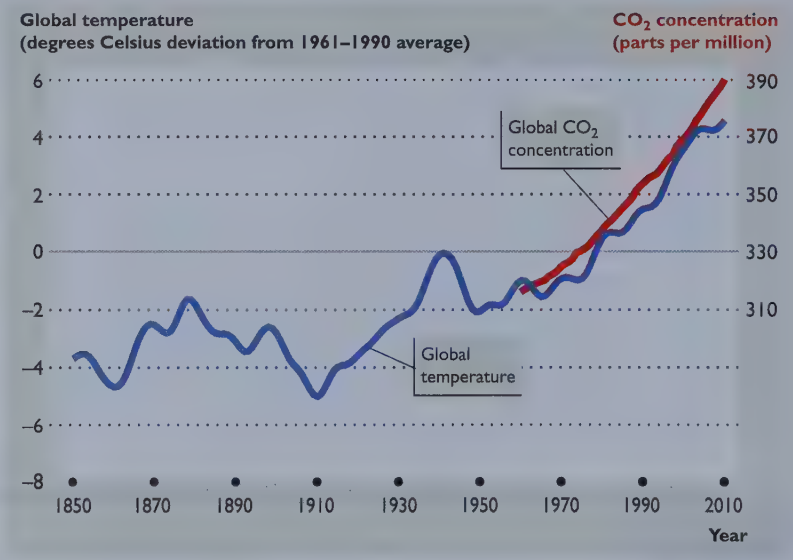
Economists agree that lowering GHG emissions requires *incentives* to change.

One idea is to cap emissions and issue tradeable emissions permits, a system called *cap-and-trade*. Carbon emission permits are already priced on a global carbon trading market.

The idea also has backers in Congress. On May 15, 2009, Representative Henry Waxman introduced the American Clean Energy and Security Act of 2009, which would use a cap-and-trade scheme. With 2005 levels as the base, GHG emissions would be capped at 97 percent by 2012, 83 percent by 2020, 58 percent by 2030, and 17 percent by 2050.

The Congressional Budget Office estimates that in 2020, a permit to emit one ton of GHG would cost $28 and the cost of the scheme would be about $175 per household per year.

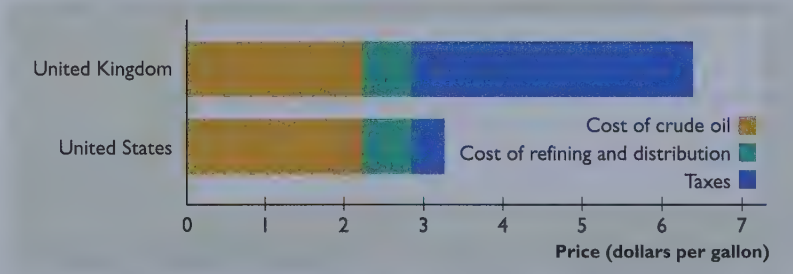
Another incentive might be a hike in the tax on gasoline. Americans pay a much lower gas tax than Europeans pay. The bottom figure shows the stark difference between the United States and the United Kingdom.



SOURCES OF DATA: Met Office Hadley Centre and Scripps Institution of Oceanography.

Why don't we have more aggressive caps and stronger incentives to encourage a larger reduction in GHG emissions? There are three reasons.

First, many people don't accept the scientific evidence that emissions produce global warming; second, the costs are certain and would be borne now, while the benefits would come many years in the future; and third, if current trends persist, by 2050, three quarters of carbon pollution will come not from the United States but from the developing economies.



SOURCES OF DATA: Energy Information Administration, Automobile Association, and authors' assumptions.

CHECKPOINT 10.1

Explain why negative externalities lead to inefficient overproduction and how property rights, pollution charges, and taxes can achieve a more efficient outcome.

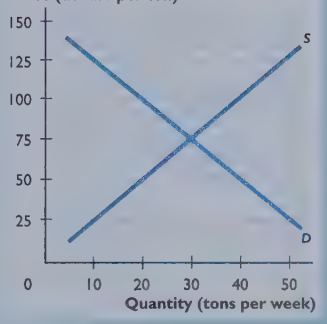
MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 10.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 illustrates the unregulated market for a pesticide. When factories produce pesticide, they also create waste, which they dump into a lake on the edge of the town. The marginal external cost of the dumped waste is equal to the marginal private cost of producing the pesticide (that is, the marginal social cost of producing the pesticide is double the marginal private cost).

FIGURE 1



1. What is the quantity of pesticide produced if no one owns the lake and what is the efficient quantity of pesticide? What is the deadweight loss?
2. If the town owns the lake, what is the quantity of pesticide produced and how much does the town charge the factories to dump waste?
3. If the pesticide factories own the lake, how much pesticide is produced?
4. If no one owns the lake and the government levies a pollution tax, what is the tax per ton of pesticide that achieves the efficient outcome?

In the News

New power-plant rule aids Northeast

A new Obama air pollution rule requires coal-fired power plants to reduce both smog and acid-rain causing pollutants. The coal industry says this rule is among the most expensive ever imposed by the EPA.

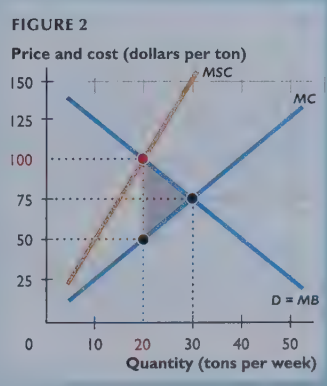
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, July 7, 2011

Explain how a pollution limit will change the quantity of electricity produced. For whom would the pollution limit be expensive?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. In Figure 2, production is 30 tons a week, the efficient quantity is 20 tons a week, and the deadweight loss is the area of the gray triangle.
2. The quantity of pesticide produced is the efficient quantity, 20 tons a week, and the town charge the factories $50 a ton of pesticide, which is the marginal external cost of the pollution produced by that quantity.
3. The factories produce the efficient quantity: 20 tons a week.
4. A pollution tax of $50 a ton paid by the factories achieves the efficient quantity of pesticide because the pollution tax equals the external cost.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

To reduce the amount of pollution, power plants must produce less. The quantity of electricity decreases and the price that consumers pay for electricity rises. The outcome is efficient if the quantity of electricity produced is that at which the marginal social cost of electricity equals its marginal benefit.

10.2 POSITIVE EXTERNALITIES: EDUCATION

Education benefits the students who receive it, and the many other people with whom a well-educated person interacts. To study the economics of education, we must distinguish between its private benefits and its social benefits.

Private Benefits and Social Benefits

Marginal private benefit
The benefit from an additional unit of a good or service that the consumer of that good or service receives.

Marginal external benefit
The benefit from an additional unit of a good or service that people other than the consumer of that good or service enjoy.

Marginal social benefit
The marginal benefit enjoyed by society—by the consumer of a good or service and by everyone else who benefits from it. It is the sum of marginal private benefit and marginal external benefit.

A *private benefit* is a benefit that the consumer of a good or service receives. The **marginal private benefit** (*MB*) is the benefit from an additional unit of a good or service that the consumer of that good or service receives.

An *external benefit* is a benefit from a good or service that someone other than the consumer receives. A **marginal external benefit** is the benefit from an additional unit of a good or service that people other than the consumer enjoy.

Marginal social benefit (*MSB*) is the marginal benefit enjoyed by society—by the consumers of a good or service (marginal private benefit) and by everyone else who benefits from it (the marginal external benefit). That is,

$$MSB = MB + \text{Marginal external benefit.}$$

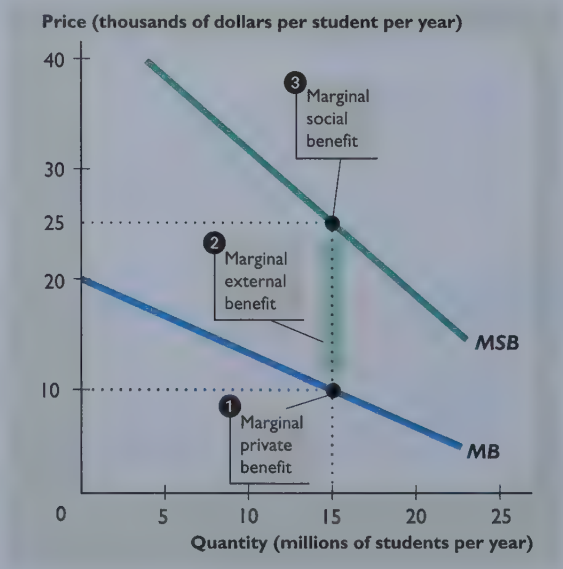
Figure 10.6 illustrates these benefit concepts using as an example college education. (The same principles apply to all levels of education.) The marginal benefit curve, *MB*, describes the marginal private benefit—such as expanded job opportunities and higher incomes—enjoyed by college graduates. Marginal private benefit decreases as the quantity of education increases.

FIGURE 10.6
An External Benefit

MyEconLab Animation

The *MB* curve shows the marginal private benefit enjoyed by the people who receive a college education. The *MSB* curve shows the sum of marginal private benefit and marginal external benefit.

When 15 million students attend college, ❶ marginal private benefit is $10,000 per student, ❷ marginal external benefit is $15,000 per student, and ❸ marginal social benefit is $25,000 per student.



But college graduates generate external benefits. On the average, college graduates communicate more effectively with others and tend to be better citizens. Their crime rates are lower, and they are more tolerant of the views of others. A society with a large number of college graduates can support activities such as high-quality music, theater, and other organized social activities.

In the example in Figure 10.6, the marginal external benefit is $15,000 per student per year when 15 million students enroll in college. Marginal social benefit is the sum of marginal private benefit and marginal external benefit. For example, when 15 million students a year enroll in college, the marginal private benefit is $10,000 per student and the marginal external benefit is $15,000 per student, so the marginal social benefit is $25,000 per student.

The marginal social benefit curve, *MSB*, is the sum of marginal private benefit and marginal external benefit. It is steeper than the *MB* curve because marginal external benefit diminishes for the same reasons that *MB* diminishes.

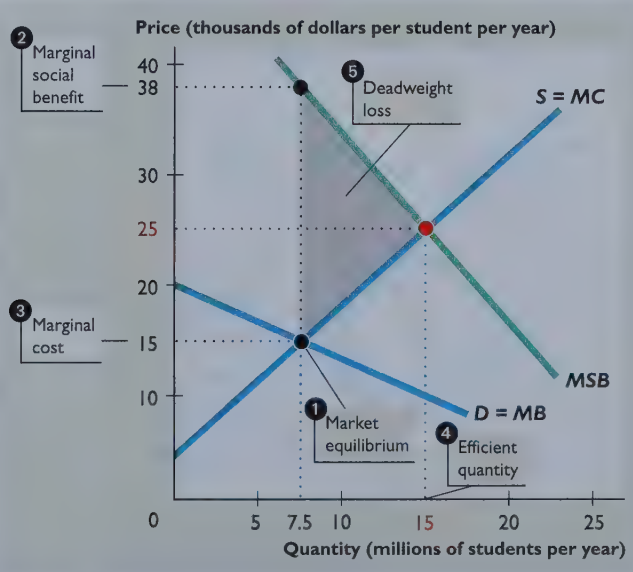
When people make decisions about how much schooling to undertake, they consider only its private benefits and if education were provided by private schools that charged full-cost tuition, there would be too few college graduates.

Figure 10.7 shows the underproduction that would occur if all college education were left to the private market. The supply curve is the marginal cost curve of the private schools, $S = MC$. The demand curve is the marginal private benefit curve, $D = MB$. Market equilibrium is at a tuition of $15,000 per student per year and 7.5 million students per year. At this equilibrium, marginal social benefit is $38,000 per student, which exceeds marginal cost by $23,000. Too few students enroll in college. The efficient number is 15 million, where marginal social benefit equals marginal cost. The gray triangle shows the deadweight loss created by the underproduction.

FIGURE 10.7

Underproduction with an External Benefit

MyEconLab Animation



The market demand curve is the marginal private benefit curve, $D = MB$. The supply curve is the marginal cost curve, $S = MC$.

1. Market equilibrium is at a tuition of $15,000 a year and 7.5 million students and is inefficient because
2. marginal social benefit exceeds
3. marginal cost.

4. The marginal social benefit curve is *MSB*, so the efficient number of students is 15 million a year.

5. The gray triangle shows the deadweight loss created because too few students enroll in college.

Government Actions in the Face of External Benefits

To get closer to producing the efficient quantity of a good or service that generates an external benefit, we make public choices through governments and modify the market outcome. To achieve a more efficient allocation of resources in the presence of external benefits, such as those that arise from education, governments can use three devices:

- Public provision
- Private subsidies
- Vouchers

Public Provision

Public provision
The production of a good or service by a public authority that receives most of its revenue from the government.

Public provision is the production of a good or service by a public authority that receives most of its revenue from the government. Education services produced by the public universities, colleges, and schools are examples of public provision.

Figure 10.8 shows how public provision might overcome the underproduction that arises in Figure 10.7. Public provision cannot lower the cost of production, so marginal cost is the same as before. Marginal private benefit, marginal external benefit, and marginal social benefit are also the same as before.

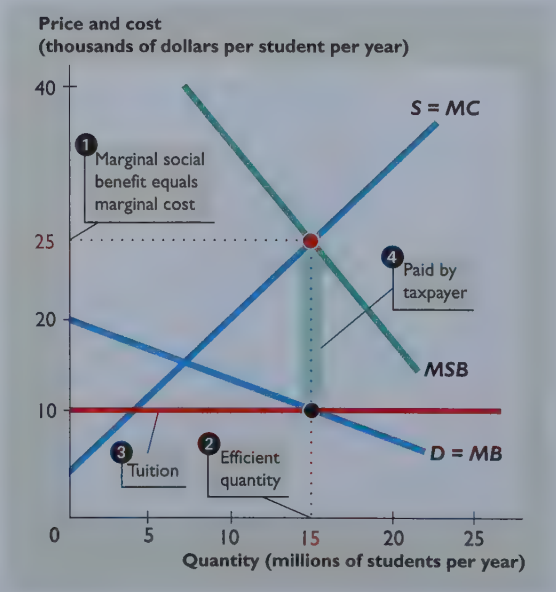
The efficient quantity occurs where marginal social benefit equals marginal cost. In Figure 10.8, this quantity is 15 million students per year. Tuition is set to ensure that the efficient number of students enroll. That is, tuition is set at the level that equals the marginal private benefit at the efficient quantity. In Figure 10.8, tuition is $10,000 a year. The rest of the cost of the public university is borne by the taxpayers and, in this example, is $15,000 per student per year.

FIGURE 10.8
Public Provision to Achieve an Efficient Outcome

MyEconLab Animation

❶ Marginal social benefit equals marginal cost with 15 million students enrolled in college, the ❷ efficient quantity.

❸ Tuition is set at $10,000 per year, and ❹ the taxpayers cover the remaining $15,000 of marginal cost per student.



Private Subsidies

Subsidy
A payment by the government to a producer to cover part of the costs of production.

A **subsidy** is a payment by the government to a producer to cover part of the costs of production. By giving producers a subsidy, the government can induce private decision makers to consider external benefits when they make their choices.

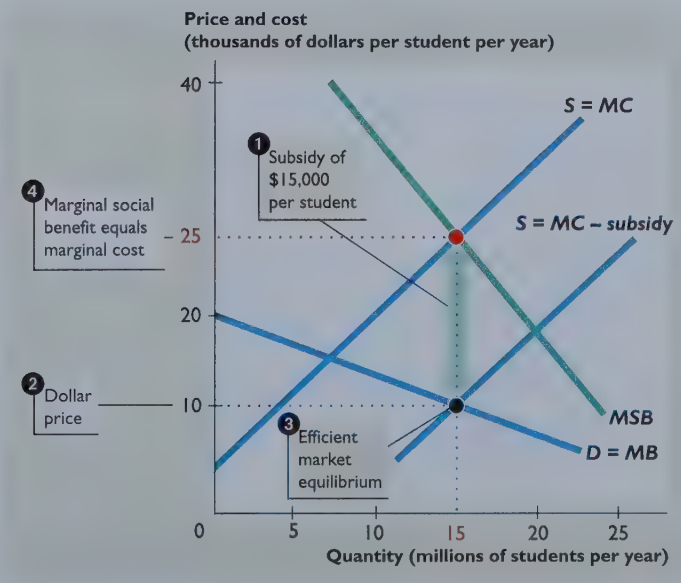
Figure 10.9 shows how a subsidy to private colleges works. In the absence of a subsidy, the marginal cost curve is the market supply curve of private college education, $S = MC$. The marginal benefit is the demand curve, $D = MB$. In this example, the government provides a subsidy to colleges of $15,000 per student per year. We must subtract the subsidy from the marginal cost of education to find the colleges' supply curve. That curve is $S = MC - subsidy$ in the figure. The equilibrium tuition (market price) is $10,000 a year, and the equilibrium quantity is 15 million students. To educate 15 million students, colleges incur a marginal cost of $25,000 a year. The marginal social benefit is also $25,000 a year. So with marginal cost equal to marginal social benefit, the subsidy has achieved an efficient outcome. The tuition and the subsidy just cover the colleges' marginal cost.

Public Provision Versus Private Subsidy In the two methods we've just studied, the same number of students enroll and tuition is the same. So are these two methods of providing education services equally good? This question is difficult to resolve. The bureaucrats that operate public schools don't have as strong an incentive to minimize costs and maximize *quality* as those who run private schools. But for elementary and secondary education, *charter schools* (see p. 259) might be an efficient compromise between traditional public schools and subsidized private schools.

FIGURE 10.9

Private Subsidy to Achieve an Efficient Outcome

MyEconLab Animation



With a ❶ subsidy of $15,000 per student, the supply curve is $S = MC - subsidy$.

❷ The equilibrium price is $10,000.

❸ The market equilibrium is efficient with 15 million students enrolled in college because ❹ marginal social benefit equals marginal cost.

Vouchers

Voucher
A token that the government provides to households, which they can use to buy specified goods or services.

A **voucher** is a token that the government provides to households, which they can use to buy specified goods or services. Food stamps that the U.S. Department of Agriculture provides under a federal Food Stamp Program are examples of vouchers. Vouchers for college education could be provided to students. Let's see how they would work.

The government would provide each student with a voucher. Students would choose the school to attend and pay the tuition with dollars plus a voucher. Schools would exchange the vouchers they receive for dollars from the government. If the government set the value of a voucher equal to the marginal external benefit of a year of college at the efficient quantity, the outcome would be efficient.

Figure 10.10 illustrates an efficient voucher scheme in action. The government issues vouchers worth $15,000 per student per year. Each student pays $10,000 tuition and the government pays $15,000 per voucher, so the school collects $25,000 per student. The voucher scheme results in 15 million students attending college, the marginal cost of a student equals the marginal social benefit, and the outcome is efficient.

Do Vouchers Beat Public Provision and Subsidy? Vouchers provide public financial resources to the consumer rather than the producer. Economists generally believe that vouchers offer a more efficient outcome than public provision and subsidies because they combine the benefits of competition among private schools with the injection of the public funds needed to achieve an efficient level of output. Also, students and their parents can monitor school performance more effectively than the government can (see *Eye on the U.S. Economy* opposite.)

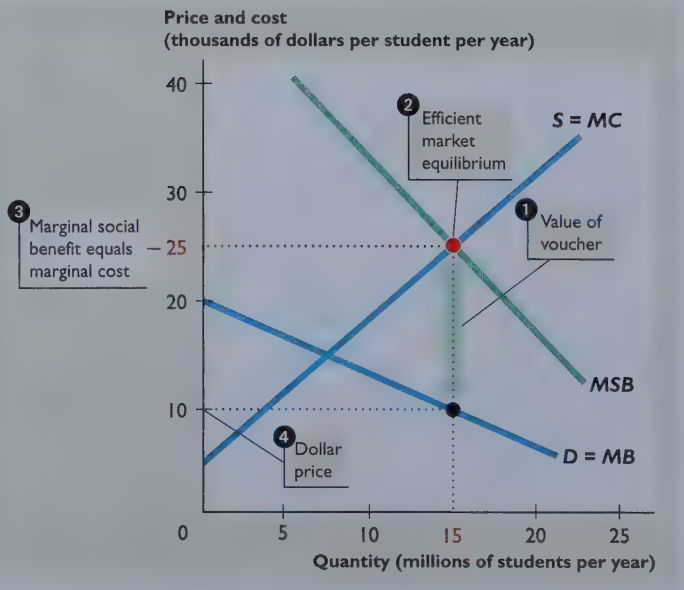
FIGURE 10.10

Vouchers Achieve an Efficient Outcome

MyEconLab Animation

With vouchers, buyers are willing to pay *MB* plus the value of the voucher.

1. The government issues vouchers to each student valued at $15,000.
2. The market equilibrium is efficient. With 15 million students enrolled in college, 3 marginal social benefit equals marginal cost.
4. Each student pays tuition of $10,000 (the dollar price) and the school collects $15,000 (the value of the voucher) from the government.



EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Education Quality: Charter Schools and Vouchers

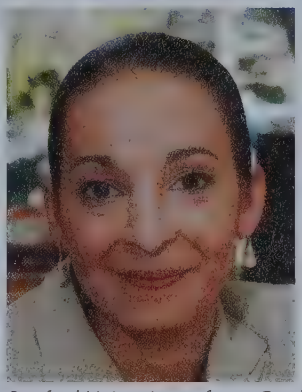
The three methods of achieving efficient education have similar effects on the *quantity* of education but different effects on its *quality*. And quality has become a big issue with international league tables showing U.S. students performing worse on standardized math and science tests than those in more than 20 other countries. Here, we look at two ways of trying to improve the quality of U.S. education: charter schools and school vouchers.

Charter Schools

A *charter school* is a *public* school but one that is free to make its own education policy. Around 4,000 charter schools in 40 states are operating today and they teach more than 1 million students. When the demand for places in a charter school exceeds the supply, students are chosen by lottery. How efficient are the charter schools?

School efficiency has two dimensions: cost per student and educational standard attained.

Charter schools perform well on both criteria. They cost less than public schools and they achieve more. Cost per student in New York charter schools is 18 percent less than regular public schools. And charter school students perform higher in math and reading than equivalent students who apply to but (randomly) don't get into a charter school.



Stanford University professor Caroline Hoxby says: "Tell me your goals and I'll design you a voucher to achieve them."

Vouchers

School vouchers are much less used than charter schools and more controversial. But an increasing number of states, among them Wisconsin, Louisiana, Ohio, the District of Columbia, and New York, operate a school voucher program.

Studies of the effects of vouchers have generated more controversies than firm conclusions, but some economists are convinced that they offer the best solution.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Externalities in Your Life

Think about the externalities, both negative and positive, that play a huge part in *your* life; and think about the incentives that attempt to align your self-interest with the social interest.

You respond to the gasoline tax by buying a little bit less gas than you otherwise would. As you saw in *Eye on Climate Change* (p. 252), this incentive is small compared to that in some other countries. With a bigger gas tax, such as that in the United Kingdom, for example, you would find ways of getting by with a smaller quantity of gasoline and your actions and those of millions of others would make the traffic on our highways much lighter.

You are responding to the huge incentive of subsidized tuition by being in school. Without subsidized college education, fewer people would attend college and university and with fewer college graduates, the benefits we all receive from living in a well-educated society would be smaller.

Think about your attitude as a citizen–voter to these two externalities. Should the gas tax be higher to discourage the use of the automobile? Should tuition be even lower to encourage even more people to enroll in school? Or have we got these incentives just right in the social interest?

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 10.2 and get instant feedback.

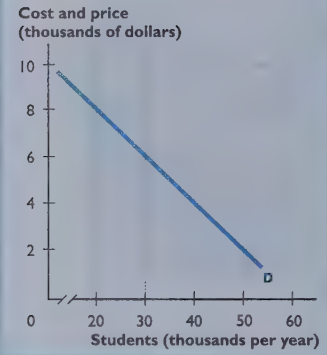
CHECKPOINT 10.2

Explain why positive externalities lead to inefficient underproduction and how public provision, subsidies, and vouchers can achieve a more efficient outcome.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the marginal private benefit from college education. The marginal cost of a college education is a constant $6,000 a year. The marginal external benefit from a college education is a constant $4,000 per student per year.

FIGURE 1



1. What is the efficient number of students? If colleges are private (no government involvement), how many people enroll, what is the tuition, and what is the deadweight loss?
2. If the government provides public colleges, what is the tuition that will achieve the efficient number of students? How much must taxpayers pay?
3. If the government subsidizes private colleges, what subsidy will achieve the efficient number of college students?
4. If the government offers students vouchers, what value of the voucher will achieve the efficient number of students?

In the News

Tuition hikes should frighten students

Despite the hard times, families will not be deprived of access to federal student loans. The real danger is a hike in tuition. Often in past recessions, states have cut funding for colleges and tuition has skyrocketed. The Cato Institute says a better policy would be for the states to maintain the subsidies to colleges.

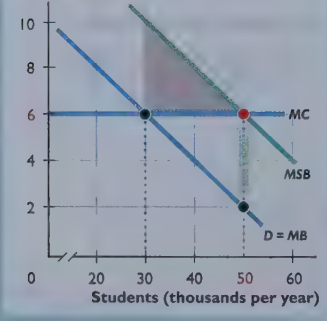
Source: Michael Dannenberg, *USA Today*, October 22, 2008

If government cuts the subsidy to colleges, why will tuition rise and the number of students enrolled decrease? Why does the Cato Institute say that it's a better policy for government to maintain the subsidy?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. In Figure 2, the efficient number of students is 50,000 a year. With no government involvement, enrollment is 30,000 students a year and tuition is $6,000 a year. The gray triangle shows the deadweight loss.
2. To enroll the efficient 50,000 students, public colleges would charge $2,000 per student and taxpayers would pay $4,000 per student (Figure 2).
3. A subsidy of $4,000 per student (equal to marginal external benefit).
4. The value of the voucher will be $4,000. Enrollment will be 50,000 if the tuition is $2,000. The private college tuition is $6,000, so to get 50,000 students to enroll, the value of the voucher will have to be $4,000.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

A cut in the subsidy will increase the college's marginal cost. Tuition will rise and the number of students will decrease—a movement up along the demand curve. The Cato Institute says maintaining the subsidy is a better policy because it avoids the deadweight loss of a cut in the number of students.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain why negative externalities lead to inefficient overproduction and how property rights, pollution charges, and taxes can achieve a more efficient outcome.

- External costs are costs of production that fall on people other than the producer of a good or service. Marginal social cost equals marginal private cost plus marginal external cost.
- Producers take account only of marginal private cost and produce more than the efficient quantity when there is a marginal external cost.
- Sometimes it is possible to overcome a negative externality by assigning a property right.
- When property rights cannot be assigned, governments might overcome a negative externality by using pollution limits, pollution charges or taxes, or marketable permits (cap-and-trade).

2 Explain why positive externalities lead to inefficient underproduction and how public provision, subsidies, and vouchers can achieve a more efficient outcome.

- External benefits are benefits that are received by people other than the consumer of a good or service. Marginal social benefit equals marginal private benefit plus marginal external benefit.
- External benefits from education arise because better-educated people are better citizens, commit fewer crimes, and support social activities.
- Vouchers or subsidies to private schools or the provision of public education below cost can achieve a more efficient provision of education.

Key Terms

Coase theorem, 248
Externality, 242
Marginal external benefit, 254
Marginal external cost, 244
Marginal private benefit, 254
Marginal private cost, 244
Marginal social benefit, 254
Marginal social cost, 244
Negative externality, 242
Positive externality, 242
Property rights, 247
Public provision, 256
Subsidy, 257
Transactions costs, 248
Voucher, 258

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 10 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1 DEMAND FOR ELECTRICITY

Price (cents per kilowatt)	Quantity demanded (kilowatts per day)
4	500
8	400
12	300
16	200
20	100
24	0

TABLE 2 PRIVATE AND EXTERNAL COSTS

Quantity (kilowatts per day)	Marginal cost (cents per kilowatt)	Marginal external cost (cents per kilowatt)
0	0	0
100	2	2
200	4	4
300	6	6
400	8	8
500	10	10

TABLE 3

Students (millions per year)	Marginal benefit (dollars per student per year)
1	5,000
2	3,000
3	2,000
4	1,500
5	1,200
6	1,000
7	800
8	500

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Table 1 shows the demand schedule for electricity from a coal burning utility. Table 2 shows the utility's cost of producing electricity and the external cost of the pollution created. Use this information to work Problems **1** to **3**.

1. With no pollution control, calculate the quantity of electricity produced, the price of electricity, and the marginal external cost of the pollution generated.

2. With no pollution control, calculate the quantity of electricity produced, the marginal social cost of the electricity generated, and the deadweight loss.

3. If the government levies a pollution tax such that the utility generates the efficient quantity of electricity, calculate the quantity of electricity generated, the price of electricity, the size of the pollution tax, and the tax revenue.

Use the following information to work Problems **4** and **5**.

Tom and Larry must spend a day working together. Tom likes to smoke cigars and the price of a cigar is $2. Larry likes a smoke-free environment.

4. If Tom's marginal benefit from a cigar a day is $20 and Larry's marginal benefit from a smoke-free environment is $25 a day, what is the outcome if they meet at Tom's home? What is the outcome if they meet at Larry's home?

5. If Tom's marginal benefit from a cigar a day is $25 and Larry's marginal benefit from a smoke-free environment is $20 a day, what is the outcome if they meet at Tom's home? What is the outcome if they meet at Larry's home?

Use Table 3 and the following information to work Problems **6** to **8**.

The marginal cost of educating a college student is $5,000 a year. Table 3 shows the marginal benefit schedule from a college education. The marginal external benefit from a college education is a constant $2,000 per student per year. There are no public colleges.

6. With no government involvement in college education, how many students enroll, what is the tuition, and what is the deadweight loss created?

7. If the government subsidizes colleges and sets the subsidy so that the efficient number of students enroll, what is the subsidy per student, how many students enroll, and what is the cost to taxpayers?

8. If the government offers vouchers to students, what is the value of the voucher that will encourage the efficient number of students to enroll?

9. Global solutions for local gridlock

The Toronto Board of Trade has warned that gridlock already costs the region $6 billion a year, with average commute times of 80 minutes, among the highest in North America. By 2031, that situation is going to get worse, adding an additional 27 minutes to the daily grind. Civic leaders are looking at the options: road tolls, a regional gas tax, and parking levies.

Source: *Toronto Star*, June 24, 2011

With road tolls, a regional gas tax, and parking levies would Toronto streets become less congested? If the new charges cut commute times, would the Toronto road system be more efficient? Explain your answers.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. The price of gasoline in Europe is about three times that in the United States, mainly because the European gas tax is higher than the U.S. gas tax. In light of the principles you've learned in this chapter, what is the case for increasing the gas tax in the United States to the European level and what is the case against an increase in the gas tax to the European level?
2. **Polar ice cap shrinks further and thins**
With global warming of the planet, the polar ice cap is shrinking. As the Arctic Sea expands more underwater mineral resources will be accessible. Countries are staking out territorial claims to parts of the polar region.
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, April 7, 2009

   Explain how ownership of these mineral resources will influence the amount of damage done to the Arctic Sea and its wildlife.

Use the following information to work Problems 3 and 4.

Plans to curtail use of plastic bags, but not much action
Plastic bags have been blamed for street litter, ocean pollution, and carbon emissions produced by manufacturing and shipping them. Last summer, Seattle approved a 20-cents charge on plastic shopping bags, which was intended to reduce pollution by encouraging reusable bags.
Source: *The New York Times*, February 23, 2009

3. Explain how Seattle's 20-cents charge will change the use of plastic bags and how the deadweight loss created by plastic bags will change.
4. Explain why a complete ban on plastic bags would be inefficient.

Use the following information to work Problems 5 to 7.

The marginal cost of educating a college student online is $3,000 a year. Table 1 shows the marginal private benefit schedule from a college education. The marginal external benefit is 50 percent of the marginal private benefit.

TABLE 1

Students (millions per year)	Marginal private benefit (dollars per student per year)
1	6,000
2	5,000
3	4,000
4	3,000
5	2,000
6	1,000

5. With no government involvement in college education, how many students enroll and what is the tuition? Calculate the deadweight loss created.
6. If the government subsidizes colleges so that the efficient number of students will enroll, what is the cost to taxpayers?
7. If the government offers vouchers to students and values them so that the efficient number of students will enroll, what is the value of the voucher?
8. **U.S. environmentalists back EU emission plan**
The European Union has introduced a new law, which requires any airline operating to or from an EU airport after January 1 to participate in the EU cap-and-trade system. Under the EU plan, 15 percent of pollution credits for airlines will be auctioned off and the other 85 percent of credits are being given without charge.
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, June 30, 2011

   Explain the conditions under which a cap-and-trade system would reduce the amount of airline emissions to the efficient quantity.

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 10 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Electricity has a negative production externality because _____ .
   A. its marginal benefit decreases as more of it is consumed
   B. the marginal private cost of producing it increases as more of it is produced
   C. the marginal social cost of producing it exceeds the marginal private cost of producing it
   D. a marginal external cost lowers the marginal benefit from consuming it
2. A steel making plant pollutes the air and water so _____ .
   A. the marginal social cost of producing steel exceeds the marginal private cost by the amount of the marginal external cost
   B. the marginal social cost of producing steel is less than the marginal private cost by the amount of the marginal external cost
   C. the marginal private cost of producing steel equals the marginal external cost plus the marginal social cost
   D. the marginal private cost of producing steel minus the marginal social cost equals the marginal external cost
3. An unregulated chemical factory that pollutes a river results in _____ and _____ .
   A. overproduction; a price that exceeds the marginal benefit from the good
   B. underproduction; a price that equals the marginal benefit from the good
   C. the efficient quantity produced; a marginal benefit equal to the marginal social cost
   D. an inefficient quantity produced; a marginal benefit below the marginal social cost
4. Steel production creates pollution. If a tax is imposed on steel production equal to the marginal external cost of the pollution it creates, _____.
   A. steel producers will cut pollution to zero
   B. the deadweight loss created by steel producers will be cut to zero
   C. the market price of steel will rise by the amount of the tax
   D. steel producers will continue to produce the inefficient quantity of steel
5. A good or service with a positive externality is one which _____.
   A. everyone wants to have access to
   B. is produced in the social interest
   C. the marginal social benefit exceeds the marginal private benefit
   D. the marginal external benefit exceeds the marginal private benefit
6. Because education generates a positive externality, _____.
   A. everyone who wants a college education should get one
   B. graduates' marginal benefit exceeds the society's value of the education
   C. the quantity of education undertaken will achieve the social interest if it is free
   D. subsidies to colleges or vouchers to students are means of achieving the efficient number of graduates

Should America build a high-speed rail network like Europe's?

11

Public Goods and Common Resources

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Distinguish among private goods, public goods, and common resources.
2. Explain the free-rider problem and how public provision might help to overcome it and deliver an efficient quantity of public goods.
3. Explain the tragedy of the commons and review its possible solutions.

11.1 CLASSIFYING GOODS AND RESOURCES

What's the difference between the services provided by a city police department and those provided by Brink's, a private security firm that loads ATMs for banks? What's the difference between fish in the Pacific Ocean and fish on East Point Seafood Company's Seattle fish farm? What's the difference between a live Taylor Swift concert and a concert on network television? What's the difference between education and fast food? Each pair differs in many ways, but key is the extent to which people can be *excluded* from consuming them and the extent to which one person's consumption *rivals* the consumption of others.

Excludable

Excludable
A good, service, or resource is excludable if it is possible to prevent someone from enjoying its benefits.

Nonexcludable
A good, service, or resource is nonexcludable if it is impossible (or extremely costly) to prevent someone from enjoying its benefits.

A good, service, or resource is **excludable** if it is possible to prevent someone from enjoying its benefits. Brink's security services, East Point Seafood's fish, and Taylor Swift concerts are examples. You must pay to consume them.

A good, service, or resource is **nonexcludable** if it is impossible (or extremely costly) to prevent someone from benefiting from it. The services of the city police department, fish in the Pacific Ocean, and a concert on network television are examples. When a police cruiser slows the traffic on a highway to the speed limit, it lowers the risk of an accident to all the road users. It can't exclude some road users from the lower risk. Anyone with a boat can try to catch the fish in the ocean. Anyone with television can watch a network broadcast.

Rival

Rival
A good, service, or resource is rival if its use by one person decreases the quantity available for someone else.

Nonrival
A good, service, or resource is nonrival if its use by one person does not decrease the quantity available for someone else.

A good, service, or resource is **rival** if its use by one person decreases the quantity available for someone else. Brink's security might work for two banks, but one truck can't deliver cash to two banks at the same time. A fish, whether in the ocean or on a fish farm, can be consumed only once. One seat at a concert can hold only one person at a time. These items are rival.

A good, service, or resource is **nonrival** if its use by one person does not decrease the quantity available for someone else. The services of the city police department and a concert on network television are nonrival. The arrival of one more person in a neighborhood doesn't lower the level of police protection enjoyed by the community. When one additional person switches on the TV, no other viewer is affected.

A Fourfold Classification

Figure 11.1 classifies goods, services, and resources into four types using the two criteria that we've just considered.

Private Goods

Private good
A good or service that can be consumed by only one person at a time and only by the person who has bought it or owns it.

A good or service that is both rival and excludable (top left of Figure 11.1) is a **private good**: It can be consumed by only one person at a time and only by the person who has bought it or owns it. The fish on East Point's farm are an example of a private good. One person's consumption of a fish rivals others, and everyone except the person who bought a fish is excluded from consuming it.

Public Goods

A good or service that is both nonrival and nonexcludable (bottom right of Figure 11.1) is a **public good**: It can be consumed simultaneously by everyone, and no one can be excluded from enjoying its benefits. A flood-control levee is an example of a public good. Everyone who lives in a protected floodplain enjoys the benefits, and no one can be excluded from receiving those benefits. The system of law and order provided by the courts and the body of laws is another example.

Public good
A good or service that can be consumed simultaneously by everyone and from which no one can be excluded.

Common Resources

A resource that is rival and nonexcludable (top right of Figure 11.1) is a **common resource**: A unit of it can be used only once, but no one can be prevented from using what is available. Ocean fish and the Earth's atmosphere are examples of common resources. Ocean fish are rival because a fish taken by one person is not available for anyone else, and they are nonexcludable because it is difficult to prevent people from catching them. The Earth's atmosphere is rival because oxygen used by one person is not available for anyone else, and it is nonexcludable because we can't prevent people from breathing!

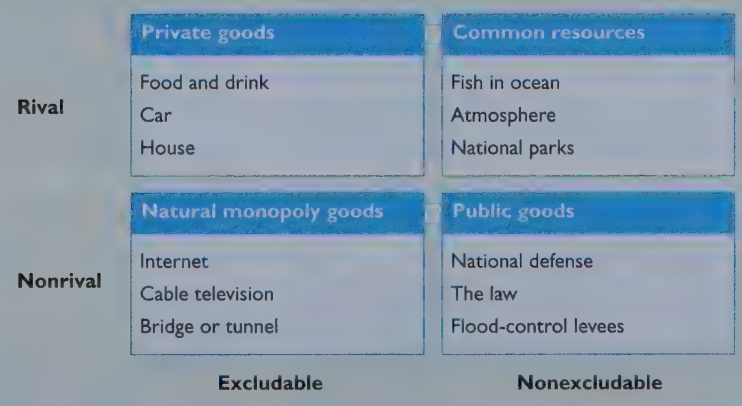
Common resource
A resource that can be used only once, but no one can be prevented from using what is available.

Natural Monopoly Goods

A good that is nonrival but excludable (bottom left of Figure 11.1) is a good produced by a *natural monopoly.* We define natural monopoly in Chapter 15, p. 376. A natural monopoly is a firm that can produce at a lower cost than two or more firms can. Examples are the Internet, cable television, and a bridge or tunnel. One more user doesn't decrease the enjoyment of the other users, and people can be excluded with user codes, scramblers, and tollgates.

FIGURE 11.1
Fourfold Classification of Goods

MyEconLab Animation



Goods that are rival and excludable are private goods (top left).

Goods that are nonrival and nonexcludable are public goods (bottom right).

Goods and resources that are rival but nonexcludable are common resources (top right).

Goods that are nonrival but excludable are goods produced by a natural monopoly (bottom left).

SOURCE OF DATA: Adapted from and inspired by E. S. Savas, *Privatizing the Public Sector,* Chatham House Publishers, Inc., Chatham, NJ, 1982, p. 34.

EYE on the PAST

Is a Lighthouse a Public Good?

A lighthouse looks like a public good: *nonexcludable* and *nonrival*. But in the eighteenth century, lighthouses in England were built and operated by private companies that earned profits by charging tolls on ships docking at nearby ports. A ship that refused to pay the lighthouse toll was excluded from using the port. So even the services of a lighthouse, when it is near a port, are excludable! Such a lighthouse is an example of a natural monopoly good and not a public good.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 11.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 11.1

Distinguish among private goods, public goods, and common resources.

Practice Problems

1. Classify the following services for computer owners with an Internet connection as rival, nonrival, excludable, or nonexcludable:
   - eBay
   - A mouse
   - A Twitter page
   - MyEconLab Web site
2. Classify each of the following items as a public good, a private good, a natural monopoly good, or a common resource:
   - Fire protection
   - A seat at the final match of the U.S. Open (tennis)
   - A pay-per-view movie on television
   - The Mississippi River

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. eBay is nonrival and nonexcludable. A mouse is rival and excludable. Twitter is nonrival and you can choose to make your page excludable or nonexcludable. MyEconLab is nonrival and excludable.
2. Fire protection is nonrival and nonexcludable, so it is a public good. A seat at the final match of the U.S. Open is rival and excludable, so it is a private good. A pay-per-view movie is nonrival and excludable, so it is a natural monopoly good. The Mississippi River is rival and nonexcludable, so it is a common resource.

11.2 PUBLIC GOODS AND THE FREE-RIDER PROBLEM

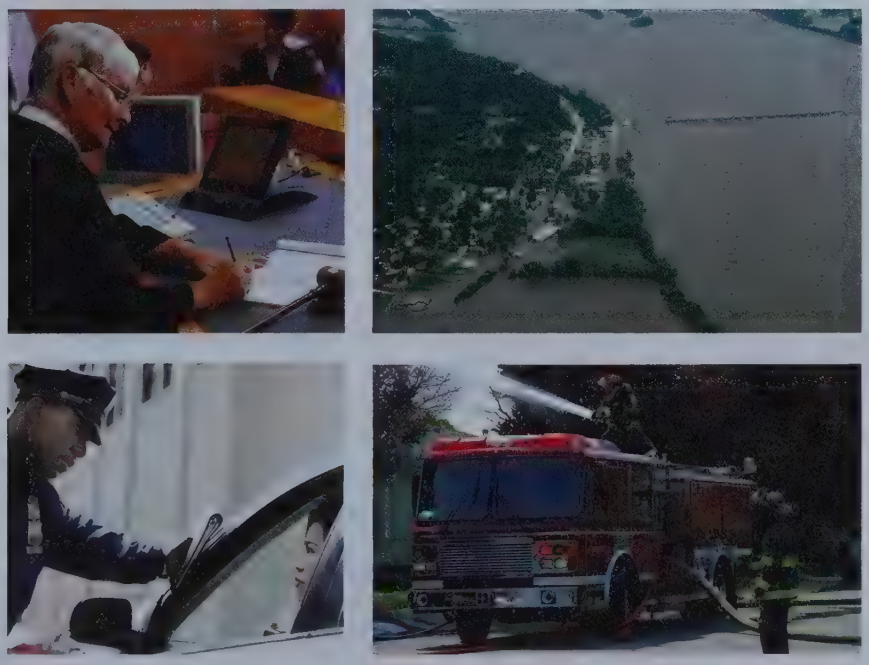
Why does the U.S. government provide our national defense and district court system? Why do the state governments provide flood-control levees? Why do our city governments provide fire and police services? Why don't we buy our national defense from North Pole Protection, Inc., a private firm that competes for our dollars in the marketplace in the same way that McDonald's does? Why don't private engineering firms provide levees? Why don't we buy our policing and fire services from Brink's and other private firms? The answer is that all of these goods are public goods—goods that are nonexcludable and nonrival—and such goods create a free-rider problem.

The Free-Rider Problem

A **free rider** is a person who enjoys the benefits from a good or service without paying for it. Because everyone consumes the same quantity of a public good and no one can be excluded from enjoying its benefits, no one has an incentive to pay for it. Everyone has an incentive to free ride. The *free-rider problem* is that the private market, left on its own, would provide too small a quantity of a public good. To produce the efficient quantity, government action is required.

Free rider
A person who enjoys the benefits of a good or service without paying for it.

To see how a private market would provide too little of a public good and how government might provide the efficient quantity, we need to consider the marginal benefit from a public good and its marginal cost. The marginal benefit from a public good is a bit different from that of a private good, so we'll begin on the benefit side of the calculation.



Some public goods: The law, flood-control levees, police protection, and firefighting service.

The Marginal Benefit from a Public Good

To learn about the marginal benefit from a public good, think about a concrete example. Lisa and Max share a common parking area that has no security lighting. Both of them would like some lights, but how many? What is the value or benefit from just one light, from adding a second, and perhaps from adding a third light? To answer this question, we must somehow combine the value of lights to both Lisa and Max and find the marginal benefit from different quantities of lights—the marginal benefit curve of lights.

For a private good, the marginal benefit curve is the market demand curve. Everyone pays the same market price for a private good, and each person chooses the quantity to buy at that price. In contrast, for a public good, everyone consumes the same quantity, but each person puts a different private value on that quantity. So how are we to find the equivalent of the demand curve for a public good? Figure 11.2 answers this question and illustrates the calculation of marginal benefit from a public good. It also shows the marginal social benefit curve.

Lisa and Max know their own marginal benefit from different levels of security lighting. The tables in parts (a) and (b) of Figure 11.2 show these marginal benefits. The curves MB_L and MB_M are Lisa's and Max's marginal benefit curves. Each person's marginal benefit from a public good diminishes as the quantity of the good increases—just as it does for a private good. For Lisa, the marginal benefit from the first light is \$80, and from the second it is \$60. By the time 5 lights are installed, Lisa's marginal benefit is zero. For Max, the marginal benefit from the first light is \$50, and from the second it is \$40. By the time 5 lights are installed, Max perceives only \$10 worth of marginal benefit.

The table in part (c) of Figure 11.2 shows the marginal benefit for the entire economy. We obtain this curve by summing the individual marginal benefits at each quantity. For example, with 3 lights, the marginal benefit is \$70 (\$40 for Lisa plus \$30 for Max) and with 4 lights, the marginal benefit is \$40 (\$20 for Lisa plus \$20 for Max). The curve *MSB* is the marginal social benefit curve.

Because we find the marginal benefit from a public good by summing the marginal benefits of all individuals at each *quantity*, we find the *MSB* curve by summing the individual marginal benefit curves *vertically*. In contrast, to obtain the *MB* curve for a private good—which is also the market demand curve—we sum the quantities demanded by all individuals at each *price*—we sum the individual demand curves *horizontally* (see Chapter 4, p. 87).

Notice that the *MSB* curve for a public good is both a marginal private benefit curve and a marginal social benefit curve. A public good doesn't have external benefits (see p. 267). Because everyone can consume an equal quantity of a public good, everyone benefits from it. The *MSB* curve includes all the benefits.

The principle that we've learned in this example of security lights for Lisa and Max applies to a public good such as national defense in our economy with its millions of people. The marginal social benefit of national defense is the sum of the marginal benefits of all the people in the economy.

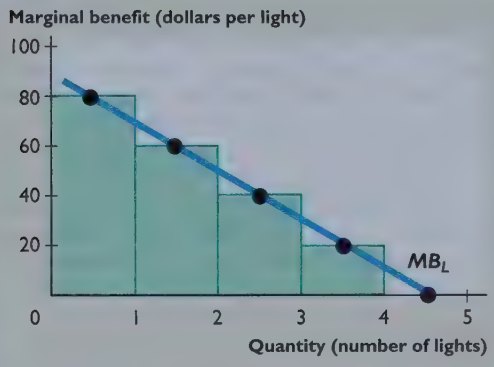
The Marginal Cost of a Public Good

The marginal cost of a public good is determined in exactly the same way as that of a private good. The principle of *increasing marginal cost* that you learned in Chapter 6 applies to the marginal cost of a public good. So the marginal cost curve of a public good slopes upward. A public good does not create an externality, so the marginal cost is also the marginal social cost.

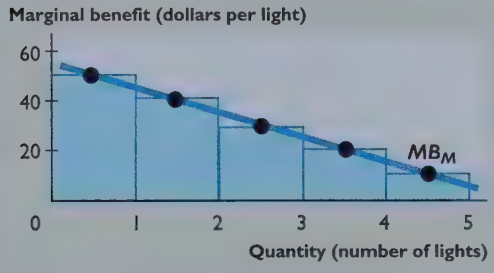
FIGURE 11.2

Marginal Benefit of a Public Good

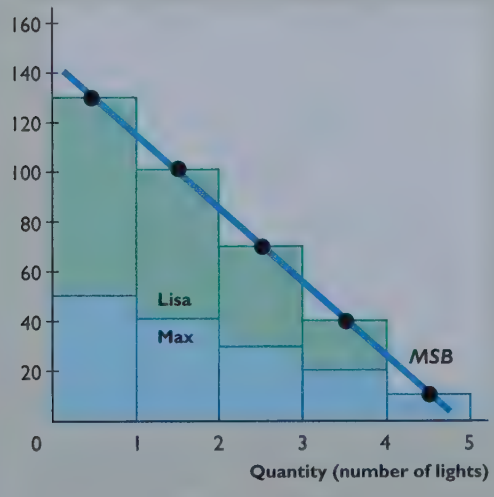
MyEconLab Animation



(a) Lisa's marginal benefit



(b) Max's marginal benefit



(c) Economy's marginal social benefit

The marginal benefit curves for a public good are MB_L for Lisa and MB_M for Max. The marginal benefit from the public good for the economy is the sum of the marginal benefits of all individuals at each quantity. The marginal social benefit curve for the economy is *MSB*.

Quantity of lights	0	1	2	3	4	5
Lisa's *MB* (dollars per light)	80	60	40	20	0	

Quantity of lights	0	1	2	3	4	5
Max's *MB* (dollars per light)	50	40	30	20	10	

Quantity of lights	0	1	2	3	4	5
Lisa's *MB* (dollars per light)	80	60	40	20	0	
Max's *MB* (dollars per light)	50	40	30	20	10	
Economy's *MSB* (dollars per light)	130	100	70	40	10	

The Efficient Quantity of a Public Good

To determine the efficient quantity, we use the same principles that you learned in Chapter 6: We find the quantity at which marginal social benefit equals marginal social cost.

Figure 11.3 shows the marginal social benefit curve *MSB* and the marginal social cost curve *MSC* of surveillance satellites that provide national defense services. The *MSB* curve is based on the same principle that determines the marginal social benefit of the two-person (Lisa and Max) economy for security lights. If marginal social benefit exceeds marginal social cost, resources can be used more efficiently by increasing the quantity of the public good. If marginal social cost exceeds marginal social benefit, resources can be used more efficiently by decreasing the quantity of the public good. If marginal social benefit equals marginal social cost, resources are being used efficiently—in this example, 200 satellites.

Private Provision: Underproduction

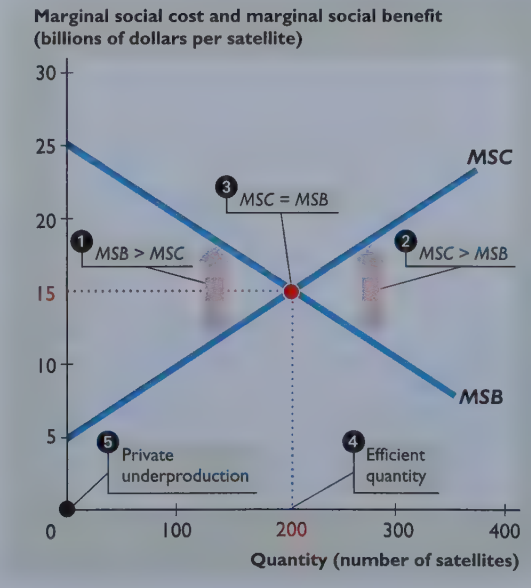
Could a private firm—say, North Pole Protection, Inc.—deliver the efficient quantity of satellites? Most likely, it couldn't because no one would have an incentive to pay his or her share of the cost of the satellites. Everyone would reason as follows: "The number of satellites provided by North Pole Protection, Inc., is not affected by my decision to pay my share or not. My own private consumption will be greater if I free ride. If I do not pay, I enjoy the same level of security and I can buy more private goods. So I will free ride on the public good." Such reasoning is the free-rider problem. If everyone reasons the same way, North Pole Protection, Inc., has no revenue and so provides no satellites.

FIGURE 11.3

The Efficient Quantity and Private Underproduction of a Public Good

MyEconLab Animation

1. With fewer than 200 satellites, marginal social benefit *MSB* exceeds marginal social cost *MSC*. An increase in the quantity will make resource use more efficient.
2. With more than 200 satellites, marginal social cost exceeds marginal social benefit. A decrease in the quantity will make resource use more efficient.
3. With 200 satellites, marginal social benefit *MSB* equals marginal social cost *MSC*. Resources are used efficiently.
4. The efficient quantity is 200 satellites.
5. Private provision leads to underproduction—in the extreme, to zero production.



Public Provision: Efficient Production

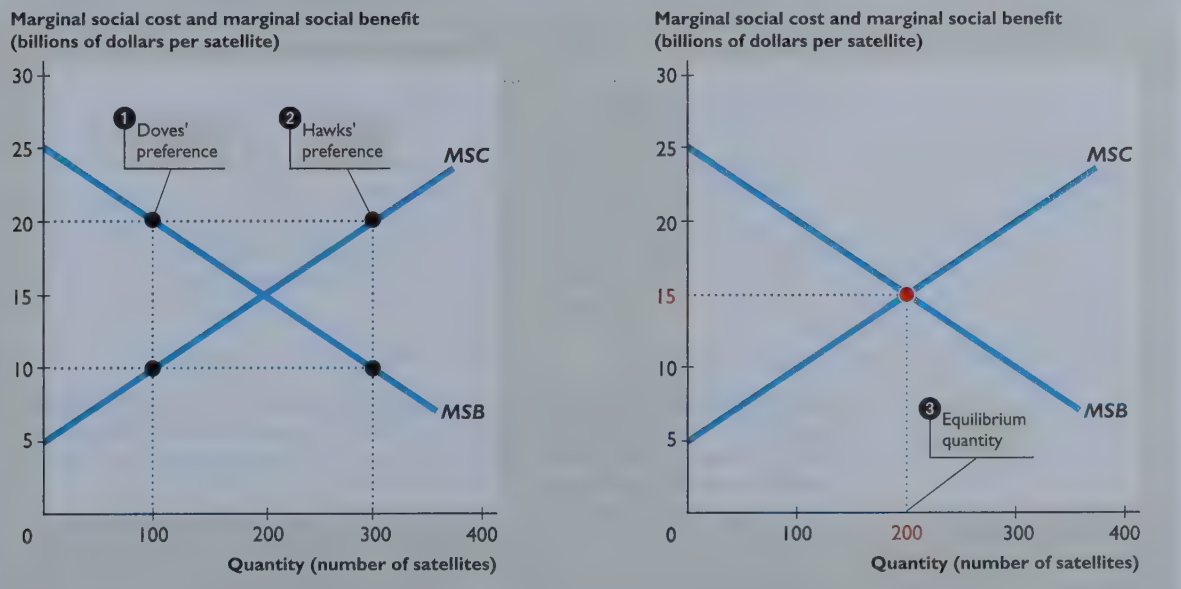
The political process might be efficient or inefficient. We look first at an efficient outcome. There are two political parties, the Hawks and the Doves, which agree on all issues except for the quantity of defense satellites. The Hawks want 300 satellites, and the Doves want 100 satellites. Both parties want to get elected, so they run a voter survey and discover the *MSB* curve of Figure 11.4. They also consult with satellite producers to establish the marginal cost schedule. The parties then do a "what-if" analysis. If the Hawks propose 300 satellites and the Doves propose 100 satellites, the voters will be equally unhappy with both parties. Compared to the efficient quantity, the Doves want an underprovision of 100 satellites and the Hawks want an overprovision of 100 satellites. The deadweight losses are equal, and the election would be too close to call.

Contemplating this outcome, the Hawks realize that they are too hawkish to get elected. They figure that if they scale back to 250 satellites, they will win the election if the Doves propose 100 satellites. The Doves reason in a similar way and figure that if they increase the number of satellites to 150, they can win the election if the Hawks propose 300 satellites. Each party knows how the other is reasoning, and they realize that their party must provide 200 satellites, or it will lose the election. So both parties propose 200 satellites. The voters are indifferent between the parties, and each party receives 50 percent of the vote.

FIGURE 11.4

An Efficient Political Outcome

MyEconLab Animation



1 The Doves would like to provide 100 satellites. 2 The Hawks would like to provide 300 satellites.

3 The political outcome is 200 satellites: Unless each party proposes 200 satellites, the other party can win an election.

Regardless of which party wins the election, 200 satellites are provided, and this quantity is efficient. In this example, competition in the political marketplace results in the efficient provision of a public good.

For this outcome to occur, voters must be well informed, evaluate the alternatives, and vote in the election. Political parties must be well informed about voter preferences. As you will see, we can't expect to achieve this outcome.

The Principle of Minimum Differentiation

Principle of minimum differentiation
The tendency for competitors to make themselves identical to appeal to the maximum number of clients or voters.

In the example that we've just studied, the two parties propose identical policies. This tendency toward identical policies is an example of the **principle of minimum differentiation**: To appeal to the maximum number of clients or voters, competitors tend to make themselves identical. This principle not only describes the behavior of political parties but also explains why fast-food restaurants cluster in the same block and even why new car models have similar features. If McDonald's opens a restaurant in a new location, it is more likely that Burger King will open next door to McDonald's rather than a mile down the road. If Chrysler designs a new back-up camera or a hands-free phone system, most likely Ford will too.

Public Provision: Overproduction

If competition between two political parties is to deliver the efficient quantity of satellites, the Defense Department—the Pentagon—must cooperate and help to achieve this outcome.

Objective of Bureaucrats

A bureau head seeks to maximize her or his department's budget because a bigger budget brings greater status and power. For the Pentagon, the objective is to maximize the defense budget.

Figure 11.5 shows the outcome if the Pentagon is successful in the pursuit of its goal. The Pentagon might try to persuade the politicians that 200 satellites cost more than the originally budgeted amount; or the Pentagon might press its position more strongly and argue for more than 200 satellites. In Figure 11.5, the Pentagon persuades the politicians to go for 300 satellites.

Why don't the politicians block the Pentagon? Won't overpaying or overproducing satellites cost future votes? It will if voters are well informed and know what is best for them. Voters might not be well informed, and well-informed interest groups might enable the Pentagon to achieve its objective and overcome the objections of the politicians.

Rational Ignorance

Rational choice balances marginal benefit and marginal cost. An implication of rational choice is that it is rational for a voter to be ignorant about an issue unless that issue has a perceptible effect on the voter's well-being and the voter can influence the political outcome.

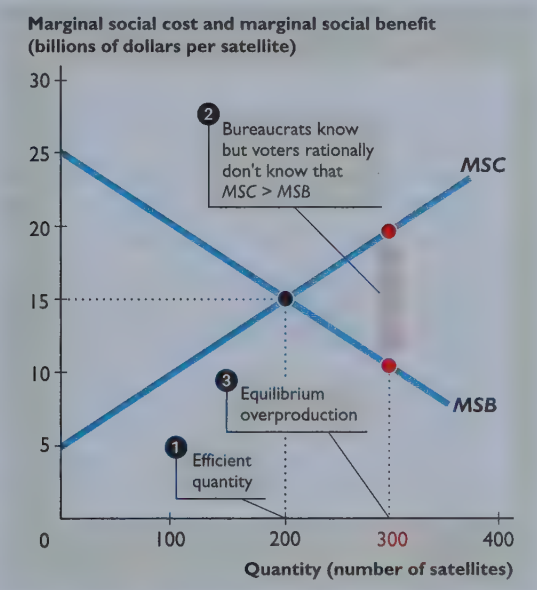
Rational ignorance
The decision not to acquire information because the marginal cost of doing so exceeds the marginal benefit.

Rational ignorance is the decision not to acquire information because the marginal cost of doing so exceeds the marginal benefit. For example, each voter in the United States knows that he or she can make virtually no difference to the defense policy of the U.S. government. Each voter also knows that it would take an enormous amount of time and effort to become even moderately well informed about alternative defense technologies. So voters remain relatively uninformed

FIGURE 11.5

Inefficient Bureaucratic Overproduction

MyEconLab Animation



1. The efficient quantity is 200 satellites with marginal social benefit *MSB* equal to marginal social cost *MSC*.
2. Bureaucrats are well-informed and voters are rationally ignorant, so bureaucrats are able to increase production (and their budget) to a level at which marginal social cost *MSC* exceeds marginal social benefit *MSB*.
3. With 300 satellites, marginal social cost exceeds marginal social benefit and inefficient overproduction occurs.

about the technicalities of defense issues. (Although we are using defense policy as an example, the same principle applies to all aspects of government economic activity.)

All voters benefit from national defense, but not all voters produce national defense—only a small number work in the defense industry. Voters who own or work for firms that produce satellites have a direct personal interest in defense because it affects their incomes. These voters have an incentive to become well informed about defense issues and to lobby politicians to further their own interests. In collaboration with the defense bureaucracy, these voters exert a larger influence on public policy than do the relatively uninformed voters who only benefit from this public good.

Why Government Is Large and Growing

Government is large and it grows faster than the rest of the economy to take an ever larger share of production. Why?

Voter preferences for public goods drive the growth of government. The demand for national and personal security and the demand for other public services are *income elastic*. As incomes increase, the demand for these services increases by a larger percentage than the increase in income.

Inefficient bureaucratic overprovision of public goods and services might make government too big and too costly. There is no easy fix for this problem. Our ever-growing demand for education and health-care services contribute to the large and growing scale of government.

EYE on the U.S. INFRASTRUCTURE

Should America Build a High-Speed Rail Network like Europe's?

Train travel in Europe is fast: The 190 miles from Paris to Brussels takes 1 hour and 20 minutes. The 220 miles from Boston to New York City takes 3 hours and 40 minutes.

President Obama says that by 2036, he wants 80 percent of Americans to be able to go places by train as fast as Europeans can.

Why is the United States lagging in high-speed rail transportation? Is there underprovision or do we have the efficient amount of high-speed rail transportation?

The marginal social cost of high-speed rail track (*MSC* in the figures) is about $50 million a mile.

The marginal social benefit of high-speed rail (*MSB* in the figures) depends on the size and density of the population. Europe has a much higher population density (persons per square mile) than the United States, so MSB_{EU} is greater than MSB_{US}. The efficient quantity of high-speed track is much greater in Europe (Figure 1) than in the United States (Figure 2).

If the United States installs as much high-speed rail track as Europe has, it will be overprovided and a deadweight loss will arise.

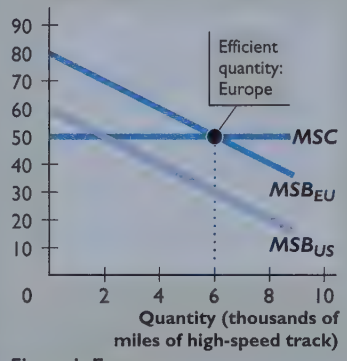


Figure 1 Europe

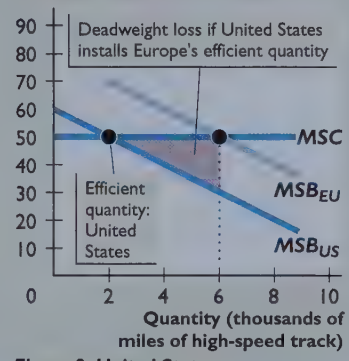


Figure 2 United States

EYE on YOUR LIFE

A Student's Free-Rider Problem

MP3 music files are nonrival because they can be duplicated at the click of a mouse. Files can be created at zero opportunity cost. A music file is nonexcludable because it is costly to exclude anyone who wants to make an illegal copy of a file.

Because music files are nonrival and effectively nonexcludable, they create a free-rider problem.

If everyone obtained their music by copying the files of their friends, you can see that it would not take long for the provision of songs to dry up. Only amateur performers who record for fun would be left in the business.

We tackle this free-rider problem by using the copyright laws that restrict the legal right to copy music files. The problem is that making something illegal isn't effective if it is difficult to detect and punish the illegal acts.

Another solution might be to put a tax on MP3 players and distribute the revenue to performers and recording companies, but this approach doesn't provide an incentive to limit illegal file sharing. Once the player tax has been paid, it has no effect on how it is used.

The best solution currently available is for the courts to enforce property rights and for the recording companies to pursue illegal file sharers and hit them with large penalties. But the cost of enforcing these property rights is high.

CHECKPOINT 11.2

Explain the free-rider problem and how public provision might help to overcome it and deliver an efficient quantity of public goods.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 11.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. For each of the following goods, explain whether there is a free-rider problem. If there is no such problem, how is it avoided?
   - Fire protection
   - A July 4th fireworks display
   - Interstate 80 in rural Wyoming

Use Table 1, which provides data about a mosquito control program, to work Problems **2** and **3**.

2. What quantity of spraying would a private control program provide? What is the efficient quantity of spraying? In a single-issue election on the quantity of spraying, what quantity would the winner of the election provide?
3. Suppose that the government sets up a Department of Mosquito Control and appoints a bureaucrat to run it. Would the department most likely underprovide, overprovide, or provide the efficient quantity of spraying?

TABLE 1

Quantity (square miles sprayed per day)	Marginal social cost (dollars per day)	Marginal social benefit (dollars per day)
0	0	6,000
1	1,000	5,000
2	2,000	4,000
3	3,000	3,000
4	4,000	2,000
5	5,000	1,000

In the News

Vaccination dodgers

Doctors struggle to eradicate polio worldwide, but one of their biggest problems is persuading parents to vaccinate their children. The discovery of the vaccine has eliminated polio from Europe and the law requires everyone to be vaccinated. People who refuse to be vaccinated are "free riders."

Source: *USA Today*, March 12, 2008

Explain why someone who has not opted out on medical or religious grounds and refuses to be vaccinated is a "free rider."

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Fire protection is a public good; a July 4th fireworks display is a public good. In both cases, the free-rider problem is avoided by public provision and financing through taxes. Interstate 80 in rural Wyoming is a public good. The public good creates a free-rider problem that is avoided because governments collect various taxes via the tax on gas and the vehicle registration fee.
2. A private program would provide zero spraying because the free-rider problem would prevail. The efficient quantity is 3 square miles a day—the quantity at which the marginal social benefit equals the marginal social cost. The winner will provide the efficient quantity: 3 square miles sprayed a day.
3. The Department of Mosquito Control would most likely overprovide because the bureau would try to maximize its budget.

Solution to In the News

Polio is a serious disease that causes much suffering. If everyone in a neighborhood except one person gets vaccinated, then the unvaccinated person benefits from all the neighbors' vaccinations. The unvaccinated person is a free rider.

11.3 COMMON RESOURCES

Tragedy of the commons
The overuse of a common resource that arises when its users have no incentive to conserve it and use it sustainably.

Overgrazing the pastures around a village in Middle Ages England, and overfishing the cod stocks of the North Atlantic Ocean during the recent past are tragedies of the commons. The **tragedy of the commons** is the overuse of a common resource that arises when its users have no incentive to conserve it and use it sustainably.

To study the tragedy of the commons and its possible remedies, we'll focus on the recent and current tragedy—overfishing and depleting the stock of Atlantic cod. We begin by thinking about the sustainable use of a renewable resource.

Sustainable Use of a Renewable Resource

A renewable natural resource is one that replenishes itself by the birth and growth of new members of the population. Fish, trees, and the fertile soil are all examples of this type of resource.

Focusing on fish, the sustainable catch is the quantity that can be caught year after year without depleting the stock. This quantity depends on the stock and in the interesting way illustrated in Figure 11.6.

If the stock of fish is small, the quantity of new fish born is also small, so the sustainable catch is small. If the fish stock is large, many fish are born, but they must compete with each other for food, so only a small number survive to reproduce and to grow large enough to catch.

EYE on the PAST

The Commons of England's Middle Ages

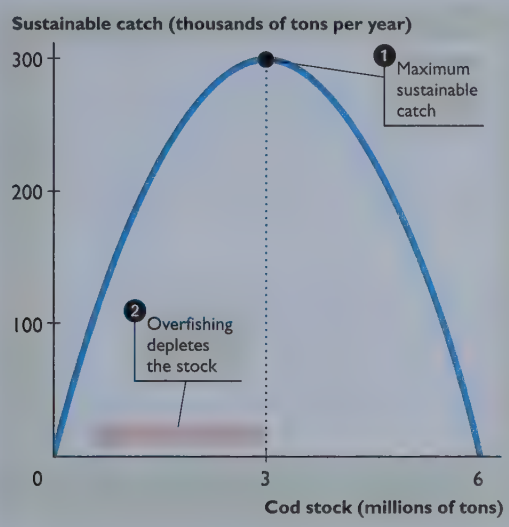
The term "the tragedy of the commons" comes from fourteenth century England, where areas of rough grassland surrounded villages. The commons were open to all and were used for grazing cows and sheep owned by the villagers.

Because the commons were open to everyone, no one had an incentive to ensure that the land was not overgrazed. The result was an overgrazing situation similar to that of overfishing in some of today's oceans.

During the sixteenth century, when the price of wool increased, England became a wool exporter to the world. Sheep farming became profitable and sheep owners needed better control of the land they used, so the com-mons were gradually enclosed and privatized. Overgrazing ended, and land use became more efficient.

FIGURE 11.6
Sustainable Catch

MyEconLab Animation



As the stock of fish increases (on the *x*-axis), the sustainable catch (on the *y*-axis) increases to a ❶ maximum sustainable catch. With a larger fish stock, the more the fish must compete for food and the sustainable catch decreases.

If for any fish stock, the catch exceeds the sustainable catch, ❷ overfishing occurs, which depletes the stock. Overfishing decreases the maximum sustainable catch.

Between a small and a large stock is a quantity of fish stock that maximizes the sustainable catch. In the example in Figure 11.6, this fish stock is 3 million tons and the sustainable catch is 300,000 tons a year. The maximum sustainable catch arises from a balancing of the birth of new fish from the stock and the availability of food to sustain the fish population.

If the quantity of fish caught equals the sustainable catch, the fish stock remains constant and is available for future generations of fishers in the same quantity that is available today. If the quantity caught is *less than* the sustainable catch, the fish stock grows; and if the quantity caught exceeds the sustainable catch, the fish stock shrinks—overfishing depletes the stock.

The Overuse of a Common Resource

Why might overfishing occur? The answer is that fishers face only their own private cost and don't face the cost they impose on others—external cost. The *social* cost of fishing combines the *private* cost and *external* cost. Let's examine the costs of catching fish to see how the presence of external cost brings overfishing.

Private Cost, External Cost, and Social Cost

You can think of the *marginal private cost* of catching fish as the additional cost incurred by keeping a boat and crew at sea for long enough to increase the catch by one ton. Keeping a fishing boat at sea for an additional hour eventually runs into *diminishing marginal returns*. As the crew gets tired, storage facilities get overfull, and the boat's speed is cut to conserve fuel, the catch per hour decreases. The cost of keeping the boat at sea for an additional hour is constant, so the marginal cost of catching fish increases as the quantity caught increases.

The pursuit of self-interest results in overfishing.

The marginal private cost of catching fish determines an individual fisher's supply of fish. A profit-maximizing fisher is willing to supply the quantity at which the market price of fish covers the marginal private cost. The market supply of fish is the sum of the quantities supplied by individual fishers.

The marginal external cost of catching fish is the cost per additional ton that one fisher's catch imposes on all other fishers. This additional cost arises because one fisher's catch decreases the remaining stock, which makes it harder for other fishers to find and catch fish. So the more any one fisher catches, the longer each other fisher must spend at sea per ton of fish caught.

The marginal social cost of catching fish is the marginal private cost plus the marginal external cost. Both of its components increase as the quantity caught increases, so marginal social cost also increases with the quantity of fish caught.

Marginal Social Benefit and Demand

The marginal social benefit from fish is the price that consumers are willing to pay for an additional pound of fish. Marginal social benefit decreases as the quantity of fish consumed increases, so the market demand curve, which is also the marginal social benefit curve, slopes downward.

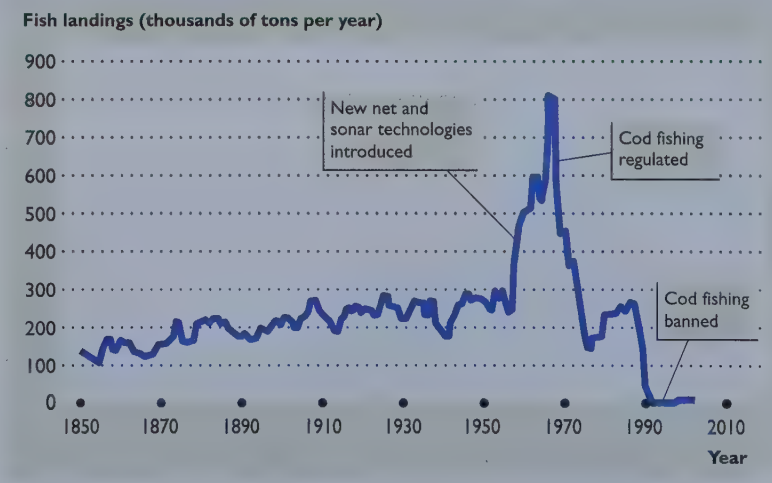
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

The North Atlantic Cod Tragedy of the Commons

Before 1970, Atlantic cod was abundant. It had been fished for many centuries and was a major food source for the first European settlers in North America. In 1812, there were more than 1,600 fishing boats in the waters off New England and Newfoundland, Canada. At that time, cod were huge fish, weighing in at more than 220 pounds and measuring up to 6 feet in length.

Fish were caught using lines and productivity was low. But low productivity limited the catch and enabled cod to be caught sustainably over hundreds of years.

The situation changed dramatically during the 1960s with the introduction of high-efficiency nets (called trawls, seines, and gill nets), sonar technology to find fish concentrations, and large ships with efficient processing and storage facilities. These technological advances brought soaring cod harvests. In less than a decade, cod landings increased from less than 300,000 tons a year to 800,000 tons. This volume of cod could not be taken without a serious collapse in the stock and in 1992, a total ban on cod fishing in the North Atlantic stabilized the population but at a very low level.



SOURCE OF DATA FOR GRAPH: Millennium Ecosystem Assessment.
SOURCE OF INFORMATION: Codfishes —Atlantic cod and its fishery, http://science.jrank.org/

Overfishing Equilibrium

Figure 11.7 illustrates overfishing and how it arises. The market demand curve for fish is the marginal social benefit curve, *MSB*. The market supply curve is the marginal private cost curve, *MC*. Market equilibrium occurs at the intersection point of these two curves. The equilibrium quantity is 800,000 tons per year and the equilibrium price is $10 per pound.

At this market equilibrium, overfishing is running down the fish stock. Figure 11.7 illustrates why overfishing occurs. At the market equilibrium quantity, marginal social benefit (and willingness to pay) is $10 per pound, but the marginal social cost exceeds this amount. The marginal external cost is the cost of running down the fish stock.

Efficient Equilibrium and Deadweight Loss

What is the efficient use of a common resource? It is the use of the resource that makes the marginal social benefit from the resource equal to the marginal social cost of using it.

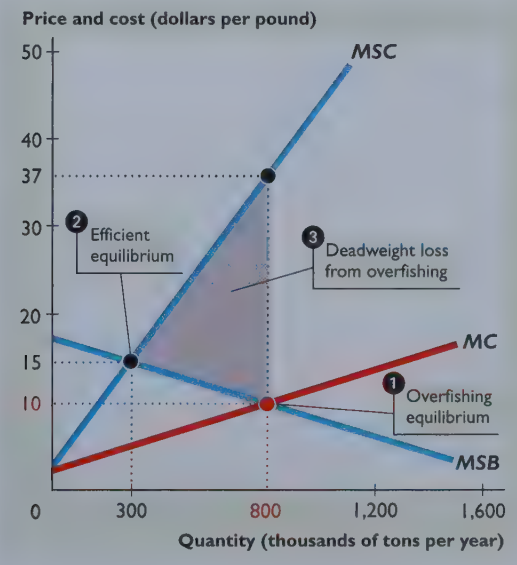
In Figure 11.7, the efficient quantity of fish is 300,000 tons per year—the quantity that makes marginal social cost (on the *MSC* curve) equal to marginal social benefit (on the *MSB* curve). At this quantity, the marginal catch of each individual fisher costs society what people are willing to pay for it.

Deadweight loss measures the cost of overfishing. The gray triangle in Figure 11.7 illustrates this loss. It is the marginal social cost minus the marginal social benefit from all the fish caught in excess of the efficient quantity.

FIGURE 11.7

Why Overfishing Occurs

MyEconLab Animation



The market supply curve is the marginal private cost curve, *MC*, and the market demand curve is the marginal social benefit curve *MSB*.

1. Market overfishing equilibrium occurs at a quantity of 800,000 tons and a price of $10 a pound.
2. The marginal social cost curve is *MSC* and the efficient equilibrium is at a quantity of 300,000 tons a year.
3. The equilibrium quantity exceeds the efficient quantity and overfishing brings a deadweight loss.

Using the Commons Efficiently

It is easier to define the conditions under which a common resource is used efficiently than to deliver those conditions. To use a common resource efficiently, it is necessary to design an incentive mechanism that confronts the users of the resource with the marginal social consequences of their actions. The same principles apply to common resources as those that you met in Chapter 10 when you studied the external cost of pollution.

The three main methods that might be used to achieve the efficient use of a common resource are

- Property rights
- Production quotas
- Individual transferable quotas (ITQs)

Property Rights

A common resource that no one owns and that anyone is free to use contrasts with *private property*, which is a resource that someone owns and has an incentive to use in the way that maximizes its value. The resource is used efficiently. One way of overcoming the tragedy of the commons is to convert a common resource to private property. With private property rights, the owner of the resource faces the same conditions as society faces. It doesn't matter who owns the resource. The users of the resource that someone owns are confronted with the opportunity cost of using it. If the user is the owner, the opportunity cost of using it is forgone rental income. If the resource is used by someone who leases it from its owner, the opportunity cost of using it is the rent paid to the owner.

FIGURE 11.8

Property Rights Achieve the Efficient Use of a Common Resource

MyEconLab Animation

With property rights assigned to the fish stock, fishers pay the owner of the fish stock for permission to fish and face the marginal social cost of their decisions.

1. The marginal cost curve, which is also the market supply curve, includes all the costs of fishing, so it is also the marginal social cost curve, $S = MC = MSC$.
2. The market equilibrium occurs at the intersection of *MSC* and *MSB* and the resource use is efficient.
3. The quantity caught, 300,000 tons, is the efficient quantity.

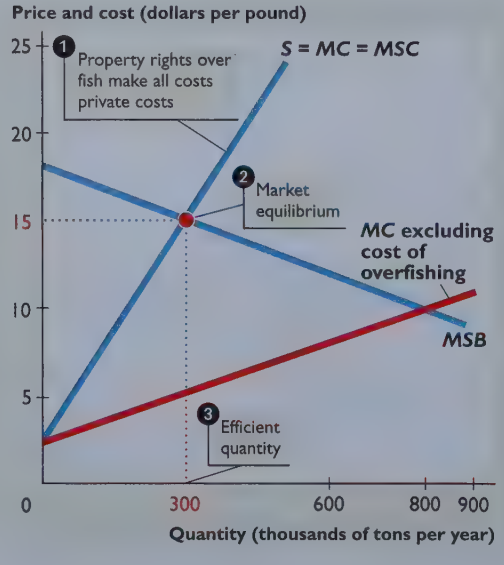


Figure 11.8 illustrates the efficient outcome when private property rights over a resource are established and enforced. The marginal private cost curve, *MC*, and the market supply curve, *S*, are the same as the marginal social cost curve, *MSC*: the curve labeled $S = MC = MSC$ in the figure. The demand curve is the marginal social benefit curve, *MSB* in the figure. The market price and equilibrium quantity are determined by supply and demand at $15 per pound and an annual catch of 300,000 tons. Price equals marginal social benefit and marginal social cost, so the quantity produced is the efficient quantity.

The private property solution to the tragedy of the commons is available in some cases. It was the solution to the original tragedy of the commons in England's Middle Ages. It is also a solution that has been used to prevent overuse of the airwaves that carry cell-phone services. The right to use this space (called the frequency spectrum) has been auctioned by governments to the highest bidders. The owner of each part of the spectrum is the only one permitted to use it (or to license someone else to use it).

But assigning private property rights is not always feasible and it isn't a practical solution to the problem of overfishing. The cost of policing millions of square miles of ocean would be far greater than the benefit arising from it. Also, there would be international disputes about which country had the right to enforce property rights. Further, in some cases and the ocean fish stock is one of them, people have an emotional objection to assigning private property rights. Critics of private property rights say it is immoral for someone to own a resource that they regard as public. In the absence of property rights, some form of government intervention is used, one of which is a production quota.

Production Quotas

A *production quota* is an upper limit to the quantity of a good that may be produced in a specified period. The quota is allocated to individual producers, so each producer has its own quota.

Figure 11.9 shows a production quota that achieves an efficient outcome. The quota limits the catch (production) to 300,000 tons, the efficient quantity at which marginal social benefit, *MSB*, equals marginal social cost, *MSC*. If everyone catches their own quota, the outcome is efficient. But implementing a production quota has two problems.

First, it is in every fisher's self-interest to catch more fish than the quantity permitted under the quota. The reason is that the market price exceeds marginal private cost, so by catching more fish, a fisher gets a higher income. If enough fishers break the quota, overfishing occurs and the tragedy of the commons remains.

Second, marginal cost is not, in general, the same for all producers—as we're assuming here. Some producers have a comparative advantage in using a resource. Efficiency requires that the quota be allocated to the producers with the lowest marginal cost. But the government department that allocates quotas does not have information about the marginal cost of individual producers. Even if the government tried to get this information, producers would have an incentive to lie about their costs, so as to get a bigger quota.

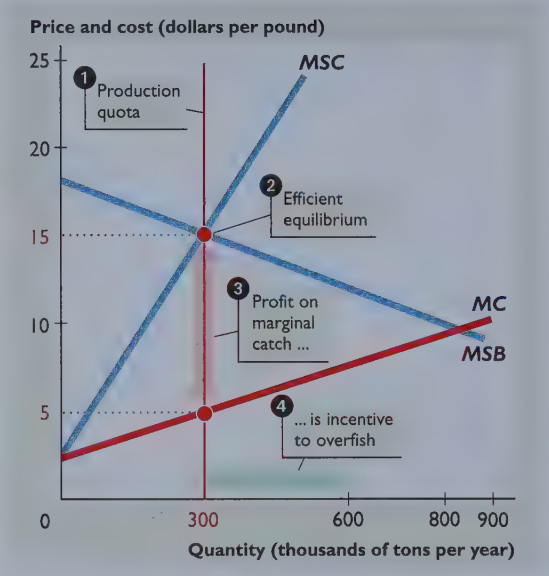
A production quota can work, but only if the activities of every producer can be monitored and all producers have the same marginal cost. Where producers are difficult or very costly to monitor or where marginal cost varies across producers, a production quota cannot achieve an efficient outcome.

FIGURE 11.9

A Production Quota to Use a Common Resource Efficiently

MyEconLab Animation

1. A production quota is set at the efficient quantity and each fisher is assigned a share of the quota.
2. The market equilibrium is efficient, but the price, $15 a pound, exceeds the fishers' marginal cost, $5 a pound, so;
3. fishers earn a profit on the marginal catch and;
4. have an incentive to break the quota and overfish.



Individual Transferable Quotas

Individual transferable quota (ITQ)
A production limit assigned to an individual who is then free to transfer (sell) the quota to someone else.

Where producers are difficult to monitor or where marginal cost varies across producers, a more sophisticated quota system, called an individual transferable quota, can be effective. An **individual transferable quota (ITQ)** is a production limit assigned to an individual who is then free to transfer (sell) the quota to someone else. A market in ITQs emerges and ITQs are traded at their market price.

The market price of an ITQ is the highest price that someone is willing to pay for one. That price is marginal social benefit minus marginal cost. The price of an ITQ will rise to this level because fishers who don't have a quota would be willing to pay this amount to get one.

A fisher with an ITQ could sell it for the market price, so by not selling the ITQ the fisher incurs an opportunity cost. The marginal cost of fishing, which now includes the opportunity cost of the ITQ, equals the marginal social benefit from the efficient quantity.

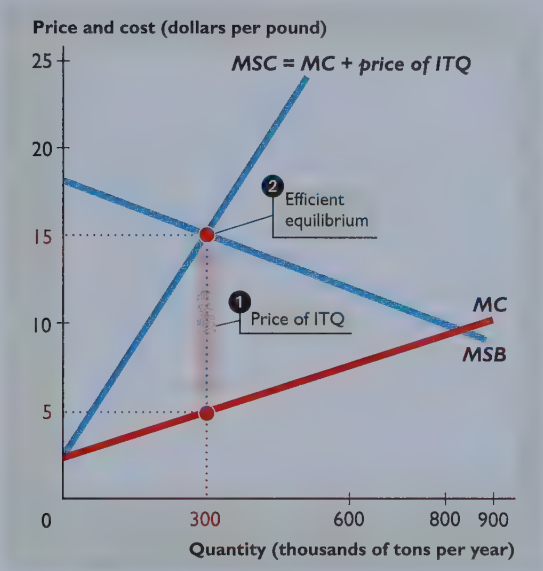
Figure 11.10 illustrates how ITQs work. Each fisher receives an allocation of ITQs and the total catch permitted by the ITQs is 300,000 tons per year. Fishers trade ITQs: Those with low marginal cost buy ITQs from those with high marginal cost, and the market price of an ITQ settles at $10 per pound of fish. The marginal private cost of fishing now becomes the original marginal private cost, *MC*, plus the price of the ITQ. The marginal private cost curve shifts upward from *MC* to *MC* + *price of ITQ* and each fisher is confronted with the marginal social cost of fishing.

Now no one has an incentive to cheat and exceed the quota because to do so would send marginal cost above the market price and result in a loss on the marginal catch. The outcome is efficient.

FIGURE 11.10

An ITQ to Use a Common Resource Efficiently

MyEconLab Animation



ITQs are issued such that the quantity of fish caught equals the efficient quantity.

1. The market price of an ITQ equals the marginal external cost of fishing and confronts fishers with the marginal social cost of their decisions.
2. The market equilibrium is efficient with 300,000 tons a year caught at the marginal social cost and market price of $15 a pound.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

ITQs Work

Economists agree that ITQs offer an effective tool for achieving an efficient use of the stock of ocean fish.

Iceland, the Netherlands, and Canada were the first countries to adopt ITQs in the late 1970s. New Zealand was the first country to adopt them as a national policy in 1986.

Today, 28 fisheries in the United States and 150 major fisheries and 100 smaller fisheries around the world, representing 10 percent of the world's marine life harvest, is managed by ITQs.

Marine biologists and economists agree that ITQs prevent fish stocks from collapsing and restore fisheries in critical decline.

Studies based on large data sets of more than 10,000 fisheries and over more than half a century have shown that without ITQs, there would be a major collapse of the global fish stock, but that with ITQs, a fish crisis has been averted.

One study found that ITQs even reverse a trend decline and turn it around to a trend recovery.

Fisheries that are managed with ITQs are half as likely to collapse as those that are not.

ITQs help maintain fish stocks, but they also reduce the size of the fishing industry. This consequence of ITQs puts them against the self-interest of fishers.

In all countries, the fishing industry opposes restrictions on its activities, but in the countries that pioneered ITQs, the opposition was not strong enough to block them.

In the United States the opposition to ITQs was so strong that the fishing industry persuaded Congress to outlaw them. In 1996, Congress passed the Sustainable Fishing Act that put a moratorium on ITQs that lasted until 2004. Since then, many U.S. fisheries have been managed by ITQs and have begun to see their benefits. ITQs are a success story.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 11.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 11.3

Explain the tragedy of the commons and review its possible solutions.

Practice Problems

Cows graze on common pasture and can produce milk in the amounts shown in Table 1. The marginal private cost of producing milk is zero.

TABLE 1

Quantity of milk (gallons per day)	Marginal external cost (dollars per gallon)	Marginal social benefit (dollars per gallon)
0	0	15
20	2	12
40	4	9
60	6	6
80	8	3
100	10	0

1. What is the quantity of milk produced if use of the common pasture is not regulated? Use a graph to illustrate your answer.
2. What is the efficient quantity of milk to produce? On a graph show the deadweight loss from overproduction.
3. If the common pasture were converted to private land and fenced off, what quantity of milk would be produced?
4. If ITQs were issued for the efficient quantity of milk production, what would be the market price of an ITQ?

In the News

Whaling hurts tourist industry

Leah Garces, the director of programs at the World Society for the Protection of Animals, reported that whale watching is more economically significant and sustainable to people and communities than whaling. The global whale-watching industry is estimated to be a $1.25 billion business enjoyed by over 10 million people in more than 90 countries each year.

Source: BBC, June 2, 2009

Describe the tradeoff facing communities that live near whaling areas. How might a thriving whale-watching industry avoid the tragedy of the commons?

FIGURE 1

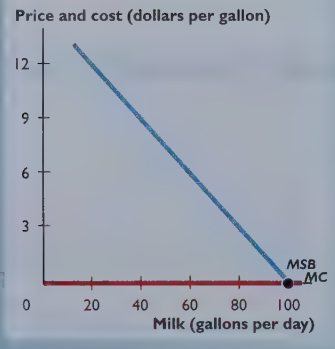
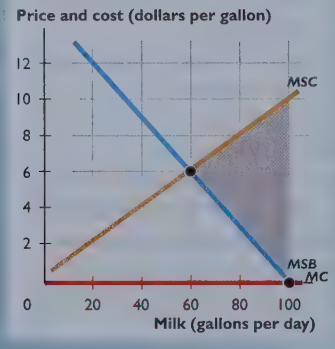


FIGURE 2



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The quantity of milk produced is 100 gallons a day—the quantity at which the marginal private cost equals the marginal social benefit. See Figure 1.
2. The efficient quantity of milk is 60 gallons a day—the quantity at which the marginal social cost equals the marginal social benefit. Marginal social cost equals marginal private cost plus marginal external cost. The gray area in Figure 2 shows the deadweight loss from overproduction.
3. If the common pasture were converted to private land and fenced off, the quantity of milk produced would be the efficient quantity—60 gallons a day.
4. The market price of an ITQ would be $6 a gallon, which equals the marginal external cost at the efficient quantity of milk.

Solution to In the News

Communities in a whaling area face a tradeoff between whale hunting and developing a whale-watching business. With a thriving whale-watching industry, these communities will have an incentive to protect the whales and not overuse the natural resource.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Distinguish among private goods, public goods, and common resources.

- A private good is a good or service that is rival and excludable.
- A public good is a good or service that is nonrival and nonexcludable.
- A common resource is a resource that is rival but nonexcludable.

2 Explain the free-rider problem and how public provision might help to overcome it and deliver an efficient quantity of public goods.

- A public good creates a free-rider problem—no one has a private incentive to pay her or his share of the cost of providing a public good.
- The efficient level of provision of a public good is that at which marginal social benefit equals marginal social cost.
- Competition between political parties, each of which tries to appeal to the maximum number of voters, can lead to the efficient scale of provision of a public good and to both parties proposing the same policies—the principle of minimum differentiation.
- Bureaucrats try to maximize their budgets, and if voters are rationally ignorant, they might vote to support taxes that provide public goods in quantities that exceed the efficient quantity.

3 Explain the tragedy of the commons and review its possible solutions.

- Common resources create the tragedy of the commons—no one has a private incentive to conserve the resource and use it at an efficient rate.
- A common resource is used to the point at which the marginal private cost equals the marginal social benefit.
- The efficient use of a common resource is the point at which marginal social benefit equals marginal social cost.
- A common resource might be used efficiently by creating a private property right, setting a quota, or issuing individual transferable quotas.

Key Terms

Common resource, 267
Excludable, 266
Free rider, 269
Individual transferable quota (ITQ), 284
Nonexcludable, 266
Nonrival, 266
Principle of minimum differentiation, 274
Private good, 266
Public good, 267
Rational ignorance, 274
Rival, 266
Tragedy of the commons, 278

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 11 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Use the following list of items to work Problems **1** and **2**.

- New Year's Eve celebrations in Times Square, New York
- A city's sewer system
- New York subway system
- A skateboard
- Cable TV
- Niagara Falls

1. Classify each of the items in the list as a private good, a public good, a common resource, or a natural monopoly good. Explain each classification.

2. For each public good in the list, is there a free-rider problem? If not, how is the free-rider problem avoided?

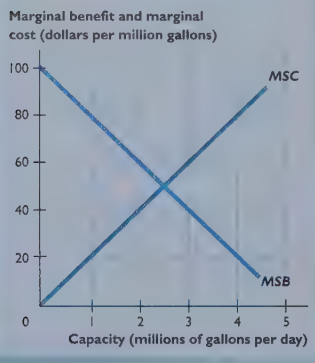
3. Table 1 sets out Wendy's, Sara's, and Tom's total benefit from a public good. If Wendy, Sara, and Tom are the only people in the society and the government provided 3 units of the public good, calculate the marginal social benefit.

TABLE 1

Units of pubic good	Total benefit		
	Wendy	Sara	Tom
0	0	0	0
1	20	10	30
2	40	15	50
3	60	20	60
4	80	25	65
5	100	30	67

Use Figure 1 to work Problems **4** and **5**. It shows the marginal social benefit and marginal social cost of a waste disposal system in a city of 1 million people.

FIGURE 1

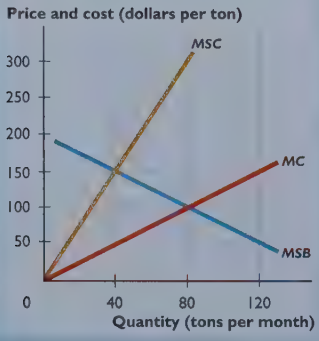


4. What is the efficient capacity of the waste disposal system and how much would each person have to pay in taxes if the city installed the efficient capacity?

5. If voters are well informed about the costs and benefits of the waste disposal system, what capacity will voters choose? If voters are rationally ignorant, will bureaucrats install the efficient capacity? Explain your answer.

Use Figure 2, which shows the market for North Atlantic tuna, to work Problems **6** to **8**.

FIGURE 2



6. a. What is the quantity of tuna that fishers catch and the price of tuna? Is there overfishing? Explain why or why not.
b. If the stock of tuna is used efficiently, what would be the price of fish?

7. a. With a quota of 40 tons a month for the tuna fishing industry, what is the equilibrium price of tuna and the quantity of tuna that fishers catch?
b. Is the equilibrium an overfishing equilibrium?

8. If the government issues ITQs to individual fishers that limit the total catch to the efficient quantity, what is the market price of an ITQ?

9. **Lawmakers set to allow speedier Arctic drilling**
The U.S. government will allow Arctic drilling that would speed the development of oil and gas reserves off the Alaskan coast. Environmentalists say that the area should not be drilled because there is wildlife in the area.
Source: CNNMoney, June 21, 2011

Are the oil and gas reserves public goods, private goods, or common resources? When an oil company receives a permit to develop a particular oil reserve, is that oil reserve a public good or a private good? Will the oil company produce an inefficient quantity or the efficient quantity? Explain.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. a. What type of good is a high-speed rail network?
   b. Why might it be provided by government rather than privately?
   c. Can you think of parts of the United States that have a similar population density to Europe where high-speed rail might be efficient?
   d. What information would be needed to determine the efficient amount of high-speed rail in the United States?

Use Table 1, which provides data about a dandelion control program, to work Problems 2 and 3.

TABLE 1

Quantity (square miles sprayed per day)	Marginal social cost (dollars per day)	Marginal social benefit (dollars per day)
0.5	0	600
1.0	100	500
1.5	200	400
2.0	300	300
2.5	400	200
3.0	500	100

2. What quantity of spraying would a private control program provide? What is the efficient quantity of spraying?
3. Two political parties, the Conservers and the Eradicators, fight an election in which the only issue is the quantity of spraying to undertake. The Conservers want no spraying and the Eradicators want to spray 2.5 square miles a day. The voters are well-informed about the benefits and costs of the program. What is the outcome of the election?
4. If hikers and others were required to pay a fee to use the Appalachian Trail, would the use of this common resource be more efficient? Would it be even more efficient if the most popular spots such as Annapolis Rock had more highly priced access? Why do you think we don't see more market solutions to the tragedy of the commons?

Use the following information to answer Problems 5 to 7.

A natural spring runs under land owned by ten people. Each person has the right to sink a well and can take water from the spring at a constant marginal cost of $5 a gallon. Table 2 sets out the marginal external cost and the marginal social benefit from the water.

TABLE 2

Quantity of water (gallons per day)	Marginal external cost (dollars per gallon)	Marginal social benefit (dollars per gallon)
10	1	10
20	2	9
30	3	8
40	4	7
50	5	6
60	6	5
70	7	4

5. Draw a graph to illustrate the market equilibrium. On your graph, show the efficient quantity of water taken.
6. If the government sets a production quota on the total amount of water such that the spring is used efficiently, what would that quota be?
7. If the government issues ITQs to land owners that limit the total amount of water taken to the efficient quantity, what is the market price of an ITQ?
8. **Ohio governor vetoes Ohio bill on Lake Erie water use**
   In 2008, the eight U.S. states and two Canadian provinces adjoining the lakes negotiated the Great Lakes Compact to prevent the region's water from being shipped or piped to arid regions. The compact also requires each state to regulate their own large-scale withdrawals from the lakes, their tributary streams, and underground sources. The Ohio bill that was vetoed would have allowed Ohio factories to pull more water out of Lake Erie.
   Source: *The Associated Press*, July 15, 2011

   Is water in the Great Lakes a public good, a private good, or a common resource? What do you think are the goals of the Great Lakes Compact? How might these goals be achieved?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 11 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A good is _____ if it is possible to prevent someone from enjoying its benefits and such a good might be a _____ good.
   A. rival; private
   B. excludable; public
   C. excludable; private
   D. nonexcludable; common resource
2. A free-rider problem arises if a good is _____.
   A. nonrival and nonexcludable
   B. nonrival and excludable
   C. rival and nonexcludable
   D. rival and excludable
3. The marginal social benefit of a public good is _____.
   A. the quantity demanded by all the people at a given price
   B. the amount that all the people are willing to pay for a given quantity
   C. the amount that all the people are willing to pay at a given quantity for one more unit
   D. the quantity demanded by all the people at a given marginal social cost
4. The efficient quantity of a public good is most likely to be delivered by ____.
   A. an election contest between two parties that want different quantities
   B. highly trained bureaucrats
   C. efficient private companies
   D. an individual transferable quota
5. A renewable common resource is used sustainably if _____.
   A. private benefits and public benefits are equal
   B. private benefits equal private costs
   C. the rate of renewal of the resource equals its rate of use
   D. the rate of use of the resource equals the social benefit from its use
6. Overfishing occurs if, at the quantity caught, _____.
   A. marginal social cost equals marginal private cost plus marginal external cost
   B. marginal social benefit equals the fishers'marginal private cost
   C. marginal social benefit equals marginal social cost
   D. marginal social benefit equals marginal private cost plus marginal external cost
7. All the following can achieve an efficient use of a common resource *except* _____.
   A. a production quota equal to the marginal external cost
   B. individual transferable quotas that total the efficient quantity
   C. assigning property rights to convert the common resource to private use
   D. individual transferable quotas that trade at marginal external cost

How do you avoid buying a lemon?

Markets with Private Information

12

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the lemons problem and explain how the used-car market solves it.
2. Describe the asymmetric information problems in the insurance market and explain how they are solved.
3. Explain the information problems and other economic problems in health-care markets.

12.1 THE LEMONS PROBLEM AND ITS SOLUTION

In all the markets that you've studied so far, buyers and sellers are well informed about the features and the value of the item being traded. Buyers know the benefits they get and sellers know the costs they incur. The buyers' marginal benefit determines demand, the sellers' marginal cost determines supply, and demand and supply together determine the equilibrium price and quantity. And if none of the obstacles to efficiency described in Chapter 6 (see p. 156) are present, the market allocates resources efficiently.

Private information
Information relevant to a transaction that is possessed by some market participants but not all.

Asymmetric information
A situation in which either the buyer or the seller has private information.

In some markets, either the buyer or the seller has some relevant information to a transaction—**private information**—that the other lacks. One of these markets is the one for used cars. In this market, each seller has private information about the quality of the vehicle offered for sale. When you buy a used car, you hope it isn't a lemon, but until you have driven it for a month or two, you won't know for sure. But the person who sells you the car knows. When one side of a market has private information, we call the situation one of **asymmetric information**—a situation in which *either* the buyer *or* the seller has *private information*. How does a market with asymmetric information work? What determines the equilibrium price and quantity? Is the market efficient or inefficient?

These are the questions we'll now answer.

A Market for Used Cars with a Lemons Problem

Lemons problem
The problem that when it is not possible to distinguish reliable products from lemons, there are too many lemons and too few reliable products.

When a person buys a used car, it might turn out to be a lemon. If the car *is* a lemon, it is worth less to the buyer than if it has no defects. Does the used-car market have different prices reflecting different qualities—a low price for a lemons and a higher price for a car without defects? It turns out that it does. But the market needs some help to do so and to overcome what is called the **lemons problem**—the problem that when it is not possible to distinguish reliable products from lemons, there are too many lemons—perhaps only lemons—and too few reliable products—perhaps none.

George Akerlof of the University of California, Berkeley, and 2001 Nobel Laureate, was the first person to pose the lemons problem and the challenge that it presents for markets to allocate resources efficiently.

To see how the used-car market overcomes the lemons problem, we'll first look at a market that *does* have a lemons problem.

To explain the lemons problem as clearly as possible, we'll assume that there are only two kinds of cars: defective cars—*lemons*—and cars without defects, which we'll call *good cars*. Whether a car is a lemon is private information that is available only to the current owner. The buyer can't tell whether the car for sale is a lemon until after buying it, driving it for a few weeks, and learning as much about it as its current owner knows.

Buyers' Decisions and Demand

Even though the buyers of used cars don't know whether they are buying a good car or a lemon, the law of demand applies. The lower the price of a car, the greater is the quantity of cars demanded. But what determines demand and the willingness to pay is a bit different. To see why, let's think about the choice that a car buyer called Greg is about to make.

Greg wants to buy a used car and he would like to avoid buying a lemon. He knows that the value of a good car to him, his marginal benefit, is $20,000. But Greg has a low income, some spare time, and he knows how to fix a car, so he would be willing to buy a lemon if he could get it for an appropriately low price—a price equal to his marginal benefit from a lemon, which he says is $10,000.

Now think about Greg's dilemma. He has found a car priced at $15,990 (in the photo). He likes the look of the car, but is it a good one or a lemon? If the car is a good one, he gets a marginal benefit of, and would be willing to pay, $20,000. So buying the car for $15,990 gives him a consumer surplus of $4,110. But if the car is a lemon, his marginal benefit is only $10,000, so paying $15,990 for the car leaves him with a negative consumer surplus (a consumer deficit!) of $5,990.

Will Greg pay $15,990? The answer depends on the odds of avoiding a lemon and how Greg regards taking risks. Although he doesn't know the quality of the car, he knows what all his friends have told him about the cars they've bought from the same dealer. If all his friends bought good cars, he will be thinking that this car is most likely a good one too. In this case, he is willing to pay close to $20,000 and at $15,990, he would buy this car.

But if all Greg's friends bought lemons, he will be thinking that this car is most likely a lemon too. In this case, he is willing to pay only $10,000, so $15,990 is much more than what he would be willing to pay.

Other buyers are making decisions like Greg's and figuring out what they are willing to pay for a car of unknown quality. Some buyers are willing to pay more than Greg and some less. At higher prices, there are fewer buyers and at lower prices more buyers. The demand curve for used cars slopes downward.

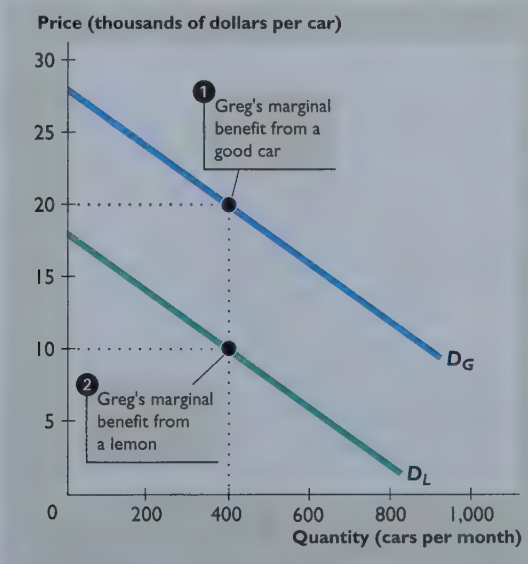
Figure 12.1 illustrates the demand for used cars. If previous buyers say that they've never seen a lemon, buyers expect no lemons and the demand curve for used cars is D_G. If previous buyers say that they've never seen a good car, buyers expect only lemons and the demand curve is D_L. If previous buyers say that some cars were good ones and some were lemons, buyers expect to see some of each type of car and the demand curve will lie between D_G and D_L.

Is this car a good one with a marginal benefit of $20,000 and a consumer surplus of $4,110? Or is it a lemon with a marginal benefit of $10,000 and a consumer "deficit" of $5,990? Will Greg buy it?

FIGURE 12.1

The Demand for a Used Car of Unknown Quality

MyEconLab Animation



1. If all Greg's friends bought good used cars, Greg might expect to buy a good one too and be willing to pay $20,000—his marginal benefit from a good car. The demand curve for good cars is D_G.
2. If all Greg's friends bought lemons, Greg might expect to buy a lemon too and be willing to pay $10,000—his marginal benefit from a lemon. The demand curve for lemons is D_L.

The demand curve for used cars of unknown quality lies between D_L and D_G.

Sellers' Decisions and Supply

Now think about the sellers of used cars, who know the quality of their cars. There is nothing special about this supply: Sellers know their marginal cost, so they know the quantity they are willing to supply at a given price. The marginal cost of a lemon is less than that of a good car and over a range of low prices, only lemons are supplied. At higher prices, the quantity of lemons supplied falls off and good cars start to be supplied.

Figure 12.2 shows an example of what the supply curves might look like. In this example, lemons are offered for sale at prices up to $12,000 and at that price all the lemons available are supplied and good cars start to be offered for sale.

The Market Outcome

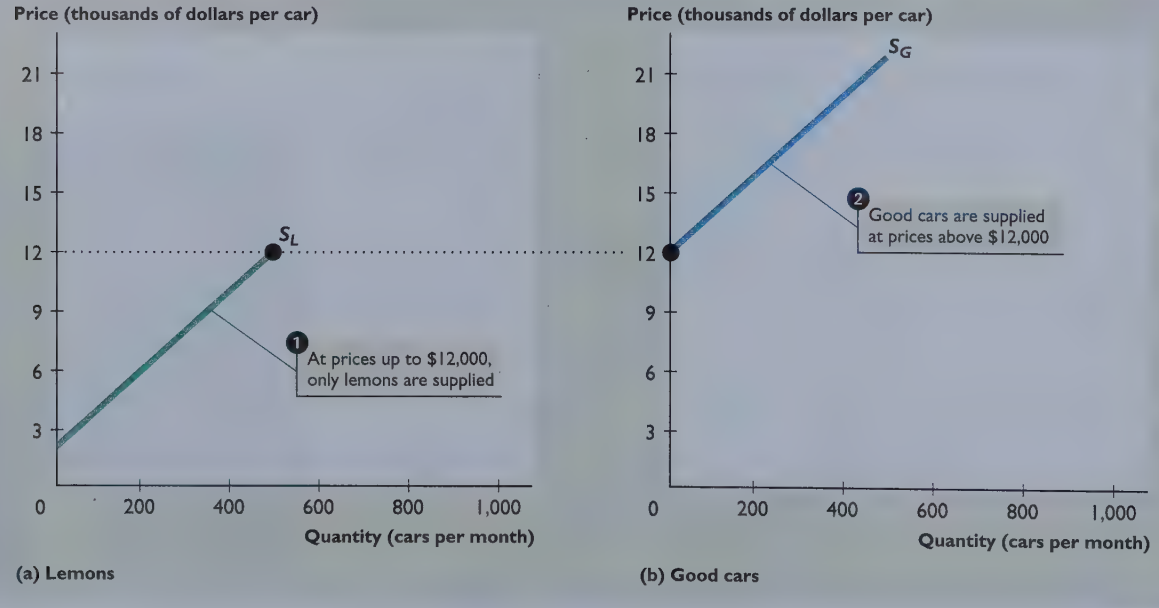
Demand and supply determine the price of a used car and the quantity traded, but the market doesn't work well. To explain, we'll focus on an extreme outcome in which only lemons get traded.

Suppose that buyers have learned from their friends that everyone who has bought a used car got a lemon. They assume that they, too, will get a lemon. Consequently, the demand for used cars is based on the willingness to pay for a lemon. The market demand is the demand for lemons, which delivers a low market price. At this low market price, good cars are worth more to their owners than

FIGURE 12.2

The Supply of Used Cars

MyEconLab Animation



Suppliers of used cars know the quality of what they offer for sale.

1 At prices below $12,000, only lemons are offered for sale and the supply curve of lemons is S_L.

2 At prices above $12,000, good cars are offered for sale and the supply curve of good cars is S_G.

they would get from selling them, so no good cars are offered for sale: only lemons are available. So lemons are the only cars traded.

Figure 12.3 illustrates the used-car market that we've just described. The demand for used cars, D, is equal to the demand for lemons, D_L. The supply of used cars, S, is the supply of lemons up to \$12,000 a car (the green segment of the supply curve) and the supply of lemons plus the supply of good cars at prices above \$12,000 (the blue segment of the supply curve).

The equilibrium price is \$10,000 per car and 400 lemons are traded each month.

Adverse Selection

This market suffers from adverse selection, a general problem that arises in markets with private information. **Adverse selection** is the tendency for people to enter into transactions that bring them benefits from their private information and impose costs on the uninformed party.

Adverse selection
The tendency for people to enter into transactions that bring them benefits from their private information and impose costs on the uninformed party.

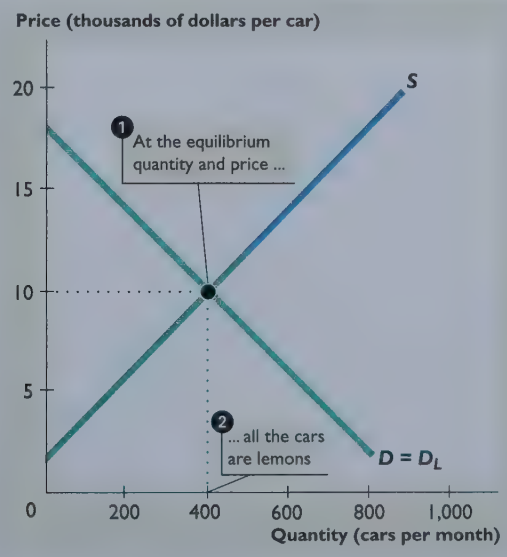
For example, Jackie hires salespeople and offers them a fixed wage contract. The only people Jackie attracts are lazy workers. Hardworking salespeople don't work for Jackie because they can earn more by working for someone who pays by results. Jackie's fixed-wage contract adversely selects those with private information—knowledge that they are lazy in this case—who use that knowledge to their own benefit and to impose costs on Jackie.

In the used-car market, the low price adversely selects lemons. The owners of lemons have a greater incentive to offer their cars for sale. In the extreme case (and in the above example), good cars disappear from the market. The owners of good cars have no incentive to offer them for sale. They hold on to their good cars because the market price is less than their marginal benefit.

FIGURE 12.3

The Lemons Problem in a Used-Car Market

MyEconLab Animation



The demand for used cars is the demand for lemons, so the demand curve is $D = D_L$. The supply curve of used cars is S. The green portion of the curve is the supply of lemons and the blue portion adds the supply of good cars.

1 The equilibrium price of a used car is \$10,000.

2 400 used cars a month are traded and they are all lemons. At the equilibrium price, no good cars are offered for sale.

EYE on the MARKET FOR USED CARS

How Do You Avoid Buying a Lemon?

The used-car market in the United States might have a lemons problem, but it definitely works: It is a very active and successful market.

In 2008 (the latest year for which data are available), 50,000 used-car dealers sold 37 million cars at an average price of $8,000 per car.

This scale of operation contrasts with the market for new cars in which around 40 domestic and foreign producers sold 13 million cars at an average price of $26,500 per car.

The stock of cars on U.S. roads is 250 million, so with 37 million being traded, more than one car in seven changes hands each year.

What makes this market work and helps it overcome the lemons problem? The answer is dealers' warranties and third party inspection services.

By offering warranties, dealers *signal* that the cars they are selling are free from defects and, if a car should turn out to be a lemon, the dealer will bear the cost of fixing it.

A Used-Car Market with Dealers' Warranties

Signaling
When an informed person takes an action that sends information to uninformed persons.

How can used-car dealers convince buyers that a car isn't a lemon and that it is worth more than a lemon? The answer is: By giving a guarantee in the form of a warranty, the dealer *signals* which cars are good ones and which cars are lemons.

Signaling occurs when an informed person takes actions that send information to uninformed persons. The grades and degrees that a university awards students are signals. They inform potential (uninformed) employers about the abilities of the people they are considering hiring—see *Eye on Your Life* on p. 309.

In the market for used cars, dealers send signals by giving warranties on the used cars they offer for sale. The message in the signal is that the dealer agrees to pay the costs of repairing the car if it turns out to have a defect.

Buyers believe the signal because the cost of sending a false signal is high. A dealer who gives a warranty on a lemon ends up bearing a high cost of repairs—and gains a bad reputation. A dealer who gives a warranty only on good cars has few repair costs and a reputation that gets better and better. It pays dealers to send an accurate signal, and it is rational for buyers to believe the signal.

So a car with a warranty is a good car; a car without a warranty is a lemon. Buyers are now effectively as informed as sellers, so the demand for cars depends on whether the car is a good one or a lemon. Because the willingness to pay for a good car is greater than that for a lemon, the demand for good cars is greater than the demand for lemons. But there is still a demand for lemons from people with a low income and a skill at fixing faulty cars.

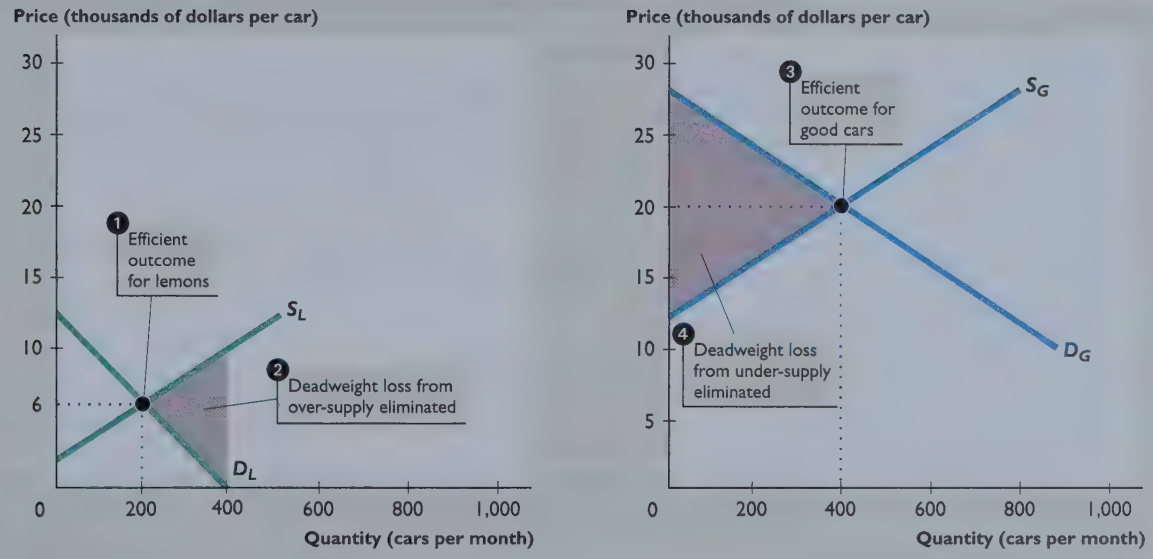
So there are now two markets for used cars: one for good cars and one for lemons and in each market there is a price. Warranties solve the lemons problem and enable the used-car market to function efficiently.

Figure 12.4 illustrates this outcome. In part (a) the demand for and supply of lemons determine the price of a lemon. In part (b), the demand for and supply of good cars determine the price of a good car. Both markets are efficient. The mar-

FIGURE 12.4

Warranties Make a Used-Car Market Efficient

MyEconLab Animation



❶ The demand for and supply of lemons determine the equilibrium price and quantity of lemons and ❷ the deadweight loss from the over-supply of lemons (gray triangle) is eliminated.

❸ The demand for and supply of good cars determine the equilibrium price and quantity of good cars and ❹ the deadweight loss from the under-supply of good cars (gray triangle) is eliminated.

ginal cost of each quality of car equals its marginal benefit and the deadweight loss that arises with asymmetric information is eliminated.

Pooling Equilibrium and Separating Equilibrium

You've seen two outcomes in the market for used cars. Without warranties, there is only one message visible to the buyer: All cars look the same. So there is one price regardless of whether the car is a good car or a lemon. It is as if all the cars, good ones and lemons, are in one big pool. We call the outcome in a market when only one message is available and an uninformed person cannot determine quality a **pooling equilibrium**. In the example above, only lemons were traded. But in such a market it is possible that a few good cars will be traded, though not enough to make buyers believe they will be lucky enough to get one.

Pooling equilibrium
The outcome when only one message is available and an uninformed person cannot determine quality.

In a used-car market with warranties, there are two messages. Good cars have warranties, and lemons don't. So there are two car prices for the two types of cars. The information created by warranties *separates* good cars and lemons. So we call the outcome in a market when signaling provides full information to a previously uninformed person a **separating equilibrium**.

Separating equilibrium
The outcome when signaling provides full information to a previously uninformed person.

Notice that no government action is needed to get the used-car market to work well. Dealers' warranties, voluntarily provided, do the job. Nonetheless, consumer protection laws in most states include "lemon laws" and a federal "lemon law" specifies statutory remedies for used-car buyers in the event that a dealer fails to honor its warranty.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 12.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 12.1

Describe the lemons problem and explain how the used-car market solves it.

Practice Problems

An earthquake damaged car factories and decreased the production of popular Japanese cars. The demand for good late-model used cars soared and car dealers scrambled to get their hands on used vehicles.

1. Explain the effect of the eathquake on the price of a good used car and the price of a lemon.
2. If you have a late-model car that you know isn't a lemon, will you sell it privately or sell it to a dealer? Explain your answer.

In the News

Colleges seek "authenticity" in hopefuls

David Lesesne, Dean of Admissions at Sewanee, a Tennessee liberal arts college, said that students have become less authentic to themselves by trying to be what colleges want, but colleges have done the same. Schools are looking to draw more applicants and students are looking to gain acceptance. As those numbers grow I think that has caused both sides of the equation to lose a little focus on what should be most important: the match.

Source: *USA Today*, August 22, 2007

Do the applicants or the colleges have private information? Give an example of such private information. Does this market have an adverse selection problem?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The increase in demand for good used cars shifts the demand curve rightward and with no change in supply, the price of a good car rises. At the higher price, the *quantity supplied* of good cars increases. With a higher price for good cars, dealers have an incentive to fix problems with lemons and offer them for sale with a warranty as good cars, so the supply of lemons decreases (lemons and good cars are substitutes in production—see p. 95). The decrease in the supply of lemons raises their price.
2. If you sell your used car privately, you offer it without a warranty. Assuming the potential buyer doesn't know you, your car without a warranty would be perceived as a lemon. You would not be able to sell it for the price of the good car that it is. You would sell it to a dealer if he offered you more than the price of a lemon.

Solution to In the News

Colleges and students know the grades and test scores, so these are not private information. "Students have become less authentic to themselves" indicates that students try to present themselves as better than they are. The student's true self is private information. Schools try to draw more applicants by looking like comfortable, friendly, and relaxed places. The true quality of the school is the school's private information. With both schools and hopefuls having private information, adverse selection occurs in the market for college places and the best match isn't always achieved.

12.2 INFORMATION PROBLEMS IN INSURANCE MARKETS

Just as buyers and sellers gain from trading goods and services, so they can also gain by trading risk. But risk is a "bad," not a good. The good that is traded is *risk avoidance*. A buyer of risk avoidance can gain because the value of avoiding a risk is greater than the price that must be paid to others to get them to bear shares of it. And a seller of risk avoidance faces a lower cost of risk than the price that people are willing to pay to avoid it.

People trade risk in financial markets and insurance markets. Here, we'll focus on insurance markets.

Insurance Markets

You can see in *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below that insurance plays a huge role in our economic lives.

Insurance reduces the risk that each person faces by sharing or *pooling* the risks. When you buy insurance against the risk of an unwanted event, you pay an insurance company a *premium*. If the unwanted event occurs, the insurance company pays you the amount of the insured loss.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Insurance in the United States

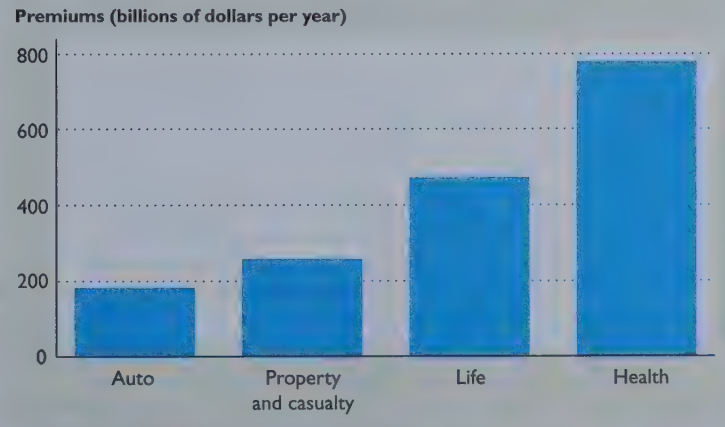
We spend 12 percent of our income on insurance. That's more than we spend on cars or food. In addition, we buy Social Security and unemployment insurance through our taxes.

Auto insurance reduces the risk of financial loss in the event of an auto accident or theft. We spent $182 billion on this insurance in 2008 (see Figure).

Property and casualty insurance reduces the risk of financial loss in the event of an accident involving damage to property or persons. It includes workers' compensation and fire insurance. We spent $258 billion on this insurance in 2008.

Life insurance reduces the risk of financial loss in the event of death. Almost 80 percent of households in the United States have life insurance, and the amount paid in premiums in 2008 was $475 billion.

Health insurance reduces the risk of financial loss in the event of illness. It can provide funds to cover both lost earnings and the cost of medical care. We spent $783 billion on this type of insurance in 2008.



SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Bureau of the Census, *Statistical Abstract of the United States:* 2011, Tables 131, 1220, and 1221.

Think about auto collision insurance. You know that there is a chance that you will be involved in an auto accident. The chance is small but always present. If you do have an accident and your car gets seriously damaged, you face the cost and inconvenience of getting it fixed. Worse, if you suffer serious personal injury, you also face a loss of income and the cost of medical care. For you, the cost of an auto accident is large and if you had to bear such cost, you'd like some help.

Because the chance that you will have a serious and costly auto accident is small, you can get that help by making a deal with an auto insurance company that is beneficial to both you and the insurer: You pay an annual premium to the insurance company and the company pays you a sum of money based on an agreed formula if you have an accident and incur a loss.

Insurance companies can get information from statistics on past accidents and costs that enable them to determine the premiums and payout conditions they can offer and still earn a profit. None of the company's policyholders knows whether they'll have an accident and the insurance company doesn't know *who* will have an accident, but it knows *how many* accidents there will be and what they will cost. An insurance company can *pool* the risks of a large population and enable everyone to share the costs.

People are happy to buy insurance at prices that enable insurance companies to make a profit because they are risk averse—they don't like risk—and by spreading the risk, insurance companies lower the risk for everyone.

But insurance companies do have a problem and it is a general problem that affects all types of insurance: Their customers have private information about their own behavior and its effects on the likelihood that they will make an insurance claim. There is asymmetric information in the insurance market.

Asymmetric Information in Insurance

Although asymmetric information is present in all types of insurance, we'll stick with auto collision insurance. Some drivers are careful and some are aggressive. A careful driver is less likely to have an accident than an aggressive driver. Each driver knows which type he or she is, but the insurance company doesn't know. Yet it would benefit the insurance company to know, for it could then charge the higher-risk aggressive driver a higher premium and the lower-risk careful driver a lower premium.

Without knowledge about driver types, all insured drivers get the same deal. There is a *pooling equilibrium* like that in the used-car market without dealer warranties. Careful drivers and aggressive drivers pay the same premium, but the insurance companies incur losses on aggressive drivers and make profits on careful drivers.

Figure 12.5 illustrates this pooling equilibrium outcome. The demand for collision insurance by careful drivers is D_C and the demand by all drivers is D. The horizontal distance between the curves D_C and D is the quantity demanded by aggressive drivers at each price.

The insurance companies don't know the driver type to which they are selling, so the supply curve, S, is the same for all drivers. It is based on an average of the marginal cost of insuring an aggressive driver and the marginal cost of insuring a careful driver.

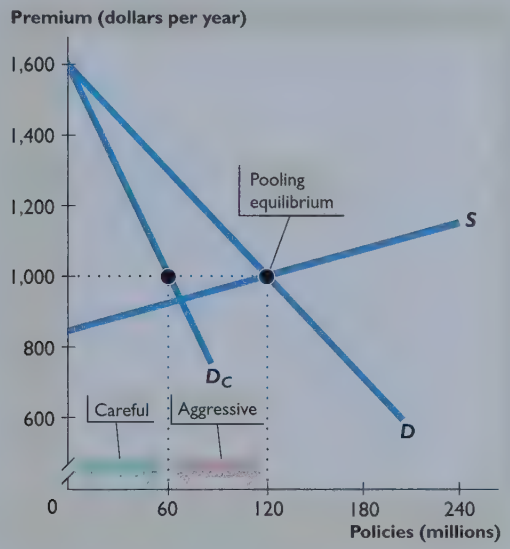
In this example, the equilibrium premium is $1,000 a year and 60 million careful drivers and 60 million aggressive drivers are insured.

You're now going to see that this outcome is inefficient for two reasons: it creates moral hazard and adverse selection.

FIGURE 12.5

Inefficient Pooling Equilibrium in an Auto Insurance Market

MyEconLab Animation



With no information on driver type, insurance companies offer all drivers the same deal. The insurance supply curve is *S*.

The demand curve D_C is the demand for auto insurance by careful drivers. The demand curve *D* is the demand for auto insurance by all drivers. The horizontal distance between the two demand curves is the quantity demanded by aggressive drivers at each premium level.

A pooling equilibrium occurs at the intersection of *S* and *D* at a premium of $1,000 a year with 120 million insured drivers divided equally between careful and aggressive.

In this equilibrium, moral hazard and adverse selection make insurance companies look for ways of separating the two driver types.

Moral Hazard

Moral hazard is the tendency for a person with private information to use it in ways that impose costs on an uninformed party with whom they have made an agreement.

Moral hazard
The tendency for a person with private information to use it in ways that impose costs on an uninformed party with whom they have made an agreement.

Moral hazard arises in many settings. For example, big banks face moral hazard. They know they are too big for governments to let them fail so they make loans that are too risky. Insurance companies face moral hazard because an insured person is less likely than an uninsured person to behave in ways that avoid the insured loss. For example, fire insurance lessens the incentive to install smoke deterctors, fire alarms, and a sprinkler system.

In the case of auto insurance, a driver with full collision coverage has less incentive than a driver with little or no collision coverage to drive carefully. Once a person has bought insurance, her or his incentives change and the change adversely affects the interest of the insurance company.

Adverse Selection

Adverse selection arises because people at greater risk are more likely to buy insurance than those for whom a risk is very small. For example, a person with a family history of serious illness is more likely to buy health insurance than a person with a family history of good health. Similarly, an aggressive driver is more likely than a careful driver to take the fullest possible coverage. So more of the insured risks arise from the activities of the riskiest people.

Insurance companies have an incentive to find ways around the moral hazard and adverse selection problems. By doing so, they can lower premiums for low-risk people and raise premiums for high-risk people.

Screening in Insurance Markets

Screening
When an uninformed person creates an incentive for an informed person to reveal relevant private information.

Screening occurs when an uninformed person creates an incentive for an informed person to reveal relevant private information. Insurance companies use the "no-claim" bonus and the deductible as *screens* to separate high-risk aggressive drivers and low-risk careful drivers and set premiums in line with the risk arising from the two types of drivers.

No-Claim Bonus

A *no-claim bonus* is a discount in the insurance premium for drivers who don't make claims. A driver accumulates a no-claim bonus by driving safely and avoiding accidents. The longer the period of no-claim, the greater is the no-claim bonus. And the greater the bonus, the greater is the incentive to drive carefully.

The no-claim bonus enables the informed driver to reveal her or his type to the uninformed insurance company and get insurance at a lower price, in line with the lower risk that the driver presents. A driver who makes claims also reveals her or his type to the insurance company and gets insurance at a higher price, in line with the higher risk that the driver presents.

The no-claim bonus helps to lessen the moral hazard problem. With a bonus at stake for making a claim, a driver has a stronger incentive to be careful and try harder to avoid accidents.

Deductible

Insurance companies also use a deductible. A *deductible* is the amount of a loss that the insured person agrees to bear personally. The larger the deductible, the lower is the premium, and the decrease in the premium is more than proportionate to the increase in the deductible. By offering insurance with full coverage—no deductible—on terms that are attractive only to aggressive high-risk drivers and by offering coverage with a deductible on more favorable terms that are attractive to careful low-risk drivers, insurance companies can do profitable business with everyone. Aggressive high-risk drivers choose policies with a low deductible and a high premium; careful low-risk drivers choose policies with a high deductible and a low premium.

The size of the deductible chosen reveals to the insurance company whether the driver is aggressive or careful.

Separating Equilibrium with Screening

With screening that indicates driver types, insurance companies can supply insurance on different terms to the different groups. With only two groups, aggressive and careful, it can offer premiums at two different levels: A higher premium for aggressive drivers and a lower premium for careful drivers. The higher premium is an incentive for aggressive drivers to behave as if they were careful, so the number of aggressive drivers decreases and the number of careful drivers increases. The outcome is a separating equilibrium.

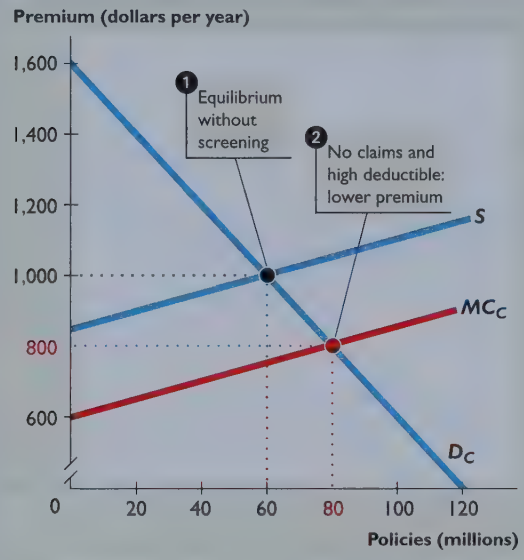
Figure 12.6 illustrates this outcome and contrasts it with the pooling equilibrium that arises without screening.

Figure 12.6(a) shows the situation for careful drivers and 12.6(b) for aggressive drivers. We're assuming that the two groups are of equal size in the sense that they have identical demand curves, D_C and D_A (as before in Figure 12.5). But as you're about to see, the two groups don't end up of equal size when they have responded to the incentives they face.

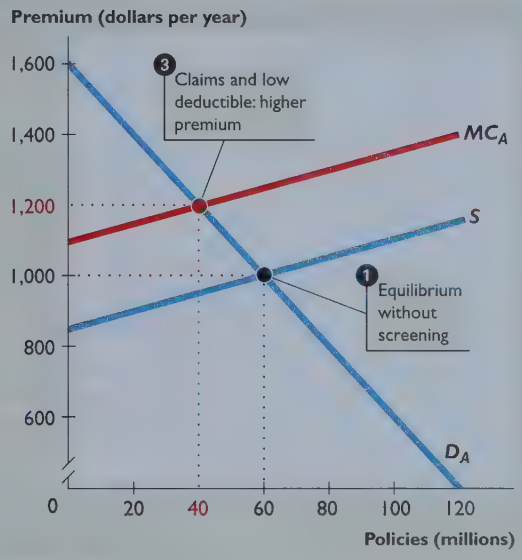
FIGURE 12.6

Two Outcomes in Auto Insurance Compared

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Careful drivers



(b) Aggressive drivers

Careful drivers in part (a) have demand curve D_C and aggressive drivers in part (b) have demand curve D_A. With no screening, the supply curve of insurance is S in both parts.

❶ Without screening the equilibrium premium is $1,000 and 60 million drivers are careful and 60 million are aggressive.

With screening, the supply curve of insurance to careful drivers in part (a) is MC_C and the supply curve of insurance to aggressive drivers in part (b) is MC_A.

In part (a) ❷ equilibrium occurs at a premium of $800 and 80 million drivers reveal that they are careful.

In part (b) ❸ equilibrium occurs at a premium of $1,200 and 40 million drivers reveal that they are aggressive.

In a separating equilibrium, 20 million drivers switch from being aggressive to being careful.

Without screening provided by a no-claim bonus and deductible, insurance companies offer the same supply of insurance to all drivers. The equilibrium without screening is the same as in Figure 12.5: Everyone pays $1,000 a year and there are 60 million of each type of driver.

With screening, the insurance companies base their supply to each group on the marginal cost (*MC*) of serving them. For careful drivers in part (a), the supply curve is MC_C. The equilibrium insurance premium is $800 a year and the number of drivers who are, or who behave as if they are, careful increases to 80 million. Without screening, the market *under*provides insurance to this group and is inefficient. With screening, the market is efficient.

For the aggressive drivers in part (b), the marginal cost of serving them is MC_A and this marginal cost determines the supply to this group. The equilibrium insurance premium is $1,200 a year and the number of drivers who remain aggressive decreases to 40 million. Without screening, the market *over*provides insurance to this group and is inefficient. Again, with screening, the market is efficient.

You've now seen two examples of markets with asymmetric information in which the creative signaling and screening overcomes what would be a market failure and achieves an efficient outcome.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 12.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 12.2

Describe the asymmetric information problems in the insurance market and explain how they are solved.

Practice Problems

1. Pam is a low-risk careful driver and Fran is a high-risk aggressive driver. What might an auto-insurance company do to get Pam and Fran to reveal their driver type?
2. Using Figure 12.6, show the deadweight losses that arise in an equilibrium without screening that are avoided in a separating equilibrium with screening.

In the News

Volvo ends fender bender

Volvos equipped with City Safe are less likely to cause rear-end crashes than are comparable vehicles without the safety system.

Source: *The Sacramento Bee*, July 29, 2011

1. How could auto-insurance companies use the information in the news clip? Is that information private and asymmetric?
2. How might City Safe create adverse selection and moral hazard?

FIGURE 1

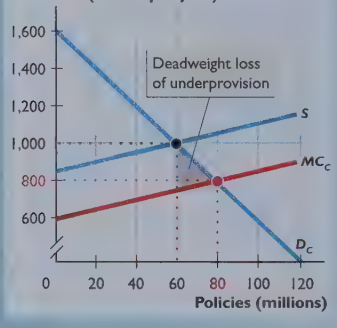
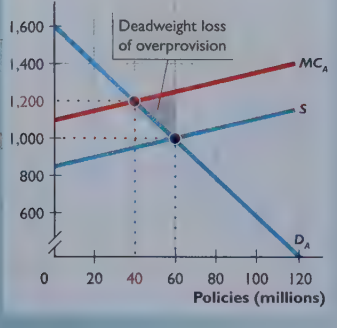


FIGURE 2



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The insurance company will offer policies with deductibles that enable drivers to reveal their private information. Pam reveals that she is a low-risk driver by taking a high deductible and low premium. Fran reveals that she is a high-risk driver by taking a low deductible and high premium.
2. For low-risk careful drivers, by taking a high deductible and low premium, 80 million get insurance for $800 a year compared to 60 million paying $1,000 a year without screening. The gray triangle in Figure 1 shows the deadweight loss avoided with screening from underprovision without screening.

   For high-risk aggressive drivers, by taking a low deductible and high premium, 40 million get insurance for $1,200 a year compared to 60 million paying $1,000 a year without screening. The gray triangle in Figure 2 shows the deadweight loss avoided with screening from overprovision without screening.

Solutions to In the News

1. The insurance companies know whether a car is a Volvo with the City Safe system and can use this information to separate the market by known risk differences. But this information is not private and not asymmetric.
2. Adverse selection: Drivers who know their driving style brings a high collision risk are more likely to buy a Volvo with City Safe. Moral hazard: Having bought a Volvo with City Safe, driving carelessly is less dangerous so some drivers become more careless.

12.3 HEALTH-CARE MARKETS

We're going to look at the health-care markets of the United States from an economic perspective. What are the economic problems these markets face? How do our health-care arrangements deal with these problems? How do other countries deal with the same problems? Does U.S. health care need reform?

Economic Problems in Health-Care Markets

Health care is two distinct products: health insurance—insurance that pays health-care bills—and health-care services—the services of physicians, specialists, nurses, other health-care professionals, and hospitals.

Left to competitive market forces with no government intervention both health insurance and health-care services would be underprovided for three economic reasons:

- Asymmetric information
- Missing insurance market
- Public-health externalities

Asymmetric Information

Asymmetric information, which brings adverse selection and moral hazard, is present in both markets. In the insurance market, the buyers have private information and in the care market the sellers have private information.

Adverse Selection and Moral Hazard in Health Insurance Some people exercise, eat healthy diets, watch their weight, and rarely get sick. Others are couch potatoes who don't exercise, eat high-fat and high-sugar diets, are overweight, and not only get sick more often but also are at long-term risk for diabetes and heart disease.

Information about whether a person has a healthy or unhealthy lifestyle is private information not available to the insurance companies.

Adverse selection arises because some of the healthiest people choose to be uninsured, at least during their younger years. *Moral hazard* arises because once insured, a person has less incentive to adopt a healthy lifestyle and some will yield to the temptation to drift into unhealthy habits.

Faced with a lack of information about individual lifestyle choices, health-insurance providers (like auto-insurance suppliers) offer lower premiums with high deductibles so that buyers can *reveal* information about their lifestyle. The fittest and healthiest choose a high deductible and low premium and the least fit and unhealthiest choose a low deductible and high premium. The market finds a *separating equilibrium.*

Moral Hazard in Health-Care Services High-quality providers of health-care services diagnose and prescribe treatments reliably and at the lowest possible cost. Low-quality providers make diagnosis errors and over-prescribe expensive drugs and other treatments. But the information about the quality and reliability of the health-care provider is private. The buyers (patients and insurance companies) don't know the quality of the providers. In this regard, the market for health-care services is like the market for used cars.

Moral hazard arises that increases the cost of health-care services. Providers have an incentive to play safe and overtreat a patient. Neither the patient nor the

insurance company has information with which to prevent this inefficiency.

Health Maintenance Organizations partly address this moral hazard problem. By working with a limited number of service providers, an insurance company can monitor the quality of the service and control costs. But even with this arrangement, the service provider has more information than the insurer so the problem is lessened but not completely overcome.

Missing Insurance Market

Many people can't get private health insurance because they are too old or too sick or too disabled. Others with pre-existing conditions can get insurance but only with exclusions of the very health problems they are most likely to encounter. These are the people who have the greatest wants for health care but the least ability to get it without some alternative to the free market.

The missing insurance market is one that is blind to a person's known health risks. This market can be provided only with government intervention.

The U.S. health-care system deals with this problem by government provision of health insurance. Medicare pays the hospital costs and subsidizes the treatment costs of the aged (over 65) and some of the long-term disabled. Medicaid pays the health-care costs of those living in poverty and with long-term health-care needs.

These government programs provide health insurance for 88 million people but miss an estimated 46 million (see *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below). The total expenditure on them is driven by patient demand, not by decisions of Congress. As the population gets older and advances in medical technology keep people alive longer with expensive treatments, the cost of these programs grows.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Health Care in the United States: A Snapshot

Expenditure on health care takes more than 16 percent of U.S. incomes. A bit more than a half of this expenditure is private—spending on health-care insurance and out-of-pocket payments for health-care services. The rest is financed by taxes—spending by federal and state governments on Medicare and Medicaid.

Figure 1 shows the distribution of the health-care dollar across these types of expenditure.

Of the 301 million people in the United States, 167 million have private health insurance.

More than one half of all employed people—about 70 million—buy health insurance through their employer.

Tax breaks are available on health insurance payments, the largest being for the self-employed who can deduct the entire payment.

About 75 million people limit their health-care cost by using a Health Maintenance Organization (HMO).

The federal and state Medicare and Medicaid programs cover 88 million people.

An estimated 46 million have no health-care insurance, and a further 25 million are reckoned to be underinsured—have some insurance but not enough for a big emergency.

Some of the uninsured are healthy and *choose* not to insure. Others can't afford insurance and don't qualify for Medicare or Medicaid.

Per person covered, government programs are more costly than private insurance because they serve the aged, the disabled, and the chronically sick.

Figure 2 shows expenditure per person. With 88 million people covered by Medicare and Medicaid at a total cost of $831 billion, governments spend $9,443 per person per year on these two programs.

The cost of private insurance per person covered is 50 percent of the cost of the government programs at $4,690 per person per year.

Out-of-pocket expenditure, which includes spending by the uninsured, is $1,304 per person per year.

Public-Health Externalities

The control of infectious diseases is a *public good* (see Chapter 11, p. 267). So public sanitation systems, which general public health relies upon, is provided by governments to avoid a *free rider problem* (see Chapter 11, p. 269).

Vaccination against an infectious disease is a *private good,* but one with a *positive externality* (see Chapter 10, p. 242 and 254–259). People who get a flu shot protect not only themselves but everyone with whom they come into contact. The marginal social benefit of flu shots exceeds the marginal private benefit.

The efficient quantity of flu shots exceeds the quantity that an unregulated market would provide. This feature of health care is a further reason why it is efficient to subsidize the care of the aged and those in poverty.

You've seen three economic reasons why health care isn't an ordinary good that we can expect the unregulated market to provide efficiently.You've also seen that U.S. health care is provided by a mixture of private and public insurance. How do the U.S. health-care markets compare with those in other countries?

Health-Care Systems in Other Countries

Every major country except the United States has a comprehensive national health-care system. Every person is insured under a government-funded national insurance program. Health-care services are provided by private clinics, hospitals, physicians, and specialists but they are paid for by governments.

Government expenditure on health care is financed by specific health insurance taxes and by general income taxes.

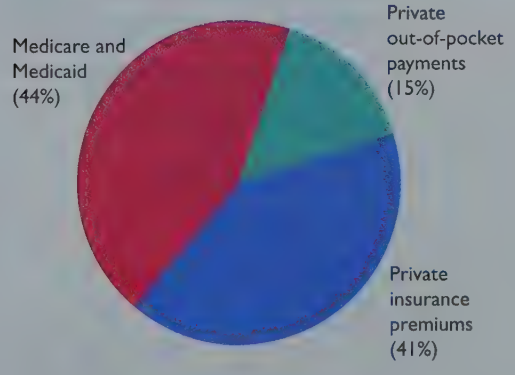


Figure 1 Private and Public Expenditures on Health Care

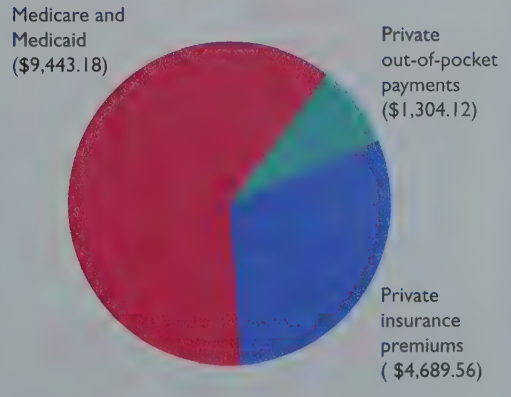


Figure 2 Private and Public Expenditures per Person

SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Bureau of the Census, *Statistical Abstract of the United States:* 2011, Tables 131, 140, 142, and 145.

Resources in the public health-care system are allocated by physicians, specialists, and hospitals and are based on urgency of need, which results in patients often being placed on lengthy waiting lists.

No one is permitted to opt out of the national health service but in most countries, everyone *is* permitted to buy private insurance and private health care. In these countries, what is called a "two-tier" system sometimes emerges in which the rich buy private insurance and get higher-quality care and the poor get their health care from a lower-quality state system.

In a few countries, there is no private option. It is illegal to open a private clinic and sell private insurance that covers basic care provided by the state system. The idea of this restriction is to avoid the "two-tier" outcome.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Health-Care Expenditures and Health Outcomes

The best health care in America is the best in the world. But access to the best is not universally available and the inequality in access to health care in the United States is greater than in other similarly rich nations.

Figures 1 and 2 below compare the United States with seven other rich countries on health-care expenditures and a health-care efficiency index.

The expenditure data in Figure 1 are average dollars spent on health care per person in each country.

The efficiency data in Figure 2 are based on life expectancy, health inequality, and the fairness of financing health care.

The comparisons in the figures make U.S. health care look the most costly and least efficient among these countries. But the comparison ignores international trade in health-care services. Tens of thousands of Canadians and people from other countries come to the United States to get high-quality health care. Expenditure on these foreigners raises U.S expenditure in Figure 1 and the greater healthiness of these foreigners raises the efficiency indexes of other countries in Figure 2.

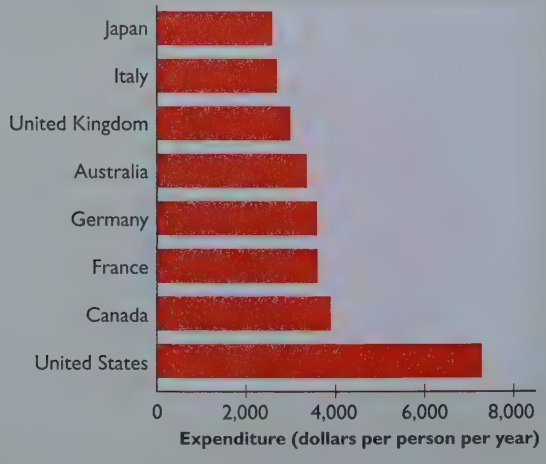


Figure 1 Expenditure per Person

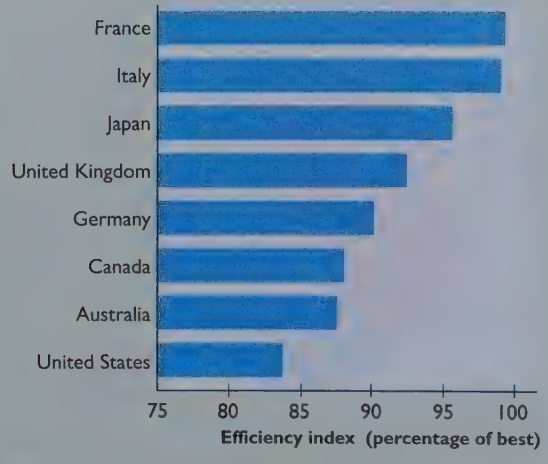


Figure 2 Overall Efficiency of Health-Care System

SOURCES OF DATA: OECD and the World Health Organization.

The comprehensive national health systems limit choice and impose long waiting times. But they do contain costs and they do so without, apparently, compromising the overall quality of health outcomes. *Eye on the Global Economy* on p. 308 provides some details.

A Reform Idea

The Medicare and Medicaid programs are in effect an open-ended commitment of public funds to the health care of the aged and those too poor to buy private health care. Health care in the United States faces two problems: Too many people are uninsured and health care costs too much. These problems are going to get worse if nothing major is done to reverse a trend.

The Obama Affordable Care Act addresses the first of these problems by requiring everyone to be insured and by creating a new Pre-Existing Condition Insurance Plan, financed partly by the government. But the Act does little to address the problem of overexpenditure, and this problem is extremely serious. It is so serious that without massive change, the present open-ended health-care programs will bankrupt the United States.

A solution to both the problem of coverage and access and the problem of over-expenditure has been suggested by Laurence Kotlikoff, an economics professor at Boston University. His proposal uses health-care *vouchers* to ensure universal coverage and a cap on total expenditure. Everyone would get a voucher and those with higher expected health-care costs would get a bigger voucher. Health-care vouchers would work like the education vouchers that we explain in Chapter 10 (see pp. 258–259). They would provide the cost discipline of the European and Canadian systems with the choice that is so important and valued by Americans.

Professor Laurence J. Kotlikoff of Boston University; author of The Healthcare Fix *and creator of* Medicare Part C for All.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Signaling Your Ability

You've seen how used-car dealers signal with warranties. You, too, send signals.

You know how smart you are and how hard you're willing to work. But this information is private. It is known to you but not to your potential employers.

How can you signal your ability to potential employers? The answer is by your choice of education.

Michael Spence, an economist at Stanford University and joint winner of the 2001 Nobel Prize with George Akerlof and Joseph Stiglitz, explained how education choices send signals.

Think of people as having just two possible levels of ability: either high or low. Each person knows her or his own ability, but potential employers don't have this information.

People send signals to potential employers by their choice of education. For a low-ability person, the opportunity cost of a university education is high—not just the tuition and cost of books, but the cost in time and effort to get passing grades.

For a high-ability person, the opportunity cost of a college or university education is lower. For those people, good grades take hard work but they can be attained with reasonable effort. So only people with high ability choose a college or university education.

Employers know each person's education (and grades), so they can offer a high wage for high ability and a low wage for low ability. There is a separating equilibrium in the market for workers of differing ability.

Even if your education contributed nothing to improve ability, it would still signal your ability.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 12.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 12.3

Explain the information problems and other economic problems in health-care markets.

Practice Problems

1. Describe the asymmetric information problem in the market for health-care services and explain how the problem is dealt with.
2. What are the sources of inefficiency in the U.S. health-insurance market?

In the News

Your family's health-care costs: $19,393
The average health-care costs of American families who are insured through their jobs is $19,393, up 7.3 percent or $1,319 from last year. Of this increase, workers' out-of-pocket costs rose 9.2 percent. Payroll deductions for insurance coverage rose 9.3 percent. Employers have increasingly been offering health plans with larger deductibles to control their own costs and to force workers to use medical care more selectively.

Source: CNNMoney, May 11, 2011

1. How do larger deductibles help employers to control their own costs?
2. How do larger deductibles change the incentives that people face?
3. How do larger deductibles chosen by employers influence the distribution of health-care costs?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. In the market for health-care services, the suppliers are physicians, specialists, other health-care professionals, and hospitals. The demanders are patients and the insurance companies that pay most of the patients' bills. Asymmetric information arises because medical workers have private information about a patient's condition, the treatments available, and the cost-effectiveness of the treatment they prescribe. They face moral hazard. HMOs with insurance companies selecting and monitoring service providers lessen the moral hazard.
2. The sources of inefficiency in the U.S. market for health insurance are pre-existing conditions and other serious health risks that are uninsurable, and underprovision, with 46 million Americans having no health insurance and millions more being underinsured.

Solutions to In the News

1. Larger deductibles lower the premiums and so lower employers'costs.
2. Larger deductibles strengthen the incentives for: (1) Healthy families to buy health-care insurance; (2) People not to visit the doctor with minor health problems; (3) People with unhealthy lifestyles to try to reform.
3. Larger deductibles chosen by employers lower their own share of health-care costs and increase the out-of-pocket costs of their insured employees.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the lemons problem and explain how the used-car market solves it.

- In some markets, one side of a market has private information—asymmetric information.
- In the market for used cars, the seller knows and the buyer doesn't know if a car is a lemon.
- Adverse selection results in a pooling equilibrium with too many lemons and too few good cars being traded.
- Dealers' warranties act as signals and enable the market to achieve a separating equilibrium that is efficient.

2 Describe the asymmetric information problems in the insurance market and explain how they are solved.

- In insurance markets, buyers are better informed than sellers about the risk being insured.
- Without screening, too few low-risk people would be insured.
- Moral hazard arises in insurance: An insured person has less incentive than an uninsured person to avoid the insured loss.
- The no-claim bonus and deductible reveal risk and enable insurance markets to reach an efficient separating equilibrium.

3 Explain the information problems and other economic problems in health-care markets.

- Three economic problems in health-care markets are (1) asymmetric information, (2) missing insurance markets, and (3) public-health externalities.
- Adverse selection results in some of the healthiest choosing not to insure.
- Suppliers of health-care services have private information and buyers cannot monitor and control the quality and cost of service.
- The HMO controls costs by using a limited number of health-care providers and monitoring them.
- The market underprovides health care because it excludes those with the greatest health problems and has external benefits.
- Other countries have comprehensive national health-care systems with lower cost but limited choice. Health-care vouchers could cut cost, increase coverage, and retain choice.

Key Terms

Adverse selection, 295
Asymmetric information, 292
Lemons problem, 292
Moral hazard, 301
Pooling equilibrium, 297
Private information, 292
Screening, 302
Separating equilibrium, 297
Signaling, 296

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 12 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Judy knows that her car is a lemon and offers it for sale. If the used-car market is working efficiently, will buyers know whether her car is a lemon? Why or why not?
2. Some car dealers offer used cars for sale with warranties and some offer them without warranties. Describe the equilibrium in the market for used cars. Is the market efficient?
3. **G.M. recalls 6,800 pickups for inaccurate shift-lever reading**
   General Motors is recalling 6,800 pickups from the 2011 model year because a defective clip could allow the automatic transmission's selector to appear to be in Park when it was not. A worker at the assembly plant discovered the problem.

   Source: *The New York Times*, July 1, 2011

   Did G.M. sell 6,800 lemons to people who bought the pickups? If G.M. did, what was the private information that it had that buyers did not know? If G.M. didn't, explain why not.

Use the following information to work Problems **4** and **5**.

Mary is an 18-year-old student, who recently bought a used car. Mary is looking to buy car insurance. Insurance companies compete for her business.

4. Is there a moral hazard problem in a transaction between Mary and an insurance company? Explain why or why not?
5. Is there an adverse selection problem in a transaction between Mary and an insurance company? Explain why or why not?
6. If you have private information that you are a more aggressive driver than your driving record indicates, would you buy collision insurance? If the insurance company offers you a large deductible or a no-claim bonus are you likely to take the offer? Why or why not?

Use the following information to work Problems **7** to **9**.

President Obama campaigned on a health-care reform plan that did not include mandatory health insurance. Hillary Clinton wanted mandatory health insurance with no opting out. In 2009, the President said he would support making health insurance mandatory with the cost covered by employers, but those who could not afford to pay and small businesses would be exempt.

7. If health insurance is optional, would healthy people be more likely or less likely to buy insurance?
8. What obstacles to efficiency does optional health insurance create?
9. U.S. health care per person costs twice that of other rich countries. Does the United States overprovide? Do other countries underprovide? What economic concepts do you need to answer? What data might be relevant?
10. Describe the situation if health care is delivered using the same methods that deliver basic education to all Americans. How would the health-care system you've described compare with that in the United States today? How would it compare to that in Canada?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Describe the used-car market in the United States. How many used cars get traded per year and at what average price? How does the market enable buyers to avoid a lemon? What role, if any, do governments play in the used-car market?
2. Zaneb is a high-school teacher and is well known in her community for her honesty, integrity, and sense of social responsibility. She is shopping for a used car. She plans to borrow the money to pay for it from her local bank and she plans to buy auto insurance from her local insurance company. What asymmetric information problems is Zaneb likley to enounter and what arrangements are likely to help cope with those problems? Explain your answers.
3. Suppose that there are two national football leagues: The Time League and The Bonus for Win League. The players have private information about their effort. In The Time League, players receive a fixed wage based on the time they spend practicing and playing matches. In The Bonus for Win League, the players are paid one wage for a loss, a higher wage for a tie, and the highest wage of all for a win. Describe the moral hazard and adverse selection problems in these two leagues. Which league best addresses these problems?
4. **Phillies hamstrung by no-trade clause**
   Phillies general manager Pat Gillick, who previously built winners in Toronto, Baltimore, and Seattle, is no fan of blanket no-trade clauses. Gillick is so averse to giving out complete no-trade provisions that he says it could be a "deal breaker" when the Phillies negotiate with big free agents this winter.

   Source: ESPN.com, November 8, 2000

   Provide an example of private information that a baseball player who wants a no-trade clause possesses. Does a baseball player with a no-trade clause present a moral hazard to his baseball team? Does a baseball player with a no-trade clause present adverse selection problems to his baseball team?
5. What are the key economic problems in providing an efficient quantity and distribution of health-care insurance and service? Explain how the U.S. health-care system addresses these problems.
6. What are HMOs and what information problems do they help to deal with?
7. What are the problems that Medicare and Medicaid address and what problems do they cause?
8. What is the cost of health care in the United States compared to that in Canada and major European countries? Do health outcomes correlate with health-care costs? Can you think of explanations for the facts you've just provided?
9. What is Laurence Kotlikoff's proposal for fixing health care in the United States? Draw a graph to illustrate how his proposal would work and show whether it could be efficient.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 12 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A market with asymmetric information is one in which _____.
   A. sellers offer a product for sale at a low price and buyers are pleased to get a bargain
   B. sellers know how reliable the product is and they share that information with buyers
   C. only the buyers or the sellers have information about the quality of the product
   D. buyers are willing to pay less for the product than the seller is offering it for sale
2. The lemons problem does not arise in markets in which _____.
   A. buyers can separate reliable products and defective products
   B. sellers offer more defective products than reliable products for sale
   C. there is a shortage of lemons
   D. sellers have private information
3. In the market for used cars with no warranties, _____ lemons are bought and the equilibrium is a _____ equilibrium.
   A. too few; separating
   B. too many; separating
   C. only; pooling
   D. no; pooling
4. In a used-car market in which dealers offer cars with warranties, _____.
   A. there is private information
   B. a separating equilibrium does not occur
   C. a lemons problem does not arise
   D. the market is inefficient
5. Moral hazard arises in the insurance market because _____.
   A. buyers of insurance have private information that they can use
   B. insurance companies can offer a range of premiums to buyers
   C. buyers can opt to take a deductible or a no-claim bonus
   D. insurance companies can match premiums to customer risk
6. The private market delivers *too little* health care because _____.
   A. insurance companies cannot avoid the problems of moral hazard and adverse selection
   B. too many young healthy people buy insurance
   C. insurance companies cannot monitor health-care providers
   D. pre-existing health conditions are too costly to insure
7. The health-care system in the United States costs per person _____ what it costs in other rich countries and U.S. health outcomes rank _____.
   A. double; lower
   B. half; higher
   C. double; higher
   D. half; lower

How much would you pay for a song?

Consumer Choice and Demand

13

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Calculate and graph a budget line that shows the limits to a person's consumption possibilities.
2. Explain marginal utility theory and use it to derive a consumer's demand curve.
3. Use marginal utility theory to explain the paradox of value: why water is vital but cheap while diamonds are relatively useless but expensive.

13.1 CONSUMPTION POSSIBILITIES

We begin our study of consumption choices by learning about the limits to what a person can afford to buy. Consumption choices are limited by income and prices. We summarize these influences on buying plans in a budget line. We'll study the buying plans of a student like you whom we'll call Tina.

The Budget Line

Budget line
A line that describes the limits to consumption possibilities and that depends on a consumer's budget and the prices of goods and services.

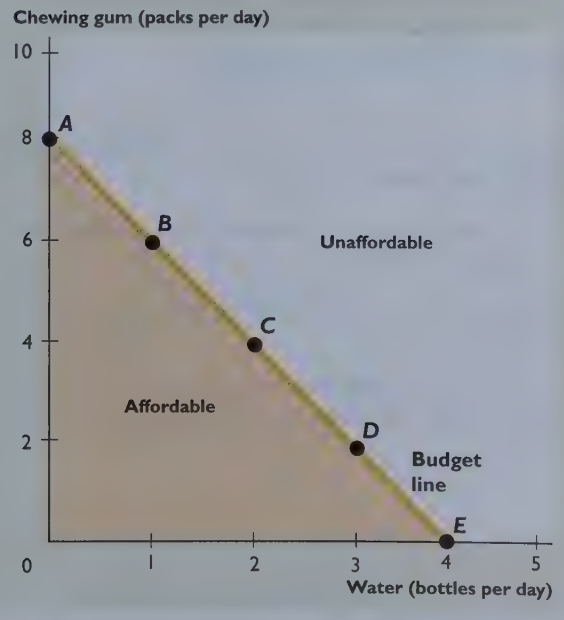
A **budget line** describes the limits to consumption possibilities. Tina has already committed most of her income to renting an apartment, buying textbooks, paying her campus meal plan, and saving a few dollars each month. Having made these decisions, Tina has a remaining budget of $4 a day, which she spends on two goods: bottled water and chewing gum. The price of water is $1 a bottle, and the price of gum is 50¢ a pack. If Tina spends all of her available budget, she reaches the limits of her consumption of bottled water and gum.

Figure 13.1 illustrates Tina's budget line. Rows *A* through *E* in the table show five possible ways of spending $4 on these two goods. If Tina spends all of her $4 on gum, she can buy 8 packs a day. In this case, she has nothing available to spend on bottled water. Row *A* shows this possibility. At the other extreme, if Tina spends her entire $4 on bottled water, she can buy 4 bottles a day and no gum. Row *E* shows this possibility. Rows *B*, *C*, and *D* show three other possible combinations that Tina can afford.

FIGURE 13.1
Consumption Possibilities

MyEconLab Animation

Possibility	Water (bottles per day)	Chewing gum (packs per day)
A	0	8
B	1	6
C	2	4
D	3	2
E	4	0



Tina's budget line shows the boundary between what she can and cannot afford. The rows of the table list Tina's affordable combinations of bottled water and chewing gum when her budget is $4 a day, the price of water is $1 a bottle, and the price of chewing gum is 50¢ a pack. For example, row *A* tells us that Tina exhausts her $4 budget when she buys 8 packs of gum and no water.

The figure graphs Tina's budget line. Points *A* through *E* on the graph represent the rows of the table.

Points *A* through *E* in Figure 13.1 graph the possibilities in the table. The line passing through these points is Tina's budget line, which marks the boundary between what she can and cannot afford. She can afford any combination on the budget line and inside it (in the orange area). She cannot afford any combination outside the budget line (in the white area).

The budget line in Figure 13.1 is similar to the *production possibilities frontier*, or *PPF*, in Chapter 3 (pp. 60–61). Both curves show a limit to what is feasible. The *PPF* is a technological limit, so it changes only when technology changes. The budget line depends on the consumer's budget and on prices, so it changes when the budget or prices change.

A Change in the Budget

Figure 13.2 shows the effect of a change in Tina's budget on her consumption possibilities. When Tina's budget increases, her consumption possibilities expand, and her budget line shifts outward. When her budget decreases, her consumption possibilities shrink and her budget line shifts inward.

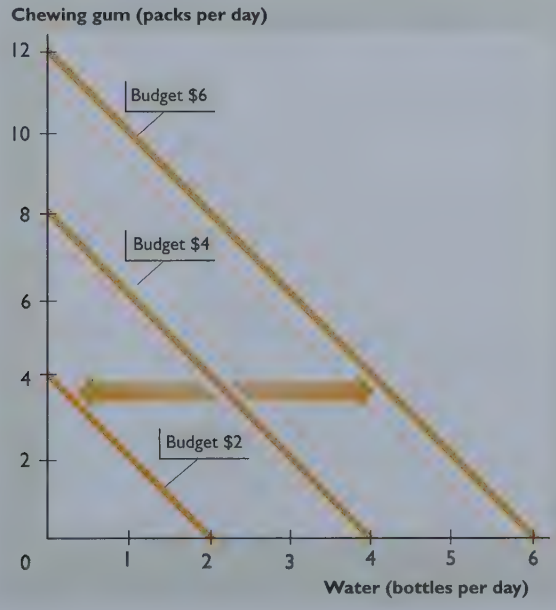
On the initial budget line (the same as in Figure 13.1), Tina's budget is $4. On a day when Tina loses her wallet with $2 in it, she has only $2 to spend. Her new budget line in Figure 13.2 shows how much she can consume with a budget of $2. She can buy any of the combinations on the $2 budget line.

On a day when Tina sells an old CD for $2, she has $6 available and her budget line shifts rightward. She can now buy any of the combinations on the $6 budget line.

FIGURE 13.2

Changes in a Consumer's Budget

MyEconLab Animation



A decrease in the budget shifts the budget line leftward, and an increase in the budget shifts the budget line rightward.

Lower prices in a sale expand consumption possibilities.

Changes in Prices

If the price of one good rises when the prices of other goods and the budget remain the same, consumption possibilities shrink. If the price of one good falls when the prices of other goods and the budget remain the same, consumption possibilities expand. To see these changes in consumption possibilities, let's see what happens to Tina's budget line when the price of a bottle of water changes.

A Fall in the Price of Water

Figure 13.3 shows the effect on Tina's budget line of a fall in the price of a bottle of water from $1 to 50¢ when the price of gum and her budget remain unchanged. If Tina spends all of her budget on bottled water, she can now afford 8 bottles a day. Her consumption possibilities have expanded. Because the price of gum is unchanged, if she spends all her budget on gum, she can still afford only 8 packs of gum a day. Her budget line has rotated outward.

A Rise in the Price of Water

Figure 13.4 shows the effect on Tina's budget line of a rise in the price of a bottle of water from $1 to $2 when the price of gum and her budget remain unchanged. If Tina spends all of her budget on bottled water, she can now afford only 2 bottles a day. Tina's consumption possibilities have shrunk. Again, because the price of gum is unchanged, if Tina spends all her budget on gum, she can still afford only 8 packs of gum a day. Her budget line has rotated inward.

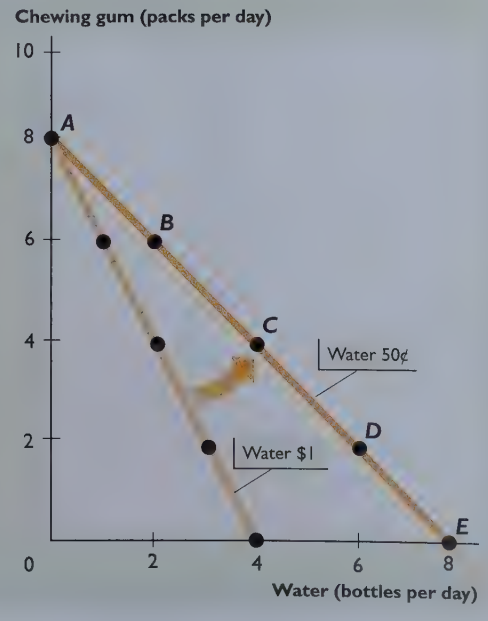
FIGURE 13.3

A Fall in the Price of Water

MyEconLab Animation

When the price of water falls from $1 a bottle to 50¢ a bottle, the budget line rotates outward and becomes less steep.

Possibility	Water (bottles per day) $1 a bottle	Water (bottles per day) 50¢ a bottle	Chewing gum (packs per day)
A	0	0	8
B	1	2	6
C	2	4	4
D	3	6	2
E	4	8	0



Prices and the Slope of the Budget Line

Notice that when the price of bottled water changes and the price of gum remains unchanged, the slope of the budget line changes. In Figure 13.3, when the price of bottled water falls, the budget line becomes less steep. In Figure 13.4, when the price of a bottle of water rises, the budget line becomes steeper.

Recall that "slope equals rise over run." The rise is an *increase* in the quantity of gum, and the run is a *decrease* in the quantity of bottled water. The slope of the budget line is negative, which means that there is a tradeoff between the two goods. Along the budget line, consuming more of one good implies consuming less of the other good. The slope of the budget line is an *opportunity cost*. It tells us what the consumer must give up to get one more unit of a good.

Let's calculate the slopes of the three budget lines in Figures 13.3 and 13.4:

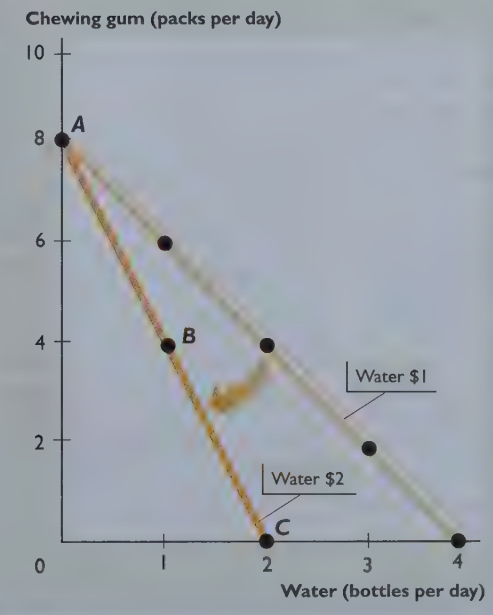
- When the price of water is $1 a bottle, the slope of the budget line is 8 packs of gum divided by 4 bottles of water, which equals 2 packs of gum per bottle.
- When the price of water is 50¢ a bottle, the slope of the budget line is 8 packs of gum divided by 8 bottles of water, which equals 1 pack of gum per bottle.
- When the price of water is $2 a bottle, the slope of the budget line is 8 packs of gum divided by 2 bottles of water, which equals 4 packs of gum per bottle.

FIGURE 13.4

A Rise in the Price of Water

MyEconLab Animation

Possibility	Water (bottles per day) $2 a bottle	Water (bottles per day) $1 a bottle	Chewing gum (packs per day)
A	0	0	8
		1	6
B	1	2	4
		3	2
C	2	4	0



When the price of water rises from $1 a bottle to $2 a bottle, the budget line rotates inward and becomes steeper.

Think about what these slopes mean as opportunity costs. When the price of water is $1 a bottle and the price of gum is 50¢ a pack, it costs 2 packs of gum to buy a bottle of water. When the price of water is 50¢ a bottle and the price of gum is 50¢ a pack, it costs 1 pack of gum to buy a bottle of water. And when the price of water is $2 a bottle and the price of gum is 50¢ a pack, it costs 4 packs of gum to buy a bottle of water.

Relative price
The price of one good in terms of another good—an opportunity cost. It equals the price of one good divided by the price of another good.

Another name for an opportunity cost is a relative price. A **relative price** is the price of one good in terms of another good. If the price of gum is 50¢ a pack and the price of water is $1 a bottle, the relative price of water is 2 packs of gum per bottle. It is calculated as the price of water divided by the price of gum ($1 a bottle ÷ 50¢ a pack = 2 packs per bottle).

When the price of the good plotted on the *x*-axis falls, other things remaining the same, the budget line becomes less steep, and the opportunity cost and relative price of the good on the *x*-axis fall.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Relative Prices on the Move

Over a number of years, relative prices change a great deal. Some of the most dramatic changes have occurred in high-technology products such as computers. Many other relative prices have changed and many have fallen.

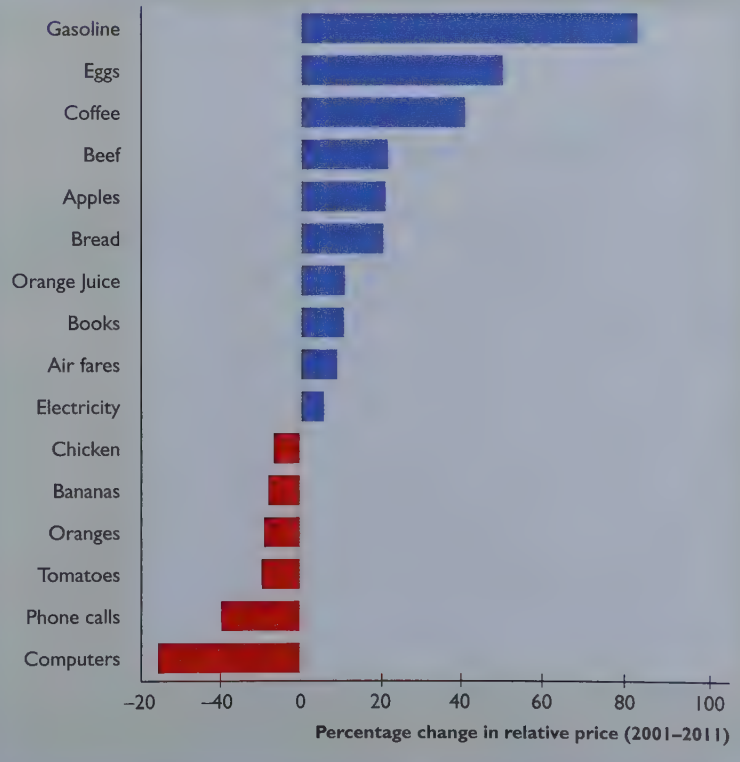
The figure shows the price changes between 2001 and 2011 of 16 items that feature in most student's budgets.

The largest relative price increases are those of gasoline, eggs, and coffee. The relative prices of beef, apples, bread, airfares, and electricity have also increased.

The largest relative price decrease is that of a computer, which has fallen by almost 20 percent. The relative prices of phone calls, tomatoes, and oranges have also fallen.

These changes in relative prices change people's consumption possibilities and change the choices they make.

Lower prices provide an incentive to buy greater quantities; higher prices provide an incentive to find substitutes and buy smaller quantities.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

CHECKPOINT 13.1

Calculate and graph a budget line that shows the limits to a person's consumption possibilities.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 13.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Jerry's burger and magazine budget is $12 a week. The price of a burger is $2, and the price of a magazine is $4.

1. List the combinations of burgers and magazines that Jerry can afford.
2. What is the relative price of a magazine? Explain your answer.
3. Draw a graph of Jerry's budget line with the quantity of magazines plotted on the *x*-axis. Describe how his budget line changes if, other things remaining the same, the following changes occur one at a time:
   - The price of a magazine falls.
   - Jerry's budget for burgers and magazines increases.

In the News

Paying for gas forces painful sacrifices

With the average gas price hitting $3.70 a gallon, many people cut back on other things, such as meals-to-go at the grocery store and shopping.

Source: CNNMoney, May 4, 2011

Consider Robyn who buys only two goods: gasoline and meals-to-go. As the gas price rises, describe the change in her consumption possibilities, the relative price of a meal-to-go, and her budget in terms of meals-to-go.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Jerry can afford 3 magazines and no burgers; 2 magazines and 2 burgers; 1 magazine and 4 burgers; no magazines and 6 burgers.
2. The relative price of a magazine is the number of burgers that Jerry must forgo to get 1 magazine, which equals the price of a magazine divided by the price of a burger, or 2 burgers per magazine.
3. The budget line is a straight line from 6 burgers on the *y*-axis to 3 magazines on the *x*-axis (Figure 1). With a lower price of a magazine, Jerry can buy more magazines. His budget line rotates outward (Figure 2). With a bigger budget, Jerry can buy more of both goods. His budget line shifts outward (Figure 3).

FIGURE 1

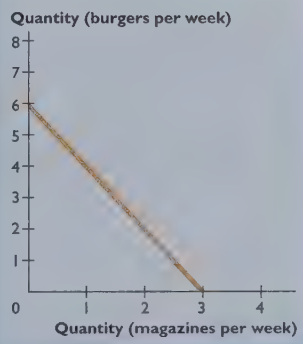


FIGURE 2

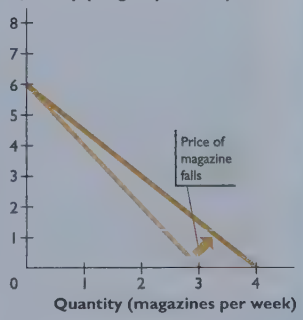
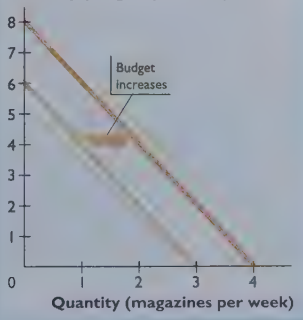


FIGURE 3



Solution to In the News

A higher gas price shrinks Robyn's consumption possibilities—her budget line rotates inward. The relative price of a meal-to-go is the price of a meal-to-go divided by the gas price. A higher gas price lowers the relative price of a meal-to-go. Robyn's budget in terms of meals-to-go is the number of meals-to-go that she can buy. A higher gas price does not change her budget in terms of meals-to-go.

13.2 MARGINAL UTILITY THEORY

Utility
The benefit or satisfaction that a person gets from the consumption of a good or service.

The budget line tells us about consumption *possibilities*, but it doesn't tell us a person's consumption *choice*. Choices depend on *possibilities* and *preferences*. To describe preferences, economists use the concept of utility.* **Utility** is the benefit or satisfaction that a person gets from the consumption of a good or service. To understand how we use utility to explain people's choices, we distinguish between two concepts:

- Total utility
- Marginal utility

Total Utility

Total utility
The total benefit that a person gets from the consumption of a good or service. Total utility generally increases as the quantity consumed of a good increases.

Total utility is the total benefit that a person gets from the consumption of a good or service. Total utility depends on the quantity of the good consumed *in a given period*—more consumption generally gives more total utility. Table 13.1 shows Tina's total utility from bottled water and chewing gum. If she consumes no bottled water and no gum, she gets no utility. If she consumes 1 bottle of water a day, she gets 15 units of utility. If she consumes 1 pack of gum a day, it provides her with 32 units of utility. As Tina increases the quantity of bottled water or the packs of gum she consumes, her total utility increases.

Marginal Utility

Marginal utility
The change in total utility that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of a good consumed.

Marginal utility is the change in total utility that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of a good consumed. Table 13.1 shows the calculation of Tina's marginal utility from bottled water and chewing gum. Let's find Tina's marginal utility from a 3rd bottle of water a day (highlighted in the table). Her total utility from 3 bottles is 36 units, and her total utility from 2 bottles is 27 units. So for Tina, the marginal utility from drinking a 3rd bottle of water each day is

$$\text{Marginal utility of 3rd bottle} = 36\,\text{units} - 27\,\text{units} = 9\,\text{units}.$$

In the table, marginal utility appears midway between the quantities because the *change* in consumption produces the *marginal* utility. The table displays the marginal utility from each quantity of water and gum consumed.

Notice that Tina's marginal utility decreases as her daily consumption of water and gum increases. For example, her marginal utility from bottled water decreases from 15 units for the first bottle per day to 12 units from the second and 9 units from the third. Similarly, her marginal utility from chewing gum decreases from 32 units for the first pack per day to 16 units for the second and 8 units for the third. This decrease in marginal utility as the quantity of a good consumed increases is called the principle of **diminishing marginal utility.**

Diminishing marginal utility
The general tendency for marginal utility to decrease as the quantity of a good consumed increases.

To see why marginal utility diminishes, think about the following situations: In one, you've been studying all day and have had nothing to drink. Someone offers you a bottle of water. The marginal utility you get from that water is large. In the other, you've been drinking all day and you've drunk 7 bottles. Now someone offers you another bottle of water, and you say thanks very much and sip it slowly. You enjoy the 8th bottle of the day, but the marginal utility from it is tiny.

*Economists also use an alternative method of describing preferences called *indifference curves*, which are described in the optional appendix to this chapter.

TABLE 13.1

Tina's Total Utility and Marginal Utility

Bottled water			Chewing gum		
Quantity (bottles per day)	Total utility	Marginal utility	Quantity (packs per day)	Total utility	Marginal utility
0	0	15	0	0	32
1	15	12	1	32	16
2	27	9	2	48	8
3	36	6	3	56	6
4	42	5	4	62	4
5	47	4	5	66	2
6	51	3	6	68	1
7	54	2	7	69	0
8	56		8	69	

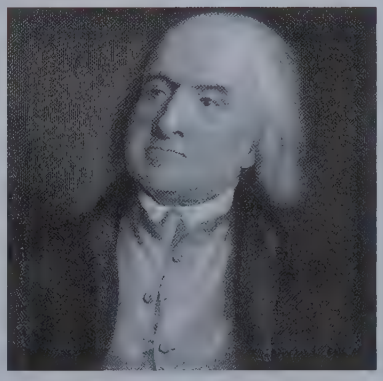
The table shows Tina's total utility and marginal utility from bottled water and chewing gum. Marginal utility is the change in total utility when the quantity consumed increases by one unit. When Tina's consumption of bottled water increases from 2 bottles a day to 3 bottles a day, her total utility from bottled water increases from 27 units to 36 units. So Tina's marginal utility of the 3rd bottle a day is 9 units. Total utility increases and marginal utility diminishes as the quantity consumed increases.

Similarly, suppose you've been unable to buy a pack of gum for more than a day. A friend offers you a pack. Relief! You chew and receive a lot of utility. On another day, you've chewed until your jaws ache and have gone through 7 packs. You're offered an 8th, and this time you say thanks very much but I'll pass on that one. The 8th pack of gum would bring you no marginal utility.

EYE on the PAST

Jeremy Bentham, William Stanley Jevons, and the Birth of Utility

The concept of utility was revolutionary when Jeremy Bentham (1748–1832) proposed it in the early 1800s. He used the idea to advance his then radical support for free education, free medical care, and social security. It was another fifty years before William Stanley Jevons (1835–1882) developed the concept of *marginal* utility and used it to predict people's consumption choices. For the first time, economists could distinguish between cost and value and a basic theory of demand was born.



Jeremy Bentham

William Stanley Jevons

Graphing Tina's Utility Schedules

We illustrate a consumer's preferences with a total utility curve and a marginal utility curve like those in Figure 13.5. Part (a) shows that as Tina drinks more bottled water, her total utility from water increases. It also shows that total utility increases at a decreasing rate—diminishing marginal utility. Part (b) graphs Tina's marginal utility. The steps in part (a) are placed side by side in part (b). The curve that passes through the midpoints of the bars in part (b) is Tina's marginal utility curve.

The numbers in Table 13.1 and the graphs in Figure 13.5 describe Tina's preferences and, along with her budget line, enable us to predict the choices that she makes. That is our next task.

Maximizing Total Utility

The consumer's goal is to allocate the available budget in the way that maximizes total utility. The consumer achieves this goal by choosing the affordable combination of goods at which the *sum* of the utilities obtained from all goods consumed is as large as possible.

Utility-maximizing rule
The rule that leads to the greatest total utility from all the goods and services consumed. The rule is
1. Allocate the entire available budget.
2. Make the marginal utility per dollar equal for all goods.

We can find a consumer's best budget allocation by using a two-step **utility-maximizing rule:**

1. Allocate the entire available budget.
2. Make the marginal utility per dollar equal for all goods.

Allocate the Available Budget

If a consumer can buy more of one good without buying less of another good, utility can be increased. When utility is maximized, it isn't possible to buy more of one good without decreasing the quantity of another good. In this situation, the consumer has allocated the entire available budget.

With a budget of $4, the price of water $1 per bottle, and the price of gum 50¢ a pack, Tina allocates her budget to bottled water and gum at a point *on* her budget line in Figure 13.1 (p. 316). If she was at a point *inside* her budget line, she could buy more water or more gum without giving up any of the other good and she would not be maximizing utility.

Equalize the Marginal Utility Per Dollar

Marginal utility per dollar
The marginal utility from a good relative to the price paid for the good.

The second step to maximizing utility is to find the affordable combination that makes the marginal utility per dollar equal for both goods. The **marginal utility per dollar** is the marginal utility from a good relative to the price of the good.

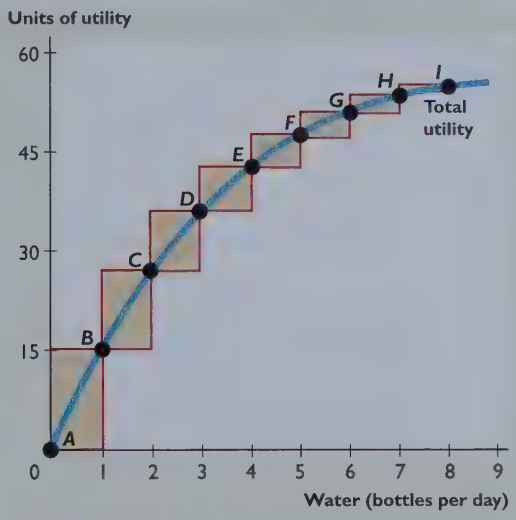
Calculating the Marginal Utility per Dollar The marginal utility per dollar equals the marginal utility from a good divided by the price of the good. For example, if Tina buys 2 packs of gum, her marginal utility from gum is 16 units. At a price of 50¢ a pack, her marginal utility *per dollar* from gum is 16 units divided by 50¢, which equals 32 units of utility per dollar.

Tina's Utility-Maximizing Choice If Tina spends $1 more on water and $1 less on gum, her total utility from water increases and her total utility from gum decreases. What happens to her total utility from both goods depends on the marginal utility per dollar for each good.

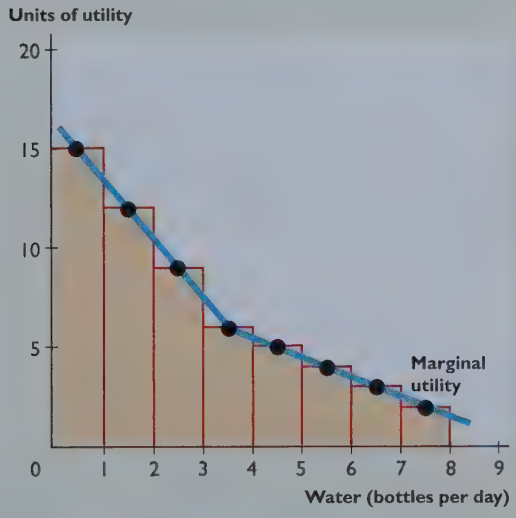
FIGURE 13.5

Total Utility and Marginal Utility

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Total utility



(b) Marginal utility

Part (a) graphs Tina's total utility from bottled water. It also shows the extra total utility she gains from each additional bottle of water—her marginal utility—as the steps along the total utility curve.

Part (b) shows how Tina's marginal utility from bottled water diminishes by placing the bars shown in part (a) side by side as a series of declining steps.

Water (bottles per day)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Total utility	0	15	27	36	42	47	51	54	56
Marginal utility		15	12	9	6	5	4	3	2
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I

- If the marginal utility per dollar for water *exceeds* that for gum, total utility increases.
- If the marginal utility per dollar for water *is less than* that for gum, total utility decreases.
- If the marginal utility per dollar for water *equals* that for gum, total utility remains the same.

Which one has the highest marginal utility per dollar?

By spending $1 more on water and $1 less on gum, Tina's total utility increases only if the marginal utility per dollar from water exceeds the marginal utility per dollar from gum. As she spends more on water and less on gum, the marginal utility of water decreases and the marginal utility of gum increases. When Tina has allocated her dollars so that the marginal utility per dollar is the same for both goods, total utility cannot be increased any further: Utility is maximized.

Table 13.2 shows Tina's utility-maximizing choice. If Tina chooses row *B* (1 bottle of water and 6 packs of gum) her marginal utility per dollar for water (15 units per dollar) *exceeds* her marginal utility per dollar for gum (4 units per dollar). She can increase total utility by spending more on water and less on gum.

If Tina chooses row *D* (3 bottles of water and 2 packs of gum) her marginal utility per dollar for water (9 units of utility per dollar) *is less than* her marginal utility per dollar for gum (32 units per dollar). She can increase total utility by spending more on gum and less on water.

If Tina chooses row *C* (2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum) her marginal utility per dollar for water (12 units of utility per dollar) *equals* her marginal utility per dollar for gum. This combination maximizes Tina's total utility.

Finding an Individual Demand Curve

We can use marginal utility theory to find a person's demand schedule and demand curve. In fact, we've just found one entry in Tina's demand schedule and one point on her demand curve for bottled water: When the price of bottled water is $1 and other things remain the same (the price of gum is 50¢ and her budget is $4 a day), the quantity of water that Tina buys is 2 bottles a day (row *C* in Table 13.2).

TABLE 13.2

Tina's Marginal Utilities per Dollar: Water $1 a Bottle and Gum 50¢ a Pack

The rows of the table show Tina's marginal utility per dollar from water and gum for the affordable combinations when the price of water is $1 a bottle, the price of gum is 50¢ a pack, and her budget is $4. By equalizing the marginal utilities per dollar from water and gum, Tina maximizes her total utility. Her utility-maximizing choice is to buy 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum.

	Bottled water			Chewing gum		
	Quantity (bottles per day)	Marginal utility	Marginal utility per dollar	Quantity (packs per day)	Marginal utility	Marginal utility per dollar
A	0			8	0	0
				7	1	2
B	1	15	15	6	2	4
				5	4	8
C	2	12	12	4	6	12
				3	8	16
D	3	9	9	2	16	32
				1	32	64

TABLE 13.3

Tina's Marginal Utilities per Dollar: Water 50¢ a Bottle and Gum 50¢ a Pack

	Bottled water			Chewing gum		
	Quantity (bottles per day)	Marginal utility	Marginal utility per dollar	Quantity (packs per day)	Marginal utility	Marginal utility per dollar
D	3	9	18	5	4	8
E	4	6	12	4	6	12
F	5	5	10	3	8	16

The rows of the table show Tina's marginal utility per dollar from water and gum for the affordable combinations when the price of water is 50¢ a bottle, the price of gum is 50¢ a pack, and her budget is $4. By equalizing the marginal utilities per dollar from water and gum, Tina maximizes her total utility. Her utility-maximizing choice is to buy 4 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum.

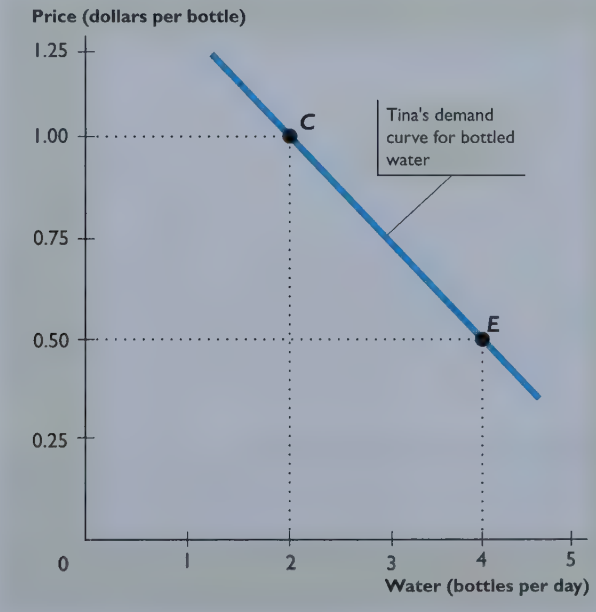
To find another point on Tina's demand curve for bottled water, let's see what Tina buys when the price of water falls to 50¢ a bottle. If Tina continued to buy 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum, her marginal utility per dollar for water would increase from 12 to 24 and be twice the marginal utility per dollar for gum (row *C* in Table 13.2). Also, Tina would spend only $3, so she would have another $1 available.

Row *E* of Table 13.3 shows Tina's new utility-maximizing choice, and this choice is a second point on her demand curve for bottled water: When the price of bottled water is 50¢ (other things remaining the same), Tina buys 4 bottles of water a day. Figure 13.6 shows Tina's demand curve that we've just derived.

FIGURE 13.6

Tina's Demand for Bottled Water

MyEconLab Animation



When the price of water is $1 a bottle (and her budget is $4 and the price of a pack of gum is 50¢), Tina buys 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum a day. She is at point *C* on her demand curve for water.

When the price of water falls to 50¢ a bottle and other things remain the same, Tina buys 4 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum a day and moves to point *E* on her demand curve for bottled water.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 13.2 and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Burgers		Magazines	
Quantity per week	Total utility	Quantity per week	Total utility
0	0	0	0
1	14	1	100
2	24	2	120
3	32	3	134
4	38	4	144

CHECKPOINT 13.2

Explain marginal utility theory and use it to derive a consumer's demand curve.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows Jerry's total utility from burgers and magazines. The price of a burger is $2, the price of a magazine is $4, and Jerry has $12 a week to spend.

1. Calculate Jerry's marginal utility and marginal utility per dollar from burgers when he buys 4 burgers a week. Calculate Jerry's marginal utility per dollar from magazines when he buys 1 magazine a week.
2. If Jerry buys 4 burgers and 1 magazine a week, does he maximize his total utility? To maximize total utility will he buy more or fewer burgers? Explain.
3. What quantities of burgers and magazines maximize Jerry's utility?

In the News

Pricier bread and cereal. Coming soon?
Surging wheat and corn prices could hit the items in your grocery basket soon.
Source: CNN Money, May 19, 2011

How does the rise in the price of food change the budget line and the quantity of food that Americans buy?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The marginal utility from the 4th burger equals the total utility from 4 burgers minus the total utility from 3 burgers, which is 6 units. Jerry's marginal utility per dollar from burgers equals his marginal utility of 6 units divided by the price of a burger, $2, which equals 3 units of utility per dollar.
   The marginal utility from the first magazine is 100 units. Jerry's marginal utility per dollar from magazines equals his marginal utility, 100 units, divided by the price of a magazine, $4, which equals 25 units per dollar.
2. If Jerry buys 4 burgers for $8 and 1 magazine for $4, he spends his $12 budget. His marginal utility per dollar from burgers (3, solution **1**) is less than his marginal utility per dollar from magazines (25, solution **1**), so Jerry does *not* maximize total utility. He must buy fewer burgers and more magazines.
3. Jerry maximizes utility if he buys 2 burgers and 2 magazines a week. He spends $4 on burgers and $8 on magazines, which equals his $12 budget. His marginal utility from burgers (24 − 14) is 10. Dividing 10 by $2 gives 5 units of utility per dollar. His marginal utility from magazines (120 − 100) is 10. Dividing 20 by $4 gives 5 units of utility per dollar. Jerry's marginal utility per dollar is 5 for each good, so his utility is maximized.

Solution to In the News

The budget line rotates inward. Consumers allocate their budget between food (F) and non-food (N) items such that $(MU_F/P_F) = (MU_N/P_N)$. As the price of food rises, (MU_F/P_F) falls. So with $(MU_F/P_F) < (MU_N/P_N)$, consumers will reallocate their income to make (MU_F/P_F) rise and equal (MU_N/P_N). To make (MU_F/P_F) rise, the quantity of food bought must decrease.

13.3 EFFICIENCY, PRICE, AND VALUE

Marginal utility theory helps us to deepen our understanding of the concept of efficiency and to see more clearly the distinction between *value* and *price*. Let's see how.

Consumer Efficiency

When Tina allocates her limited budget to maximize her total utility, she is using her resources efficiently. Any other allocation of her budget would leave her able to attain a higher level of total utility.

But when Tina has allocated her budget to maximize her total utility, she is *on* her demand curve for each good. A demand curve describes the quantity demanded at each price *when total utility is maximized*. When we studied efficiency in Chapter 6, we learned that a demand curve is also a willingness-to-pay curve. It tells us a consumer's *marginal benefit*—the benefit from consuming an additional unit of a good. You can now give the idea of marginal benefit a deeper meaning.

Marginal benefit is the maximum price a consumer is willing to pay for an extra unit of a good or service when total utility is maximized.

The Paradox of Value

For centuries, philosophers were puzzled by the paradox of value. Water is more valuable than a diamond because water is essential to life itself. Yet water is much cheaper than a diamond. Why? Adam Smith tried to solve this paradox, but it was not until marginal utility theory had been developed that anyone could give a satisfactory answer.

You can solve this puzzle by distinguishing between *total* utility and *marginal* utility. Total utility tells us about relative value; marginal utility tells us about relative price. The total utility from water is enormous, but remember, the more we consume of something, the smaller is its marginal utility. We use so much water that its marginal utility—the benefit we get from one more glass of water—diminishes to a small value. Diamonds, on the other hand, have a small total utility relative to water, but because we buy few diamonds, they have a large marginal utility. When a household has maximized its total utility, it has allocated its budget so that the marginal utility per dollar is equal for all goods. Diamonds have a high price and a high marginal utility. Water has a low price and a low marginal utility. When the high marginal utility of diamonds is divided by the high price of a diamond, the result is a marginal utility per dollar that equals the low marginal utility of water divided by the low price of water. The marginal utility per dollar is the same for diamonds as for water.

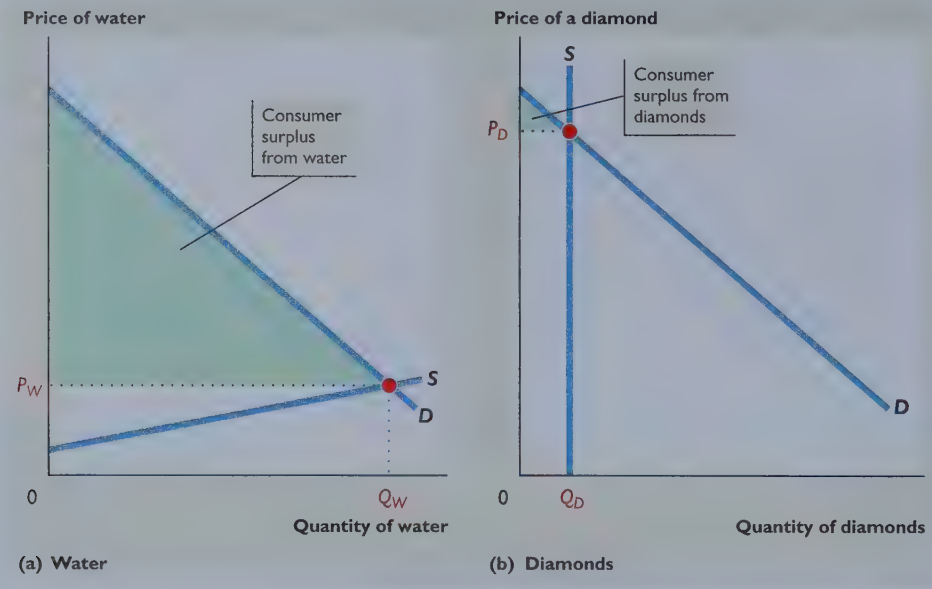
Consumer Surplus

Consumer surplus measures value in excess of the amount paid. In Figure 13.7, the demand for and supply of water in part (a) determine the price of water P_W and the quantity of water consumed Q_W. The demand for and supply of diamonds in part (b) determine the price of a diamond P_D and the quantity of diamonds Q_D. Water is cheap but provides a large consumer surplus, while diamonds are expensive but provide a small consumer surplus.

FIGURE 13.7

The Paradox of Value

MyEconLab Animation



Part (a) shows the demand for water, *D*, and the supply of water, *S*. Demand and supply determine the price of water at P_W and the quantity at Q_W. The consumer surplus from water is the large green triangle.

Part (b) shows the demand for diamonds, *D*, and the supply of diamonds, *S*. Demand and supply determine the price of a diamond at P_D and the quantity at Q_D. The consumer surplus from diamonds is the small green triangle.

Water is valuable—has a large consumer surplus—but cheap. Diamonds are less valuable than water—have a smaller consumer surplus—but are expensive.

EYE on SONG DOWNLOADS

How Much Would You Pay for a Song?

You might say that you're willing to pay only 99¢ for a song, but that's not the answer of the average consumer. And it is probably not really your answer either. It is also not what the answer would have been just a few years ago.

We can work out what people are willing to pay for a song by finding the demand curve for songs and then finding the consumer surplus.

To find the demand curve, we need to look at the prices and quantities in the market for songs.

In 2010 (the most recent year for which we have the numbers) Americans spent $7 billion on all forms of recorded music, down from $14 billion in 2000. But the combined quantity of discs and downloads bought *increased* from 1 billion in 2000 to 1.5 billion in 2010 and the average price of a unit of recorded music fell from $14 to $3.75.

The average price fell because the mix of formats changed dramatically. In 2001, we bought 900 million CDs; in 2010, we bought only 225 million CDs and downloaded 1.3 billion music files. Figure 1 shows the longer history of the changing formats of recorded music.

The music that we buy isn't just one good—it is several different goods. We'll distinguish singles from albums and focus on the demand for singles.

In 2001, we bought 106 million singles and paid $4.95 on the average for each one. In 2010, we downloaded 1,160 million singles files and paid an average price of $1.20 each.

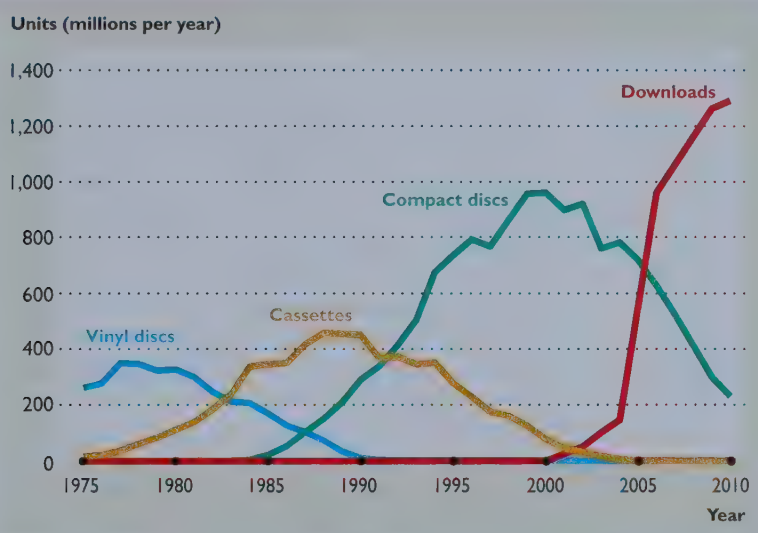


Figure 1 Changing formats of recorded music

The market for singles downloads has created a consumer surplus.

Figure 2 shows the demand curve in the market for singles. One point on the demand curve is the 2001 price and quantity—106 million singles were bought at an average price of $4.95. Another point on the demand curve is that for 2010—1,160 million singles downloaded at $1.20 each.

If the demand curve has not shifted and is linear (assumed here), we can calculate the change in consumer surplus generated by the fall in price and increase in quantity demanded. The green area is this change in consumer surplus. That increase in consumer surplus is $1.976 billion or $1.70 per single.

The increase in consumer surplus of $1.70 per song is an estimate of how much more the average buyer would be willing to pay for a song on average.

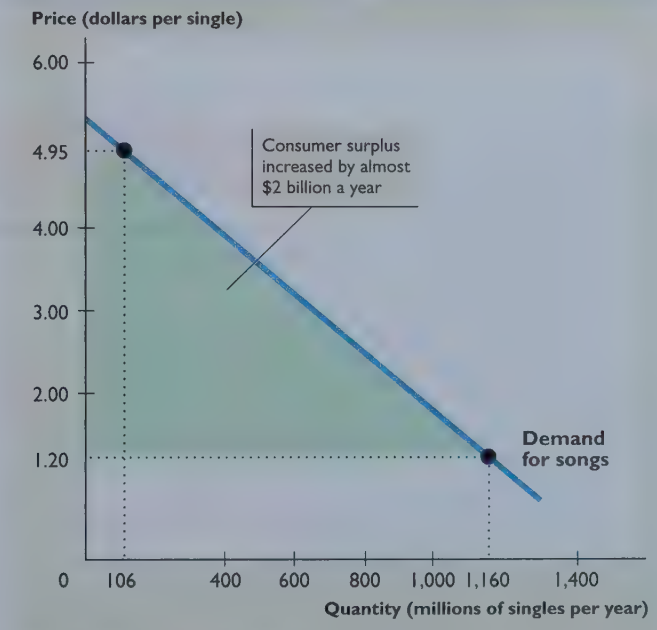


Figure 2 The market for singles

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Do You Maximize Your Utility?

You might be thinking that this marginal utility stuff is pretty unreal! You know that you don't go around the shops with a marginal utility calculator in hand. You just buy what you can afford and want, and that's all there is to it.

Well, marginal utility theory isn't about how people make their choices. It's about what choices people make. It's a tool that enables economists to explain the choices that people make.

You see lots of examples of people juggling their purchases to equalize marginal utilities per dollar. The next time you're in a checkout line, note the items that someone had second thoughts about and stuffed into the magazine rack alongside the tabloids. When the crunch came to pay, the marginal utility per dollar was just not high enough.

You might even find yourself actually using marginal utility to make your own decisions. It clarifies the options, and it helps to make the value of the alternatives explicit.

When Jeremy Bentham, and later William Stanley Jevons (see *Eye on the Past* on p. 323), first began to develop ideas about utility, they speculated about the possibility of attaching a utility meter to a person's head and actually measuring the utility.

Today, a new branch of economics called *neuroeconomics* is moving toward achieving that nineteenth-century dream.

Working with neuroscientists and using MRI scanners, economists are placing subjects in decision-making situations and observing how the brain behaves as choices are made and outcomes learned.

These are early days but results so far suggest that while some decisions are rational (and can be seen to be computed in the frontal cortex), other decisions are made using primitive parts of the brain that make snap choices without careful calculation.

As neuroeconomics advances, it will illuminate the way choices are made and might improve our ability to predict the choices that people make.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 13.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 13.3

Use marginal utility theory to explain the paradox of value: why water is vital but cheap while diamonds are relatively useless but expensive.

Practice Problems

1. In a year, Tony rents 50 DVDs at $3 each and pays $50 for 10,000 gallons of tap water. Tony is maximizing total utility. If Tony's marginal utility from water is 0.5 unit per gallon, what is his marginal utility from a DVD rental?
2. Over the years, Americans have spent a smaller percentage of income on food and a larger percentage on cars. Explain the paradox of value.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Marginal utility of a DVD rental ÷ $3 = Marginal utility of a gallon of water ÷ 0.5¢. So the marginal utility of a DVD rental is 600 times the marginal utility of a gallon of water: 600 × 0.5 or 300 units.
2. The average person has one car and the marginal utility from driving the car exceeds the marginal utility from food. While food is cheap and cars are expensive, consumers allocate their income to make the marginal utility per dollar equal for food and cars. There is no paradox of value.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Calculate and graph a budget line that shows the limits to a person's consumption possibilities.

- Consumption possibilities are constrained by the budget and prices. Some combinations of goods are affordable, and some are not affordable.
- The budget line is the boundary between what a person can and cannot afford with a given budget and given prices.
- The slope of the budget line determines the relative price of the good measured on the x-axis in terms of the good measured on the y-axis.
- A change in one price changes the slope of the budget line. A change in the budget shifts the budget line but does not change its slope.

2 Explain marginal utility theory and use it to derive a consumer's demand curve.

- Consumption possibilities and preferences determine consumption choices.
- Total utility is maximized when the entire budget is spent and marginal utility per dollar is equal for all goods.
- If the marginal utility per dollar from good A exceeds that from good B, total utility increases if the quantity purchased of good A increases and the quantity purchased of good B decreases.
- Marginal utility theory implies the law of demand. That is, other things remaining the same, the higher the price of a good, the smaller is the quantity demanded of that good.

3 Use marginal utility theory to explain the paradox of value: why water is vital but cheap while diamonds are relatively useless but expensive.

- When consumers maximize total utility, they use resources efficiently.
- Marginal utility theory resolves the paradox of value.
- When we talk loosely about value, we are thinking of *total* utility or consumer surplus, but price is related to *marginal* utility.
- Water, which we consume in large amounts, has a high total utility and a large consumer surplus but a low price and low marginal utility.
- Diamonds, which we consume in small amounts, have a low total utility and a small consumer surplus but a high price and a high marginal utility.

Key Terms

Budget line, 316
Diminishing marginal utility, 322
Marginal utility, 322
Marginal utility per dollar, 324
Relative price, 320
Total utility, 322
Utility, 322
Utility-maximizing rule, 324

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 13 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Amy has $12 a week to spend on coffee and soda. The price of coffee is $2 a cup, and soda is $1 a can. Use this information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

1. Draw a graph of Amy's budget line. Can Amy buy 7 cans of soda and 2 cups of coffee a week? Can she buy 7 cups of coffee and 2 cans of soda a week? What is the relative price of a cup of coffee?
2. Suppose that the price of soda remains at $1 a can but the price of coffee rises to $3 a cup. Draw Amy's new budget line. If she buys 6 cans of soda, what is the maximum number of cups of coffee she can buy in a week? Has the relative price of coffee changed?

Use Table 1, which shows Ben's utility, to work Problems **3** and **4**.

TABLE 1

Orange juice (cartons per day)	Total utility	Marginal utility
0	0	
		7
1	7	
		5
2	*A*	
		B
3	15	
		2
4	*C*	
		D
5	18	

3. Calculate the values of *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* in the table. Does the principle of diminishing marginal utility apply to Ben's consumption of orange juice? Why or why not?
4. Would Ben ever want to buy more than one carton of orange juice a day or no orange juice? Explain your answer.
5. Every day, Josie buys 2 cups of coffee and 1 sandwich for lunch. The price of coffee is $2 a cup and the price of a sandwich is $5. Josie's choice of lunch maximizes her total utility, and she spends only $9 on lunch. Compare Josie's marginal utility from coffee with her marginal utility from the sandwich.
6. Susie spends $28 a week on sundaes and magazines. The price of a sundae is $4 and the price of a magazine is $4. Table 2 shows Susie's marginal utility from sundaes and magazines. How many sundaes does she buy? If the price of a sundae doubles to $8 and other things remain the same, how many sundaes will she buy? What are two points on her demand curve for sundaes?

TABLE 2

Sundaes		Magazines	
Quantity per week	Marginal utility	Quantity per week	Marginal utility
1	60	1	40
2	56	2	32
3	50	3	28
4	42	4	25
5	32	5	23
6	20	6	22

7. In a week, Erin buys 1 six-pack of soda and sees 2 movies when a movie ticket is $10, soda is $5 a six-pack, and she has $25 to spend. If her budget increases and she has $50 to spend on soda and movies, what is the change in the relative price of a movie ticket? How do the marginal utility per dollar from movies and the marginal utility per dollar from soda change?
8. **Gas prices send surge of travelers to mass transit**
As the gas price shot up to $4 a gallon, more commuters switched from cars to trains and buses. In New York and Boston, public transit ridership is up 5 percent or more so far this year.
Source: *The New York Times*, May 10, 2008
Explain the effect of a rise in the price of gasoline on a commuter's budget line and the quantities of gasoline and public transit services purchased.
9. **Compared to other liquids, gasoline is cheap**
In 2008, when gasoline hit $4 a gallon, motorists complained, but they didn't complain about $1.59 for a 20-oz Gatorade and $18 for 16 ml of HP ink.
Source: *The New York Times*, May 27, 2008
The prices per gallon are $10.17 for Gatorade and $4,294.58 for printer ink. How can the paradox of value be used to explain why the fluids listed in the news clip might be less valuable than gasoline, yet far more expensive?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. In 2007, Americans downloaded 800 million singles at 99¢ each and 40 million albums at $10 each. They also bought 3 million singles on a disc at $4.75 each and 500 million albums on discs at $15. What does marginal utility theory tell you about the ratio of the marginal utility from singles on discs to the marginal utility from singles downloads? What does it tell you about the ratio of the marginal utility from albums on discs to the marginal utility from album downloads?
2. Tim buys 2 pizzas and sees 1 movie a week when he has $16 to spend, a movie ticket is $8, and the price of a pizza is $4. What is the relative price of a movie ticket? If the price of a movie ticket falls to $4, how will Tim's consumption possibilities change? Explain.
3. Jim spends all his income on apartment rent, food, clothing, and vacations. He gets a pay raise from $3,000 a month to $4,000 a month. At the same time, airfares and other vacation-related expenses increase by 50 percent. How has Jim's budget in terms of airfares and other vacation-related expenses changed? Is Jim better off or worse off in his new situation?

Use Table 1, which shows Martha's total utility from cake and pasta, to work Problems 4 to 6.

TABLE 1

Cake		Pasta	
Quantity per week	Total utility	Dishes per week	Total utility
0	0	0	0
1	10	1	20
2	18	2	36
3	25	3	48
4	31	4	56
5	36	5	60
6	40	6	60

4. When Martha buys 3 cakes and 2 dishes of pasta a week, what is her total utility and her marginal utility from the third cake? If the price of a cake is $4, what is her marginal utility per dollar from cake?
5. When the price of a cake is $4, the price of pasta is $8 a dish, and Martha has $24 a week to spend, she buys 2 cakes and 2 dishes of pasta. Does she maximize her total utility? Explain your answer.
6. When the price of a cake is $4, Martha has $24 to spend, and the price of pasta falls from $8 to $4 a dish, what quantities of cake and pasta does Martha buy? What are two points on Martha's demand curve for pasta?

Use the following information to work Problems 7 and 8.

Table 2 shows the marginal utility that Ali gets from smoothies and movies. Ali has $30 a week to spend. The price of a movie ticket is $6, and the price of a smoothie is $3.

TABLE 2

Quantity per week	Marginal utility from	
	smoothies	movies
1	7	30
2	6	24
3	5	18
4	4	12
5	3	6
6	2	0

7. If Ali buys 4 smoothies a week and sees 3 movies, does he spend all $30? What is his utility from smoothies and his utility from movies? Does he maximize his utility? If not, which good must he buy more of?
8. When Ali allocates his budget so as to maximize his utility, what does he buy and what is the marginal utility per dollar?

Use the following information to work Problems 9 and 10.

In the land of free flight

As the time it takes to get through airports has increased, other means of travel have begun to look more attractive. Amtrak now competes comfortably with the airlines on its Boston–New York–Washington express rail service.

Source: *The Economist*, June 14, 2007

9. For a trip from Boston to Washington, compare the opportunity costs of taking Amtrak and United Airlines.
10. Compare the marginal utility per dollar from train travel and from air travel.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 13 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A consumer's consumption possibilities depend on all of the following items *except* _____.
   A. the prices of the goods that the consumer wants to buy
   B. the consumer's budget
   C. the quantities of the goods that the consumer can afford
   D. the consumer's preferences
2. Jane's budget line _____.
   A. shifts outward with no change in its slope if her budget increases and prices don't change
   B. rotates inward if the prices of both goods double and her budget doesn't change
   C. shifts inward with no change in its slope if the price of one good rises and her budget doesn't change
   D. rotates outward if her budget increases and prices don't change
3. Total utility _____ and marginal utility ____ as more of a good is consumed.
   A. increases; increases
   B. diminishes; diminishes
   C. increases; diminishes
   D. diminishes; increases
4. Tom will maximize his total utility if he buys the quantities of pasta and milk at which _____.
   A. the marginal utility from pasta equals the marginal utility from milk
   B. he spends all of his budget and marginal utility from each good is equal
   C. the marginal utility from the more expensive good is less than the marginal utility from the cheaper good
   D. he spends all his budget and the marginal utility per dollar for pasta and milk are equal
5. Sara buys bread and bananas and is maximizing her total utility. If the price of bananas rises, Sara will maximize her total utility by _____.
   A. increasing her budget so that she can buy the same quantities
   B. buying more bananas and less bread
   C. buying fewer bananas and possibly more bread
   D. buying less bread and possibly more bananas
6. When Joe's budget increases, he will spend the increase in his budget on _____.
   A. normal goods
   B. inferior goods
   C. more of all the goods he usually buys
   D. essential goods
7. The paradox of value arises when people _____.
   A. prefer to buy cheap goods rather than expensive goods
   B. spend more on expensive useless goods than on cheap useful goods
   C. buy so much of a useful good that its price falls
   D. get the same marginal utility per dollar from cheap useful goods and useless expensive goods

APPENDIX: INDIFFERENCE CURVES

You are going to discover a neat idea—that of drawing a map of a person's preferences. A preference map is based on the intuitively appealing assumption that people can sort all the possible combinations of goods into three groups: preferred, not preferred, and indifferent. To make this idea concrete, let's ask Tina to tell us how she ranks combinations of bottled water and chewing gum.

An Indifference Curve

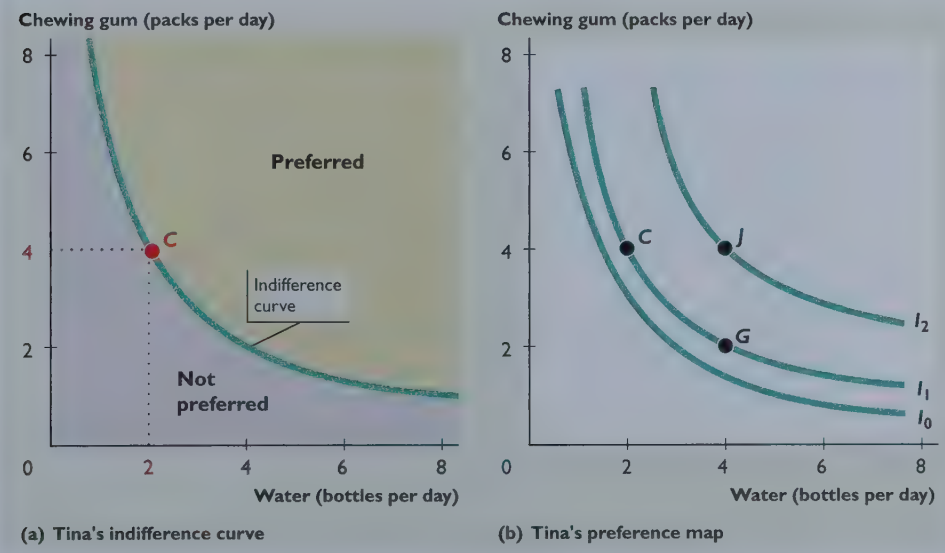
Figure A13.1(a) shows part of Tina's answer. She tells us that she currently consumes 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum a day at point *C*. She then lists all the combinations of bottled water and chewing gum that she says are as acceptable to her as her current consumption. When we plot these combinations of water and gum, we get the green curve. This curve is the key element in a map of preferences and is called an indifference curve.

An **indifference curve** is a line that shows combinations of goods among which a consumer is *indifferent*. The indifference curve in Figure A13.1(a) tells us that Tina is just as happy to consume 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum a day at point *C* as to consume the combination of water and gum at any other point along the indifference curve. Tina also says that she prefers all the combinations of bottled water and gum above the indifference curve—the yellow area—to those on the indifference curve. These combinations contain more water, more gum, or

Indifference curve
A line that shows combinations of goods among which a consumer is *indifferent*.

FIGURE A13.1
A Preference Map

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), Tina consumes 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of chewing gum a day at point *C*. She is indifferent between all the points on the green indifference curve. She prefers any point above the indifference curve (yellow area) to any point on it, and she prefers any point on the indifference curve to any point below it (gray area).

Part (b) shows three indifference curves of Tina's preference map. She prefers point *J* to point *C* or *G*, so she prefers any point on I_2 to any point on I_1.

more of both. She also prefers any combination on the indifference curve to any combination in the gray area below the indifference curve. These combinations contain less water, less gum, or less of both.

The indifference curve in Figure A13.1(a) is just one of a whole family of such curves. This indifference curve appears again in Figure A13.1(b) labeled I_1. The curves labeled I_0 and I_2 are two other indifference curves. Tina prefers any point on indifference curve I_2 such as point J, to any point on indifference curve I_1, such as points C or G. She prefers any point on I_1 to any point on I_0. We refer to I_2 as being a higher indifference curve than I_1 and to I_1 as being higher than I_0.

A preference map is a series of indifference curves that resemble the contour lines on a map. By looking at the shape of the contour lines on a map, we can draw conclusions about the terrain. Similarly, by looking at the shape of the indifference curves, we can draw conclusions about a person's preferences.

Marginal Rate of Substitution

Marginal rate of substitution
The rate at which a person will give up good *y* (the good measured on the *y*-axis) to get more of good *x* (the good measured on the *x*-axis) and at the same time remain on the same indifference curve.

The concept of the marginal rate of substitution is the key to "reading" a preference map. The **marginal rate of substitution** (*MRS*) is the rate at which a person will give up good y (the good measured on the y-axis) to get more of good x (the good measured on the x-axis) and at the same time remain indifferent (remain on the same indifference curve). The marginal rate of substitution is measured by the magnitude of the slope of an indifference curve.

If the indifference curve is *steep*, the marginal rate of substitution is *high*. The person is willing to give up a large quantity of good y to get a small quantity of good x while remaining indifferent. If the indifference curve is *flat*, the marginal rate of substitution is *low*. The person is willing to give up only a small amount of good y to get a large amount of good x to remain indifferent.

Figure A13.2 shows you how to calculate the marginal rate of substitution. Suppose that Tina consumes 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum at point C on indifference curve I_1. We calculate her marginal rate of substitution by measuring the magnitude of the slope of the indifference curve at point C. To measure this magnitude, place a straight line against, or tangent to, the indifference curve at point C. Along that red line, as gum consumption decreases from 8 packs to zero packs, water consumption increases from zero bottles to 4 bottles. So at point C, Tina is willing to give up 8 packs of gum to get 4 bottles of water, or 2 packs of gum per bottle. Her marginal rate of substitution is 2.

Now suppose that Tina consumes 4 bottles of water and 2 packs of gum at point G. The slope of the indifference curve at point G now measures her marginal rate of substitution. That slope is the same as the slope of the line tangent to the indifference curve at point G. Here, as chewing gum consumption decreases from 4 packs to zero, water consumption increases from zero to 8 bottles. So at point G, Tina is willing to give up 4 packs of chewing gum to get 8 bottles of water, or 1/2 a pack of gum per bottle. Her marginal rate of substitution is 1/2.

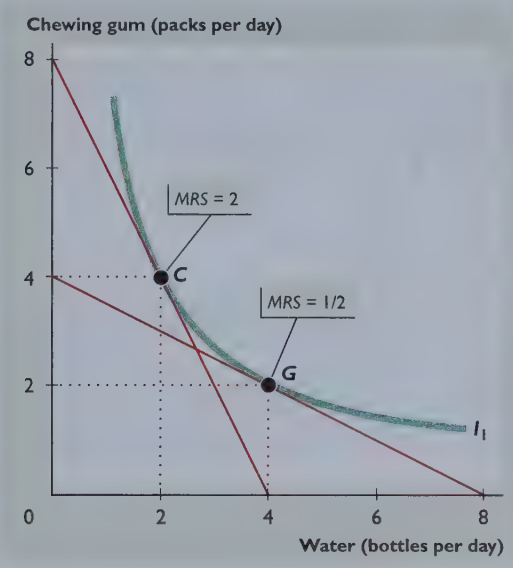
Diminishing marginal rate of substitution
The general tendency for the marginal rate of substitution to decrease as the consumer moves down along the indifference curve, increasing consumption of the good measured on the *x*-axis and decreasing consumption of the good measured on the *y*-axis.

As Tina moves down along her indifference curve, her marginal rate of substitution diminishes. Diminishing marginal rate of substitution is the key assumption of consumer theory. **Diminishing marginal rate of substitution** is the general tendency for the marginal rate of substitution to diminish as the consumer moves down along an indifference curve, increasing consumption of the good measured on the x-axis and decreasing consumption of the good measured on the y-axis. The shape of a person's indifference curves incorporates the principle of the diminishing marginal rate of substitution because the curves are bowed toward the origin.

FIGURE A13.2

The Marginal Rate of Substitution

MyEconLab Animation



The magnitude of the slope of an indifference curve is called the marginal rate of substitution (*MRS*).

The red line at point *C* tells us that Tina is willing to give up 8 packs of gum to get 4 bottles of water. Her marginal rate of substitution at point *C* is 8 divided by 4, which equals 2.

The red line at point *G* tells us that Tina is willing to give up 4 packs of gum to get 8 bottles of water. Her marginal rate of substitution at point *G* is 4 divided by 8, which equals 1/2.

Consumer Equilibrium

The consumer's goal is to buy the affordable quantities of goods that make her or him as well off as possible. The indifference curves describe the consumer's preferences, and they tell us that the higher the indifference curve, the better off is the consumer. So the consumer's goal can be restated as: to allocate his or her budget in such a way as to get onto the highest attainable indifference curve.

The consumer's budget and the prices of the goods limit the consumer's choices. The budget line illustrated in Figure 13.1 (p. 316) summarizes the limits on the consumer's choice. We combine the indifference curves of Figure A13.1(b) with the budget line of Figure 13.1 to work out the consumer's choice and find the consumer equilibrium.

Figure A13.3 shows Tina's budget line from Figure 13.1 and her indifference curves from Figure A13.1(b). Tina's best affordable point is 2 bottles of water and 4 packs of gum—at point *C*. Here, Tina

- Is on her budget line.
- Is on her highest attainable indifference curve.
- Has a marginal rate of substitution between water and gum equal to the relative price of water and gum.

For every point inside the budget line, such as point *L*, there are points *on* the budget line that Tina prefers. For example, she prefers any point on the budget line between *F* and *H* to point *L*. So she chooses a point on the budget line.

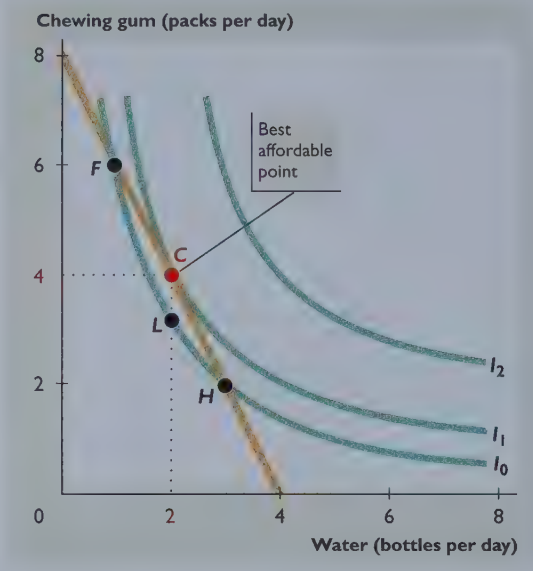
FIGURE A13.3

Consumer Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation

Tina's best affordable point is *C*. At that point, she is on her budget line and also on the highest attainable indifference curve.

At a point such as *H*, Tina is willing to give up more bottled water in exchange for chewing gum than she has to. She can move to point *L*, which is just as good as point *H*, and have some unspent budget. She can spend that budget and move to *C*, a point that she prefers to point *L*.



Checked out at the best affordable point.

Every point on the budget line lies on an indifference curve. For example, point *F* lies on the indifference curve I_0. At point *F*, Tina's marginal rate of substitution (the magnitude of the slope of the indifference curve I_0) is greater than the relative price (the magnitude of the slope of the budget line). Tina is willing to give up more chewing gum to get an additional bottle of water than the budget line says she must. So she moves along her budget line from *F* toward *C*. As she does so, she passes through a number of indifference curves (not shown in the figure) located between indifference curves I_0 and I_1. All of these indifference curves are higher than I_0 so Tina prefers any point on them to point *F*. When Tina gets to point *C*, she is on the highest attainable indifference curve. If she keeps moving along the budget line, she starts to encounter indifference curves that are lower than I_1. So Tina chooses point *C*—her best affordable point.

At the chosen point, the marginal rate of substitution (the magnitude of the slope of the indifference curve) equals the relative price (the magnitude of the slope of the budget line).

We can now use this model of consumer choice to predict the effect of a change in the price of water on the quantity of water demanded. That is, we can use this model to generate the demand curve for bottled water.

Deriving the Demand Curve

To derive Tina's demand curve for bottled water, we change the price of water, shift the budget line, and work out the new best affordable point. Figure A13.4(a) shows the change in the budget line and the change in consumer equilibrium when the price of water falls from $1 a bottle to 50¢ a bottle.

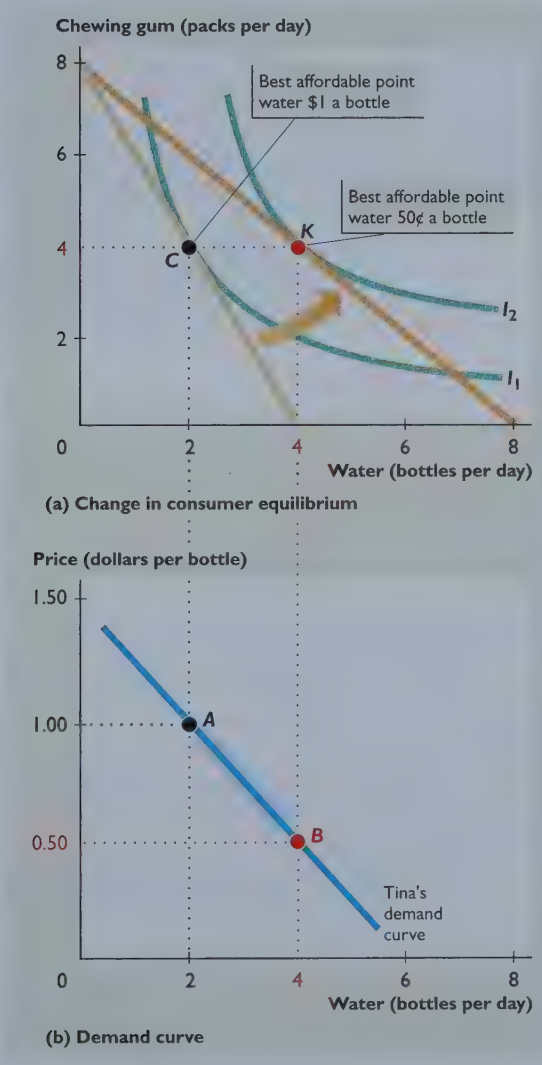
Initially, when the price of water is $1 a bottle, Tina consumes at point *C* in part (a). When the price of a bottle of water falls from $1 to 50¢, her budget line rotates outward and she can now get onto a higher indifference curve. Her best affordable point is now point *K*. Tina increases the quantity of water she buys from 2 to 4 bottles a day. She continues to buy 4 packs of gum a day.

Figure A13.4(b) shows Tina's demand curve for bottled water. When the price of water is $1 a bottle, she buys 2 bottles a day, at point *A*. When the price of water falls to 50¢ a bottle, she buys 4 bottles a day, at point *B*. Tina's demand curve traces out her best affordable quantity of water as the price of a bottle of water varies.

FIGURE A13.4

Deriving Tina's Demand Curve

MyEconLab Animation



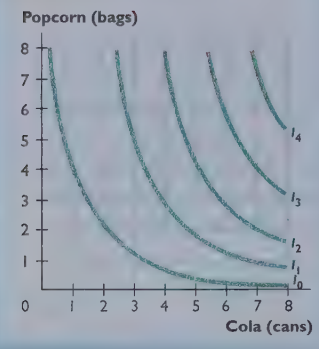
In part (a), when the price of water is $1 a bottle, Tina consumes at point *C*. When the price of water falls from $1 to 50¢ a bottle, she consumes at point *K*.

In part (b), when the price of water is $1 a bottle, Tina is at point *A*. When the price of water falls from $1 to 50¢ a bottle, Tina moves along her demand curve for bottled water from point *A* to point *B*.

MyEconLab

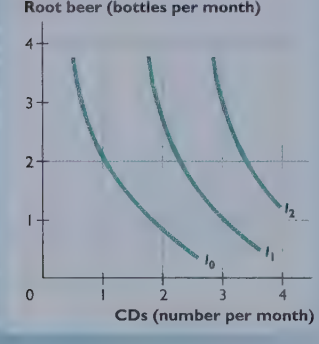
You can work these problems in Chapter 13 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

FIGURE 1



Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in **MyEconLab.**

FIGURE 2



APPENDIX CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Each week Sara has $12 to spend on popcorn and cola. The price of popcorn is $3 a bag, and the price of cola is $3 a can. Figure 1 illustrates Sara's preferences. Use Figure 1 to work Problems **1** to **3**.

1. What is the relative price of cola and what is the opportunity cost of a can of cola? Draw a graph of Sara's budget line with cola on the *x*-axis.
2. What quantities of popcorn and cola does Sara buy and what is her marginal rate of substitution of popcorn for cola at her consumption point?
3. Suppose that the price of cola falls to $1.50 a can and the price of popcorn and Sara's budget remain unchanged. What quantities of popcorn and cola does Sara buy now? What are two points on Sara's demand curve for cola?
4. In most states, there is no sales tax on food. Some people say that a consumption tax, a tax that is paid on all goods and services, would be better. If all sales taxes are replaced by a consumption tax, what would happen to the relative price of food and haircuts and how would you change your purchases of food and haircuts? Which tax would you prefer?
5. **Coffee king Starbucks raises its prices**
   Starbucks will raise its prices by an average of 9¢ per beverage to cover its increasing costs. Will rising prices cause Starbucks fans to cut back on their java habits?

   Source: *USA Today*, July 25, 2007

   Draw a graph to illustrate the change in the budget line and the change in the best affordable point for a consumer who buys fewer lattes a week.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Marc has a budget of $20 a month to spend on root beer and CDs. The price of root beer is $5 a bottle, and the price of a CD is $10. Figure 2 illustrates his preferences. Use Figure 2 to work Problems **1** to **3**.

1. What is the relative price of root beer in terms of CDs and what is the opportunity cost of a bottle of root beer? Draw a graph of Marc's budget line with CDs on the *x*-axis.
2. What quantities of root beer and CDs does Marc buy? What is his marginal rate of substitution of CDs for root beer at the point at which he consumes?
3. Suppose that the price of a CD falls to $5 and the price of root beer and Marc's budget remain unchanged. What quantities of root beer and CDs does Marc now buy? What are two points on Marc's demand curve for CDs?
4. **Don't let high gas prices stall your summer plans**
   With gas prices edging toward $4 a gallon, some would-be road warriors are reassessing their plans for Memorial Day weekend. With gas prices already up 25% since 2010, many are planning to stay fewer nights in roadside hotels.

   Source: *USA Today*, May 8, 2011

   Draw a preference map to illustrate a holiday traveler's preferences. Draw a budget line for gasoline and nights in roadside hotels in 2010 and identify the best affordable point. On your graph show the best affordable point in 2011 when the price of gasoline is higher.

Which store has the lower costs: Wal-Mart or 7-Eleven?

14

Production and Cost

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain and distinguish between the economic and accounting measures of a firm's cost of production and profit.
2. Explain the relationship between a firm's output and labor employed in the short run.
3. Explain the relationship between a firm's output and costs in the short run.
4. Derive and explain a firm's long-run average cost curve.

14.1 ECONOMIC COST AND PROFIT

The 20 million firms in the United States differ in size and in what they produce, but they all perform the same basic economic function: They hire factors of production and organize them to produce and sell goods and services. To understand the behavior of a firm, we need to know its goals.

The Firm's Goal

If you asked a group of entrepreneurs what they are trying to achieve, you would get many different answers. Some would talk about making a high-quality product, others about business growth, others about market share, and others about job satisfaction of the work force. All of these goals might be pursued, but they are not the fundamental goal. They are a means to a deeper goal.

The firm's goal is to *maximize profit*. A firm that does not seek to maximize profit is either eliminated or bought by firms that *do* seek to achieve that goal. To calculate a firm's profit, we must determine its total revenue and total cost. Economists have a special way of defining and measuring cost and profit, which we'll explain and illustrate by looking at Sam's Smoothies, a firm that is owned and operated by Samantha.

Accounting Cost and Profit

In 2011, Sam's Smoothies' total revenue from the sale of smoothies was $150,000. The firm paid $20,000 for fruit, yogurt, and honey; $22,000 in wages for the labor it hired; and $3,000 in interest to the bank. These expenses totaled $45,000.

Sam's accountant said that the depreciation of the firm's blenders, refrigerators, and shop during 2011 was $10,000. Depreciation is the fall in the value of the firm's capital, and accountants calculate it by using the Internal Revenue Service's rules, which are based on standards set by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. So the accountant reported Sam's Smoothies' total cost for 2011 as $55,000 and the firm's profit as $95,000—$150,000 of total revenue minus $55,000 of total costs.

Sam's accountant measures cost and profit to ensure that the firm pays the correct amount of income tax and to show the bank how Sam's has used its bank loan. Economists have a different purpose: to predict the decisions that a firm makes to maximize its profit. These decisions respond to *opportunity cost* and *economic profit*.

Opportunity Cost

To produce its output, a firm employs factors of production: land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship. Another firm could have used these same resources to produce other goods or services. In Chapter 3 (pp. 66–67), resources can be used to produce either cell phones or DVDs, so the opportunity cost of producing a cell phone is the number of DVDs forgone. Pilots who fly passengers for Southwest Airlines can't at the same time fly freight for FedEx. Construction workers who are building an office high-rise can't simultaneously build apartments. A communications satellite operating at peak capacity can carry television signals or e-mail messages but not both at the same time. A journalist writing for the *New York Times*

can't at the same time create Web news reports for CNN. And Samantha can't simultaneously run her smoothies business and a flower shop.

The highest-valued alternative forgone is the opportunity cost of a firm's production. From the viewpoint of the firm, this opportunity cost is the amount that the firm must pay the owners of the factors of production it employs to attract them from their best alternative use. So a firm's opportunity cost of production is the cost of the factors of production it employs.

To determine these costs, let's return to Sam's and look at the opportunity cost of producing smoothies.

Explicit Costs and Implicit Costs

The amount that a firm pays to attract resources from their best alternative use is either an explicit cost or an implicit cost. A cost paid in money is an **explicit cost.** Because the amount spent could have been spent on something else, an explicit cost is an opportunity cost. The wages that Samantha pays labor, the interest she pays the bank, and her expenditure on fruit, yogurt, and honey are explicit costs.

Explicit cost
A cost paid in money.

A firm incurs an **implicit cost** when it uses a factor of production but does not make a direct money payment for its use. The two categories of implicit cost are economic depreciation and the cost of the resources of the firm's owner.

Implicit cost
An opportunity cost incurred by a firm when it uses a factor of production for which it does not make a direct money payment.

Economic depreciation is the opportunity cost of the firm using capital that it owns. It is measured as the change in the *market value* of capital—the market price of the capital at the beginning of the period minus its market price at the end of the period. Suppose that Samantha could have sold her blenders, refrigerators, and shop on December 31, 2010, for $250,000. If she can sell the same capital on December 31, 2011, for $246,000, her economic depreciation during 2011 is $4,000. This is the opportunity cost of using her capital during 2011, not the $10,000 depreciation calculated by Sam's accountant.

Economic depreciation
An opportunity cost of a firm using capital that it owns—measured as the change in the *market value* of capital over a given period.

Interest is another cost of capital. When the firm's owner provides the funds used to buy capital, the opportunity cost of those funds is the interest income forgone by not using them in the best alternative way. If Sam loaned her firm funds that could have earned her $1,000 in interest, this amount is an implicit cost of producing smoothies.

When a firm's owner supplies labor, the opportunity cost of the owner's time spent working for the firm is the wage income forgone by not working in the best alternative job. For example, instead of working at her next best job that pays $34,000 a year, Sam supplies labor to her smoothies business. This implicit cost of $34,000 is part of the opportunity cost of producing smoothies.

Finally, a firm's owner often supplies entrepreneurship, the factor of production that organizes the business and bears the risk of running it. The return to entrepreneurship is **normal profit.** Normal profit is part of a firm's opportunity cost because it is the cost of a forgone alternative—running another firm. Instead of running Sam's Smoothies, Sam could earn $16,000 a year running a flower shop. This amount is an implicit cost of production at Sam's Smoothies.

Normal profit
The return to entrepreneurship. Normal profit is part of a firm's opportunity cost because it is the cost of not running another firm.

Economic Profit

A firm's **economic profit** equals total revenue minus total cost. Total revenue is the amount received from the sale of the product. It is the price of the output multiplied by the quantity sold. Total cost is the sum of the explicit costs and implicit costs and is the opportunity cost of production.

Economic profit
A firm's total revenue minus total cost.

TABLE 14.1

Economic Accounting

Item		
Total Revenue		$150,000
Explicit Costs		
Cost of fruit, yogurt, and honey	$20,000	
Wages	$22,000	
Interest	$3,000	
Implicit Costs		
Samantha's forgone wages	$34,000	
Samantha's forgone interest	$1,000	
Economic depreciation	$4,000	
Normal profit	$16,000	
Opportunity Cost		$100,000
Economic Profit		$50,000

Because one of the firm's implicit costs is *normal profit*, the return to the entrepreneur equals normal profit plus economic profit. If a firm incurs an economic loss, the entrepreneur receives less than normal profit.

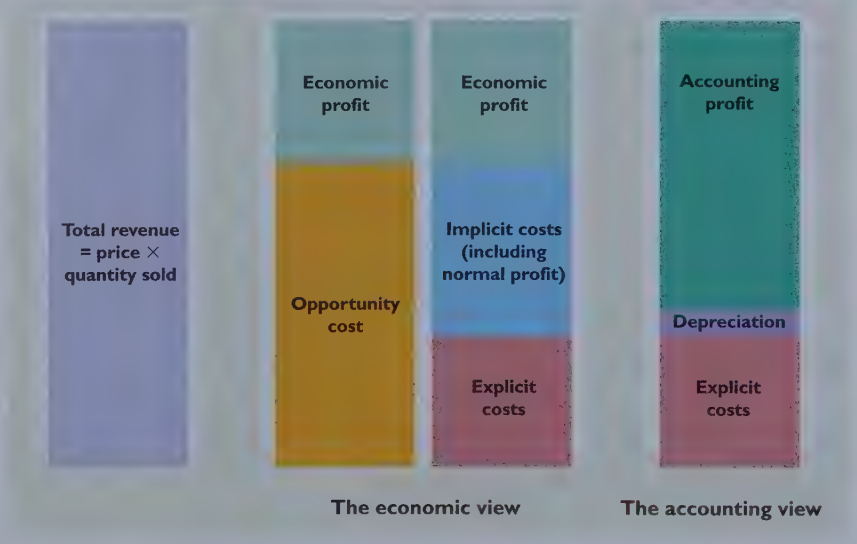
Table 14.1 summarizes the economic cost concepts, and Figure 14.1 compares the economic view and the accounting view of cost and profit. Sam's total revenue (price multiplied by quantity sold) is $150,000; the opportunity cost of the resources that Sam uses is $100,000; and Sam's economic profit is $50,000.

FIGURE 14.1

Two Views of Cost and Profit

MyEconLab Animation

Both economists and accountants measure a firm's total revenue the same way. It equals the price multiplied by the quantity sold of each item. Economists measure economic profit as total revenue minus opportunity cost. Opportunity cost includes explicit costs and implicit costs. Normal profit is an implicit cost. Accountants measure profit as total revenue minus explicit costs—costs paid in money—and depreciation.



CHECKPOINT 14.1

Explain and distinguish between the economic and accounting measures of a firm's cost of production and profit.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 14.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Lee, a programmer, earned $35,000 in 2010, but in 2011, he began to manufacture body boards. After one year, he submitted the following data to his accountant.

- He stopped renting out his cottage for $3,500 a year and used it as his factory. The market value of the cottage increased from $70,000 to $71,000.
- He spent $50,000 on materials, phone, utilities, etc.
- He leased machines for $10,000 a year.
- He paid $15,000 in wages.
- He used $10,000 from his savings account, which pays 5 percent a year interest.
- He borrowed $40,000 at 10 percent a year from the bank.
- He sold $160,000 worth of body boards.
- Normal profit is $25,000 a year.

1. Calculate Lee's explicit costs, implicit costs, and economic profit.
2. Lee's accountant recorded the depreciation on Lee's cottage during 2011 as $7,000. What did the accountant say Lee's profit or loss was?

In the News

What does it cost to make 100 pairs of running shoes?

An Asian manufacturer of running shoes pays its workers $275 to make 100 pairs an hour. Workers use company-owned equipment that costs in forgone interest and economic depreciation $300 an hour. Materials cost $900.

Source: washpost.com

Which costs are explicit costs? Which are implicit costs? With total revenue from the sale of 100 pairs of shoes of $1,650, calculate economic profit.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Lee's explicit costs are costs paid with money: $50,000 on materials, phone, utilities, etc; $10,000 on leased machines; $15,000 in wages; and $4,000 in bank interest. These items total $79,000. Lee's implicit costs are $35,000 in forgone wages; $3,500 in forgone rent; $1,000 increase in the value of his cottage is economic depreciation of –$1,000; $500 in forgone interest; and $25,000 in normal profit. These items total $63,000. Economic profit equals total revenue ($160,000) minus total cost ($79,000 + $63,000), which equals $142,000. So economic profit is $160,000 − $142,000, or $18,000.
2. The accountant measures Lee's profit as total revenue minus explicit costs minus depreciation: $160,000 − $79,000 − $7,000, or $74,000.

Solution to In the News

Explicit costs are wages ($275) and materials ($900). Implicit costs are the forgone interest and economic depreciation ($300). Economic profit equals total revenue ($1,650) minus total cost ($1,475), which is $175.

SHORT RUN AND LONG RUN

The main goal of this chapter is to explore the influences on a firm's costs. The key influence on cost is the quantity of output that the firm produces per period. The greater the output rate, the higher is the total cost of production. But the effect of a change in production on cost depends on how soon the firm wants to act. A firm that plans to change its output rate tomorrow has fewer options than a firm that plans ahead and intends to change its production six months from now.

To study the relationship between a firm's output decision and its costs, we distinguish between two decision time frames:

- The short run
- The long run

The Short Run: Fixed Plant

Short run
The time frame in which the quantities of some resources are fixed. In the short run, a firm can usually change the quantity of labor it uses but not its technology and quantity of capital.

The **short run** is the time frame in which the quantities of some resources are fixed. For most firms, the fixed resources are the firm's technology and capital—its equipment and buildings. The management organization is also fixed in the short run. The fixed resources that a firm uses are its *fixed factors of production* and the resources that it can vary are its *variable factors of production*. The collection of fixed resources is the firm's *plant*. So in the short run, a firm's plant is fixed.

Sam's Smoothies' plant is its blenders, refrigerators, and shop. Sam's cannot change these inputs in the short run. An electric power utility can't change the number of generators it uses in the short run. An airport can't change the number of runways, terminal buildings, and traffic control facilities in the short run.

To increase output in the short run, a firm must increase the quantity of variable factors it uses. Labor is usually the variable factor of production. To produce more smoothies, Sam must hire more labor. Similarly, to increase the production of electricity, a utility must hire more engineers and run its generators for longer hours. To increase the volume of traffic it handles, an airport must hire more check-in clerks, cargo handlers, and air-traffic controllers.

Short-run decisions are easily reversed. A firm can increase or decrease output in the short run by increasing or decreasing the number of labor hours it hires.

The Long Run: Variable Plant

Long run
The time frame in which the quantities of *all* resources can be varied.

The **long run** is the time frame in which the quantities of *all* resources can be varied. That is, the long run is a period in which the firm can change its *plant*.

To increase output in the long run, a firm can increase the size of its plant. Sam's Smoothies can install more blenders and refrigerators and increase the size of its shop. An electric power utility can install more generators. And an airport can build more runways, terminals, and traffic-control facilities.

Long-run decisions are not easily reversed. Once a firm buys a new plant, its resale value is usually much less than the amount the firm paid for it. The fall in value is economic depreciation. It is called a *sunk cost* to emphasize that it is irrelevant to the firm's decisions. Only the short-run cost of changing its labor inputs and the long-run cost of changing its plant size are relevant to a firm's decisions.

We're going to study costs in the short run and the long run. We begin with the short run and describe the limits to the firm's production possibilities.

14.2 SHORT-RUN PRODUCTION

To increase the output of a fixed plant, a firm must increase the quantity of labor it employs. We describe the relationship between output and the quantity of labor employed by using three related concepts:

- Total product
- Marginal product
- Average product

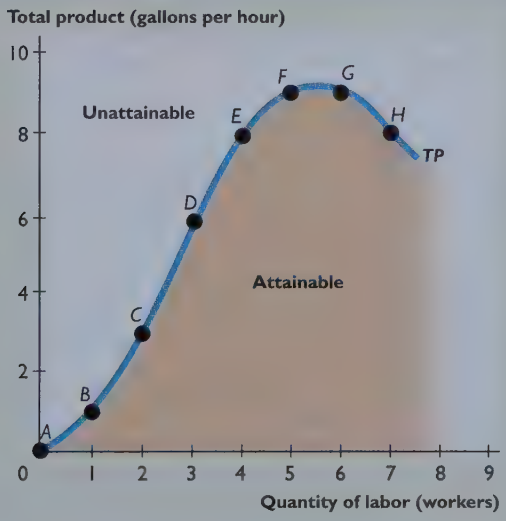
Total Product

Total product (*TP*) is the total quantity of a good produced in a given period. Total product is an output *rate*—the number of units produced per unit of time (for example, per hour, day, or week). Total product changes as the quantity of labor employed increases and we illustrate this relationship as a total product schedule and total product curve like those in Figure 14.2. The total product schedule (the table below the graph) lists the maximum quantities of smoothies per hour that Sam can produce with her existing plant at each quantity of labor. Points *A* through *H* on the *TP* curve correspond to the columns in the table.

Total product
The total quantity of a good produced in a given period.

FIGURE 14.2
Total Product Schedule and Total Product Curve

MyEconLab Animation



Quantity of labor (workers)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Total product (gallons per hour)	0	1	3	6	8	9	9	8
	A	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*

The total product schedule shows how the quantity of smoothies that Sam's can produce changes as the quantity of labor employed changes. In column *C*, Sam's employs 2 workers and can produce 3 gallons of smoothies an hour.

The total product curve, *TP*, graphs the data in the table. Points *A* through *H* on the curve correspond to the columns of the table. The total product curve separates attainable outputs from unattainable outputs. Points below the *TP* curve are inefficient. Points on the *TP* curve are efficient.

Like the *production possibilities frontier* (see Chapter 3, p. 62), the total product curve separates attainable outputs from unattainable outputs. All the points that lie above the curve are unattainable. Points that lie below the curve, in the orange area, are attainable, but they are inefficient: They use more labor than is necessary to produce a given output. Only the points *on* the total product curve are efficient.

Marginal Product

Marginal product
The change in total product that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of labor employed.

Marginal product (*MP*) is the change in total product that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of labor employed. It tells us the contribution to total product of adding one additional worker. When the quantity of labor increases by more than one worker, we calculate marginal product as

Marginal product = Change in total product ÷ Change in quanity of labor.

Figure 14.3 shows Sam's Smoothies' marginal product curve, *MP*, and its relationship with the total product curve. You can see that as the quantity of labor increases from 1 to 3 workers, marginal product increases. But as more than 3 workers are employed, marginal product decreases. When the seventh worker is employed, marginal product is negative.

Notice that the steeper the slope of the total product curve in part (a), the greater is marginal product in part (b). And when the total product curve turns downward in part (a), marginal product is negative in part (b).

The total product curve and marginal product curve in Figure 14.3 incorporate a feature that is shared by all production processes in firms as different as the Ford Motor Company, Jim's Barber Shop, and Sam's Smoothies:

- Increasing marginal returns initially
- Decreasing marginal returns eventually

Increasing Marginal Returns

Increasing marginal returns
When the marginal product of an additional worker exceeds the marginal product of the previous worker.

Increasing marginal returns occur when the marginal product of an additional worker exceeds the marginal product of the previous worker. The source of increasing marginal returns is increased specialization and greater division of labor in the production process.

For example, if Samantha employs just one worker, that person must learn all the aspects of making smoothies: running the blender, cleaning it, fixing breakdowns, buying and checking the fruit, and serving the customers. That one person must perform all these tasks.

If Samantha hires a second person, the two workers can specialize in different parts of the production process. As a result, two workers can produce more than twice as much as one worker. The marginal product of the second worker is greater than the marginal product of the first worker. Marginal returns are increasing. Most production processes experience increasing marginal returns initially.

Decreasing Marginal Returns

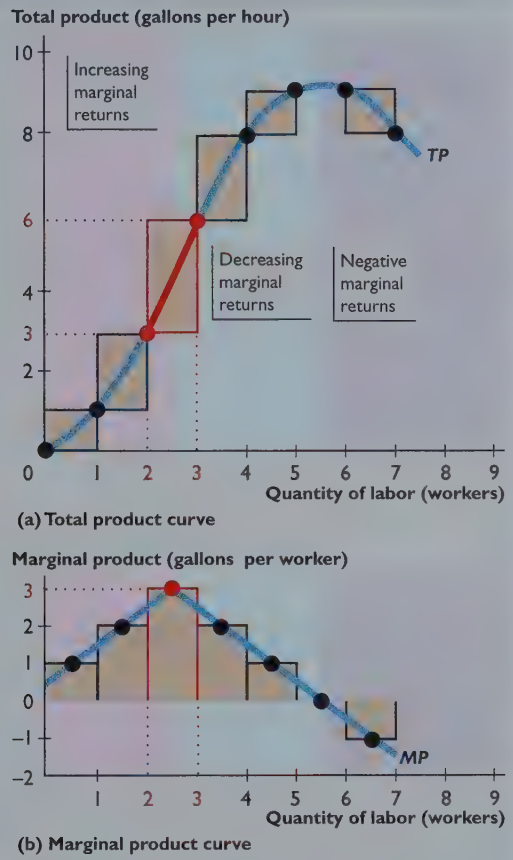
Decreasing marginal returns
When the marginal product of an additional worker is less than the marginal product of the previous worker.

All production processes eventually reach a point of *decreasing* marginal returns. **Decreasing marginal returns** occur when the marginal product of an additional worker is less than the marginal product of the previous worker. Decreasing marginal returns arise from the fact that more and more workers use the same equipment and work space. As more workers are employed, there is less and less that is productive for the additional worker to do. For example, if Samantha hires a

FIGURE 14.3

Total Product and Marginal Product

MyEconLab Animation



Quantity of labor (workers)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Total product (gallons per hour)	0	1	3	6	8	9	9	8
Marginal product (gallons per worker)		1	2	3	2	1	0	−1

The table calculates marginal product, and the orange bars illustrate it. When labor increases from 2 to 3 workers, total product increases from 3 gallons to 6 gallons of smoothies an hour. So marginal product is the orange bar whose height is 3 gallons (in both parts of the figure).

In part (b), marginal product is graphed midway between the labor inputs to emphasize that it is the result of *changing* inputs. Marginal product increases to a maximum (when 3 workers are employed in this example) and then declines—diminishing marginal product.

fourth worker, output increases but not by as much as it did when she hired the third worker. In this case, three workers exhaust all the possible gains from specialization and the division of labor. By hiring a fourth worker, Sam's produces more smoothies per hour, but the equipment is being operated closer to its limits. Sometimes the fourth worker has nothing to do because the machines are running without the need for further attention.

Hiring yet more workers continues to increase output but by successively smaller amounts until Samantha hires the sixth worker, at which point total product

stops rising. Add a seventh worker, and the workplace is so congested that the workers get in each other's way and total product falls.

Decreasing marginal returns are so pervasive that they qualify for the status of a law: the **law of decreasing returns**, which states that

As a firm uses more of a variable factor of production, with a given quantity of fixed factors of production, the marginal product of the variable factor eventually decreases.

Average Product

Average product
Total product divided by the quantity of a factor of production. The average product of labor is total product divided by the quantity of labor employed.

Average product (*AP*) is the total product per worker employed. It is calculated as

Average product = Total product ÷ Quantity of labor.

Another name for average product is *productivity*.

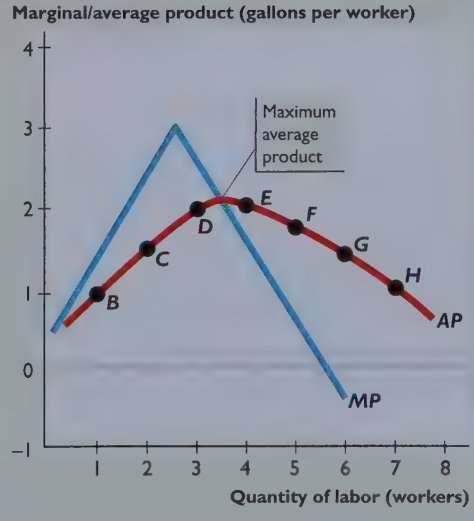
Figure 14.4 shows the average product of labor, *AP*, and the relationship between average product and marginal product. Average product increases from 1 to 3 workers (its maximum value) but then decreases as yet more workers are employed. Notice also that average product is largest when average product and marginal product are equal. That is, the marginal product curve cuts the average

FIGURE 14.4
Average Product and Marginal Product

MyEconLab Animation

The table calculates average product. For example, when the quantity of labor is 3 workers, total product is 6 gallons an hour, so average product is 6 gallons ÷ 3 workers = 2 gallons a worker.

The average product curve is *AP*. When marginal product exceeds average product, average product is increasing. When marginal product is less than average product, average product is decreasing.



Quantity of labor (workers)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Total product (gallons per hour)	0	1	3	6	8	9	9	8
Marginal product (gallons per worker)		1	2	3	2	1	0	−1
Average product (gallons per worker)		1.0	1.5	2.0	2.0	1.8	1.5	1.1
	A	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*

product curve at the point of maximum average product. For employment levels at which marginal product exceeds average product, the average product curve slopes upward and average product increases as more labor is employed. For employment levels at which marginal product is less than average product, the average product curve slopes downward and average product decreases as more labor is employed.

The relationship between average product and marginal product is a general feature of the relationship between the average value and the marginal value of any variable. *Eye on Your Life* looks at a familiar example.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Average and Marginal Grades

Jen, a part-time student, takes one course each semester over five semesters. In the first semester, she takes calculus and her grade is a C (2). This grade is her marginal grade. It is also her average grade—her GPA.

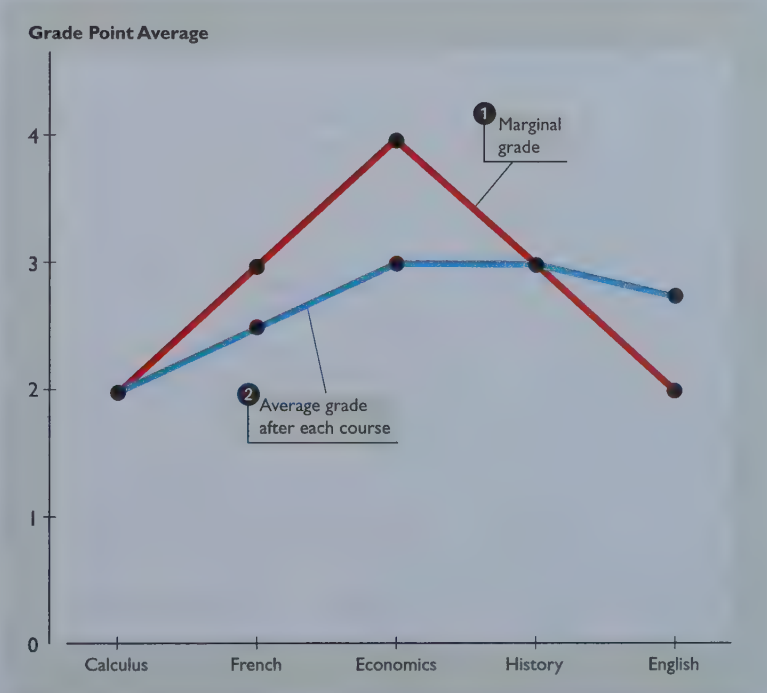
In the next semester, Jen takes French and gets a B (3)—her new marginal grade. When the marginal value exceeds the average value, the average rises. Because Jen's marginal grade exceeds her average grade, the marginal grade pulls her average up. Her GPA rises to 2.5.

In the third semester, Jen takes economics and gets an A (4). Again her marginal grade exceeds her average, so the marginal grade pulls her average up. Jen's GPA is now 3—the average of 2, 3, and 4.

In the fourth semester, she takes history and gets a B (3). Now her marginal grade equals her average. When the marginal value equals the average value, the average doesn't change. So Jen's average remains at 3.

In the fifth semester, Jen takes English and gets a C (2). When the marginal value is below the average value, the average falls. Because Jen's marginal grade, 2, is below her average of 3, the marginal grade pulls the average down. Her GPA falls.

This relationship between Jen's ❶ marginal grade and ❷ average grade is similar to the relationship between marginal product and average product.



MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 14.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 14.2

Explain the relationship between a firm's output and labor employed in the short run.

Practice Problems

Tom leases a farmer's field and grows pineapples. Tom hires students to pick and pack the pineapples. Table 1 sets out Tom's total product schedule.

TABLE 1

Labor (students)	Total product (pineapples per day)
0	0
1	100
2	220
3	300
4	360
5	400
6	420
7	430

1. Calculate the marginal product of the third student and the average product of three students.
2. Over what range of numbers of students does marginal product increase?
3. When marginal product increases, is average product greater than, less than, or equal to marginal product?

In the News

Budget cuts bring layoffs to museums

The Detroit Institute of Arts cut its staff by 56 full-time and 7 part-time employees and canceled some of this year's planned exhibitions.

Source: *The New York Times*, February 25, 2009

As the number of workers decreased and some exhibitions were canceled, how did marginal product and average product of a worker change in the short run?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The marginal product of the third student is the change in total product that results from hiring the third student. When Tom hires 2 students, total product is 220 pineapples a day. When Tom hires 3 students, total product is 300 pineapples a day. Marginal product of the third student is the total product of 3 students minus the total product of 2 students, which is 300 pineapples – 220 pineapples or 80 pineapples a day.
   Average product equals total product divided by the number of students. When Tom hires 3 students, total product is 300 pineapples a day, so average product is 300 pineapples a day ÷ 3 students, which equals 100 pineapples a day.
2. Marginal product of the first student is 100 pineapples a day, of the second student is 120 pineapples a day, and of the third is 80 pineapples a day. So marginal product increases when Tom hires the first and second students.
3. When Tom hires 1 student, marginal product is 100 pineapples and average product is 100 pineapples per student. When Tom hires 2 students, marginal product is 120 pineapples and average product is 110 pineapples per student. When Tom hires the second student, marginal product is increasing and average product is less than marginal product.

Solution to In the News

With a decrease in the number of exhibitions, output (number of visitors to the museum) might fall, but the percentage decrease in output is probably less than the percentage cut in labor services. Marginal product per worker increased and the increase in marginal product brought an increase in the average product.

14.3 SHORT-RUN COST

To produce more output (total product) in the short run, a firm must employ more labor, which means that it must increase its costs. We describe the relationship between output and cost using three cost concepts:

- Total cost
- Marginal cost
- Average cost

Total Cost

A firm's **total cost** (*TC*) is the cost of all the factors of production used by the firm. Total cost divides into two parts: total fixed cost and total variable cost. **Total fixed cost** (*TFC*) is the cost of a firm's fixed factors of production: land, capital, and entrepreneurship. In the short run, the quantities of these inputs don't change as output changes, so total fixed cost doesn't change as output changes. **Total variable cost** (*TVC*) is the cost of a firm's variable factor of production—labor. To change its output in the short run, a firm must change the quantity of labor it employs, so total variable cost changes as output changes.

Total cost
The cost of all the factors of production used by a firm.

Total fixed cost
The cost of the firm's fixed factors of production—the cost of land, capital, and entrepreneurship.

Total variable cost
The cost of the firm's variable factor of production—the cost of labor.

Total cost is the sum of total fixed cost and total variable cost. That is,

$$TC = TFC + TVC.$$

Table 14.2 shows Sam's Smoothies' total costs. Sam's fixed costs are $10 an hour regardless of whether it operates or not—*TFC* is $10 an hour. To produce smoothies, Samantha hires labor, which costs $6 an hour. *TVC*, which increases as output increases, equals the number of workers per hour multiplied by $6. For example, to produce 6 gallons an hour, Samantha hires 3 workers, so *TVC* is $18 an hour. *TC* is the sum of *TFC* and *TVC*. So to produce 6 gallons an hour, *TC* is $28. Check the calculation in each row and note that to produce some quantities—2 gallons an hour, for example—Sam hires a worker for only part of the hour.

TABLE 14.2

Sam's Smoothies' Total Costs

Labor (workers per hour)	Output (gallons per hour)	Total fixed cost	Total variable cost	Total cost
		(dollars per hour)		
0	0	10	0	10.00
1.00	1	10	6.00	16.00
1.60	2	10	9.60	19.60
2.00	3	10	12.00	22.00
2.35	4	10	14.10	24.10
2.65	5	10	15.90	25.90
3.00	6	10	18.00	28.00
3.40	7	10	20.40	30.40
4.00	8	10	24.00	34.00
5.00	9	10	30.00	40.00

Sam's fixed factors of production are land, capital, and entrepreneurship. Total fixed cost is constant regardless of the quantity produced. Sam's variable factor of production is labor. Total variable cost is the cost of labor. Total cost is the sum of total fixed cost and total variable cost.

The highlighted row shows that to produce 6 gallons of smoothies, Sam's hires 3 workers. Total fixed cost is $10 an hour. Total variable cost is the cost of the 3 workers. At $6 an hour, 3 workers cost $18. Sam's total cost of producing 6 gallons an hour is $10 plus $18, which equals $28.

Figure 14.5 illustrates Sam's total cost curves. The green total fixed cost curve (*TFC*) is horizontal because total fixed cost does not change when output changes. It is a constant at $10 an hour. The purple total variable cost curve (*TVC*) and the blue total cost curve (*TC*) both slope upward because variable cost increases as output increases. The arrows highlight total fixed cost as the vertical distance between the *TVC* and *TC* curves.

Let's now look at Sam's Smoothies' marginal cost.

Marginal Cost

In Figure 14.5, total variable cost and total cost increase at a decreasing rate at small levels of output and then begin to increase at an increasing rate as output increases. To understand these patterns in the changes in total cost, we need to use the concept of *marginal cost*.

Marginal cost
The change in total cost that results from a one-unit increase in output.

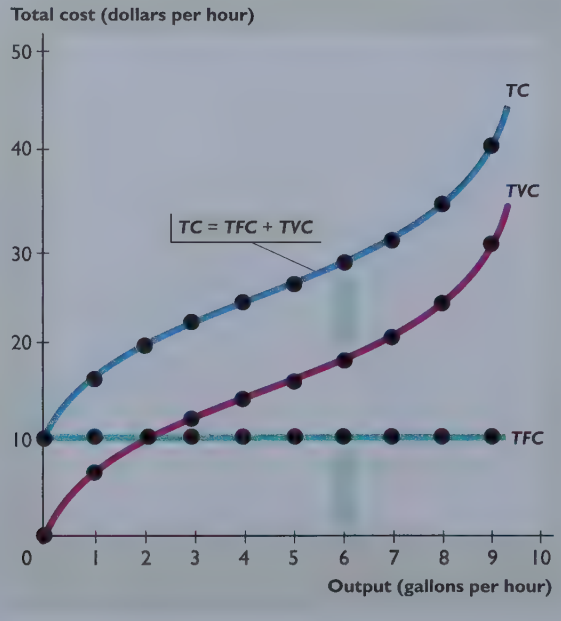
A firm's **marginal cost** is the change in total cost that results from a one-unit increase in output. Table 14.3 calculates the marginal cost for Sam's Smoothies. When, for example, output increases from 5 gallons to 6 gallons an hour, total cost increases from $25.90 to $28. So the marginal cost of this gallon of smoothies is $2.10 ($28 – $25.90). Notice that marginal cost is located midway between the total costs to emphasize that it is the result of *changing* outputs

Marginal cost tells us how total cost changes as output changes. The final cost concept tells us what it costs, on average, to produce a unit of output. Let's now look at Sam's average costs.

FIGURE 14.5
Total Cost Curves at Sam's Smoothies

MyEconLab Animation

Total fixed cost (*TFC*) is constant—it graphs as a horizontal line—and total variable cost (*TVC*) increases as output increases. Total cost (*TC*) also increases as output increases. The vertical distance between the total cost curve and the total variable cost curve is total fixed cost, as illustrated by the two arrows.



Average Cost

There are three average cost concepts:

- Average fixed cost
- Average variable cost
- Average total cost

Average fixed cost (*AFC*) is total fixed cost per unit of output. **Average variable cost** (*AVC*) is total variable cost per unit of output. **Average total cost** (*ATC*) is total cost per unit of output. The average cost concepts are calculated from the total cost concepts as follows:

$$TC = TFC + TVC.$$

Divide each total cost term by the quantity produced, Q, to give

$$\frac{TC}{Q} = \frac{TFC}{Q} + \frac{TVC}{Q}.$$

or

$$ATC = AFC + AVC.$$

Table 14.3 shows these average costs. For example, when output is 6 gallons an hour, average fixed cost is ($10 ÷ 6), which equals $1.67; average variable cost is ($18 ÷ 6), which equals $3.00; and average total cost is ($28 ÷ 6), which equals $4.67. Note that average total cost ($4.67) equals average fixed cost ($1.67) plus average variable cost ($3.00).

Average fixed cost
Total fixed cost per unit of output.

Average variable cost
Total variable cost per unit of output.

Average total cost
Total cost per unit of output, which equals average fixed cost plus average variable cost.

TABLE 14.3

Sam's Smoothies' Marginal Cost and Average Cost

Output (gallons per hour)	Total cost (dollars per hour)	Marginal cost (dollars per gallon)	Average fixed cost	Average variable cost	Average total cost
			(dollars per gallon)		
0	10.00		–	–	–
		6.00			
1	16.00		10.00	6.00	16.00
		3.60			
2	19.60		5.00	4.80	9.80
		2.40			
3	22.00		3.33	4.00	7.33
		2.10			
4	24.10		2.50	3.53	6.03
		1.80			
5	25.90		2.00	3.18	5.18
		2.10			
6	28.00		1.67	3.00	4.67
		2.40			
7	30.40		1.43	2.91	4.34
		3.60			
8	34.00		1.25	3.00	4.25
		6.00			
9	40.00		1.11	3.33	4.44

To produce 6 gallons of smoothies an hour, Sam's total cost is $28. Table 14.2 shows that this total cost is the sum of total fixed cost ($10) and total variable cost ($18).

Marginal cost is the increase in total cost that results from a one-unit increase in output. When Sam's increases output from 5 gallons to 6 gallons an hour, total cost increases from $25.90 to $28.00, an increase of $2.10 a gallon. The marginal cost of the sixth gallon an hour is $2.10. Marginal cost is located midway between the total costs to emphasize that it is the result of *changing* output.

When Sam's produces 6 gallons an hour, average fixed cost ($10 ÷ 6 gallons) is $1.67 a gallon; average variable cost ($18 ÷ 6 gallons) is $3.00 a gallon; average total cost ($28 ÷ 6 gallons) is $4.67 a gallon.

Figure 14.6 graphs the marginal cost and average cost data in Table 14.3. The red marginal cost curve (*MC*) is U-shaped because of the way in which marginal product changes. Recall that when Samantha hires a second or a third worker, marginal product increases and output increases to 6 gallons an hour (Figure 14.3 on p. 351). Over this output range, marginal cost decreases as output increases. When Samantha hires a fourth or more workers, marginal product decreases but output increases up to 9 gallons an hour (Figure 14.3). Over this output range, marginal cost increases as output increases.

The green average fixed cost curve (*AFC*) slopes downward. As output increases, the same constant total fixed cost is spread over a larger output. The blue average total cost curve (*ATC*) and the purple average variable cost curve (*AVC*) are U-shaped. The vertical distance between the average total cost and average variable cost curves is equal to average fixed cost—as indicated by the two arrows. That distance shrinks as output increases because average fixed cost decreases with increasing output.

The marginal cost curve intersects the average variable cost curve and the average total cost curve at their minimum points. That is, when marginal cost is less than average cost, average cost is decreasing; and when marginal cost exceeds average cost, average cost is increasing. This relationship holds for both the *ATC* curve and the *AVC* curve and is another example of the relationship you saw in Figure 14.4 for average product and marginal product.

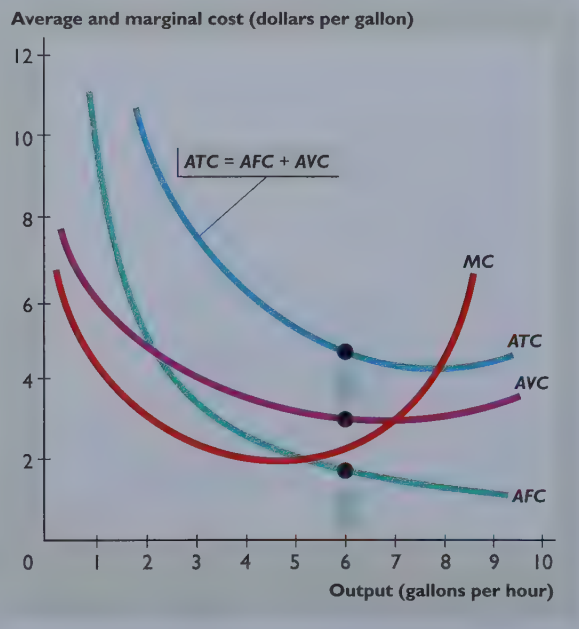
FIGURE 14.6

Average Cost Curves and Marginal Cost Curve at Sam's Smoothies

MyEconLab Animation

Average fixed cost decreases as output increases. The average fixed cost curve (*AFC*) slopes downward. The average total cost curve (*ATC*) and average variable cost curve (*AVC*) are U-shaped. The vertical distance between these two curves is equal to average fixed cost, as illustrated by the two arrows.

Marginal cost is the change in total cost when output increases by one unit. The marginal cost curve (*MC*) is U-shaped and intersects the average variable cost curve and the average total cost curve at their minimum points.



Why the Average Total Cost Curve Is U-Shaped

Average total cost, *ATC*, is the sum of average fixed cost, *AFC*, and average variable cost, *AVC*. So the shape of the *ATC* curve combines the shapes of the *AFC* and *AVC* curves. The U-shape of the average total cost curve arises from the influence of two opposing forces:

- Spreading total fixed cost over a larger output
- Decreasing marginal returns

When output increases, the firm spreads its total fixed costs over a larger output and its average fixed cost decreases—its average fixed cost curve slopes downward.

Decreasing marginal returns means that as output increases, ever larger amounts of labor are needed to produce an additional unit of output. So average variable cost eventually increases, and the *AVC* curve eventually slopes upward.

The shape of the average total cost curve combines these two effects. Initially, as output increases, both average fixed cost and average variable cost decrease, so average total cost decreases and the *ATC* curve slopes downward. But as output increases further and decreasing marginal returns set in, average variable cost begins to increase. Eventually, average variable cost increases more quickly than average fixed cost decreases, so average total cost increases and the *ATC* curve slopes upward.

All the short-run cost concepts that you've met are summarized in Table 14.4.

TABLE 14.4

A Compact Glossary of Costs

Term	Symbol	Definition	Equation
Fixed cost		The cost of a fixed factor of production that is independent of the quantity produced	
Variable cost		The cost of a variable factor of production that varies with the quantity produced	
Total fixed cost	*TFC*	Cost of the fixed factors of production	
Total variable cost	*TVC*	Cost of the variable factor of production	
Total cost	*TC*	Cost of all factors of production	$TC = TFC + TVC$
Marginal cost	*MC*	Change in total cost resulting from a one-unit increase in output (Q)	$MC = \Delta TC \div \Delta Q^*$
Average fixed cost	*AFC*	Total fixed cost per unit of output	$AFC = TFC \div Q$
Average variable cost	*AVC*	Total variable cost per unit of output	$AVC = TVC \div Q$
Average total cost	*ATC*	Total cost per unit of output	$ATC = AFC + AVC$

*In this equation, the Greek letter delta (Δ) stands for "change in."

Cost Curves and Product Curves

A firm's cost curves and product curves are linked, and Figure 14.7 shows how. The upper graph shows the average product curve, *AP*, and the marginal product curve, *MP*. The lower graph shows the average variable cost curve, *AVC*, and the marginal cost curve, *MC*.

As labor increases up to 2.5 workers a day (upper graph), output increases to 4 units a day (lower graph). Marginal product and average product rise and marginal cost and average variable cost fall. At the point of maximum marginal product, marginal cost is at a minimum.

As labor increases to 3.5 workers a day (upper graph), output increases to 7 units a day (lower graph). Marginal product falls and marginal cost rises, but average product continues to rise and average variable cost continues to fall. At the point of maximum average product, average variable cost is at a minimum. As labor increases further, output increases. Average product diminishes and average variable cost increases.

Shifts in the Cost Curves

The position of a firm's short-run cost curves, in Figures 14.5 and 14.6, depends on two factors:

- Technology
- Prices of factors of production

Technology

A technological change that increases productivity shifts the total product curve upward. It also shifts the marginal product curve and the average product curve upward. With a better technology that increases productivity, the same factors of production can produce more output, so an advance in technology lowers the average and marginal costs and shifts the short-run cost curves downward.

For example, advances in robotic technology have increased productivity in the automobile industry. As a result, the product curves of Chrysler, Ford, and GM have shifted upward, and their average and marginal cost curves have shifted downward. But the relationships between their product curves and cost curves have not changed. The curves are still linked, as in Figure 14.7.

Often a technological advance results in a firm using more capital, a fixed factor of production, and less labor, a variable factor of production. For example, today telephone companies use computers to connect long-distance calls instead of the human operators they used in the 1980s. When a telephone company makes this change, total variable cost decreases and total cost decreases, but total fixed cost increases. This change in the mix of fixed cost and variable cost means that at small output levels, average total cost might increase, but at large output levels, average total cost decreases.

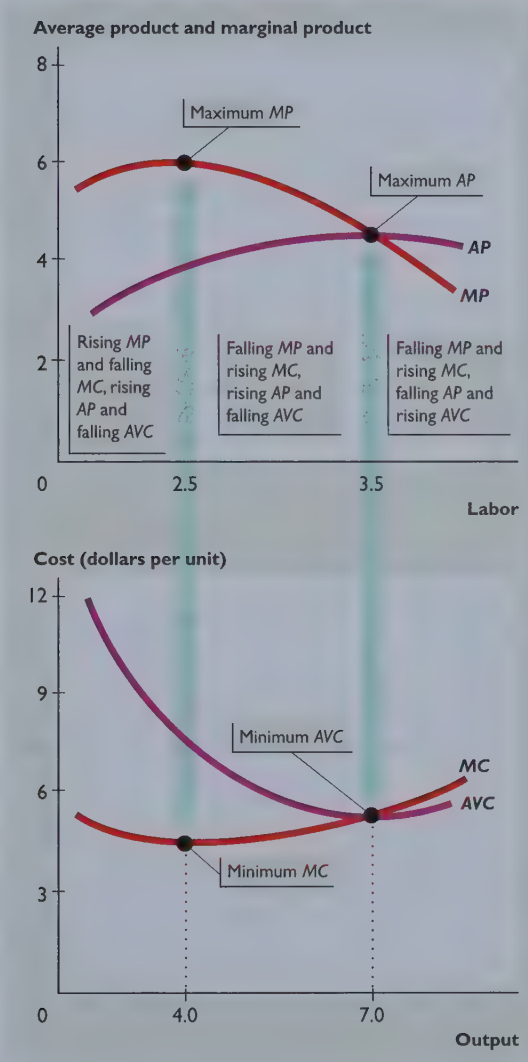
Prices of Factors of Production

An increase in the price of a factor of production increases costs and shifts the cost curves. But how the curves shift depends on which resource price changes. An increase in rent or some other component of *fixed* cost shifts the fixed cost curves (*TFC* and *AFC*) upward and shifts the total cost curve (*TC*) upward but leaves the variable cost curves (*AVC* and *TVC*) and the marginal cost curve (*MC*) unchanged.

FIGURE 14.7

Product Curves and Cost Curves

MyEconLab Animation



A firm's *MC* curve is linked to its *MP* curve. If, as the firm hires more labor up to 2.5 workers a day, the firm's marginal product rises, its marginal cost falls. If marginal product is at a maximum, marginal cost is at a minimum. If, as the firm hires more labor, its marginal product diminishes, its marginal cost rises.

A firm's *AVC* curve is linked to its *AP* curve. If, as the firm hires more labor up to 3.5 workers a day, its average product rises, its average variable cost falls. If average product is at a maximum, average variable cost is at a minimum. If as the firm hires more labor its average product diminishes, its average variable cost rises.

An increase in wage rates or some other component of *variable* cost shifts the variable cost curves (*TVC* and *AVC*) and the marginal cost curve (*MC*) upward but leaves the fixed cost curves (*AFC* and *TFC*) unchanged. So, for example, if the interest expense paid by a trucking company increases, the fixed cost of transportation services increases, but if the wage rate paid to truck drivers increases, the variable cost and marginal cost of transportation services increase.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 14.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 14.3

Explain the relationship between a firm's output and costs in the short run.

Practice Problems

Tom leases a farmer's field for $120 a day and grows pineapples. He pays students $100 a day to pick pineapples and he leases capital at $80 a day. Table 1 shows Tom's daily output.

TABLE 1

Labor (students)	Output (pineapples per day)
0	0
1	100
2	220
3	300
4	360
5	400
6	420
7	430

1. What is Tom's total cost and average total cost of 300 pineapples a day?
2. What is the marginal cost of picking a pineapple when the quantity increases from 360 to 400 pineapples a day?
3. At what output is Tom's average total cost a minimum?

In the News

Metropolitan Museum completes round of layoffs

The museum cut 74 jobs and 95 other workers retired. The museum also laid off 127 other employees in its retail shops. The cut in labor costs is $10 million, but the museum expects no change in the number of visitors.

Source: *The New York Times*, June 22, 2009

Explain how the job cuts will change the museum's short-run average cost curves and marginal cost curve.

Solutions to Practice Problems

TABLE 2

Labor	*TP*	*TC*	*MC*	*ATC*
0	0	200		–
			1.00	
1	100	300		3.00
			0.83	
2	220	400		1.82
			1.25	
3	300	500		1.67
			1.67	
4	360	600		1.67
			2.50	
5	400	700		1.75
			5.00	
6	420	800		1.90
			10.00	
7	430	900		2.09

1. Total cost is the sum of total fixed cost and total variable cost. Tom leases the field for $120 a day and capital for $80 a day, so Tom's total fixed cost is $200 a day. Total variable cost is the wages of the students. To produce 300 pineapples a day, Tom hires 3 students, so total variable cost is $300 a day and total cost is $500 a day. Table 2 shows the total cost (*TC*) schedule. Average total cost is the total cost divided by total product. The total cost of 300 pineapples a day is $500, so average total cost is $1.67 a pineapple. Table 2 shows the average total cost schedule.
2. Marginal cost is the increase in total cost that results from picking one additional pineapple a day. When the quantity picked increases from 360 to 400 pineapples a day, total cost (from Table 2) increases from $600 to $700. The increase in the number of pineapples is 40, and the increase in total cost is $100. Marginal cost is the increase in total cost ($100) divided by the increase in the number of pineapples (40), which is $2.50 per pineapple. So the marginal cost of a pineapple is $2.50.
3. At the minimum of average total cost, average total cost equals marginal cost. Minimum average total cost of a pineapple between 300 and 360 pineapples is $1.67. Table 2 shows that the marginal cost of increasing output from 300 to 360 pineapples a day is $1.67 a pineapple.

Solution to In the News

A cut in labor but no change in output increases marginal product of labor and decreases marginal cost. The *MC*, *AVC*, and *ATC* curves shift downward.

14.4 LONG-RUN COST

In the long run, a firm can vary both the quantity of labor and the quantity of capital. A small firm, such as Sam's Smoothies, can increase its plant size by moving into a larger building and installing more machines. A big firm such as General Motors can decrease its plant size by closing down some production lines.

We are now going to see how costs vary in the long run when a firm varies its plant—the quantity of capital it uses—along with the quantity of labor it uses.

The first thing that happens is that the distinction between fixed cost and variable cost disappears. All costs are variable in the long run.

Plant Size and Cost

When a firm changes its plant size, its cost of producing a given output changes. In Table 14.3 on p. 357 and Figure 14.6 on p. 358, the lowest average total cost that Samantha can achieve is $4.25 a gallon, which occurs when she produces 8 gallons of smoothies an hour. Samantha wonders what would happen to her average total cost if she increased the size of her plant by renting a bigger building and installing a larger number of blenders and refrigerators. Will the average total cost of producing a gallon of smoothies fall, rise, or remain the same?

Each of these three outcomes is possible, and they arise because when a firm changes the size of its plant, it might experience

- Economies of scale
- Diseconomies of scale
- Constant returns to scale

Economies of Scale

Economies of scale are features of a firm's technology that make average total cost *fall* as output increases. The main source of economies of scale is greater specialization of both labor and capital.

Economies of scale
Features of a firm's technology that make average total cost *fall* as output increases.

Specialization of Labor If Ford produced 100 cars a week, each production line worker would have to perform many different tasks. But if Ford produces 10,000 cars a week, each worker can specialize in a small number of tasks and become highly proficient at them. The result is that the average product of labor increases and the average total cost of producing a car falls.

Specialization also occurs off the production line. For example, a small firm usually does not have a specialist sales manager, personnel manager, and production manager. One person covers all these activities. But when a firm is large enough, specialists perform these activities. Average product increases, and the average total cost falls.

Specialization of both labor and capital on an auto-assembly line.

Specialization of Capital At a small output rate, firms often must employ general-purpose machines and tools. For example, with an output of a few gallons an hour, Sam's Smoothies uses regular blenders like the one in your kitchen. But if Sam's produces hundreds of gallons an hour, it uses commercial blenders that fill, empty, and clean themselves. The result is that the output rate is larger and the average total cost of producing a gallon of smoothies is lower.

Diseconomies of Scale

Diseconomies of scale
Features of a firm's technology that make average total cost *rise* as output increases.

Diseconomies of scale are features of a firm's technology that make average total cost *rise* as output increases. Diseconomies of scale arise from the difficulty of coordinating and controlling a large enterprise. The larger the firm, the greater is the cost of communicating both up and down the management hierarchy and among managers. Eventually, management complexity brings rising average total cost. Diseconomies of scale occur in all production processes but in some perhaps only at a very large output rate.

Constant Returns to Scale

Constant returns to scale
Features of a firm's technology that keep average total cost constant as output increases.

Constant returns to scale are features of a firm's technology that keep average total cost *constant* as output increases. Constant returns to scale occur when a firm is able to replicate its existing production facility including its management system. For example, Ford might double its production of Fusion cars by doubling its production facility for those cars. It can build an identical production line and hire an identical number of workers. With the two identical production lines, Ford produces exactly twice as many cars. The average total cost of producing a Fusion is identical in the two plants. Ford's average total cost remains constant as it increases production.

The Long-Run Average Cost Curve

Long-run average cost curve
A curve that shows the lowest average total cost at which it is possible to produce each output when the firm has had sufficient time to change both its plant size and labor employed.

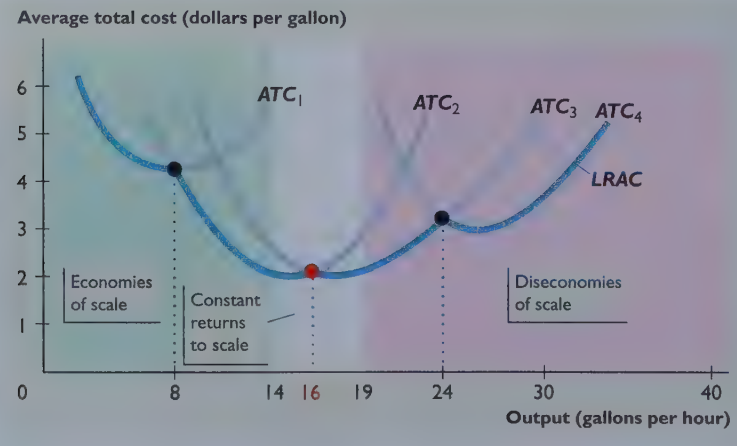
The **long-run average cost curve** shows the lowest average total cost at which it is possible to produce each output when the firm has had sufficient time to change both its plant size and its labor force.

Figure 14.8 shows Sam's Smoothies' long-run average cost curve *LRAC*. This long-run average cost curve is derived from the short-run average total cost curves for different possible plant sizes.

With its current small plant, Sam's Smoothies operates on the average total cost curve ATC_1 in Figure 14.8. The other three average total cost curves are for

FIGURE 14.8
Long-Run Average Cost Curve

MyEconLab Animation



In the long run, Samantha can vary both the plant size and the quantity of labor she employs. The long-run average cost curve traces the lowest attainable average total cost of producing each output. The dark blue curve is the long-run average cost curve *LRAC*.

Sam's experiences economies of scale as output increases up to 14 gallons an hour, constant returns to scale for outputs between 14 gallons and 19 gallons an hour, and diseconomies of scale for outputs that exceed 19 gallons an hour.

successively bigger plants. In this example, for outputs up to 8 gallons an hour, the existing plant with average total cost curve ATC_1 produces smoothies at the lowest attainable average cost. For outputs between 8 and 16 gallons an hour, average total cost is lowest on ATC_2. For outputs between 16 and 24 gallons an hour, average total cost is lowest on ATC_3. And for outputs in excess of 24 gallons an hour, average total cost is lowest on ATC_4.

The segment of each of the four average total cost curves for which that plant has the lowest average total cost is highlighted in dark blue in Figure 14.8. The scallop-shaped curve made up of these four segments is Sam's Smoothies' long-run average cost curve.

Economies and Diseconomies of Scale

When economies of scale are present, the *LRAC* curve slopes downward. The *LRAC* curve in Figure 14.8 shows that Sam's Smoothies experiences economies of scale for output rates up to 14 gallons an hour. At output rates between 14 and 19 gallons an hour, the firm experiences constant returns to scale. And at output rates that exceed 19 gallons an hour, the firm experiences diseconomies of scale.

EYE on RETAILERS' COSTS

Which Store Has the Lower Costs: Wal-Mart or 7-Eleven?

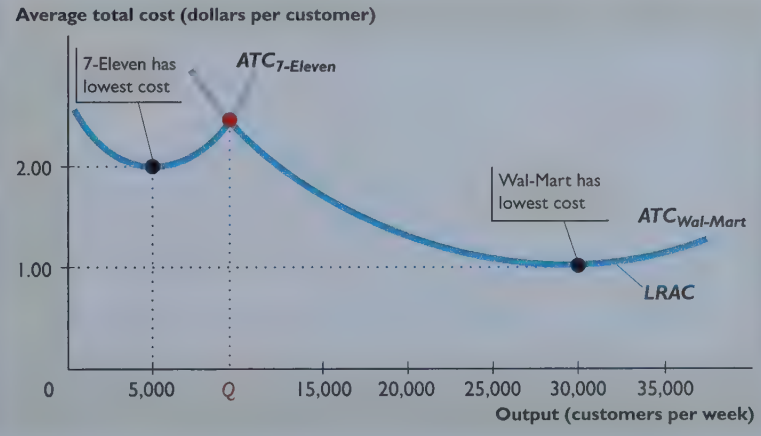
Wal-Mart's "small" supercenters measure 99,000 square feet and serve an average of 30,000 customers a week. The average 7-Eleven store, most of which today are attached to gas stations, measures 2,000 square feet and serves 5,000 customers a week.

Which retailing technology has the lower operating cost? The answer depends on the scale of operation.

At a small number of customers per week, it costs less per customer to operate a store of 2,000 square feet than one of 99,000 square feet.

In the figure, the average total cost curve of operating a 7-Eleven store of 2,000 square feet is $ATC_{7\text{-Eleven}}$ and the average total cost curve of a store of 99,000 square feet is $ATC_{Wal\text{-}Mart}$. The dark blue curve is a retailer's long-run average cost curve *LRAC*.

If the number of customers is *Q* a week, the average total cost per transaction is the same for both stores. For a store that serves more than *Q* customers a week, the least-cost method is the big store. For fewer than *Q* customers a week, the least-cost method is the small store. The least-cost store is not always the biggest.



MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 14.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 14.4

Derive and explain a firm's long-run average cost curve.

Practice Problems

To grow pineapples, Tom leases 1 field for $120 a day and capital for $80 a day and hires students at $100 a day. Suppose that Tom now leases 2 fields for $240 a day and twice as much capital for $160 a day. Table 1 shows his outputs.

1. What is Tom's average total cost when he farms 2 fields and produces 220 pineapples a day?
2. Make a graph of Tom's average total cost curves using 1 field and 2 fields. Show on the graph Tom's long-run average cost curve. Over what output range will Tom use 1 field? 2 fields?
3. Does Tom experience constant returns to scale, economies of scale, or diseconomies of scale?

TABLE 1

Labor (students per day)	Output 1 field (pineapples per day)	Output 2 fields (pineapples per day)
0	0	0
1	100	220
2	220	460
3	300	620
4	360	740
5	400	820
6	420	860
7	430	880

In the News

GM restructuring plan released

GM's restructuring plan will close 11 plants and reduce output at 3 others.

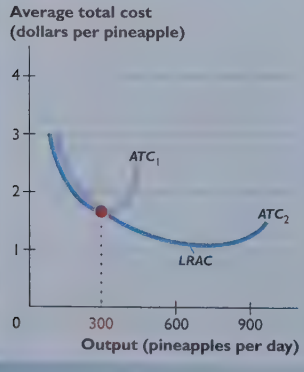
Source: boston.com, May 31, 2009

Explain the effects of the restructuring plan on GM's total fixed cost, total variable cost, short-run *ATC* curve, and *LRAC* curve.

TABLE 2

TP (1 field)	*ATC* (1 field)	*TP* (2 fields)	*ATC* (2 fields)
100	3.00	220	2.27
220	1.82	460	1.30
300	1.67	620	1.13
360	1.67	740	1.08
400	1.75	820	1.10
420	1.90	860	1.16
430	2.09	880	1.25

FIGURE 1



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Total cost equals fixed cost ($400 a day) plus $100 a day for each student. Tom can produce 220 pineapples with 2 fields and 1 student, so total cost is $500 a day. Average total cost is the total cost divided by output, which at 220 pineapples a day is $500 divided by 220, or $2.27. The "*ATC* (2 fields)" column of Table 2 shows Tom's average total cost schedule for 2 fields.
2. Figure 1 shows Tom's average total cost curve using 1 field as ATC_1. This curve graphs the data on *ATC* (1 field) and *TP* (1 field) in Table 2, which was calculated in Table 2 on p. 362. Using 2 fields, the average total cost curve is ATC_2. Tom's long-run average cost curve is the lower segments of the two *ATC* curves, highlighted in Figure 1. If Tom produces up to 300 pineapples a day, he will use 1 field. If he produces more than 300 pineapples a day, he will use 2 fields.
3. Tom experiences economies of scale up to an output of 740 pineapples a day because as he increases his plant and produces up to 740 pineapples a day, the average total cost of picking a pineapple decreases. (We don't have enough information to know what happens to Tom's average total cost if he uses three fields and three units of capital.)

Solution to In the News

Closing 11 plants will lower GM's total fixed cost; closing 11 plants and decreasing output at 3 plants will lower GM's total variable cost. With a smaller scale, GM will move left along its *LRAC* curve to the *ATC* curve associated with its smaller scale. As GM varies its output, it will move along that *ATC* curve.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain and distinguish between the economic and accounting measures of a firm's cost of production and profit.

- Firms seek to maximize economic profit, which is total revenue minus total cost.
- Total cost equals opportunity cost—the sum of explicit costs and implicit costs, which includes normal profit.

2 Explain the relationship between a firm's output and labor employed in the short run.

- In the short run, the firm can change the output it produces by changing only the quantity of labor it employs.
- A total product curve shows the limits to the output that the firm can produce with a given quantity of capital and different quantities of labor.
- As the quantity of labor increases, the marginal product of labor increases initially but eventually decreases—the law of decreasing returns.

3 Explain the relationship between a firm's output and costs in the short run.

- As total product increases, total fixed cost is constant, and total variable cost and total cost increase.
- As total product increases, average fixed cost decreases; average variable cost, average total cost, and marginal cost decrease at small outputs and increase at large outputs so their curves are U-shaped.

4 Derive and explain a firm's long-run average cost curve.

- In the long run, the firm can change the size of its plant.
- Long-run cost is the cost of production when all inputs have been adjusted to produce at the lowest attainable cost.
- The long-run average cost curve traces out the lowest attainable average total cost at each output when both the plant size and labor can be varied.
- The long-run average cost curve slopes downward with economies of scale and upward with diseconomies of scale.

Key Terms

Average fixed cost, 357
Average product, 352
Average total cost, 357
Average variable cost, 357
Constant returns to scale, 364
Decreasing marginal returns, 350
Diseconomies of scale, 364
Economic depreciation, 345
Economic profit, 345
Economies of scale, 363
Explicit cost, 345
Implicit cost, 345
Increasing marginal returns, 350
Law of decreasing returns, 352
Long run, 348
Long-run average cost curve, 364
Marginal cost, 356
Marginal product, 350
Normal profit, 345
Short run, 348
Total cost, 355
Total fixed cost, 355
Total product, 349
Total variable cost, 355

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 14 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Joe runs a shoe shine stand at the airport. Joe has no skills, no job experience, and no alternative job. The return to entrepreneurship in the shoe shine business is $10,000 a year. Joe pays the airport rent of $2,000 a year, and his total revenue from shining shoes is $15,000 a year. He spent $1,000 on a chair, polish, and brushes and paid for these items using a loan that has an interest rate of 20 percent a year. At the end of one year, Joe was offered $500 for his business and all its equipment. Calculate Joe's annual explicit costs, implicit costs, and economic profit from his shoe shine business.
2. Len's body board factory rents equipment for shaping boards and hires students. Table 1 sets out Len's total product schedule. Construct Len's marginal product and average product schedules. Over what range of workers do marginal returns increase?

TABLE 1

Labor (workers per day)	Total product (body boards per day)
0	0
1	20
2	44
3	60
4	72

Use the following information to work Problems 3 to 6.

Len's body board factory pays $60 a day for equipment and $200 a day to each student it hires. Table 1 sets out Len's total product schedule.

3. Construct Len's total variable cost and total cost schedules. What does the difference between total cost and total variable cost at each output equal?
4. Construct the average fixed cost, average variable cost, and average total cost schedules and the marginal cost schedule.
5. At what output is Len's average total cost at a minimum? At what output is Len's average variable cost at a minimum?
6. Explain why the output at which average variable cost is at a minimum is smaller than the output at which average total cost is at a minimum.
7. Table 2 shows the costs incurred at Pete's peanut farm. Complete the table.

TABLE 2

L	*TP*	*TVC*	*TC*	*AFC*	*AVC*	*ATC*	*MC*
0	0	0	100				
1	10	35					
2	24	70					
3	38	105					
4	44	140					

8. **Gap will focus on smaller scale stores**
Gap has too many 12,500 square feet stores. The target store size is 6,000 to 10,000 square feet, so Gap plans to combine previously separate stores. Some Gap Body, Gap Adult, and Gap Kids stores will be combined in one store.
Source: CNN, June 10, 2008

Thinking of a Gap store as a production plant, explain why Gap is reducing the size of its stores. Is Gap making a long-run decision or a short-run decision? Is Gap taking advantage of economies of scale?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. If the *ATC* curves of a Wal-Mart store and a 7-Eleven store are like those in *Eye on Retailers' Costs* on p. 365, and if each type of store operates at its minimum *ATC*, which store has the lower total cost? How can you be sure? Which has the lower marginal cost? How can you be sure? Sketch each firm's marginal cost curve.
2. Sonya used to earn $25,000 a year selling real estate, but she now sells greeting cards. The return to entrepreneurship in the greeting cards industry is $14,000 a year. Over the year, Sonya bought $10,000 worth of cards from manufacturers and sold them for $58,000. Sonya rents a shop for $5,000 a year and spends $1,000 on utilities and office expenses. Sonya owns a cash register, which she bought for $2,000 with funds from her savings account. Her bank pays 3 percent a year on savings accounts. At the end of the year, Sonya was offered $1,600 for her cash register. Calculate Sonya's explicit costs, implicit costs, and economic profit.

Use the following information to work Problems 3 to 5.

Yolanda runs a bullfrog farm.When she employs 1 person, she produces 1,000 bullfrogs a week. When she hires a second worker, her total product doubles. Her total product doubles again when she hires a third worker. When she hires a fourth worker, her total product increases but by only 1,000 bullfrogs. Yolanda pays $1,000 a week for equipment and $500 a week to each worker she hires.

3. Construct Yolanda's marginal product and average product schedules. Over what range of workers does marginal returns increase?
4. Construct Yolanda's total variable cost and total cost schedules. What is Yolanda's total fixed cost?
5. At what output is Yolanda's average total cost at a minimum?
6. Table 1 shows some of the costs incurred at Bill's Bakery. Calculate the values of *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E*. Show your work.

TABLE 1

L	*TP*	*TVC*	*TC*	*AFC*	*AVC*	*ATC*	*MC*
1	100	350	850	*C*	3.50	*D*	2.50
2	240	700	*B*	2.08	2.92	5.00	*E*
3	380	*A*	1,550	1.32	2.76	4.08	5.83
4	440	1,400	1,900	1.14	3.18	4.32	11.67
5	470	1,750	2,250	1.06	3.72	4.79	

7. **Grain prices go the way of the oil price**
Rising crop prices have started to impact the price of breakfast for millions of Americans—cereal prices are rising.

Source: *The Economist*, July 21, 2007

Explain how the rising price of grain affects the average total cost and marginal cost of producing breakfast cereals.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 14 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A firm's cost of production equals _____.
   A. all the costs paid with money, called explicit costs
   B. the implicit costs of using all the firm's own resources
   C. all explicit costs and implicit costs, excluding normal profit
   D. the costs of all resources used by the firm whether bought in the marketplace or owned by the firm
2. The average product of labor increases as output increases if _____.
   A. marginal product exceeds average product
   B. average product exceeds marginal product
   C. total product increases
   D. marginal product increases
3. Marginal returns start to decrease when more and more workers _____.
   A. have to share the same equipment and workspace
   B. produce less and less total output
   C. require jobs to be too specialized
   D. produce less and less average product
4. Average variable cost is at a minimum when _____.
   A. marginal cost equals average variable cost
   B. average total cost is at a minimum
   C. marginal cost exceeds average fixed cost
   D. average total cost exceeds average variable cost
5. An increase in the rent that a firm pays for its factory does not increase _____.
   A. total cost
   B. fixed cost
   C. marginal cost
   D. average fixed cost
6. An increase in the wage rate _____.
   A. shifts the average total cost curve and the marginal cost curve upward
   B. shifts the average fixed cost and average variable cost curve upward
   C. increases average variable cost but does not change marginal cost
   D. does not change average variable cost but increases average total cost
7. When average variable cost is at its minimum level, marginal product _____.
   A. equals average product
   B. exceeds average product
   C. is less than average product
   D. is at its maximum level
8. In the long run, with an increase in the plant size, _____.
   A. the short-run average total cost curve shifts downward
   B. the long-run average cost curve slopes downward
   C. the short-run average total cost curve shifts downward if economies of scale exist
   D. the average total cost of production rises

Why did GM fail?

15

Perfect Competition

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain a perfectly competitive firm's profit-maximizing choices and derive its supply curve.
2. Explain how output, price, and profit are determined in the short run.
3. Explain how output, price, and profit are determined in the long run and explain why perfect competition is efficient.

MARKET TYPES

The four market types are

- Perfect competition
- Monopoly
- Monopolistic competition
- Oligopoly

Perfect Competition

Perfect competition exists when

- Many firms sell an identical product to many buyers.
- There are no barriers to entry into (or exit from) the market.
- Established firms have no advantage over new firms.
- Sellers and buyers are well informed about prices.

Perfect competition
A market in which there are many firms, each selling an identical product; many buyers; no barriers to the entry of new firms into the industry; no advantage to established firms; and buyers and sellers are well informed about prices.

These conditions that define perfect competition arise when the market demand for the product is large relative to the output of a single producer. This situation arises when economies of scale are absent so the efficient scale of each firm is small. But a large market and the absence of economies of scale are not sufficient to create perfect competition. In addition, each firm must produce a good or service that has no characteristics that are unique to that firm so that consumers don't care from which firm they buy. Firms in perfect competition all look the same to the buyer.

Wheat farming, fishing, wood pulping and paper milling, the manufacture of paper cups and plastic shopping bags, lawn service, dry cleaning, and the provision of laundry services are all examples of highly competitive industries.

Other Market Types

Monopoly
A market in which one firm sells a good or service that has no close substitutes and a barrier blocks the entry of new firms.

Monopoly arises when one firm sells a good or service that has no close substitutes and a barrier blocks the entry of new firms. In some places, the phone, gas, electricity, and water suppliers are local monopolies—monopolies that are restricted to a given location. For many years, a global firm called DeBeers had a near international monopoly in diamonds. Microsoft has a near monopoly in producing the operating system for a personal computer.

Monopolistic competition
A market in which a large number of firms compete by making similar but slightly different products.

Monopolistic competition arises when a large number of firms compete by making similar but slightly different products. Each firm is the sole producer of the particular version of the good in question. For example, in the market for running shoes, Nike, Reebok, Fila, Asics, New Balance, and many others make their own versions of the perfect shoe. The term "monopolistic competition" reminds us that each firm has a monopoly on a particular brand of shoe but the firms compete with each other.

Oligopoly
A market in which a small number of interdependent firms compete.

Oligopoly arises when a small number of *interdependent* firms compete. Airplane manufacture is an example of oligopoly. Oligopolies might produce almost identical products, such as Duracell and Energizer batteries; or they might produce differentiated products, such as the colas produced by Coke and Pepsi.

We study perfect competition in this chapter, monopoly in Chapter 16, monopolistic competition in Chapter 17, and oligopoly in Chapter 18.

15.1 A FIRM'S PROFIT-MAXIMIZING CHOICES

A firm's objective is to maximize *economic profit*, which is equal to *total revenue* minus the *total cost* of production. *Normal profit*, the return that the firm's entrepreneur can obtain on average, is part of the firm's cost.

In the short run, a firm achieves its objective by deciding the quantity to produce. This quantity influences the firm's total revenue, total cost, and economic profit. In the long run, a firm achieves its objective by deciding whether to enter or exit a market.

These are the key decisions that a firm in perfect competition makes. Such a firm does *not* choose the price at which to sell its output. The firm in perfect competition is a **price taker**—it cannot influence the price of its product.

Price taker
A firm that cannot influence the price of the good or service that it produces.

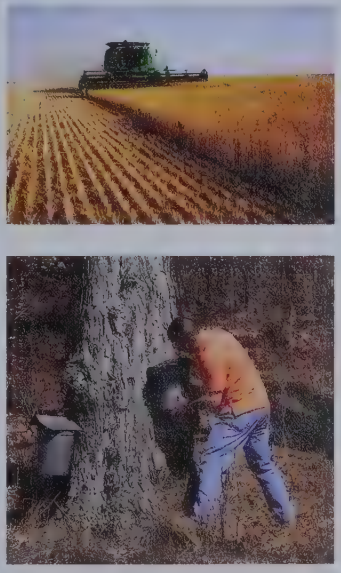
Price Taker

To see why a firm in perfect competition is a price taker, imagine that you are a wheat farmer in Kansas. You have a thousand acres under cultivation—which sounds like a lot. But then you go on a drive through Colorado, Oklahoma, Texas, and back up to Nebraska and the Dakotas. You find unbroken stretches of wheat covering millions of acres. And you know that there are similar vistas in Canada, Argentina, Australia, and Ukraine. Your thousand acres are a drop in the ocean. Nothing makes your wheat any better than any other farmer's, and all the buyers of wheat know the price they must pay. If the going price of wheat is $4 a bushel, you are stuck with that price. You can't get a higher price than $4, and you have no incentive to offer it for less than $4 because you can sell your entire output at that price.

The producers of most agricultural products are price takers. We'll illustrate perfect competition with another agriculture example: the market for maple syrup. The next time you pour syrup on your pancakes, think about the competitive market that gets this product from the sap of the maple tree to your table!

Dave's Maple Syrup is one of more than 11,000 similar firms in the maple syrup market of North America. Dave is a price taker. Like the Kansas wheat farmer, he can sell any quantity he chooses at the going price but none above that price. Dave faces a *perfectly elastic* demand. The demand for Dave's syrup is perfectly elastic because syrup from Don Harlow, Casper Sugar Shack, and all the other maple farms in North America are *perfect substitutes* for Dave's syrup.

We'll explore Dave's decisions and their implications for the way a competitive market works. We begin by defining some revenue concepts.



Wheat farmers and maple syrup farmers are price takers.

Revenue Concepts

In perfect competition, market demand and market supply determine the price. A firm's *total revenue* equals this given price multiplied by the quantity sold. A firm's **marginal revenue** is the change in total revenue that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity sold.

Marginal revenue
The change in total revenue that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity sold.

In perfect competition, marginal revenue equals price.

The reason is that the firm can sell any quantity it chooses at the going market price. So if the firm sells one more unit, it sells it for the market price and total revenue increases by that amount. This increase in total revenue is marginal revenue.

The table in Figure 15.1 illustrates the equality of marginal revenue and price. The price of syrup is $8 a can. Total revenue is equal to the price multiplied by the

quantity sold. So if Dave sells 10 cans, his total revenue is 10 × $8 = $80. If the quantity sold increases from 10 cans to 11 cans, total revenue increases from $80 to $88, so marginal revenue is $8 a can, the same as the price.

Figure 15.1 illustrates price determination and revenue in the perfectly competitive market. Market demand and market supply in part (a) determine the market price. Dave is a price taker, so he sells his syrup for the market price. The demand curve for Dave's syrup is the horizontal line at the market price in part (b). Because price equals marginal revenue, the demand curve for Dave's syrup is Dave's marginal revenue curve (*MR*). The total revenue curve (*TR*), in part (c), shows the total revenue at each quantity sold. Because he sells each can for the market price, the total revenue curve is an upward-sloping straight line.

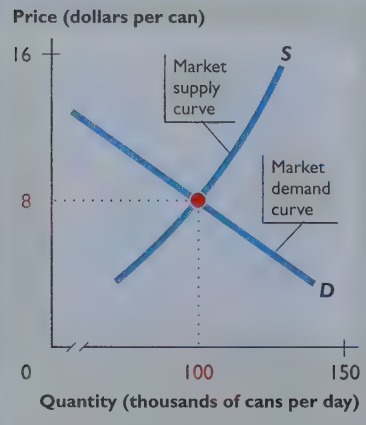
Profit-Maximizing Output

As output increases, total revenue increases, but total cost also increases. Because of *decreasing marginal returns* (see Chapter 14, pp. 350–352), total cost eventually increases faster than total revenue. There is one output level that maximizes economic profit, and a perfectly competitive firm chooses this output level.

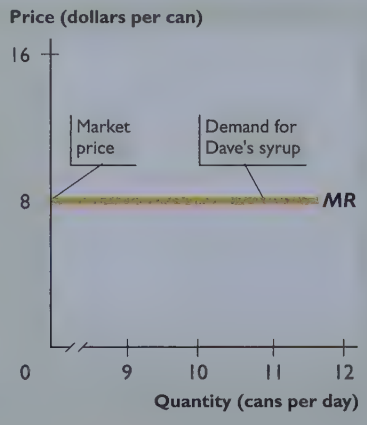
FIGURE 15.1

Demand, Price, and Revenue in Perfect Competition

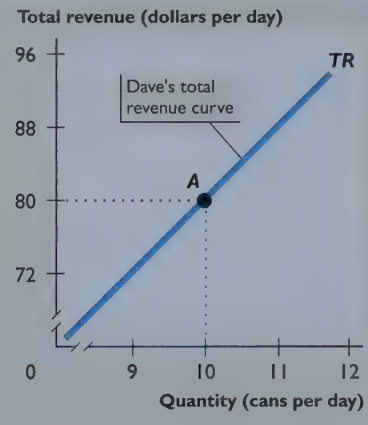
MyEconLab Animation



(a) Maple syrup market



(b) Dave's marginal revenue



(c) Dave's total revenue

Quantity sold (cans per day)	9	10	11
Price (dollars per can)	8	8	8
Total revenue (dollars per day)	72	80	88
Marginal revenue (dollars per can)		8	8

Part (a) shows the market for maple syrup. The market price is $8 a can. The table calculates total revenue and marginal revenue.

Part (b) shows the demand curve for Dave's syrup, which is Dave's marginal revenue curve (*MR*).

Part (c) shows Dave's total revenue curve (*TR*). Point *A* corresponds to the second column of the table.

One way to find the profit-maximizing output is to use a firm's total revenue and total cost curves. Profit is maximized at the output level at which total revenue exceeds total cost by the largest amount. Figure 15.2 shows how to do this for Dave's Maple Syrup.

The table lists Dave's total revenue, total cost, and economic profit at different output levels. Figure 15.2 (a) shows the total revenue and total cost curves. These curves are graphs of the numbers shown in the first three columns of the table. The total revenue curve (*TR*) is the same as that in Figure 15.1(c). The total cost curve (*TC*) is similar to the one that you met in Chapter 14 (p. 356). Figure 15.2(b) is an economic profit curve.

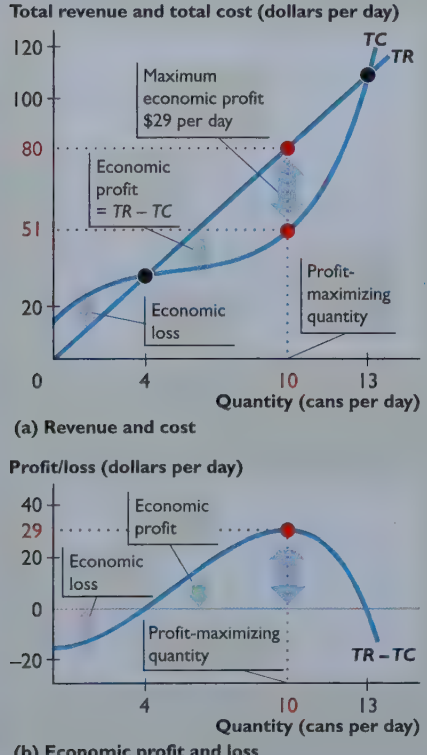
Dave makes an economic profit on outputs between 4 and 13 cans a day. At outputs of fewer than 4 cans a day and more than 13 cans a day, he incurs an economic loss. Outputs of 4 cans and 13 cans are *break-even points*—points at which total cost equals total revenue and economic profit is zero.

The profit curve is at its highest when the vertical distance between the *TR* and *TC* curves is greatest. In this example, profit maximization occurs at an output of 10 cans a day. At this output, Dave's economic profit is $29 a day.

FIGURE 15.2

Total Revenue, Total Cost, and Economic Profit

MyEconLab Animation



Quantity (*Q*) (cans per day)	Total revenue (*TR*)	Total cost (*TC*)	Economic profit (*TR* – *TC*)
	(dollars per day)		
0	0	15	–15
1	8	22	–14
2	16	27	–11
3	24	30	–6
4	**32**	**32**	**0**
5	40	33	7
6	48	34	14
7	56	36	20
8	64	40	24
9	72	44	28
10	**80**	**51**	**29**
11	88	60	28
12	96	76	20
13	**104**	**104**	**0**
14	112	144	–32

In part (a), economic profit is the vertical distance between the total cost and total revenue curves. Dave's maximum economic profit is $29 a day ($80 − $51) when output is 10 cans a day.

In part (b), economic profit is the height of the profit curve.

Marginal Analysis and the Supply Decision

Another way to find the profit-maximizing output is to use *marginal analysis*, which compares marginal revenue, *MR*, with marginal cost, *MC*. As output increases, marginal revenue is constant but marginal cost eventually increases.

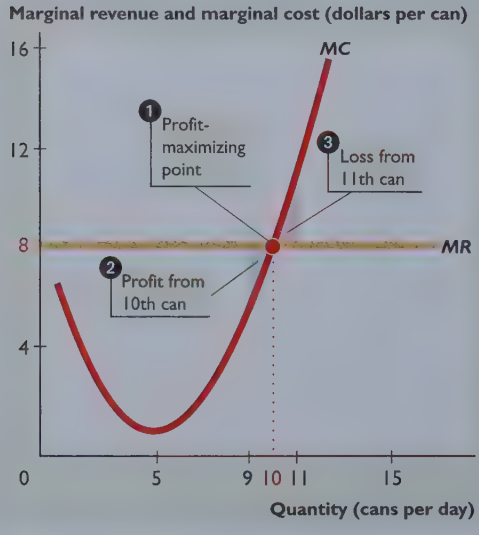
If marginal revenue exceeds marginal cost ($MR > MC$), then the revenue from selling one more unit exceeds the cost of producing that unit and an *increase* in output increases economic profit. If marginal revenue is less than marginal cost ($MR < MC$), then the revenue from selling one more unit is less than the cost of producing that unit and a *decrease* in output increases economic profit. If marginal revenue equals marginal cost ($MR = MC$), then the revenue from selling one more unit equals the cost incurred to produce that unit. Economic profit is maximized and either an increase or a decrease in output *decreases* economic profit. The rule $MR = MC$ is a prime example of marginal analysis.

Figure 15.3 illustrates these propositions. If Dave increases output from 9 cans to 10 cans a day, marginal revenue ($8) exceeds marginal cost ($7), so by producing the 10th can economic profit increases. The last column of the table shows that economic profit increases from $28 to $29. The blue area in the figure shows the increase in economic profit when production increases from 9 to 10 cans per day.

If Dave increases output from 10 cans to 11 cans a day, marginal revenue ($8) is less than marginal cost ($9), so by producing the 11th can, economic profit decreases. The last column of the table shows that economic profit decreases from $29 to $28. The red area in the figure shows the economic loss that arises from increasing production from 10 to 11 cans per day.

FIGURE 15.3
Profit-Maximizing Output

MyEconLab Animation



Quantity (Q) (cans per day)	Total revenue (TR) (dollars per day)	Marginal revenue (MR) (dollars per can)	Total cost (TC) (dollars per day)	Marginal cost (MC) (dollars per can)	Economic profit (TR – TC) (dollars per day)
8	64		40		24
		8		4	
9	72		44		28
		8		7	
10	80		51		29
		8		9	
11	88		60		28
		8		16	
12	96		76		20

❶ Profit is maximized when marginal revenue equals marginal cost at 10 cans a day. ❷ If output increases from 9 to 10 cans a day, marginal cost is $7, which is less than the marginal revenue of $8, and profit increases. ❸ If output increases from 10 to 11 cans a day, marginal cost is $9, which exceeds the marginal revenue of $8, and profit decreases.

Dave maximizes economic profit by producing 10 cans a day, the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost.

A firm's profit-maximizing output is its *quantity supplied*. Dave's *quantity supplied* at a price of $8 a can is 10 cans a day. If the price were higher than $8 a can, he would increase production. If the price were lower than $8 a can, he would decrease production. These profit-maximizing responses to different prices are the foundation of the law of supply:

Other things remaining the same, the higher the price of a good, the greater is the quantity supplied of that good.

Temporary Shutdown Decision

Sometimes, the price falls so low that a firm cannot cover its costs. What does the firm do in such a situation? The answer depends on whether the firm expects the low price to be permanent or temporary.

If a firm incurs an economic loss that it believes is permanent and sees no prospect of ending, the firm exits the market. We'll study this action later in this chapter when we look at the firm's decisions in the long run (pp. 386–392).

If a firm incurs an economic loss that it believes is temporary, it remains in the market, but it might temporarily shut down. To decide whether to produce or to shut down, the firm compares the loss it would incur in the two situations.

Loss When Shut Down

If the firm shuts down temporarily, it receives no revenue and incurs no variable costs. The firm still incurs fixed costs. So, if a firm shuts down, it incurs an economic loss equal to total fixed cost. This loss is the largest that a firm need incur.

Loss When Producing

A firm that produces an output receives revenue and incurs both fixed costs and variable costs. The firm incurs an economic loss equal to total fixed cost *plus* total variable cost *minus* total revenue. If total revenue exceeds total variable cost, the firm's economic loss is less than total fixed cost. But if total revenue is less than total variable cost, the firm's economic loss will exceed total fixed cost.

The Shutdown Point

If total revenue is less than total variable cost, a firm shuts down temporarily and limits its loss to an amount equal to total fixed cost. If total revenue just equals total variable cost, a firm is indifferent between producing and shutting down. This situation arises when price equals minimum average variable cost and the firm produces the quantity at which average variable cost is a minimum—called the **shutdown point.**

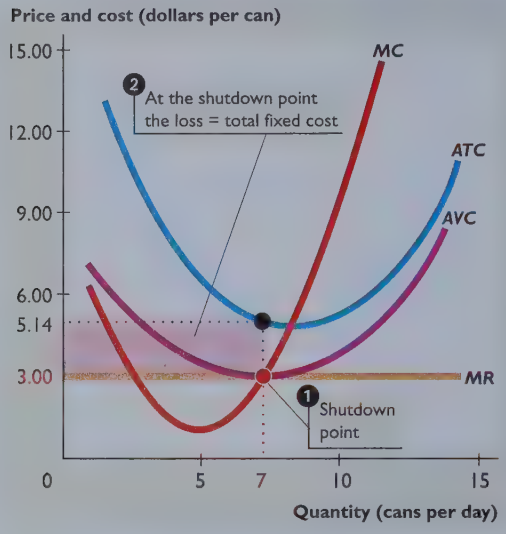
Shutdown point
The point at which price equals minimum average variable cost and the quantity produced is that at which average variable cost is at its minimum.

Figure 15.4 illustrates the firm's shutdown decision and the shutdown point that we've just described for Dave's maple syrup farm. Dave's average variable cost curve is *AVC* and his marginal cost curve is *MC*. Average variable cost has a minimum of $3 a can when output is 7 cans a day. The *MC* curve intersects the *AVC* curve at its minimum. (We explained this relationship between the marginal and average values of a variable in Chapter 14; see pp. 352–353 and pp. 356–358.) The figure shows the marginal revenue curve *MR* when the price is $3 a can, a *price equal to minimum average variable cost.*

FIGURE 15.4

The Shutdown Decision

MyEconLab Animation



Quantity (Q) (cans per day)	Total revenue (TR)	Total variable cost (TVC)	Total fixed cost (TFC)	Total cost (TC)	Economic profit (TR – TC)
	(dollars per day)				
6	18	19	15	34	–16
7	21	21	15	36	–15
8	24	25	15	40	–16

❶ The shutdown point is at minimum average variable cost. At a price below minimum average variable cost, the firm shuts down and produces no output. At a price equal to minimum average variable cost, the firm is indifferent between shutting down and producing no output or producing the output at minimum average variable cost. Either way, ❷ the firm minimizes its economic loss and incurs a loss equal to total fixed cost.

If Dave produces at the shutdown point, he produces 7 cans a day and sells them for $3 a can. He incurs an economic loss equal to $2.14 a can and a total economic loss of $15 a day, which equals his total fixed cost. If Dave shuts down, he also incurs an economic loss equal to total fixed cost.

The table lists Dave's total revenue, total variable cost, total fixed cost, total cost, and economic profit at three output levels. The middle output, 7 cans a day, is that at which Dave's average variable cost is at its minimum—$3 a can. By examining the numbers in the table, you can see that when the price is $3 a can, Dave incurs a loss equal to total fixed cost by producing 7 cans a day.

The Firm's Short-Run Supply Curve

A perfectly competitive firm's short-run supply curve shows how the firm's profit-maximizing output varies as the price varies, other things remaining the same. This supply curve is based on the marginal analysis and shutdown decision that we've just explored.

Figure 15.5 derives Dave's supply curve. Part (a) shows the marginal cost and average variable cost curves, and part (b) shows the supply curve. There is a direct link between the marginal cost and average variable cost curves and the firm's supply curve. Let's see what that link is.

In Figure 15.5(a), if the price is above minimum average variable cost, Dave maximizes profit by producing the output at which marginal cost equals marginal revenue, which also equals price. We determine the quantity produced at each price from the marginal cost curve. At a price of $8 a can, the marginal revenue curve is MR_1 and Dave maximizes profit by producing 10 cans a day. If the price

rises to $12 a can, the marginal revenue curve is MR_2 and Dave increases production to 11 cans a day.

If price equals minimum average variable cost, Dave maximizes profit (minimizes loss) by either producing the quantity at the shutdown point or shutting down and producing no output. But if the price is below minimum average variable cost, Dave shuts down and produces no output.

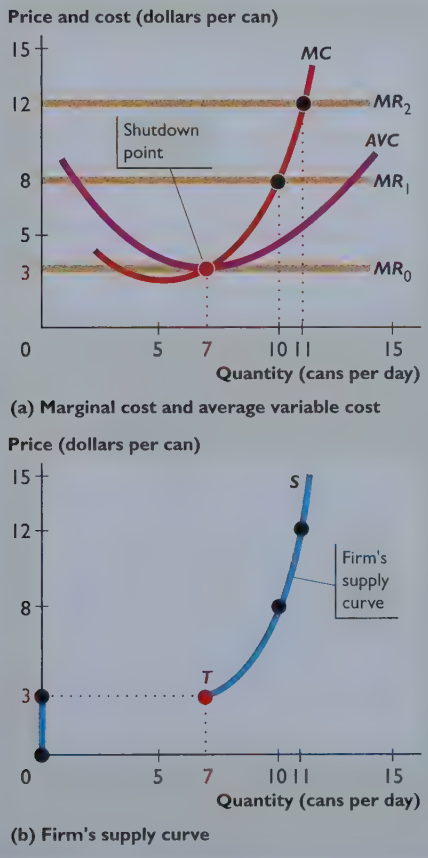
Figure 15.5(b) shows Dave's short-run supply curve. At prices that exceed minimum average variable cost, the supply curve is the same as the marginal cost curve. At prices below minimum average variable cost, Dave shuts down and produces nothing. His supply curve runs along the vertical axis. At a price of $3 a can, Dave is indifferent between shutting down and producing 7 cans a day at the shutdown point (*T*). Either way, he incurs a loss equal to total fixed cost.

So far, we have studied one firm in isolation. We have seen that the firm's profit-maximizing actions depend on the price, which the firm takes as given. In the next section, you'll learn how market supply is determined.

FIGURE 15.5

A Perfectly Competitive Firm's Supply Curve

MyEconLab Animation



Part (a) shows that at $12 a can, Dave produces 11 cans a day; at $8 a can, he produces 10 cans a day; and at $3 a can, he produces either 7 cans a day or nothing. At any price below $3 a can, Dave produces nothing. The minimum average variable cost is the shutdown point.

Part (b) shows Dave's supply curve. At $3 a can, Dave is indifferent between producing the quantity at the shutdown point *T* and not producing. At all prices above $3 a can, Dave's supply curve is made up of the marginal cost curve, in part (a), *above* minimum average variable cost. At all prices below $3 a can, Dave produces nothing and his supply curve runs along the vertical axis.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 15.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 15.1

Explain a perfectly competitive firm's profit-maximizing choices and derive its supply curve.

Practice Problems

1. Sarah's Salmon Farm produced 1,000 fish last week. The marginal cost was $30 a fish, average variable cost was $20 a fish, and the market price was $25 a fish. Did Sarah maximize profit? If Sarah did not maximize profit and if nothing has changed will she increase or decrease the number of fish she produces to maximize her profit this week?

Use the following information to work Problems **2** to **4**.

Trout farming is a perfectly competitive industry and all trout farms have the same cost curves. When the market price is $25 a fish, farms maximize profit by producing 200 fish a week. At this output, average total cost is $20 a fish, and average variable cost is $15 a fish. Minimum average variable cost is $12 a fish.

2. If the price falls to $20 a fish, will a farm produce 200 fish a week?
3. If the price falls to $12 a fish, what will the trout farmer do?
4. What are two points on a trout farm's supply curve?

In the News

BHP Billiton to axe 6,000 jobs
The price of coal has fallen to $125 a ton from $300 a ton. BHP Billiton will cut production, lay off 6,000 workers, and close some mines for six months.

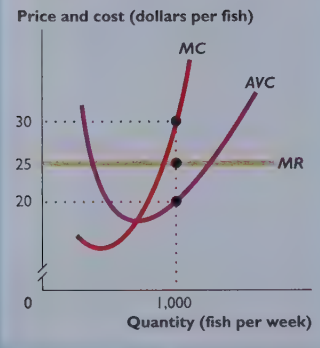
Source: FT.com, January 21, 2009

As BHP responded to the fall in price, how did its marginal cost change? What is minimum average variable cost in the mines that closed?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Profit is maximized when marginal cost equals marginal revenue. In perfect competition, marginal revenue equals the market price and is $25 a fish. Because marginal cost exceeded marginal revenue, Sarah did not maximize profit. To maximize profit, Sarah will decrease her output until marginal cost falls to $25 a fish (Figure 1).
2. The farm will produce fewer than 200 fish a week. The marginal cost curve slopes upward, so to lower marginal cost to $20, the farm cuts production.
3. If the price falls to $12 a fish, farms cut output until marginal cost equals $12. Because $12 a fish is also minimum average variable cost, farms are at the shutdown point—some farms produce the profit-maximizing output and others produce nothing.
4. One point on a farmer's supply curve is 200 fish at $25 a fish. Another point is the shutdown point (solution 3) or zero at a price below $12 a fish.

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

Marginal cost decreased from $300 a ton to $125 a ton. The mines that closed temporarily were at the shutdown point. The price of $125 a ton is equal to or below the firm's minimum average variable cost.

15.2 OUTPUT, PRICE, AND PROFIT IN THE SHORT RUN

Demand and supply determine the price and quantity in a perfectly competitive market. We first study short-run supply when the number of firms is fixed.

Market Supply in the Short Run

The market supply curve in the short run shows the quantity supplied at each price by a fixed number of firms. The quantity supplied at a given price is the sum of the quantities supplied by all firms at that price.

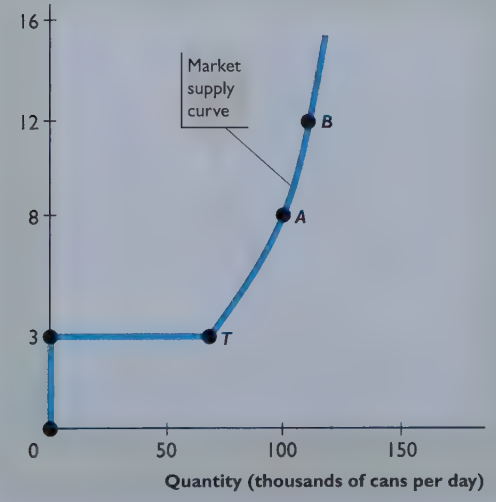
Figure 15.6 shows the supply curve for the competitive syrup market. In this example, the market consists of 10,000 firms exactly like Dave's Maple Syrup. The table shows how the market supply schedule is constructed. The shutdown point occurs at a price of $3 a can. At prices below $3 a can, every firm in the market shuts down; the quantity supplied is zero. At a price of $3 a can, each firm is indifferent between shutting down and producing nothing or operating and producing 7 cans a day. The quantity supplied by each firm is *either* 0 or 7 cans, and the quantity supplied in the market is *between* 0 (all firms shut down) and 70,000 (all firms produce 7 cans a day each). At prices above $3 a can, we sum the quantities supplied by the 10,000 firms, so the quantity supplied in the market is 10,000 times the quantity supplied by one firm.

At prices below $3 a can, the market supply curve runs along the price axis. Supply is perfectly inelastic. At $3 a can, the market supply curve is horizontal. Supply is perfectly elastic. Above $3 a can, the supply curve is upward sloping.

FIGURE 15.6

The Market Supply Curve

MyEconLab Animation



	Price (dollars per can)	Dave's quantity supplied (cans per day)	Market quantity supplied (cans per day)
B	12	11	110,000
A	8	10	100,000
T	3	0 or 7	0 to 70,000

A market with 10,000 identical firms has a supply schedule like that of an individual firm, but the quantity supplied is 10,000 times greater. Market supply is perfectly elastic at the price at which the shutdown point occurs.

Short-Run Equilibrium in Normal Times

Market demand and market supply determine the price and quantity bought and sold. Figure 15.7(a) shows a short-run equilibrium in the syrup market. The market supply curve *S* is the same as that in Figure 15.6.

If the demand curve D_1 shows market demand, the equilibrium price is $5 a can. Although market demand and market supply determine this price, each firm takes the price as given and produces its profit-maximizing output, which is 9 cans a day. Because the market has 10,000 firms, market output is 90,000 cans a day.

Figure 15.7(b) shows the situation that Dave faces. The price is $5 a can, so Dave's marginal revenue is constant at $5 a can. Dave maximizes profit by producing 9 cans a day.

Figure 15.7(b) also shows Dave's average total cost curve (*ATC*). Recall that average total cost is the cost per unit produced. It equals total cost divided by the quantity of output produced.

Here, when Dave produces 9 cans a day, his average total cost is $5 a can, exactly the same as the market price. So Dave sells syrup for exactly the same price as his average cost of production and economic profit is zero.

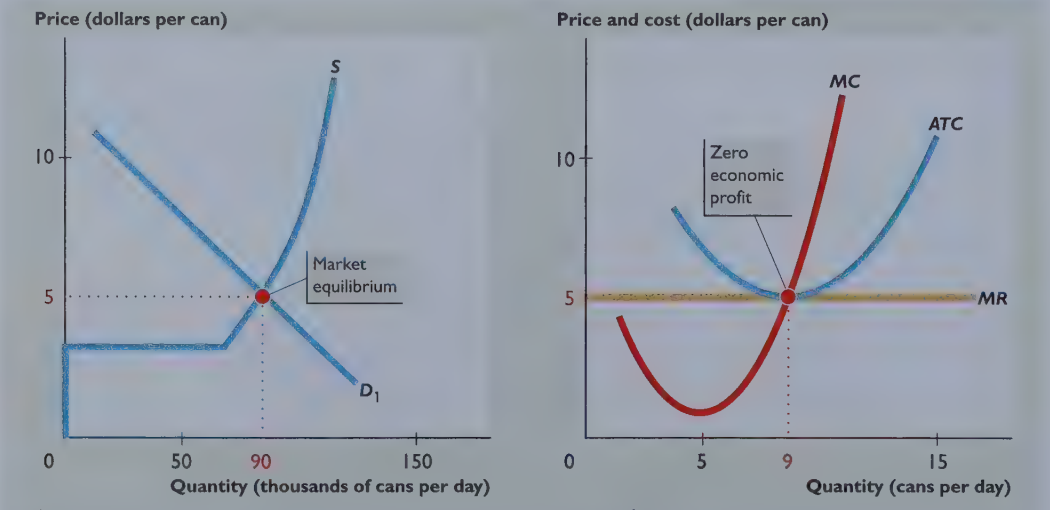
Making zero economic profit means that Dave earns normal profit from running his business.

The short-run equilibrium in which a firm makes zero economic profit is just one of three possible situations. A competitive market might also deliver a positive economic profit or an economic loss. Let's look at these other two cases.

FIGURE 15.7

Zero Economic Profit in the Short Run

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), with market demand curve D_1 and market supply curve *S*, the equilibrium market price is $5 a can.

In part (b), Dave's marginal revenue is $5 a can, so he produces 9 cans a day. At this quantity, price ($5) equals average total cost, so Dave makes zero economic profit.

Short-Run Equilibrium in Good Times

Market demand might be greater or less than D_1 in Figure 15.7 and the price might be higher or lower than $5 a can. Figure 15.8(a) shows another short-run equilibrium in the syrup market. The supply curve *S* is the same as that in Figure 15.6.

If the demand curve D_2 shows market demand, the equilibrium price is $8 a can. Although market demand and market supply determine this price, each firm takes the price as given and produces its profit-maximizing output, which is 10 cans a day. Because the market has 10,000 firms, market output is 100,000 cans a day.

Figure 15.8(b) shows the situation that Dave faces. The price is $8 a can, so Dave's marginal revenue is constant at $8 a can. Dave maximizes profit by producing 10 cans a day.

Figure 15.8(b) also shows Dave's average total cost curve (*ATC*). Recall that average total cost is the cost per unit produced. It equals total cost divided by the quantity of output produced. Here, when Dave produces 10 cans a day, his average total cost is $5.10 a can. So the price of $8 a can exceeds average total cost by $2.90 a can. This amount is Dave's economic profit per can.

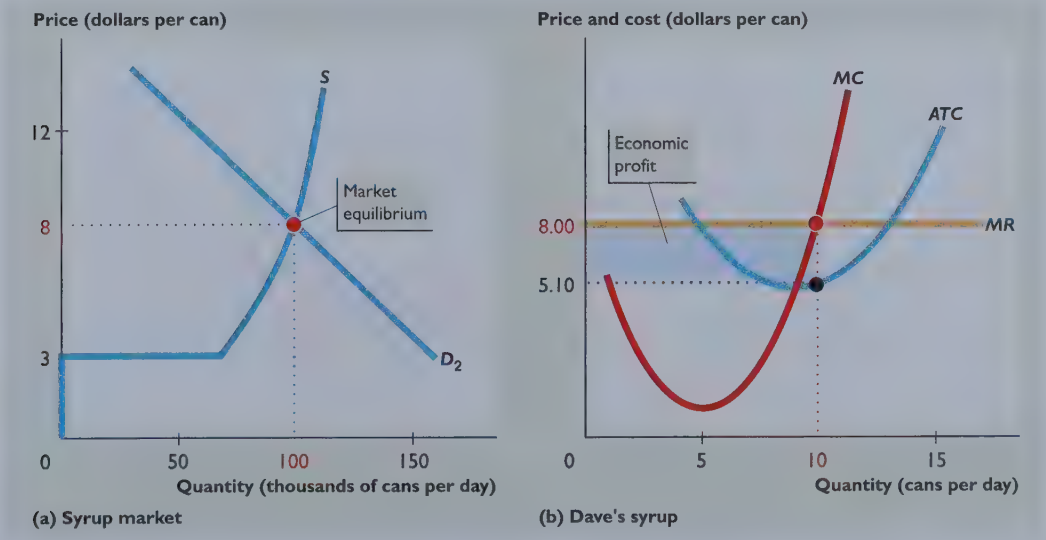
If we multiply the economic profit per can of $2.90 by the number of cans, 10 a day, we arrive at Dave's economic profit, which is $29 a day.

The blue rectangle shows this economic profit. The height of that rectangle is the profit per can, $2.90, and the length is the quantity of cans, 10 a day, so the area of the rectangle (height × length) measures Dave's economic profit of $29 a day.

FIGURE 15.8

Positive Economic Profit in the Short Run

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), with market demand curve D_2 and market supply curve *S*, the equilibrium market price is $8 a can.

In part (b), marginal revenue is $8 a can. Dave produces 10 cans a day. Because price ($8) exceeds average total cost ($5.10), the firm makes a positive economic profit.

Short-Run Equilibrium in Bad Times

Figure 15.9 shows the syrup market in a loss-incurring situation. The market demand curve is now D_3. The market still has 10,000 firms and their costs are the same as before, so the market supply curve, *S*, is also the same as before.

With the demand and supply curves shown in Figure 15.9(a), the equilibrium price of syrup is $3 a can and the equilibrium quantity is 70,000 cans a day.

Figure 15.9(b) shows the situation that Dave faces. The price is $3 a can, so Dave's marginal revenue is constant at $3 a can. Dave maximizes profit by producing 7 cans a day.

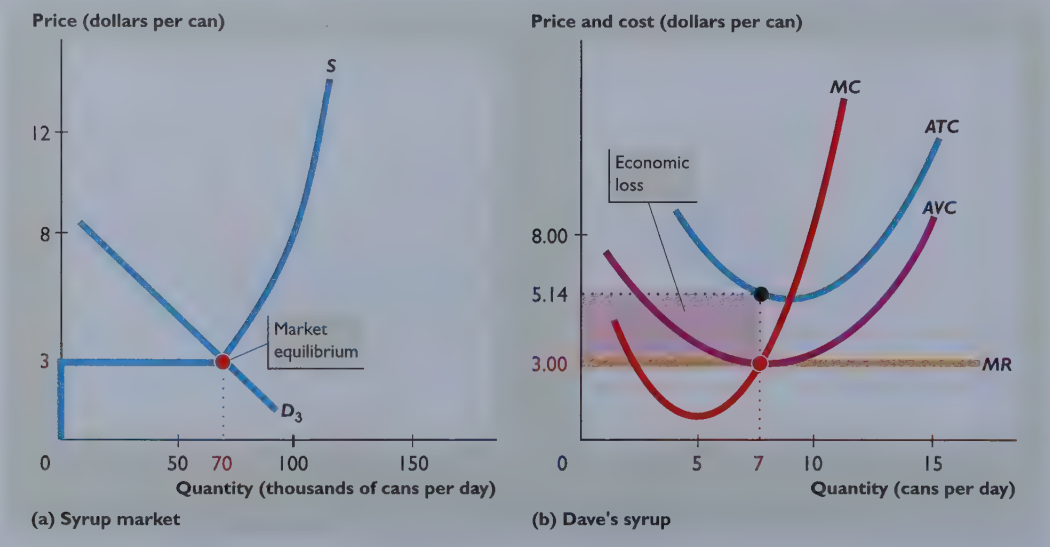
Figure 15.9(b) also shows Dave's average total cost curve (*ATC*), and you can see that when Dave produces 7 cans a day, his average total cost is $5.14 a can. Now the price of $3 a can is less than average total cost by $2.14 a can. This amount is Dave's economic loss per can. If we multiply the economic loss per can of $2.14 by the number of cans, 7 a day, we arrive at Dave's economic loss, which is shown by the red rectangle.

Figure 15.9(b) also shows Dave's average variable cost (*AVC*) curve. Notice that Dave is operating at the shutdown point. Dave might equally well produce no output. Either way, his economic loss would be equal to his total fixed cost. If the price were a bit higher than $3, Dave would still incur an economic loss, but a smaller one. And if the price were lower than $3, Dave would shut down and incur an economic loss equal to total fixed cost.

FIGURE 15.9

Economic Loss in the Short Run

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), with market demand curve D_3 and market supply curve S, the equilibrium market price is $3 a can.

In part (b), Dave's marginal revenue is $3 a can, so he produces 7 cans a day. At this quantity, price ($3) is less than average total cost ($5.14), so Dave incurs an economic loss shown by the red rectangle.

CHECKPOINT 15.2

Explain how output, price, and profit are determined in the short run.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 15.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Tulip growing is perfectly competitive and all growers have the same costs. The market price is $25 a bunch, and each grower maximizes profit by producing 2,000 bunches a week. Average total cost is $20 a bunch, and average variable cost is $15 a bunch. Minimum average variable cost is $12 a bunch.

1. What is the economic profit that each grower is making in the short run?
2. What is the price at the grower's shutdown point?
3. What is each grower's economic profit at the shutdown point?

In the News

Corn hits record high price
Corn prices have surged 80 percent in the past year, driven up by a global rush for grains to feed people and livestock and to make biofuel.

Source: *USA Today*, June 26, 2008

Explain why the price of corn surged. Explain how marginal revenue, the marginal cost of producing corn, and the farm's economic profit changed.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The market price ($25) exceeds the average total cost ($20), so growers make an economic profit of $5 a bunch. Each grower produces 2,000 bunches a week, so a grower's economic profit is $10,000 a week. Figure 1 illustrates the situation. The grower's marginal revenue equals the market price ($25). The grower maximizes profit by producing 2,000 bunches, so at 2,000 bunches the marginal cost curve (*MC*) cuts the marginal revenue curve (*MR*). The average total cost of producing 2,000 bunches is $20, so the *ATC* curve passes through this point. Economic profit equals the area of the blue rectangle.
2. The price at which a grower will shut down temporarily is equal to minimum average variable cost—$12 a bunch (Figure 1).
3. At the shutdown point, the grower incurs an economic loss equal to total fixed cost. Figure 2 shows the data to calculate *TFC*. When 2,000 bunches a week are grown, *ATC* is $20 a bunch and *AVC* is $15 a bunch. $ATC = AFC + AVC$, so *AFC* is $5 a bunch. Total fixed cost equals $10,000 a week—$FTC = AFC \times Q$, $5 a bunch × 2,000 bunches a week. At the shutdown point, the grower incurs an economic loss of $10,000 a week.

FIGURE 1

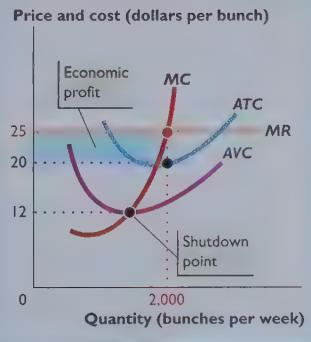
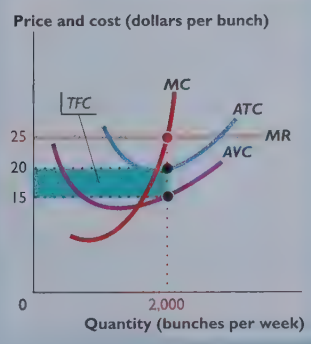


FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

An increase in the market demand for corn increased the market price. The market is competitive, so the farm's marginal revenue (equal to market price) increased. To maximize profit (produce the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost), the farm increases the quantity produced and moves up along its *MC* curve. In the short run, economic profit increases.

15.3 OUTPUT, PRICE, AND PROFIT IN THE LONG RUN

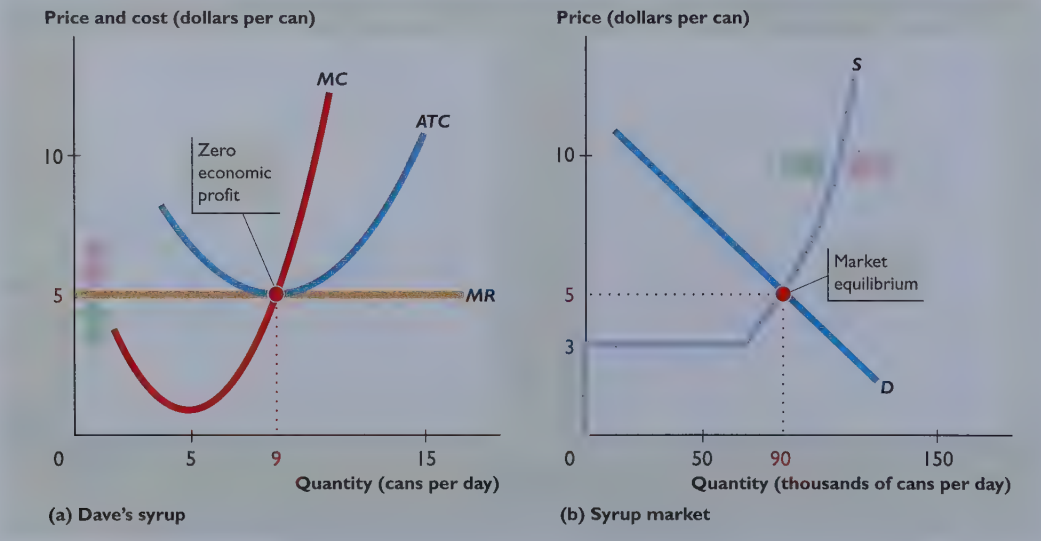
Competitive markets are in a constant state of change. Price, quantity, and economic profit fluctuate as demand and supply change. None of the three situations that we described on the previous pages—normal times, good times, or bad times—last forever in perfect competition. Market forces operate to compete away economic profits and eliminate economic losses to move the price toward the lowest possible price. That price equals minimum average total cost. In the long run, a firm in perfect competition produces at minimum average total cost and makes zero economic profit. (The firm's entrepreneur earns normal profit—part of the firm's total costs.)

Figure 15.10 illustrates a perfectly competitive market in long-run equilibrium and highlights the forces that bring the market to this situation. In Figure 15.10(a), the firm's average total cost curve is *ATC*, and the firm produces at the point of minimum average total cost—9 cans a day at an average total cost of $5 a can. If the price rises above or falls below $5 a can, market forces operate to move the price back toward $5 a can. The arrows pointing toward $5 represent these forces.

In Figure 15.10(b) the market demand curve is *D*. With this market demand, the price equals minimum average total cost only if the market supply curve is *S*. If supply is less than *S* (the supply curve is to the left of *S*), the price is above $5 a can; if supply exceeds *S* (the supply curve is to the right of *S*), the price is below $5 a can. Market forces operate to shift the supply curve back to *S*, and the arrows pointing toward *S* represent these forces.

FIGURE 15.10
Long-Run Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), minimum average total cost is $5 a can. In long-run equilibrium, the price and marginal revenue are pulled to this level. The firm makes zero economic profit.

In part (b), if the price is above $5 a can, above minimum *ATC* in part (a), supply increases and the price falls. If the price is below $5, supply decreases and the price rises.

Entry and Exit

Entry and exit are the market forces that shift the supply curve and move the price to minimum average total cost in the long run. In the short run, firms might make a positive economic profit (as in Figure 15.8) or incur an economic loss (as in Figure 15.9). But in the long run, firms makes zero economic profit.

In the long run, firms respond to economic profit and economic loss by either entering or exiting a market. New firms enter a market in which the existing firms are making economic profits, and some existing firms exit a market in which firms are incurring economic losses. Temporary economic profit or temporary economic loss, like a win or loss at a casino, does not trigger entry and exit. But the prospect of persistent economic profit or economic loss does.

Entry and exit influence the market price, the quantity produced, and economic profit. The immediate effect of the decision to enter or exit a market is to shift the market supply curve. If more firms enter a market, supply increases and the market supply curve shifts rightward. If some firms exit a market, supply decreases and the market supply curve shifts leftward.

Let's see what happens when new firms enter a market.

The Effects of Entry

Figure 15.11 shows the effects of entry. Initially, the market is in long-run equilibrium. Demand is D_0, supply is S_0, the price is \$5 a can, and the quantity is 90,000 cans a day. A surge in the popularity of syrup increases demand, and the demand curve shifts to D_1. The price rises to \$8 a can, and firms in the syrup market increase output to 100,000 cans a day and make an economic profit.

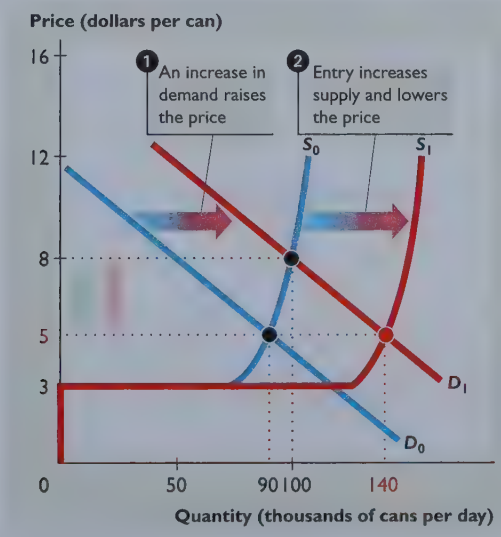
Times are good for syrup producers like Dave, so other potential syrup producers want some of the action. New firms begin to enter the market. As they do

With the prospect of economic profit, a new business opens.

FIGURE 15.11

The Effects of Entry

MyEconLab Animation



Starting in long-run equilibrium, ❶ demand increases and the market demand curve shifts from D_0 to D_1. The price rises from \$5 to \$8 a can.

Economic profit brings entry. ❷ As firms enter the market, the market supply curve shifts rightward, from S_0 to S_1. The equilibrium price falls from \$8 to \$5 a can, and the quantity produced increases from 100,000 to 140,000 cans a day.

so, supply increases and the market supply curve shifts rightward to S_1. With the greater market supply and unchanged market demand, the market price falls from $8 to $5 a can and the equilibrium quantity increases to 140,000 cans a day.

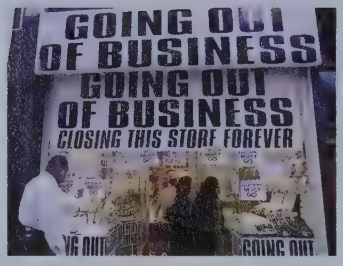
Market output increases, but because the price falls, Dave and the other producers decrease output. As the price falls, each firm's output gradually returns to its original level. Because the number of firms in the market increases, the market as a whole produces more.

As the price falls, each firm's economic profit decreases. When the price falls to $5 a can, economic profit disappears and each firm makes zero economic profit. The entry process stops, and the market is again in long-run equilibrium.

You have just discovered a key proposition:

Economic profit is an incentive for new firms to enter a market, but as they do so, the price falls and the economic profit of each existing firm decreases.

The Effects of Exit



Economic loss brings exit.

Figure 15.12 shows the effects of exit. Again we begin on demand curve D_0 and supply curve S_0 in long-run equilibrium. Now suppose that the development of a new high-nutrition, low-fat breakfast food decreases the demand for pancakes, and as a result, the demand for maple syrup decreases. The demand curve shifts from D_0 to D_2. Firms' costs are the same as before, so the market supply curve is S_0.

With demand at D_2 and supply at S_0, the price falls to $3 a can and 70,000 cans a day are produced. The firms in the syrup market incur economic losses.

Times are tough for syrup producers, and Dave must seriously think about leaving his dream business and finding some other way of making a living. But other producers are in the same situation as Dave, and some start to exit the market while Dave is still thinking through his options.

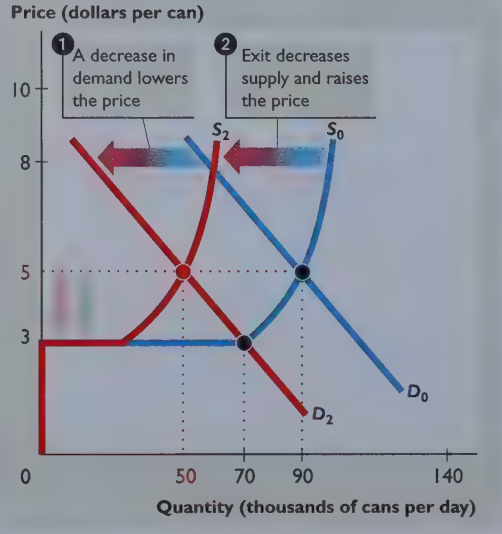
FIGURE 15.12

The Effects of Exit

MyEconLab Animation

Starting in long-run equilibrium, ❶ demand decreases and the market demand curve shifts from D_0 to D_2. The price falls from $5 to $3 a can.

Economic loss brings exit. ❷ As firms exit the market, the market supply curve shifts leftward, from S_0 to S_2. The equilibrium price rises from $3 to $5 a can, and the quantity produced decreases from 70,000 to 50,000 cans a day.



As firms exit, the market supply curve shifts leftward to S_2. With the decrease in market supply, output decreases from 70,000 to 50,000 cans and the market price rises from $3 to $5 a can.

As the price rises, Dave and each other firm that remains in the market move up along their supply curves and increase output. That is, for each firm that remains in the market, the profit-maximizing output *increases*. As the price rises and each firm sells more, economic loss decreases. When the price rises to $5 a can, each firm makes a zero economic profit. Dave earns normal profit (part of the firm's total cost) and he is happy that he can still make a living producing syrup.

You have just discovered a second key proposition:

Economic loss is an incentive for firms to exit a market, but as they do so, the price rises and the economic loss of each remaining firm decreases.

Change in Demand

Initially, a competitive market is in long-run equilibrium and the firms are making zero economic profit (and entrepreneurs are earning normal profit). Now market demand increases. The market price rises, firms increase production to keep marginal cost equal to price, and firms make an economic profit. The market is now in short-run equilibrium but not in long-run equilibrium.

Economic profit is an incentive for new firms to enter the market. As firms enter, market supply increases and the market price falls. With a lower price, firms decrease output to keep marginal cost equal to price.

Notice that as firms enter the market, market output increases, but each firm's output decreases. Eventually, enough firms enter to eliminate economic profit and the market returns to long-run equilibrium.

The key difference between the initial long-run equilibrium and the new long-run equilibrium is the number of firms. A permanent increase in demand increases the number of firms. Each firm produces the same output in the new long-run equilibrium as initially and makes zero economic profit. In the process of moving from the initial equilibrium to the new one, firms make economic profits.

The demand for airline travel in the world economy increased during the 1990s, and the deregulation of the airlines freed up firms to seek profit opportunities in this market. The result was a massive rate of entry of new airlines. The process of competition and change in the airline market were similar to what we have just studied.

A decrease in demand triggers a similar response, except in the opposite direction. The decrease in demand brings a lower price, economic loss, and exit. Exit decreases market supply, raises the price, and eliminates the economic loss.

Technological Change

Firms are constantly discovering lower-cost techniques of production. For example, the cost of producing a personal computer has fallen. So has the cost of producing an MP3 player and other electronic products. Most cost-saving production techniques can be implemented only by investing in a new plant. Consequently, it takes time for a technological advance to spread through an industry. Firms whose plants are on the verge of being replaced are quick to adopt the new technology, while firms whose plants have recently been replaced continue to operate with old

technology until they can no longer cover their average variable cost. Once average variable cost cannot be covered, a firm scraps even a relatively new plant (embodying an old technology) in favor of a plant with a new technology.

New technology lowers cost, so as firms adopt a new technology, their cost curves shift downward. With lower costs, firms are willing to supply a given quantity at a lower price, or, equivalently, they are willing to supply a larger quantity at a given price. In other words, market supply increases, and the market supply curve shifts rightward. With a given demand, the quantity produced increases and the price falls.

Firms that adopt the new technology make an economic profit, so new-technology firms enter. Firms that stick with the old technology incur economic losses, so they either exit or switch to the new technology. As new-technology firms enter and old-technology firms exit, the price falls and the quantity produced increases. Eventually, the market arrives at a long-run equilibrium in

EYE on the AUTO INDUSTRY

Why Did GM Fail?

On June 1, 2009, General Motors filed for bankruptcy protection.

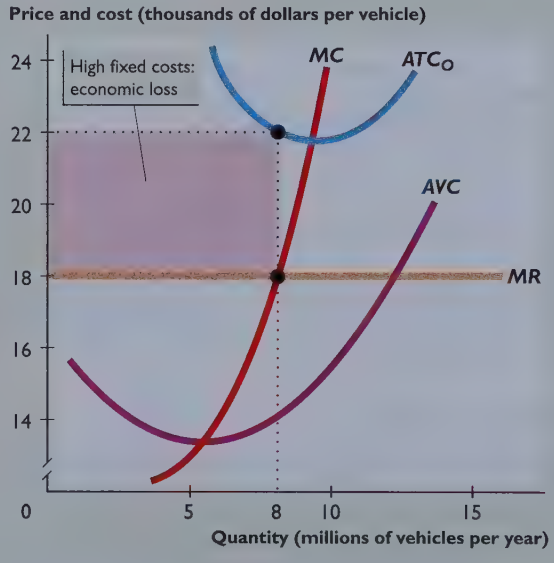
Old GM

GM Chief Executive Officer Fritz Henderson blames GM's failure on the expansion of global competitors who produce at lower costs.

GM's operating costs are both fixed plant costs and variable labor costs. The firm also has "legacy" costs: fixed costs of honoring its pension obligations to its retirees and its debt obligations to its bond holders.

In 2008, (in round numbers) GM produced 8 million vehicles, received a total revenue of $144 billion, had a total cost of $176 billion, and incurred an economic loss of $32 billion. To remain in business, the firm obtained loans from the U.S. and Canadian governments.

The figure shows the situation that old GM faced in 2008. The average price at which it could sell a vehicle was $18,000. To maximize profit (minimize loss), GM sold 8 million vehicles. Average total cost at 8 million vehicles was $22,000, so the economic loss was $4,000 per vehicle. With no prospect of turning this loss around, old GM had no alternative but to exit the industry.



Old GM's Cost and Revenue Curves

which all the firms use the new technology and each firm makes zero economic profit.

Because competition eliminates economic profit in the long run, technological change brings only temporary gains to firms. But the lower prices and better products that technological advances bring are permanent gains for consumers.

The process that we've just described is one in which some firms experience economic profits and others experience economic losses—a period of dynamic change for a market. Some firms do well, and others do badly. Often, the process has a geographical dimension—the expanding new-technology firms bring prosperity to what was once the boondocks, and with old-technology firms going out of business, traditional industrial regions decline. Sometimes, the new-technology firms are in a foreign country, while the old-technology firms are in the domestic economy. The information revolution of the 1990s produced many examples of changes like these. Commercial banking (a competitive but less than perfectly

New GM

On the day old GM filed for bankruptcy, its executives started to talk about the new GM. The firm's "restructuring" Web site reported plans for cost savings and investment in new green technology vehicles.

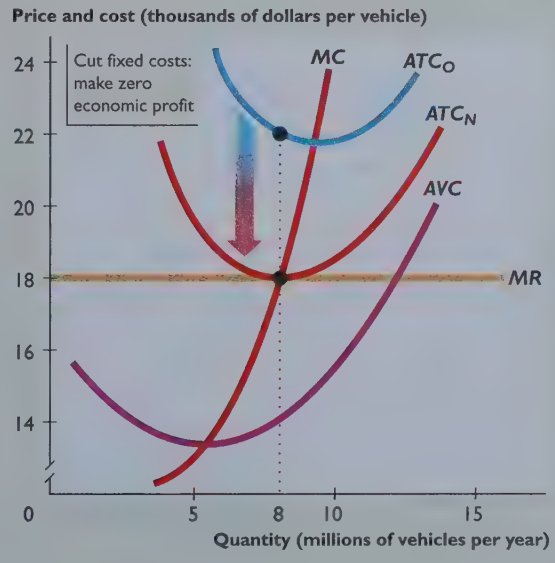
Creating a new profitable GM is a complex and detailed task that will require creative thinking and action by its management team. But one feature of the restructuring is crucial: cutting the fixed legacy costs.

Restructuring GM won't change the market price of vehicles—the global market determines that price. Nor is the restructuring likely to have much effect on the marginal cost of producing a vehicle—technology and factor prices determine marginal cost.

Cutting fixed cost is the only point at which the new GM can have a major impact on its profitability.

The figure (right) shows the minimum that the new GM must do: It must cut fixed cost to shift its *ATC* curve downward from ATC_O to ATC_N. GM can then maximize profit at the same quantity, 8 million vehicles a year, but operate with an average total cost equal to the price of a vehicle and so make zero economic profit.

A bigger cut in fixed cost would enable the new GM to make a positive economic profit. But in the long run as new firms enter the global market, economic profit will likely fall to zero.



New GM's Cost and Revenue Curves

competitive industry), was traditionally concentrated in New York, San Francisco, and other large cities, but now flourishes in Charlotte, North Carolina, which has become the nation's number three commercial banking city. Television shows and movies, traditionally made in Los Angeles and New York, are now made in large numbers in Orlando and Toronto.

Technological advances are not confined to the information and entertainment markets. Food production has seen major technological change, and today, genetic engineering is fueling that change.

Is Perfect Competition Efficient?

Perfect competition is efficient. To see why, first recall the conditions for an efficient allocation of resources. Resources are used efficiently when it is not possible to get more of one good without giving up something that is valued more highly. To achieve this outcome, marginal benefit must equal marginal cost. That is the outcome that perfect competition achieves.

We derive a firm's supply curve in perfect competition from its marginal cost curve. The supply curve is the marginal cost curve at all points above the minimum of average variable cost (the shutdown price). Because the market supply curve is found by summing the quantities supplied by all the firms at each price, the market supply curve is the entire market's marginal cost curve.

The demand curve is the marginal benefit curve. Because the supply curve and demand curve intersect at the equilibrium price, that price equals both marginal cost and marginal benefit.

Figure 15.13 illustrates the efficiency of perfect competition. We've labeled the demand curve $D = MB$ and the supply curve $S = MC$ to remind you that these curves are also the marginal benefit (MB) and marginal cost (MC) curves.

FIGURE 15.13

The Efficiency of Perfect Competition

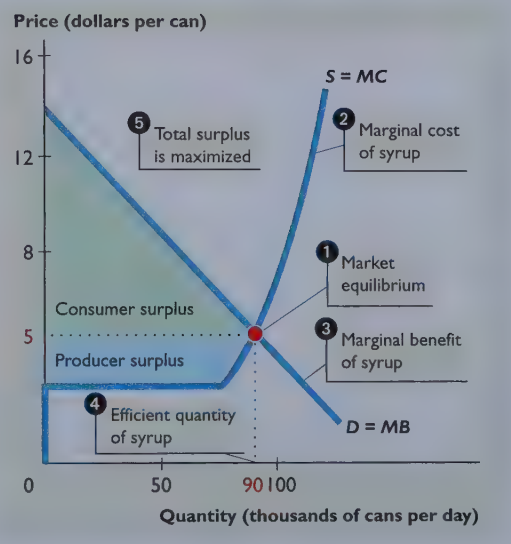
MyEconLab Animation

❶ Market equilibrium occurs at a price of $5 a can and a quantity of 90,000 cans a day.

❷ The supply curve is also the marginal cost curve.

❸ The demand curve is also the marginal benefit curve.

Because at the market equilibrium, marginal benefit equals marginal cost, the ❹ efficient quantity of syrup is produced. ❺ Total surplus (consumer surplus plus producer surplus) is maximized.



These curves intersect at the equilibrium price and quantity. The price equals marginal benefit and marginal cost, and the equilibrium quantity is efficient. The total surplus, which is the sum of consumer surplus and producer surplus, is maximized. Any departure from this outcome is inferior to it and brings an avoidable deadweight loss.

Is Perfect Competition Fair?

You studied the fairness of markets in Chapter 6 (pp. 159–161) and saw that there are two views of fairness: fair rules and fair results. The outcome is fair in the rules view if property rights are enforced and people acquire resources, goods, and services through voluntary exchange. The outcome is fair in the results view if the poorest aren't too poor and the richest aren't too rich, but there is no unique criterion for determining what is too poor or too rich.

In the short run, if a temporary shortage occurs in a competitive market, perhaps caused by bad weather or natural disaster, the price shoots upward. In such situations, some people might make large windfall gains and others, possibly a majority, might be confronted with high prices for essential items. In the fair results view, such a situation might be considered unfair.

But perfect competition in the long run seems to be fair on both views of fairness. It places no restrictions on anyone's actions, all trade is voluntary, consumers pay the lowest possible prices, and entrepreneurs earn only normal profit.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

The Perfect Competition that You Encounter

Many of the markets that you encounter every day are highly competitive and almost perfectly competitive. And while you don't run into perfect competition on a daily basis, you do have dealings in some perfectly competitive markets. Two of those markets are the Internet auctions organized by eBay and one of its subsidiaries, StubHub.

If you have a ticket for a game between the Giants and the Braves but can't use it, you can sell it on StubHub for the going market price (minus a commission). And if you're desperate to see the game but missed out on getting a ticket, you can buy one for the going price (plus a commission) on the same Web site.

StubHub takes a commission and makes a profit. But competition between StubHub, TicketMaster, and other ticket brokers ensure that profits are competed away in the long run, with entrepreneurs earning normal profit.

Just about every good or service that you buy and take for granted, no matter where you buy it, is available because of the forces of competition. Your home, your food, your clothing, your books, your DVDs, your MP3 files, your computer, your bike, your car, . . . ; the list is endless. No one organizes all the magic that enables you to buy this vast array of products. Competitive markets and entrepreneurs striving to make the largest possible profit make it happen.

When either demand or technology changes and makes the current allocation of resources the wrong one, the market swiftly and silently acts. It sends signals to entrepreneurs that bring entry and exit and a new and efficient use of scarce resources.

It is no exaggeration or hype to say that your entire life is influenced by and benefits immeasurably from the forces of competition. Adam Smith's invisible hand might be hidden from view, but it is enormously powerful.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 15.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 15.3

Explain how output, price, and profit are determined in the long run and explain why perfect competition is efficient.

Practice Problems

Tulip growing is a perfectly competitive industry, and all tulip growers have the same cost curves. The market price of tulips is $15 a bunch, and each grower maximizes profit by producing 1,500 bunches a week. The average total cost of producing tulips is $21 a bunch. Minimum average variable cost is $12 a bunch, and the minimum average total cost is $18 a bunch.

1. What is a tulip grower's economic profit in the short run and how does the number of tulip growers change in the long run?
2. In the long run, what is the price and the tulip grower's economic profit?

In the News

Cotton farmers face a formidable foe

The growing season has just begun and pigweed is spreading quickly, towering above the plants, and crowding out sunlight. This new breed of pigweed is resistant to herbicides. Scientists estimate that thousands of acres have already been plowed back, and that it could cost $20 an acre to fend off the weed.

Source: *USA Today*, July 18, 2008

How will the cost of growing cotton change? What effect will this weed have on the cotton market in the short run? How will the cotton market change in the long run?

FIGURE 1

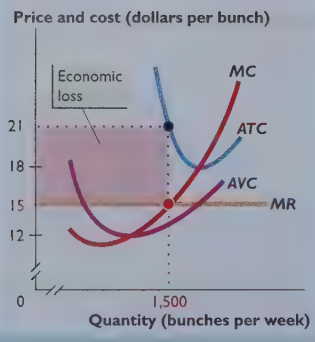
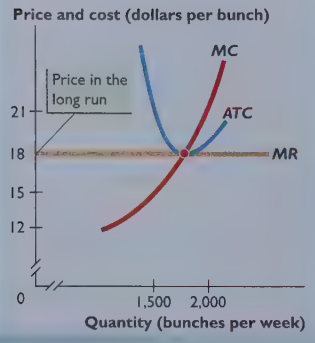


FIGURE 2



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The price is less than average total cost, so the tulip grower is incurring an economic loss in the short run. Because the price exceeds minimum average variable cost, the tulip grower continues to produce. The economic loss equals the loss per bunch ($21 minus $15) multiplied by the number of bunches (1,500), which equals $9,000 (Figure 1).
   Because tulip growers are incurring economic losses, some growers will exit in the long run. The number of tulip growers will decrease.
2. In the long run, the price will be such that economic profit is zero. That is, as growers exit, the price will rise until it equals minimum average total cost. The long-run price will be $18 a bunch (Figure 2).
   A tulip grower's economic profit in the long run will be zero because average total cost equals price (Figure 2).

Solution to In the News

To produce any cotton, farms will have to incur a cost of $20 an acre. This cost is a fixed cost, so the farm's marginal cost does not change. With acres of cotton already plowed back, the market supply of cotton will decrease in the short run and the market price will rise. To maximize profit, farms produce the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost. With a higher price and no change in marginal cost, farms with a crop will make positive economic profit. In the long run, farms will grow more cotton and the market price will fall until all farms are making zero economic profit.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain a perfectly competitive firm's profit-maximizing choices and derive its supply curve.

- A perfectly competitive firm is a price taker.
- Marginal revenue equals price.
- The firm produces the output at which price equals marginal cost.
- If price is less than minimum average variable cost, the firm temporarily shuts down.
- A firm's supply curve is the upward-sloping part of its marginal cost curve at all prices at or above minimum average variable cost (the shut-down point) and the vertical axis at all prices below minimum average variable cost.

2 Explain how output, price, and profit are determined in the short run.

- Market demand and market supply determine price.
- Firms choose the quantity to produce that maximizes profit, which is the quantity at which marginal cost equals price.
- In short-run equilibrium, a firm can make a positive economic profit, make zero economic profit, or incur an economic loss.

3 Explain how output, price, and profit are determined in the long run and explain why perfect competition is efficient.

- Economic profit induces entry, which increases market supply and lowers price and profit. Economic loss induces exit, which decreases market supply, raises price, and lowers the losses.
- In the long run, economic profit is zero and there is no entry or exit.
- An increase in demand increases the number of firms and increases the equilibrium quantity.
- An advance in technology that lowers the cost of producing a good increases market supply, lowers the price, and increases the quantity.
- Perfect competition is efficient because it makes marginal benefit equal marginal cost, and it is fair because trade is voluntary, consumers pay the lowest possible prices, and entrepreneurs earn normal profit.

Key Terms

Marginal revenue, 373
Monopolistic competition, 372
Monopoly, 372
Oligopoly, 372
Perfect competition, 372
Price taker, 373
Shutdown point, 377

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 15 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. In what type of market is each good or service in the following list sold? Explain your answers.
   - Wheat
   - Jeans
   - Printer cartridges
   - Toothpaste
   - Gym membership in a town with one gym
2. Explain why in a perfectly competitive market, the firm is a price taker. Why can't the firm choose the price at which it sells its good?
3. Table 1 shows the demand schedule for Lin's Fortune Cookies. Calculate Lin's marginal revenue for each quantity demanded. Compare Lin's marginal revenue and price. In what type of market does Lin's Fortune Cookies operate?

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per batch)	Quantity demanded (batches per day)
50	0
50	1
50	2
50	3
50	4
50	5
50	6

Table 1 shows the demand schedule for Lin's Fortune Cookies. Table 2 shows some cost data for Lin's. Use this information to work Problems 4 to 7. (Hint: Make a sketch of Lin's short-run cost curves.)

4. At a market price of $50 a batch, what quantity does Lin's produce and what is the firm's economic profit in the short run?
5. At a market price of $35.20 a batch, what quantity does Lin's produce and what is the firm's economic profit in the short run?
6. Create Lin's short-run supply schedule and make a graph of Lin's short-run supply curve. Explain why only part of Lin's short-run supply curve is the same as its marginal cost curve.
7. At a market price of $83 a batch, what quantity does Lin's produce and what is the firm's economic profit in the short run? Do firms enter or exit the market and what is Lin's economic profit in the long run?

TABLE 2

Quantity (batches per day)	AFC	AVC	ATC	MC
	(dollars per batch)			
1	84.0	51.0	135	
				37
2	42.0	44.0	86	
				29
3	28.0	39.0	67	
				27
4	21.0	36.0	57	
				32
5	16.8	35.2	52	
				40
6	14.0	36.0	50	
				57
7	12.0	39.0	51	
				83
8	10.5	44.5	55	

Use the following information to work Problems 8 to 10.

Maple-syrup makers strike gold

Sugaring season in Vermont is going full blast. Vermont, the biggest U.S. syrup producer, produces about 500,000 gallons a year. In 2007, maple syrup cost an average of $35 a gallon; this year, the price is $45 a gallon. Canada is usually a huge producer, but with a poor season it has seen a 30 percent drop in production. As consumers turn to natural and organic products and buy locally made food, demand for maple syrup has rocketed.

Source: *USA Today*, March 30, 2009

8. Draw a graph to describe the maple syrup market and the cost and revenue of one firm in 2007, assuming that all firms are making zero economic profit.
9. Starting with the industry in long-run equilibrium, explain how the drop in the Canadian supply, other things remaining the same, affects the maple syrup market and an individual producer in the short run.
10. Starting with the industry in long-run equilibrium, explain how the increase in the demand for maple syrup, other things remaining the same, affects the maple syrup market and an individual producer in the short run.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Why did old GM file for bankruptcy?
2. How will the new GM overcome the problems of the old GM?
3. In what type of market is each of the following goods and services sold? Explain your answers.
   - Breakfast cereals
   - Cell phones
   - The only restaurant in a small town
   - Oranges
   - Cable TV in a town with one cable company
4. Suppose that the restaurant industry is perfectly competitive. Joe's Diner is always packed in the evening but rarely has a customer at lunchtime. Why doesn't Joe's Diner close—temporarily shut down—at lunchtime?

Use the following information to work Problems 5 to 7.

Figure 1 shows the short-run cost curves of a toy producer. The market has 1,000 identical producers and Table 1 shows the market demand schedule for toys.

5. At a market price of $21 a toy, what quantity does the firm produce in the short run and does the firm make a positive economic profit, a zero economic profit, or an economic loss?
6. At a market price of $12 a toy, how many toys does the firm produce and what is its economic profit in the short run? How will the number of firms in the market change in the long run?
7. At what market prices would the firm shut down temporarily? What is the market price of a toy in long-run equilibrium? How many firms will be in the toy market in the long run? Explain your answer.

FIGURE 1

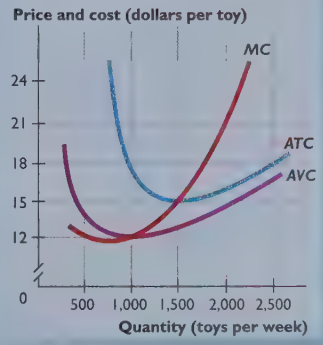


TABLE 1

Price (dollars per toy)	Quantity demanded (thousands of toys per week)
24	1,000
21	1,500
18	2,000
15	2,500
12	3,000

Use the following information to work Problems 8 and 9.

California plans to crack down on the use of fumigants by growers of strawberries. The biggest burden will fall on Ventura County's growers, who produce about 90 percent of the nation's crop.

8. Draw graphs of the U.S. strawberry market in long-run equilibrium before the pollution crackdown: one of the U.S. market and one of a California grower. Now show the short-run effects of the pollution crackdown.
9. On the graph, show the long-run effects of the pollution crackdown.

Use the following information to work Problems 10 and 11.

Big drops in prices for crops make it tough down on the farm

Corn, soybean, and wheat prices have fallen roughly 50 percent from the historic highs of earlier this year. With better-than expected crop yields, world grain production will rise nearly 5 percent this year. Grain prices have also become more closely tied to oil prices because of the growing corn-based ethanol industry.

Source: *USA Today*, October 23, 2008

10. Why did grain prices fall in 2008? Draw a graph to show that short-run effect on an individual farmer's economic profit.
11. Explain the effect of the falling oil price on the market for ethanol. If the price of oil remains low for some years, what will be the long-run effects on the market for ethanol and the number of ethanol producers?

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 15 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. In perfect competition, all the following situations arise *except* _____.
   A. firms produce an identical good or service
   B. each firm chooses the price at which to sell the good it produces
   C. firms can sell any quantity they choose to produce at the market price
   D. buyers know each seller's price

2. A firm that is producing the quantity at which marginal cost exceeds both average total cost and the market price will increase its economic profit by _____.
   A. producing a larger quantity
   B. raising the price to equal marginal cost
   C. producing a smaller quantity
   D. producing the quantity that minimizes average total cost

3. A firm will shut down in the short run if at the profit-maximizing quantity, _____.
   A. total revenue is less than total cost
   B. marginal revenue is less than average fixed cost
   C. average total cost exceeds the market price
   D. marginal revenue is less than average variable cost

4. In the short run, the profit-maximizing firm will _____.
   A. break even if marginal revenue equals marginal cost
   B. make an economic profit if marginal cost is less than average total cost
   C. incur an economic loss if average fixed cost exceeds marginal revenue
   D. incur an economic loss if average total cost exceeds marginal revenue

5. A firm's short-run supply curve is the same as _____ if it produces the good.
   A. its marginal revenue curve
   B. the upward-sloping part of its marginal cost curve
   C. its marginal cost curve above minimum average variable cost
   D. its marginal cost curve above minimum average total cost

6. A permanent increase in demand _____ economic profit in the short run and some firms will ____ in the long run.
   A. does not change; exit the market
   B. increases; enter the market
   C. increases; raise their price
   D. does not change; advertise their good

7. Perfect competition is efficient because all the following conditions hold *except* _____.
   A. total product is maximized
   B. firms maximize profit and produce on their supply curves
   C. consumers get a real bargain and pay a price below the value of the good
   D. firms minimize their average total cost of producing the good

Are Microsoft's prices too high?

16

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

Monopoly

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain how monopoly arises and distinguish between single-price monopoly and price-discriminating monopoly.
2. Explain how a single-price monopoly determines its output and price.
3. Compare the performance of a single-price monopoly with that of perfect competition.
4. Explain how price discrimination increases profit.
5. Explain why natural monopoly is regulated and the effects of regulation.

16.1 MONOPOLY AND HOW IT ARISES

Monopoly
A market in which one firm sells a good or service that has no close substitutes and a barrier blocks the entry of new firms.

A **monopoly** is a market in which one firm sells a good or service that has no close substitutes and in which a barrier to entry prevents competition from new firms.

Markets for local telephone service, gas, electricity, and water are examples of local monopoly. GlaxoSmithKline has a monopoly on AZT, a drug that is used to treat AIDS. DeBeers, a South African firm, controls 80 percent of the world's production of raw diamonds—close to being a monopoly but not quite one.

The market for diamonds is close to being a monopoly.

How Monopoly Arises

Monopoly arises when there are

- No close substitutes
- A barrier to entry

No Close Substitutes

If a good has a close substitute, even though only one firm produces it, that firm effectively faces competition from the producers of substitutes. Water supplied by a local public utility is an example of a good that does not have close substitutes. While it does have a close substitute for drinking—bottled spring water—it has no effective substitutes for doing the laundry, taking a shower, or washing a car.

The availability of close substitutes isn't static. Technological change can create substitutes and weaken a monopoly. For example, the creation of courier services such as UPS and the development of the fax machine and e-mail provide close substitutes for the mail-carrying services provided by the U.S. Postal Service and have weakened its monopoly. Broadband fiber-optic phone lines and satellite dishes have weakened the monopoly of cable television companies.

The arrival of a new product can also create a monopoly. For example, the technologies of the information age have provided opportunities for Google and Microsoft to become near monopolies in their markets.

A Barrier to Entry

Barrier to entry
Any constraint that protects a firm from competitors.

Any constraint that protects a firm from the arrival of new competitors is a **barrier to entry.** There are three types of barrier to entry:

- Natural
- Ownership
- Legal

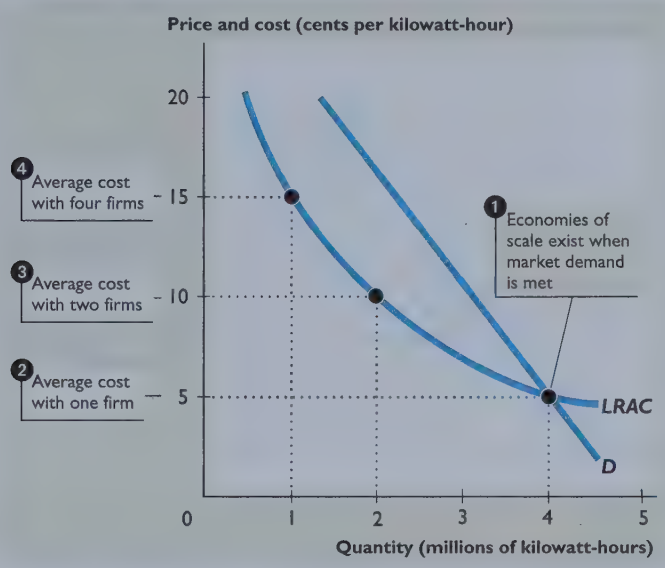
Natural monopoly
A monopoly that arises because one firm can meet the entire market demand at a lower average total cost than two or more firms could.

Natural Barrier to Entry A **natural monopoly** exists when the technology for producing a good or service enables one firm to meet the entire market demand at a lower average total cost than two or more firms could. One electric power distributor can meet the market demand for electricity at a lower cost than two or more firms could. Imagine two or more sets of wires running to your home so that you could choose your electric power supplier.

Figure 16.1 illustrates a natural monopoly in the distribution of electric power. Here, the demand curve for electric power is *D*, and the long-run average cost curve is *LRAC*. Economies of scale prevail over the entire length of this *LRAC* curve, indicated by the fact that the curve slopes downward. One firm can produce 4 million kilowatt-hours at 5¢ a kilowatt-hour. At this price, the quantity

FIGURE 16.1
Natural Monopoly

MyEconLab Animation



The demand curve for electric power is *D*, and the long-run average cost curve is *LRAC*.

❶ Economies of scale exist over the entire *LRAC* curve.

One firm can distribute 4 million kilowatt-hours at a ❷ cost of 5¢ a kilowatt-hour.

Two firms can distribute this same total output at a ❸ cost of 10¢ a kilowatt-hour.

Four firms can distribute this same total output at a ❹ cost of 15¢ a kilowatt-hour.

One firm can meet the market demand at a lower cost than two or more firms can, and the market is a natural monopoly.

demanded is 4 million kilowatt-hours. So if the price was 5¢ a kilowatt-hour, one firm could supply the entire market. If two or more firms shared the market, average total cost would be higher.

To see why the situation shown in Figure 16.1 creates a barrier to entry, think about what would happen if a second firm tried to enter the market. Such a firm would find it impossible to make a profit. If it produced less than the original firm, it would have to charge a higher price and it would have no customers. If it produced the same quantity as the original firm, the price would fall below average total cost for both firms and one of them would be forced out of business. There is room for only one firm in this market.

Ownership Barrier to Entry A monopoly can arise in a market in which competition and entry are restricted by the concentration of ownership of a natural resource. If DeBeers controlled 100 percent of the world's production of raw diamonds, it would be an example of this type of monopoly. There is no natural barrier to entry in diamonds. Even though the diamond is a relatively rare mineral, its sources of supply could have many owners who compete in a global competitive auction market. Only by buying control over all the world's diamonds would DeBeers be able to prevent entry and competition.

Legal Barrier to Entry A legal barrier to entry creates a legal monopoly. A **legal monopoly** is a market in which competition and entry are restricted by the granting of a public franchise, government license, patent, or copyright.

Legal monopoly
A market in which competition and entry are restricted by the granting of a public franchise, government license, patent, or copyright.

A *public franchise* is an exclusive right granted to a firm to supply a good or service, an example of which is the U.S. Postal Service's exclusive right to deliver

first-class mail. A *government license* controls entry into particular occupations, professions, and industries. An example is Michael's Texaco in Charleston, Rhode Island, which is the only firm in the area licensed to test for vehicle emissions.

A *patent* is an exclusive right granted to the inventor of a product or service. A *copyright* is an exclusive right granted to the author or composer of a literary, musical, dramatic, or artistic work. Patents and copyrights are valid for a limited time period that varies from country to country. In the United States, a patent is valid for 20 years. Patents are designed to encourage the *invention* of new products and production methods. They also stimulate *innovation*—the use of new inventions—by encouraging inventors to publicize their discoveries and offer them for use under license. Patents have stimulated innovations in areas as diverse as soybean seeds, pharmaceuticals, memory chips, and video games.

Most monopolies are regulated by government agencies. To understand why governments regulate monopolies and what effects regulations have, we need to know how an unregulated monopoly behaves. So we'll first study an unregulated monopoly and then look at monopoly regulation at the end of this chapter.

A monopoly sets its own price, but in doing so, it faces a market constraint. Let's see how the market limits a monopoly's pricing choices.

Monopoly Price-Setting Strategies

A monopoly faces a tradeoff between price and the quantity sold. To sell a larger quantity, the monopoly must set a lower price. But there are two price-setting possibilities that create different tradeoffs:

- Single price
- Price discrimination

Single Price

Single-price monopoly
A monopoly that must sell each unit of its output for the same price to all its customers.

A **single-price monopoly** is a firm that must sell each unit of its output for the same price to all its customers. DeBeers sells diamonds (of a given size and quality) for the same price to all its customers. DeBeers is a *single-price* monopoly because if it tried to sell at a higher price to some customers than to others, only the low-price customers would buy from DeBeers. The others would buy from DeBeers's low-price customers.

Price Discrimination

Price-discriminating monopoly
A monopoly that sells different units of a good or service for different prices not related to cost differences.

A **price-discriminating monopoly** is a firm that sells different units for different prices not related to cost differences. Many firms price discriminate. Airlines offer a dizzying array of different prices for the same trip. Pizza producers charge one price for a single pizza and almost give away a second one. Different customers might pay different prices (like airfares), or one customer might pay different prices for different quantities bought (like the bargain price for a second pizza).

When a firm price discriminates, it appears to be doing its customers a favor. In fact, it is charging each group of customers the highest price it can get them to pay and is increasing its profit.

Not all monopolies can price discriminate. The main obstacle to the practice of price discrimination is resale by the customers who buy for a low price. Because of resale possibilities, price discrimination is limited to monopolies that sell goods and services that cannot be resold.

CHECKPOINT 16.1

Explain how monopoly arises and distinguish between single-price monopoly and price-discriminating monopoly.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 16.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Use the information about the firms listed below to work Problems **1** and **2**.

- **a** Coca-Cola cuts its price below that of Pepsi-Cola to increase profit.
- **b** A single firm, protected by a barrier to entry, produces a personal service that has no close substitutes.
- **c** A barrier to entry exists, but the good has some close substitutes.
- **d** A museum offers discounts to students and seniors.
- **e** A firm can sell any quantity it chooses at the going price.
- **f** A firm experiences economies of scale even when it produces the quantity that meets the entire market demand.

1. Which of the six cases are monopolies or might give rise to monopoly?
2. Which are legal monopolies and which are natural monopolies? Can any of them price discriminate? If so, why?

In the News

Deal raises monopoly concerns

A deal between United Continental and Air Canada looks like an "effective merger" of all of their Canadian and U.S. operations. The deal would create a monopoly on 10 major high-demand, transborder routes and substantially reduce competition on nine others. Prices would be higher and choice restricted.

Source: CBC News, June 27, 2011

What type of monopoly would be created on the 10 major high-demand routes? With higher prices and restricted choice, what would be the barrier to entry?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Monopoly arises when a single firm produces a good or service that has no close substitutes and a barrier to entry exists. Monopoly arises in **b** and **f**. In **a**, there is more than one firm. In **c**, the good has close substitutes. In **d**, a monopoly might be able to price discriminate, but other types of firms (for example, pizza producers) price discriminate and they are not monopolies. In **e**, the demand for the firm's output is perfectly elastic and there is no limit to what it can sell. This firm operates in a perfectly competitive market.
2. Natural monopoly exists when one firm can meet the entire market demand at a lower price than two or more firms could: **f** is a natural monopoly, but **b** could be. Legal monopoly exists when the granting of a right creates a barrier to entry: **b** might be a legal monopoly. Because a personal service cannot be resold, **b** could price discriminate.

Solution to In the News

This deal would create a legal monopoly on 10 major high-demand, transborder routes. With higher prices,the monopoly might make positive economic profits, which would be an incentive for other airlines to offer service on these routes. The barrier would be the granting of landing slots and boarding gates.

16.2 SINGLE-PRICE MONOPOLY

To understand how a single-price monopoly makes its output and price decisions, we must first study the link between price and marginal revenue.

Price and Marginal Revenue

Because in a monopoly there is only one firm, the demand for the firm's output is the market demand. Let's look at Bobbie's Barbershop, the sole supplier of haircuts in Cairo, Nebraska. The table in Figure 16.2 shows the demand schedule for Bobbie's haircuts. For example, at $12, consumers demand 4 haircuts an hour (row *E*).

Total revenue is the price multiplied by the quantity sold. For example, in row *D*, Bobbie sells 3 haircuts at $14 each, so total revenue is $42. *Marginal revenue* is the change in total revenue resulting from a one-unit increase in the quantity sold. For example, if the price falls from $16 (row *C*) to $14 (row *D*), the quantity sold increases from 2 to 3 haircuts. Total revenue rises from $32 to $42, so the change in total revenue is $10. Because the quantity sold increases by 1 haircut, marginal revenue equals the change in total revenue and is $10. Marginal revenue is placed between the two rows to emphasize that marginal revenue relates to the *change* in the quantity sold.

Figure 16.2 shows the market demand curve and Bobbie's marginal revenue curve (*MR*) and also illustrates the calculation that we've just made. At each output, marginal revenue is less than price—the marginal revenue curve lies below the demand curve because a lower price is received on *all* units sold, not just on the marginal unit. For example, at a price of $16, Bobbie sells 2 haircuts (point *C*). If she lowers the price to $14 a haircut, she sells 3 haircuts and has a revenue gain

FIGURE 16.2

Demand and Marginal Revenue

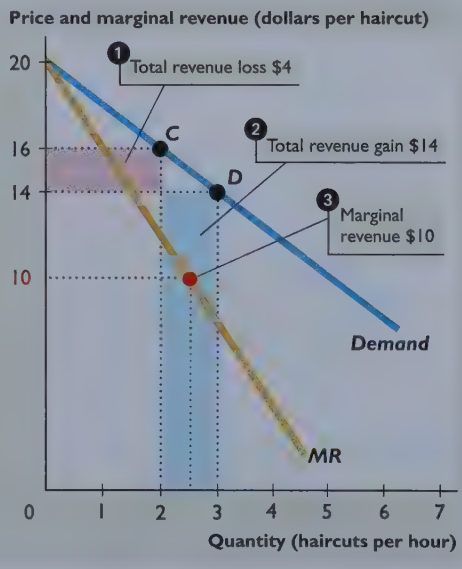
MyEconLab Animation

The table shows the market demand schedule and Bobbie's total revenue and marginal revenue schedules.

If the price falls from $16 to $14, the quantity sold increases from 2 to 3 haircuts.

❶ Total revenue lost on 2 haircuts is $4; ❷ total revenue gained on 1 haircut is $14; and ❸ marginal revenue is $10.

	Price (dollars per haircut)	Quantity demanded (haircuts per hour)	Total revenue (dollars per hour)	Marginal revenue (dollars per haircut)
A	20	0	0	
				18
B	18	1	18	
				14
C	16	2	32	
				10
D	14	3	42	
				6
E	12	4	48	
				2
F	10	5	50	



of $14 on the third haircut. But she now receives only $14 a haircut on the first two—$2 a haircut less than before. So she loses $4 of revenue on the first 2 haircuts. To calculate marginal revenue, she must deduct this amount from the revenue gain of $14. So her marginal revenue is $10, which is less than the price.

Notice that the marginal revenue curve has *twice the slope* of the demand curve. When the price falls from $20 to $10, the quantity demanded increases from zero to 5 but the quantity on the *MR* curve increases from zero to 2.5.

Marginal Revenue and Elasticity

In Chapter 5 (pp. 120–121), you learned about the *total revenue test* for the price elasticity of demand. If a *fall* in price *increases* total revenue, demand is elastic; and if a *fall* in price *decreases* total revenue, demand is inelastic.

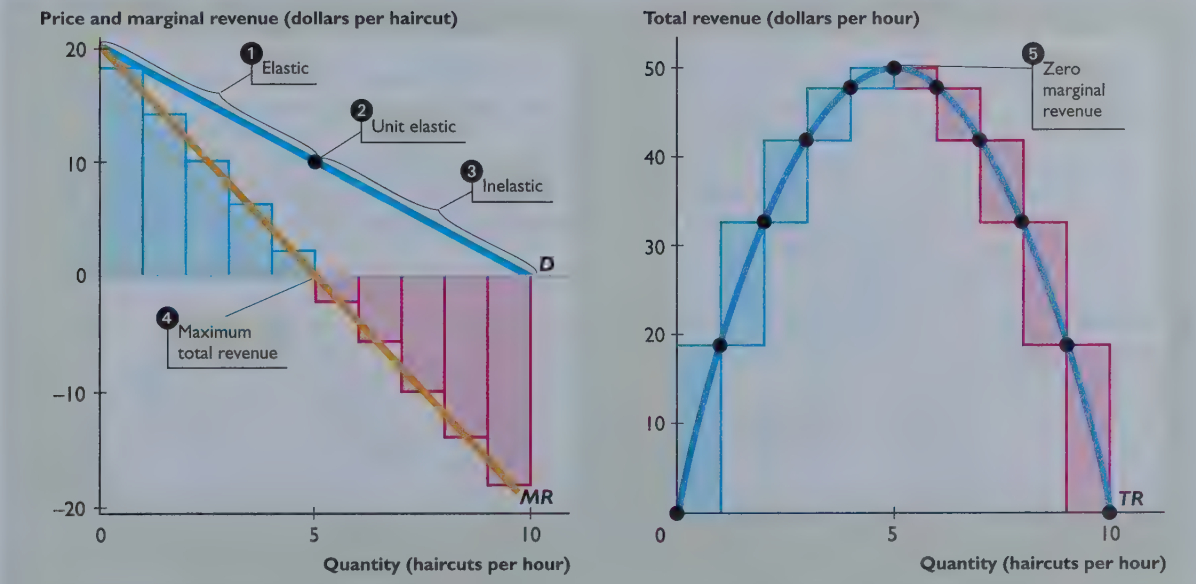
The total revenue test implies that when demand is elastic, marginal revenue is positive and when demand is inelastic, marginal revenue is negative. Figure 16.3 illustrates this relationship between elasticity and marginal revenue.

In part (a) as the price *falls* from $20 to $10, marginal revenue (shown by the blue bars) is *positive* and in part (b) total revenue *increases*, so demand is elastic. In part (a) as the price *falls* from $10 to zero, marginal revenue (the red bars) is *negative* and in part (b), total revenue *decreases*, so demand is *inelastic*. At a price of $10, total revenue is at a maximum, demand is unit elastic, and marginal revenue is zero.

FIGURE 16.3

Marginal Revenue and Elasticity

MyEconLab Animation



As the price falls, if marginal revenue is positive (the blue bars), ❶ demand is elastic; if marginal revenue is zero, ❷ demand is unit elastic; if marginal revenue is negative (the red bars), ❸ demand is inelastic. At zero marginal revenue in part (a), ❹ total revenue is maximized. And at maximum total revenue in part (b), ❺ marginal revenue is zero.

The relationship between marginal revenue and elasticity implies that a monopoly never profitably produces along the inelastic range of its demand curve. If a monopoly did produce along the inelastic range of its demand curve, it could increase total revenue by raising its price and selling a smaller quantity. But by producing less, the firm's total cost would fall and the firm's profit would increase. Let's look at a monopoly's output and price decision.

Output and Price Decision

To determine the output level and price that maximize a monopoly's profit, we study the behavior of both revenue and costs as output varies.

Table 16.1 summarizes the information we need about Bobbie's revenue, costs, and economic profit. Economic profit, which equals total revenue minus total cost, is maximized at $12 an hour when Bobbie sells 3 haircuts an hour for $14 each. If she sold 2 haircuts for $16 each, her economic profit would be only $9. And if she sold 4 haircuts for $12 each, her economic profit would be only $8.

You can see why 3 haircuts is Bobbie's profit-maximizing output by looking at the marginal revenue and marginal cost. When Bobbie increases output from 2 to 3 haircuts, her marginal revenue is $10 and her marginal cost is $7. Profit increases by the difference, $3 an hour. If Bobbie increases output yet further, from 3 to 4 haircuts, her marginal revenue is $6 and her marginal cost is $10. In this case, marginal cost exceeds marginal revenue by $4, so profit decreases by $4 an hour.

Figure 16.4 illustrates the information contained in Table 16.1. Part (a) shows Bobbie's total revenue curve (*TR*) and her total cost curve (*TC*). It also shows Bobbie's economic profit as the vertical distance between the *TR* and *TC* curves. Bobbie maximizes her profit at 3 haircuts an hour and earns an economic profit of $12 an hour ($42 of total revenue minus $30 of total cost).

Figure 16.4 (b) shows the market demand curve (*D*) and Bobbie's marginal revenue curve (*MR*) along with her marginal cost curve (*MC*) and average total cost curve (*ATC*). Bobbie maximizes profit by producing the output at which marginal cost equals marginal revenue—3 haircuts an hour. But what price does she charge for a haircut? To set the price, the monopoly uses the demand curve and finds the highest price at which it can sell the profit-maximizing output. In Bobbie's case, the highest price at which she can sell 3 haircuts an hour is $14 a haircut.

Table 16.1
A Monopoly's Output and Price Decision

	Price (dollars per haircut)	Quantity demanded (haircuts per hour)	Total revenue (dollars per hour)	Marginal revenue (dollars per haircut)	Total cost (dollars per hour)	Marginal cost (dollars per haircut)	Profit (dollars per hour)
A	20	0	0		12		−12
				18		5	
B	18	1	18		17		1
				14		6	
C	16	2	32		23		9
				10		7	
D	14	3	42		30		12
				6		10	
E	12	4	48		40		8
				2		15	
F	10	5	50		55		−5

When Bobbie produces 3 haircuts an hour, her average total cost is $10 (read from the *ATC* curve at the quantity 3 haircuts) and her price is $14 (read from the *D* curve). Her profit per haircut is $4 ($14 minus $10). Bobbie's economic profit is shown by the blue rectangle, which equals the profit per haircut ($4) multiplied by the number of haircuts (3 an hour), for a total of $12 an hour.

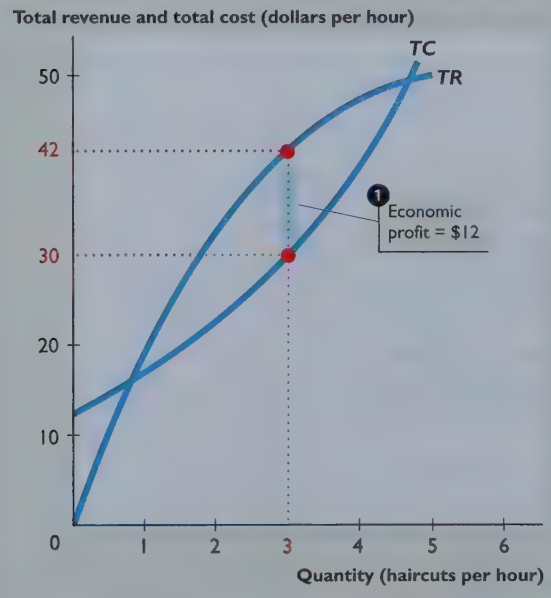
A positive economic profit is an incentive for firms to enter a market. But barriers to entry prevent that from happening in a monopoly. So in a monopoly, the firm can make a positive economic profit and continue to do so indefinitely.

A monopoly charges a price that exceeds marginal cost, but does it always make an economic profit? The answer is no. Bobbie makes a positive economic profit in Figure 16.4. But suppose that Bobbie's landlord increases the rent she pays for her barbershop. If Bobbie pays an additional $12 an hour in shop rent, her fixed cost increases by that amount. Her marginal cost and marginal revenue don't change, so her profit-maximizing output remains at 3 haircuts an hour. Her profit decreases by the additional rent of $12 an hour to zero. If Bobbie pays more than an additional $12 an hour for rent, she incurs an economic loss. If this situation were permanent, Bobbie would go out of business. But monopoly entrepreneurs are creative, and Bobbie might find another shop at a lower rent.

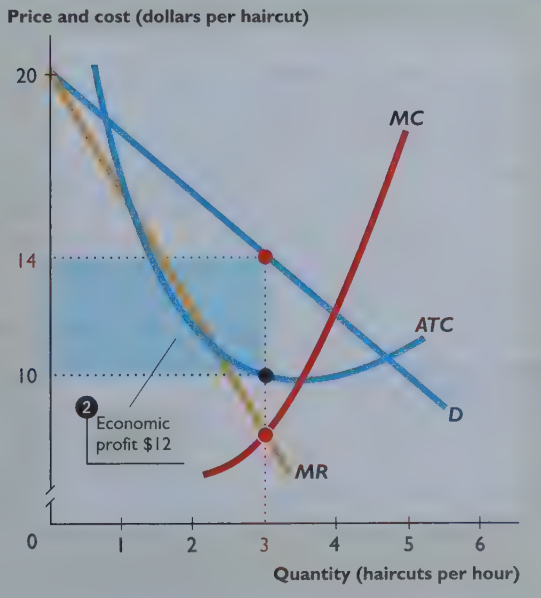
FIGURE 16.4

A Monopoly's Profit-Maximizing Output and Price

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Total revenue and total cost



(b) Demand, marginal revenue, and marginal cost

In part (a), economic profit is maximized when total revenue (*TR*) minus total cost (*TC*) is greatest. ❶ Economic profit, the vertical distance between *TR* and *TC*, is $12 an hour at 3 haircuts an hour.

In part (b), economic profit is maximized when marginal cost (*MC*) equals marginal revenue (*MR*). The price is determined by the demand curve (*D*) and is $14. ❷ Economic profit, the blue rectangle, is $12—the profit per haircut ($4) multiplied by 3 haircuts.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 16.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 16.2

Explain how a single-price monopoly determines its output and price.

Practice Problems

Minnie's Mineral Springs is a single-price monopoly. Table 1 shows the demand schedule for Minnie's spring water (columns 1 and 2) and the firm's total cost schedule (columns 2 and 3).

1. Calculate Minnie's total revenue and marginal revenue schedules.
2. Draw the demand curve and Minnie's marginal revenue curve.
3. Calculate Minnie's profit-maximizing output, price, and economic profit.
4. If Minnie's is hit with a conservation tax of $14 an hour, what are Minnie's new profit-maximizing output, price, and economic profit?

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per bottle)	Quantity (bottles per hour)	Total cost (dollars per hour)
10	0	1
9	1	2
8	2	4
7	3	7
6	4	12
5	5	18

In the News

Comcast offers faster home broadband in some U.S. cities

Comcast, the largest U.S. internet-service provider, introduced a new home-broadband package called Extreme 105, which can download files many times faster than most connections.

Source: CNN, April 14, 2011

How does Comcast determine the price of its broadband service?

Solutions to Practice Problems

TABLE 2

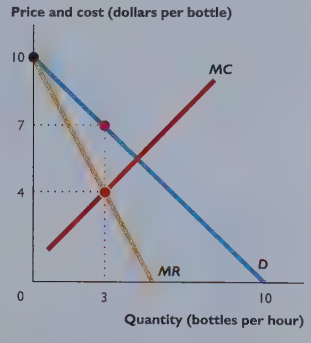
Quantity (bottles per hour)	Total revenue (dollars per hour)	Marginal revenue (dollars per bottle)
0	0	
		9
1	9	
		7
2	16	
		5
3	21	
		3
4	24	
		1
5	25	

TABLE 3

Quantity (bottles per hour)	Total cost (dollars per hour)	Marginal cost (dollars per bottle)
0	1	
		1
1	2	
		2
2	4	
		3
3	7	
		5
4	12	
		7
5	18	

1. Total revenue equals price multiplied by quantity sold. Marginal revenue equals the change in total revenue when the quantity increases by one unit (Table 2).
2. Figure 1 shows the demand curve and Minnie's marginal revenue curve.
3. Marginal cost, *MC*, is the change in total cost when the quantity produced increases by 1 bottle (Table 3). Profit is maximized when $MR = MC$ by producing 3 bottles an hour (Figure 1). The price is $7 a bottle. Economic profit equals total revenue ($21) minus total cost ($7), which is $14 an hour.

FIGURE 1



4. With a conservation tax of $14 an hour, Minnie's fixed cost increases but marginal cost doesn't change, so the profit-maximizing output and price are unchanged. Economic profit is zero.

Solution to In the News

Comcast is the only supplier of broadband service in many cities. Comcast undertakes a marketing survey to estimate the demand for its new faster service. Comcast knows its production costs, so to calculate its total costs it adds its marketing costs. Then Comcast calculates its profit-maximizing quantity of service. From its estimated demand for the service, Comcast calculates the highest price at which it expects it can sell the profit-maximizing quantity of the service.

16.3 MONOPOLY AND COMPETITION COMPARED

Imagine a market in which many small firms operate in perfect competition. Then suppose that a single firm buys out all these small firms and creates a monopoly. What happens in this market to the quantity produced, the price, and efficiency?

Output and Price

Figure 16.5 shows the market that we'll study. The market demand curve is *D*. Initially, with many small firms in the market, the market supply curve is *S*, which is the sum of the supply curves—and marginal cost curves—of the firms. The equilibrium price is P_C, which makes the quantity demanded equal the quantity supplied. The equilibrium quantity is Q_C. Each firm takes the price P_C and maximizes its profit by producing the output at which its own marginal cost equals the price.

A single firm now buys all the firms in this market. Consumers don't change, so the demand curve doesn't change. But the monopoly recognizes this demand curve as a constraint on its sales and knows that its marginal revenue curve is *MR*.

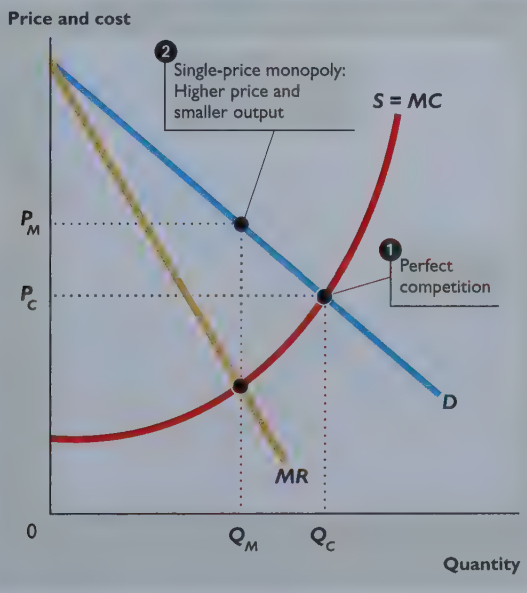
The market supply curve in perfect competition is the sum of the marginal cost curves of the firms in the industry. So the monopoly's marginal cost curve is the market supply curve of perfect competition—labeled $S = MC$. The monopoly maximizes profit by producing the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost, which is Q_M. This output is smaller than the competitive output, Q_C. The monopoly charges the price P_M, which is higher than P_C.

Compared to perfect competition, a single-price monopoly produces a smaller output and charges a higher price.

FIGURE 16.5

Monopoly's Smaller Output and Higher Price

MyEconLab Animation



1. A competitive industry produces the quantity Q_C at price P_C.
2. A single-price monopoly produces the quantity Q_M at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost and sells that quantity for the price P_M. Compared to perfect competition, a single-price monopoly produces a smaller output and raises the price.

Is Monopoly Efficient?

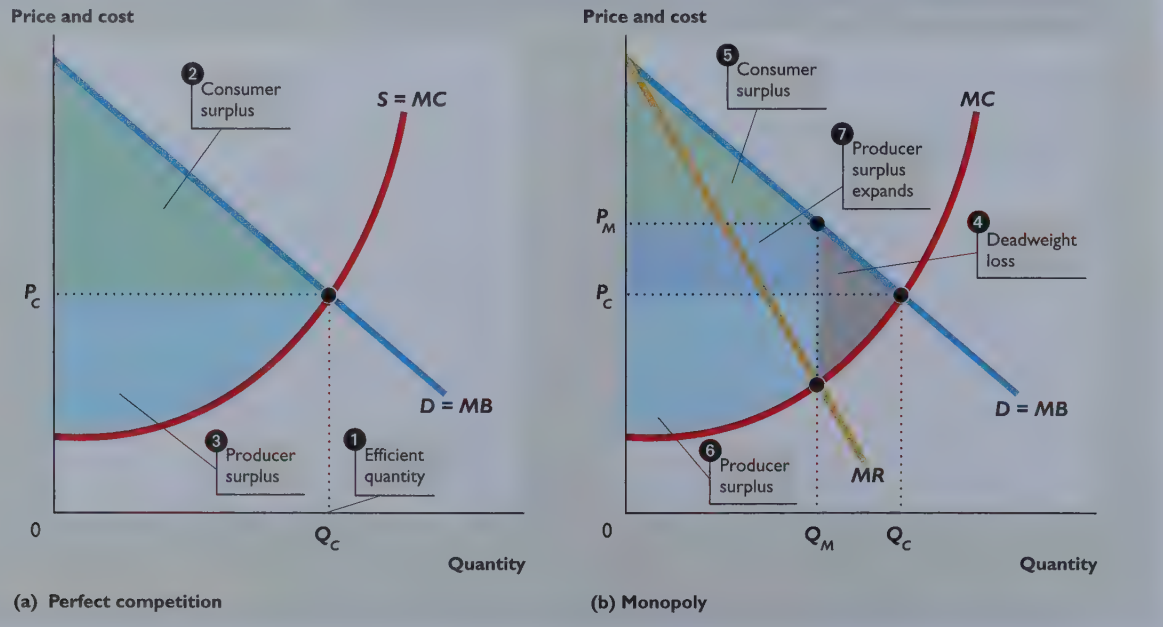
You learned in Chapter 6 that resources are used efficiently when marginal benefit equals marginal cost. Figure 16.6(a) shows that perfect competition achieves this efficient use of resources. The demand curve ($D = MB$) shows the marginal benefit to consumers. The supply curve ($S = MC$) shows the marginal cost (opportunity cost) to producers. At the competitive equilibrium, the price is P_C and the quantity is Q_C. Marginal benefit equals marginal cost, and resource use is efficient. Total surplus (Chapter 6, p. 153), the sum of *consumer surplus*, the green triangle, and *producer surplus*, the blue area, is maximized.

Figure 16.6(b) shows that monopoly is inefficient. Monopoly output is Q_M and price is P_M. Price (marginal benefit) exceeds marginal cost and the underproduction creates a *deadweight loss* (Chapter 6, p. 155), which is shown by the gray area. Consumers lose partly by getting less of the good, shown by the gray triangle above P_C, and partly by paying more for the good. Consumer surplus shrinks to the smaller green triangle. Producers lose by selling less of the good, shown by the part of the gray area below P_C, but gain by selling their output for a higher price, shown by the dark blue rectangle. Producer surplus expands and is larger in monopoly than in perfect competition.

FIGURE 16.6

The Inefficiency of Monopoly

MyEconLab Animation



In perfect competition, ❶ the equilibrium quantity is the efficient quantity, Q_C, because at that quantity the price, P_C, equals marginal benefit and marginal cost. The sum of ❷ consumer surplus and ❸ producer surplus is maximized.

In a single-price monopoly, the equilibrium quantity, Q_M, is inefficient because the price, P_M, which equals marginal benefit, exceeds marginal cost. ❹ A deadweight loss arises. ❺ Consumer surplus shrinks, and ❻ producer surplus expands by the area ❼.

Is Monopoly Fair?

Monopoly is inefficient because it creates a deadweight loss. But monopoly also *redistributes* consumer surplus. The producer gains, and the consumers lose.

Figure 16.6 shows this redistribution. The monopoly gets the difference between the higher price, P_M, and the competitive price, P_C, on the quantity sold, Q_M. So the dark blue rectangle shows the part of the consumer surplus taken by the monopoly. This portion of the loss of consumer surplus is not a loss to society. It is redistribution from consumers to the monopoly producer.

Are the gain for the monopoly and loss for consumers fair? You learned about two standards of fairness in Chapter 6: fair *results* and fair *rules*. Redistribution from the rich to the poor is consistent with the fair results view. So on this view of fairness, whether monopoly redistribution is fair or unfair depends on who is richer: the monopoly or the consumers of its product. It might be either. Whether the *rules* are fair depends on whether the monopoly has benefited from a protected position that is not available to anyone else. If everyone is free to acquire the monopoly, then the rules are fair. So monopoly is inefficient and it might be, but is not always, unfair.

The pursuit of monopoly profit leads to an additional costly activity that we'll now describe: rent seeking.

Rent Seeking

Rent seeking is the lobbying for special treatment from the government to create economic profit or to divert consumer surplus or producer surplus away from others. ("Rent" is a general term in economics that includes all forms of surplus such as consumer surplus, producer surplus, and economic profit.) Rent seeking does not always create a monopoly, but it always restricts competition and often creates a monopoly.

Rent seeking
The lobbying for special treatment from the government to create economic profit or to divert consumer surplus or producer surplus away from others.

Scarce resources can be used to produce the goods and services that people value or they can be used in rent seeking. Rent seeking is potentially profitable for the rent seeker but costly to society because it uses scarce resources purely to transfer wealth from one person or group to another person or group rather than to produce the things that people value.

To see why rent seeking occurs, think about the two ways in which a person might become the owner of a monopoly:

- Buy a monopoly.
- Create a monopoly by rent seeking.

Buy a Monopoly

A person might try to make a monopoly profit by buying a firm (or a right) that is protected by a barrier to entry. Buying a taxicab medallion in New York City is an example. The number of medallions is restricted, so their owners are protected from unlimited entry into the industry. A person who wants to operate a taxi must buy a medallion from someone who already has one.

But anyone is free to enter the bidding for a medallion. So competition among buyers drives the price up to the point at which they make only zero economic profit. For example, competition for the right to operate a taxi in New York City has led to a price of $600,000 for a taxi medallion, which is sufficiently high to eliminate economic profit for taxi operators and leave entrepreneurs with only normal profit.

Create a Monopoly by Rent Seeking

Because buying a monopoly means paying a price that soaks up the economic profit, creating a monopoly by rent seeking is an attractive alternative to buying one. Rent seeking is a political activity. It takes the form of lobbying and trying to influence the political process to get laws that create legal barriers to entry. Such influence might be sought by making campaign contributions in exchange for legislative support or by indirectly seeking to influence political outcomes through publicity in the media or by direct contact with politicians and bureaucrats. An example of a rent created in this way is the law that restricts the quantities of textiles that can be imported into the United States. Another is a law that limits the quantity of tomatoes that can be imported into the United States. These laws restrict competition, which decreases the quantity for sale and increases prices.

Rent-Seeking Equilibrium

Rent seeking is a competitive activity. If an economic profit is available, a rent seeker will try to get some of it. Competition among rent seekers pushes up the cost of rent seeking until it leaves the monopoly earning only a zero economic profit after paying the rent-seeking costs.

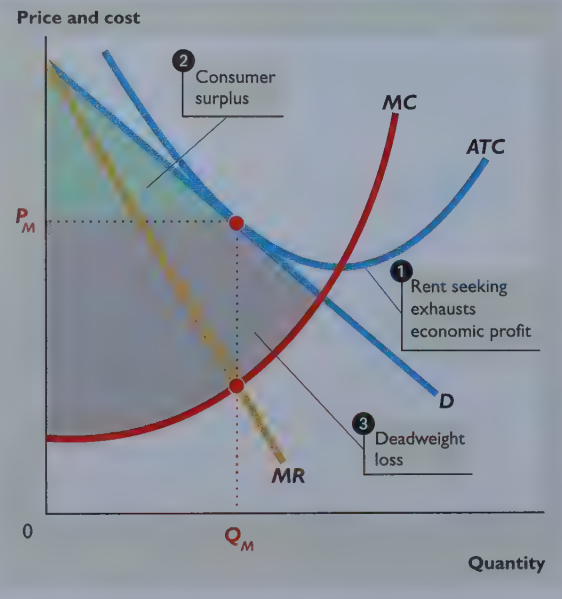
Figure 16.7 shows a rent-seeking equilibrium. The cost of rent seeking is a fixed cost that must be added to a monopoly's other costs. The average total cost curve, which includes the fixed cost of rent seeking, shifts upward until it just touches the demand curve. Consumer surplus is unaffected. But the deadweight loss of monopoly now includes the original deadweight loss plus the economic profit consumed by rent seeking, which the enlarged gray area shows.

FIGURE 16.7

Rent-Seeking Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation

1. Rent-seeking costs exhaust economic profit. The firm's rent-seeking costs are fixed costs. They increase total fixed cost and average total cost. The *ATC* curve shifts upward until, at the profit-maximizing price, the firm breaks even.
2. Monopoly profit-maximization shrinks consumer surplus relative to its maximum level in perfect competition, but rent-seeking doesn't shrink consumer surplus any further.
3. The deadweight loss increases.



CHECKPOINT 16.3

Compare the performance of a single-price monopoly with that of perfect competition.

MyEconLab

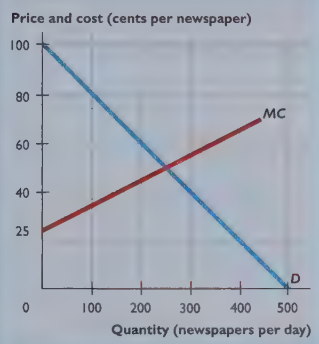
You can work these problems in Study Plan 16.3 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Township is a small isolated community served by one newspaper that can meet the market demand at a lower cost than two or more newspapers could. The *Township Gazette* is the only source of news. Figure 1 shows the marginal cost of printing the *Township Gazette* and the market demand for it. The *Township Gazette* is a profit-maximizing, single-price monopoly.

1. How many copies of the *Township Gazette* are printed each day and what is the price of the *Township Gazette*?
2. What is the efficient number of copies of the *Township Gazette* and what is the price at which the efficient number of copies could be sold?
3. Is the number of copies printed the efficient quantity? Explain your answer.
4. On the graph, show the consumer surplus that is redistributed from consumers to the *Township Gazette* and the deadweight loss that arises because the *Township Gazette* is a monopoly.

FIGURE 1



In the News

Ticketmaster's near monopoly challenged as technology changes

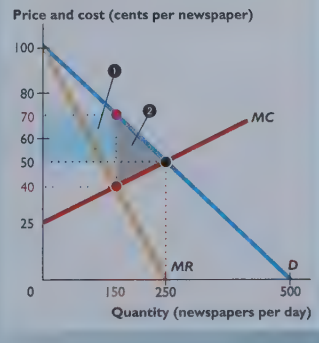
In the 1990s, to see Michael Jordan or Garth Brooks live you had to buy the ticket through Ticketmaster, or from a scalper. Today, Ticketmaster merged with concert promoter Live Nation and now controls the sale of tickets to sports and music events. Competitors have entered the market, and events tickets are now sold through Internet auction markets.

How will the increased competition in the sale of tickets affect the service fee component of the price and the efficiency of the market? Will scalpers survive?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The profit-maximizing quantity of the *Township Gazette* is 150 a day, where marginal revenue equals marginal cost. The price is 70¢ a copy (Figure 2).
2. The efficient quantity is 250 copies, where quantity demanded (marginal benefit) equals marginal cost and the price would be 50¢ a copy (Figure 2).
3. The number of copies printed is not efficient because the marginal benefit of the 150th copy (70¢) exceeds its marginal cost (40¢) (Figure 2).
4. In Figure 2, the blue rectangle ❶ shows the consumer surplus transferred from the consumers to the *Township Gazette* and the gray triangle ❷ shows the deadweight loss created.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

The price you pay for an event ticket is the sum of the price of the event plus a service fee. As a monopoly, Ticketmaster charges the profit-maximizing fee. The monopoly has weakened and competition has increased, but sellers still charge the profit-maximizing fee, although a lower fee. The ticket-selling market is more efficient, but scalpers now compete with resale auctions and appear to survive.

16.4 PRICE DISCRIMINATION

Why does a hairdresser charge seniors $2 less than other customers?

Price discrimination—selling a good or service at a number of different prices—is widespread. You encounter it when you travel, go to the movies, get your hair cut, buy pizza, or visit an art museum. At first sight, it appears that price discrimination contradicts the assumption of profit maximization. Why would a movie operator allow children to see movies at half price? Why would a hairdresser charge students and senior citizens less? Aren't these firms losing profit by being nice to their customers?

Deeper investigation shows that far from lowering profit, price discriminators make a bigger profit than they would otherwise. So a monopoly has an incentive to find ways of discriminating and charging each buyer the highest possible price. Some people pay less with price discrimination, but others pay more.

Most price discriminators are *not* monopolies, but monopolies do price discriminate when they can. To be able to price discriminate, a firm must

- Identify and separate different types of buyers.
- Sell a product that cannot be resold.

Price discrimination is charging different prices for a single good or service because the willingness to pay varies across buyers. Not all price *differences* are price *discrimination*. Some goods that are similar but not identical have different prices because they have different production costs. For example, the cost of producing electricity depends on time of day. If an electric power company charges a higher price for consumption between 7:00 and 9:00 in the morning and between 4:00 and 7:00 in the evening than it does at other times of the day, the company is not price discriminating.

Price Discrimination and Consumer Surplus

The key idea behind price discrimination is to convert consumer surplus into economic profit. To extract every dollar of consumer surplus from every buyer, the monopoly would have to offer each individual customer a separate price schedule based on that customer's own willingness to pay. Such price discrimination cannot be carried out in practice because a firm does not have enough information about each consumer's demand curve. But firms try to extract as much consumer surplus as possible, and to do so, they discriminate in two broad ways:

- Among groups of buyers
- Among units of a good

Discriminating Among Groups of Buyers

To price discriminate among groups of buyers, the firm offers different prices to different types of buyers, based on things such as age, employment status, or some other easily distinguished characteristic. This type of price discrimination works when each group has a different average willingness to pay for the good or service.

For example, a face-to-face sales meeting with a customer might bring a large and profitable order. For salespeople and other business travelers, the marginal benefit from an airplane trip is large and the price that such a traveler will pay for a trip is high. In contrast, for a vacation traveler, any of several different trips or even no vacation trip are options. So for vacation travelers, the marginal benefit of

a trip is small and the price that such a traveler will pay for a trip is low. Because business travelers are willing to pay more than vacation travelers are, it is possible for an airline to profit by price discriminating between these two groups.

Discriminating Among Units of a Good

To price discriminate among units of a good, the firm charges the same prices to all its customers but offers a lower price per unit for a larger number of units bought. When Pizza Hut charges $10 for one home-delivered pizza and $14 for two, it is using this type of price discrimination. In this example, the price of the second pizza is only $4.

Let's see how an airline exploits the differences in demand by business and vacation travelers and increases its profit by price discriminating.

Profiting by Price Discriminating

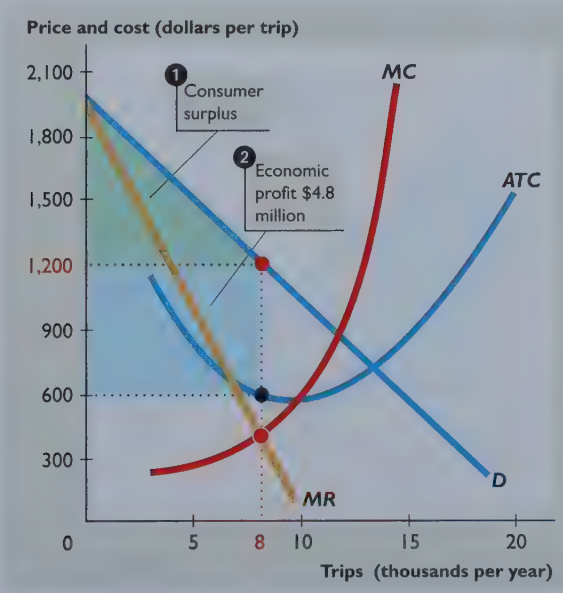
Global Air has a monopoly on an exotic route. Figure 16.8 shows the demand curve (*D*) for travel on this route and Global Air's marginal revenue curve (*MR*). It also shows Global Air's marginal cost (*MC*) and average total cost (*ATC*) curves.

Initially, Global is a single-price monopoly and maximizes its profit by producing 8,000 trips a year (the quantity at which *MR* equals *MC*). The price is $1,200 a trip. The average total cost of a trip is $600, so economic profit is $600 a trip. On 8,000 trips, Global's economic profit is $4.8 million a year, shown by the blue rectangle. Global's customers enjoy a consumer surplus shown by the green triangle.

FIGURE 16.8

A Single-Price Monopoly's Price and Economic Profit

MyEconLab Animation



Global Air has a monopoly on an air route. The demand curve for travel on this route is *D*, and Global's marginal revenue curve is *MR*. Its marginal cost curve is *MC*, and its average total cost curve is *ATC*.

As a single-price monopoly, Global maximizes profit by selling 8,000 trips a year at $1,200 a trip.

1. Global's customers enjoy a consumer surplus—the green triangle.
2. Global's economic profit is $4.8 million a year—the blue rectangle.

Global is struck by the fact that many of its customers are business travelers, and Global suspects that they are willing to pay more than $1,200 a trip. So Global does some market research, which tells Global that some business travelers are willing to pay as much as $1,800 a trip. Also, these customers almost always make their travel plans at the last moment. Another group of business travelers is willing to pay $1,600. These customers know a week ahead when they will travel, and prefer a refundable ticket. Yet another group is willing to pay up to $1,400. These travelers know two weeks ahead when they will travel, and they are happy to buy a nonrefundable ticket.

So Global announces a new fare schedule: No restrictions, $1,800; 7-day advance purchase, refundable, $1,600; 14-day advance purchase, nonrefundable, $1,400; 14-day advance purchase, must stay at least 7 days, $1,200.

Figure 16.9 shows the outcome with this new fare structure and also shows why Global is pleased with its new fares. It sells 2,000 trips at each of its four prices. Global's economic profit increases by the area of the blue steps in the figure. Its economic profit is now its original $4.8 million a year plus an additional $2.4 million from its new higher fares. Consumer surplus has shrunk to the sum of the smaller green triangles.

Perfect Price Discrimination

Perfect price discrimination
Price discrimination that extracts the entire consumer surplus by charging the highest price that consumers are willing to pay for each unit.

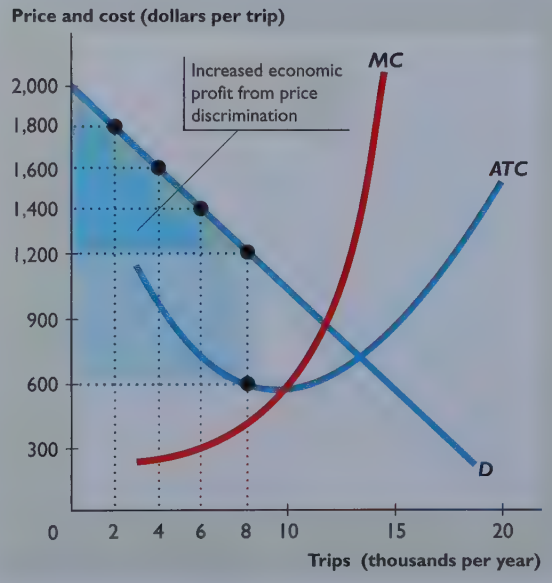
But Global thinks that it can do even better. It plans to achieve **perfect price discrimination,** which extracts the entire consumer surplus by charging the highest price that consumers are willing to pay for each unit. To do so, Global must get creative and come up with a host of additional business fares ranging between $2,000 and $1,200, each one of which appeals to a small segment of the business market.

FIGURE 16.9
Price Discrimination

MyEconLab Animation

Global revises its fare structure. It now offers no restrictions at $1,800, 7-day advance purchase, refundable at $1,600, 14-day advance purchase, nonrefundable at $1,400, and 14-day advance purchase, must stay at least 7 days, at $1,200.

Global sells 2,000 units at each of its four new fares. Its economic profit increases by $2.4 million a year to $7.2 million a year, which is shown by the original blue rectangle plus the blue steps. Global's customers' consumer surplus shrinks to the sum of the green areas.



Once Global is discriminating finely between different customers and getting from each customer the maximum he or she is willing to pay, something special happens to marginal revenue. Recall that for the single-price monopoly, marginal revenue is less than price. The reason is that when the price is cut to sell a larger quantity, the price is lower on all units sold. But with perfect price discrimination, Global sells only the marginal seat at the lower price. All the other customers continue to buy for the highest price they are willing to pay. So for the perfect price discriminator, marginal revenue equals price and the demand curve becomes the marginal revenue curve.

With marginal revenue equal to price, Global can obtain yet greater profit by increasing output up to the point at which price (and marginal revenue) is equal to marginal cost.

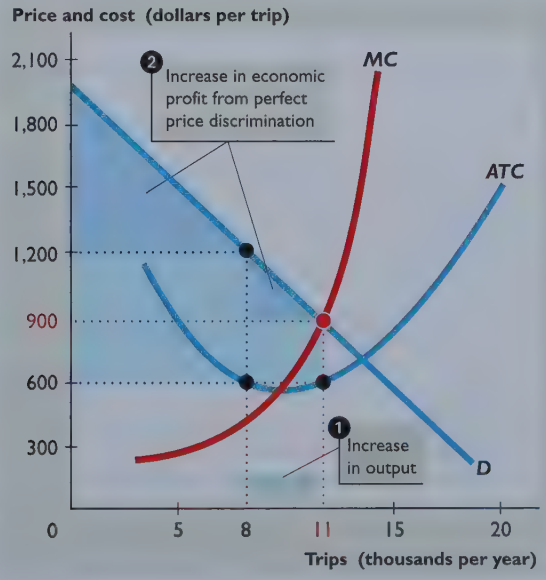
So Global now seeks additional travelers who will not pay as much as $1,200 a trip but who will pay more than marginal cost. More creative pricing comes up with vacation specials and other fares that have combinations of advance reservation, minimum stay, and other restrictions that make these fares unattractive to Global's existing customers but attractive to a further group of travelers. With all these fares and specials, Global extracts the entire consumer surplus and maximizes economic profit.

Figure 16.10 shows the outcome with perfect price discrimination. The dozens of fares paid by the original travelers who are willing to pay between $1,200 and $2,000 have extracted the entire consumer surplus from this group and converted it into economic profit for Global. The new fares between $900 and $1,200 have attracted 3,000 additional travelers but have taken their entire consumer surplus also. Global is earning an economic profit of more than $9 million a year.

FIGURE 16.10

Perfect Price Discrimination

MyEconLab Animation



With perfect price discrimination, the demand curve becomes Global's marginal revenue curve. Economic profit is maximized when the lowest price equals marginal cost.

❶ Output increases to 11,000 passengers a year, and ❷ Global's economic profit increases to $9.35 million a year.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Airline Price Discrimination

The normal coach fare from San Francisco to Washington, D.C., is $1,555, refundable and with no charge for a checked bag. With a checked baggage charge, a refundable ticket is $850 and a nonrefundable ticket is $271. On a typical flight, passengers might be paying as many as 20 different fares.

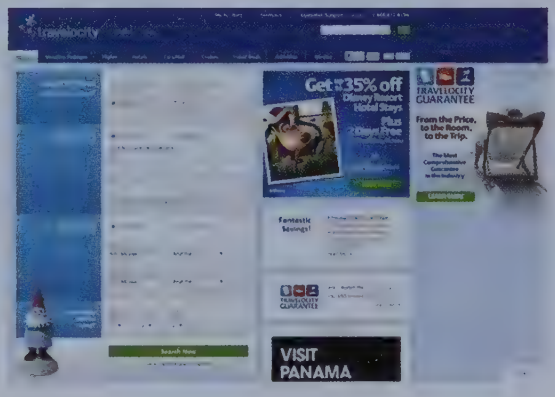
The airlines sort their customers according to their willingness to pay by offering a variety of options that attract price-sensitive leisure travelers but don't get bought by business travelers.

Despite the sophistication of the airlines' pricing schemes, almost 20 percent of seats fly empty. The marginal cost of filling an empty seat is close to zero, so a ticket sold at a few dollars would be profitable.

Low fares are now feasible, thanks to priceline.com and dozens of other online travel agents. Shopping around the airlines with bids from travelers, these agents broker thousands of tickets a day and obtain the lowest possible fares for their customers.

Would it bother you to hear how little I paid for this flight?

From William Hamilton, "Voodoo Economics," © 1992 by the Chronicle Publishing Company, p. 3. Reprinted with permission of Chronicle Books.



Price Discrimination and Efficiency

With perfect price discrimination, the monopoly increases output to the point at which price equals marginal cost. This output is identical to that of perfect competition. Perfect price discrimination pushes consumer surplus to zero but increases producer surplus to equal the sum of consumer surplus and producer surplus in perfect competition. Deadweight loss with perfect price discrimination is zero. So perfect price discrimination produces the efficient quantity.

But there are two differences between perfect competition and perfect price discrimination. First, the distribution of the total surplus is different. It is shared by consumers and producers in perfect competition while the producer gets it all with perfect price discrimination. Second, because the producer grabs all the total surplus, rent seeking becomes profitable.

Rent seekers use resources in pursuit of monopoly, and the bigger the rents, the greater is the incentive to use resources to pursue those rents. With free entry into rent seeking, the long-run equilibrium outcome is that rent seekers use up the entire producer surplus.

CHECKPOINT 16.4

Explain how price discrimination increases profit.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 16.4 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Village, a small isolated town, has one doctor. For a 30-minute consultation, the doctor charges a rich person twice as much as a poor person.

1. Does the doctor practice price discrimination? Is the doctor using resources efficiently? Does the doctor's pricing scheme redistribute consumer surplus? If so, explain how.
2. If the doctor decided to charge everyone the maximum price that he or she would be willing to pay, what would be the consumer surplus? Would the market for medical service in Village be efficient?

In the News

Feast on these great dining deals

Entrées at Patina in Los Angeles start at $40, but the four-course fixed menu is $59. And pair that with the waived corkage fee on Tuesdays. At Michael Mina, San Francisco, enjoy a three-course, prix-fixe lunch for $49 or pay up to $65 when ordering the same items individually at dinner.

Source: *USA Today*, July 29, 2011

Are Patina and Michael Mina price discriminating? Explain your answer.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The doctor practices price discrimination because rich people and poor people pay a different price for the same service: a 30-minute consultation.
   The doctor provides the profit-maximizing number of consultations and charges rich people more than poor people. As a monopoly, the total number of consultations is less than that at which marginal benefit equals the marginal cost of providing the medical service. Because marginal benefit does not equal marginal cost, the doctor is not using resources efficiently.
   With price discrimination, some consumer surplus is redistributed to the doctor as profit.
2. The doctor decides to practice perfect price discrimination. If successful, with perfect price discrimination, marginal revenue equals price. To maximize economic profit, the doctor increases the number of consultations to make the lowest price charged equal to the marginal cost of providing the service. The doctor takes the entire consumer surplus, so consumer surplus is zero.
   Marginal benefit equals price, so resources are being used efficiently.

Solution to In the News

A restaurant meal cannot be resold, so price discrimination is possible. Offering a four-course fixed menu at a lower price than the sum of the prices of the individual items is price discrimination. Diners who want fewer than four courses and want to be more selective about what they eat pay more. Waiving the corkage fee on Tuesdays is not price discrimination. Demand is lower on Tuesdays, so the profit-maximizing price is lower. Waiving the corkage fee is a way of price cutting without reprinting the menu.

16.5 MONOPOLY REGULATION

Natural monopoly presents a dilemma. With economies of scale, a natural monopoly produces at the lowest possible cost. But with market power, the monopoly has an incentive to raise the price above the competitive price and produce too little—to operate in the self-interest of the monopoly and not in the social interest.

Regulation
Rules administered by a government agency to influence prices, quantities, entry, and other aspects of economic activity in a firm or industry.

Regulation—rules administered by a government agency to influence prices, quantities, entry, and other aspects of economic activity in a firm or industry—is a possible solution to this dilemma.

To implement regulation, the government establishes agencies to oversee and enforce the rules. For example, the Surface Transportation Board regulates prices on interstate railroads and some trucking and bus lines, and water and oil pipelines. By the 1970s, almost a quarter of the nation's output was produced by regulated industries (far more than just natural monopolies) and a process of deregulation began.

Deregulation
The process of removing regulation of prices, quantities, entry, and other aspects of economic activity in a firm or industry.

Deregulation is the process of removing regulation of prices, quantities, entry, and other aspects of economic activity in a firm or industry. During the past 30 years, deregulation has occurred in domestic air transportation, telephone service, interstate trucking, and banking and financial services. Cable TV was deregulated in 1984, re-regulated in 1992, and deregulated again in 1996.

Regulation is a *possible* solution to the dilemma presented by natural monopoly but not a sure bet solution. There are two theories about how regulation actually works: the *social interest theory* and the *capture theory*.

Social interest theory
The theory that regulation achieves an efficient allocation of resources.

The **social interest theory** is that the political and regulatory process relentlessly seeks out inefficiency and introduces regulation that eliminates deadweight loss and allocates resources efficiently.

Capture theory
The theory that the regulation serves the self-interest of the producer and results in maximum profit, underproduction, and deadweight loss.

The **capture theory** is that the political and regulatory process gets captured by the regulated firm and ends up serving its self-interest, with maximum economic profit, underproduction, and deadweight loss. The regulator gets captured because the producer's gain is large and visible while each individual consumer's is small and invisible. No individual consumer has an incentive to oppose the regulation, but the producer has a big incentive to lobby for it.

Which theory of regulation best explains real-world regulations? Does regulation serve the social interest or the self-interest of monopoly producers?

Efficient Regulation of a Natural Monopoly

A cable TV company is a *natural monopoly* (pp. 400–401)—it can supply the entire market at a lower price than two or more competing firms can. Cox Communications, based in Atlanta, supplies cable TV to households in 16 states. It has invested heavily in satellite receiving dishes, cables, and control equipment and so has large fixed costs. These fixed costs are part of the company's average total cost. Its average total cost decreases as the number of households served increases because the fixed cost is spread over a larger number of households. Unregulated, Cox Communications serves the number of households that maximizes profit. Like all single-price monopolies, the profit-maximizing quantity is less than the efficient quantity and underproduction results in a deadweight loss (see Figure 16.6, p. 410).

Marginal cost pricing rule
A rule that sets price equal to marginal cost to achieve an efficient output.

How can Cox be regulated to produce the efficient quantity of cable TV service? The answer is by being regulated to set its price equal to marginal cost, known as the **marginal cost pricing rule.** The quantity demanded at a price equal

to marginal cost is the efficient quantity—the quantity at which marginal benefit equals marginal cost.

Figure 16.11 illustrates the marginal cost pricing rule. The demand curve for cable TV is *D*. Cox's marginal cost curve is *MC*. That marginal cost curve is (assumed to be) horizontal at $10 per household per month—that is, the cost of providing each additional household with a month of cable programming is $10. The efficient outcome occurs if the price is regulated at $10 per household per month with 8 million households served.

But there is a problem: Because average total cost exceeds marginal cost, a firm that follows the marginal cost pricing rule incurs an economic loss. So a cable TV company that is required to use a marginal cost pricing rule will not stay in business for long. How can the firm cover its costs and, at the same time, obey a marginal cost pricing rule?

One possibility is price discrimination (see pp. 414–418). Another possibility is to use a two-part price (called a *two-part tariff*). For example, local telephone companies charge consumers a monthly fee for being connected to the telephone system and then charge a price equal to marginal cost (zero) for each local call. A cable TV operator can charge a one-time connection fee that covers its fixed cost and then charge a monthly fee equal to marginal cost.

Second-Best Regulation of a Natural Monopoly

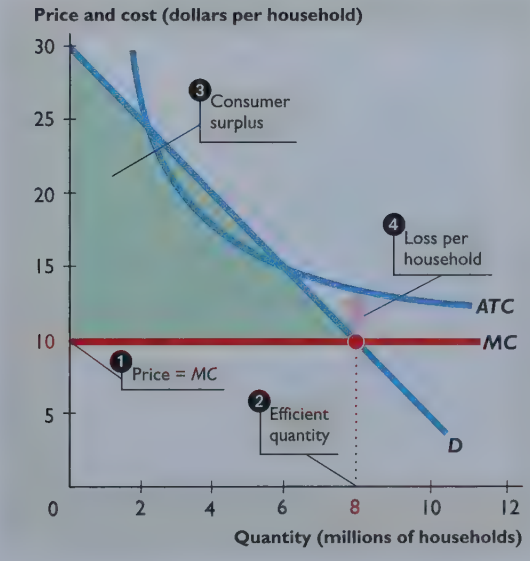
A natural monopoly cannot always be regulated to achieve an efficient outcome. Two possible ways of enabling a regulated monopoly to avoid an economic loss are

- Average cost pricing
- Government subsidy

FIGURE 16.11

Natural Monopoly: Marginal Cost Pricing

MyEconLab Animation



The market demand curve for cable TV is *D*. A cable TV operator's marginal cost *MC* is a constant $10 per household per month. Its fixed cost is large, and the average total cost curve, which includes average fixed cost, is *ATC*.

1. Price is set equal to marginal cost at $10 a month.

At this price, 2. the efficient quantity (8 million households) is served.

3. Consumer surplus is maximized as shown by the green triangle.

4. The firm incurs a loss on each household served, shown by the red arrow.

Average cost pricing rule
A rule that sets price equal to average total cost to enable a regulated firm to avoid economic loss.

Average Cost Pricing

The **average cost pricing rule** sets price equal to average total cost. With this rule the firm produces the quantity at which the average total cost curve cuts the demand curve. This rule results in the firm making zero economic profit—breaking even. But because for a natural monopoly average total cost exceeds marginal cost, the quantity produced is less than the efficient quantity and a deadweight loss arises. Figure 16.12 illustrates the average cost pricing rule. The price is $15 a month and 6 million households get cable TV. The gray triangle shows the deadweight loss.

Government Subsidy

A government subsidy is a direct payment to the firm equal to its economic loss. But to pay a subsidy, the government must raise the revenue by taxing some other activity. You saw in Chapter 8 that taxes themselves generate deadweight loss.

And the Second-Best Is...

Which is the better option, average cost pricing or marginal cost pricing with a government subsidy? The answer turns on the relative magnitudes of the two deadweight losses. Average cost pricing generates a deadweight loss in the market served by the natural monopoly. A subsidy generates deadweight losses in the markets for the items that are taxed to pay the subsidy. The smaller deadweight loss is the second-best solution to regulating a natural monopoly. Making this calculation in practice is too difficult and average cost pricing is generally preferred to a subsidy.

FIGURE 16.12

Natural Monopoly: Average Cost Pricing

MyEconLab Animation

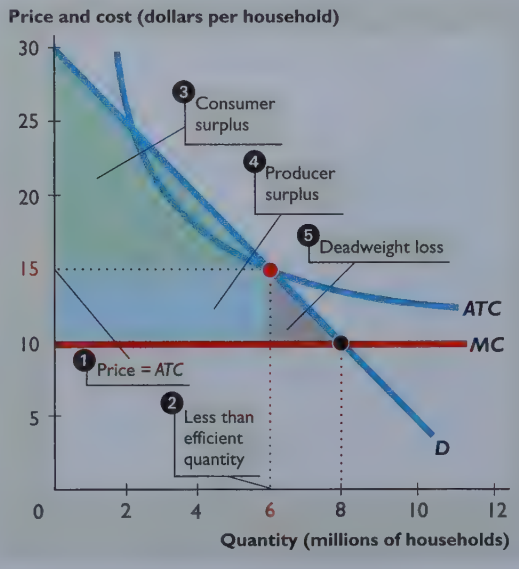
1. Price is set equal to average total cost at $15 a month.

At this price, 2. the quantity served (6 million households) is less than the efficient quantity (8 million households).

3. Consumer surplus shrinks to the smaller green triangle.

4. A producer surplus enables the firm to pay its total fixed cost and break even.

5. A deadweight loss, shown by the gray triangle, arises.



EYE on MICROSOFT

Are Microsoft's Prices Too High?

Microsoft's prices are too high in the sense that they exceed marginal cost and result in fewer copies of the Windows operating system and Office application than the efficient quantities.

Profit Maximization

The figure illustrates how Microsoft prices its products to maximize profit. The demand for copies of the Windows Vista operating system is *D*. The marginal revenue curve is *MR*. The marginal cost of an additional copy of Vista is very small and we assume it to be zero, with marginal cost curve *MC*.

Profit is maximized by producing the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost. In the figure, that quantity is 4 million copies of Vista per month. The price is $300 per copy and Microsoft receives a producer surplus shown by the blue rectangle.

Inefficiency

The efficient quantity is 8 million copies per month, where price and marginal benefit equal marginal cost. Because the actual quantity is smaller than the efficient quantity, a deadweight loss arises and the gray triangle shows its magnitude. The green triangle shows the consumer surplus.

Fixed Cost

The marginal cost of a copy of Windows Vista might be close to zero but the fixed cost of developing the software is large. Microsoft must at least earn enough revenue to pay these fixed costs.

Earning enough to pay the firm's fixed costs does not inevitably lead to inefficiency. Some firms with zero marginal cost and the market power to charge a high price do choose to provide the efficient quantity of their services at a zero price.

The Google Solution

Google is one such firm. The price of an Internet search on Google is zero. The quantity of searches is that at which the marginal benefit of a search equals the zero marginal cost, so the quantity of searches is the efficient quantity.

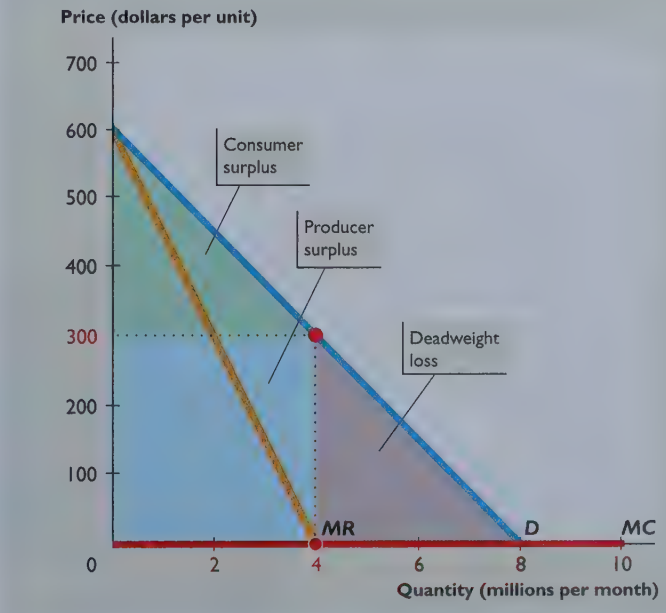
Google earns revenue, and a very large revenue, by selling advertising that more than pays its fixed operating costs.

Efficiency

Advertising on Google is more effective than a TV or poster advertisement because it is targeted at potential buyers of products based on the topics of their searches.

The Google solution delivers the efficient quantity of zero-marginal-cost Internet search activity.

The Google solution might also deliver the efficient quantity of advertising. It will do so if Google is able to achieve perfect price discrimination in the market for advertising.



Implementing average cost pricing presents the regulator with a challenge because it is not possible to be sure of a firm's costs. So regulators use one of two practical rules:

- Rate of return regulation
- Price cap regulation

Rate of Return Regulation

Rate of return regulation
A regulation that sets the price at a level that enables a firm to earn a specified target rate of return on its capital.

Under **rate of return regulation,** the price is set at a level that enables the firm to earn a specified target rate of return on its capital. This type of regulation can end up serving the self-interest of the firm rather than the social interest. The firm's managers have an incentive to inflate costs by spending on items such as private jets, free baseball tickets (disguised as public relations expenses), and lavish entertainment. Managers also have an incentive to use more capital than the efficient amount. The *rate* of return on capital is regulated but not the *total* return on capital, and the greater the amount of capital, the greater is the total return.

Price Cap Regulation

Price cap regulation
A rule that specifies the highest price that a firm is permitted to set—a price ceiling.

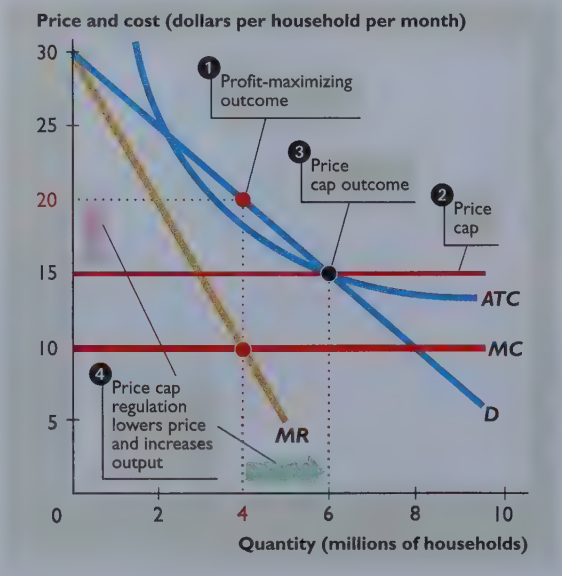
For the reason that we've just examined, rate of return regulation is increasingly being replaced by price cap regulation. A **price cap regulation** is a price ceiling—a rule that specifies the highest price the firm is permitted to set. This type of regulation lowers the price and gives the firm an incentive to minimize its costs. But what happens to the quantity produced?

Recall that in a competitive market, a price ceiling set below the equilibrium price decreases output and creates a shortage (see Chapter 7, pp. 169–170). In contrast,

FIGURE 16.13
Natural Monopoly: Price Cap Regulation

MyEconLab Animation

1. With no regulation, a cable TV operator serves 4 million households at a price of $20 a month.
2. A price cap regulation sets the maximum price at $15 a month.
3. Only when 6 million households are served can the firm break even. (When fewer than 6 million households are served or more than 6 million households are served, the firm incurs an economic loss.) The firm has an incentive to keep costs as low as possible and to produce the quantity demanded at the price cap.
4. The price cap regulation lowers the price and increases the quantity.



in natural monopoly a price ceiling increases output. The reason is that at the regulated price, the firm can sell any quantity it chooses up to the quantity demanded. So each additional unit sold brings in the same additional revenue: marginal revenue equals price. The regulated price exceeds marginal cost, so the profit-maximizing quantity becomes the quantity demanded at the price ceiling.

Figure 16.13 illustrates this outcome. Unregulated, a cable TV operator maximizes profit by serving 4 million households at a price of $20 a month. With a price cap set at $15 a month, the firm is permitted to sell any quantity it chooses at that price or at a lower price. The profit-maximizing quantity now increases to 6 million households. Serving fewer than 6 million households, the firm incurs a loss—average total cost exceeds the price cap. Serving more than 6 million households is possible but only by lowering the price along the demand curve. Again, average total cost exceeds price and the firm incurs a loss.

In Figure 16.13, the price cap delivers average cost pricing. In practice, the regulator might set the cap too high. For this reason, price cap regulation is often combined with **earnings sharing regulation**—a regulation that requires firms to make refunds to customers when profits rise above a target level.

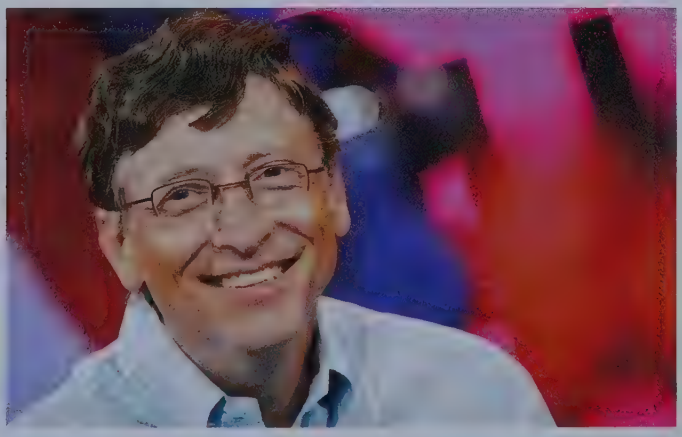
Earnings sharing regulation
A regulation that requires firms to make refunds to customers when profits rise above a target level.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Monopoly in Your Everyday Life

When Bill Gates decided to quit Harvard in 1975, he realized that PCs would need an operating system and applications programs to interact with the computer's hardware. He also knew that whoever owned the copyright on these programs would have a license to print money. And he wanted to be that person.

In less than 30 years, Bill Gates became the world's richest person. Such is the power of the right monopoly.



You, along with millions of other PC users, have willingly paid the monopoly price for Windows and Microsoft Office. Sure, the marginal cost of a copy of these programs is close to zero, so the quantity sold is way too few. There is a big deadweight loss.

Compared with the alternative of no Windows, you're better off. But are you better off than you would be if there were many alternatives to Windows competing for your attention? To answer this question, think about the applications—spreadsheets, word processing, and so on—that you need to make your computer useful. With lots of operating systems, what would happen to the cost of developing applications? Would you have more or less choice?

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 16.5 and get instant feedback.

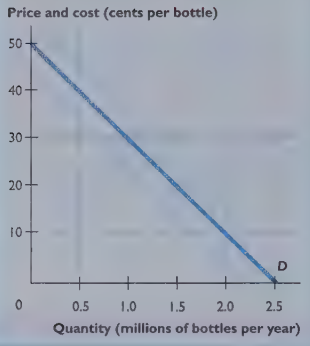
CHECKPOINT 16.5

Explain why natural monopoly is regulated and the effects of regulation.

Practice Problems

An unregulated natural monopoly bottles Elixir, a unique health product that has no substitutes. The monopoly's total fixed cost is $150,000, and its marginal cost is 10¢ a bottle. Figure 1 illustrates the demand for Elixir.

FIGURE 1



1. How many bottles of Elixir does the monopoly sell and what is the price of a bottle of Elixir? Is the monopoly's use of resources efficient?
2. Suppose that the government introduces a marginal cost pricing rule. What is the price of Elixir, the quantity sold, and the monopoly's economic profit?
3. Suppose that the government introduces an average cost pricing rule. What is the price of Elixir, the quantity sold, and the monopoly's economic profit?

In the News

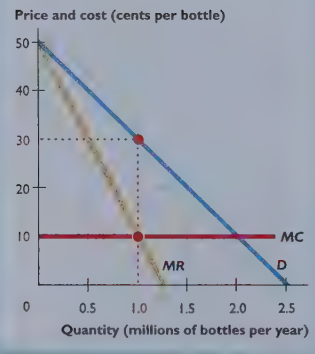
Mexicans protest the plan to end the state oil monopoly
Protesters fight the plan to open Mexico's state oil monopoly to private investment. In Mexico, the government sets the price and taxes the monopoly's profit. The price in Mexico is $2.48 a gallon and in the United States is $3.37 a gallon.
Source: *USA Today*, April 13, 2008

Describe how the Mexican government regulates the domestic oil market.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The monopoly will produce 1 million bottles a year—the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost. The price is 30¢ a bottle—the highest price at which the monopoly can sell the 1 million bottles a year (Figure 2). The monopoly's use of resources is inefficient. If resource use were efficient, the monopoly would produce the quantity at which marginal benefit (price) equals marginal cost: 2 million bottles a year.
2. With a marginal cost pricing rule, the price is 10¢ a bottle and the monopoly produces 2 million bottles a year. The monopoly incurs an economic loss equal to its total fixed costs of $150,000 a year. The monopoly would need a subsidy from the government to keep it in business.
3. With an average cost pricing rule, the firm produces the quantity at which price equals average total cost. Average total cost equals average variable cost plus average fixed cost. Average variable cost equals marginal cost and is 10¢ a bottle. Average fixed cost is $150,000 divided by the quantity produced. For example, at 1 million bottles, average fixed cost is 15¢ and at 1.5 million bottles, average fixed cost is 10¢ a bottle. The average total cost of producing 1.5 million bottles is 20¢ a bottle and they can be sold for 20¢ a bottle. So the monopoly produces 1.5 million bottles a year and breaks even.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

The price is not set equal to marginal cost (marginal cost pricing) because the oil company does not receive a subsidy. The price is not set equal to average total cost (average cost pricing) because the oil company does not break even. The government operates a price cap regulation and the company pays a profit tax.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain how monopoly arises and distinguish between single-price monopoly and price-discriminating monopoly.

- In monopoly, a single producer of a good or service that has no close substitutes operates behind natural, ownership, or legal barriers to entry.
- A monopoly can price discriminate when there is no resale possibility.
- Where resale is possible, a firm charges a single price.

2 Explain how a single-price monopoly determines its output and price.

- The demand for a monopoly's output is the market demand, and a single-price monopoly's marginal revenue is less than price.
- A monopoly maximizes profit by producing the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost and by charging the maximum price that consumers are willing to pay for that quantity.

3 Compare the performance of a single-price monopoly with that of perfect competition.

- A single-price monopoly charges a higher price and produces a smaller quantity than does a perfectly competitive market and creates a deadweight loss.
- Monopoly imposes a loss on society that equals its deadweight loss plus the cost of the resources devoted to rent seeking.

4 Explain how price discrimination increases profit.

- Perfect price discrimination captures the entire consumer surplus. Prices are the highest that each consumer is willing to pay for each unit.
- With perfect price discrimination, the monopoly is efficient but rent seeking uses some or all of the producer surplus.

5 Explain why natural monopoly is regulated and the effects of regulation.

- Regulation might achieve an efficient use of resources or help the monopoly to maximize economic profit.
- A natural monopoly is efficient if its price equals marginal cost, but a second-best outcome is for price to equal average total cost.
- A price cap supported by earnings sharing regulation is the most effective practical method of regulating a natural monopoly.

Key Terms

Average cost pricing rule, 422
Barrier to entry, 400
Capture theory, 420
Deregulation, 420
Earnings sharing regulation, 425
Legal monopoly, 401
Marginal cost pricing rule, 420
Monopoly, 400
Natural monopoly, 400
Perfect price discrimination, 416
Price cap regulation, 424
Price-discriminating monopoly, 402
Rate of return regulation, 424
Regulation, 420
Rent seeking, 411
Single-price monopoly, 402
Social interest theory, 420

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 16 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Under what conditions does monopoly arise? Under what conditions can a monopoly price discriminate?

Use the following information to work Problems 2 to 4.

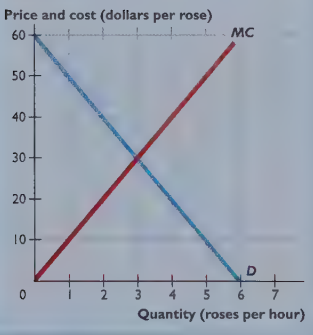
Elixir Spring produces a unique and highly prized mineral water. The firm's total fixed cost is $5,000 a day, and its marginal cost is zero. Table 1 shows the demand schedule for Elixir water.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per bottle)	Quantity (bottles per day)
10	0
8	2,000
6	4,000
4	6,000
2	8,000
0	10,000

2. On a graph, show the demand curve for Elixir water and Elixir Spring's marginal revenue curve. What are Elixir's profit-maximizing price, output, and economic profit?
3. Compare Elixir's profit-maximizing price with the marginal cost of producing the profit-maximizing output. At the profit-maximizing price, is the demand for Elixir water inelastic or elastic?
4. Suppose that there are 1,000 springs, all able to produce this water at zero marginal cost and with zero fixed costs. Compare the equilibrium price and quantity produced with the price and quantity produced by Elixir water.

FIGURE 1



5. The Blue Rose Company is the only flower grower to have cracked the secret of making a blue rose. Figure 1 shows the demand for blue roses and the marginal cost of producing a blue rose. What is Blue Rose's profit-maximizing output? What price does it charge? Is the Blue Rose Company using its resources efficiently?

Hawaii Cable Television is a natural monopoly. Sketch a market demand curve and the firm's cost curves. Use your graph to work Problems 6 to 9.

6. If Hawaii Cable is unregulated and maximizes profit, show in your graph the price, quantity, economic profit, consumer surplus, and deadweight loss.
7. If Hawaii Cable is unregulated and it gives householders a 50 percent discount for second and third connections, describe how its economic profit, consumer surplus, and deadweight loss would change.
8. If Hawaii Cable is regulated in the social interest, show in your graph the price, quantity, economic profit, consumer surplus, and deadweight loss.
9. If Hawaii Cable is subject to a price cap regulation that enables it to break even, show in your graph the price, quantity, economic profit, consumer surplus, and deadweight loss.

Use the following information to work Problems 10 and 11.

FCC planning rules to open cable market

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) will make it easier for independent programmers and rival video services to lease access to cable channels. The FCC will also limit the market share of a cable company to 30 percent.

Source: *The New York Times*, November 10, 2007

10. What barriers to entry exist in the cable television market? Are high cable prices evidence of monopoly power?
11. Draw a graph to illustrate the effects of the FCC's new regulations on the price, quantity, consumer surplus, producer surplus, and deadweight loss.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

Use the following information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

Microsoft: We're not gouging Europe on Windows 7 pricing
Regulators in the European Union have charged Microsoft with illegally tying Internet Explorer (IE) to Windows and mandated that a version of Windows be offered stripped of IE. A news report suggested that when Microsoft launches Windows 7, it will charge a higher price for the IE-stripped version than the price for a full version that includes IE. Microsoft denied this report but announced that it would offer the full version of Windows 7 at a lower upgrade price.

Source: computerworld.com

1. How does Microsoft set the price of Windows and would it be in the firm's self-interest to set a different price for a version stripped of IE?
2. Why might Microsoft offer the full version of Windows 7 to European customers at a lower upgrade price?

Use the following information to work Problems **3** and **4**.

Bobbie's Hair Care is a natural monopoly. Table 1 shows the demand schedule (the first two columns) and Bobbie's marginal cost schedule (the middle and third columns). Bobbie has done a survey and discovered that she has four types of customers each hour: one woman who is willing to pay $18, one senior who is willing to pay $16, one student who is willing to pay $14, and one boy who is willing to pay $12. Suppose that Bobbie's fixed costs are $20 an hour and Bobbie's price discriminates.

3. What is the price each type of customer is charged and how many haircuts an hour does Bobbie's sell? What is the increase in Bobbie's economic profit that results from price discrimination?
4. Who benefits from Bobbie's price discrimination? Is the quantity of haircuts efficient?

Use the following information to work Problems **5** to **10**.

Big Top is the only circus in the nation. Table 2 sets out the demand schedule for circus tickets and the cost schedule for producing the circus.

5. Calculate Big Top's profit-maximizing price, output, and economic profit if it charges a single price for all tickets.
6. When Big Top maximizes profit, what is the consumer surplus and producer surplus and is the circus efficient? Explain why or why not.
7. At the market equilibrium price, no children under 10 years old attend the circus. Big Top offers children under 10 a discount of 50 percent. How will this discount change the consumer surplus and producer surplus? Will Big Top be more efficient by offering the discount to children?
8. If Big Top is regulated to produce the efficient output, what is the quantity of tickets sold, what is the price of a ticket, and what would be the consumer surplus?
9. If Big Top is regulated to charge a price equal to average total cost, what is the quantity of tickets sold, the price of a ticket, and economic profit?
10. Draw a graph to illustrate the circus market if regulators set a price cap that enables Big Top to break even. Show the deadweight loss in your graph.

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per haircut)	Quantity (haircuts per hour)	Marginal cost (dollars per hour)
20	0	—
18	1	1
16	2	4
14	3	8
12	4	12
10	5	18

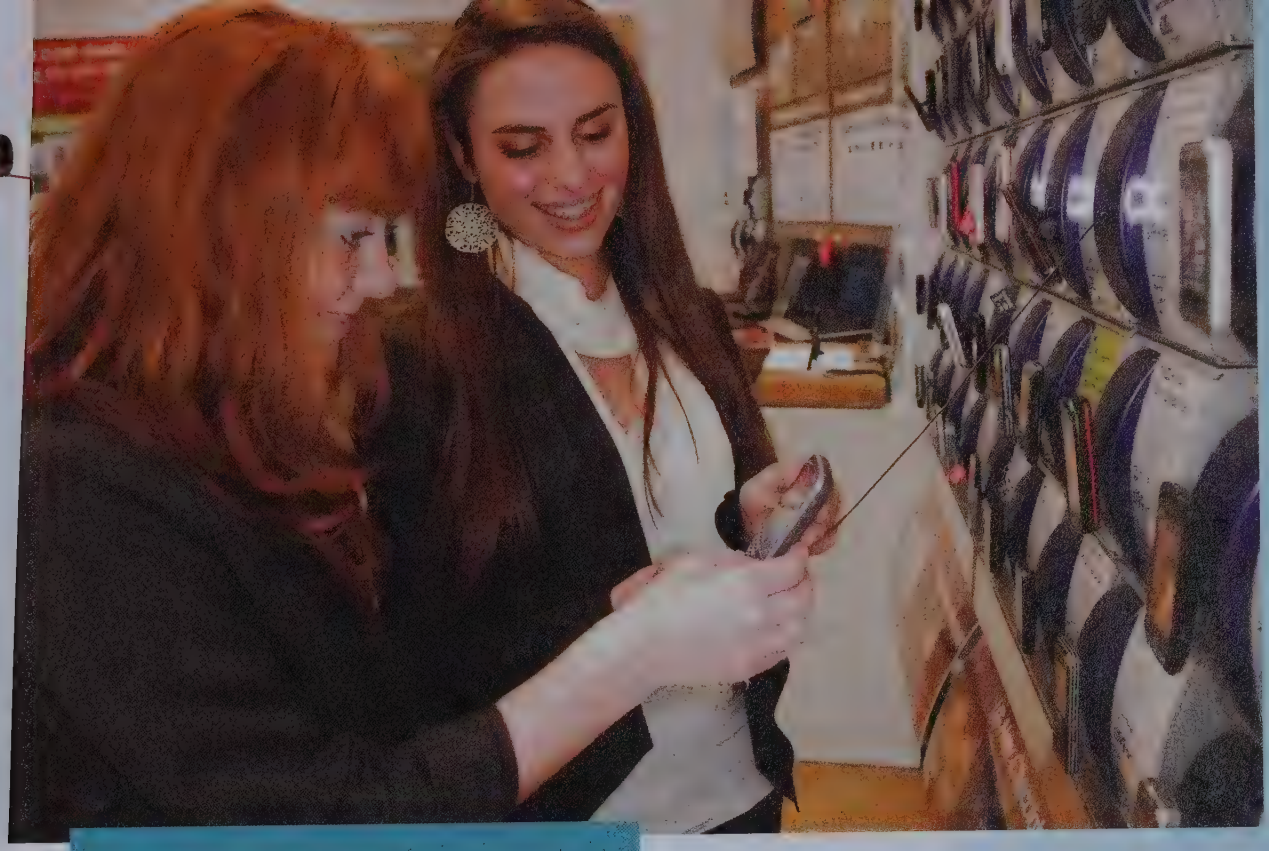
TABLE 2

Price (dollars per ticket)	Quantity (tickets per show)	Total cost (dollars per show)
20	0	1,000
18	100	1,600
16	200	2,200
14	300	2,800
12	400	3,400
10	500	4,000
8	600	4,600
6	700	5,200
4	800	5,800

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 16 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A firm is a natural monopoly if _____.
   A. it can produce the good at a price below its competitor's price
   B. it can produce a larger quantity of the good than other firms could
   C. the government grants it a public franchise or patent
   D. it can satisfy the market demand at a lower average total cost than other firms can
2. A monopoly _____.
   A. can choose its price and output and always has the option of price discriminating
   B. is a price taker and by offering a range of discounts can price discriminate
   C. that produces a good that cannot be resold might choose to price discriminate
   D. book store that offers a discount on Tuesdays is price discriminating
3. A single-price monopoly maximizes profit by producing the quantity at which _____.
   A. its total revenue will be as large as possible
   B. marginal revenue equals marginal cost and setting the price equal to marginal revenue
   C. marginal revenue equals marginal cost and setting the price equal to marginal cost
   D. marginal revenue equals marginal cost and setting the price equal to the most people are willing to pay for that quantity
4. A monopoly sets its price such that demand for the good produced is _____ .
   A. unit elastic
   B. inelastic
   C. elastic
   D. either elastic or inelastic, but never unit elastic
5. A single-price monopoly is _____.
   A. inefficient because it converts consumer surplus to producer surplus
   B. inefficient because it produces too small an output and creates a dead-weight loss
   C. efficient because buyers are paying a price equal to their willingness to pay
   D. efficient because it is the only producer of the good
6. A monopoly that price discriminates _____.
   A. benefits buyers because it offers the good at a variety of prices
   B. gains because it converts consumer surplus to economic profit
   C. uses resources more efficiently than would a competitive market
   D. enables buyers to maximize their consumer surplus
7. Governments regulate natural monopoly by capping the price at _____.
   A. marginal revenue and allowing the monopoly to maximize profit
   B. marginal cost so that the monopoly is efficient and makes zero economic profit
   C. average total cost, which allows the monopoly to be inefficient but make zero economic profit
   D. the buyers' willingness to pay, which makes the monopoly operate efficiently



Which cell phone?

17

Monopolistic Competition

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe and identify monopolistic competition.
2. Explain how a firm in monopolistic competition determines its output and price in the short run and the long run.
3. Explain why advertising costs are high and why firms use brand names in monopolistic competition.

17.1 WHAT IS MONOPOLISTIC COMPETITION?

Most real-world markets lie between the extremes of perfect competition in Chapter 15 and monopoly in Chapter 16. Most firms possess some power to set their prices as monopolies do, and they face competition from the entry of new firms as the firms in perfect competition do. We call the markets in which such firms operate *monopolistic competition*. (Another market that lies between perfect competition and monopoly is *oligopoly*, which we study in Chapter 18.)

Monopolistic competition is a market structure in which

- A large number of firms compete.
- Each firm produces a differentiated product.
- Firms compete on price, product quality, and marketing.
- Firms are free to enter and exit.

Large Number of Firms

In monopolistic competition, as in perfect competition, the industry consists of a large number of firms. The presence of a large number of firms has three implications for the firms in the industry.

About 20 firms, each with a small market share, produce a wide variety of treadmills.

Small Market Share

Each firm supplies a small part of the market. Consequently, while each firm can influence the price of its own product, it has little power to influence the average market price.

No Market Dominance

Each firm must be sensitive to the average market price of the product, but it does not pay attention to any one individual competitor. Because all the firms are relatively small, no single firm can dictate market conditions, so no one firm's actions directly affect the actions of the other firms.

Collusion Impossible

Firms sometimes try to profit from illegal agreements—collusion—with other firms to fix prices and not undercut each other. Collusion is impossible when the market has a large number of firms, as it does in monopolistic competition.

Product Differentiation

Product differentiation
Making a product that is slightly different from the products of competing firms.

Product differentiation is making a product that is slightly different from the products of competing firms. A differentiated product has close substitutes but it does not have perfect substitutes. Some people will pay more for one variety of the product, so when its price rises, the quantity demanded decreases but it does not (necessarily) decrease to zero. For example, Adidas, Asics, Diadora, Etonic, Fila, New Balance, Nike, Puma, and Reebok all make differentiated running shoes. Other things remaining the same, if the price of Adidas running shoes rises and the prices of the other shoes remain constant, Adidas sells fewer shoes.

Competing on Quality, Price, and Marketing

Product differentiation enables a firm to compete with other firms in three areas: quality, price, and marketing.

Quality

The quality of a product is the physical attributes that make it different from the products of other firms. Quality includes design, reliability, the service provided to the buyer, and the buyer's ease of access to the product. Quality lies on a spectrum that runs from high to low. Go to the J.D. Power Consumer Center at jdpower.com, and you'll see the many dimensions on which this rating agency describes the quality of autos, boats, financial services, travel and accommodation services, telecommunication services, and new homes—all examples of products that have a large range of quality variety.

Price

Because of product differentiation, a firm in monopolistic competition faces a downward-sloping demand curve. So, like a monopoly, the firm can set both its price and its output. But there is a tradeoff between the product's quality and price. A firm that makes a high-quality product can charge a higher price than a firm that makes a low-quality product.

Marketing

Because of product differentiation, a firm in monopolistic competition must market its product. Marketing takes two main forms: advertising and packaging. A firm that produces a high-quality product wants to sell it for a suitably high price. To be able to do so, it must advertise and package its product in a way that convinces buyers that they are getting the higher quality for which they are paying. For example, drug companies advertise and package their brand-name drugs to persuade buyers that these items are superior to the lower-priced generic alternatives. Similarly, a low-quality producer uses advertising and packaging to persuade buyers that although the quality is low, the low price more than compensates for this fact.

Entry and Exit

In monopolistic competition, there are no barriers to entry. Consequently, a firm cannot make an economic profit in the long run. When firms make economic profits, new firms enter the industry. This entry lowers prices and eventually eliminates economic profits. When economic losses are incurred, some firms leave the industry. This exit increases prices and profits of the remaining firms and eventually eliminates the economic losses. In long-run equilibrium, firms neither enter nor leave the industry and the firms in the industry make zero economic profit.

Identifying Monopolistic Competition

Several factors must be considered to identify monopolistic competition and distinguish it from perfect competition on the one side and oligopoly and monopoly on the other side. One of these factors is the extent to which a market is dominated by a small number of firms. To measure this feature of markets, economists use two indexes called measures of concentration. These indexes are

- The four-firm concentration ratio
- The Herfindahl-Hirschman Index

The Four-Firm Concentration Ratio

Four-firm concentration ratio
The percentage of the total revenue in an industry accounted for by the four largest firms in the industry.

The **four-firm concentration ratio** is the percentage of the total revenue of the industry accounted for by the four largest firms in the industry. The range of the concentration ratio is from almost zero for perfect competition to 100 percent for monopoly. This ratio is the main measure used to assess market structure.

Table 17.1 shows two calculations of the four-firm concentration ratio: one for tire makers and one for printers. In this example, 14 firms produce tires. The four largest firms have 80 percent of the industry's total revenue, so the four-firm concentration ratio is 80 percent. In the printing industry, with 1,004 firms, the four largest firms have only 0.5 percent of the industry's total revenue, so the four-firm concentration ratio is 0.5 percent.

A low concentration ratio indicates a high degree of competition, and a high concentration ratio indicates an absence of competition. A monopoly has a concentration ratio of 100 percent—the largest (and only) firm has 100 percent of the total revenue. A four-firm concentration ratio that exceeds 60 percent is regarded as an indication of a market that is highly concentrated and dominated by a few firms—oligopoly. A ratio of less than 40 percent is regarded as an indication of a competitive market—monopolistic competition.

TABLE 17.1
Concentration Ratio Calculations

(a) Firms' total revenue

Tire makers		Printers	
Firm	(millions of dollars)	Firm	(millions of dollars)
Top, Inc.	200	Fran's	4
ABC, Inc.	250	Ned's	3
Big, Inc.	150	Tom's	2
XYZ, Inc.	100	Jill's	1
4 largest firms	700	4 largest firms	10
Other 10 firms	175	Other 1,000 firms	1,990
Industry	875	Industry	2,000

(b) Four-firm concentration ratios

Tire makers		Printers	
Total revenue of 4 largest firms	700	Total revenue of 4 largest firms	10
Industry's total revenue	875	Industry's total revenue	2,000
Four-firm concentration ratio	$\frac{700}{875} \times 100 = 80$ percent	Four-firm concentration ratio	$\frac{10}{2{,}000} \times 100 = 0.5$ percent

The Herfindahl-Hirschman Index

Herfindahl-Hirschman Index
The square of the percentage market share of each firm summed over the 50 largest firms (or summed over all the firms if there are fewer than 50) in a market.

The **Herfindahl-Hirschman Index**—also called the HHI—is the square of the percentage market share of each firm summed over the 50 largest firms (or summed over all the firms if there are fewer than 50) in a market. For example, if there are four firms in a market and the market shares of the firms are 50 percent, 25 percent, 15 percent, and 10 percent, the Herfindahl-Hirschman Index is

$$HHI = 50^2 + 25^2 + 15^2 + 10^2 = 3{,}450.$$

In perfect competition, the HHI is small. For example, if each of the 50 largest firms in an industry has a market share of 0.1 percent, the HHI is $0.1^2 \times 50 = 0.5$. In a monopoly, the HHI is 10,000—the firm has 100 percent of the market: $100^2 = 10{,}000$.

The HHI became a popular measure of the degree of competition during the 1980s, when the Justice Department used it to classify markets. A market in which the HHI is less than 1,000 is regarded as being competitive and an example of monopolistic competition. A market in which the HHI lies between 1,000 and 1,800 is regarded as being moderately competitive. It probably is an example of monopolistic competition. But a market in which the HHI exceeds 1,800 is regarded as being uncompetitive. The Justice Department scrutinizes any merger of firms in a market in which the HHI exceeds 1,000 and is likely to challenge a merger if the HHI exceeds 1,800.

Concentration measures are a useful indicator of the degree of competition in a market, but they must be supplemented by other information to determine a market's structure. Table 17.2 summarizes the range of other information, along with the measures of concentration that determine which market structure describes a particular real-world market.

TABLE 17.2
Market Structure

Characteristics	Perfect competition	Monopolistic competition	Oligopoly	Monopoly
Number of firms in industry	Many	Many	Few	One
Product	Identical	Differentiated	Identical or differentiated	No close substitutes or regulated
Barriers to entry	None	None	Moderate	High
Firm's control over price	None	Some	Considerable	Considerable
Concentration ratio	0	Low	High	100
HHI	Close to 0	Less than 1,800	More than 1,800	10,000
Examples	Wheat, corn	Food, clothing	Cereals	Local water supply

Limitations of Concentration Measures

The two main limitations of concentration measures alone as determinants of market structure are their failure to take proper account of

- The geographical scope of the market
- Barriers to entry and firm turnover

Geographical Scope of the Market Concentration measures take a national view of the market. Many goods are sold in a *national* market, but some are sold in a *regional* market and some in a *global* one. The ready-mix concrete industry consists of local markets. The four-firm concentration ratio for ready-mix concrete is 6.2, and the HHI is 26. These numbers suggest a market that is close to perfect competition. But there is a high degree of concentration in the ready-mix concrete industry in most cities, so this industry is not competitive despite its low measured concentration. The four-firm concentration ratio for automobiles is 87, and the HHI is 2,725. These numbers suggest a highly concentrated market. But competition from imports gives the auto market many of the features of monopolistic competition.

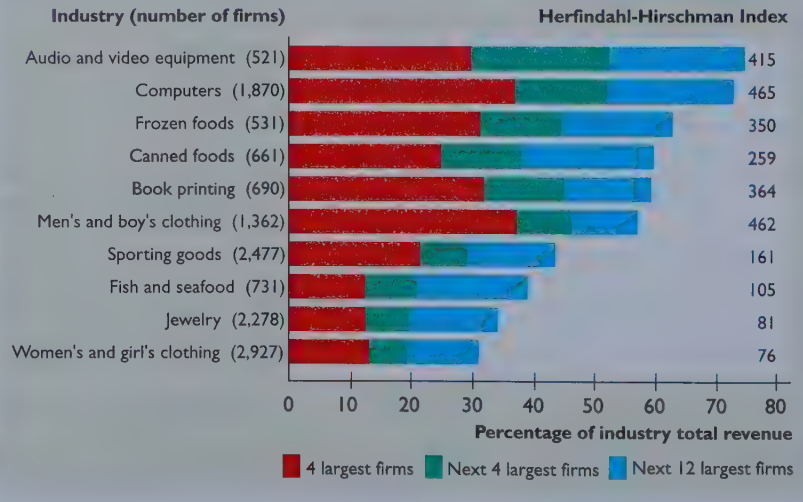
Barriers to Entry and Firm Turnover Concentration measures don't measure barriers to entry. Some industries are highly concentrated but have easy entry and an enormous amount of turnover of firms. For example, many small towns have few restaurants, but there are no restrictions on opening a restaurant and many firms attempt to do so.

A market with a high concentration ratio or HHI might nonetheless be competitive because low barriers to entry create *potential competition*. The few firms in a market face competition from many firms that can easily enter the market and will do so if economic profits are available.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Examples of Monopolistic Competition

These ten industries operate in monopolistic competition. They have a large number of firms, shown in parentheses after the industry's name. The red bars show the percentage of industry total revenue received by the 4 largest firms. The green bars show the percentage of industry total revenue received by the next 4 largest firms. The entire red, green, and blue bars show the percentage of industry total revenue received by the 20 largest firms. The Herfindahl-Hirschman Index is shown on the right.



SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Census Bureau.

CHECKPOINT 17.1

Describe and identify monopolistic competition.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 17.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows the total revenue of the 50 firms in the tattoo industry.

TABLE 1

Firm	Total revenue (dollars)
Bright Spots	450
Freckles	325
Love Galore	250
Native Birds	200
Next 16 firms (each)	50
Next 30 firms (each)	20
Industry	**2,625**

1. Calculate the four-firm concentration ratio and the HHI. What is the market structure of the tattoo industry?
2. What would the market structure of the tattoo industry be if each firm operated in a different city and the cities were spread across the nation?
3. What additional information would you need about the tattoo industry to be sure that it is an example of monopolistic competition?
4. Suppose that a new tattoo technology makes it easier for anyone to enter the tattoo market. How might the market structure change?

In the News

Is a prepaid phone plan right for you?

Cell-phone providers are offering no-contract plans. For example, T-Mobile's "flexpay" plans allow users to buy monthly service; Boost Mobile's no-contract plan has unlimited use; and Virgin Mobile's plan has unlimited calling for $49.99 a month. All providers are actively marketing their no-contract plans.

Source: *Wall Street Journal*, April 22, 2009

In what type of market are cell-phone plans sold? Explain your answer.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The four-firm concentration ratio is 46.6. The market shares of the four largest firms are 17.1, 12.4, 9.5, and 7.6.

   The HHI is 671.14. The market shares from largest to smallest are 17.1, 12.4, 9.5, 7.6, 1.9, and 0.8 percent. Square these numbers to get $292.41 + 153.76 + 90.25 + 57.76 + (3.61 \times 16) + (0.64 \times 30) = 671.14$.

   The four-firm concentration ratio and the HHI suggest that the tattoo industry is an example of monopolistic competition unless there are other reasons that would make the concentration measures unreliable guides.
2. If the 50 firms in the tattoo industry operate in different cities spread across the nation, each firm is effectively without competition. The market might be a series of monopolies.
3. The additional information needed is information about product differentiation; competition on price, quality, and marketing; and evidence of low barriers to the entry of new firms.
4. This new tattoo technology would most likely lead to the entry of more firms, greater product differentiation, and more competition.

Solution to In the News

The market structure is monopolistic competition. The number of cell-phone providers is large, and they offer differentiated services. No firm dominates the market and the firms compete on quality, price, and marketing. New cell-phone providers can enter the market with their own plan.

17.2 OUTPUT AND PRICE DECISIONS

Think about the decisions that Tommy Hilfiger must make about Tommy jeans. First, the firm must decide on the design and quality of its jeans and on its marketing program. We'll suppose that Tommy Hilfiger has already made these decisions so that we can concentrate on the firm's output and pricing decision. But we'll study quality and marketing decisions in the next section.

Because Tommy Hilfiger has chosen the quality of its jeans and the amount of marketing activity, it faces given costs and market demand. How, with these costs and market demand for its jeans, does Tommy Hilfiger decide the *quantity* of jeans to produce and the *price* at which to sell them?

The Firm's Profit-Maximizing Decision

A firm in monopolistic competition makes its output and price decision just as a monopoly firm does. Tommy Hilfiger maximizes profit by producing the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost and by charging the highest price that buyers are willing to pay for this quantity.

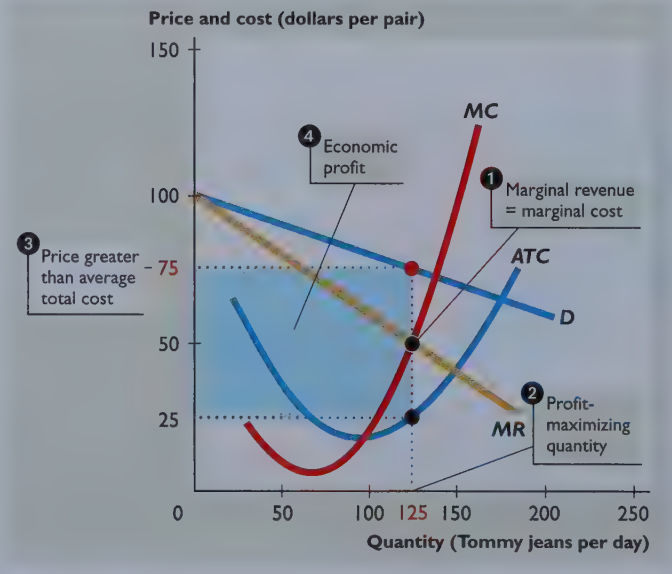
Figure 17.1 illustrates this decision for Tommy jeans. The demand curve for Tommy jeans is *D*. The *MR* curve shows the marginal revenue curve associated with this demand curve and is derived just like the marginal revenue curve of a single-price monopoly in Chapter 16. The *ATC* curve shows the average total cost of producing Tommy jeans, and *MC* is the marginal cost curve. Profit is maximized by producing 125 pairs of jeans a day and selling them at a price of $75 a pair. When Tommy Hilfiger produces 125 pairs of jeans a day, average total cost is $25 a pair and economic profit is $6,250 a day ($50 a pair multiplied by 125 pairs a day). The blue rectangle shows Tommy Hilfiger's economic profit.

FIGURE 17.1

Output and Price in Monopolistic Competition

MyEconLab Animation

1. Profit is maximized where marginal revenue equals marginal cost.
2. The profit-maximizing quantity is 125 pairs of Tommy jeans a day.
3. The profit-maximizing price is $75 a pair, which exceeds the average total cost of $25 a pair, so the firm makes an economic profit of $50 a pair.
4. The blue rectangle illustrates economic profit and its area, which equals $6,250 a day ($50 a pair multiplied by 125 pairs), measures economic profit.



Profit Maximizing Might Be Loss Minimizing

Tommy Hilfiger in Figure 17.1 is making a healthy economic profit, but such an outcome is not inevitable. The demand for a firm's product might be too low for it to make an economic profit. Excite@Home was such a firm. Offering high-speed Internet service over the same cable that provides television, Excite@Home hoped to capture a large share of the Internet portal market in competition with AOL, MSN, and a host of other providers.

Figure 17.2 illustrates the situation facing Excite@Home in 2001. The demand curve for its portal service is *D*, the marginal revenue curve is *MR*, the average total cost curve is *ATC*, and the marginal cost curve is *MC*. Excite@Home maximizes profit—equivalently, it minimizes its loss—by producing the output at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost. In Figure 17.2, this output is 40,000 customers. Excite@Home charges the price that buyers are willing to pay for this quantity, which is determined by the demand curve and which is $40 a month. With 40,000 customers, Excite@Home's average total cost is $50 a customer, so Excite@Home incurs an economic loss of $400,000 a month ($10 a customer multiplied by 40,000 customers). The red rectangle shows the firm's economic loss.

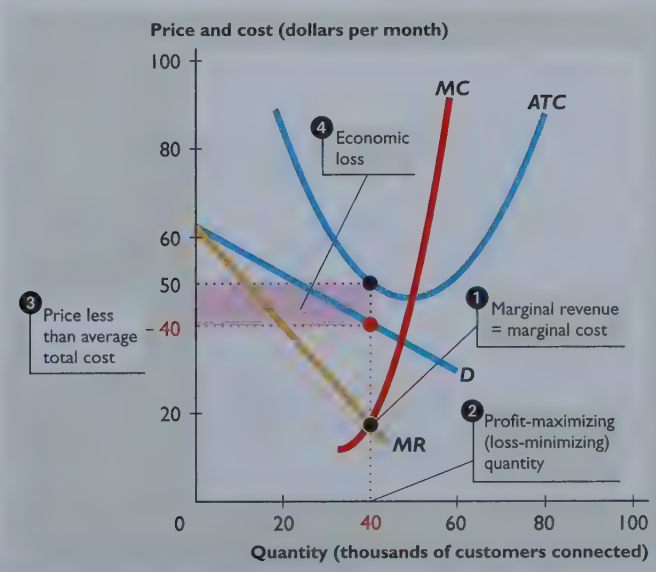
The largest loss that a firm will incur is equal to total fixed cost. The reason is that if the profit-maximizing (loss-minimizing) price is less than average variable cost, the firm will shut down temporarily and produce nothing (just like a firm in perfect competition—see pp. 377–378).

So far, the firm in monopolistic competition looks like a single-price monopoly. It produces the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost and then charges the highest price that buyers are willing to pay for that quantity. The difference between monopoly and monopolistic competition lies in what happens when firms either make an economic profit or incur an economic loss.

FIGURE 17.2

Economic Loss in the Short Run

MyEconLab Animation



1. Profit is maximized and loss is minimized where marginal revenue equals marginal cost.
2. The loss-minimizing quantity is 40,000 customers connected.
3. The price of $40 a month is less than average total cost of $50 a month, so the firm incurs an economic loss of $10 a customer.
4. The red rectangle illustrates economic loss and its area, which equals $400,000 a month ($10 a customer multiplied by 40,000 customers), measures the economic loss.

Long Run: Zero Economic Profit

A firm like Excite@Home is not going to incur an economic loss for long. Eventually, it exits the market. So in the long run, no firm in the market will be incurring an economic loss. Also, there is no restriction on entry in monopolistic competition, so if firms in an industry are making economic profits, other firms have an incentive to enter that industry and each firm's economic profit falls. So in the long run, firms will enter until all firms are making zero economic profit.

Tommy Hilfiger is making an economic profit, which is an incentive for the Gap and Calvin Klein to start to make jeans similar to Tommy jeans. As they enter the jeans market, the demand for Tommy jeans decreases. At each point in time, the firm maximizes its profit by producing the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost and by charging the highest price that buyers are willing to pay for this quantity. But as demand decreases, marginal revenue decreases and the profit-maximizing quantity and price fall.

Figure 17.3 shows the long-run equilibrium. The demand curve for Tommy jeans and the marginal revenue curve have shifted leftward. The firm produces 75 pairs of jeans a day and sells them for $50 each. At this output level, average total cost is also $50 a pair. So Tommy Hilfiger is making zero economic profit on its jeans. When all the firms in the industry are making zero economic profit, there is no incentive for new firms to enter.

If demand is so low relative to costs that firms incur economic losses, exit will occur. As firms leave an industry, the demand for the products of the remaining firms increases and their demand curves shift rightward. The exit process ends when all the firms in the industry are making zero economic profit.

FIGURE 17.3

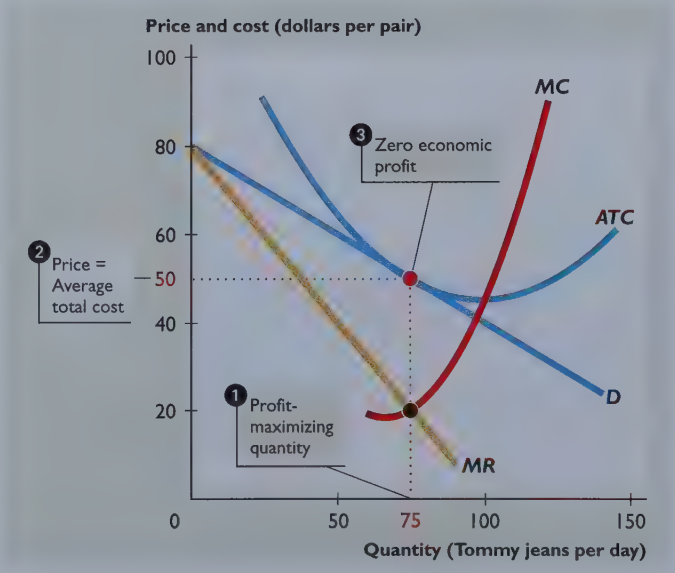
Output and Price in the Long Run

MyEconLab Animation

Economic profit encourages entry, which decreases the demand for each firm's product. Economic loss encourages exit, which increases the demand for each remaining firm's product.

When the demand curve touches the average total cost curve at the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost, the market is in long-run equilibrium.

1. The output that maximizes profit is 75 pairs of Tommy jeans a day.
2. The price, $50 a pair, equals average total cost.
3. Economic profit is zero.



Monopolistic Competition and Perfect Competition

Figure 17.4 compares monopolistic competition and perfect competition in the long run and highlights two key differences: excess capacity and markup.

Excess Capacity

A firm's **efficient scale** is the quantity at which average total cost is a minimum—the quantity at the bottom of the U-shaped *ATC* curve. A firm's **excess capacity** is the amount by which its efficient scale exceeds the quantity that it produces. Figure 17.4(a) shows that in the long run Tommy Hilfiger has *excess capacity*. Because the demand curve for Tommy jeans is downward sloping, zero economic profit occurs where the *ATC* curve is downward sloping. A firm in perfect competition in the long run, Figure 17.4(b), has no excess capacity. Because its demand curve is horizontal, zero economic profit occurs at minimum average total cost.

Efficient scale
The quantity at which average total cost is a minimum.

Excess capacity
The amount by which the efficient scale exceeds the quantity that the firm produces.

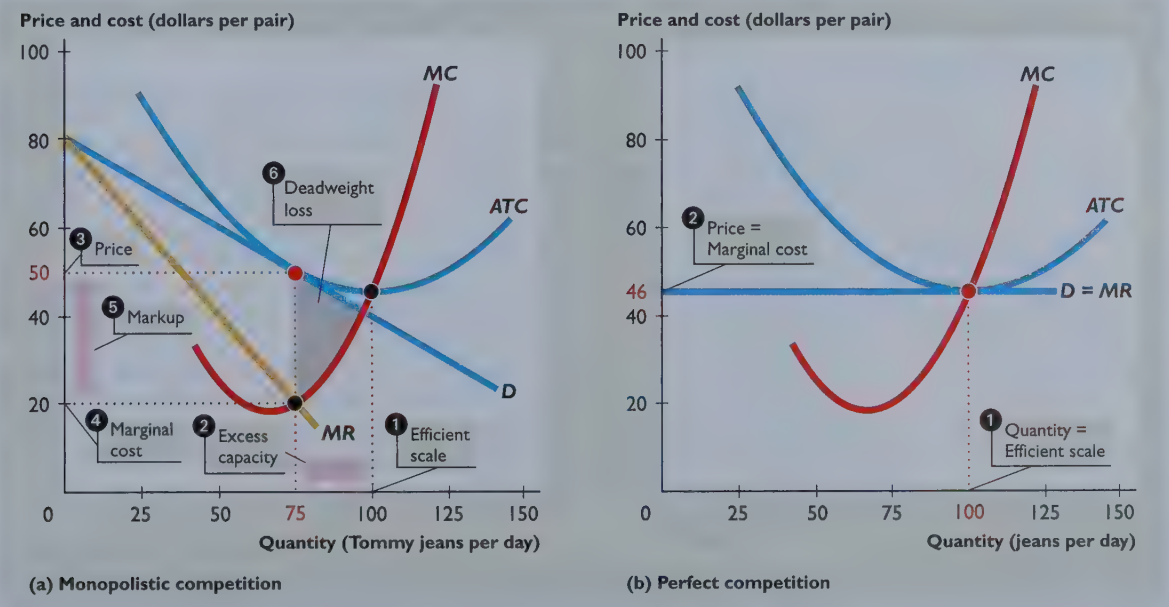
Markup

A firm's **markup** is the amount by which its price exceeds its marginal cost. Figure 17.4(a) shows Tommy's markup. Figure 17.4(b) shows the zero markup of a firm in perfect competition. Buyers pay a higher price in monopolistic competition than in perfect competition and pay more than marginal cost.

Markup
The amount by which price exceeds marginal cost.

FIGURE 17.4
Excess Capacity and Markup in the Long Run

MyEconLab Animation



❶ The efficient scale (at minimum *ATC*) is 100 pairs a day. In the long run in monopolistic competition, the firm produces 75 jeans a day and has ❷ excess capacity. ❸ Price exceeds ❹ marginal cost by the amount of the ❺ markup and ❻ creates a deadweight loss.

In contrast, the firm in perfect competition has no excess capacity and no markup because the demand for the firm's output is perfectly elastic. ❶ The quantity produced equals the efficient scale and ❷ price equals marginal cost.

Is Monopolistic Competition Efficient?

You've learned that resources are used efficiently when marginal benefit equals marginal cost. You've also learned that price measures marginal benefit. So if the price of a pair of Tommy jeans exceeds the marginal cost of producing them, the quantity of Tommy jeans produced is less than the efficient quantity. And you've just seen that in long-run equilibrium in monopolistic competition, price *does* exceed marginal cost.

Deadweight Loss

Because price exceeds marginal cost, monopolistic competition creates deadweight loss, just like monopoly. Figure 17.4(a) shows this deadweight loss. But is monopolistic competition less efficient than perfect competition?

Making the Relevant Comparison

Two economists meet in the street, and one asks the other, "How is your husband?" "Compared to what?" is the quick reply. This bit of economic wit illustrates a key point: Before we can make an effective comparison, we must check out the available alternatives.

The markup that drives a gap between price and marginal cost in monopolistic competition arises from product differentiation. Tommy jeans are not quite the same as jeans from Banana Republic, CK, Diesel, DKNY, Earl Jeans, Gap, Levi, Ralph Lauren, or any of the other dozens of producers of jeans, so the demand for Tommy jeans is not perfectly elastic. The only way in which the demand for jeans from Tommy Hilfiger might be perfectly elastic is if there were only one kind of jeans and Tommy, along with every other firm, made them. In this situation, Tommy jeans would be indistinguishable from all other jeans. They wouldn't even have identifying labels.

If there were only one kind of jeans, the marginal benefit from a pair of jeans would almost certainly be less than it is with variety. People value variety. And people value variety not only because it enables each person to select what he or she likes best but also because it provides an external benefit. Most of us enjoy seeing variety in the choices of others. Contrast a scene from the China of the 1960s when everyone wore a Mao tunic with the China of today, when everyone wears the clothes of their own choosing. Or contrast a scene from the Germany of the 1930s when almost everyone who could afford a car owned a first-generation Volkswagen Beetle with the world of today, with its variety of styles and types of automobiles.

If people value variety, why don't we see infinite variety? The answer is that variety is costly. Each different variety of any product must be designed, and then customers must be informed about it. These initial costs of design and marketing—called setup costs—mean that some varieties that are too close to others already available are just not worth creating.

The Bottom Line

Product variety is both valued and costly. The efficient degree of product variety is the one for which the buyer's willingness to pay equals the marginal cost of product variety. The loss that arises because the willingness to pay for one more unit of a given variety exceeds marginal cost is offset by a gain that arises from having more product variety. So compared to the alternative—complete product uniformity—monopolistic competition is efficient.

CHECKPOINT 17.2

Explain how a firm in monopolistic competition determines its output and price in the short run and the long run.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 17.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Natti is a dot.com entrepreneur who has established a Web site at which people can design and buy awesome sunglasses. Natti pays $4,000 a month for her Web server and Internet connection. The sunglasses that her customers design are made to order by another firm, and Natti pays this firm $50 a pair. Natti has no other costs. Table 1 shows the demand schedule for Natti's sunglasses.

1. Calculate Natti's profit-maximizing output, price, and economic profit.
2. Do you expect other firms to enter the market and compete with Natti?
3. What happens to the demand for Natti's sunglasses in the long run? What happens to Natti's economic profit in the long run?

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per pair)	Quantity (pairs per month)
250	0
200	50
150	100
100	150
50	200
0	250

In the News

Condé Nast shuts down Portfolio

Condé Nast Publications launched its monthly business magazine *Portfolio* less than two years ago. In late 2008, Condé Nast cut its payroll and advertising budgets by an average of 5 percent. *Portfolio* was hit with the biggest cuts. Recently, Condé Nast shut down *Portfolio*.

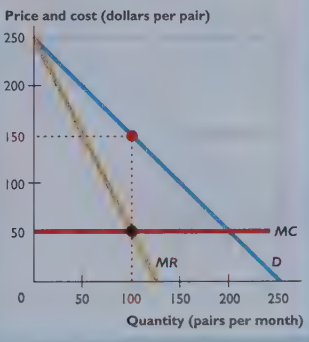
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, April 28, 2009

Explain the effects of the payroll and advertising budget cuts on Condé Nast's economic loss in the short run. Why did Condé Nast shut down *Portfolio*?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Marginal cost, *MC*, is $50 a pair—the price that Natti pays her supplier of sunglasses. To find marginal revenue, calculate the change in total revenue when the quantity increases by 1 pair of sunglasses. Figure 1 shows the demand curve, the marginal revenue curve, and the marginal cost curve. Profit is maximized when *MC* = *MR* and Natti sells 100 pairs a month. The price is $150, and average total cost, *ATC*, is $90—the sum of $50 marginal (and average variable) cost and $40 average fixed cost. Economic profit is $60 a pair on 100 pairs a month, so it is $6,000 a month.
2. Natti is making an economic profit, so firms have an incentive to enter the Web sunglasses market and will do so.
3. As firms enter the market, the demand for Natti's sunglasses decreases, the price of Natti's sunglasses falls, and Natti's economic profit decreases. In the long run, Natti's will make zero economic profit.

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

Payroll and advertising budgets are fixed costs, so a cut in these costs shifts the *ATC* and *MC* curves downward. With no change in the prices of the magazines, Condé Nast's economic loss decreased. Condé Nast shut down *Portfolio* because its loss from *Portfolio* exceeded its total fixed cost and the company expected the loss to continue in the coming year.

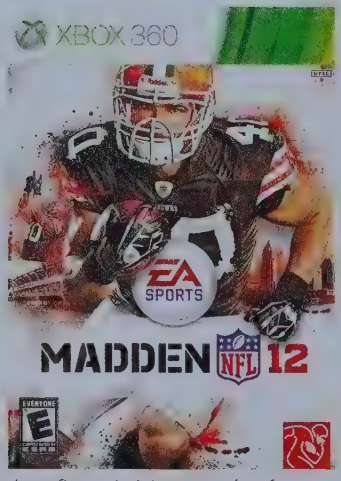
17.3 PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT AND MARKETING

When we studied a firm's output and price decisions, we supposed that the firm had already made its product quality and marketing decisions. We're now going to study these decisions and the impact they have on the firm's output, price, and economic profit.

Product Development

To enjoy economic profits, firms in monopolistic competition must be continually developing new products because whenever firms make economic profits, imitators emerge and set up business. So to maintain its economic profit, a firm must seek out new products that will provide it with a competitive edge, even if only temporarily. A firm that manages to introduce a new and differentiated product will temporarily face a less elastic demand and will be able to increase its price temporarily. The firm will make an economic profit. Eventually, new firms that make close substitutes for the innovative product will enter and compete away the economic profit. So to restore economic profit, the firm must again innovate.

Profit-Maximizing Product Development



A profit-maximizing game has features that users value at least as highly as the marginal cost of programming the features.

The decision to develop a new product (or new version of a product) is based on the same type of profit-maximizing calculation that you've already studied. At a low level of product development, the marginal revenue from a better product exceeds the marginal cost. At a high level of product development, the marginal cost of a better product exceeds the marginal revenue. When the marginal cost of a better product equals the marginal revenue from a better product, the firm is doing the profit-maximizing amount of product development.

For example, when Electronic Arts released its latest version of Madden NFL, it was probably not the best game that Electronic Arts could have created. But it was a game with features whose marginal revenue—arising from consumers' willingness to pay—equaled the marginal cost of those features.

Efficiency and Product Development

Is product development an efficient activity? Does it benefit the consumer? There are two views about the answers to these questions. One view is that monopolistic competition brings to market many improved products that bring great benefits to the consumer. Clothing, kitchen and other household appliances, computers, computer programs, cars, and many other products keep getting better every year, and the consumer benefits from these improved products.

But many so-called improvements amount to little more than changing the appearance of a product or giving a different look to the packaging. In these cases, there is little objective benefit to the consumer.

But regardless of whether a product improvement is real or imagined, its value to the consumer is its marginal benefit, which equals the amount the consumer is willing to pay. In other words, the value of a product improvement is the increase in price that the consumer is willing to pay. The marginal benefit to the producer is marginal revenue, which in equilibrium equals marginal cost. Because price exceeds marginal cost in monopolistic competition, product improvement is not pushed to its efficient level.

Marketing

Firms differentiate their products by designing and developing features that differ from those of their competitors' products. But firms also attempt to create a consumer perception of product differentiation even when actual differences are small. Advertising and packaging are the principal means firms use to achieve this end. An American Express card is a different product from a Visa card, but the actual differences are not the main ones that American Express emphasizes in its marketing. The deeper message is that if you use an American Express card, you can be like a celebrity or a high-profile successful person.

Marketing Expenditures

Firms incur huge costs to ensure that buyers appreciate and value the differences between their own products and those of their competitors. So a large proportion of the price that we pay covers the cost of selling a good, and this proportion is increasing. Advertising in newspapers and magazines and on radio, television, and the Internet is one type of selling cost, but it is not the only one. Selling costs include the cost of shopping malls that look like movie sets; glossy catalogs and brochures; and the salaries, airfares, and hotel bills of salespeople.

The total scale of advertising costs is hard to estimate, but some components can be measured. A survey conducted by a commercial agency found that about 15 percent of the price of liquor, 12 percent of the prices of movies and medical doctors, and about 10 percent of the price of beer cover advertising expenditures.

EYE on CELL PHONES

Which Cell Phone?

There is a lot of product differentiation in cell phones: Nokia makes 143 versions; Samsung makes 103; and Sony Ericsson makes 100. In the three months from April through June 2011, hundreds of new varieties of cell phones were announced by the top 20 firms in this market. Why is there so much variety in cell phones?

The answer is that preferences are diverse and the cost of matching the diversity of preference is low.

Think about the ways in which cell phones differ: just a few of them are their dimensions, weight, navigation tools, talk time, standby time, screen, camera features, audio features, memory, connectivity, processor speed, storage, and network capability.

Each one of these features comes in dozens of varieties. If we combine only 10 of these features, each having 6 varieties, there are 1 million different possible cell-phone designs.

Firms produce variety only when the marginal cost of doing so is less than the marginal benefit. The marginal cost of some cell-phone variety is not large. Adding a feature to a camera, making the memory a bit bigger, and using a more economical battery are all relatively low-cost adjustments that phone designers can make.

A new way of adding variety, at almost zero cost, brings product differentiation that makes each cell phone unique to the preferences of each individual. This new way is the cell-phone application, or app.

Apple has only two versions of the iPhone, but because of the large and growing number of program apps, each iPhone owner can load their phone with exactly the apps they want.

In long-run equilibrium, entry and innovation by each competitor will drive economic profit toward zero. Each cell-phone maker will offer a degree of product differentiation that equates the marginal cost of variety with its marginal revenue. But the pursuit of economic profit will spur ever more innovation and consumers will be confronted with ever wider choice.

For the U.S. economy as a whole, there are some 20,000 advertising agencies, which employ more than 200,000 people and have total revenue of $45 billion. But these numbers are only part of the total cost of advertising because many firms have their own internal advertising departments, the costs of which we can only guess.

Advertising expenditures and other selling costs affect firms' profits in two ways: They increase costs and they change demand. Let's look at these effects.

Selling Costs and Total Costs

Selling costs such as advertising expenditures increase the costs of a monopolistically competitive firm above those of a perfectly competitive firm or a monopoly. Advertising costs and other selling costs are fixed costs. They do not vary as total output varies. So, just like fixed production costs, advertising costs per unit of output decrease as production increases.

Figure 17.5 shows how selling costs and advertising expenditures change a firm's average total cost. The blue curve shows the average total cost of production. The red curve shows the firm's average total cost of production plus advertising. The height of the shaded area between the two curves shows the average fixed cost of advertising. The *total* cost of advertising is fixed. But the *average* cost of advertising decreases as output increases.

Figure 17.5 shows that if advertising increases the quantity sold by a large enough amount, it can lower average total cost. For example, if the quantity sold increases from 25 pairs of jeans a day with no advertising to 100 pairs of jeans a day with advertising, average total cost falls from $60 a pair to $40 a pair. The reason is that although the *total* fixed cost has increased, the greater fixed cost is spread over a greater output, so average total cost decreases.

FIGURE 17.5

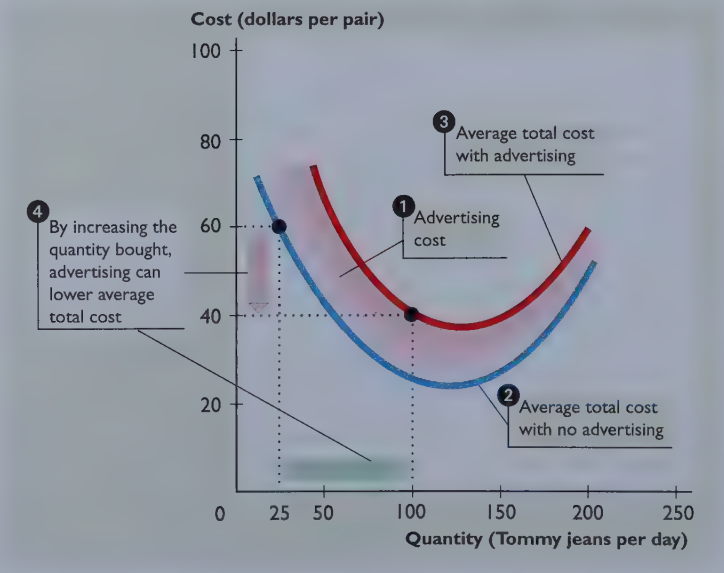
Selling Costs and Total Costs

MyEconLab Animation

Selling costs such as the cost of advertising are fixed costs.

❶ When advertising costs are added to ❷ the average total cost of production, ❸ average total cost increases by more at small outputs than at large outputs.

❹ If advertising enables the quantity sold to increase from 25 pairs of jeans a day to 100 pairs a day, it *lowers* average total cost from $60 a pair to $40 a pair.



Selling Costs and Demand

Advertising and other selling efforts change the demand for a firm's product. But how? Does demand increase or does it decrease? The most natural answer is that advertising increases demand. By informing people about the quality of its products or by persuading people to switch from the products of other firms, a firm might expect to increase the demand for its own products.

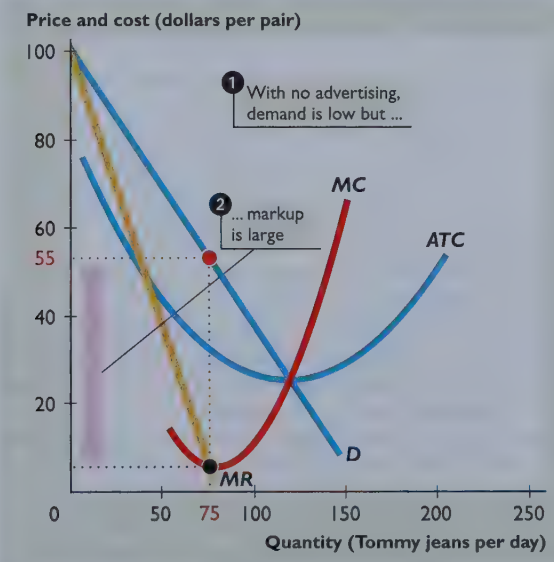
But all firms in monopolistic competition advertise. And all seek to persuade customers that they have the best deal. If advertising enables a firm to survive, it might increase the number of firms in the market. And to the extent that it increases the number of firms, it decreases the demand for any one firm's products. With all firms advertising, the demand for any one firm's product might become more elastic. So advertising can end up not only lowering average total cost but also lowering the price and decreasing the markup.

Figure 17.6 illustrates this possible effect of advertising. In part (a), with no advertising, the demand for Tommy jeans is not very elastic. Profit is maximized at 75 pairs of jeans a day, and the markup is large. In part (b), advertising, which is a fixed cost, increases average total cost and shifts the average total cost curve upward from ATC_0 to ATC_1 but leaves the marginal cost curve unchanged at MC. Demand becomes much more elastic, the profit-maximizing quantity increases, and the markup shrinks.

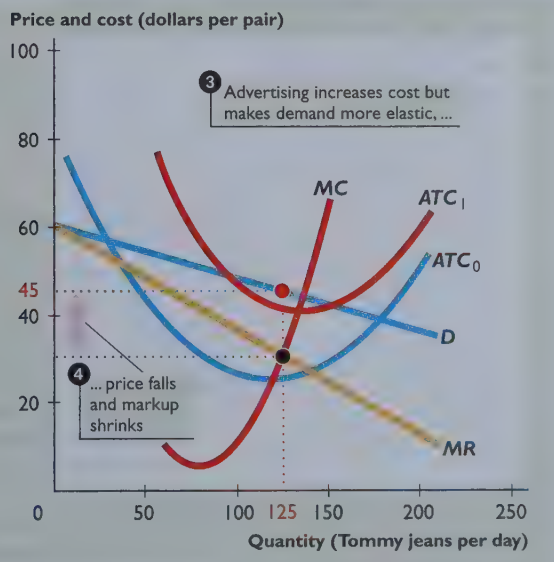
FIGURE 17.6

Advertising and the Markup

MyEconLab Animation



(a) No firms advertise



(b) All firms advertise

1 With no firms advertising, demand is low and not very elastic, so the 2 markup is large.

3 Advertising shifts the average total cost curve upward from ATC_0 to ATC_1. If, with all firms advertising, demand becomes more elastic, 4 the price falls and the markup shrinks.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Some Selling Costs You Pay

When you buy a new pair of running shoes, you're buying materials that cost $9, paying the producer in Asia and the shipping company for production and transportation costs of $8, paying the U.S. government an import duty of $3, and paying advertisers, retailers, and others who provide sales and distribution services $50.

The table provides a breakdown of the cost of a pair of shoes. Notice the huge gap between the retailer's cost and the price that you pay. The retail markup is about 100 percent.

Running shoes are not unusual. Almost everything that you buy includes a selling cost component that exceeds one half of the total cost. Your clothing, food, electronic items, DVDs, magazines, and even your textbooks cost more to sell than they cost to produce.

Manufacturer (Asia)		Nike (Beaverton, Oregon)		Retailer (your town)	
Materials	$9.00				
Cost of labor	$2.75	Cost of shoe to Nike	$20.00	Cost of shoe to retailer	$35.50
Cost of capital	$3.00	Sales, distribution, and administration	$5.00	Sales clerk's wages	$9.50
Profit	$1.75	Advertising	$4.00	Shop rent	$9.00
Shipping	$0.50	Research & development	$0.25	Retailer's other costs	$7.00
Import duty	$3.00	Nike's profit	$6.25	Retailer's profit	$9.00
Nike's cost	**$20.00**	**Retailer's cost**	**$35.50**	**Price paid by you**	**$70.00**

Using Advertising to Signal Quality

Some advertising, like the Coca-Cola 2011 Super Bowl border guards TV commercial and the Pepsi Max controlling girlfriend commercial, both of which cost a huge number of dollars, seems hard to understand. There isn't much concrete information about the drinks from the situations depicted. No one who sees these commercials learns anything about Coca-Cola or Pepsi Max. What is the gain from spending millions of dollars to advertise a well-known drink?

Signal
An action taken by an informed person (or firm) to send a message to less-informed people.

One answer is that advertising is a signal to the consumer of a high-quality product. A **signal** is an action taken by an informed person (or firm) to send a message to less-informed people. Think about two colas: Coke and Oke.

Oke knows that its cola is not very good and that its taste varies a lot depending on which cheap unsold cola it happens to buy each week. So Oke knows that while it could get a lot of people to try Oke by advertising, they would all quickly discover its poor quality and switch back to the cola they bought before. The amount that Oke spent on advertising would exceed the revenue that came in.

Coke, in contrast, knows that its product has a high-quality consistent taste and that once someone has tried it, there is a good chance that they'll never drink

anything but Coke. If Coke ran a costly advertising campaign, more people would try Coke and most would stick with it. The revenue earned would exceed the cost of the advertising campaign.

On the basis of this reasoning, Oke doesn't advertise but Coke does. And Coke spends a lot of money to make a big splash.

Cola drinkers who see Coke's splashy ads believe that the firm would not spend so much money advertising if its product were not truly good. So the cola drinker reasons that Coke is indeed a really good product. The flashy expensive ad has signaled that Coke is really good without saying anything about Coke.

Notice that if advertising is a signal, it doesn't need any specific product information. It just needs to be expensive and hard to miss. That's what a lot of advertising looks like. So the signaling theory of advertising predicts much of the advertising that we see.

Brand Names

Many firms create a brand name and spend a lot of money promoting it. Why? What benefit does a brand name bring to justify the sometimes high cost of establishing it? The basic answer is that a brand name provides consumers with information about the quality of a product and the producer with an incentive to achieve a high and consistent quality standard.

To see how a brand name helps the consumer, think about how you use brand names to get information about quality. You're on a road trip, and it is time to find a place to spend the night. You see roadside advertisements for Holiday Inn and Embassy Suites and for Joe's Motel and Annie's Driver's Stop. You know about Holiday Inn and Embassy Suites because you've stayed in them before. And you've seen their advertisements. You know what to expect from them. You have no information at all about Joe's and Annie's. They might be better than the lodging you do know about, but without that knowledge, you're not going to chance them. You use the brand name as information and stay at Holiday Inn.

This same story explains why a brand name provides an incentive to the producer to achieve high and consistent quality. Because no one would know whether they were offering a high standard of service, Joe's and Annie's have no incentive to do so. But equally, because everyone expects a given standard of service from Holiday Inn, a failure to meet a customer's expectation would almost surely lose that customer to a competitor. So Holiday Inn has a strong incentive to deliver what it promises in the advertising that creates its brand name.

Efficiency of Advertising and Brand Names

To the extent that advertising and brand names provide consumers with information about the precise nature of product differences and about product quality, they benefit the consumer and enable a better product choice to be made. But the opportunity cost of the additional information must be weighed against the gain to the consumer.

The final verdict on the efficiency of monopolistic competition is ambiguous. In some cases, the gains from extra product variety unquestionably offset the selling costs and the extra cost arising from excess capacity. The tremendous varieties of books and magazines, clothing, food, and drinks are examples of such gains. It is less easy to see the gains from being able to buy brand-name drugs that have a chemical composition identical to that of a generic alternative, but many people do willingly pay more for the brand-name alternative.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 17.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 17.3

Explain why advertising costs are high and why firms use brand names in monopolistic competition.

Practice Problems

Bianca bakes delicious cookies. Her total fixed cost is $40 a day, and her average variable cost is $1 a bag. Few people know about Bianca's Cookies, and she maximizes her profit by selling 10 bags a day for $5 a bag. Bianca thinks that if she spends $50 a day on advertising, she will sell 25 bags a day for $5 a bag.

1. If Bianca's belief about the effect of advertising is correct, can she increase her economic profit by advertising?
2. If Bianca advertises, will her average total cost increase or decrease at the quantity produced?
3. If Bianca advertises, will she continue to sell her cookies for $5 a bag or will she raise her price or lower her price?

In the News

Purex tackles tough market, using new spin

Americans like to pour their own laundry detergent, but Dial plans to launch Purex Complete, a "3-in-1" laundry sheet embedded with detergent, fabric softener, and antistatic agents and in an easy to use container. Only about 50 percent of consumers currently use softener and antistatic agents (laundry additives). Dial will spend $50 million marketing Purex Complete.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, April 28, 2009

Why create a new laundry detergent when there are so many? What "new spin"would you stress in the marketing campaign?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. With no advertising, Bianca's total revenue is $50 (10 bags at $5 a bag) and her total cost is $50 ($40 total fixed cost plus $10 total variable cost). Bianca's economic profit is zero. With $50 a day advertising expenditure, total revenue is $125 (25 bags at $5 a bag) and total cost is $115 ($90 total fixed cost plus $25 total variable cost). Bianca's economic profit with no price change is $10, so Bianca can increase her economic profit by advertising.
2. If Bianca advertises, her average total cost will decrease. With no advertising, her average total cost is $5 a bag ($50 ÷ 10). With advertising, her average total cost is $4.60 a bag ($115 ÷ 25).
3. We can't say if Bianca will sell her cookies for $5 a bag. Advertising changes the demand for her cookies. Although it increases fixed cost, marginal cost remains at $1 a bag. Bianca will sell the profit-maximizing quantity at the highest price she can charge for that quantity.

Solution to In the News

A new product is developed and launched if the marginal benefit from its development exceeds the marginal cost of its development. Because many consumers seem to find separate laundry additives inconvenient, the marketing campaign should target these people and stress the convenience feature.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe and identify monopolistic competition.

- Monopolistic competition is a market structure in which a large number of firms compete; each firm produces a product that is slightly different from the products of its competitors; firms compete on price, quality, and marketing; and new firms are free to enter the industry.
- Monopolistic competition is identified by a low degree of concentration measured by either the four-firm concentration ratio or the HHI.

2 Explain how a firm in monopolistic competition determines its output and price in the short run and the long run.

- The firm in monopolistic competition faces a downward-sloping demand curve and produces the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost.
- Entry and exit result in zero economic profit and excess capacity in long-run equilibrium.

3 Explain why advertising costs are high and why firms use brand names in monopolistic competition.

- Firms in monopolistic competition innovate and develop new products to maintain economic profit.
- Advertising expenditures increase total cost, but they might lower average total cost if the quantity sold increases by enough.
- Advertising expenditures might increase demand, but they might also increase competition and decrease the demand facing a firm.
- Whether monopolistic competition is inefficient depends on the value people place on product variety.

Key Terms

Efficient scale, 441
Excess capacity, 441
Four-firm concentration ratio, 434
Herfindahl-Hirschman Index, 435
Markup, 441
Product differentiation, 432
Signal, 448

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 17 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

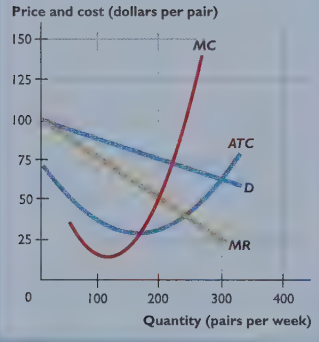
Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Which of the following items are sold by firms in monopolistic competition? Explain your selections.

- Cable television service
- Wheat
- Athletic shoes
- Soda
- Toothbrushes
- Ready-mix concrete

2. The four-firm concentration ratio for audio equipment makers is 30 and for electric lamp makers is 89. The HHI for audio equipment makers is 415 and for electric lamp makers is 2,850. Which of these markets is an example of monopolistic competition?

FIGURE 1



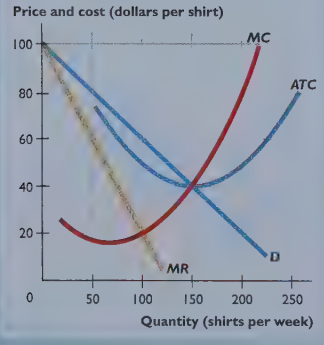
Use Figure 1, which shows the demand curve, marginal revenue curve, and cost curves of Lite and Kool, Inc., a producer of running shoes in monopolistic competition, to work Problems **3** to **5**.

3. In the short run, what quantity does Lite and Kool produce, what price does it charge, and does it make an economic profit?

4. In the short run, does Lite and Kool have excess capacity and what is its markup?

5. Do you expect firms to enter the running shoes market or exit from that market in the long run? Explain your answer.

FIGURE 2



Use Figure 2, which shows the demand curve, marginal revenue curve, and cost curves of Stiff Shirt, Inc., a producer of shirts in monopolistic competition, to work Problems **6** and **7**.

6. In the short run, what is the quantity that Stiff Shirt produces, the price it charges, its economic profit, markup, and excess capacity?

7. In the long run, will new firms enter the shirt market or will firms exit from that market and will the price of a shirt rise or fall? Explain your answer.

8. Mike's, a firm in monopolistic competition, produces bikes. With no advertising, Mike's profit-maximizing output is 500 bikes a day and the price is $100 a bike. Now all firms begin to advertise. With advertising, Mike's maximizes profit by producing 1,000 bikes a day and charging $50 a bike. How does advertising change Mike's markup and excess capacity?

9. Apple developing new iPad
Apple Inc. reported blowout earnings for the quarter ended June 25, due in part to the popularity of its iPad. The company sold 9.3 million units in the quarter, nearly triple what it sold a year earlier. Still, its next generation iPad is expected later in 2011.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, August 19, 2011

With Apple's iPad sales so strong, why would Apple Inc. be rushing to bring a more advanced iPad to the market? Explain how Apple's economic profit will likely change as competition in the iPad market intensifies.

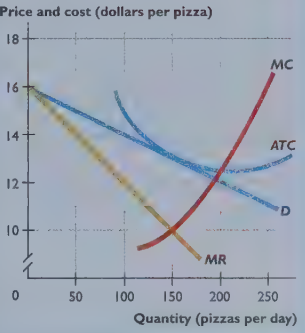
Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab

1. Washtenaw Dairy in Ann Arbor, Michigan, sells 63 flavors of Strohs Mooney's ice cream, and Ben and Jerry's Web site also lists 63 different flavors of ice cream. These numbers are similar to the varieties of cell phones sold by Samsung, Nokia, and Motorola. Toyota makes only 16 varieties of vehicles and Boeing makes 16 varieties of airplanes. Why is there more variety in cell phones and ice cream than in automobiles and airplanes?
2. The HHI for automobiles is 2,350, for sporting goods is 161, for batteries is 2,883, and for jewelry is 81. Which of these markets is an example of monopolistic competition?

Use Figure 1, which shows the demand curve, marginal revenue curve, and cost curves of La Bella Pizza, a firm in monopolistic competition, to work Problems 3 and 4.

FIGURE 1



3. In the short run, what is the quantity that La Bella Pizza produces, the price it charges, its markup, and its excess capacity?
4. In the long run, how will the number of pizza producers change? What are the excess capacity and the deadweight loss created? Explain your answer.

Use the following information to work Problems 5 and 6.

A new swing for female golfers

Callaway and Nike, two of the leading golf-equipment manufacturers, recently released new clubs designed for women. They are the hottest innovation in golf.

Source: *Time*, April 21, 2008

5. How are Callaway and Nike attempting to maintain economic profit? Draw a graph to illustrate Callaway's or Nike's short-run economic profit in the market for golf clubs for women.
6. Explain why the economic profit that Callaway and Nike make in this market is likely to be temporary. Draw a graph to illustrate their excess capacity in the long run.
7. Some people happily pay more for Coke or Pepsi than they are willing to pay for a nonbranded cola. And some people happily pay more for Tylenol than they are willing to pay for generic acetaminophen. How do brand names help consumers? How do brand names change the behavior of producers? Why would it not be efficient to make brand names illegal?

Use the following information to work Problems 8 and 9.

Suppose that Tommy Hilfiger's marginal cost of a jacket is a constant $100 and at one of the firm's shops, total fixed cost is $2,000 a day. The profit-maximizing number of jackets sold in this shop is 20 a day. When the shops nearby start to advertise their jackets, this Tommy Hilfiger shop spends $2,000 a day advertising its jackets, and its profit-maximizing output jumps to 50 jackets a day.

8. What is this shop's average total cost of a jacket sold before it starts to advertise? What is its average total cost of a jacket with advertising?
9. Can you say what happens to Tommy's markup and its economic profit? Why or why not?

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 17 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Monopolistic competition differs from _____.
   A. monopoly because firm's cannot set their own price
   B. oligopoly because firms produce differentiated goods or services
   C. perfect competition because the goods or services produced are differentiated
   D. monopoly because the good produced by each firm has no close substitute
2. The four largest firms in a market have the following market shares of total revenue: 20 percent, 15 percent, 10 percent, and 5 percent. The _____ in this industry is _____.
   A. four-firm concentration ratio; 50 percent
   B. four-firm concentration ratio; 750 percent
   C. Herfindahl-Hirschman Index; 50
   D. Herfindahl-Hirschman Index; 2,500
3. A firm in monopolistic competition maximizes its profit by _____.
   A. differentiating its good and producing the quantity at which price equals marginal revenue
   B. producing the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost and then adding a markup
   C. raising its price and producing so that it always has excess capacity
   D. producing the quantity at which marginal cost equals marginal revenue and charging the highest price at which it can sell that quantity
4. A firm in monopolistic competition that is maximizing profit _____.
   A. always makes a positive economic profit in the short run
   B. never needs to shut down because its price always exceeds minimum average variable cost
   C. might, in the short run, sell at a price that is less than average total cost
   D. shuts down temporarily if it incurs a loss equal to total variable cost
5. In the long run, each firm in monopolistic competition _____.
   A. makes zero economic profit
   B. makes as much economic profit as it would if it was a monopoly
   C. has the same markup and excess capacity as it would if the market was perfectly competitive
   D. creates the same deadweight loss as it would if it was a monopoly
6. If one firm advertises and other firms in the market don't, then _____.
   A. the demand for the advertised good becomes more elastic
   B. the profit-maximizing quantity of the advertised good decreases because total fixed costs increase
   C. the average cost of producing a small quantity of the advertised good rises but the average total cost of producing a large quantity might fall
   D. the economic profit made from the advertised good increases
7. Each firm in monopolistic competition uses a brand name and advertising to achieve all of the following *except* to _____.
   A. differentiate its good from its competitors' goods
   B. signal quality and reliability of its good
   C. signal its market share
   D. influence the demand for its good

Is two too few?

18

Oligopoly

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe and identify oligopoly and explain how it arises.
2. Explain the dilemma faced by firms in oligopoly.
3. Use game theory to explain how price and quantity are determined in oligopoly.
4. Describe the antitrust laws that regulate oligopoly.

18.1 WHAT IS OLIGOPOLY?

Oligopoly, like monopolistic competition, is a type of market that lies between perfect competition and monopoly. The firms in oligopoly might produce an identical product and compete only on price, or they might produce a differentiated product and compete on price, product quality, and marketing. The distinguishing features of oligopoly are that

- A small number of firms compete.
- Natural or legal barriers prevent the entry of new firms.

Small Number of Firms

Energizer and Duracell dominate the market for batteries.

In contrast to monopolistic competition and perfect competition, an oligopoly consists of a small number of firms. Each firm has a large share of the market, the firms are interdependent, and they face a temptation to collude.

Interdependence

With a small number of firms in a market, each firm's actions influence the profits of the other firms. To see how, suppose you run one of the three gas stations in a small town. If you cut your price, your market share increases, and your profits might increase too. But the market share and profits of the other two firms fall. In this situation, the other firms will most likely cut their prices too. If they do cut their prices, your market share and profit take a tumble. So before deciding to cut your price, you must predict how the other firms will react and take into account the effects of those reactions on your own profit. Your profit depends on the actions of the other firms, and their profit depends on your actions. You and the other two firms are interdependent.

Temptation to Collude

Cartel
A group of firms acting together to limit output, raise price, and increase economic profit.

When a small number of firms share a market, they can increase their profits by forming a cartel and acting like a monopoly. A **cartel** is a group of firms acting together—colluding—to limit output, raise price, and increase economic profit. Cartels are illegal in the United States (and most other countries), although international cartels can operate legally (see *Eye on the Global Economy* on p. 463). But even when there is no formal cartel, firms might try to operate like a cartel.

For reasons that you'll discover in this chapter, cartels tend to be unstable and eventually break down.

Barriers to Entry

Either natural or legal barriers to entry can create oligopoly. You saw in Chapter 16 how economies of scale and demand form a natural barrier to entry that can create a *natural monopoly*. These same factors can also create a natural oligopoly.

Like natural monopoly, a natural oligopoly arises from the interaction of the market demand for a good or service and the extent of economies of scale in its production. Figure 18.1 illustrates two natural oligopolies.

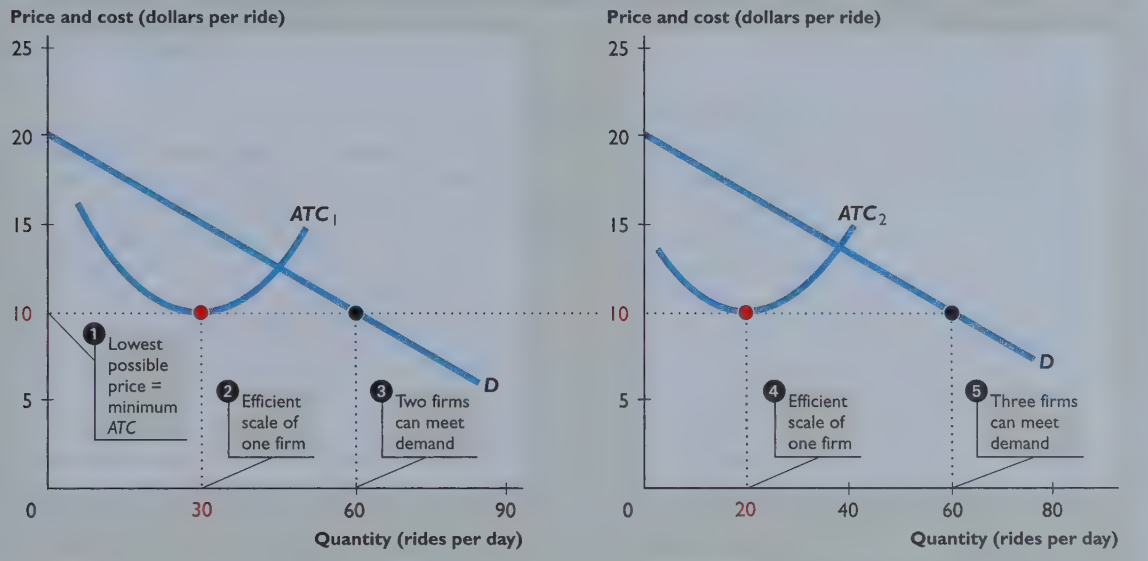
Duopoly
A market with only two firms.

The demand curve, D (in both parts of the figure), shows the market demand for taxi rides in a town. If the average total cost curve of a taxi company is ATC_1 in part (a), the market is a natural **duopoly**—a market with only two firms. You

FIGURE 18.1

Natural Oligopoly

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Natural duopoly

(b) Natural oligopoly with three firms

❶ The lowest possible price is $10 a ride, which is the minimum average total cost. ❷ When a firm produces 30 rides a day, the efficient scale, ❸ two firms can satisfy the market demand. This natural oligopoly has two firms—a natural duopoly.

❹ When the efficient scale of one firm is 20 rides a day, ❺ three firms can satisfy the market demand at the lowest possible price. This natural oligopoly has three firms.

can probably see some examples of duopoly where you live. Some cities have only two suppliers of milk, two local newspapers, two taxi companies, two car rental firms, two copy centers, or two college bookstores.

Notice in part (a) that the efficient scale of one firm is 30 rides a day. The lowest price at which the firm would remain in business is $10 a ride. At that price, the quantity of rides demanded is 60 a day, the quantity that can be provided by just two firms. There is no room in this market for three firms. To sell more than 60 rides a day, the price would have to fall below $10 a ride. But then the firms would incur an economic loss, and one of them would exit. If there were only one firm, it would make an economic profit and a second firm would enter to take some of the business and economic profit.

If the average total cost curve of a taxi company is ATC_2 in part (b), the efficient scale of one firm is 20 rides a day. This market is large enough for three firms, but it is not large enough for a fourth firm. Economies of scale limit the market to three because each firm would incur an economic loss if there were four of them. And this market will not operate with two firms because with only two, economic profit would encourage the entry of a third firm.

A legal oligopoly arises when a legal barrier to entry protects the small number of firms in a market. A city might license two taxi firms or two bus companies, for example, even though the combination of market demand and economies of scale leaves room for more than two firms.

When barriers to entry create an oligopoly, firms can make an economic profit in the long run without fear of triggering the entry of additional firms.

Identifying Oligopoly

Identifying oligopoly is the flip side of identifying monopolistic competition. But the borderline between the two market types is hard to pin down. We need to know whether a market is an oligopoly or monopolistic competition for two reasons. First, we want to be able to make predictions about how the market operates and how price and quantity will respond to such factors as a change in demand or a change in costs. Second, we want to know whether the firms in a market are delivering an efficient outcome that serves the social interest.

The key features of a market that we need to identify are whether the firms are so few that they recognize the interdependencies among them and whether they are acting in a similar way to a monopoly.

As a practical matter, we try to identify oligopoly by looking at the four-firm concentration ratio and the Herfindahl-Hirschman Index, qualified with other information about the geographical scope of the market and barriers to entry.

As we noted in Chapter 17, a market in which the HHI lies between 1,000 and 1,800 is usually an example of monopolistic competition, and a market in which the HHI exceeds 1,800 is usually an example of oligopoly.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Examples of Oligopoly

You're familiar with some of the industries shown in the figure. You probably know, for example, that Kellogg's makes most of the breakfast cereals consumed in the United States. It is said that Kellogg's does more business before eight o'clock in the morning than most firms do all day!

You probably also know that Phillip Morris and RJ Reynolds make most of the cigarettes sold in the United States. You also know that you see Duracell, Energizer, and not much else when you go shopping for a battery. And the washing machine and dryer in your home were most likely made by General Electric, Maytag, or Whirlpool.

Some of the industries in the figure are less familiar, but you see a lot of their products without recognizing them. One of these industries is the manufacture of glass bottles and jars. When you buy anything that comes in glass, there's a good chance that the container was made in Toledo, Ohio, by Owens-Illinois, the world's largest glass packaging manufacturer.

There isn't much room for hesitation about identifying the first seven industries shown in the figure as oligopolies: They have a small number of firms, a high four-firm concentration ratio, and an HHI that exceeds 1,800.

All of these industries are ones in which the largest firms pay serious attention to each other and think hard about the impact of their decisions on their competitors and the repercussion they may themselves face from their competitors' reactions.

The last three industries in the figure are less easily classified. They might be considered borderline between oligopoly and monopolistic competition. The four-firm concentration ratio and HHI are high, but there are many firms in these industries. And while a few of the firms are very large, they face tough competition from the many others.

CHECKPOINT 18.1

Describe and identify oligopoly and explain how it arises.

MyEconLab

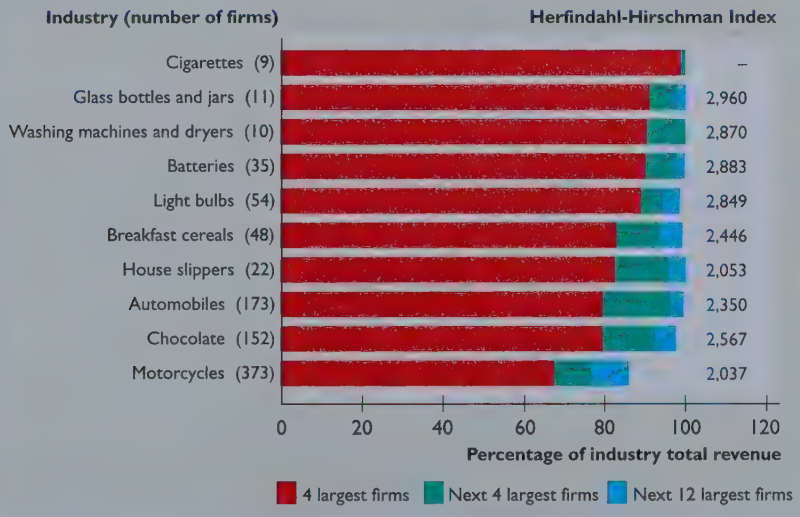
You can work these problems in Study Plan 18.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. What are the distinguishing features of oligopoly?
2. Why are breakfast cereals made by firms in oligopoly? Why isn't there monopolistic competition in that industry?
3. *Business Week* reported that Energizer is gaining market share against competitor Duracell and its profit is rising despite the sharp rise in the price of zinc, a key battery ingredient. In what type of market are batteries sold? Explain your answer.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The distinguishing features of oligopoly are a small number of interdependent firms competing behind natural or legal barriers to entry.
2. Breakfast cereals are made by firms in oligopoly because economies of scale and the size of the market limit the number of firms that can make a profit.
3. The market for batteries is an oligopoly, and with two dominant firms, it is a duopoly. The number of firms is small, their actions are interdependent, and economies of scale and the market demand create a natural barrier to entry.



SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Census Bureau.

18.2 THE OLIGOPOLISTS' DILEMMA

Boeing and Airbus share the market for big passenger airplanes.

Oligopoly might operate like monopoly, like perfect competition, or somewhere between these two extremes. To see these alternative possible outcomes, we'll study duopoly in the market for airplanes. Airbus and Boeing are the only makers of large commercial jet aircraft. Suppose that they have identical costs. To keep the numbers simple, assume that total fixed cost is zero and that regardless of the rate of production, the marginal cost of an airplane is $1 million.

Figure 18.2 shows the market demand curve for airplanes. Airbus and Boeing share this market. The total quantity sold and the quantities sold by each firm depend on the price of an airplane.

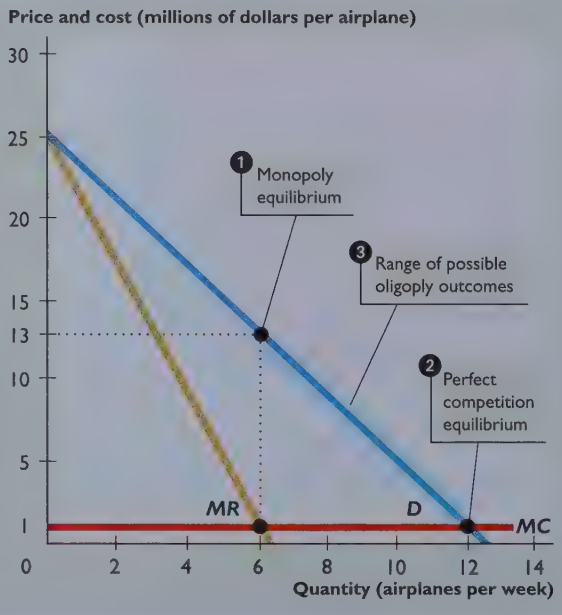
Monopoly Outcome

If this industry had only one firm operating as a single-price monopoly, its marginal revenue curve would be the one shown in Figure 18.2. Marginal revenue equals marginal cost when 6 airplanes a week are produced and the price is $13 million an airplane. Total cost would be $6 million and total revenue would be $78 million, so economic profit would be $72 million a week.

FIGURE 18.2
A Market for Airplanes

MyEconLab Animation

1. With market demand curve, *D*, marginal revenue curve, *MR*, and marginal cost curve, *MC*, a monopoly airplane maker maximizes profit by producing 6 airplanes a week and selling them at a price of $13 million an airplane.
2. With perfect competition among airplane makers, the market equilibrium quantity is 12 airplanes a week and the equilibrium price is $1 million an airplane.
3. A cartel might achieve the monopoly equilibrium, break down and result in the perfect competition equilibrium, or operate somewhere between these two extreme outcomes.



Cartel to Achieve Monopoly Outcome

Can the two firms achieve the monopoly outcome that we've just found and maximize their joint profit? They can attempt to do so by forming a cartel.

Suppose that Airbus and Boeing agreed to limit the total production of airplanes to 6 a week. The market demand curve tells us that the price would be $13 million per airplane and economic profit would be $72 million a week. Suppose that the two firms also agree to split the market evenly and each produce 3 airplanes a week. They would each make an economic profit of $36 million a week—see Table 18.1.

Would it be in the self-interest of Airbus and Boeing to stick to their agreement and limit production to 3 aircraft a week each?

To begin answering this question, notice that with the price of an airplane exceeding marginal cost, if one firm increased production, it would increase its profit. But if both firms increased output whenever price exceeded marginal cost, the end of the process would be the same as perfect competition.

TABLE 18.1 MONOPOLY OUTCOME

	Boeing	Airbus	Market total
Quantity (airplanes a week)	3	3	6
Price ($ million per airplane)	13	13	13
Total revenue ($ million)	39	39	78
Total cost ($ million)	3	3	6
Economic profit ($ million)	36	36	72

Perfect Competition Outcome

You can see the perfect competition outcome in Figure 18.2. The equilibrium is where the market supply curve, which is the marginal cost curve, intersects the market demand curve. The quantity is 12 airplanes a week, and the price is the same as marginal cost—$1 million per airplane.

Other Possible Cartel Breakdowns

Because price exceeds marginal cost, a cartel is likely to break down. But a cartel might not unravel all the way to perfect competition. In *Eye on the Global Economy* on p. 463, you can see the brief history of a sometimes successful and sometimes unsuccessful cartel in the global market for oil. You can see why a cartel breaks down but not all the way to perfect competition by looking at some alternative outcomes in the airplane industry example.

Boeing Increases Output to 4 Airplanes a Week

Suppose that starting from a cartel that achieves the monopoly outcome, Boeing increases output by 1 airplane a week. Table 18.2 keeps track of the data. With Boeing producing 4 airplanes a week and Airbus producing 3 airplanes a week, total output is 7 airplanes a week. To sell 7 airplanes a week, the price must fall. The market demand curve in Figure 18.2 tells us that the quantity demanded is 7 airplanes a week when the price is $11 million an airplane.

TABLE 18.2 BOEING INCREASES OUTPUT TO 4 AIRPLANES A WEEK

	Boeing	Airbus	Market total
Quantity (airplanes a week)	4	3	7
Price ($ million per airplane)	11	11	11
Total revenue ($ million)	44	33	77
Total cost ($ million)	4	3	7
Economic profit ($ million)	40	30	70

Market total revenue would now be $77 million, total cost would be $7 million, and economic profit would fall to $70 million. But the distribution of this economic profit is now unequal. Boeing would gain, and Airbus would lose.

Boeing would now receive $44 million a week in total revenue, have a total cost of $4 million, and make an economic profit of $40 million. Airbus would receive $33 million a week in total revenue, incur a total cost of $3 million, and make an economic profit of $30 million.

So by increasing its output by 1 airplane a week, Boeing can increase its economic profit by $4 million and cause the economic profit of Airbus to fall by $6 million.

Because the two firms in this example are identical, we could rerun the above story with Airbus increasing production by 1 airplane a week and Boeing holding

output at 3 a week. In this case, Airbus would make $40 million a week and Boeing would make $30 million a week.

Boeing is better off producing 4 airplanes a week if Airbus sticks with 3 a week. But is it in Airbus's interest to hold its output at 3 airplanes a week? To answer this question, we need to compare the economic profit Airbus makes if it maintains its output at 3 airplanes a week with the profit it makes if it produces 4 airplanes a week. How much economic profit does Airbus make if it produces 4 airplanes a week with Boeing also producing 4 airplanes a week?

Airbus Increases Output to 4 Airplanes a Week

With both firms producing 4 airplanes a week, total output is 8 airplanes a week. To sell 8 airplanes a week, the price must fall further. The market demand curve in Figure 18.2 tells us that the quantity demanded is 8 airplanes a week when the price is $9 million an airplane.

TABLE 18.3 AIRBUS INCREASES OUTPUT TO 4 AIRPLANES A WEEK

	Boeing	Airbus	Market total
Quantity (airplanes a week)	4	4	8
Price ($ million per airplane)	9	9	9
Total revenue ($ million)	36	36	72
Total cost ($ million)	4	4	8
Economic profit ($ million)	32	32	64

Table 18.3 keeps track of the data. Market total revenue would now be $72 million, total cost would be $8 million, and economic profit would fall to $64 million. With both firms producing the same output, the distribution of this economic profit is now equal.

Both firms would now receive $36 million a week in total revenue, have a total cost of $4 million, and make an economic profit of $32 million. For Airbus, this outcome is an improvement on the previous one by $2 million a week. For Boeing, this outcome is worse than the previous one by $8 million.

This outcome is better for Airbus, but would Boeing go along with it? You know that Boeing would be worse off if it decreased its output to 3 airplanes a week because it would get the outcome that Airbus has in Table 18.2—an economic profit of only $30 million a week. But would Boeing be better off if it increased output to 5 airplanes a week?

Boeing Increases Output to 5 Airplanes a Week

TABLE 18.4 BOEING INCREASES OUTPUT TO 5 AIRPLANES A WEEK

	Boeing	Airbus	Market total
Quantity (airplanes a week)	5	4	9
Price ($ million per airplane)	7	7	7
Total revenue ($ million)	35	28	63
Total cost ($ million)	5	4	9
Economic profit ($ million)	30	24	54

Suppose now that Airbus maintains its output at 4 airplanes a week and Boeing increases output to 5 a week. Table 18.4 keeps track of the data. Total output is now 9 airplanes a week. To sell this quantity, the price must fall to $7 million an airplane. Market total revenue is $63 million and total cost is $9 million, so economic profit for the two firms is $54 million. The distribution of this economic profit is again unequal. But now both firms would lose.

Boeing would now receive $35 million a week in total revenue, have a total cost of $5 million, and make an economic profit of $30 million—$2 million less than it would make if it maintained its output at 4 airplanes a week. Airbus would receive $28 million a week in total revenue, incur a total cost of $4 million, and make an economic profit of $24 million—$8 million less than before. So neither firm gains by increasing total output beyond 8 airplanes a week.

The Oligopoly Cartel Dilemma

With a cartel, both firms make the maximum available economic profit. If both increase production, both see their profit fall. If only one firm increases production, that firm makes a larger economic profit while the other makes a lower economic profit. So what will the firms do? We can speculate about what they will do, but to work out the answer, we need some game theory.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

The OPEC Global Oil Cartel

The Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) is an international cartel of oil-producing nations. OPEC was created in Baghdad in 1960 by the governments of Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, and Venezuela. Seven other nations, Qatar, Libya, United Arab Emirates, Algeria, Nigeria, Angola, and Ecuador are now members.

OPEC describes its objective as being "to co-ordinate and unify petroleum policies among member countries in order to secure fair and stable prices; . . . an efficient, economic, and regular supply of petroleum to consuming nations; and a fair return on capital to those investing in the industry." These words can be interpreted as being code for "restricting the production of oil to keep its price high."

During the 1960s, OPEC quietly built its organization and prepared the ground for its push to dominate the global oil market. Its first opportunity came in 1973 when, with an Arab-Israeli war raging, OPEC organized an embargo on oil shipments to the United States and Europe and the price of oil rose to four times its previous level. OPEC's second opportunity came with the Iranian revolution in 1979 when the price of oil more than doubled.

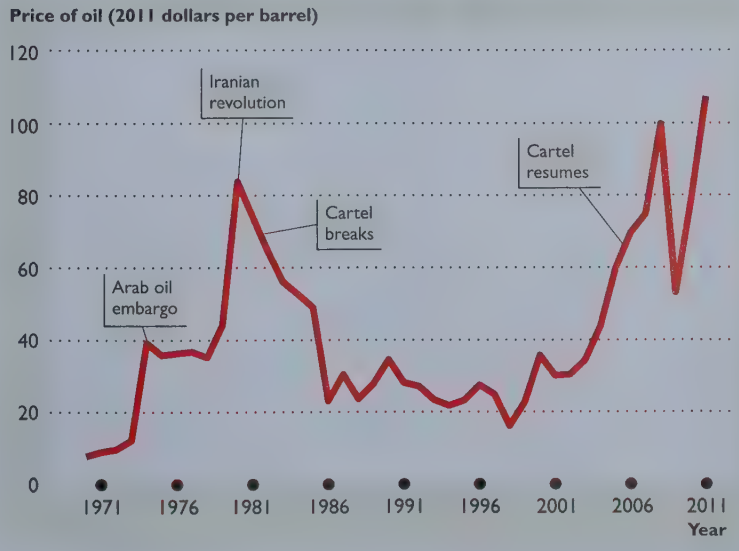
The figure shows both these price hikes. The price rose from about $8 a barrel in 1970 to more than $82 a barrel by 1980. (To compare prices over a number of years, we express them in terms of the value of the dollar in 2011.)

During the 1980s, many new sources of oil supply opened up and the OPEC cartel lost control of the global market. The cartel broke down, and the price of oil fell.

OPEC ministers meeting at the organization's headquarters in Vienna

The price of oil remained remarkably stable during the 1990s, and the power of OPEC was countered by a large supply of oil from other sources.

From 2003 to 2008, the demand for oil grew dramatically in China and other Asian economies and OPEC again dominated the global market, restricted its production, and pushed the world price to a new high in 2008. But OPEC lost power again in the global recession of 2009.



SOURCES OF DATA: OPEC and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 18.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 18.2

Explain the dilemma faced by firms in oligopoly.

Practice Problems

Isolated Island has two natural gas wells, one owned by Tom and the other owned by Jerry. Each well has a valve that controls the flow of gas. The marginal cost of producing gas is zero. Table 1 gives the demand schedule for the gas.

1. If Tom and Jerry form a cartel and maximize their joint profit, what will be the price of gas and the quantity produced?
2. If Tom and Jerry are forced to sell at the perfectly competitive price, what will be the price of gas and the total quantity produced?
3. If Tom and Jerry compete as duopolists, what will be the price of gas?

TABLE 1

Price (dollars per unit)	Quantity demanded (units per day)
12	0
11	1
10	2
9	3
8	4
7	5
6	6
5	7
4	8
3	9
2	10
1	11
0	12

In the News

Asian rice exporters to discuss cartel

Thailand, the world's largest rice exporter, proposed that the Asian rice exporters (Thailand, Cambodia, Laos, and Myanmar) form a cartel. The Philippines said it was a bad idea.

Source: CNN, May 6, 2008

Explain how an Asian profit-maximizing rice cartel would influence the global market for rice and the world price of rice. Is the Philippines correct?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. If Tom and Jerry form a cartel and maximize their joint profit, they will charge the monopoly price. This price is the highest price the market will bear when together they produce the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost. Marginal cost is zero, so we need to find the price at which marginal revenue is zero. Marginal revenue is zero when total revenue is a maximum, which occurs when output is 6 units a day (Table 2) and price is $6 a unit (see the demand schedule in Table 1).
2. If Tom and Jerry are forced to sell at the perfectly competitive price, the price will equal marginal cost. Marginal cost is zero, so in this case, the price will be zero and the total quantity produced will be 12 units a day.
3. If Tom and Jerry compete as duopolists, they will increase production to more than the monopoly quantity. The price will fall, but they will not drive the price down to zero.

TABLE 2

Quantity (units per day)	Total revenue (dollars per day)	Marginal revenue (dollars per unit)
0	0	
		11
1	11	
		9
2	20	
		7
3	27	
		5
4	32	
		3
5	35	
		1
6	36	
		−1
7	35	
		−3
8	32	
		−5
9	27	
		−7
10	20	
		−9
11	11	
		−11
12	0	

Solution to In the News

A rice cartel would operate as a profit-maximizing monopoly and produce the quantity at which marginal revenue equals marginal cost. The profit-maximizing quantity that a monopoly produces is less than the quantity that competitive rice growers currently produce. The supply of rice on the world market will decrease and the world price of rice will rise. If the cartel does not break down, then the Philippines is correct: The price of rice, a staple for the people of Asia, will rise.

18.3 GAME THEORY

Game theory is the tool that economists use to analyze *strategic behavior*—behavior that recognizes mutual interdependence and takes account of the expected behavior of others. John von Neumann invented game theory in 1937, and today it is a major research field in economics.

Game theory
The tool that economists use to analyze *strategic behavior*—behavior that recognizes mutual interdependence and takes account of the expected behavior of others.

Game theory helps us to understand oligopoly and many other forms of economic, political, social, and even biological rivalries. We will begin our study of game theory and its application to the behavior of firms by thinking about familiar games that we play for fun.

What Is a Game?

What is a game? At first thought, the question seems silly. After all, there are many different games. There are ball games and parlor games, games of chance and games of skill. But what is it about all these different activities that make them games? What do all these games have in common? All games share three features:

- Rules
- Strategies
- Payoffs

Let's see how these common features of games apply to a game called "the prisoners' dilemma." The **prisoners' dilemma** is a game between two prisoners that shows why it is hard to cooperate even when it would be beneficial to both players to do so. This game captures the essential feature of the duopolists' dilemma that we've just been studying. The prisoners' dilemma also provides a good illustration of how game theory works and how it generates predictions.

Prisoners' dilemma
A game between two prisoners that shows why it is hard to cooperate even when it would be beneficial to both players to do so.

The Prisoners' Dilemma

Art and Bob have been caught red-handed, stealing a car. During the district attorney's interviews with the prisoners, he begins to suspect that he has stumbled on the two people who committed a multimillion-dollar bank robbery some months earlier. But this is just a suspicion. The district attorney has no evidence on which he can convict them of the greater crime unless he can get them to confess. He makes the prisoners play a game with the following rules.

Rules

Each prisoner (player) is placed in a separate room and cannot communicate with the other player. Each is told that he is suspected of having carried out the bank robbery and that

- If both of them confess to the larger crime, each will receive a reduced sentence of 3 years for both crimes.
- If he alone confesses and his accomplice does not, he will receive an even shorter sentence of 1 year, while his accomplice will receive a 10-year sentence.
- If neither of them confesses to the larger crime, each will receive a 2-year sentence for car theft.

Strategies
All the possible actions of each player in a game.

Strategies

In game theory, **strategies** are all the possible actions of each player. Art and Bob each have two possible strategies:

- Confess to the bank robbery.
- Deny having committed the bank robbery.

Payoffs

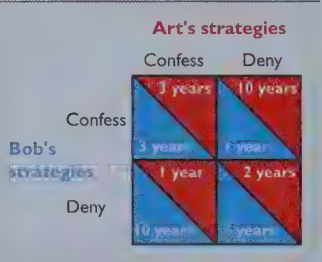
Payoff matrix
A table that shows the payoffs for each player for every possible combination of actions by the players.

Because there are two players, each with two strategies, there are four possible outcomes:

- Both confess.
- Both deny.
- Art confesses and Bob denies.
- Bob confesses and Art denies.

Each prisoner can work out exactly what happens to him—his *payoff*—in each of these four situations. We can tabulate the four possible payoffs for each of the prisoners in what is called a payoff matrix for the game. A **payoff matrix** is a table that shows the payoffs for every possible action by each player given every possible action by the other player.

TABLE 18.5 PRISONERS' DILEMMA PAYOFF MATRIX



Each square shows the payoffs for the two players, Art and Bob, for each possible pair of actions. In each square, the red triangle shows Art's payoff and the blue triangle shows Bob's. For example, if both confess, the payoffs are in the top left square.

Table 18.5 shows a payoff matrix for Art and Bob. The squares show the payoffs for the two prisoners—the red triangle in each square shows Art's, and the blue triangle shows Bob's. If both prisoners confess (top left), each gets a prison term of 3 years. If Bob confesses but Art denies (top right), Art gets a 10-year sentence and Bob gets a 1-year sentence. If Art confesses and Bob denies (bottom left), Art gets a 1-year sentence and Bob gets a 10-year sentence. Finally, if both of them deny (bottom right), neither can be convicted of the bank robbery charge but both are sentenced for the car theft—a 2-year sentence.

Equilibrium

Nash equilibrium
An equilibrium in which each player takes the best possible action given the action of the other player.

The equilibrium of a game occurs when each player takes the best possible action given the action of the other player. This equilibrium concept is called **Nash equilibrium.** It is so named because John Nash of Princeton University, who received the Nobel Prize for Economic Science in 1994, proposed it. (The same John Nash was portrayed by Russell Crowe in *A Beautiful Mind.*)

In the case of the prisoners' dilemma, equilibrium occurs when Art makes his best choice given Bob's choice and when Bob makes his best choice given Art's choice. Let's find the equilibrium.

First, look at the situation from Art's point of view. If Bob confesses, it pays Art to confess because in that case, he is sentenced to 3 years rather than 10 years. If Bob does not confess, it still pays Art to confess because in that case, he receives 1 year rather than 2 years. So no matter what Bob does, Art's best action is to confess.

Second, look at the situation from Bob's point of view. If Art confesses, it pays Bob to confess because in that case, he is sentenced to 3 years rather than 10 years. If Art does not confess, it still pays Bob to confess because in that case, he receives 1 year rather than 2 years. So no matter what Art does, Bob's best action is to confess.

Because each player's best action is to confess, each does confess, each gets a 3-year prison term, and the district attorney has solved the bank robbery. This is the equilibrium of the game.

Not the Best Outcome

The equilibrium of the prisoners' dilemma game is not the best outcome for the prisoners. Isn't there some way in which they can cooperate and get the smaller 2-year prison term? There is not, because the players cannot communicate with each other. Each player can put himself in the other player's place and can figure out what the other will do. The prisoners are in a dilemma. Each knows that he can serve only 2 years if he can trust the other to deny. But each also knows that it is not in the best interest of the other to deny. So each prisoner knows that he must confess, thereby delivering a bad outcome for both.

Let's now see how we can use the ideas we've just developed to understand the behavior of firms in oligopoly. We'll start by returning to the duopolists' dilemma.

The Duopolists' Dilemma

The dilemma of Airbus and Boeing is similar to that of Art and Bob. Each firm has two strategies. It can produce airplanes at the rate of

- 3 a week
- 4 a week

Because each firm has two strategies, there are four possible combinations of actions for the two firms:

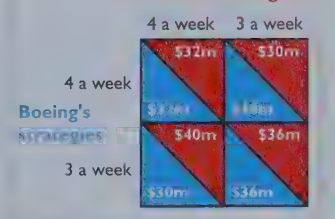
- Both firms produce 3 a week (monopoly outcome).
- Both firms produce 4 a week.
- Airbus produces 3 a week and Boeing produces 4 a week.
- Boeing produces 3 a week and Airbus produces 4 a week.

The Payoff Matrix

Table 18.6 sets out the payoff matrix for this game. It is constructed in exactly the same way as the payoff matrix for the prisoners' dilemma in Table 18.5. The squares show the payoffs for Airbus and Boeing. In this case, the payoffs are economic profits. (In the case of the prisoners' dilemma, the payoffs were losses.)

The table shows that if both firms produce 4 a week (top left), each firm makes an economic profit of $32 million. If both firms produce 3 a week (bottom right), they make the monopoly profit, and each firm makes an economic profit of $36 million. The top right and bottom left squares show what happens if one firm produces 4 a week while the other produces 3 a week. The firm that increases production makes an economic profit of $40 million, and the one that keeps production at the monopoly quantity makes an economic profit of $30 million.

TABLE 18.6 DUOPOLISTS' DILEMMA PAYOFF MATRIX



Each square shows the payoffs from a pair of actions. For example, if both firms produce 3 airplanes a week, the payoffs are recorded in the bottom right square. The red triangle shows Airbus's payoff, and the blue triangle shows Boeing's.

Equilibrium of the Duopolists' Dilemma

What do the firms do? To answer this question, we must find the equilibrium of the duopoly game.

TABLE 18.7 THE NASH EQUILIBRIUM

The Nash equilibrium is for each firm to produce 4 airplanes a week.

Using the information in Table 18.7, look at things from Airbus's point of view. Airbus reasons as follows: Suppose that Boeing produces 4 airplanes a week. If I, Airbus, produce 3 a week, I will make an economic profit of $30 million. If I also produce 4 a week, I will make an economic profit of $32 million. So I'm better off producing 4 airplanes a week. Airbus continues to reason: Now suppose Boeing produces 3 a week. If I produce 4 a week, I will make an economic profit of $40 million, and if I produce 3 a week, I will make an economic profit of $36 million. An economic profit of $40 million is better than an economic profit of $36 million, so I'm better off if I produce 4 airplanes a week. So regardless of whether Boeing produces 3 a week or 4 a week, it pays Airbus to produce 4 airplanes a week.

Because the two firms face identical situations, Boeing comes to the same conclusion as Airbus, so both firms produce 4 a week. The equilibrium of the duopoly game is that both firms produce 4 airplanes a week.

Collusion Is Profitable but Difficult to Achieve

In the duopolists' dilemma that you've just studied, Airbus and Boeing end up in a situation that is similar to that of the prisoners in the prisoners' dilemma game. They don't achieve the best joint outcome. Because each produces 4 airplanes a week, each makes an economic profit of $32 million a week.

If firms were able to collude, they would agree to limit their production to 3 airplanes a week each and they would each make the monopoly profit of $36 million a week.

The outcome of the duopolists' dilemma shows why it is difficult for firms to collude. Even if collusion were a legal activity, firms in duopoly would find it difficult to implement an agreement to restrict output. Like the players of the prisoners' dilemma game, the duopolists would reach a Nash equilibrium in which they produce more than the joint profit-maximizing quantity.

If two firms have difficulty maintaining a collusive agreement, oligopolies with more than two firms have an even harder time. The operation of OPEC (see *Eye on the Global Economy* on p. 463) illustrates this difficulty. To raise the price of oil, OPEC must limit global oil production. The members of this cartel meet from time to time and set a production limit for each member nation. Almost always, within a few months of a decision to restrict production, some (usually smaller) members of the cartel break their quotas, production increases, and the price sags below the cartel's desired target. The OPEC cartel plays an oligopoly dilemma game similar to the prisoners' dilemma. Only in 1973, 1979–1980, and 2005–2007 did OPEC manage to keep its members' production under control and raise the price of oil.

Advertising and Research Games in Oligopoly

Every month, Coke and Pepsi, Nike and Adidas, Procter & Gamble and Kimberly-Clark, Nokia and Motorola, and hundreds of other pairs of big firms locked in fierce competition spend millions of dollars on advertising campaigns and on research and development (R&D). They make decisions about whether to increase or cut the advertising budget or whether to undertake a large R&D effort aimed at lowering production costs or at making the product more reliable (usually, the more reliable a product, the more expensive it is to produce, but the more people are willing to pay for it). These choices can be analyzed as games. Let's look at some examples of these types of games.

Advertising Game

A key to success in the soft drink industry is to run huge advertising campaigns. These campaigns affect market share but are costly to run. Table 18.8 shows some hypothetical numbers for the advertising game that Pepsi and Coke play. Each firm has two strategies: Advertise or don't advertise. If neither firm advertises, they each make $50 million (bottom right of the payoff matrix). If each firm advertises, each firm's profit is lower by the amount spent on advertising (top left square of the payoff matrix). If Pepsi advertises but Coke does not, Pepsi gains and Coke loses (top right square of the payoff matrix). Finally, if Coke advertises and Pepsi does not, Coke gains and Pepsi loses (bottom left square).

Pepsi reasons as follows: Regardless of whether Coke advertises, we're better off advertising. Coke reasons similarly: Regardless of whether Pepsi advertises, we're better off advertising. Because advertising is the best strategy for both players, it is the Nash equilibrium. The outcome of this game is that both firms advertise and make less profit than they would if they could collude to achieve the cooperative outcome of no advertising.

TABLE 18.8 THE ADVERTISING GAME PAYOFF MATRIX

Pepsi's strategies \ Coke's strategies	Advertise	Don't advertise
Advertise	$20m $10m	−$10m $80m
Don't advertise	$80m −$10m	$50m $50m

For each pair of strategies, the red triangle shows Coke's payoff, and the blue triangle shows Pepsi's. If both firms advertise, they make less than if neither firm advertises. But each firm is better off advertising if the other doesn't advertise. The Nash equilibrium for this prisoners' dilemma advertising game is for both firms to advertise.

Research and Development Game

A key to success in the disposable diaper industry is to design a product that people value highly relative to the cost of producing it. The firm that develops the most highly valued product and also develops the least-cost technology for producing it gains a competitive edge. It can undercut the rest of the market, increase its market share, and increase its economic profit. But it is costly to undertake the R&D that can ultimately result in an improved product and increased profit. So the cost of R&D must be deducted from the increased profit. If no firm does R&D, every firm can be better off, but if one firm initiates the R&D activity, all firms must follow.

Table 18.9 illustrates the dilemma (with hypothetical numbers) for the R&D game that Kimberly-Clark and Procter & Gamble play. Each firm has two strategies: Do R&D or do no R&D. If neither firm does R&D, Kimberly-Clark makes $30 million and Procter & Gamble makes $70 million (bottom right of the payoff matrix). If each firm does R&D, each firm's profit is lower by the amount spent on R&D (top left square of the payoff matrix). If Kimberly-Clark does R&D but Procter & Gamble does not, Kimberly-Clark gains and Procter & Gamble loses (top right square of the payoff matrix). Finally, if Procter & Gamble conducts R&D and Kimberly-Clark does not, Procter & Gamble gains and Kimberly-Clark loses (bottom left square).

Kimberly-Clark reasons as follows: Regardless of whether Procter & Gamble undertakes R&D, we're better off doing R&D. Procter & Gamble reasons similarly: Regardless of whether Kimberly-Clark does R&D, we're better off doing R&D.

Because R&D is the best strategy for both players, it is the Nash equilibrium. The outcome of this game is that both firms conduct R&D. They make less profit than they would if they could collude to achieve the cooperative outcome of no R&D.

The real-world situation has more players than Kimberly-Clark and Procter & Gamble. A large number of other firms strive to capture market share from Procter & Gamble and Kimberly-Clark. So the R&D effort by these two firms not only serves the purpose of maintaining shares in their own battle but also helps to keep barriers to entry high enough to preserve their joint market share.

TABLE 18.9 THE R&D GAME PAYOFF MATRIX

Kimberly-Clark's strategies \ Procter & Gamble's strategies	R&D	No R&D
R&D	$45m $45m	−$10m $85m
No R&D	$85m −$10m	$70m $30m

For each pair of strategies, the red triangle shows Procter & Gamble's payoff, and the blue triangle shows Kimberly-Clark's. If both firms do R&D, they make less than if neither firm undertakes R&D. But each firm is better off doing R&D if the other does no R&D. The Nash equilibrium for this prisoners' dilemma R&D game is for both firms to do R&D.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

A Game You Might Play

The payoff matrix here describes a game that might be familiar to you. But it isn't a prisoners' dilemma. It's a lovers' dilemma.

Jane and Jim have more fun if they do something together than if they do things alone.

But Jane likes the movies more than the ball game, and Jim likes the ball game more than the movies.

The payoff matrix describes how much they like the various outcomes (measured in units of utility).

What do they do?

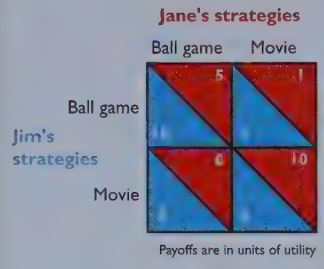
By comparing the utility numbers for different strategies, you can figure out that Jim never goes to the movies alone and Jane never goes to the ball game alone.

You can also figure out that Jim doesn't go to the ball game alone and Jane doesn't go to the movies alone.

They always go out together. But do they go to the movies or the ball game?

The answer is that we can't tell. This game has no unique equilibrium. The payoffs tell you that Jane and Jim might go to either the game or the movies.

In a repeated game, they'll probably alternate between the two and might even toss a coin to decide which to go to on any given evening.



Repeated Games

The games that we've studied are played just once. In contrast, most real-world games get played repeatedly. This fact suggests that real-world duopolists might find some way of learning to cooperate so that they can enjoy a monopoly profit. If a game is played repeatedly, one player has the opportunity to penalize the other player for previous "bad" behavior. If Airbus produces 4 airplanes this week, perhaps Boeing will produce 4 next week. Before Airbus produces 4 this week, won't it take account of the possibility of Boeing producing 4 next week? What is the equilibrium of this more complicated dilemma game when it is repeated indefinitely?

The monopoly equilibrium might occur if each firm knows that the other will punish overproduction with overproduction, "tit for tat." Let's see why.

Table 18.10 keeps track of the numbers. Suppose that Boeing contemplates producing 4 airplanes in week 1. This move will bring it an economic profit of $40 million and will cut the economic profit of Airbus to $30 million. In week 2, Airbus will punish Boeing and produce 4 airplanes. But Boeing must go back to 3 airplanes to induce Airbus to cooperate again in week 3. So in week 2, Airbus makes an economic profit of $40 million, and Boeing makes an economic profit of $30 million. Adding up the profits over these two weeks of play, Boeing would have made $72 million by cooperating (2 × $36 million) compared with $70 million from producing 4 airplanes in week 1 and generating Airbus's tit-for-tat response.

What is true for Boeing is also true for Airbus. Because each firm makes a larger profit by sticking to the monopoly output, both firms do so and the monopoly price, quantity, and profit prevail.

In reality, whether a duopoly (or more generally an oligopoly) works like a one-play game or a repeated game depends primarily on the number of players and the ease of detecting and punishing overproduction. The larger the number of players, the harder it is to maintain the monopoly outcome.

TABLE 18.10 PAYOFFS WITH PUNISHMENT

Period of play	Cooperate		Overproduce	
	Boeing profit	Airbus profit	Boeing profit	Airbus profit
	(millions of dollars)			
1	36	36	40	30
2	36	36	30	40

EYE on the CHIPS DUOPOLY

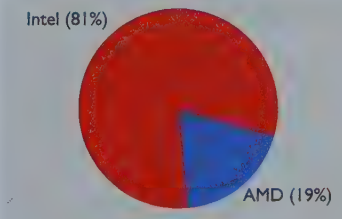
Is Two Too Few?

The CPU in your computer or your game box—the brainpower of the machine—is made either by Intel Corporation or by Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. (AMD). Does competition between these duopolists achieve an efficient outcome—a win for the consumer—or just a win for one or both of the producers?

The answer is that Intel is the big winner. The pie chart shows that it dominates this market and the CPU prices graph shows that Intel's prices are generally higher than AMD's prices.

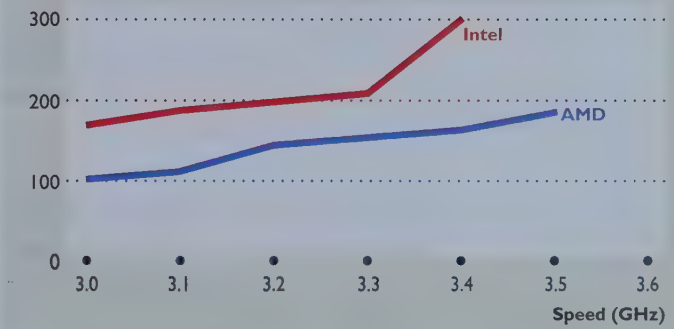
In the game that Intel and AMD play, the outcome is closer to monopoly than perfect competition. Producer surplus is maximized and consumer surplus is less than it would be in a competitive market. There is underproduction and a deadweight loss.

SOURCES OF DATA: Intel, AMD, and sharkyextreme.com.



Market shares in second quarter 2011

Price (dollars per chip)



CPU Prices in July 2011

Is Oligopoly Efficient?

The quantity produced of any good or service is the efficient quantity if the price (which measures marginal benefit) equals marginal cost. Does oligopoly produce efficient quantities of goods and services?

You've seen that if firms in oligopoly play a repeated prisoners' dilemma game, they can end up restricting output to the monopoly level and making the same economic profit as a monopoly would make. You've also seen that even when the firms don't cooperate, they don't necessarily drive the price down to marginal cost. So generally, oligopoly is not efficient. It suffers from the same source of inefficiency as monopoly.

Also, firms in oligopoly might end up operating at a higher average total cost than the lowest attainable cost because their advertising and research budgets are higher than the socially efficient level.

Because oligopoly creates inefficiency and firms in oligopoly have an incentive to try to behave like a monopoly, the United States has established antitrust laws that seek to reduce market power and move the oligopoly outcome closer to the efficient competitive outcome. In the next section, we study U.S. antitrust law.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 18.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 18.3

Use game theory to explain how price and quantity are determined in oligopoly.

Practice Problems

Bud and Wise are the only two producers of a New Age beer, which is designed to displace root beer. Bud and Wise are trying to work out the quantity to produce. They know that if:

- Both limit production to 10,000 gallons a day, they will make the maximum attainable joint profit of $200,000 a day—$100,000 a day each.
- One produces 20,000 gallons a day while the other produces 10,000 a day, the one that produces 20,000 gallons will make an economic profit of $150,000 and the one that sticks with 10,000 gallons will incur an economic loss of $50,000.
- Both produce 20,000 gallons a day, each will make zero economic profit.

1. Construct a payoff matrix for the game that Bud and Wise must play.
2. Find the Nash equilibrium of the game that Bud and Wise play.
3. What is the equilibrium of the game if Bud and Wise play it repeatedly?

In the News

Microsoft Internet Explorer is faster than Mozilla Firefox

Promotions of the new Internet Explorer IE8 say it is faster, more reliable, and more secure than rival browsers. One reviewer noted that IE8 is slower than Firefox, but if you're a light-duty user and attracted to the new IE's strong suite of fresh features, you might prefer it to Firefox. Another says the point isn't which browser is hundredths of a second faster, but other features.

Source: *USA Today*, March 23, 2009

What is the game that Microsoft and Mozilla have played in the past few years? How do you think the game will change in the coming years?

TABLE 1

		Bud's strategies: 10,000 gallons	Bud's strategies: 20,000 gallons
Wise's strategies	10,000 gallons	100	150
	20,000 gallons	−40	0

Payoffs are in thousands of dollars

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Table 1 shows the payoff matrix for the game that Bud and Wise must play.
2. The Nash equilibrium is for both to produce 20,000 gallons a day. To see why, notice that regardless of the quantity that Bud produces, Wise makes more profit by producing 20,000 gallons a day. The same is true for Bud. So Bud and Wise each produce 20,000 gallons a day.
3. If Bud and Wise play this game repeatedly, each produces 10,000 gallons a day and makes maximum economic profit. They can achieve this outcome by playing a tit-for-tat strategy.

Solution to In the News

They played a product development game: improving speed or adding features. The outcome is that both allocated development to increasing speed and as the reviewers imply their speeds are only hundredths of a second apart (basically the same). In the coming years, the development game will probably move away from speed and to additional features to maintain or expand market share.

18.4 ANTITRUST LAW

Antitrust law is the body of law that regulates oligopolies and prohibits them from becoming monopolies or behaving like monopolies.

Antitrust law
A body of law that regulates oligopolies and prohibits them from becoming monopolies or behaving like monopolies.

The Antitrust Laws

Congress passed the first antitrust law, the Sherman Act, in 1890 in an atmosphere of outrage and disgust at the actions and practices of J. P. Morgan, John D. Rockefeller, and W. H. Vanderbilt—the so-called "robber barons."

A wave of mergers at the turn of the twentieth century produced stronger antitrust laws. The Clayton Act of 1914 supplemented the Sherman Act, and Congress created the Federal Trade Commission to enforce the antitrust laws.

Table 18.11 summarizes the two main provisions of the Sherman Act. Section 1 of the act is precise. Conspiring with others to restrict competition is illegal. But section 2 is general and imprecise. Just what is an "attempt to monopolize"? The Clayton Act and its two amendments, the Robinson-Patman Act of 1936 and Celler-Kefauver Act of 1950, which outlaw specific practices, answer this question. Table 18.11 describes these practices and summarizes the main provisions of these three acts.

Three Antitrust Policy Debates

Price fixing is *always* a violation of the antitrust law. If the Justice Department can prove the existence of price fixing, a defendant can offer no acceptable excuse. But other practices are more controversial and generate debate among antitrust lawyers and economists. We'll examine three of these practices:

- Resale price maintenance
- Predatory pricing
- Tying arrangements

Resale Price Maintenance

Most manufacturers sell their products to the final consumer indirectly through a wholesale and retail distribution system. **Resale price maintenance** occurs when a manufacturer agrees with a distributor on the price at which the product will be resold.

Resale price maintenance
An agreement between a manufacturer and a distributor on the price at which a product will be resold.

Resale price maintenance (also called vertical price fixing) *agreements* are illegal under the Sherman Act. But it isn't illegal for a manufacturer to refuse to supply a retailer who doesn't accept the manufacturer's guidance on what the price should be.

Attorneys general in 41 states alleged that Universal, Sony, Warner, Bertelsmann, and EMI kept CD prices artificially high between 1995 and 2000 with a practice called "minimum-advertised pricing." The companies denied the allegation but made a large payment to settle the case.

Does resale price maintenance create an inefficient or efficient use of resources? Economists can be found on both sides of this question.

Inefficient Resale Price Maintenance Resale price maintenance is inefficient if it enables dealers to charge the monopoly price. By setting and enforcing the resale price, the manufacturer might be able to achieve the monopoly price.

TABLE 18.11
The Antitrust Laws: A Summary

The Sherman Act, 1890

Section 1:

Every contract, combination in the form of trust or otherwise, or conspiracy, in restraint of trade or commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations, is hereby declared to be illegal.

Section 2:

Every person who shall monopolize, or attempt to monopolize, or combine or conspire with any other person or persons, to monopolize any part of the trade or commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations, shall be deemed guilty of a felony.

Clayton Act, 1914

Robinson-Patman Act, 1936

Celler-Kefauver Act, 1950

These acts prohibit the following practices only if they substantially lessen competition or create monopoly:

1. Price discrimination.
2. Contracts that require other goods to be bought from the same firm (called tying arrangements).
3. Contracts that require a firm to buy all its requirements of a particular item from a single firm (called requirements contracts).
4. Contracts that prevent a firm from selling competing items (called exclusive dealing).
5. Contracts that prevent a buyer from reselling a product outside a specified area (called territorial confinement).
6. Acquiring a competitor's shares or assets.
7. Becoming a director of a competing firm.

Efficient Resale Price Maintenance Resale price maintenance might be efficient if it enables a manufacturer to induce dealers to provide the efficient standard of service. Suppose that SilkySkin wants shops to demonstrate the use of its new unbelievable moisturizing cream in an inviting space. With resale price maintenance, SilkySkin can offer all the retailers the same incentive and compensation. Without resale price maintenance, a discount drug store might offer SilkySkin products at a low price. Buyers would then have an incentive to visit a high-price shop and get the product demonstrated and then buy from the low-price shop. The low-price shop would be a free rider (like the consumer of a public good in Chapter 11, p. 269), and an inefficient level of service would be provided.

SilkySkin could pay a fee to retailers that provide good service and leave the resale price to be determined by the competitive forces of supply and demand. But it might be too costly for SilkySkin to monitor shops and ensure that they provided the desired level of service.

Predatory Pricing

Predatory pricing is setting a low price to drive competitors out of business with the intention of setting a monopoly price when the competition has gone. John D. Rockefeller's Standard Oil Company was the first to be accused of this practice in the 1890s, and it has been claimed often in antitrust cases since then. Predatory pricing is an attempt to create a monopoly and as such it is illegal under Section 2 of the Sherman Act.

Predatory pricing
Setting a low price to drive competitors out of business with the intention of setting a monopoly price when the competition has gone.

It is easy to see that predatory pricing is an idea, not a reality. Economists are skeptical that predatory pricing occurs. They point out that a firm that cuts its price below the profit-maximizing level forgoes profit during the low-price period. Even if the firm succeeds in driving its competitors out of business, new competitors will enter when the firm raises its price above average total cost and makes an economic profit. So any potential gain from a monopoly position is temporary. A high and certain loss is a poor exchange for a temporary and uncertain gain. No case of predatory pricing has been definitively found.

Tying Arrangements

A **tying arrangement** is an agreement to sell one product only if the buyer agrees to buy another, different product. With tying, the only way the buyer can get the one product is to buy the other product at the same time. Microsoft has been accused of tying Internet Explorer and Windows. Textbook publishers sometimes tie a Web site and a textbook and force students to buy both. (You can't buy the book you're now reading, new, without the Web site. But you can buy the Web site access without the book, so these products are not tied.)

Tying arrangement
An agreement to sell one product only if the buyer agrees to buy another, different product.

Could publishers of textbooks make more money by tying a book and access to a Web site? The answer is sometimes but not always. Think about what you are willing to pay for a book and access to a Web site. To keep the numbers simple, suppose that you and other students are willing to pay $40 for a book and $10 for access to a Web site. The publisher can sell these items separately for these prices or bundled for $50. There is no gain to the publisher from bundling.

But now suppose that you and only half of the students are willing to pay $40 for a book and $10 for a Web site. And suppose that the other half of the students are willing to pay $40 for a Web site and $10 for a book. Now if the two items are sold separately, the publisher can charge $40 for the book and $40 for the Web site. Half the students buy the book but not the Web site, and the other half buy the Web site but not the book. But if the book and Web site are bundled for $50, everyone buys the bundle and the publisher makes an extra $10 per student. In this case, bundling has enabled the publisher to price discriminate.

There is no simple, clear-cut test of whether a firm is engaging in tying or whether, by doing so, it has increased its market power and profit and created inefficiency.

Recent Antitrust Showcase: The United States Versus Microsoft

In 1998, the U.S. Department of Justice, along with a number of states, charged Microsoft, the world's largest producer of software for personal computers, with violations of both sections of the Sherman Act. A 78-day trial followed that pitched two prominent MIT economics professors against each other (Franklin Fisher for the government and Richard Schmalensee for Microsoft).

The Case Against Microsoft

The claims against Microsoft were that it

- Possessed monopoly power in the market for PC operating systems.
- Used *predatory pricing* and *tying arrangements* to achieve a monopoly in the market for Web browsers.
- Used other anticompetitive practices to strengthen its monopoly in these two markets.

It was claimed that with 80 percent of the market for PC operating systems, Microsoft had excessive monopoly power. This monopoly power arose from two barriers to entry: economies of scale and network economies. Microsoft's average total cost falls as production increases (economies of scale) because the fixed cost of developing an operating system like Windows is large while the marginal cost of producing one copy of Windows is small. Further, as the number of Windows users increases, the range of Windows applications expands (network economies), so a potential competitor would need to produce not only a competing operating system but also an entire range of supporting applications.

When Microsoft entered the Web browser market with its Internet Explorer (IE), it offered the browser for a zero price. This price was viewed as *predatory pricing*. Microsoft integrated IE with Windows so that anyone who uses this operating system would not need a separate browser such as Netscape Communicator. Microsoft's competitors claimed that this practice was an illegal *tying arrangement*.

Microsoft's Response

Microsoft challenged all these claims. It said that although Windows was the dominant operating system, it was vulnerable to competition from other operating systems such as Linux and Apple's Mac OS and that there was a permanent threat of competition from new entrants.

Microsoft claimed that integrating Internet Explorer with Windows provided a single, unified product of greater consumer value. Instead of tying, Microsoft said, the browser and operating system constituted a single product. It was like a refrigerator with a chilled water dispenser or an automobile with a stereo player.

The Outcome

The court agreed that Microsoft was in violation of the Sherman Act and ordered that it be broken into two firms: an operating systems producer and an applications producer. Microsoft successfully appealed this order. But in the final judgment, Microsoft was ordered to disclose details about how its operating system works to other software developers so that they could compete effectively against Microsoft. In the summer of 2002, Microsoft began to comply with this order.

Merger Rules

You've now seen how the antitrust laws can be used to prevent an oligopoly from becoming a monopoly or trying to behave like one. We end by examining another way of trying to gain monopoly power—two or more oligopoly firms merging to increase their ability to control the market price. Mergers are subject to rules that are designed to limit monopoly power from arising and we close our explanation of the antitrust laws by seeing how they are used to review and sometimes to block a merger.

Mergers are often in the headlines. United Airlines and Continental Airlines merged to firm United Continental in 2010. AT&T wants to take over T-Mobile to create one of the largest cell-phone operators. Firms can benefit from a merger in two ways: They can lower costs and they can increase market power. Lower costs are not a threat to the social interest but increased market power is. For this reason, the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) challenges proposed mergers that will substantially lessen competition and not bring lower costs.

To determine the effects of a merger on competitiveness, the FTC uses guidelines based on the Herfindahl-Hirschman Index (HHI), which is explained in Chapter 17 (p. 435). *Eye on the U.S. Economy*, below, describes the FTC guidelines and looks at a high-profile merger that was blocked by applying them.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

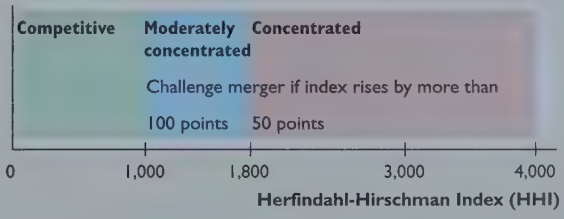
No Soda Merger

The figure (part a) summarizes the Federal Trade Commission's (FTC) guidelines on mergers. In a market in which the Herfindahl-Hirschman Index (HHI) is less than 1,000, a proposed merger is not challenged. But if the HHI is above 1,000, the FTC considers a challenge. If the HHI is between 1,000 and 1,800, a merger is challenged if it would increase the HHI by 100 points. And if the HHI exceeds 1,800 the market is already so concentrated that a merger is challenged even if it increases the index by only 50 points.

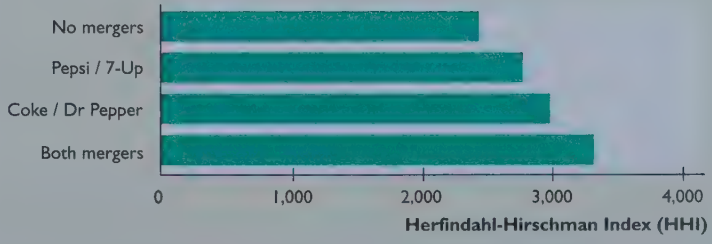
In 1986, PepsiCo wanted to buy 7-Up and Coca-Cola wanted to buy Dr Pepper. But the market for soda is highly concentrated. Coca-Cola has a 39 percent share, PepsiCo has 28 percent, Dr Pepper is next with 7 percent, followed by 7-Up with 6 percent. One other producer, RJR, has a 5 percent market share. So the five largest firms in this market have an 85 percent market share. The Herfindahl-Hirschman index is more than 2,400.

With an HHI of this magnitude, a merger that increases the index by only 50 points is examined by the FTC.

Part (b) of the figure shows how the HHI would have changed with the mergers. A PepsiCo–7-Up merger would increase the index by more than 300 points, a Coca-Cola–Dr Pepper merger would increase it by more than 500 points, and both mergers together would increase the HHI by almost 800 points. The FTC decided to block these mergers.



(a) The merger guidelines



(b) Product mergers in soft drinks

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 18.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 18.4

Describe the antitrust laws that regulate oligopoly.

Practice Problems

1. Explain each of the following terms:
   - Attempt to monopolize
   - Price fixing
   - Predatory pricing
   - Tying arrangements
2. Since 1987, hundreds of hospital mergers have taken place and rarely has the U.S. Federal Trade Commission challenged a hospital merger. What can you infer about the structure of the market in hospital services?

In the News

Intel will find refuge in the courts

The European Union recently fined Intel $1.45 billion because it gave "loyalty discounts" to repeat customers, presumably increasing Intel's dominance in the microprocessor business—called predatory pricing in the United States.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, June 2, 2009

Did Intel practice predatory pricing? If every morning you pick up a coffee at Starbucks and it offers you a loyalty discount, is that predatory pricing?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. An attempt to monopolize is an attempt by a company to drive out its competitors so that it can operate as a monopoly.

   Price fixing is making an agreement with competitors to set a specified price and not to vary it.

   Predatory pricing is the attempt to drive out competitors by charging a price that is too low for anyone to earn a profit.

   Tying arrangements exist when a company does not offer a buyer the opportunity to buy one item without at the same time buying another item.
2. The U.S. Federal Trade Commission will challenge a hospital merger only if it will substantially lessen competition. Such a situation will not arise if (1) the merger would not increase the likelihood of market power either because strong competitors exist or because the merging hospitals were sufficiently differentiated; (2) the merger would allow the hospitals to reduce cost; or (3) the merger would eliminate a hospital that otherwise would probably have failed and left the market.

Solution to In the News

Predatory pricing is the setting of a low price with the aim of driving competitors out of business and then setting the monopoly price when the competitors are gone. If the loyalty discount was intended to drive out AMD, Intel's competitor, then Intel's practice was predatory pricing. A loyalty discount at Starbucks isn't predatory pricing because the market for coffee is competitive. Driving out one coffee outlet will not create monopoly.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe and identify oligopoly and explain how it arises.

- Oligopoly is a market type in which a small number of interdependent firms compete behind a barrier to entry.
- Both natural (economies of scale and market demand) and legal barriers to entry create oligopoly.

2 Explain the dilemma faced by firms in oligopoly.

- If firms in oligopoly act together to restrict output, they make the same economic profit as a monopoly, but each firm can make a larger profit by increasing production.
- The oligopoly dilemma is whether to restrict or expand output.

3 Use game theory to explain how price and quantity are determined in oligopoly.

- In the prisoners' dilemma game, two players acting in their own interests harm their joint interest. Oligopoly is a prisoners' dilemma game.
- If firms cooperated, they could earn the monopoly profit, but in a one-play game, they overproduce and can drive the price and economic profit to the levels of perfect competition.
- Advertising and research and development create a prisoners' dilemma for firms in oligopoly.
- In a repeated game, a punishment strategy can lead to monopoly output, price, and economic profit.
- Oligopoly is usually inefficient because the price (marginal benefit) exceeds marginal cost and cost might not be the lowest attainable.

4 Describe the antitrust laws that regulate oligopoly.

- The Sherman Act (1890) and the Clayton Act (1914) make price-fixing agreements among firms illegal.
- Resale price maintenance might be efficient if it enables a producer to ensure the efficient level of service by distributors.
- Predatory pricing might bring temporary gains.
- Tying arrangements can facilitate price discrimination.
- The Federal Trade Commission examines and possibly blocks mergers if they would restrict competition too much.

Key Terms

Antitrust law, 473
Cartel, 456
Duopoly, 456
Game theory, 465
Nash equilibrium, 466
Payoff matrix, 466
Predatory pricing, 475
Prisoners' dilemma, 465
Resale price maintenance, 473
Strategies, 466
Tying arrangement, 475

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 18 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Use the following information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

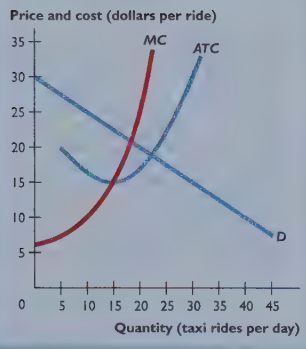
When the first automobiles were built in 1901, they were manufactured by skilled workers using hand tools. Later, in 1913, Henry Ford introduced the moving assembly line, which lowered costs and speeded production. Over the years, the production line has become ever more mechanized, and today robots have replaced people in many operations.

1. Sketch the average total cost curve and the demand curve for automobiles in 1901 and in 2012.
2. Describe the changing barriers to entry in the automobile industry and explain how the combination of market demand and economies of scale has changed the structure of the industry over the past 100 years.

Use the following information to work Problems **3** to **5**.

Isolated Island has two taxi companies, one owned by Ann and the other owned by Zack. Figure 1 shows the market demand curve for taxi rides, *D*, and the average total cost curve of one of the firms, *ATC*.

FIGURE 1



3. If Ann and Zack produce the same quantity of rides as would be produced in perfect competition, what are the quantity of rides, the price of a ride, and the economic profit of Ann and Zack? Would Ann and Zack have an incentive to collude and raise their price? Explain why or why not.
4. If Ann and Zack form a cartel and produce the same quantity of rides as would be produced in monopoly, what are the quantity of rides, the price of a ride, and the economic profit of Ann and Zack? Would Ann and Zack have an incentive to break the cartel agreement and cut their price? Explain why or why not.
5. Suppose that Ann and Zack have two strategies: collude, fix the monopoly price, and limit the number of rides or break the collusion, cut the price, and produce more rides. Create a payoff matrix for the game that Ann and Zack play, and find the Nash equilibrium for this game if it is played just once. Do the people of Isolated Island get the efficient quantity of taxi rides?

Use the following information to work Problems **6** and **7**.

Cola wars: What's your soft drink of choice?

Soft drink sales have fallen for six straight years as consumers switched to healthier alternatives such as juices, and cut back on spending in the recession. The two rivals have moved into bottled water, fruit juices, energy drinks, and sports drinks to try to maintain market share. Both companies saw decreased sales, but Pepsi had the greater loss. Overall, Coke product sales were down 0.5 percent while Pepsi saw a 2.6 percent decline.

Source: CBC News, March 18, 2011

6. Describe the strategies in the advertising and product development game that Coca-Cola and PepsiCo play. Why would you expect these strategies to *not* include cutting price?
7. With some assumed payoffs, create a payoff matrix for the game you've described in Problem 6. Find and explain the equilibrium outcome.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Intel and AMD have two pricing strategies: Set a high (monopoly) price or set a low (competitive) price. Suppose that if they both set a competitive price, economic profit for both is zero. If both set a monopoly price, Intel makes an economic profit of $860 million and AMD of $140 million. If Intel sets a low price and AMD sets a high price, Intel makes an economic profit of $100 million and AMD incurs an economic loss of $10 million; if Intel sets a high price and AMD sets a low price, Intel incurs an economic loss of $100 million and AMD makes an economic profit of $10 million.

   - Create the payoff matrix for this game.
   - What is the equilibrium of this game?
   - Is the equilibrium efficient?
   - Is this game a prisoners' dilemma?

Use the following information to work Problems 2 and 3.

The United States claims that Canada subsidizes the production of softwood lumber and that imports of Canadian lumber damage the interests of U.S. producers. The United States has imposed a tariff on Canadian imports to counter the subsidy. Canada is thinking of retaliating by refusing to export water to California. Table 1 shows a payoff matrix for the game that the United States and Canada are playing.

TABLE 1

United States \ Canada	Export	Don't export
No tariff	$100m, [illegible]	$25m, [illegible]
Tariff	$50m, $125m	$0m, $75m

2. What is the United States' best strategy? What is Canada's best strategy? What is the outcome of this game? Explain.
3. Is this game like a prisoners' dilemma or different in some crucial way? Explain. Which country would benefit more from a free trade agreement?
4. Agile Airlines is making $10 million a year economic profit on a route on which it has a monopoly. Wanabe Airlines is considering entering the market and operating on this route. Agile warns Wanabe to stay out and threatens to cut the price to the point at which Wanabe will make no profit if it enters. Wanabe does some research and determines that the payoff matrix for the game in which it is engaged with Agile is that shown in Table 2. Does Wanabe believe Agile's assertion? Does Wanabe enter or not? Explain.

TABLE 2

Wanabe \ Agile	High price	Low price
Enter	$7m, [illegible]	$1m, [illegible]
Don't enter	$0m, [illegible]	$0m, [illegible]

Use this information to work Problems 5 and 6.

21 airlines fined in price-fixing scheme

To date, 21 airlines have coughed up more than $1.7 billion in fines in one of the largest criminal antitrust investigations in U.S. history. To find a quick fix to avoid financial ruin, airlines came up with, according to federal prosecutors, a massive price-fixing scheme that artificially inflated international passenger and cargo fuel surcharges between 2000 and 2006. The scheme cost consumers hundreds of millions of dollars. The Justice Department called the case one of the largest antitrust settlements in U.S. history.

Source: Associated Press, March 5, 2011

5. Explain how the price-fixing scheme benefited the airlines and imposed costs on consumers.
6. Describe the price-fixing scheme as the equilibrium outcome of an oligopoly cartel game played by the airlines. Explain why the cartel survived.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 18 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Which of the following statements is *incorrect*. In oligopoly _____.
   A. barriers to entry prevent new firms entering
   B. each firm's profit is influenced by each other firms' advertising
   C. each firm's action is influenced by the actions and reactions of each other firm
   D. each firm is a price taker and the price is the monopoly profit-maximizing price
2. If firms in oligopoly form a cartel, it will likely break down because _____.
   A. firms cannot agree on how to share the economic profit
   B. the price set by the cartel is too low
   C. with price exceeding marginal cost, a firm might expand production to increase its profit
   D. firms realize that their allocation of resources is inefficient
3. The oligopoly dilemma is whether to _____.
   A. act together to restrict output and raise the price
   B. raise the price to the monopoly profit-maximizing price
   C. cheat on others in the cartel to take advantage of profit opportunities
   D. lower the price to the perfectly competitive price
4. In the prisoners' dilemma game, each player _____.
   A. consults the other player to determine his best action
   B. chooses the best outcome for the other player
   C. chooses the best outcome for himself
   D. chooses the best outcome for both players together
5. A Nash equilibrium _____.
   A. is the outcome that delivers maximum economic profit
   B. is the outcome in which each player takes the best action given the other player's action
   C. changes each time the game is played
   D. is the best possible outcome for the two players
6. In an advertising prisoners' dilemma game, _____.
   A. both firms will advertise and end up with lower profits than if neither advertises
   B. only one firm will advertise because the other firm sees the advertising expenditure as a waste
   C. the two firms agree on the total advertising budget and split it equally
   D. neither firm will advertise because both realize that it lowers profit
7. Each of the following practices violates U.S. antitrust law *except* _____.
   A. an agreement to sell one good only if the buyer purchases another good
   B. an agreement between the manufacturer and the seller to charge a given price for the good
   C. starting a price war with other sellers of a similar good
   D. cutting the price to increase market share to 100 percent, then raising the price.

Why is a coach worth $6 million?

19

Markets for Factors of Production

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain how the value of marginal product determines the demand for a factor of production.
2. Explain how wage rates and employment are determined and how labor unions influence labor markets.
3. Explain how capital and land rental rates and natural resource prices are determined.

THE ANATOMY OF FACTOR MARKETS

The four factors of production are

- Labor
- Capital
- Land (natural resources)
- Entrepreneurship

Factor markets
The markets in which the services of the factors of production are traded.

Factor prices
The prices of the services of the factors of production.

The *services* of labor, capital, and land are traded in **factor markets**, which determine their **factor prices**. Entrepreneurial services are not traded in markets and entrepreneurs receive the profit or bear the loss that results from their decisions. Let's take a brief look at the anatomy of the factor markets.

Markets for Labor Services

Labor services are the physical and mental work effort that people supply to produce goods and services. A *labor market* is a collection of people and firms who trade *labor services*. Some labor services are traded day by day, called casual labor. People who pick fruit and vegetables often just show up at a farm and take whatever work is available that day. But most labor services are traded on a contract, called a **job**. The price of labor services is a wage rate.

Job
A contract between a firm and a household to provide labor services.

Most labor markets have many buyers and sellers and are competitive. But in some labor markets a labor union organizes labor and introduces an element of monopoly into the market. We'll study both competitive labor markets and labor unions in this chapter.

Markets for Capital Services

Capital consists of the tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other constructions that have been produced in the past and that businesses now use to produce goods and services. These physical objects are themselves goods—*capital goods*—and are traded in goods markets, just as bottled water and toothpaste are.

A market for *capital services* is a *rental market*—a market in which the services of capital are hired. An example of a market for capital services is the vehicle rental market in which Avis, Budget, Hertz, U-Haul, and many other firms offer automobiles and trucks for hire. The price of capital services is a rental rate.

Most capital services are not traded in a market. Instead, a firm buys capital equipment and uses it itself. But the services of the capital that a firm owns and operates itself have an *implicit* price that arises from depreciation and interest costs (see Chapter 14, p. 345). You can think of the price as the *implicit rental rate* of capital.

Markets for Land Services and Natural Resources

Land consists of all the gifts of nature—natural resources. The market for land as a factor of production is the market for the *services of land*—the *use* of land. The price of the services of land is a rental rate.

Nonrenewable natural resources
Natural resources that can be used only once and cannot be replaced once they have been used.

Most natural resources, such as farm land, can be used repeatedly. But a few natural resources are nonrenewable. **Nonrenewable natural resources** are resources that can be used only once and cannot be replaced once they have been used. Examples are oil, natural gas, and coal. The prices of natural resources are determined in global *commodity markets* and are called *commodity prices*.

19.1 THE DEMAND FOR A FACTOR OF PRODUCTION

We begin our study of factor markets by learning about the demand for factors of production, and we use labor as the example.The demand for a factor of production is a **derived demand**—it is derived from the demand for the goods and services that it is used to produce. You've seen, in Chapters 15 through 18, how a firm determines its profit-maximizing output. The quantities of factors of production demanded are a direct consequence of firms' output decisions. Firms hire the quantities of factors of production that maximize profit.

Derived demand
The demand for a factor of production, which is derived from the demand for the goods and services that it is used to produce.

To decide the quantity of a factor of production to hire, a firm compares the cost of hiring an additional unit of the factor with its value to the firm. The cost of hiring an additional unit of a factor of production is the factor price. The value to the firm of hiring one more unit of a factor of production is called the factor's **value of marginal product,** which equals the price of a unit of output multiplied by the marginal product of the factor of production. To study the demand for a factor of production, we'll examine the demand for labor.

Value of marginal product
The value to a firm of hiring one more unit of a factor of production, which equals the price of a unit of output multiplied by the marginal product of the factor of production.

Value of Marginal Product

Table 19.1 shows you how to calculate the value of the marginal product of labor at Max's Wash 'n' Wax car wash service. The first two columns show Max's *total product* schedule—the number of car washes per hour that each quantity of labor can produce. The third column shows the *marginal product* of labor—the change in total product that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of labor employed. (See Chapter 14, pp. 349–353, for a refresher on product schedules.) Max can sell car washes at the going market price of $3 a wash. Given this information, we can calculate the value of marginal product (fourth column). It equals price multiplied by marginal product. For example, the marginal product of hiring the second worker is 4 car washes an hour. Each wash brings in $3, so the value of the marginal product of the second worker is $12 (4 washes at $3 each).

Table 19.1
Calculating the Value of Marginal Product

	Quantity of labor (workers)	Total product (car washes per hour)	Marginal product (washes per additional worker)	Value of marginal product (dollars per additional worker)
A	0	0		
			5	15
B	1	5		
			4	12
C	2	9		
			3	9
D	3	12		
			2	6
E	4	14		
			1	3
F	5	15		

The price of a car wash is $3. The value of the marginal product of labor equals the price of the product multiplied by marginal product of labor (column 3). The marginal product of the second worker is 4 washes, so the value of the marginal product of the second worker (in column 4) is $3 a wash multiplied by 4 washes, which is $12.

The Value of Marginal Product Curve

Figure 19.1 graphs the value of the marginal product of labor at Max's Wash 'n' Wax as the number of workers that Max hires changes. The blue bars that show the value of the marginal product of labor correspond to the numbers in Table 19.1. The curve labeled *VMP* is Max's value of marginal product curve.

A Firm's Demand for Labor

The value of the marginal product of labor and the wage rate determine the quantity of labor demanded by a firm. The value of the marginal product of labor tells us the additional revenue the firm earns by hiring one more worker. The wage rate tells us the additional cost the firm incurs by hiring one more worker.

Because the value of marginal product decreases as the quantity of labor employed increases, there is a simple rule for maximizing profit: Hire labor up to the point at which the value of marginal product equals the wage rate. If the value of marginal product of labor exceeds the wage rate, a firm can increase its profit by employing one more worker. If the wage rate exceeds the value of marginal product of labor, a firm can increase its profit by employing one less worker. But if the wage rate equals the value of the marginal product of labor, the firm cannot increase its profit by changing the number of workers it employs. The firm is making the maximum possible profit.

So the quantity of labor demanded by a firm is the quantity at which the wage rate equals the value of the marginal product of labor.

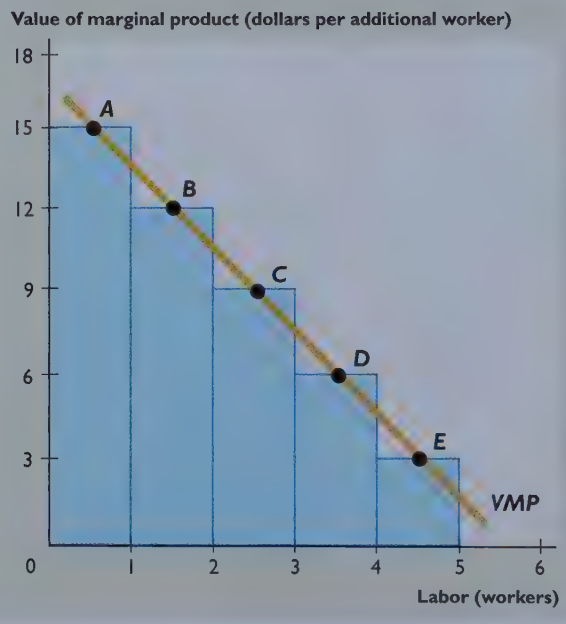
FIGURE 19.1

The Value of the Marginal Product at Max's Wash 'n' Wax

MyEconLab Animation

The blue bars show the value of the marginal product of the labor that Max hires based on the numbers in Table 19.1. The orange line is the firm's value of the marginal product of labor curve.

	Quantity of labor (workers)	Value of marginal product (dollars per additional worker)
A	1	15
B	2	12
C	3	9
D	4	6
E	5	3



A Firm's Demand for Labor Curve

A firm's demand for labor curve is also its value of marginal product curve. If the wage rate falls and other things remain the same, a firm hires more workers. Figure 19.2 shows Max's value of marginal product curve in part (a) and demand for labor curve in part (b). The *x*-axis measures the number of workers hired in both parts. The *y*-axis measures the value of marginal product in part (a) and the wage rate—dollars per hour—in part (b).

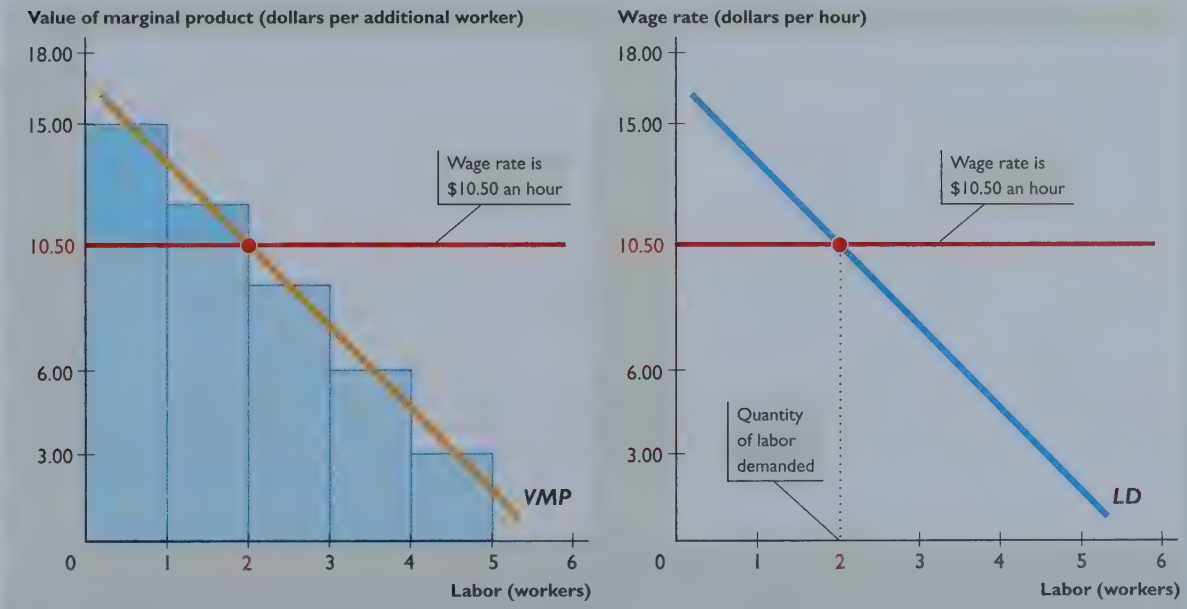
Suppose the wage rate is $10.50 an hour. You can see in part (a) that if Max hires 1 worker, the value of the marginal product of labor is $15 an hour. Because this 1 worker costs Max only $10.50 an hour, he makes a profit of $4.50 an hour. If Max hires 2 workers, the value of the marginal product of the second worker is $12 an hour. So on this second worker, Max makes a profit of $1.50 an hour. Max's total profit per hour on the first two workers is $6 an hour—$4.50 on the first worker plus $1.50 on the second worker.

If Max hired 3 workers, his profit would fall. The third worker generates a value of marginal product of only $9 an hour but costs $10.50 an hour, so Max

FIGURE 19.2

The Demand for Labor at Max's Wash 'n' Wax

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Value of marginal product

(b) Demand for labor

At a wage rate of $10.50 an hour, Max makes a profit on the first 2 workers but would incur a loss on the third worker in part (a), so the quantity of labor demanded is 2 workers in part (b). Max's demand for labor curve in part (b) is the same as the value of marginal product curve in part (a). The demand for labor curve slopes downward because the value of the marginal product of labor diminishes as the quantity of labor employed increases.

does not hire 3 workers. The quantity of labor demanded by Max when the wage rate is $10.50 an hour is 2 workers, which is a point on Max's demand for labor curve, *LD*, in Figure 19.2(b).

If the wage rate increased to $12.50 an hour, Max would decrease the quantity of labor demanded to 1 worker. If the wage rate decreased to $7.50 an hour, Max would increase the quantity of labor demanded to 3 workers.

A change in the wage rate brings a change in the quantity of labor demanded and a movement along the demand for labor curve. A change in any other influence on the firm's labor-hiring plans changes the demand for labor and shifts the demand for labor curve.

Changes in the Demand for Labor

The demand for labor depends on

- The price of the firm's output
- The prices of other factors of production
- Technology

The Price of the Firm's Output

The higher the price of a firm's output, the greater is its demand for labor. The price of output affects the demand for labor through its influence on the value of marginal product. A higher price for the firm's output increases the value of the marginal product of labor. A change in the price of a firm's output leads to a shift in the firm's demand for labor curve. If the price of the firm's output increases, the demand for labor increases and the demand for labor curve shifts rightward.

For example, if the price of a car wash increased to $4, the value of the marginal product of Max's third worker would increase from $9 to $12 an hour. At a wage rate of $10.50 an hour, Max would now hire 3 workers instead of 2.

The Prices of Other Factors of Production

If the price of using capital decreases relative to the wage rate, a firm substitutes capital for labor and increases the quantity of capital it uses. Usually, the demand for labor will decrease when the price of using capital falls. For example, if the price of a car wash machine falls, Max might decide to install an additional machine and lay off a worker. But the demand for labor could increase if the lower price of capital led to a sufficiently large increase in the scale of production. For example, with cheaper capital equipment available, Max might install an additional car wash machine and hire more labor to operate it. These factor substitutions occur in the *long run* when the firm can change the scale of its plant.

Technology

New technologies decrease the demand for some types of labor and increase the demand for other types. For example, if a new automated car wash machine becomes available, Max might install one of these machines and fire most of his work force—a decrease in the demand for car wash workers. But the firms that manufacture and service automatic car wash machines hire more labor—an increase in the demand for these types of labor. During the 1980s and 1990s, electronic telephone exchanges decreased the demand for telephone operators and increased the demand for computer programmers and electronics engineers.

CHECKPOINT 19.1

Explain how the value of marginal product determines the demand for a factor of production.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 19.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Kaiser's produces smoothies. The market for smoothies is perfectly competitive, and the price of a smoothie is $4. The labor market is competitive, and the wage rate is $40 a day. Table 1 shows Kaiser's total product schedule.

TABLE 1

Workers	Smoothies per day
1	7
2	21
3	33
4	43
5	51
6	55

1. Calculate the marginal product and the value of the marginal product of the fourth worker.
2. How many workers will Kaiser's hire to maximize its profit? How many smoothies a day will Kaiser's produce?
3. If the price of a smoothie rises to $5, how many workers will Kaiser's hire?
4. Kaiser's installs a machine that increases the marginal product of labor by 50 percent. If the price of a smoothie remains at $4 and the wage rises to $48 a day, how many workers does Kaiser's hire?

In the News

Where have America's jobs gone?

U.S. companies offer many reasons for their lack of robust hiring, including weak consumer spending. Over the past year, there has been an increase in manufacturing, transportation, and health-care jobs, but not in sectors related to homes and housing.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, July 12, 2011

Use the competitive goods and labor markets to explain why jobs in some sectors have grown but not in others.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The *MP* of the 4th worker equals the *TP* of 4 workers (43 smoothies) minus the *TP* of 3 workers (33 smoothies), which is 10 smoothies. The *VMP* of the 4th worker equals the *MP* of the 4th worker (10 smoothies) multiplied by the price of a smoothie ($4), which is $40 a day.
2. Kaiser's maximizes profit by hiring the number of workers that makes *VMP* equal to the wage rate ($40 a day). Kaiser's hires 4 workers. The marginal product of the 4th worker is 10 smoothies and the price of a smoothie is $4, so *VMP* is $40 a day. Kaiser's produces 43 smoothies a day.
3. Kaiser's maximizes profit by hiring 5 workers. The *MP* of the 5th worker is 8 smoothies and the price is $5, so *VMP* is $40 a day—equal to the wage rate.
4. When Kaiser's hires 5 workers, the *MP* of the 5th worker is 12 smoothies. The price of a smoothie is $4, so *VMP* is $48 a day— equal to the wage rate.

Solution to In the News

A profit-maximizing firm hires the quantity of labor at which the *VMP* of labor equals the market wage rate. *VMP* of labor equals *MP* multiplied by the price of the good. If the price of the good or *MP* increases, firms offer more jobs. If the price of the good or *MP* is unchanged, firm don't offer more jobs.

19.2 LABOR MARKETS

For most of us, a labor market is our only source of income. We work and earn a wage. What determines the amount of labor that we supply?

The Supply of Labor

People supply labor to earn an income. Many factors influence the quantity of labor that a person plans to provide, but a key factor is the wage rate.

To see how the wage rate influences the quantity of labor supplied, think about Larry's labor supply decision, which Figure 19.3 illustrates. Larry enjoys his leisure time, and he would be pleased if he didn't have to spend his evenings and weekends working at Max's Wash 'n' Wax. But Max pays him $10.50 an hour, and at that wage rate, Larry chooses to work 30 hours a week. The reason is that he is offered a wage rate that is high enough to make him regard this use of his time as the best available to him. If he were offered a lower wage rate, Larry would not be willing to give up so much leisure. If he were offered a higher wage rate, Larry would want to work even longer hours, but only up to a point. Offer Larry $25 an hour, and he would be willing to work a 40-hour week (and earn $1,000). With the goods and services that Larry can buy for $1,000, his priority would be a bit more leisure time if the wage rate increased further. If the wage rate increased above $25 an hour, Larry would cut back on his work hours and take more leisure. Larry's labor supply curve eventually bends backward.

FIGURE 19.3

An Individual's Labor Supply Curve

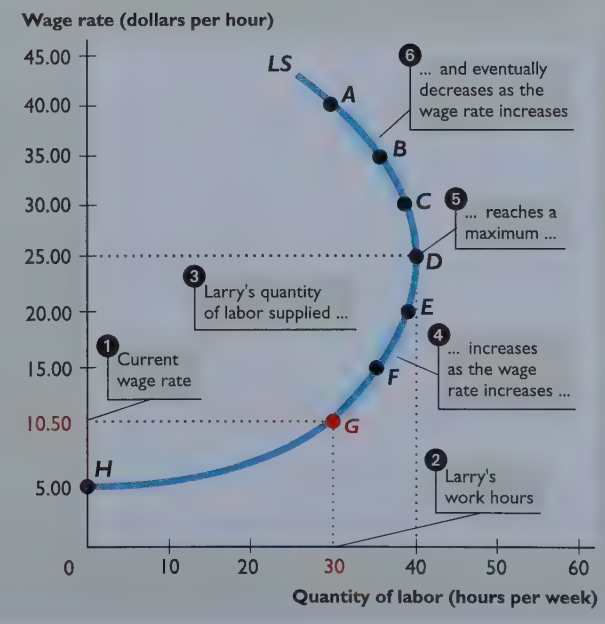
MyEconLab Animation

1 At a wage rate of $10.50 an hour,

2 Larry is willing to supply 30 hours a week of labor.

3 Larry's quantity of labor supplied 4 increases as the wage rate increases up to 5 a maximum, and then further increases in the wage rate 6 bring a decrease in the quantity of labor supplied. Larry's labor supply curve eventually bends backward.

	Wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor (hours per week)
A	40.00	30
B	35.00	35
C	30.00	38
D	25.00	40
E	20.00	38
F	15.00	35
G	10.50	30
H	5.00	0



Market Supply Curve

Larry's supply curve shows the quantity of labor supplied by one person as that person's wage rate changes. Most people behave like Larry, but people have different wage rates at which they are willing to work and at which their labor supply curve bends backward. A market supply curve shows the quantity of labor supplied by all households in a particular job. It is found by adding together the quantities supplied by all households at each wage rate. Also, along a market supply curve, the wage rates available in other jobs remain the same. For example, along the supply curve of car wash workers, we hold constant the wage rates of car salespeople, mechanics, and all other types of labor.

Offer Larry more for car washing than for oil changing, and he will supply more of his labor to car washing. The market supply curve in a given job slopes upward like the one in Figure 19.4, which shows the market supply curve for car wash workers in a large city.

Influences on the Supply of Labor

The supply of labor changes when influences other than the wage rate change. The key factors that change the supply of labor are

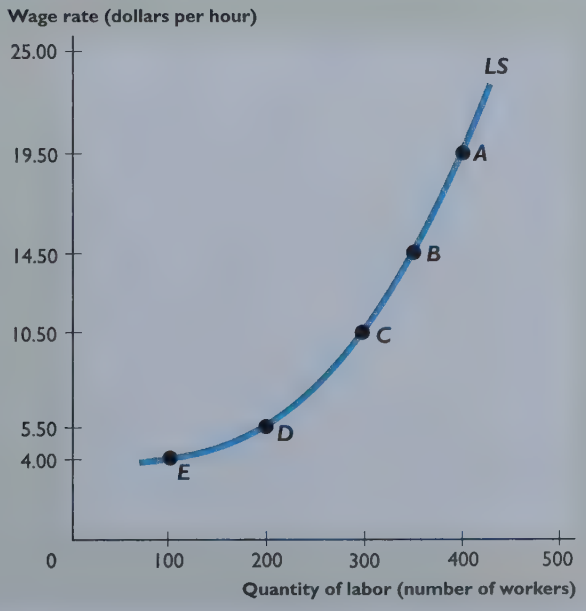
- Adult population
- Preferences
- Time in school and training

FIGURE 19.4

The Supply of Car Wash Workers

MyEconLab Animation

	Wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor (workers)
A	19.50	400
B	14.50	350
C	10.50	300
D	5.50	200
E	4.00	100



The supply curve of car wash workers shows how the quantity of labor supplied changes when the wage rate changes, other things remaining the same. In a market for a specific type of labor, the quantity supplied increases as the wage rate increases, other things remaining the same.

Adult Population

An increase in the adult population, caused either by a birth rate that exceeds the death rate or by immigration, increases the supply of labor. Historically, the population of the United States has been strongly influenced by immigration.

Preferences

In 2011, 53 percent of women had jobs, up from 35 percent in 1959. In contrast, in 2011, 64 percent of men had jobs, down from 80 percent in 1959. Many factors contributed to these changes, which economists classify as *changes in preferences.* These changes occur slowly but accumulate to make a large difference in the supply of labor. The result has been a large increase in the supply of female labor and a decrease in the supply of male labor.

Time in School and Training

The more people who remain in school for full-time education and training, the smaller is the supply of low-skilled labor. Today in the United States, almost everyone completes high school and more than 50 percent of high-school graduates enroll in college or university. Although many students work part time, the supply of labor by students is less than it would be if they were full-time workers. So when more people pursue higher education, other things remaining the same, the supply of low-skilled labor decreases. But time spent in school and training converts low-skilled labor into high-skilled labor. The greater the proportion of people who receive a higher education, the greater is the supply of high-skilled labor.

When the amount of work that people want to do at a given wage rate changes, the supply of labor changes. An increase in the adult population or an increase in the percentage of women with jobs increases the supply of labor. An increase in college enrollment decreases the supply of low-skilled labor. Later, it increases the supply of high-skilled labor. Changes in the supply of labor shift the supply of labor curve, just like the shifts of the supply curves that you studied in Chapter 4 (p. 95).

Competitive Labor Market Equilibrium

Labor market equilibrium determines the wage rate and employment. In Figure 19.5, the market demand curve for car wash workers is *LD.* Here, if the wage rate is $10.50 an hour, the quantity of labor demanded is 300 workers. If the wage rate rises to $14 an hour, the quantity demanded decreases to 200. And if the wage rate falls to $9 an hour, the quantity demanded increases to 350. Figure 19.5 also shows the supply curve of car wash workers, *LS*—the same curve as in Figure 19.4.

Figure 19.5 also shows equilibrium in the labor market. The equilibrium wage rate is $10.50 an hour, and the equilibrium quantity is 300 car wash workers. If the wage rate exceeded $10.50 an hour, there would be a surplus of car wash workers. More people would be looking for car wash jobs than firms were willing to hire. In such a situation, the wage rate would fall as firms found it easy to hire people at a lower wage rate. If the wage rate were less than $10.50 an hour, there would be a shortage of car wash workers. Firms would not be able to fill all the jobs they had available. In this situation, the wage rate would rise as firms found it necessary to offer higher wages to attract labor. Only at a wage rate of $10.50 an hour are there no forces operating to change the wage rate.

EYE on the COACH

Why Is a Coach Worth $6 Million?

Nick Saban, head coach of the Alabama Crimson Tide, earns $6 million a year. University of Alabama full professors earn about $100,000 a year. Why does the University of Alabama pay its football coach the amount that it pays 60 professors?

Nick Saban is worth 60 professors because his value of marginal product (*VMP*) to the University of Alabama is 60 times that of a professor.

Few people have the talent and willingness to work hard and take the stress of being head coach of a top-flight college football team. Mr. Saban is one of these few people and possibly the best of them. The consequence is that the supply of coaches like Nick Saban is small and inelastic.

To hire a top coach, the University of Alabama must pay the market price and that price is determined by the small supply and a high *VMP*.

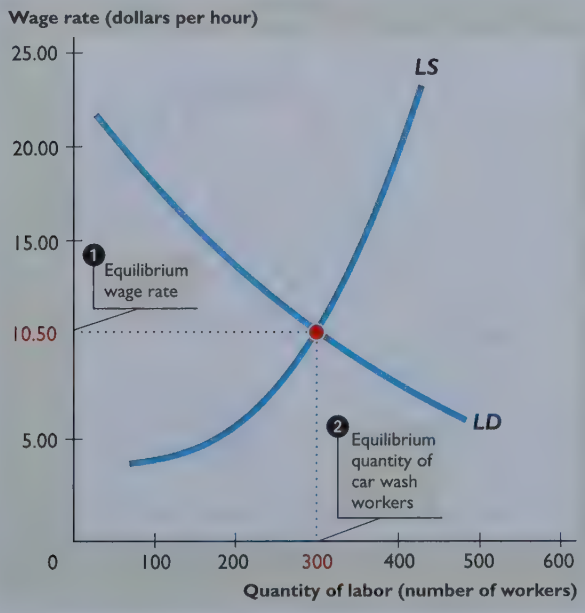
The *VMP* of a football coach is high, much higher than that of a professor, because of the revenue that a successful football team generates. Some of that revenue comes directly from the game and includes the football gear and theme clothing licensed by the University. But most of the revenue comes from increased donations by alumni and wealthy local and national patrons. The better the coach, the better is the team's performance and the greater is the revenue from these sources. Nick Saban brings in at least $6 million a year to the University of Alabama.

In contrast, a professor, even an outstanding one, generates a modest revenue for the University. He or she attracts a few students and obtains some research grant funds from the National Science Foundation or other private foundation. But the *VMP* of a professor is modest—around a 60th of the *VMP* of Nick Saban.

FIGURE 19.5

Labor Market Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation



Labor market equilibrium determines the wage rate and employment. The wage rate adjusts to make the quantity of labor demanded equal the quantity of labor supplied.

1. The equilibrium wage rate is $10.50 an hour.
2. The equilibrium quantity of labor is 300 workers.

If the wage rate exceeds $10.50 an hour, the quantity supplied exceeds the quantity demanded and the wage rate falls.

If the wage rate is below $10.50 an hour, the quantity demanded exceeds the quantity supplied and the wage rate rises.

Labor Unions

Labor union
An organized group of workers that aims to increase wages and influence other job conditions of its members.

A **labor union** is an organized group of workers that aims to increase wages and influence other job conditions of its members. In some labor markets, labor unions have a powerful effect on the wage rate and employment. To see the effects of a labor union, let's see what happens if a union enters a competitive labor market.

A Union Enters a Competitive Labor Market

A labor union that enters a competitive labor market can try to restrict the supply of labor or it can try to increase the demand for labor. If the union restricts the supply of labor below its competitive level, the wage rate rises. If that is all the union is able to do, the wage rate rises, but the number of jobs decreases. There is a tradeoff between the wage rate and the number of jobs.

Figure 19.6 illustrates a labor market before and after a union enters it. Before the union enters the market, the demand curve is LD_0, the supply curve is LS_0, the wage rate is $10.50 an hour, and 300 workers are employed.

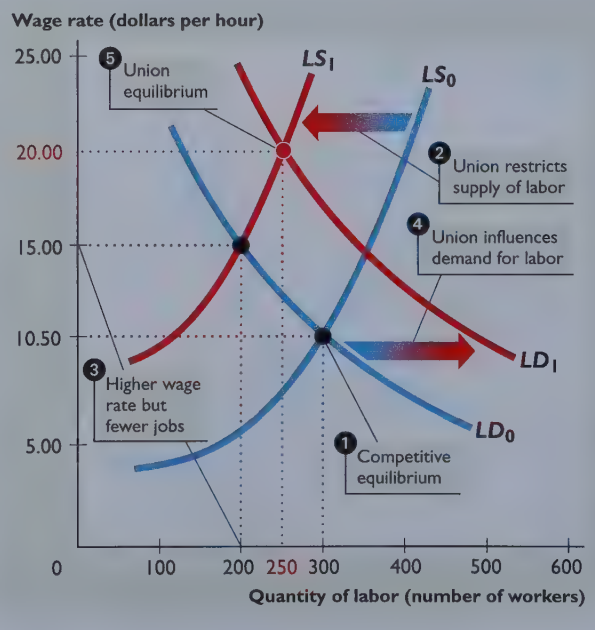
When a labor union enters this market, it restricts the supply of labor and the supply of labor curve shifts leftward to LS_1. The wage rate rises to $15 an hour and employment decreases to 200 workers. The union simply picks its preferred position along the demand curve that defines the tradeoff it faces between employment and the wage rate.

Because restricting the supply of labor brings a higher wage rate at the cost of jobs, unions also try to increase the demand for labor.

FIGURE 19.6
A Competitive Labor Market and Unionized Labor Market Compared

MyEconLab Animation

1. In a competitive labor market, the demand for labor is LD_0, the supply of labor is LS_0, the equilibrium wage rate is $10.50 an hour and the equilibrium quantity of labor is 300 workers.
2. A labor union restricts the supply of labor and the supply of labor curve shifts leftward to LS_1.
3. The wage rate rises to $15 an hour, but employment decreases to 200 workers—jobs are traded off for a higher wage rate.
4. If the union action increases labor productivity and increases the demand for labor, the demand for labor curve shifts rightward to LD_1.
5. The wage rate rises further to $20 an hour and employment increases to 250 workers.



How Labor Unions Try to Increase the Demand for Labor

Labor unions try to increase the demand for the labor of their members by

- Increasing the value of marginal product of union members
- Supporting minimum wage laws
- Supporting immigration restrictions
- Supporting import restrictions

The value of marginal product of union members might be increased (and the demand for union labor increased) by union-organized and union-sponsored job training programs, by union-supported apprenticeship and other on-the-job training activities, and by professional certification.

A minimum wage law might increase the demand for union labor by increasing the cost of employing low-skilled nonunion labor. An increase in the wage rate of low-skilled labor leads to a decrease in the quantity demanded of low-skilled labor and to an increase in the demand for high-skilled union labor, a substitute for low-skilled labor.

Immigration increases the supply of labor. By supporting restrictive immigration laws, unions seek to decrease the supply of foreign workers and increase the demand for union labor.

By supporting import restrictions, labor unions try to increase the demand for the goods and services produced by unionized workers.

Figure 19.6 shows the effects of a labor union that is able to increase the demand for the labor of its members. The demand curve shifts rightward to LD_1, the wage rate rises to $20 an hour, and employment increases to 250 workers.

Can Unions Restrict the Supply of Labor?

The union's ability to restrict the supply of labor is limited by how well it can prevent nonunion workers from offering their labor in the same market as union workers. The larger the fraction of the work force controlled by the union, the more effective the union can be in this regard.

It is difficult for unions to operate in markets where there is an abundant supply of willing nonunion workers. For example, the market for farm labor in southern California is very tough for a union to organize because of the steady flow of nonunion, often illegal, workers from Mexico. At the other extreme, unions in the construction industry can better control the supply of labor because they can influence the number of people who can obtain skills as electricians, plasterers, carpenters, and plumbers. Although not labor unions in a legal sense, the professional associations of dentists and physicians are well placed to restrict the supply of dentists and physicians. These groups control the number of qualified workers by controlling either the examinations that new entrants must pass or the entrance into professional degree programs.

The Scale of the Union-Nonunion Wage Gap

How much of a difference to wage rates do unions make? To answer this question, we must look at the wages of unionized and nonunionized workers who do similar work. The evidence suggests that after allowing for skill differences, the union-nonunion wage gap lies between 10 percent and 25 percent. For example, unionized airline pilots earn about 25 percent more than nonunion pilots with the same level of skill.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 19.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 19.2

Explain how wage rates and employment are determined and how labor unions influence labor markets.

Practice Problems

In Greenville, where fast-food outlets hire teenagers and seniors, the following events occur one at a time and other things remain the same. Explain the influence of each event on the market for fast-food workers.

1. Seniors flock to Greenville and make it their home.
2. Greenville becomes a major tourist center attracting thousands of additional visitors every day.
3. The price of fast food falls.
4. A labor union organizes fast-food workers and gets a law passed that raises the minimum age and lowers the maximum age at which a person can work in the fast-food industry.

In the News

VW exec knows of no talks to unionize Tennessee plant
Volkswagen opened the $1 billion plant in Chattanooga in May and hired its 2,000th employee there in July. Our hourly wage starts at $14.50 per hour, which is very competitive and we have great benefits.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, August 1, 2011

If this plant's workers join the union, explain how the wage rate will change.

FIGURE 1

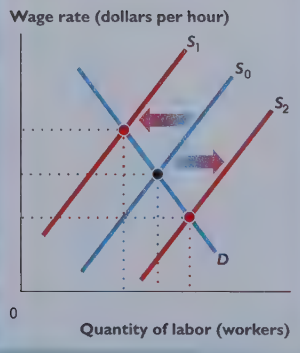


FIGURE 2

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. An increase in the number of seniors increases the supply of fast-food labor. The supply curve shifts rightward from S_0 to S_2 (Figure 1). The wage rate falls, and the number of fast-food workers employed increases.
2. A boost in visitor numbers increases the demand for fast food, which in turn increases the demand for fast-food workers. The demand curve shifts rightward from D_0 to D_1 (Figure 2). The wage rate rises, and the number of fast-food workers employed increases.
3. A fall in the price of fast food decreases the demand for fast-food workers. The demand curve shifts leftward from D_0 to D_2 (Figure 2). The wage rate falls, and the number of fast-food workers employed decreases.
4. A rise in the minimum age and a fall in the maximum age at which a person can work in the fast-food industry decreases the supply of labor. The supply curve shifts leftward from S_0 to S_1 (Figure 1). The wage rate rises, and the number of fast-food workers employed decreases.

Solution to In the News

The union will try to raise the wage rate (or improve benefits). If the union can increase the value of marginal product of the workers, then the wage rate will rise. But if the union tries to increase the wage rate (or benefits) without an increase in the value of marginal product, the plant will cut the number of workers.

19.3 CAPITAL AND NATURAL RESOURCE MARKETS

The markets for capital and land can be understood by using the same basic ideas that you've seen when studying labor markets. But markets for nonrenewable natural resources are different. We'll now examine three groups of factor markets:

- Capital markets
- Land markets
- Nonrenewable natural resource markets

Capital Markets

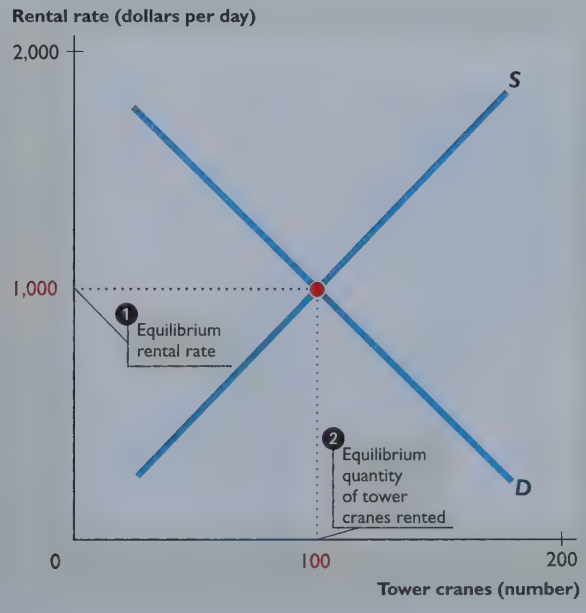
The demand for capital is based on the *value of marginal product of capital.* Profit-maximizing firms hire capital services up to the point at which the value of marginal product of capital equals the *rental rate of capital.* The *lower* the rental rate, other things remaining the same, the *greater* is the quantity of capital *demanded.* The supply of capital responds in the opposite way to the rental rate. The *higher* the rental rate, other things remaining the same, the *greater* is the quantity of capital *supplied.* The equilibrium rental rate makes the quantity of capital demanded equal to the quantity supplied.

Figure 19.7 illustrates the market for the rental of tower cranes, capital used to construct high-rise buildings. With the demand curve *D* and supply curve *S*, the equilibrium rental rate is $1,000 per day and 100 tower cranes are rented.

FIGURE 19.7

A Market for Capital Services

MyEconLab Animation



The demand curve for tower crane rentals is *D*, and the supply curve is *S*.

1. The equilibrium rental rate is $1,000 per day.
2. The equilibrium quantity of cranes rented is 100.

Land Markets

The demand for land, like the demand for labor and the demand for capital, is a derived demand and is based on the *value of marginal product of land.* Firms maximize profits by renting the quantity of land at which the value of marginal product of land equals the *rental rate of land.* The *lower* the rental rate, other things remaining the same, the *greater* is the quantity of land *demanded.*

But the supply of land is special: The quantity is fixed, so the quantity supplied cannot be changed by people's decisions. The supply of each particular block of land is *perfectly inelastic.*

The equilibrium land rental rate makes the quantity of land demanded equal to the quantity available. Figure 19.8 illustrates the market for a given parcel of land, a 10-acre block on Chicago's "Magnificent Mile." The quantity supplied is 10 acres regardless of the rent. The demand curve is *D* and the equilibrium rental rate is $1,000 an acre per day.

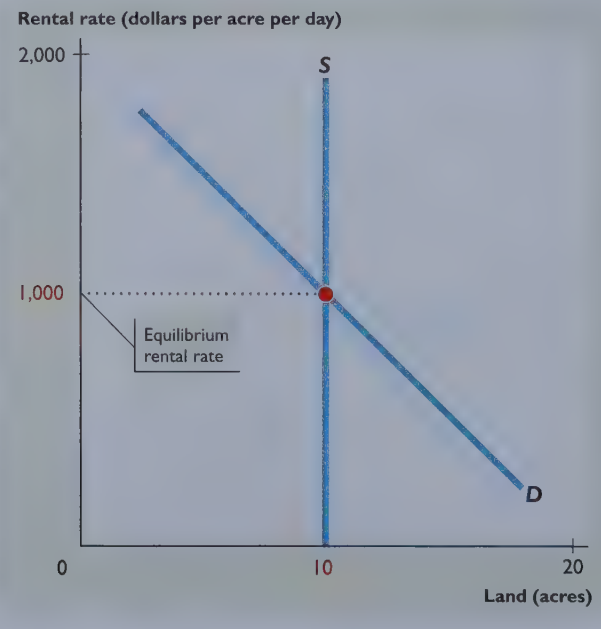
A change in the demand for land changes the equilibrium rental rate but leaves the quantity unchanged. The greater the demand, the higher is the rent—demand determines the rental rate. The rental rate for an acre of land in Manhattan is greater than that for an acre of farmland in Idaho because the value of marginal product and the demand for the land is greater in Manhattan than in Idaho. The price of a Big Mac at McDonald's on Fifth Avenue is higher than in downtown Boise, Idaho, but not because the rental rate on land in New York is higher. The rental rate on land is higher in New York because the greater demand for Big Macs (and most other things) in New York makes the demand for land greater in New York than in Boise.

FIGURE 19.8

A Market for Land

MyEconLab Animation

The demand curve for a 10-acre block of land is *D*, and the supply curve is *S*. Equilibrium occurs at a rental rate of $1,000 an acre per day.



Nonrenewable Natural Resource Markets

The nonrenewable natural resources are those that we use to produce energy. Burning one of these fuels converts it to energy and other by-products and the used resource cannot be re-used. The natural resources that we use to make metals are also nonrenewable, but they can be used again, at some cost, by recycling them.

The value of marginal product of oil, gas, and coal determine the demand for these nonrenewable natural resources. The demand side of the markets for these resources is just like the demand side of all factor markets.

It is the supply side of a nonrenewable natural resource market that is special.

The Quantity of a Nonrenewable Natural Resource

The *stock* of a nonrenewable natural resource is the quantity in existence at a given time. This quantity is fixed by nature and past use and is independent of the price of the resource. The *proven reserves* of a nonrenewable natural resource is the quantity that has been discovered and that can be accessed at prices close to the current price. This quantity increases over time because advances in technology enable ever less accessible sources to be discovered.

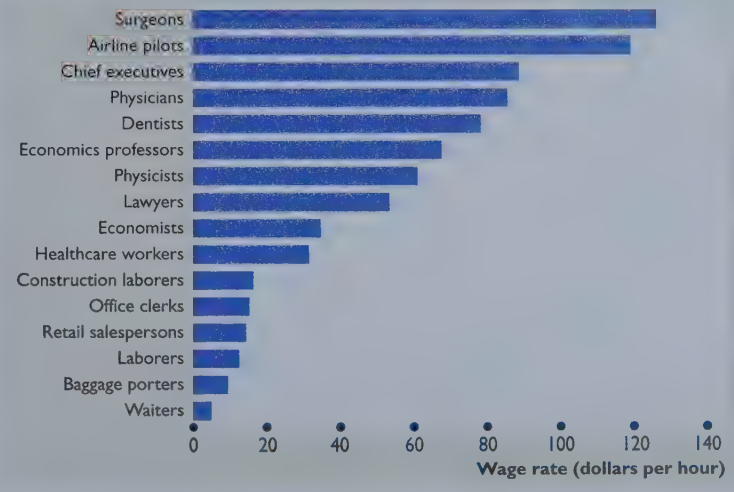
Both of these quantity concepts of a nonrenewable natural resource influence its price, but the influence is indirect. The direct influence on price is the rate at which the resource is supplied for use in production—the *supply of the resource.*

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Job Choice and Income Prospects

Your job choice will have a big impact on your income. To provide you with some guidance on this impact, the figure shows wage rates for 16 occupations (or groups of occupations) reported by the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

You can see that economists are highly paid but not the highest. John Maynard Keynes, one of the leading economists of the last century, expressed the hope that economists would one day be as useful as dentists. If wage rates measure usefulness, you can see that the average economist isn't as useful as the average dentist. Nor is a university teacher of economics as useful as a dentist!



SOURCE OF DATA: National Compensation Survey, Bureau of Labor Statistics.

The Supply of a Nonrenewable Natural Resource

The owner of a nonrenewable natural resource is willing to supply any quantity for the right price. But what *is* the right price? It is the price that gives the same expected profit as holding the resource and selling it next year. This price is lower than the price expected next year by an amount determined by the interest rate.

To see why, think about the choices of Saudi Arabia, a country with a large inventory of oil. Saudi Arabia can sell oil right now and use the revenue to buy U.S. government bonds, or it can keep the oil in the ground and sell it next year.

If Saudi Arabia sells the oil and buys bonds, it earns the interest rate on the bonds. If it keeps its oil and sells it next year, it earns a profit equal to the price increase (or incurs a loss equal to the price decrease) between now and next year. If Saudi Arabia expects the percentage rise in the price of oil to exceed the interest rate it can earn on bonds, it will hold oil off the market. If it expects the percentage rise in the price of oil to be smaller than the interest rate it can earn on bonds, it will want to sell oil today.

Saudi Arabia will be equally happy to sell or hold oil at the price that makes next year's expected price higher than today's price by the same percentage as the interest rate. For example, if next year's expected price is $84 and the interest rate is 5 percent (0.05), Saudi Arabia will be willing to sell right now for $80 a barrel. It will sell none for less than $80 and will sell as much as possible at more than $80.

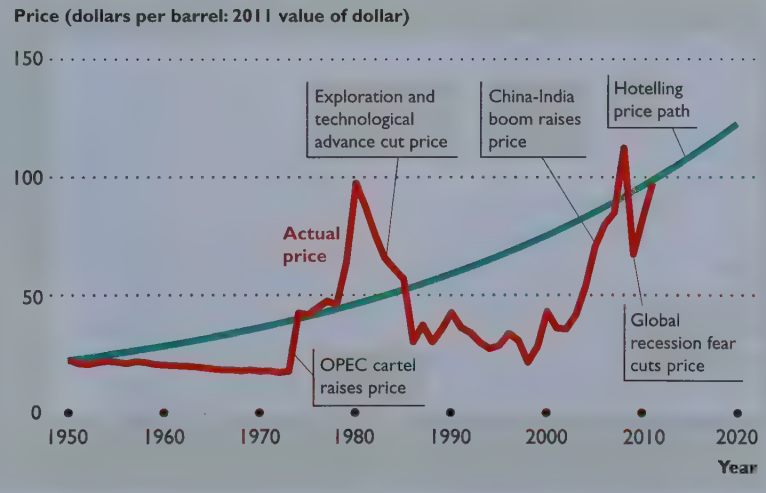
With the price expected to rise to $84 a barrel next year, Saudi Arabia is indifferent between selling oil now for $80 a barrel and not selling now but waiting until next year and selling it for $84 a barrel. Saudi Arabia expects to make the same return either way. So at $80 a barrel, Saudi Arabia will sell whatever quantity is demanded. Saudi Arabia's supply is *perfectly elastic* at $80 a barrel.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Oil and Metal Prices

Driven by booms in China and India, the price of oil hit a new high of $100 a barrel in 2008. The global recession halved the price in 2009 but renewed expansion in Asia sent it back up.

The figure shows the history of the real price of oil (measured in terms of the value of money in 2011). It also shows the path that the price would have followed if it had risen at a rate equal to the interest rate (the *Hotelling Principle*). You can see that although the price fluctuated a great deal, it has fluctuated around the predicted path and in 2011 was on the predicted path.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, World Economic Outlook Database, April 2011.

Equilibrium in a Nonrenewable Natural Resource Market

In a nonrenewable natural resource market, the equilibrium price is the one that gives suppliers an expected profit equal to the interest rate. The equilibrium quantity is the quantity demanded at that price.

Over time, the equilibrium quantity of natural resources used changes as the demand for them changes. The price also changes over time, for two reasons.

First, expectations change. The forces that influence expectations are not well understood. The expected future price of a natural resource depends on the expected future rate of use and rate of discovery of new sources of supply. But one person's expectation about a future price also depends on guesses about other people's expectations. These guesses can change abruptly and become self-reinforcing. When the expected future price of a natural resource changes for whatever reason, its supply changes to reflect that expectation.

Second, suppliers of a natural resource expect the price to rise by the same percentage as the interest rate. If expectations are on the average correct and nothing happens to change expectations, the price *does* rise by the same percentage as the interest rate. The proposition that the price of a nonrenewable natural resource is expected to rise at a rate equal to the interest rate is called the *Hotelling Principle.* It was first realized by Harold Hotelling, an economist at Columbia University.

As *Eye on the Global Economy* below shows, actual prices do not follow the path predicted by the Hotelling Principle. The reason is that the future is unpredictable and expectations about future prices keep changing.

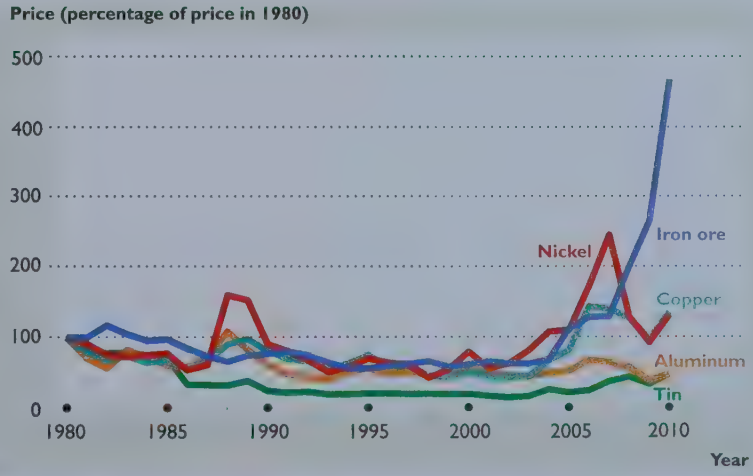
But the price of oil (and other energy resources) has increased, on the average, at a rate equal to the interest rate and may be expected to continue to do so.

The prices of metal ores (shown in the figure on this page) tell a very different story from the price of oil.

Back in 1980, ecologist Paul Ehrlich said that with rapid population growth, we would run out of natural resources. Arguing that human ingenuity would overcome pressure on resources, economist Julian Simon bet Ehrlich that the prices of five metals would fall during the 1980s.

The graph shows that Simon won the bet, and that metals prices continued to fall through 2002.

But they began to rise in 2003 and rose more steeply through the 2000s as demand from China and India grew.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, World Economic Outlook Database, April 2011.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 19.3 and get instant feedback.

LIST 1

- Beaches in Florida
- Lake Powell
- Empire State Building
- Silver mines in Arizona
- The Great Lakes
- National parks
- Redwood forests
- The Statue of Liberty

CHECKPOINT 19.3

Explain how capital and land rental rates and natural resource prices are determined.

Practice Problems

1. Which of the items in List 1 are nonrenewable natural resources, which are renewable natural resources, and which are not natural resources? Explain your answers.
2. In the market for a nonrenewable natural resource, explain what determines the equilibrium price and the equilibrium quantity.

In the News

Farmland more valuable than ever

The impact of higher oil prices is being felt on the farm in a number of ways. Feed grain prices and wheat prices have moved up significantly from a year ago. And at these higher prices land rents have gone up.

Source: *USA Today*, February 5, 2008

1. Explain how the growing demand for grain affects the market for farmland.
2. How might farmers meet the growing demand for farm products without having to use a greater quantity of land?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Natural resources include all the gifts of nature. A nonrenewable natural resource is one that once used cannot be used again. A renewable natural resource is one that can be used repeatedly.

   Nonrenewable natural resources include silver mines in Arizona.

   Renewable natural resources include beaches in Florida, Lake Powell, the Great Lakes, national parks, and redwood forests.

   The Empire State Building and the Statue of Liberty are national landmarks, but they are not natural resources. Labor and capital were used to build the Empire State Building. The Statue of Liberty was a gift from France and not a gift of nature.
2. In a nonrenewable natural resource market, the equilibrium price is the price that gives suppliers an expected profit equal to the interest rate. The equilibrium quantity is the quantity demanded at that price.

Solutions to In the News

1. As the demand for grain grows with no change in grain output, the price of grain rises. Farmland is a renewable resource—a factor of production. The demand for a factor of production is a derived demand, which is determined by the factor's value of marginal product (*VMP*). An increase in the price of grain increases the farmland's *VMP* and increases the demand for farmland. The rental rate of farmland rises.
2. To increase farm output without using more land, farms will have to become more productive. That is, they will have to use a better technology, which will increase the *MP* of land and increase the land's *VMP*.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain how the value of marginal product determines the demand for a factor of production.

- The demand for a factor of production is a derived demand—it is derived from the demand for the goods and services that the factor of production is used to produce.
- The quantity of a factor of production that is demanded depends on its price and the value of its marginal product, which equals the price of the product multiplied by marginal product.
- Changes in technology bring changes in the demand for labor.

2 Explain how wage rates and employment are determined and how labor unions influence labor markets.

- An individual's quantity of labor supplied is influenced by the wage rate: At low wage rates, the quantity of labor supplied increases as the wage rate rises; at high wage rates, the quantity of labor supplied *decreases* as the wage rate rises—the individual's supply of labor curve eventually bends backward.
- The quantity of labor supplied by all households increases as the wage rate rises—the market supply of labor curve is upward sloping.
- Wage rates are determined by demand and supply in labor markets.
- A labor union can raise the wage rate by restricting the supply of labor or by increasing the demand for labor.

3 Explain how capital and land rental rates and natural resource prices are determined.

- Capital and land rental rates are determined by demand and supply in capital and land markets; natural resource prices are determined by demand and supply in commodity markets.
- The demand for capital, land, and nonrenewable natural resources is determined by the value of their marginal products.
- The supply of land is perfectly inelastic and the demand for land determines the rental rate.
- The supply of a nonrenewable natural resource is perfectly elastic at a price that makes the expected price rise at a rate equal to the interest rate. Expectations fluctuate and so do natural resource prices.

Key Terms

Derived demand, 485
Factor markets, 484
Factor prices, 484
Job, 484
Labor union, 494
Nonrenewable natural resources, 484
Value of marginal product, 485

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 19 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. A California asparagus farmer is maximizing profit. The price of asparagus is $2 a bunch, a farm worker's wage rate is $12 an hour, and the asparagus farm employs six workers. What is the marginal product of the sixth farm worker? If, when the price of asparagus rises to $3 a bunch, the farm hires eight workers, what is the marginal product of the eighth worker?
2. Through the 1990s, the percentage of high school students who decided to go to college increased. Draw a demand-supply graph to illustrate the effect of this increase on the market for college graduates. Explain its effect on the market for college professors.
3. If your college switched to online delivery of its courses, what changes do you predict would occur in the factor markets in the town where your college is located?
4. If soccer becomes more popular in the United States and basketball becomes less popular, is it true that professional basketball players will earn more than what they earn today? Use the laws of demand and supply in factor markets to explain your answer.
5. Suppose that Palm Island, the world's largest grower of coconuts, plans to build its first airport on 100 acres of productive farm land. Palm Islanders expected the world price of coconuts to rise by 200 percent next year and remain high for the next decade. Explain the influence of these events on Palm Island's labor market and land market.
6. Is it true that the opening of a new diamond mine in the Yukon in Canada will lower the world price of diamonds and lower the wage rate paid to diamond workers in South Africa? Use a graph to illustrate your answer.

Use the following information to work Problems 7 to 9.

Robots on the farm

Commercial farms of the future may be staffed by robots that will identify, spray, and pick individual pieces of produce from plants, even when their targets are grapes, peppers, and apples that are as green as the leaves that surround them. Robots could also offer a timely supply of labor in many places, where there simply aren't enough itinerant workers available at the right times in the harvesting cycle.

Source: ABC News, April 17, 2011

7. Explain the effects of not enough itinerant workers at harvest time on the market for farm labor.
8. How will the use of robots change the value of marginal product of farm workers?
9. Explain how using robots will create better paying farm jobs.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Is the market for college football coaches competitive? If it is, why don't they all earn the same wage rate? Is the market for Nick Saban competitive? How is his compensation determined?
2. In the years after World War II, the birth rate increased and the so-called baby boom generation was created. That generation is now beginning to retire. Draw a demand-supply graph to illustrate the effects of this increase in the number of seniors on the market for medical services.

Use the following information to work Problems **3** and **4**.

A new coffee shop opens and to maximize profit it hires 5 workers at the competitive wage rate. The price of a cup of coffee is $4 and the value of marginal product of workers in the coffee shop is $12 an hour.

3. What is the marginal product of the coffee shop workers? How much does a coffee shop worker earn?
4. If the price of a cup of coffee rises from $4 to $5 and the coffee shop continues to hire workers at the competitive wage rate, explain how the value of marginal product and the number of workers hired will change.
5. "As more people buy Internet service, the price of Internet service will fall. The fall in the price of Internet service will lead to a fall in the wage rate paid to Web page designers." Is this statement true or false? Explain your answer.
6. Suppose that Bananaland is the world's largest grower of bananas. Bananaland plans to double its population in 3 years by hiring well-educated people from the United States. To increase the number of entrepreneurs, Bananaland encourages anyone with $1 million to immigrate. Explain the influence of these events on Bananaland's labor market and land market.
7. Hong Kong is much more densely populated than is the United States. Compare the rent on land in Hong Kong with that in Chicago. Can you explain why the percentage of commercial buildings that are new in downtown Chicago is less than that in Hong Kong?

Use the following information to work Problems **8** and **9**.

Unwinding in the capital of the Woodstock nation

In August 1969, in Bethel, N.Y., some 400,000 people swarmed to Max Yasgur's 600-acre farm for the Woodstock Music & Art Fair to hear rock acts like the Who and Jimi Hendrix. In 2007, with plenty of land available and only 100 miles from New York City, people built weekend homes. As a result of all the new development, Bethel has placed a temporary moratorium on subdivisions.

Source: *The New York Times*, September 21, 2007

8. Draw a graph to show the change in the land market from 1969 to 2007. Explain how the moratorium will influence the land market in 2008.
9. Draw a graph to show the Bethel labor market in 2007. Explain how the moratorium will influence the Bethel labor market in 2008.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 19 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A firm's demand for labor is determined by _____.
   A. the market wage rate
   B. the price of the good that the firm produces and the wage rate it pays
   C. the marginal product of labor and the market wage rate
   D. the price of the good that the firm produces and the marginal product of labor
2. The value of marginal product of labor increases if _____.
   A. more labor is hired
   B. more of the good is produced
   C. the market price of the good produced rises
   D. using a new technology reduces the demand for labor
3. An individual's supply of labor curve is _____.
   A. horizontal at the market wage rate
   B. upward sloping as the wage rate rises
   C. upward sloping at low wage rates but becomes downward sloping at high wage rates
   D. vertical at the standard number of hours a person works per day
4. In a competitive labor market for bakers, the equilibrium wage rate _____.
   A. rises if bakers become more productive
   B. falls if the supply of bakers decreases
   C. rises if the market price of bakery items falls
   D. rises if new technology makes it easier for anyone to be a baker
5. A union will _____ if it can _____.
   A. raise the wage rate of its members; decrease the marginal product of its union members
   B. raise the wage rate of its members; introduce minimum qualifications, which will restrict membership of the union
   C. increase the number of union jobs; restrict membership of the union
   D. increase the number of union jobs; increase the union wage rate
6. To maximize profit, a firm _____.
   A. uses the quantity of land at which the rental rate equals the value of marginal product of land
   B. balances the rental rate of capital against the wage rate of labor
   C. uses the quantity of capital at which the marginal revenue equals the value of marginal product of capital
   D. uses the quantity of capital at which the suppliers' expected profit equals the value of marginal product of capital
7. Which of the following statements about a nonrenewable natural resource market is *incorrect*?
   A. The demand for the resource is determined by its value of marginal product.
   B. The supply of the resource is perfectly elastic at the market price.
   C. The price of the resource is expected to rise over time at a rate equal to the interest rate.
   D. The supply of the resource is perfectly inelastic at the proven reserves.

Who are the rich and the poor?

20

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

Economic Inequality

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the economic inequality in the United States.
2. Explain how economic inequality arises.
3. Explain how governments redistribute income and describe the effects of redistribution on economic inequality.

20.1 MEASURING ECONOMIC INEQUALITY

Market income
A household's wages, interest, rent, and profit earned in factor markets before paying income taxes.

Money income
Market income plus cash payments to households by the government.

To measure economic inequality, we look at the distributions of income and wealth. A household's *income* is the amount that it *receives in a given period*. A household's **market income** equals the wages, interest, rent, and profit that the household earns in factor markets before paying income taxes. The Census Bureau defines another income concept, **money income**, which equals *market income* plus cash payments to households by the government. We will use the *money income* concept to describe the distribution of income in the United States.

A household's *wealth* is the value of the things it *owns at a point in time*. Wealth is measured as the market value of a household's home, the stocks and bonds that it owns, and the money in its bank accounts minus its debts such as outstanding credit card balances.

To describe the *distribution of income*, imagine the population of the United States lined up from the lowest to the highest income earner. Now divide the line into five equal-sized groups, each with 20 percent of the population. These groups are called *quintiles*.

Next share out total money income among these groups so that the shares represent the U.S. income distribution. Table 20.1(a) lists the percentages received by each group.

Share out the pie of total wealth in a similar way. Table 20.1(b) shows the percentages owned by each of seven groups. The richest quintile has been broken down into smaller groups to show the wealth distribution inside the highest quintile.

TABLE 20.1

The Distributions of Money Income and Wealth in the United States

In part (a), the 20 percent of households with the lowest incomes receive 3.3 percent of total money income, while the 20 percent of households with the highest incomes receive 50.2 percent of total income.

In part (b), the poorest 40 percent of households own 0.2 percent of total wealth, while the richest 1 percent own 34.4 percent.

SOURCES OF DATA: Part (a) Current Population Reports, P60-239, *Income, Poverty, and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States: 2010*, U.S. Census Bureau, Washington, DC, 2011. Part (b) Edward N. Wolff, "Recent Trends in Household Wealth in the United States: Rising Debt and the Middle-Class Squeeze," www.levy.org/pubs/wp_502.pdf.

(a) Income distribution in 2010 (Median household income $49,445)

	Percentage of		Cumulative percentage of	
	Households	Income	Households	Income
A	Lowest 20	3.3	20	3.3
B	Second 20	8.5	40	11.8
C	Third 20	14.6	60	26.4
D	Fourth 20	23.4	80	49.8
E	Highest 20	50.2	100	100.0

(b) Wealth distribution in 2004 (Median household wealth $77,900)

	Percentage of		Cumulative percentage of	
	Households	Wealth	Households	Wealth
A'	Lowest 40	0.2	40	0.2
B'	Next 20	3.8	60	4.0
C'	Next 20	11.3	80	15.3
D'	Next 10	13.4	90	28.7
E'	Next 5	12.3	95	41.0
F'	Next 4	24.6	99	65.6
G'	Highest 1	34.4	100	100.0

Lorenz Curves

Lorenz curve
A curve that graphs the cumulative percentage of income (or wealth) against the cumulative percentage of households.

A **Lorenz curve** graphs the cumulative percentage of income (or wealth) on the *y*-axis against the cumulative percentage of households on the *x*-axis. Figure 20.1 shows the Lorenz curves for income and wealth in the United States. Graphing the cumulative percentage of income against the cumulative percentage of households makes the Lorenz curve for income and the points *A* to *D* on the graph correspond to the rows identified by those letters in the table. For example, row *B* and point *B* show that the 40 percent of households with the lowest incomes received 11.8 percent of total income—3.3 percent plus 8.5 percent from Table 20.1(a).

Graphing the cumulative percentage of wealth against the cumulative percentage of households makes the Lorenz curve for wealth and the points *A'* to *F'* on the graph correspond to the rows identified by those letters in the table of Figure 20.1. For example, row *C'* and point *C'* show that the poorest 80 percent of households owned 15.3 percent of total wealth—0.2 percent plus 3.8 percent plus 11.3 percent from Table 20.1(b).

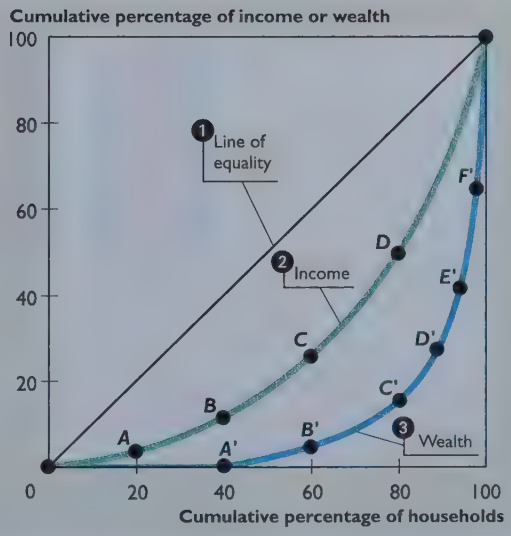
If income (or wealth) were distributed equally, each 20 percent of households would receive 20 percent of total income (or own 20 percent of total wealth), and the Lorenz curve would be the straight line labeled "Line of equality." The Lorenz curves based on the actual distributions of income and wealth are always below the line of equality. The closer the Lorenz curve is to the line of equality, the more equal is the distribution. You can see that the Lorenz curve for wealth is much farther away from the line of equality than is the Lorenz curve for income. The distribution of wealth is much more unequal than the distribution of income.

FIGURE 20.1

Lorenz Curves for Income and Wealth in the United States

MyEconLab Animation

Cumulative percentage of				
Households	Income		Wealth	
20	*A*	3.3		
40	*B*	11.8	*A'*	0.2
60	*C*	26.4	*B'*	4.0
80	*D*	49.8	*C'*	15.3
90			*D'*	28.7
95			*E'*	41.0
99			*F'*	65.6



SOURCES OF DATA: See Table 20.1.

1. If income and wealth were distributed equally, the Lorenz curve would lie along the straight line labeled "Line of equality."
2. The income Lorenz curve shows the cumulative percentage of income graphed against the cumulative percentage of households. The 20 percent of households with the lowest incomes received 3.3 percent of total income, and the 80 percent of households with the lowest incomes received 49.8 percent.
3. The wealth Lorenz curve shows the cumulative percentage of wealth graphed against the cumulative percentage of households. The poorest 40 percent of households own 0.2 percent of total wealth, and 99 percent of households own 65.6 percent of total wealth. The richest 1 percent own 34.4 percent.

Inequality over Time

U.S. income inequality has increased. The highest incomes have increased faster than the lower incomes and the gap between the rich and the poor has widened.

Figure 20.2(a) shows this widening gap by looking at the income share of each quintile between 1970 and 2010. The data are based on *money income*. The figure shows that the share received by the highest quintile increased from 43 percent during the late 1960s to 50 percent in the 2000s. The percentage of total income received by each of the other quintiles decreased. The poorest quintile share fell from 4 percent to 3 percent; the second poorest quintile share fell from 11 percent to 9 percent; and the third (middle) quintile fell from 17 percent to 15 percent.

Economic Mobility

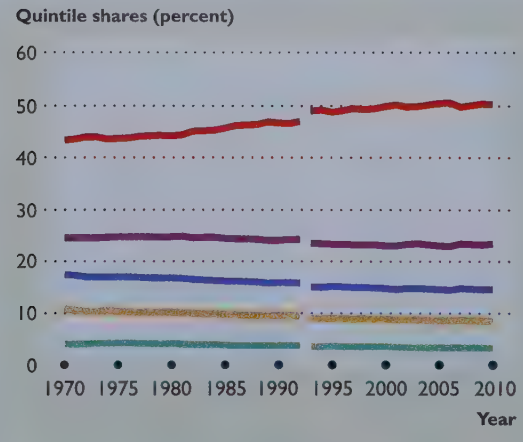
Economic mobility is the movement of a family up or down through the income distribution. If there were no economic mobility, a family would be stuck at a given point in the income distribution and be persistently poor, or rich, or somewhere in the middle. Also, in such a situation, the data on annual income distribution would be a good indicator of life-time inequality.

But if there is economic mobility, families move up or down through the income distribution and life-time inequality is not as severe as the inequality in the data for a single year. How much economic mobility is there?

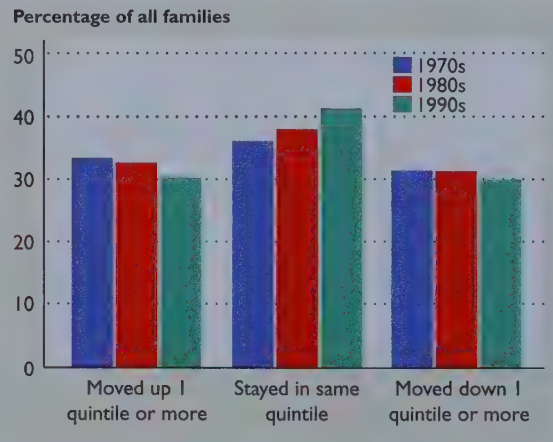
FIGURE 20.2

Trends in the Distribution of Income and Economic Mobility

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Mean household income quintile shares



(b) Percent of all families

SOURCES OF DATA: Part (a) DeNavas-Walt, Carmen, Bernadette D. Proctor, and Jessica C. Smith, U.S. Census Bureau, Current Population Reports, P60-239, *Income, Poverty, and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States: 2010.* Note: The data collection method changed in 1993. Part (b) Katharine Bradbury and Jane Katz, "Are lifetime incomes becoming more unequal? Looking at new evidence on family income mobility," *Regional Review*, Federal Reserve Bank of Boston, Volume 12, Number 4, Quarter 4 2002, pp. 2–5.

In part (a), from 1970 to 2010 the income share received by the highest quintile rose from 43 percent to 50 percent. The shares received by the other quintiles fell. The lowest quintile share fell from 4 percent to 3 percent, the second lowest from 11 percent to 9 percent, and the middle from 17 percent to 15 percent.

In part (b), over a decade, about 30 percent of families move up a quintile or more and a similar percentage move down a quintile or more. Between 35 and 40 percent of families remain in the same quintile. Mobility through the quintiles has decreased over the 1980s and 1990s.

Katharine Bradbury and Jane Katz, economists at the Federal Reserve Bank of Boston, have provided an answer to this question and Figure 20.2(b) shows what they found. The figure shows the percentages of families that remained in the same quintile and that moved up or down by one quintile or more over a ten-year period.

About 30 percent of families move up by a quintile or more and a slightly smaller percentage move down by a quintile or more. Between 35 percent and 40 percent of families remain in the same quintile.

What is the source of economic mobility? Most of it arises from normal changes over a family's life cycle. Families experience income growth as their workers become more skilled and experienced. As a family continues to get older and its workers retire, its income falls. So if we look at three households that have identical *lifetime incomes*—that are *economically equal*—but one is young, one is middle-aged, and one is old, we will see a great deal of inequality. Inequality of annual incomes overstates the degree of lifetime inequality.

You've seen that income inequality is increasing, but is economic mobility also increasing? The data in Figure 20.2(b) answer this question, and they show a trend toward less economic mobility, not more. A decreasing percentage of families is moving either up or down a quintile or more and an increasing percentage of families is remaining in the same quintile. Why economic mobility has decreased remains a question for future research.

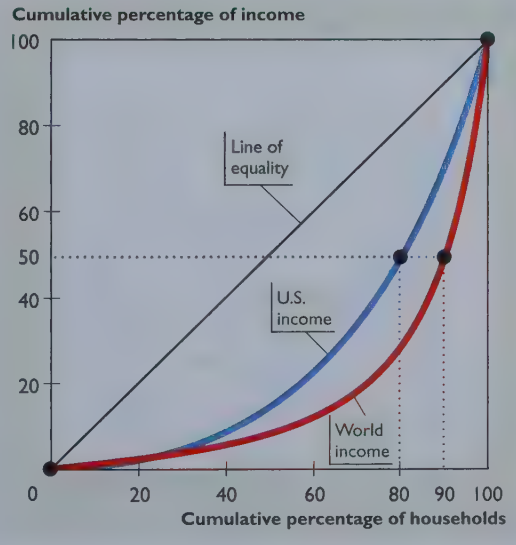
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Global Inequality

There is much more income inequality in the global economy than in the United States. The Lorenz curves in this figure provide a comparative picture. You can see that the global Lorenz curve lies much farther from the line of equality than does the U.S. Lorenz curve.

Numbers that highlight the comparison are the percentages of families that get a half (50 percent) of the income. In the United States, the richest 20 percent of families get a half of the income and the remaining 80 percent share the other half. In the global economy the richest 10 percent of families get a half of the income and the remaining 90 percent share the other half.

Global incomes are rising and by some estimates, inequality is decreasing. But other estimates suggest that global inequality, like U.S. inequality, is increasing. Better data are needed to settle this issue.



SOURCES OF DATA: U.S., see Figure 20.1. World, Branko Milanovic, "True World Income Distribution, 1988 and 1993: First Calculation Based on Household Surveys Alone," *Economic Journal*, 112, 2002.

EYE on INEQUALITY

Who Are the Rich and the Poor?

In the United States today (excluding the ultra rich sports and entertainment superstars and top corporate executives), the families with the highest incomes are likely to be college-educated Asian married couples between 45 and 54 years of age living together with two children somewhere in the West.

At the other extreme, the person with the lowest income is likely to be a black woman over 65 years of age who lives alone somewhere in the South and has fewer than nine years of elementary school education. Another low-income group are young women who have not completed high school, have a child (or children), and who live without a partner. These snapshot profiles are the extremes in the figure.

The figure illustrates the dominant importance of education in influencing income. Persons with a post-graduate professional degree (an MBA and a law degree are examples) or a doctorate degree earn, on average, five times the income of a person who has not completed high school.

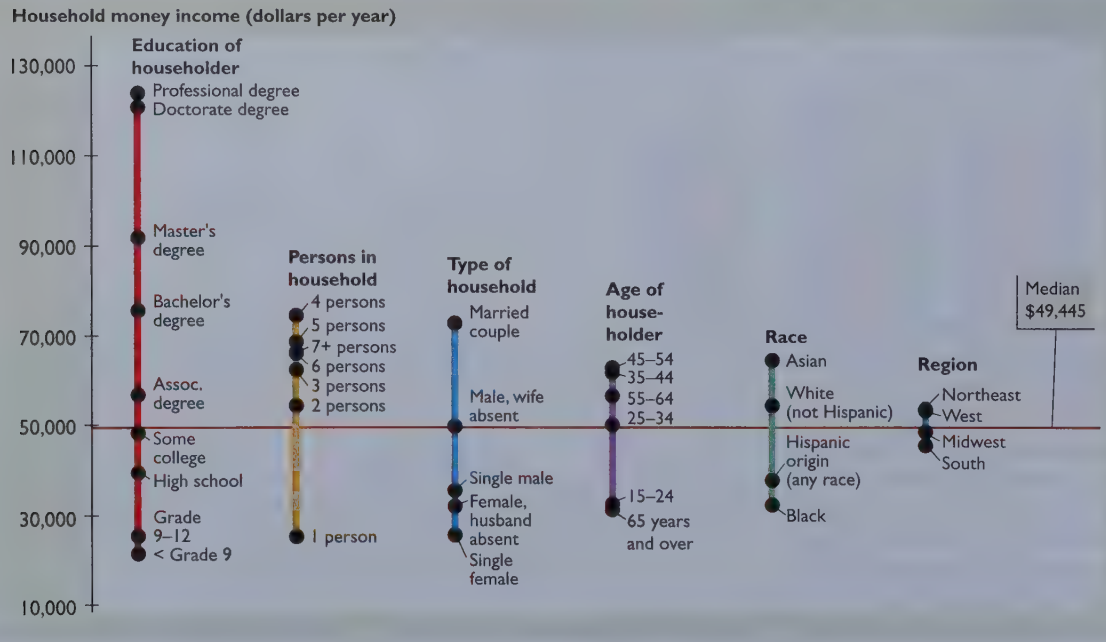
Household size and type are the second largest influences on income. A married couple with two children have, on average, an income three times that of a single female household.

Age is almost as important as household size and type. People aged between 45 and 54 have incomes double those of people aged 65 and over and aged 15 to 24.

Race is another significant factor that influences income. Asian households earn, on average, double the income of Hispanic origin households.

Region of residence has a small influence on income, the Northeast having the highest incomes at almost 20 percent higher than those in the South.

Within these categories, there is enormous individual variation.



SOURCE OF DATA: Current Population Survey, HINC-01. Selected Characteristics of Households, by Total Money Income in 2009.

Poverty

Households with very low incomes are considered to be living in poverty. What is poverty? How do we measure it, how much poverty is there, and is the amount of poverty decreasing or increasing?

Poverty Defined and Measured

Poverty is a state in which a household's income is too low to be able to buy the quantities of food, shelter, and clothing that are deemed necessary.

Poverty
A state in which a household's income is too low to be able to buy the quantities of food, shelter, and clothing that are deemed necessary.

The Census Bureau considers a household to be living in poverty if its income is less than a defined level that varies with household size and is updated each year to reflect changes in the cost of living. In 2010, the poverty level for a household with 2 adults and 2 children was an income of $22,113.

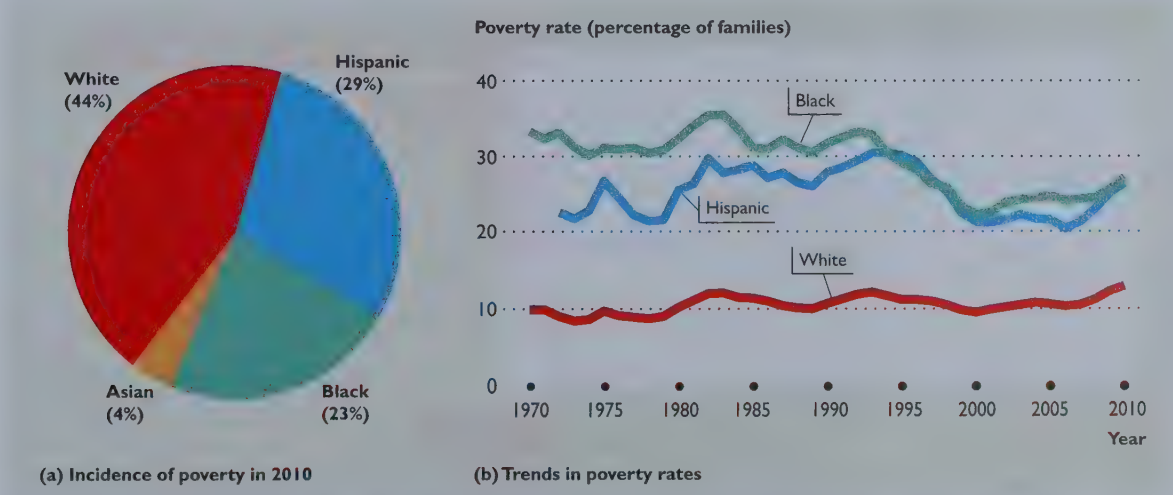
In 2010, 46 million Americans had incomes below the poverty level. Figure 20.3(a) shows the distribution of poverty by race in 2010. Almost one half (44 percent) of people living in poverty are white.

Poverty Incidence and Trends

To measure the *incidence* of poverty, we look at the poverty *rate*—the percentage of families living in poverty. In 2010, the poverty rate was 15.1 percent. Figure 20.3(b) shows the poverty rates and their trends for white, black, and Hispanic families from 1970 through 2010.

FIGURE 20.3
Poverty Rates in the United States

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Incidence of poverty in 2010

(b) Trends in poverty rates

SOURCE OF DATA: DeNavas-Walt, Carmen, Bernadette D. Proctor, and Jessica C. Smith, U.S. Census Bureau, Current Population Reports, P60–239, *Income, Poverty, and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States: 2010.*

White families account for 44 percent of the poor in part (a). But poverty *rates* for blacks and Hispanics are double those for whites in part (b). The poverty rate of black families fell during the 1980s and the 1990s. The poverty rate of Hispanics also fell during the 1990s, but it had previously increased. The poverty rates of all groups increased in 2009 and 2010.

For white families, the poverty rate has fluctuated around 10 percent. For black families, the poverty rate fell from 35 percent in 1983 to 24 percent in 2008 but the rate had increased to 27 percent by 2010. For Hispanic families, the poverty rate increased during the 1980s and then decreased during the 1990s. By 2006, the poverty rate for this group had fallen to a low of 20 percent. But during the years after 2006, the Hispanic poverty rate steadily increased and by 2010, it had reached 27 percent.

Poverty Duration

Another dimension of poverty is its duration. If a household is in poverty for a few months it faces serious hardship during those months, but it faces a less serious problem than it would if its poverty persisted for several months or, worse yet, for several years, or even generations.

Because the duration of poverty is an important additional indicator of the hardship that poverty brings, the Census Bureau provided measures of duration for the years 2001 to 2003. Figure 20.4 shows these data.

It turns out that almost 50 percent of poverty lasts for between 2 and 4 months. So for about a half of poor families, poverty is not persistent. But more than 20 percent of poverty lasts for more than a year, so a seriously large number of households experience chronic poverty.

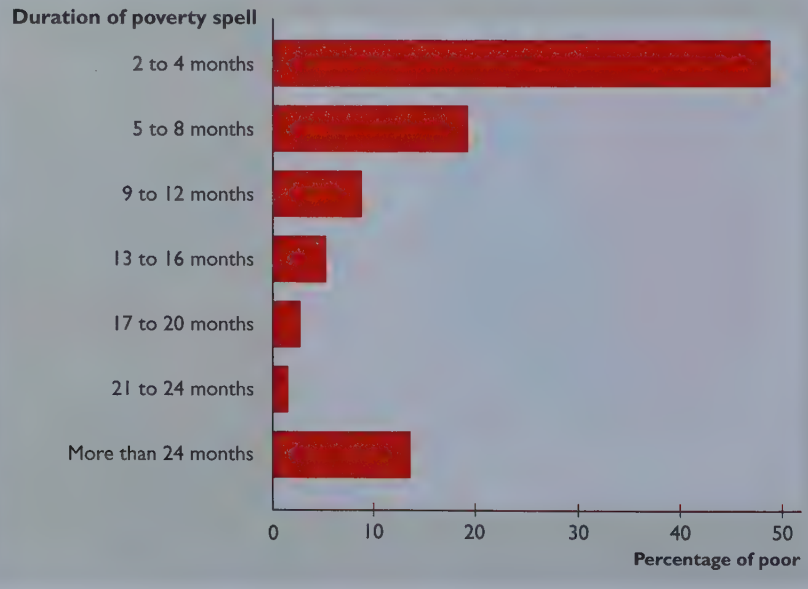
In the next sections, we look at the sources of inequality and poverty and the policies that aim to redistribute income and lift the living standard of the poor.

FIGURE 20.4

The Duration of Poverty Spells in the United States

MyEconLab Animation

Almost 50 percent of the people who fall below the poverty level remain in that state for 2 to 4 months. More than 20 percent of the people who fall below the poverty level remain in that state for more than a year.



SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Census Bureau, *Dynamics of Economic Well-Being: Poverty 2001–2003.*

CHECKPOINT 20.1

Describe the economic inequality in the United States.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 20.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows the distribution of money income in Canada and Table 20.1(a) on page 508 shows the distribution of money income in the United States.

1. Create a table that shows the cumulative percentages of households and income in Canada.
2. Draw the Lorenz curves for Canada and the United States. Compare the distribution of income in Canada with that in the United States. Which distribution is more unequal?

TABLE 1 CANADIAN DATA

Households	Money income (percentage)
Lowest 20 percent	4.8
Second 20 percent	10.7
Third 20 percent	16.5
Fourth 20 percent	24.0
Highest 20 percent	44.0

In the News

Minorities hit harder by economic issues

Plummeting home values, as well as home foreclosures, have had a big impact on the distribution of wealth because blacks and Hispanics have a much higher share of their wealth tied up in the value of their homes. Hispanics experienced the biggest loss of wealth because many bought homes in states where the real estate market had the steepest plunge in value.

Source: *USA Today*, August 5, 2011

Explain how the events described in the news clip changed the distribution of wealth. Which quintiles would experience an increase in their share of wealth?

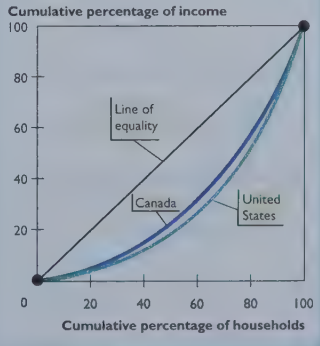
Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Table 2 shows the cumulative percentages of Canadian households and income: The lowest 20 percent of households receive 4.8 percent of total income and the second lowest 20 percent receive 10.7 percent of total income, so the lowest 40 percent of households receive 15.5 percent of total income. The other rows of the table are calculated in a similar way.
2. A Lorenz curve plots the cumulative percentage of income against the cumulative percentage of households. The blue curve in Figure 1 plots the Canadian data in Table 2. The green curve is the U.S. Lorenz curve. The line of equality shows an equal distribution. The Canadian Lorenz curve lies closer to the line of equality than does the U.S. Lorenz curve, so the distribution of income in the United States is more unequal than that in Canada.

TABLE 2

Cumulative percentage of	
Households	**Income**
20	4.8
40	15.5
60	32.0
80	56.0
100	100.0

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

A household's wealth is the value of the things it owns at a point in time. Wealth is measured as the market value of a household's home, the stocks and bonds that it owns, and the money in its bank accounts minus its debts. Because most of the wealth of blacks and Hispanics is made up of their houses, as house prices fell and home foreclosures increased, the percentage of total wealth of the lowest quintiles fell and the percentage of total wealth held by wealthier quintiles increased. The distribution of wealth became more unequal.

20.2 HOW ECONOMIC INEQUALITY ARISES

Economic inequality arises from a wide variety of factors. The five key ones that we'll examine here are

- Human capital
- Discrimination
- Financial and physical capital
- Entrepreneurial ability
- Personal and family characteristics

Human Capital

Human capital is the accumulated skill and knowledge of human beings. To see how human capital differences affect economic inequality, we'll study an economy with two levels of human capital, which we'll call *high-skilled labor* and *low-skilled labor.* Low-skilled labor might be law clerks, hospital orderlies, or bank tellers, and high-skilled labor might be attorneys, surgeons, or bank CEOs.

The Demand for High-Skilled and Low-Skilled Labor

High-skilled workers can perform tasks that low-skilled workers would perform badly or couldn't even perform at all. Imagine an untrained person doing surgery or piloting an airplane. High-skilled workers have a higher value of marginal product (*VMP*) than low-skilled workers do. As we learned in Chapter 19, a firm's demand for labor curve is derived from and is the same as the firm's value of marginal product of labor curve.

Figure 20.5(a) shows the demand curves for high-skilled and low-skilled labor. At any given employment level, firms are willing to pay a higher wage rate to a high-skilled worker than to a low-skilled worker. The gap between the two wage rates measures the value of marginal product of skill—for example, at an employment level of 2,000 hours, firms are willing to pay a high-skilled worker $25 an hour and a low-skilled worker only $10 an hour, a difference of $15 an hour. Thus the value of marginal product of skill is $15 an hour.

The Supply of High-Skilled and Low-Skilled Labor

A skill is costly to acquire and its opportunity cost includes expenditures, such as tuition, and lower earnings while the skill is being acquired. When a person goes to school full time, that cost is the total earnings forgone. When a person acquires a skill through on-the-job training, he or she earns a lower wage rate than someone who is doing a comparable job but not undergoing training. In this case, the cost of acquiring the skill is equal to the wage paid to a person not being trained minus the wage paid to a person being trained.

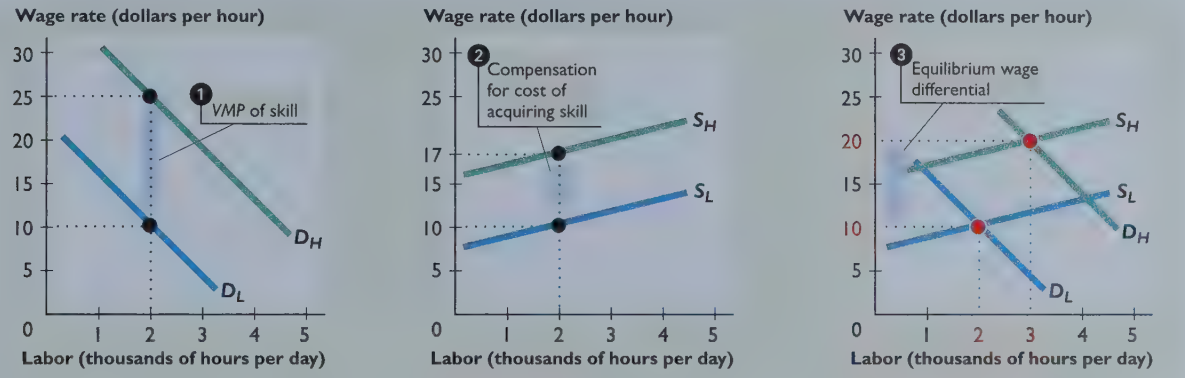
Because skills are costly to acquire, a high-skilled person is not willing to work for the same wage that a low-skilled person is willing to accept. The position of the supply curve of high-skilled workers reflects the cost of acquiring the skill. Figure 20.5(b) shows two supply curves: one of high-skilled workers and the other of low-skilled workers. The supply curve of high-skilled workers is S_H, and that of low-skilled workers is S_L.

The high-skilled worker's supply curve lies above the low-skilled worker's supply curve. The vertical distance between the two supply curves is the com-

FIGURE 20.5

Skill Differentials

MyEconLab Animation



In part (a), D_L is the demand curve for low-skilled labor and D_H is the demand curve for high-skilled labor. ❶ The vertical distance between these two curves is the value of marginal product of skill.

In part (b), S_L is the supply curve of low-skilled workers and S_H is the supply curve of high-skilled workers. ❷ The vertical distance between these two curves is the required compensation for the cost of acquiring a skill.

In part (c), in equilibrium, low-skilled workers earn a wage rate of $10 an hour and high-skilled workers earn a wage rate of $20 an hour. ❸ The $10 wage differential is the equilibrium effect of acquiring skill.

pensation that high-skilled workers require for the cost of acquiring the skill. For example, suppose that the quantity of low-skilled labor supplied is 2,000 hours at a wage rate of $10 an hour. This wage rate compensates the low-skilled workers mainly for their time on the job. Consider next the supply of high-skilled workers. To induce high-skilled labor to supply 2,000 hours, firms must pay a wage rate of $17 an hour. This wage rate for high-skilled labor is higher than that for low-skilled labor because high-skilled labor must be compensated not only for the time on the job but also for the time and other costs of acquiring the skill.

Wage Rates of High-Skilled and Low-Skilled Labor

To work out the wage rates of high-skilled and low-skilled labor, we have to bring together the effects of skill on the demand for and supply of labor.

Figure 20.5(c) shows the demand curves and the supply curves for high-skilled and low-skilled labor. These curves are the same as those plotted in parts (a) and (b). Equilibrium occurs in the market for low-skilled labor where the supply and demand curves for low-skilled labor intersect. The equilibrium wage rate is $10 an hour, and the quantity of low-skilled labor employed is 2,000 hours. Equilibrium in the market for high-skilled workers occurs where the supply and demand curves for high-skilled workers intersect. The equilibrium wage rate is $20 an hour, and the quantity of high-skilled labor employed is 3,000 hours.

As you can see in Figure 20.5(c), the equilibrium wage rate of high-skilled labor is higher than that of low-skilled labor. There are two reasons why this

occurs: First, high-skilled labor has a higher value of marginal product than does low-skilled labor, so at a given wage rate, the quantity of high-skilled labor demanded exceeds that of low-skilled labor. Second, skills are costly to acquire, so at a given wage rate, the quantity of high-skilled labor supplied is less than that of low-skilled labor. The wage differential (in this case, $10 an hour) depends on both the value of marginal product of skill and the cost of acquiring it. The higher the value of marginal product of skill, the larger is the vertical distance between the demand curves. The more costly it is to acquire a skill, the larger is the vertical distance between the supply curves. The higher the value of marginal product of skill and the more costly it is to acquire, the larger is the wage differential between high-skilled and low-skilled workers.

Education and on-the-job training enable people to acquire skills and move up through the income distribution. But education is the most important contributor to a higher income, as you can see in *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below.

Discrimination, which we examine next, is another possible source of economic inequality.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

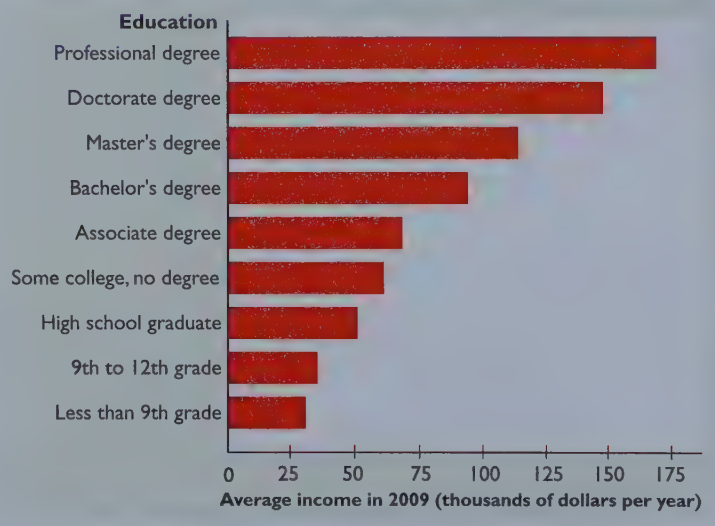
Does Education Pay?

The figure shows that there are large differences in earnings based on the degree of education.

Rates of return on high school and college education have been estimated to be in the range of 5 to 10 percent a year after allowing for inflation, which suggests that a college degree is a better investment than almost any other that a person can undertake.

Based on average income data, the gain from graduating from high school is $16,000 a year. But the gain from going to college or university and getting a bachelor's degree is greater and brings in an additional $43,000 a year.

Remaining at the university to complete a master's degree (usually one more year of study) brings in an extra $20,000 a year, and working for a professional degree increases income by another $54,000 a year.



SOURCE OF DATA: Current Population Survey, HINC-01. Selected Characteristics of Households, by Total Money Income in 2009.

Discrimination

Persistent earnings differences exist between women and men and among the races. You can see them in *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below. Does discrimination contribute to these differences? It might, but economists can't isolate and measure the effect of discrimination, so we can't say by how much, or even whether, earnings differences arise from this source.

To see the difficulty in isolating the effects of discrimination, consider the market for investment advisors. Suppose that black women and white men are equally good at providing investment advice. If there is no race and sex discrimination, average wage rates are the same for both groups.

But if some people are willing to pay more for investment advice from a white man than they are willing to pay for the same advice from a black woman, the market-determined value of marginal product of black women is lower than that of white men, and the demand for investment advice from black women is lower than that from white men. The result is a lower equilibrium wage rate (and fewer high-paying jobs) for black women than for white men.

For discrimination to work in this way and bring *persistent* wage differences, people must be *persistently* willing to pay more than necessary for investment advice. People will begin to notice that they can get a better deal if they buy investment advice from black women. Substitution away from high-cost white men toward lower-cost black women will shift demand and eventually eliminate the wage difference.

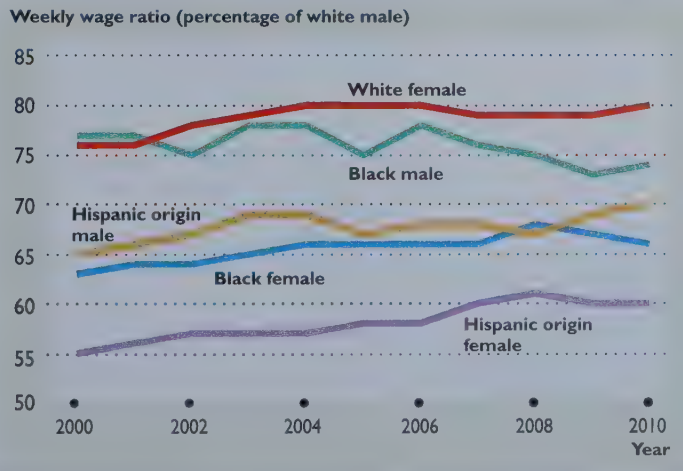
EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Sex and Race Earnings Differences

The figure shows the earnings of different race and sex groups expressed as a percentage of the earnings of white men.

In 2010, white women earned, on average, 80 percent of what white men earned. Black men earned 73 percent, and black women earned 65 percent. Men and women of Hispanic origin earned only 70 percent and 60 percent, respectively, of white men's wages.

These earnings differentials have persisted over many years, and only those of women have begun to narrow in a significant way.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

Financial and Physical Capital

The people with the highest incomes are usually those who own large amounts of financial capital and physical capital. These people receive incomes in the form of interest and dividend payments and from capital gains—increases in the stock market value.

Families with a large amount of capital tend to become even more wealthy across generations for two reasons. First, they bequeath wealth to their children and second, rich people marry rich partners (on the average).

Saving, and the wealth accumulation that it brings, is not inevitably a source of increased inequality and can even be a source of increased equality. When a household saves to redistribute an uneven income over the life cycle, it enjoys more equal consumption. Also, if a lucky generation that has a high income saves a large amount and makes a bequest to a generation that is unlucky, this act of saving also decreases the degree of inequality.

Entrepreneurial Ability

Some of the most spectacularly rich people have benefited from unusual entrepreneurial talent. Household names such as Bill Gates (Microsoft), Sergey Brin and Larry Page (Google), and Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) are examples of people who began life with modest amounts of wealth and modest incomes and through a combination of hard work, good luck, and outstanding entrepreneurship have become extremely rich.

But some very poor people, and some who fall below the poverty level, have also tried their hands at being entrepreneurs. We don't hear much about these people. They are not in the headlines. But they have put together a business plan, borrowed heavily, and through a combination of hard work, bad luck, and in some cases poor decisions have become extremely poor.

Personal and Family Characteristics

Each individual's personal and family characteristics play a crucial role, for either good or ill, in influencing economic well-being.

People who are exceptionally good looking and talented with stable and creative families enjoy huge advantages over the average person. Many movie stars, entertainers, and extraordinarily talented athletes are in this category. These people enjoy some of the highest incomes because their personal or family characteristics make the value of marginal product of their labor very large.

Success often breeds yet further success. A large income can generate a large amount of saving, which in turn generates yet more interest income.

Adverse personal circumstances, such as chronic physical or mental illness, drug abuse, or an unstable home life possibly arising from the absence of a parent or from an abusive or negligent parent, place a huge burden on many people and result in low incomes and even poverty.

A tough life, just like its opposite, can be self-reinforcing. Weak physical or mental health makes it difficult to study and obtain a skill and results in a low labor income or no income because a job is just too hard to hold down. And the children of the poorest people find it hard to get into college and university, and so find it difficult to break the cycle of poverty.

CHECKPOINT 20.2

Explain how economic inequality arises.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 20.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

In the United States in 2010, 30 million people had full-time managerial and professional jobs that paid an average of $1,200 a week and 10 million people had full-time sales positions that paid an average of $600 a week.

1. Explain why managers and professionals are paid more than salespeople.
2. Explain why, despite the higher weekly wage, more people are employed as managers and professionals than as salespeople.
3. As more firms offer their goods and services for sale online, how does the market for salespeople change?

In the News

Trade schools boom with enrollees of all ages

Disappearing jobs have helped drive people to state-run trade schools. Patricia Parker, who is tired of getting laid off at factories decided to re-educate herself by taking a course in business system technology and getting a job at a medical office. Some are retraining as auto mechanics, a skill that won't be outsourced.

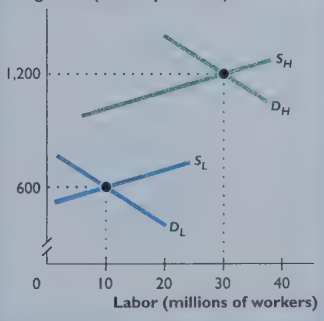
Source: *USA Today*, July 19, 2009

Why might people who previously worked in factories be going to trade school?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. A typical manager or professional has incurred a higher cost of education and on-the-job training than has the typical salesperson. The supply curve of managers and professionals, S_H, lies above that of salespeople, S_L (Figure 1). With better education and on-the-job training, managers and professionals have more human capital and a higher value of marginal product than do salespeople. The demand curve for managers and professionals, D_H, is greater than the demand for salespeople, D_L. The figure shows why managers and professionals are paid more than salespeople.
2. Figure 1 shows that the demand and supply for each type of labor leads to a greater employment for managers and professionals than for salespeople.
3. As more people shop online, firms hire fewer salespeople. The demand for salespeople decreases and fewer people work in sales. How their wage rate changes depends on how the supply of salespeople changes.

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

When factories close, the people who work in them lose some of their human capital. Patricia Parker and other people who previously worked in factories are going to trade school to invest in new human capital by obtaining skills that they believe will remain in demand as manufacturing jobs are lost when factories close and jobs are outsourced.

20.3 INCOME REDISTRIBUTION

We've described the distribution of income and wealth in the United States and examined the five main sources of economic inequality. Our task in this final section is to study the *redistribution* of income by government.

How do governments redistribute income? What is the scale of redistribution? Why do we vote for policies that redistribute income? What are the challenges in designing policies that achieve a fair and efficient distribution of income and reduction of poverty?

How Governments Redistribute Income

The three main ways in which governments in the United States redistribute income are

- Income taxes
- Income maintenance programs
- Subsidized services

Income Taxes

Income taxes may be progressive, regressive, or proportional (see Chapter 8, p. 197). A *progressive income tax* is one that taxes income at an average rate that increases with the level of income. A *regressive income tax* is one that taxes income at an average rate that decreases with the level of income. A *proportional income tax* (also called a *flat-rate income tax*) is one that taxes income at a constant rate, regardless of the level of income.

The federal government, most state governments, and some city governments impose income taxes. The detailed tax arrangements vary across the individual states, but the income tax system overall is progressive. The poorest working households receive money from the government through an earned income tax credit. The federal income tax rate starts at 10 percent of each additional dollar earned on the lowest taxed incomes and rises through 15 percent, 25 percent, 28 percent, 33 percent, and 35 percent of each additional dollar earned on successively higher incomes.

Income Maintenance Programs

Three main types of programs redistribute income by making direct payments (in cash, services, or vouchers) to people in the lower part of the income distribution. They are

- Social Security programs
- Unemployment compensation
- Welfare programs

Social Security Programs Social Security is a public insurance system paid for by compulsory payroll taxes on employers and employees. Social Security has two main components: Old Age, Survivors, Disability, and Health Insurance (OASDHI), which provides monthly cash payments to retired or disabled workers or their surviving spouses and children; and Medicare, which provides hospital and health insurance for the elderly and disabled. In 2011, Social Security supported 55 million people, who received average monthly checks of more than $1,000.

Unemployment Compensation To provide an income to unemployed workers, every state has established an unemployment compensation program. Under these programs, a tax is paid that is based on the income of each covered worker and such a worker receives a benefit when he or she becomes unemployed. The details of the benefits vary from state to state.

Welfare Programs The purpose of welfare programs is to provide incomes for people who do not qualify for Social Security or unemployment compensation. The programs are

1. Supplementary Security Income (SSI) program, which is designed to help the neediest elderly, disabled, and blind people
2. Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF) program, which is designed to help families that have inadequate financial resources
3. Food Stamp program, which is designed to help the poorest households obtain a basic diet
4. Medicaid, which is designed to cover the costs of medical care for households that receive help under the SSI and TANF programs

Subsidized Services

A great deal of redistribution takes place in the United States through the provision of subsidized services—services provided by the government at prices far below the cost of production. The taxpayers who consume these goods and services receive a transfer in kind from the taxpayers who do not consume them. The two most important areas in which this form of redistribution takes place are education—both kindergarten through grade 12 and college and university—and health care. But neither necessarily redistributes from the rich to the poor.

In 2011–2012, a student enrolled at the University of California, Berkeley, who is not a resident of California paid a tuition of $37,400. This amount is probably close to the cost of providing a year's education at Berkeley. But a California resident paid tuition of only $14,460. So California households with a member enrolled at Berkeley received a benefit from the government of close to $23,000 a year. Many of these households have above-average incomes.

Government provision of health-care services has grown to equal the scale of private provision. Medicaid provides high-quality and high-cost health care to millions of people who earn too little to buy such services themselves. Medicaid redistributes from the rich to the poor. Medicare, which is available to all over 65 years of age, is not targeted at the poor.

The Scale of Income Redistribution

A household's income in the absence of government redistribution is its *market income*. We can measure the scale of income redistribution by calculating the percentage of market income paid in taxes minus the percentage received in benefits at each income level. The available data include redistribution through taxes and cash and noncash benefits to welfare recipients. The data do not include the value of subsidized services such as a college education, which might decrease the total scale of redistribution from the rich to the poor.

Figure 20.6 shows how government actions change the distribution of income. The figure shows two Lorenz curves and compares them with the line of equality.

Disposable income
Market income plus cash benefits paid by the government minus taxes.

The blue Lorenz curve describes the distribution of *market income*. The red Lorenz curve shows the distribution of **disposable income,** which is income after all taxes and benefits, including Medicaid and Medicare benefits. The Lorenz curve for *disposable income* is closer to the line of equality than that for *market income*, which tells us that the distribution of disposable income is more equal than the distribution of market income.

Figure 20.6(b) shows that redistribution increases the share received by the lowest three quintiles and decreases the share received by the highest two quintiles.

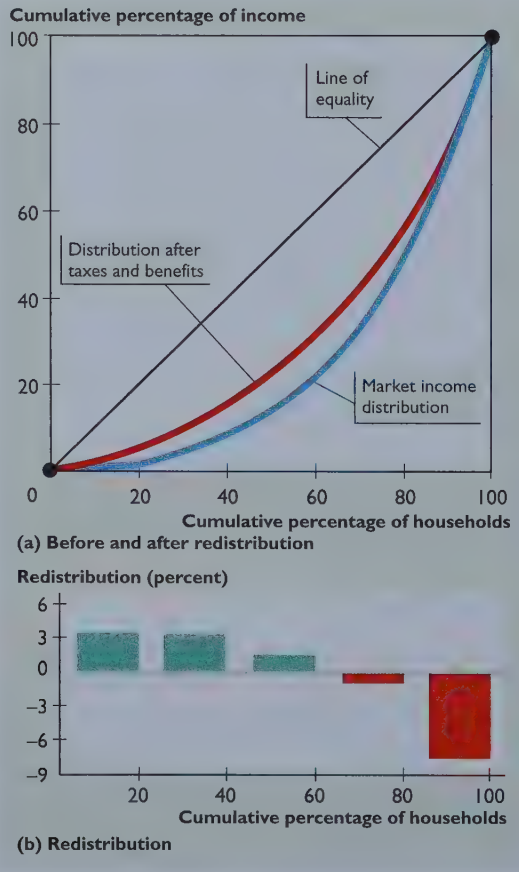
The sources of income at different income levels provide another measure of the scale of redistribution. The poorest quintile receives 80 percent of its income from the government. The second quintile receives 32 percent of its income from the government. In contrast, the richest quintile receives almost nothing from the government and receives a third of its income from capital—interest, dividends, and capital gains on financial assets.

FIGURE 20.6
The Scale of Income Redistribution

MyEconLab Animation

Taxes and income maintenance programs reduce the degree of inequality that the market generates. In part (a), the Lorenz curve moves closer to the line of equality.

Part (b) shows the redistribution in 2007. The quintile with the lowest incomes received net benefits that increased their share of total income by 3.5 percentage points. The quintile of total income with the highest incomes paid taxes that decreased their share of total income by 7.5 percentage points.



SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Census Bureau, Current Population Survey Annual Social and Economic Supplement.

Why We Redistribute Income

Why do we vote for government policies that redistribute income? Why don't we leave everyone to make voluntary contributions to charities that help the poor?

There are two ways of approaching these questions: normative and positive. The normative approach discusses why we *should* compel everyone to help the poor and looks for principles to guide the appropriate scale of redistribution. The positive approach seeks reasons why we *do* compel everyone to help the poor and tries to explain the actual scale of redistribution.

Normative Theories of Income Redistribution

Philosophy and politics, not economics, are the subjects that consider the normative theories of redistribution. Not surprisingly, there are several different points of view on whether income should be redistributed and, if so, on what scale.

Utilitarianism points to the ideal distribution being one of equality. But efficiency is also desirable. And greater equality can be achieved only at the cost of greater inefficiency—the *big tradeoff* (defined in Chapter 6, p. 159). The redistribution of income creates the big tradeoff because it uses scarce resources and weakens incentives, which decreases the total size of the economic pie to be shared.

A dollar collected from a rich person does not translate into a dollar received by a poor person. Some of it gets used up in the process of redistribution. Tax-collecting agencies such as the Internal Revenue Service and welfare-administering agencies (as well as tax accountants and lawyers) use skilled labor, computers, and other scarce resources to do their work. The bigger the scale of redistribution, the greater is the opportunity cost of administering it.

But the cost of collecting taxes and making welfare payments is a small part of the total cost of redistribution. A bigger cost arises from the inefficiency—*excess burden*—of taxes and benefits (see Chapter 8, p. 192). Greater equality can be achieved only by taxing productive activities such as work and saving. Taxing people's income from their work and saving lowers the after-tax income they receive. This lower income makes them work and save less, which in turn results in smaller output and less consumption not only for the rich who pay the taxes but also for the poor who receive the benefits.

Benefit recipients as well as taxpayers face weaker incentives. In fact, under the welfare arrangements that prevailed before the 1996 reforms, the weakest incentives to work were those faced by households that benefited from welfare. When a welfare recipient got a job, benefits were withdrawn and eligibility for programs such as Medicaid ended, so the household in effect paid a tax of more than 100 percent on its earnings. This arrangement locked poor households in a welfare trap.

Recognizing the tension between equality and efficiency, philosopher John Rawls proposed the principle that income should be redistributed to the point at which it maximizes the size of the slice of the economic pie received by the person with the smallest slice.

Libertarian philosophers such as Robert Nozick (see Chapter 6, p. 159) say that any redistribution is wrong because it violates the sanctity of private property and voluntary exchange.

Modern political parties stand in the center of the extremes that we've just described. Some favor a bit more redistribution than others, but the major political parties are broadly happy with the prevailing scale of redistribution.

Positive Theories of Income Redistribution

Median voter theory
The theory that governments pursue policies that make the median voter as well off as possible.

A good positive theory of income redistribution would explain why some countries have more redistribution than others and why redistribution has increased over the past 200 years. We don't have such a theory, but economists have proposed a promising idea called the median voter theory. The **median voter theory** is that the policies that governments pursue are those that make the median voter as well off as possible. If a proposal can be made that improves the well-being of the median voter, a political party that makes the proposal can improve its standing in an election.

The median voter theory arises from thinking about how a democratic political system such as that of the United States works. In this system, governments must propose policies that appeal to enough voters to get them elected. And in a majority voting system, the voter whose views carry the most weight is the one in the middle—the median voter.

The median voter wants income to be redistributed to the point at which her or his own after-tax income is as large as possible. Taxing the rich by too much would weaken their incentives to create businesses and jobs and lower the median voter's after-tax income. But taxing the rich by too little would leave some money on the table that could be transferred to the median voter.

The median voter might be concerned about the poor and want to reduce poverty. Unselfishly, the median voter might simply be concerned about the plight of the poor and want to help them. Self-interestedly, the median voter might believe that if there is too much poverty, there will be too much crime and some of it will touch her or his life.

If for either reason the median voter wants to help the poor, the political process will deliver a greater scale of redistribution to reflect this voter preference.

The Major Welfare Challenge

Among the poorest people in the United States (see p. 512) are young women who have not completed high school, have a child (or children), live without a partner, and are more likely to be black or Hispanic than white. These young women and their children present the major welfare challenge.

There are about 10 million single mothers, and a quarter of them receive no support from their children's fathers. The long-term solution to the problem of these women is education and job training—acquiring human capital. The short-term solution is welfare, but welfare must be designed in ways that strengthen the incentive to pursue the long-term solution. And a change in the U.S. welfare programs introduced during the 1990s pursues this approach.

The Current Approach: TANF

Passed in 1996, the Personal Responsibility and Work Opportunities Reconciliation Act created the Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF) program. TANF is a block grant that is paid to the states, which administer payments to individuals. It is not an open-ended entitlement program. An adult member of a household receiving assistance must either work or perform community service, and there is a five-year limit for assistance.

These measures go a long way toward removing one of the most serious poverty problems while being sensitive to the potential inefficiency of welfare. But some economists want to go further and introduce a negative income tax.

Negative Income Tax

The negative income tax is not on the political agenda, but it is popular among economists, and it is the subject of several real-world experiments. A **negative income tax** provides every household with a guaranteed minimum annual income and taxes all earned income at a fixed rate. Suppose the guaranteed minimum annual income is $10,000 and the tax rate is 25 percent. A household with no earned income receives the $10,000 guaranteed minimum income from the government. This household "pays" income tax of *minus* $10,000, hence the name "negative income tax."

Negative income tax
A tax and redistribution scheme that provides every household with a guaranteed minimum annual income and taxes all earned income at a fixed rate.

A household that earns $40,000 a year pays $10,000—25 percent of its earned income—to the government. But this household also receives from the government the $10,000 guaranteed minimum income, so it pays no net income tax. It has the break-even income. Households that earn between zero and $40,000 a year receive more from the government than they pay to the government. They "pay" a negative income tax.

A household that earns $60,000 a year pays $15,000—25 percent of its earned income—to the government. But this household receives from the government the $10,000 guaranteed minimum income, so it pays a net income tax of $5,000. All households that earn more than $40,000 a year pay more to the government than they receive from it. They pay a positive amount of income tax.

A negative income tax doesn't eliminate the excess burden of taxation, but it does improve the incentives to work and save at all levels of income.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

What You Pay and Gain Through Redistribution

You are on both sides of the redistribution equation, but what's your bottom line? Are you a net receiver or a net payer? Try to figure out which.

Your Tax Payments

You might pay some income tax and you certainly pay sales taxes and taxes on gasoline and other items.

If you have a job, your payslip shows the amount of income tax you're paying.

You can calculate the sales taxes you pay by keeping track for a week every time you buy something.

You can work out how much gas and other taxes you pay by checking the scale of these taxes in your state at www.taxadmin.org.

Your Benefits

Now for the benefits. If you're receiving any direct cash payments such as unemployment benefits, these are easy to identify. But most likely, you don't receive any money from the government.

You do, though, receive the benefits of services provided by government. The biggest of these is most likely the cost of your education.

It costs much more than the tuition you're paying to provide your education. One estimate of the value of your education is the tuition paid by an out-of-state student minus the tuition paid by a state resident. Work out that number.

Now think about all the other benefits you receive from government. Try to estimate what all the government-provided services are worth to you.

Your Bottom Line

Now work out your bottom line—the benefits you receive minus the taxes you pay. Most likely, you have a net benefit, but that situation will change when you graduate. As your income rises, you will move to the other side of the redistribution equation.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 20.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 20.3

Explain how governments redistribute income and describe the effects of redistribution on economic inequality.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows the distribution of market income in an economy and Table 2 shows how the government taxes and redistributes income.

1. Calculate the income shares of each quintile after tax and redistribution.
2. Draw this economy's Lorenz curves before and after taxes and benefits.

TABLE 1 MARKET INCOME

Households	Income (millions of dollars per year)
Lowest 20 percent	5
Second 20 percent	10
Third 20 percent	18
Fourth 20 percent	28
Highest 20 percent	39

TABLE 2 TAXES AND BENEFITS

Households	Income tax (percent)	Benefits (millions of dollars)
Lowest 20 percent	0	10
Second 20 percent	10	8
Third 20 percent	18	3
Fourth 20 percent	28	0
Highest 20 percent	39	0

In the News

The 0% tax rate solution

In 2006, the lowest 40 percent of income earners received net payments equal to 3.6% of total income tax revenues. The third 20 percent of income earners pay 4.4% of total income tax revenues. That means the lowest 60 percent together pay less than 1% of income tax revenues.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, July 14, 2009

Would a policy that taxed the bottom 60 percent of income earners at a 0% tax rate and reduced redistribution by 1 percent of tax revenue have any merit?

Solutions to Practice Problems

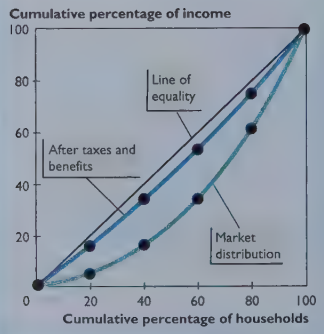
1. Table 3 shows to obtain the income after tax and benefits, multiply each quintile's market income by the tax rate, subtract the taxes paid, and add the benefits received. Then calculate each quintile's share of total income.

TABLE 3

Households	Market income (millions of dollars)	Tax paid (millions of dollars)	Benefits received (millions of dollars)	Income after tax and benefits (millions of dollars)	Income after tax and benefits (percentage of total income)
Lowest 20 percent	5	0.0	10	15.0	16.0
Second 20 percent	10	1.0	8	17.0	18.1
Third 20 percent	18	3.2	3	17.8	19.0
Fourth 20 percent	28	7.8	0	20.2	21.5
Highest 20 percent	39	15.2	0	23.8	25.4

2. To draw the Lorenz curves, calculate the cumulative shares of total income. For example, before taxes and benefits, the lowest 20 percent have 5 percent and the lowest 40 percent have 15 percent (5 + 10). After taxes and benefits, the lowest 20 percent have 16 percent and the lowest 40 percent have 34.1 percent (16 + 18.1). Figure 1 plots the Lorenz curves.

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

The redistribution process uses resources. One dollar taken from a high income earner does not translate into one dollar for a low-income earner. Resources will be saved if 60 percent of workers don't have to file income tax. There will be a net social gain, which might be used to help the poor.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the economic inequality in the United States.

- The distributions of income and wealth describe economic inequality.
- The 20 percent of households with the lowest incomes receive about 3 percent of total money income and the 1 percent of households with the highest wealth own about one third of total wealth.
- The distribution of income has become more unequal over the past few decades.
- During a decade, about 30 percent of families move up by a quintile or more and slightly fewer move down by a quintile or more.
- About 15 percent of Americans have incomes below the poverty level and for almost 20 percent, poverty lasts for more than one year.

2 Explain how economic inequality arises.

- Economic inequality arises from inequality of labor market outcomes, ownership of capital, entrepreneurial ability, and personal and family characteristics.
- In labor markets, skill differences result in earnings differences. Discrimination might also contribute to earnings differences.
- Inherited capital, unusual entrepreneurial talent, and personal or family good fortune or misfortune widen the gap between rich and poor.

3 Explain how governments redistribute income and describe the effects of redistribution on economic inequality.

- Governments redistribute income through progressive income taxes, income maintenance programs, and provision of subsidized services.
- Normative theories of redistribution recognize the tension between equality and efficiency—the big tradeoff—and seek principles to guide the political debate.
- The main positive theory of redistribution is the median voter theory.
- The negative income tax is a proposal for addressing the big tradeoff.

Key Terms

Disposable income, 524
Lorenz curve, 509
Market income, 508
Median voter theory, 526
Money income, 508
Negative income tax, 527
Poverty, 513

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 20 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Households	Money income (percentage)
Lowest 20 percent	8
Second 20 percent	13
Third 20 percent	18
Fourth 20 percent	23
Highest 20 percent	38

FIGURE 1

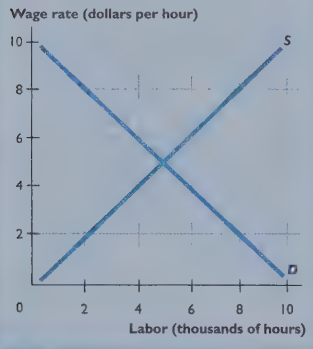


TABLE 2

Households	Market income (percentage)
Lowest 20 percent	5
Second 20 percent	9
Third 20 percent	20
Fourth 20 percent	30
Highest 20 percent	36

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Table 1 shows the distribution of money income in Australia. Calculate the cumulative distribution of income for Australia and draw the Lorenz curve for Australian income. In which country is the income distribution more unequal: Australia or the United States?
2. **Rich-poor gap worries Chinese planners**

   In 1985, urban Chinese earned 1.9 times as much as people in the countryside, which is home to 60 percent of the population. By 2007, they earned 3.3 times as much according to the United Nations.

   Source: *The New York Times*, November 22, 2008

   Explain how the Lorenz curve in China changed between 1985 and 2007.
3. Figure 1 shows the market for low-skilled workers. With on-the-job training, low-skilled workers can become high-skilled workers. The value of marginal product of high-skilled workers at each employment level is twice the value of marginal product of low-skilled workers, but the cost of acquiring skill adds $2 an hour to the wage rate that will attract high-skilled labor. What is the equilibrium wage rate of low-skilled labor and the number of low-skilled workers employed? What is the equilibrium wage rate of high-skilled labor and the number of high-skilled workers employed?
4. Why do economists think that discrimination in the labor market is an unlikely explanation for the persistent inequality in earnings between women and men and among the races?

Use Table 2 and the following information to work Problems **5** to **7**.

Suppose that the government redistributes income by taxing the 60 percent of households with the highest market incomes 10 percent, then distributing the tax collected as an equal benefit to the 40 percent with the lowest market income.

5. Calculate the distribution of income after taxes and benefits and draw the Lorenz curve (i) before taxes and benefits and (ii) after taxes and benefits.
6. If the cost of administering the redistribution scheme takes 50 percent of the taxes collected, what is the distribution of income after taxes and benefits?
7. If the people whose market incomes are taxed cut their work hours and their market incomes fall by 10 percent, what is the distribution of income after taxes and benefits?
8. **Wealth gap widens between whites and minorities**

   The median wealth of white U.S. households in 2009 was $113,149, compared with $6,325 for Hispanics and $5,677 for blacks. Those ratios, roughly 20 to 1 for blacks and 18 to 1 for Hispanics, far exceed the low mark of 7 to 1 for both groups reached in 1995, when economic growth lifted many low-income groups to the middle class.

   Source: Associated Press, July 26, 2011

   What does the data in the news clip tell us about the wealth Lorenz curve? During the period 1995 to 2009, describe how the distribution of wealth changed.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Education, household size, household type (marital status), age of householder, race, and region of residence all influence the degree of income inequality. Rank these influences in order of importance from most to least important.
2. Table 1 shows the income share for each household quintile and the cumulative shares. Provide the values for **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**, and **E**.
3. Table 2 shows the distribution of prize money among the top 20 professional golfers. Calculate the cumulative distribution of income of these golfers and draw the prize money Lorenz curve of these golfers. Which distribution is more unequal: the distribution of income of these golfers or that of the United States as a whole?
4. Suppose the cost of acquiring a skill increases and the value of marginal product of skill increases. Draw demand-supply graphs of the labor markets for high-skilled and low-skilled labor to explain what happens to the equilibrium wage rate of low-skilled labor, the equilibrium wage rate of high-skilled labor, and the number of high-skilled workers employed.

Use the following information to work Problems 5 and 6.

In the United States in 2002, 130,000 aircraft mechanics and service technicians earned an average of $20 an hour whereas 30,000 elevator installers and repairers earned an average of $25 an hour. The skill and training for these two jobs are very similar.

5. Draw the demand and supply curves for these two types of labor. What feature of your graph accounts for the differences in the two wage rates and what feature accounts for the differences in the quantities employed of these two types of labor?
6. Suppose that a government law required both groups of workers to be paid $22.50 an hour. Draw a graph to illustrate what would happen to the quantities employed of the two types of labor.
7. **Income gap in New York is called nation's highest**
   New York continues to have the highest income gap of any state. Experts claim that the income gap arises from the large number of poor unskilled immigrants. Mobility of these workers arises from a barrier to education.
   Source: nytimes.com, January 27, 2006

   Explain the effect of a large increase in foreign immigrants who are largely poor, unskilled workers on the market for low-skilled labor. Explain how better access to education would change New York's income gap.
8. **California progress**
   In May, California voters rejected an increase in taxes to close a $26 billion budget gap. To generate more tax revenues, California will have to encourage new businesses and create jobs. With 50 percent of income tax revenues coming from the richest 1 percent of residents, the state needs lower rates. Income redistribution has gone too far.
   Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, July 22, 2009

   Does the median voter theory explain voters' rejection? If California lowers the highest tax rate to below the current 10.5 percent and cuts some free benefits, how might California's Lorenz curve change?

TABLE 1

Households (quintile)	Income (%)	Income (cumulative %)
First	7.4	7.4
Second	13.2	**A**
Third	**B**	38.7
Fourth	25.0	**C**
Fifth	**D**	**E**

TABLE 2

Professional golfers	Income (percentage)
Lowest 20 percent	15
Second 20 percent	16
Third 20 percent	18
Fourth 20 percent	20
Highest 20 percent	31

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 20 Study Plan and get instant feed-back.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A Lorenz curve plots the _____.
   A. trend in the cumulative percentage of income received by each quintile against trend in the number of households
   B. average income received by each quintile against the number of households in the quintile
   C. percentage of total income received by each quintile against the percentage of households in the quintile
   D. cumulative percentage of income against the cumulative percentage of households
2. Which of the following statements is correct?
   A. The closer the Lorenz curve is to the line of equality, the more unequal is the distribution of income.
   B. The farther the Lorenz curve is from the line of equality, the more unequal is the distribution of income.
   C. If the Lorenz curve crosses the line of equality the distribution of income is more unequal at high income levels than at low income levels.
   D. The Lorenz curve for wealth is closer to the line of equality than the Lorenz curve for income.
3. In recent years, as the gap between the rich and the poor has increased, the Lorenz curve has _____ .
   A. shifted away from the line of equality
   B. not changed, but there has been a movement down along it
   C. shifted closer to the line of equality
   D. not changed, but there has been a movement up along it
4. Of all the Americans who live in poverty, most are _____ families, while the highest poverty rate is among _____ families.
   A. black; Hispanic
   B. black; white
   C. white; black and Hispanic
   D. Hispanic; white
5. Economic inequality arises from all of the following *except* _____.
   A. inequality of human capital
   B. inequality of education attainment
   C. a shortage of high-skilled labor
   D. discrimination
6. Income redistribution in the United States results in the income share of the _____ rising and the income share of the _____ falling.
   A. lowest quintile; other four quintiles
   B. two lowest quintiles; other three quintiles
   C. three lowest quintiles; other two quintiles
   D. four lowest quintiles; highest quintile
7. When governments redistribute income, they _____.
   A. give every dollar collected in taxes to poor people
   B. are influenced by how people vote in elections
   C. improve economic efficiency
   D. set the tax and benefit rates that make everyone work and save more

How do we track our economy's booms and busts?

GDP: A Measure of Total Production and Income

21

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define GDP and explain why the value of production, income, and expenditure are the same for an economy.
2. Describe how economic statisticians measure GDP and distinguish between nominal GDP and real GDP.
3. Describe the uses of real GDP and explain its limitations as a measure of the standard of living.

21.1 GDP, INCOME, AND EXPENDITURE

Where is the U.S. economy heading? Will it remain weak, begin to expand more rapidly, or sink into a deeper recession?

Everyone wants to know the answers to these questions. The people who make business decisions—homebuilders, auto producers, cell-phone service providers, airlines, oil producers, airplane makers, farmers, and retailers—want to know the answers so they can plan their production to align with demand. Governments want the answers because the amount of tax revenue that they collect depends on how much people earn and spend, which in turn depends on the state of the economy. Governments and the Federal Reserve want to know because they might be able to take actions that avoid excessive bust or boom. Ordinary citizens want the answers to plan their big decisions such as how long to remain in school, whether to rent or buy a new home, and how much to save toward retirement.

To assess the state of the economy we measure gross domestic product, or GDP. You're about to discover that GDP measures the value of total production, total income, and total expenditure.

GDP Defined

Gross domestic product (GDP)
The market value of all the final goods and services produced within a country in a given time period.

We measure total production as **gross domestic product,** or **GDP,** which is the market value of all the final goods and services produced within a country in a given time period. This definition has four parts, which we'll examine in turn.

Value Produced

To measure total production, we must add together the production of apples and oranges, bats and balls. Just counting the items doesn't get us very far. Which is the greater total production: 100 apples and 50 oranges or 50 apples and 100 oranges?

GDP answers this question by valuing items at their *market value*—at the prices at which the items are traded in markets. If the price of an apple is 10 cents and the price of an orange is 20 cents, the market value of 100 apples plus 50 oranges is $20 and the market value of 50 apples and 100 oranges is $25. By using market prices to value production, we can add the apples and oranges together.

What Produced

Final good or service
A good or service that is produced for its final user and not as a component of another good or service.

Intermediate good or service
A good or service that is used as a component of a final good or service.

A **final good or service** is something that is produced for its final user and not as a component of another good or service. A final good or service contrasts with an **intermediate good or service,** which is used as a component of a final good or service. For example, a Ford car is a final good, but a Firestone tire that Ford buys and installs on the car is an intermediate good. In contrast, if you buy a replacement Firestone tire for your car, then that tire is a final good. The same good can be either final or intermediate depending on how it is used.

GDP does not count the value of everything that is produced. With one exception, it includes only those items that are traded in markets and does not include the value of goods and services that people produce for their own use. For example, if you buy a car wash, the value produced is included in GDP. But if you wash your own car, your production is not counted as part of GDP. The exception is the market value of homes that people own. GDP puts a rental value on these homes and pretends that the owners rent their homes to themselves.

Where Produced

Only goods and services that are produced *within a country* count as part of that country's GDP. Nike Corporation, a U.S. firm, produces sneakers in Vietnam, and the market value of those shoes is part of Vietnam's GDP, not part of U.S. GDP. Toyota, a Japanese firm, produces automobiles in Georgetown, Kentucky, and the value of this production is part of U.S. GDP, not part of Japan's GDP.

When Produced

GDP measures the value of production *during a given time period.* This time period is either a quarter of a year—called the quarterly GDP data—or a year—called the annual GDP data. The Federal Reserve and others use the quarterly GDP data to keep track of the short-term evolution of the economy, and economists use the annual GDP data to examine long-term trends.

GDP measures not only the value of total production but also total income and total expenditure. The circular flow model that you studied in Chapter 2 explains why.

Circular Flows in the U.S. Economy

Four groups buy the final goods and services produced: households, firms, governments, and the rest of the world. Four types of expenditure correspond to these groups:

- Consumption expenditure
- Investment
- Government expenditure on goods and services
- Net exports of goods and services

Consumption Expenditure

Consumption expenditure is the expenditure by households on consumption goods and services. It includes expenditures on *nondurable goods* such as orange juice and pizza, *durable goods* such as televisions and DVD players, and *services* such as rock concerts and haircuts. Consumption expenditure also includes house and apartment rents, including the rental value of owner-occupied housing.

Consumption expenditure
The expenditure by households on consumption goods and services.

Investment

Investment is the purchase of new *capital goods* (tools, instruments, machines, and buildings) and additions to inventories. Capital goods are *durable goods* produced by one firm and bought by another. Examples are PCs produced by Dell and bought by Ford Motor Company, and airplanes produced by Boeing and bought by United Airlines. Investment also includes the purchase of new homes by households.

Investment
The purchase of new *capital goods* (tools, instruments, machines, buildings) and additions to inventories.

At the end of a year, some of a firm's output might remain unsold. For example, if Ford produces 4 million cars and sells 3.9 million of them, the other 0.1 million (100,000) cars remain unsold. In this case, Ford's inventory of cars increases by 100,000. When a firm adds unsold output to inventory, we count those items as part of investment.

It is important to note that investment does *not* include the purchase of stocks and bonds. In macroeconomics, we reserve the term "investment" for the purchase of new capital goods and the additions to inventories.

Government Expenditure on Goods and Services

Government expenditure on goods and services
The expenditure by all levels of government on goods and services.

Government expenditure on goods and services is expenditure by all levels of government on goods and services. For example, the U.S. Defense Department buys missiles and other weapons systems, the State Department buys travel services, the White House buys Internet services, and state and local governments buy cruisers for law enforcement officers.

Net Exports of Goods and Services

Net exports of goods and services
The value of exports of goods and services minus the value of imports of goods and services.

Exports of goods and services
Items that firms in the United States produce and sell to the rest of the world.

Imports of goods and services
Items that households, firms, and governments in the United States buy from the rest of the world.

Net exports of goods and services is the value of exports of goods and services minus the value of imports of goods and services. **Exports of goods and services** are items that firms in the United States produce and sell to the rest of the world. **Imports of goods and services** are items that households, firms, and governments in the United States buy from the rest of the world. Imports are produced in other countries, so expenditure on imports is not included in expenditure on U.S.-produced goods and services. If exports exceed imports, net exports are positive and expenditure on U.S.-produced goods and services increases. If imports exceed exports, net exports are negative and expenditure on U.S.-produced goods and services decreases.

Total Expenditure

Total expenditure on goods and services produced in the United States is the sum of the four items that you've just examined. We call consumption expenditure C, investment I, government expenditure on goods and services G, and net exports of goods and services NX. So total expenditure, which is also the total amount received by the producers of final goods and services, is

$$\text{Total expenditure} = C + I + G + NX.$$

Income

Labor earns wages, capital earns interest, land earns rent, and entrepreneurship earns profits. Households receive these incomes. Some part of total income, called *undistributed profit*, is a combination of interest and profit that firms retain and do not pay to households. But from an economic viewpoint, undistributed profit is income paid to households and then loaned to firms.

Expenditure Equals Income

Figure 21.1 shows the circular flows of income and expenditure that we've just described. The figure is based on Figures 2.5 and 2.6 (on p. 47 and p. 49), but it includes some more details and additional flows.

We call total income Y and show it by the blue flow from firms to households. When households receive their incomes, they pay some in taxes and save some. Some households receive benefits from governments. **Net taxes** equal taxes paid minus cash benefits received and are the green flow from households to governments labeled NT. **Saving** is the amount of income that is not paid in net taxes or spent on consumption goods and services. Saving flows from households to financial markets and is the green flow labeled S. These two green flows are not expenditures on goods and services. They are just flows of money. Because households allocate all their incomes after paying net taxes to consumption and saving,

Net taxes
Taxes paid minus cash benefits received from governments.

Saving
The amount of income that is not paid in net taxes or spent on consumption goods and services.

$$Y = C + S + NT.$$

The red flows show the four expenditure flows: consumption expenditure from households to firms, government expenditure from governments to firms, and net exports from the rest of the world to firms. Investment flows from the financial markets, where firms borrow, to the firms that produce capital goods.

Because firms pay out everything they receive as incomes to the factors of production, total expenditure equals total income. That is,

$$Y = C + I + G + NX.$$

From the viewpoint of firms, the value of production is the cost of production, which equals income. From the viewpoint of purchasers of goods and services, the value of production is the cost of buying it, which equals expenditure. So

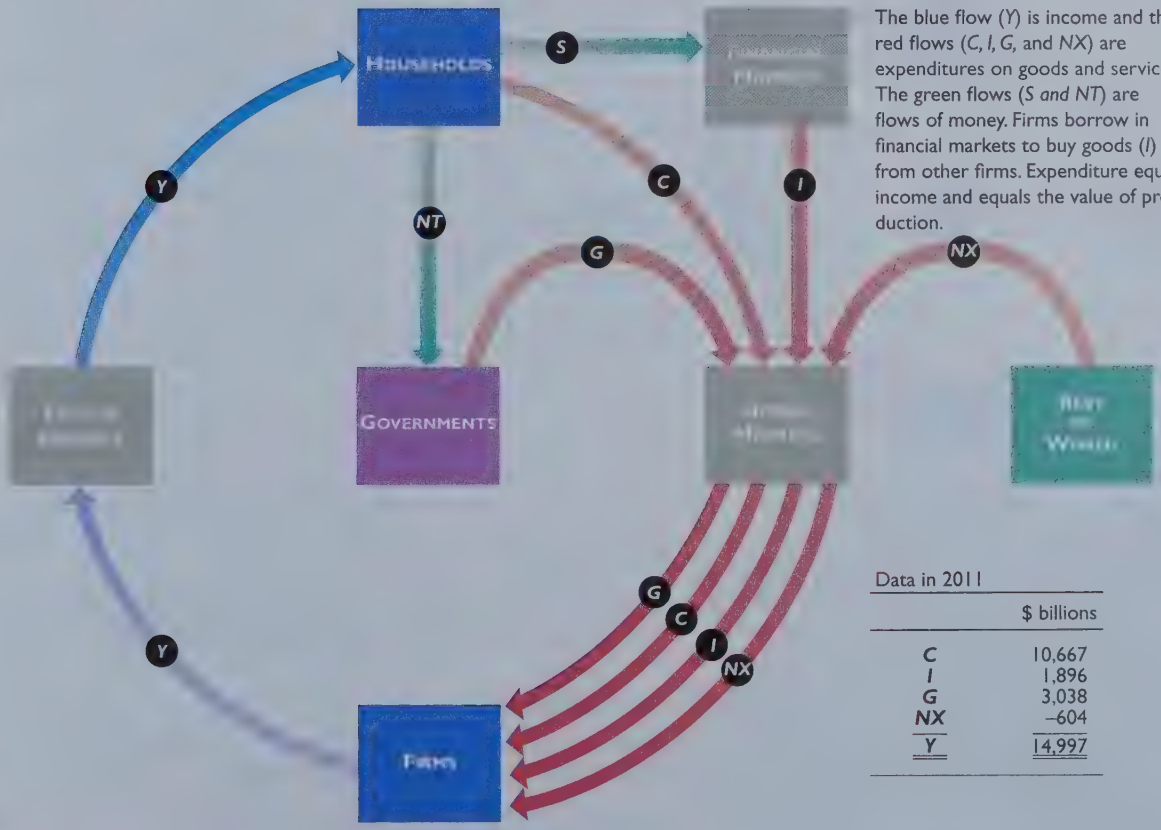
The value of production equals income equals expenditure.

The circular flow and the equality of income and expenditure provide two approaches to measuring GDP that we'll study in the next section.

FIGURE 21.1

The Circular Flow of Income and Expenditure

MyEconLab Animation



The blue flow (*Y*) is income and the red flows (*C*, *I*, *G*, and *NX*) are expenditures on goods and services. The green flows (*S and NT*) are flows of money. Firms borrow in financial markets to buy goods (*I*) from other firms. Expenditure equals income and equals the value of production.

Data in 2011

	$ billions
C	10,667
I	1,896
G	3,038
NX	−604
Y	14,997

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 21.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 21.1

Define GDP and explain why the value of production, income, and expenditure are the same for an economy.

Practice Problems

LIST 1

- Banking services bought by a student
- New cars bought by Hertz, the car rental firm
- Newsprint bought by *USA Today* from International Paper
- The purchase of a new aircraft for the vice president
- New house bought by Beyoncé

1. Classify each of the items in List 1 as a final good or service or as an intermediate good or service and identify which is a component of consumption expenditure, investment, or government expenditure on goods and services.
2. Figure 1 shows the flows of expenditure and income on Lotus Island. In 2011, *R* was $10 billion; *W* was $30 billion; *U* was $12 billion; *X* was $15 billion; and *Z* was $3 billion. Calculate total expenditure and total income.

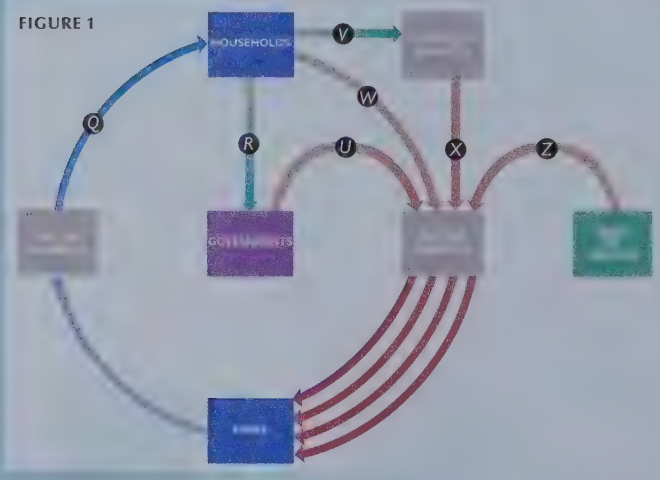
In the News

U.S. economy grew slower in spring than previously reported

Real GDP increased at an annual rate of 1.0 percent in the second quarter of 2011. Investment, exports, consumption expenditure, and government expenditure increased faster than 1.0 percent.

Source: BEA News Release, August 26, 2011

FIGURE 1



Use Figure 1 to indicate the flows in which the items in the news clip occur. How can GDP increase by 1.0 percent if the other items in the news clip increased faster than 1.0 percent?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The student's banking service is a final service and part of consumption expenditure. Hertz's new cars are additions to capital, so they are part of investment and final goods. Newsprint is an input into the newspaper, so it is an intermediate good and not a final expenditure. The new aircraft for the vice president is a final good and part of government expenditure. The new house is a final good and part of investment.
2. Total expenditure is the sum of *C*, *I*, *G*, and *NX*. In Figure 1, *C* is the flow *W*; *I* is the flow *X*; *G* is the flow *U*; and *NX* is the flow *Z*. So total expenditure equals $W + X + U + Z$, which is $60 billion. Total income is the blue flow, *Q*. But total income equals total expenditure, so total income is $60 billion.

Solution to In the News

GDP is the sum of flows *W*, *X*, *U*, and *Z*. Investment is *X*, consumption expenditure is *W*, government expenditure is *U*, and exports are part of *Z*.

GDP = $C + I + G + X - M$, so if $C + I + G + X$ grew faster than 1 percent, then *M* must have grown faster than $C + I + G + X$.

21.2 MEASURING U.S. GDP

U.S. GDP is the market value of all the final goods and services produced within the United States during a year. In 2011, U.S. GDP was $15 trillion. The Bureau of Economic Analysis in the U.S. Department of Commerce measures GDP by using two approaches:

- Expenditure approach
- Income approach

The Expenditure Approach

The expenditure approach measures GDP by using data on consumption expenditure, investment, government expenditure on goods and services, and net exports. This approach is like attaching a meter to the circular flow diagram on all the flows running through the goods markets to firms and measuring the magnitudes of those flows. Table 21.1 shows this approach. The first column gives the terms used in the U.S. National Income and Product Accounts. The next column gives the symbols we used in the previous section.

Using the expenditure approach, GDP is the sum of consumption expenditure on goods and services (C), investment (I), government expenditure on goods and services (G), and net exports of goods and services (NX). The third column gives the expenditures in 2011. GDP measured by the expenditure approach was $14,997 billion (the data are based on the second quarter of 2011).

Net exports were negative in 2011 because imports exceeded exports. Imports were $2,686 billion and exports were $2,082 billion, so net exports—exports minus imports—were –$604 billion as shown in the table.

The fourth column in Table 21.1 shows the relative magnitudes of the expenditures. Consumption expenditure is by far the largest component of total expenditure; government expenditure is the next largest. Investment and exports are a similar size; and net exports is the smallest component. In 2011, consumption expenditure was 71.1 percent, investment was 12.6 percent, government expenditure was 20.3 percent, and net exports were a negative 4.0 percent of GDP.

TABLE 21.1

GDP: The Expenditure Approach

Item	Symbol	Amount in 2011 (second quarter) (billions of dollars)	Percentage of GDP
Consumption expenditure	C	10,667	71.1
Investment	I	1,896	12.6
Government expenditure	G	3,038	20.3
Net exports	NX	–604	–4.0
GDP	Y	14,997	100.0

SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The expenditure approach measures GDP by adding together consumption expenditure (C), investment (I), government expenditure (G), and net exports (NX).

In 2011, GDP measured by the expenditure approach was $14,997 billion.

Expenditures Not in GDP

Total expenditure (and GDP) does not include all the things that people and businesses buy. GDP is the value of *final goods and services,* so spending that is *not* on final goods and services is not part of GDP. Spending on intermediate goods and services is not part of GDP, although it is not always obvious whether an item is an intermediate good or a final good (see *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below). Also, we do not count as part of GDP spending on

- Used goods
- Financial assets

Used Goods Expenditure on used goods is not part of GDP because these goods were part of GDP in the period in which they were produced and during which time they were new goods. For example, a 2008 automobile was part of GDP in 2008. If the car is traded on the used car market in 2012, the amount paid for the car is not part of GDP in 2012.

Financial Assets When households buy financial assets such as bonds and stocks, they are making loans, not buying goods and services. The expenditure on newly produced capital goods is part of GDP, but the purchase of financial assets is not.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Is a Computer Program an Intermediate Good or a Final Good?

When American Airlines buys a new reservations software package, is that like General Motors buying tires? If it is, then software is an *intermediate good* and it is not counted as part of GDP. Airline ticket sales, like GM cars, are part of GDP, but the intermediate goods that are used to produce air transportation or cars are *not* part of GDP.

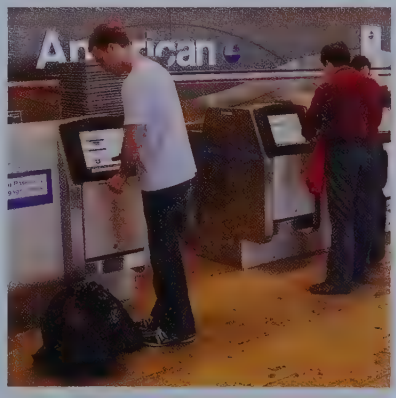
Or when American Airlines buys new software, is that like General Motors buying a new assembly-line robot? If it is, then the software is a capital good and its purchase is the purchase of a final good. In this case, the software purchase is an *investment* and it *is* counted as part of GDP.

Brent Moulton worked as a government economist in the Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA). Moulton's job was to oversee periodic adjustments to the GDP estimates to incorporate new data and new ideas about the economy.

The biggest change made was in how the purchase of computer software by firms is classified. Before 1999, it was regarded as an *intermediate good.* But since 1999, it has been treated as an *investment.*

How big a deal is this? When the BEA recalculated the 1996 GDP, the change increased the estimate of the 1996 GDP by $115 billion. That is a lot of money. To put it in perspective, GDP in 1996 was $7,662 billion. So the adjustment was 1.5 percent of GDP.

This change is a good example of the ongoing effort by the BEA to keep the GDP measure as accurate as possible.



The Income Approach

To measure GDP using the income approach, the Bureau of Economic Analysis uses income data collected by the Internal Revenue Service and other agencies. The BEA takes the incomes that firms pay households for the services of the factors of production they hire—wages for labor services, interest for the use of capital, rent for the use of land, and profits for entrepreneurship—and sums those incomes. This approach is like attaching a meter to the circular flow diagram on all the flows running through factor markets from firms to households and measuring the magnitudes of those flows. Let's see how the income approach works.

The U.S. National Income and Product Accounts divide incomes into two big categories:

- Wage income
- Interest, rent, and profit income

Wage Income

Wage income, called *compensation of employees* in the national accounts, is the total payment for labor services. It includes net wages and salaries plus fringe benefits paid by employers such as health-care insurance, Social Security contributions, and pension fund contributions.

Interest, Rent, and Profit Income

Interest, rent, and profit income, called *net operating surplus* in the national accounts, is the total income earned by capital, land, and entrepreneurship.

Interest income is the interest that households receive on capital. A household's capital is equal to its net worth—its assets minus its borrowing.

Rent includes payments for the use of land and other rented factors of production. It includes payments for rented housing and imputed rent for owner-occupied housing. (Imputed rent is an estimate of what homeowners would pay to rent the housing they own and use themselves. By including this item in the national accounts, we measure the total value of housing services, whether they are owned or rented.)

Profit includes the profits of corporations and the incomes of proprietors who run their own businesses. These incomes are a mixture of interest and profit.

Table 21.2 shows these two components of incomes and their relative magnitudes. The sum of wages, interest, rent, and profit is **net domestic product at factor cost.**

Net domestic product at factor cost
The sum of the wages, interest, rent, and profit.

Net domestic product at factor cost is not GDP, and we must make two further adjustments to get to GDP: one from factor cost to market prices and another from net product to gross product.

From Factor Cost to Market Price

The expenditure approach values goods and services at market prices, and the income approach values them at factor cost—the cost of the factors of production used to produce them. Indirect taxes (such as sales taxes) and subsidies (payments by government to firms) make these two values differ. Sales taxes make market prices exceed factor cost, and subsidies make factor cost exceed market prices. To convert the value at factor cost to the value at market prices, we must add indirect taxes and subtract subsidies.

TABLE 21.2

GDP: The Income Approach

The sum of all incomes equals net domestic product at factor cost. GDP equals net domestic product at factor cost plus indirect taxes less subsidies plus depreciation (capital consumption).
In 2011, GDP measured by the income approach was $15,070 billion. This amount is $73 billion more than GDP measured by the expenditure approach—a statistical discrepancy of −$73 billion.
Wages are by far the largest part of total income.

Item	Amount in 2011 (second quarter) (billions of dollars)	Percentage of GDP
Wages (compensation of employees)	8,273	55.2
Interest, rent, and profit (net operating surplus)	3,818	25.5
Net domestic product at factor cost	12,091	80.7
Indirect taxes less subsidies	1,039	6.9
Depreciation (capital consumption)	1,940	12.9
GDP (income approach)	15,070	100.5
Statistical discrepancy	−73	−0.5
GDP (expenditure approach)	14,997	100.0

SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

From Net to Gross

Depreciation
The decrease in the value of capital that results from its use and from obsolescence.

The income approach measures *net* product and the expenditure approach measures *gross* product. The difference is **depreciation,** which is the decrease in the value of capital that results from its use and from obsolescence. Firms' profits, which are included in the income approach, are net of depreciation, so the income approach gives a *net* measure. Investment, which is included in the expenditure approach, includes the purchase of capital to replace worn out or obsolete capital, so the expenditure approach gives a *gross* measure. To get *gross* domestic product from the income approach, we must *add* depreciation to total income.

Table 21.2 summarizes these adjustments and shows that the income approach gives almost the same estimate of GDP as the expenditure approach.

Statistical Discrepancy

The expenditure approach and income approach do not deliver exactly the same estimate of GDP. If a taxi driver doesn't report all his tips, they get missed in the income approach, but they get caught by the expenditure approach when he spends his income. So the sum of expenditures might exceed the sum of incomes. But most income gets reported to the Internal Revenue Service on tax returns while many items of expenditure are not recorded and must be estimated. So the sum of incomes might exceed the sum of estimated expenditures.

Statistical discrepancy
The discrepancy between the expenditure approach and the income approach estimates of GDP, calculated as the GDP expenditure total minus the GDP income total.

The discrepancy between the expenditure approach and the income approach is called the **statistical discrepancy,** and it is calculated as the GDP expenditure total minus the GDP income total.

The two measures of GDP provide a check on the accuracy of the numbers. If the two are wildly different, we will want to know what mistakes we've made. Have we omitted some item? Have we counted something twice? The fact that the two estimates are close gives some confidence that they are reasonably accurate. But the expenditure total is regarded as the more reliable estimate of GDP, so the discrepancy is added to or subtracted from income to reconcile the two estimates.

GDP and Related Measures of Production and Income

Although GDP is the main measure of total production, you will sometimes encounter another: gross *national* product or GNP.

Gross National Product

A country's **gross national product,** or **GNP,** is the market value of all the final goods and services produced anywhere in the world in a given time period by the factors of production supplied by the residents of that country. For example, Nike's income from the capital that it supplies to its Vietnam shoe factory is part of U.S. GNP but not part of U.S. GDP. It is part of Vietnam's GDP. Similarly, Toyota's income on the capital it supplies to its Kentucky auto plant is part of U.S. GDP but not part of U.S. GNP. It is part of Japan's GNP.

Gross national product (GNP)
The market value of all the final goods and services produced anywhere in the world in a given time period by the factors of production supplied by the residents of the country.

GNP equals GDP plus net factor income received from or paid to other countries. The difference between U.S. GDP and GNP is small. But in an oil-rich Middle Eastern country such as Bahrain, where a large amount of capital is owned by foreigners, GNP is much smaller than GDP; and in a poor country such as Bangladesh, whose people work abroad and send income home, GNP is much larger than GDP.

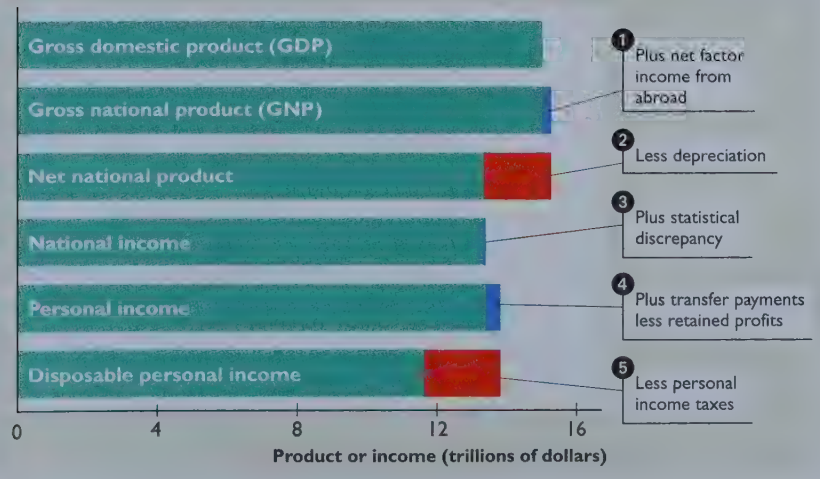
Disposable Personal Income

You've seen that consumption expenditure is the largest component of aggregate expenditure. The main influence on consumption expenditure is **disposable personal income,** which is the income received by households minus personal income taxes paid. Because disposable personal income plays an important role in influencing spending, the national accounts measure this item along with a number of intermediate totals that you can see in Figure 21.2. This figure shows how disposable personal income is calculated and how it relates to GDP and GNP.

Disposable personal income
Income received by households minus personal income taxes paid.

FIGURE 21.2
GDP and Related Product and Income Measures

MyEconLab Animation



The bars show six related product and income measures and the relationship among them.

1. Add net factor income from abroad to GDP to get GNP.
2. Subtract depreciation from GNP to get net national product.
3. Add the statistical discrepancy between the expenditure and income measures (almost invisible in the figure because it is tiny) to get national income.
4. Add transfer payments by governments less profits retained by firms to get personal income.
5. Finally, subtract personal income taxes to get disposable personal income.

SOURCE OF DATA: U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

Real GDP and Nominal GDP

You've seen that GDP measures total expenditure on final goods and services in a given period. Suppose that we want to compare GDP in two periods, say 2005 and 2011. In 2005, GDP was $12,623 billion and by 2011, it was $14,997 billion—18.8 percent higher than in 2005. What does this 18.8 percent increase mean?

The answer is a combination of two things:

- We produced more goods and services.
- We paid higher prices for our goods and services.

Producing more goods and services contributes to an improvement in our standard of living. Paying higher prices means that our *cost of living* has increased but our standard of living has not. So it matters a great deal why GDP has increased. If the 18.8 percent increase is accounted for mainly by higher prices, our standard of living hasn't changed much. But if the 18.8 percent increase is accounted for mainly by the production of more goods and services, our standard of living might have increased a lot.

You're now going to see how economists at the Bureau of Economic Analysis isolate the effects on GDP of an increase in production. Their first step is to distinguish between two GDP concepts: real GDP and nominal GDP.

Real GDP
The value of the final goods and services produced in a given year expressed in terms of the prices in a *base year*.

Nominal GDP
The value of final goods and services produced in a given year expressed in terms of the prices of that same year.

Real GDP is the value of final goods and services produced in a given year expressed in terms of the prices in a *reference base year*. The *reference base year* is the year we choose against which to compare all other years. In the United States today, the *reference base year* is 2005.

Real GDP contrasts with **nominal GDP**, which is the value of the final goods and services produced in a given year expressed in terms of the prices of that same year. Nominal GDP is just a more precise name for GDP.

The method used to calculate real GDP has changed in recent years and is now a bit technical, but the essence of the calculation hasn't changed. Here, we describe the essence of the calculation. An appendix to this chapter describes the technical details of the method used by the Bureau of Economic Analysis.

Calculating Real GDP

The goal of calculating *real GDP* is to measure the extent to which total production has increased and remove from the nominal GDP numbers the influence of price changes. To focus on the principles and keep the numbers easy to work with, we'll calculate real GDP for an economy that produces only one good in each of the GDP categories: consumption expenditure (C), investment (I), and government expenditure (G). We'll ignore exports and imports by assuming that net exports (exports minus imports) is zero.

Table 21.3 shows the quantities produced and the prices in 2005 (the *base year*) and in 2011. In part (a), we calculate nominal GDP in 2005. For each item, we multiply the quantity produced by its price to find the total expenditure on the item. We then sum the expenditures to find nominal GDP, which in 2005 is $100 million. Because 2005 is the base year, real GDP and nominal GDP are equal in 2005.

In part (b) of Table 21.3, we calculate nominal GDP in 2011. Again, we calculate nominal GDP by multiplying the quantity of each item produced by its price to find the total expenditure on the item. We then sum the expenditures to find nominal GDP, which in 2011 is $300 million. Nominal GDP in 2011 is three times its value in 2005. But by how much has the quantity of final goods and services produced increased? That's what real GDP will tell us.

TABLE 21.3

Calculating Nominal GDP and Real GDP in 2005 and 2011

	Item	Quantity (millions of units)	Price (dollars per unit)	Expenditure (millions of dollars)
(a) In 2005				
C	T-shirts	10	5	50
I	Computer chips	3	10	30
G	Security services	1	20	20
Y	Real GDP and Nominal GDP in 2005			100
(b) In 2011				
C	T-shirts	4	5	20
I	Computer chips	2	20	40
G	Security services	6	40	240
Y	Nominal GDP in 2011			300
(c) Quantities of 2011 valued at prices of 2005				
C	T-shirts	4	5	20
I	Computer chips	2	10	20
G	Security services	6	20	120
Y	Real GDP in 2011			160

The base year is 2005, so real GDP and nominal GDP are equal in that year.

Between 2005 and 2011, the production of security services (*G*) increased, but the production of T-shirts (*C*) and computer chips (*I*) decreased. In the same period, the price of a T-shirt remained constant, but the other two prices doubled.

Nominal GDP increased from $100 million in 2005 in part (a) to $300 million in 2011 in part (b).

Real GDP in part (c), which is calculated by using the quantities of 2011 in part (b) and the prices of 2005 in part (a), increased from $100 million in 2005 to $160 million in 2011, a 60 percent increase.

In part (c) of Table 21.3, we calculate real GDP in 2011. You can see that the quantity of each good and service produced in part (c) is the same as that in part (b). They are the quantities of 2011. You can also see that the prices in part (c) are the same as those in part (a). They are the prices of the base year—2005.

For each item, we now multiply the quantity produced in 2011 by its price in 2005 to find what the total expenditure would have been in 2011 if prices had remained the same as they were in 2005. We then sum these expenditures to find real GDP in 2011, which is $160 million.

Nominal GDP in 2011 is three times its value in 2005, but real GDP in 2011 is only 1.6 times its 2005 value—a 60 percent increase in *real* GDP.

Using the Real GDP Numbers

In the example that we've just worked through, we found the value of real GDP in 2011 based on the prices of 2005. This number alone enables us to compare production in two years only. By repeating the calculation that we have done for 2011 using the data for each year between 2005 and 2011, we can calculate the *annual* percentage change of real GDP—the annual growth rate of real GDP. This is the most common use of the real GDP numbers. Also, by calculating real GDP every three months—known as *quarterly real GDP*—the Bureau of Economic Analysis is able to provide valuable information that is used to interpret the current state of the economy. This information is used to guide both government macroeconomic policy and business production and investment decisions.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 21.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 21.2

Describe how economic statisticians measure GDP and distinguish between nominal GDP and real GDP.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows some of the items in the U.S. National Income and Product Accounts in 2008. Use Table 1 to work Problems **1** to **3**.

TABLE 1

Item	Amount (trillions of dollars)
Consumption expenditure	10.0
Government expenditure	2.9
Indirect taxes less subsidies	0.8
Depreciation	1.9
Net factor income from abroad	0.2
Investment	2.1
Net exports	–0.7
Statistical discrepancy	0

1. Use the expenditure approach to calculate U.S. GDP in 2008.
2. What was U.S. GDP as measured by the income approach in 2008? By how much did gross domestic product and net domestic product differ in 2008?
3. Calculate U.S. GNP and U.S. national income in 2008.
4. Table 2 shows some data for an economy. If the base year is 2010, calculate the economy's nominal GDP and real GDP in 2011.

TABLE 2

(a) In 2010:

Item	Quantity	Price
Apples	60	$0.50
Oranges	80	$0.25

(b) In 2011:

Item	Quantity	Price
Apples	160	$1.00
Oranges	220	$2.00

In the News

As consumers reduce their spending, inventories are rising

The Commerce Department reported that sales of nondurable goods fell 0.6 percent, while sales of durable goods decreased 1.5 percent in August. Inventories of durable goods increased 1.4 percent.

Source: Reuters, October 9, 2008

Which component of GDP changed when sales of (i) nondurable goods fell and (ii) durable goods decreased, and (iii) inventories of durable goods increased? Provide an example of each item of expenditure.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. GDP was $14.3 trillion. The expenditure approach sums the expenditure on final goods and services. That is, GDP = $C + I + G + NX$.
   In 2008, U.S. GDP = ($10.0 + $2.1 + $2.9 − $0.7) trillion = $14.3 trillion.
2. GDP as measured by the income approach was $14.3 trillion. With the statistical discrepancy zero, GDP (expenditure approach) = GDP (income approach). Gross domestic product minus net domestic product equals depreciation, which was $1.9 trillion.
3. GNP = GDP + Net factor income from abroad. In 2008, GNP was $14.5 trillion ($14.3 trillion + $0.2 trillion). National income = GNP − Depreciation, which equals $14.5 trillion − $1.9 trillion = $12.6 trillion.
4. Nominal GDP in 2011 equals (160 apples × $1) + (220 oranges × $2) = $600. Real GDP in 2011 at 2010 prices equals (160 apples × $0.50 per apple) + (220 oranges × $0.25 per orange) = $135.

Solution to In the News

(i) Nondurable goods such as coffee are bought by households and are part of consumption expenditure, *C*. (ii) Durable goods such as iPhones are bought by households and are part of consumption expenditure, *C*, and durable goods such as tower cranes are bought by firms and are part of investment, *I*. (iii) An inventory of durable goods, such as the auto parts at a Ford plant, is part of investment, *I*.

21.3 THE USES AND LIMITATIONS OF REAL GDP

We use estimates of real GDP for three main purposes:

- To compare the standard of living over time
- To track the course of the business cycle
- To compare the standard of living among countries

The Standard of Living Over Time

A nation's **standard of living** is measured by the value of goods and services that its people enjoy, *on average*. Income per person determines what people can afford to buy and real GDP is a measure of real income. So **real GDP per person**—real GDP divided by the population—is a commonly used measure for comparing the standard of living over time.

Standard of living
The level of consumption of goods and services that people enjoy, *on average*.

Real GDP per person
Real GDP divided by the population.

Real GDP per person tells us the value of goods and services that the average person can enjoy. By using *real* GDP, we remove any influence that rising prices and a rising cost of living might have had on our comparison.

A handy way of comparing real GDP per person over time is to express it as a ratio of its value in some reference year. Table 21.4 provides the numbers for the United States that compare 2011 with 50 years earlier, 1961. In 1961, real GDP per person was $15,754 and in 2011 it was $42,206, or 2.7 times its 1961 level. To the extent that real GDP per person measures the standard of living, people were 2.7 times as well off in 2011 as their grandparents had been in 1961.

TABLE 21.4 REAL GDP PER PERSON IN 1961 AND 2011

Year	1961	2011
Real GDP (billions)	$2,894	$13,088
Population (millions)	183.7	310.1
Real GDP per person	$15,754	$42,206

Figure 21.3 shows the entire 50 years of real GDP per person from 1961 to 2011 and displays two features of our changing standard of living:

1. The growth of potential GDP per person
2. Fluctuations of real GDP per person around potential GDP

Potential GDP is the level of real GDP when all the economy's factors of production—labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability—are fully employed. When some factors of production are *unemployed*, real GDP is *below* potential GDP. And when some factors of production are *over-employed* and working harder and for longer hours than can be maintained in the long run, real GDP *exceeds* potential GDP.

Potential GDP
The value of real GDP when all the economy's factors of production—labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability—are fully employed.

You've seen that real GDP per person in 2011 was 2.7 times that of 1961. But in 2011, some labor and other factors of production were unemployed and the economy was producing less than potential GDP. To measure the trend in the standard of living, we must remove the influence of short-term fluctuations and focus on the path of potential GDP.

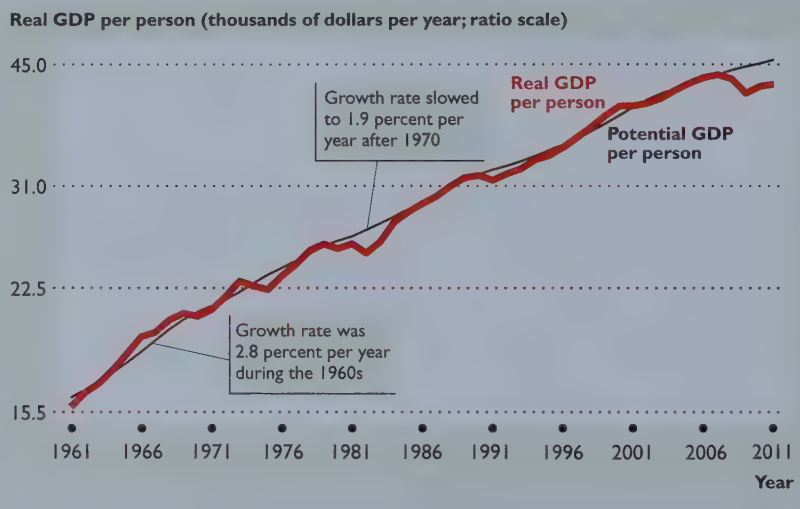
The growth rate of potential GDP fluctuates less than real GDP. During the 1960s, potential GDP per person grew at an average rate of 2.8 percent a year, but since 1970, its growth rate has slowed to 1.9 percent a year. This growth slowdown means that potential GDP is lower today (and lower by a large amount) than it would have been if the 1960s growth rate could have been maintained. If potential GDP had kept growing at the 1960s pace, potential GDP per person in 2011 would have been $20,000 more than it actually was. The cumulatively lost income from the growth slowdown of the 1970s is a staggering $300,000 per person. Understanding the reasons for the growth slowdown is one of the major tasks of macroeconomists.

FIGURE 21.3

Real GDP and Potential GDP Per Person in the United States: 1961–2011

MyEconLab Animation

Real GDP grows and fluctuates around the growth path of potential GDP. Potential GDP per person grew at an annual rate of 2.8 percent during the 1960s and slowed to 1.9 percent after 1970.



SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Congressional Budget Office.

Tracking the Course of the Business Cycle

Business cycle
A periodic but irregular up-and-down movement of total production and other measures of economic activity.

We call the fluctuations in the pace of economic activity the business cycle. A **business cycle** is a periodic but irregular up-and-down movement of total production and other measures of economic activity such as employment and income. The business cycle isn't a regular, predictable, and repeating cycle like the phases of the moon. The timing and the intensity of the business cycle vary a lot, but every cycle has two phases:

1. Expansion
2. Recession

and two turning points:

1. Peak
2. Trough

Figure 21.4 shows these features of the most recent U.S. business cycle using real GDP as the measure of economic activity. An *expansion* is a period during which real GDP increases. In the early stage of an expansion, real GDP remains below potential GDP and as the expansion progresses, real GDP eventually exceeds potential GDP.

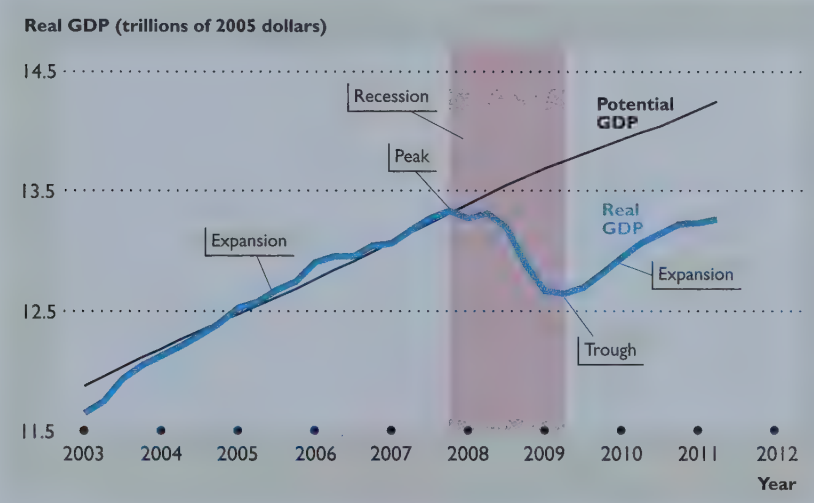
Recession
A period during which real GDP decreases for at least two successive quarters; or defined by the NBER as "a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and trade, usually lasting from six months to a year, and marked by contractions in many sectors of the economy."

A common definition of **recession** is a period during which real GDP decreases—its growth rate is negative—for at least two successive quarters. The National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER), which dates the U.S. business cycle phases and turning points, defines a recession more broadly as "a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and trade, usually lasting from

FIGURE 21.4

The Most Recent U.S. Business Cycle

MyEconLab Real-time data



The most recent business cycle peak was in the fourth quarter of 2007 and the trough was in the second quarter of 2009 after which a new expansion began. Between the peak and the trough, the economy was in a recession. The recession was extremely deep and the expansion that followed was extremely weak—real GDP remained a long way below potential GDP.

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis, the Congressional Budget Office, and the National Bureau of Economic Research.

six months to a year, and marked by contractions in many sectors of the economy." This definition means that sometimes the NBER declares a recession even though real GDP has not decreased for two successive quarters. A recession in 2001 was such a recession. An expansion ends and a recession begins at a business cycle peak. A peak is the highest level of real GDP that has been attained up to that time. A recession ends at a trough when real GDP reaches a low point and from which a new expansion begins.

The shaded bar in Figure 21.4 highlights the 2008–2009 recession. This recession was unusually severe. It lowered real GDP to its level of 2005. The end of a recession isn't the end of pain. When an expansion begins, real GDP is below potential GDP. And even after two years into the expansion that followed the 2008–2009 recession, real GDP had not returned to its previous peak level and the gap between real GDP and potential GDP was wide.

The period that began in 1991 following a severe recession and that ended with the global financial crisis of 2008 was so free from serious downturns in real GDP and other indicators of economic activity that it was called the *Great Moderation*, a name that contrasts it with the Great Depression. Some starry-eyed optimists even began to declare that the business cycle was dead. This long period of expansion also turned the attention of macroeconomists away from the business cycle and toward a focus on economic growth and the possibility of achieving faster growth.

But the 2008–2009 recession put the business cycle back on the agenda. Economists were criticized for not predicting it, and old divisions among economists that many thought were healed erupted in the pages of *The Economist* and *The New York Times* and online on a host of blogs.

We'll be examining the causes of recession and the alternative views among economists in greater detail as you progress through the rest of your study of macroeconomics.

EYE on the BOOMS AND BUSTS

How Do We Track the Booms and Busts of our Economy?

The National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER) Business Cycle Dating Committee determines the dates of U.S. business cycle turning points.

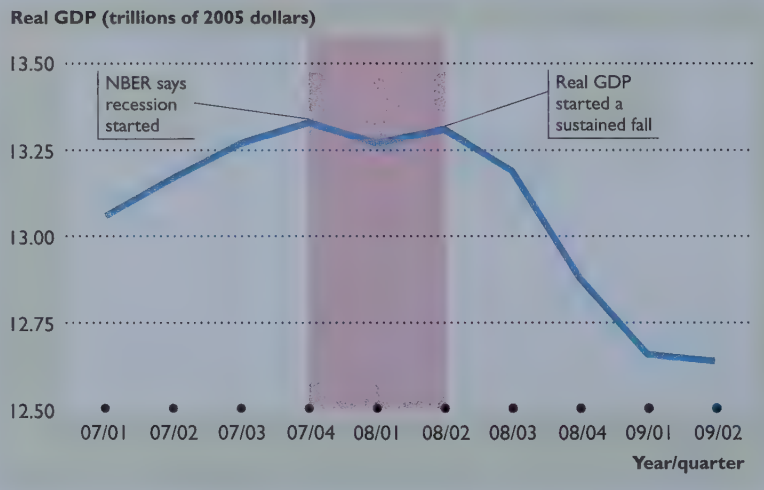
To identify the date of a business cycle peak, the NBER committee looks at data on industrial production, total employment, real GDP, and wholesale and retail sales.

The NBER committee met in November 2008 to determine when the economy went into recession.

The committee reported that the two most reliable measures of aggregate domestic production are real GDP measured using the expenditure approach and the income approach.

Because of a statistical discrepancy, these two estimates of aggregate production differ and for a few quarters in 2007 and 2008 they told conflicting stories. As the committee noted, these estimates did "not speak clearly about the date of a peak in activity."

The NBER examined other data on real personal income, real manufacturing, wholesale and retail sales, industrial production, and employment. All of these data peaked between November 2007 and June 2008 and on balance, the committee decided that November 2007 was the peak. But as the figure shows, real GDP didn't begin a sustained fall until two quarters later.



SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and the National Bureau of Economic Research.

Let's now leave comparisons of the standard of living over time and business cycles and briefly see how we compare the standard of living among countries.

The Standard of Living Among Countries

To use real GDP per person to compare the standard of living among countries, we must convert the numbers for other countries into U.S. dollars. To calculate real GDP, we must also use a common set of prices—called *purchasing power parity prices*—for all countries. The International Monetary Fund performs these calculations and if you turn back to Figure 2.4 on p. 44 you can see some comparisons based on these data. They tell, for example, that an average American has a standard of living (income per person) almost 8 times that of an average person in China.

Real GDP provides an easy way of comparing living standards. But real GDP doesn't include *all* the goods and services produced. Also, real GDP has nothing to say about factors other than the goods and services that affect the standard of living. Let's explore these limitations of real GDP.

Goods and Services Omitted from GDP

GDP measures the value of goods and services that are bought in markets. GDP excludes

- Household production
- Underground production
- Leisure time
- Environment quality

Household Production

Household production is the production of goods and services (mainly services) in the home. Examples of this production are preparing meals, changing a light bulb, cutting grass, washing a car, and helping a student with homework. Because we don't buy these services in markets, they are not counted as part of GDP. The result is that GDP *underestimates* the value of the production.

Household production
The production of goods and services in the home.

Many items that were traditionally produced at home are now bought in the market. For example, more families now eat in fast-food restaurants—one of the fastest-growing industries in the United States—and use day-care services. These trends mean that food preparation and child-care services that were once part of household production are now measured as part of GDP. So real GDP grows more rapidly than does real GDP plus home production.

Underground Production

Underground production is the production of goods and services hidden from the view of government because people want to avoid taxes and regulations or their actions are illegal. Because underground production is unreported, it is omitted from GDP.

Underground production
The production of goods and services hidden from the view of government.

Examples of underground production are the distribution of illegal drugs, farm work that uses illegal workers who are paid less than the minimum wage, and jobs that are done for cash to avoid paying income taxes. This last category might be quite large and includes tips earned by cab drivers, hairdressers, and hotel and restaurant workers.

Edgar L. Feige, an economist at the University of Wisconsin, estimates that U.S. underground production was about 16 percent of GDP during the early 1990s. Underground production in many countries, especially in most developing countries, is estimated to be larger than that in the United States.

Leisure Time

Leisure time is an economic good that is not valued as part of GDP. Yet the marginal hour of leisure time must be at least as valuable to us as the wage we earn for working. If it were not, we would work instead. Over the years, leisure time has steadily increased as the workweek gets shorter, more people take early retirement, and the number of vacation days increases. These improvements in our standard of living are not measured in real GDP.

Environment Quality

Pollution is an economic *bad* (the opposite of a *good*). The more we pollute our environment, other things remaining the same, the lower is our standard of living. This lowering of our standard of living is not measured by real GDP.

Other Influences on the Standard of Living

The quantity of goods and services consumed is a major influence on the standard of living. But other influences are

- Health and life expectancy
- Political freedom and social justice

Health and Life Expectancy

Good health and a long life—the hopes of everyone—do not show up directly in real GDP. A higher real GDP enables us to spend more on medical research, health care, a good diet, and exercise equipment. As real GDP has increased, our life expectancy has lengthened. But we face new health and life expectancy problems every year. Diseases, such as AIDS, and drug abuse are taking young lives at a rate that causes serious concern. When we take these negative influences into account, real GDP growth might overstate the improvements in the standard of living.

Political Freedom and Social Justice

A country might have a very large real GDP per person but have limited political freedom and social justice. For example, a small elite might enjoy political liberty and extreme wealth while the majority of people have limited freedom and live in poverty. Such an economy would generally be regarded as having a lower standard of living than one that had the same amount of real GDP but in which everyone enjoyed political freedom.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Making GDP Personal

As you read a newspaper or business magazine, watch a TV news show, or browse a news Web site, you often come across reports about GDP.

What do these reports mean for you? Where in the National Income and Product Accounts do *your* transactions appear? How can you use information about GDP in your life?

Your Contribution to GDP

Your own economic transactions show up in the National Income and Product Accounts on both the expenditure side and the income side—as part of the expenditure approach and part of the income approach to measuring GDP.

Most of your expenditure is part of Consumption Expenditure. If you were to buy a new home, that item would appear as part of Investment. Because much of what you buy is produced in another country, expenditure on these goods shows up as part of Imports.

If you have a job, your income appears in Compensation of Employees.

Because the GDP measure of the value of production includes only market transactions, some of your own production of goods and services is most likely not counted in GDP.

What are the nonmarket goods and services that you produce? How would you go about valuing them?

Making Sense of the Numbers

To use the GDP numbers in a news report, you must first check whether the reporter is referring to *nominal* GDP or *real* GDP.

Using U.S. real GDP per person, check how your income compares with the average income in the United States. When you see GDP numbers for other countries, compare your income with that of a person in France, or Canada, or China.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Which Country Has the Highest Standard of Living?

You've seen that as a measure of the standard of living, GDP has limitations. To compare the standard of living across countries, we must consider other factors in addition to GDP.

GDP measures only the market value of all the final goods and services produced and bought in markets. GDP omits some goods and services (those produced in the home and in the hidden economy). It omits the value of leisure time, of good health and long life expectancy, as well as of political freedom and social justice. It also omits the damage (negative value) that pollution does to the environment.

These limitations of GDP as a measure of the standard of living apply in every country. So to make international comparisons of the standard of living, we must look at real GDP and other indicators. Nonetheless, real GDP per person is a major component of international comparisons.

Many alternatives to GDP have been proposed. One, called Green GDP, subtracts from GDP an estimate of the cost of greenhouse gas emissions and other negative influences on the environment. Another measure, called the Happy Planet Index, or HPI, goes further and subtracts from GDP an estimate of the cost of depleting nonrenewable resources.

Neither the Green GDP nor the HPI are reliable measures because they rely on guesses about the costs of pollution and resource depletion that are subjective and unreliable.

Taking an approach that focuses on the quality of life factors, the United Nations (UN) has constructed a Human Development Index (HDI), which combines real GDP, life expectancy and health, and education.

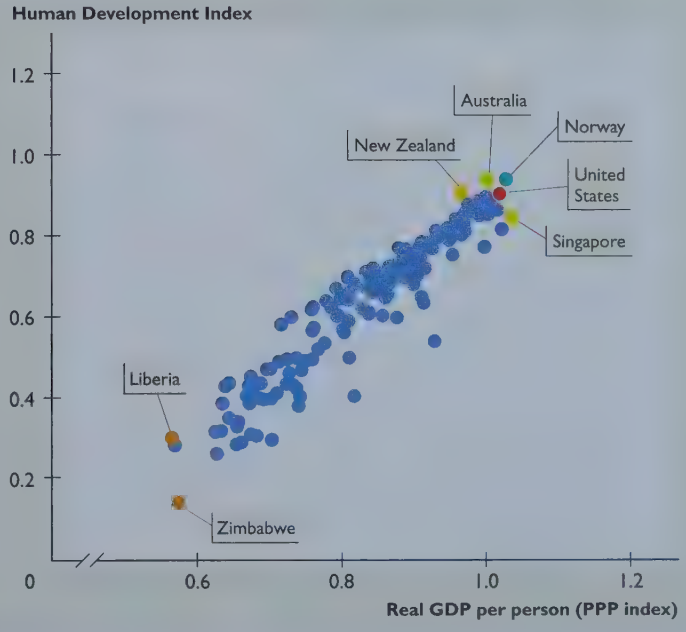
The figure shows the relationship between the HDI and GDP in 2010. (In the figure, each dot represents a country.) These two measures of the standard of living tell a similar but not identical story.

The United States has the 3rd highest GDP per person and the 4th highest HDI. Why does the United States not have a higher HDI?

The UN says that the people who live in the three countries with higher HDIs live longer, have access to universal health care, and have better schools than do people in the United States. The HDI emphasized equality of access to these services.

The HDI doesn't include political freedom and social justice. If it did, the United States would score highly on that component of the index.

The bottom line is that we don't know which country has the highest standard of living. We do know that GDP per person alone does not provide the complete answer.



SOURCE OF DATA: *United Nations Human Development Report*, 2011, http://hdr.undp.org/.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 21.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 21.3

Describe the uses of real GDP and explain its limitations as a measure of the standard of living.

Practice Problems

The United Nations Human Development Report gives the data for 2011 in Table 1. Other information suggests that household production is similar in Canada and the United States and smaller than in China and Russia. The underground economy is largest in Russia and China and a similar proportion of these economies. Canadians and Americans enjoy more leisure hours than do the Chinese and Russians. Canada and the United States spend significantly more on the environment than do China and Russia. Use this information and ignore any other influences to work Problems **1** and **2**.

TABLE 1

Country	Real GDP per person
China	$4,833
Russia	$13,543
United States	$48,666
Canada	$50,265

1. In which pair (or pairs) of countries is it easiest to compare the standard of living? And in which pair (or pairs) is it most difficult? Explain why.
2. Do the differences in real GDP per person correctly rank the standard of living in these four countries? What additional information would we need to be able to make an accurate assessment of the relative standard of living in these four countries?

In the News

Economists look to expand GDP to include the quality of life

Robert Kennedy, when seeking the Democratic presidential nomination in 1968, remarked that GDP measures everything except that which makes life worthwhile.

Source: *The New York Times*, September 1, 2008

Which items did Robert Kennedy probably think were missing?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Two pairs—Canada and the United States, and China and Russia—are easy to compare because household production, the underground economy, leisure hours, and the environment are similar in the countries in each pair. The most difficult comparison is Canada and the United States with either China or Russia. Household production and the underground economy narrow the differences but leisure hours and the environment widen them.
2. Differences in real GDP per person probably correctly rank the standard of living because where the gap is small (Canada and the United States), other factors are similar, and where other factors differ, the gaps are huge. More information on the value of household production, the underground economy, the value of leisure, and the value of environmental differences is required to make an accurate assessment of relative living standards.

Solution to In the News

GDP measures production that is traded in markets. GDP does not include household production, leisure time, health and life expectancy, political freedom, and social justice. These items are probably the ones that Kennedy believed were missing from GDP as a measure of the quality of life.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Define GDP and explain why the value of production, income, and expenditure are the same for an economy.

- GDP is the market value of all final goods and services produced within a country in a given time period.
- We can value goods and services either by what they cost to produce (incomes) or by what people are willing to pay (expenditures).
- The value of production equals income equals expenditure.

2 Describe how economic statisticians measure GDP and distinguish between nominal GDP and real GDP.

- BEA measures GDP by summing expenditures and by summing incomes. With no errors of measurement the two totals are the same, but in practice, a small statistical discrepancy arises.
- A country's GNP is similar to its GDP, but GNP is the value of production by factors of production supplied by the residents of a country.
- Nominal GDP is the value of production using the prices of the current year and the quantities produced in the current year.
- Real GDP is the value of production using the prices of a base year and the quantities produced in the current year.

3 Describe the uses of real GDP and explain its limitations as a measure of the standard of living.

- We use real GDP per person to compare the standard of living over time.
- We use real GDP to determine when the economy has reached a business cycle peak or trough.
- We use real GDP per person expressed in purchasing power parity dollars to compare the standard of living among countries.
- Real GDP omits some goods and services and ignores some factors that influence the standard of living.
- The Human Development Index takes some other factors into account.

Key Terms

Business cycle, 548
Consumption expenditure, 535
Depreciation, 542
Disposable personal income, 543
Exports of goods and services, 536
Final good or service, 534
Government expenditure on goods and services, 536
Gross domestic product (GDP), 534
Gross national product (GNP), 543
Household production, 551
Imports of goods and services, 536
Intermediate good or service, 534
Investment, 535
Net domestic product at factor cost, 541
Net exports of goods and services, 536
Net taxes, 536
Nominal GDP, 544
Potential GDP, 547
Real GDP, 544
Real GDP per person, 547
Recession, 548
Saving, 536
Standard of living, 547
Statistical discrepancy, 542
Underground production, 551

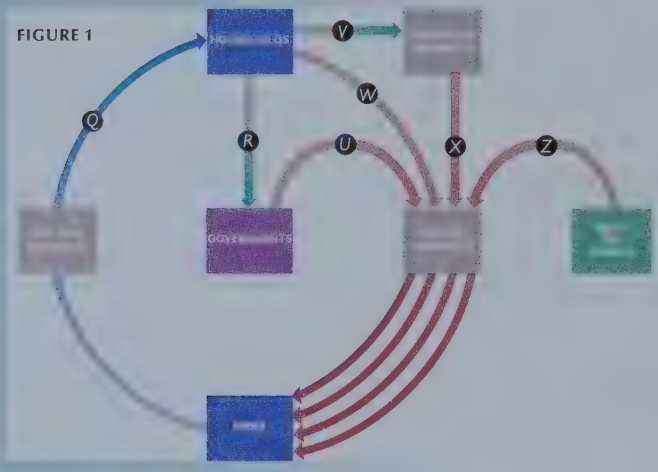
MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 21 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Figure 1 shows the flows of income and expenditure in an economy. In 2009, *U* was $2 trillion, *V* was $1.5 trillion, *W* was $7 trillion, *X* was $1.5 trillion, and *Z* was zero. Calculate total income, net taxes, and GDP.

FIGURE 1



Use the following information to work Problems **2** and **3**.

The national accounts of Parchment Paradise are kept on (you guessed it) parchment. A fire destroys the statistics office. The accounts are now incomplete but they contain the following data:

- GDP (income approach) $2,900
- Consumption expenditure $2,000
- Indirect taxes less subsidies $100
- Interest, rent, and profit $500
- Investment $800
- Government expenditure $400
- Wages $2,000
- Net factor income from abroad $50
- Net exports –$200

2. Calculate GDP (expenditure approach) and depreciation.

3. Calculate net domestic product at factor cost, the statistical discrepancy, and GNP.

Use the following information to work Problems **4** to **6**.

An economy produces only fun and food. Table 1 shows the prices and the quantities of fun and food produced in 2009 and 2010. The base year is 2009.

TABLE 1

(a) In 2009:

Item	Quantity	Price
Fun	40	$2
Food	60	$3

(b) In 2010:

Item	Quantity	Price
Fun	35	$3
Food	65	$2

4. Calculate nominal GDP in 2009 and 2010.

5. Calculate the percentage increase in production in 2010.

6. If potential GDP was $270 in 2009 and it grew by 1 percent in 2010, in which phase of the business cycle is the economy? Explain.

Use the following information to work Problems **7** to **9**.

Higher prices pushed up consumer spending for June
The Commerce Department reported that retail sales increased 0.8 percent in June. But net exports were down 0.3 percent in the second quarter of 2009 and inventories held by business fell by 1.1 percent in June, while sales at all levels of production were up 0.9 percent.

Source: Commerce Department, August 13, 2009

7. Which component of GDP changed because retail sales increased? Which component of GDP changed because inventories held by businesses fell?

8. Explain the effect of the fall in net exports on GDP.

9. Does the statement that sales at all levels of production were up 0.9 percent mean that GDP increased by 0.9 percent? Explain your answer.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. In 2008, the population of China was 1.3 billion and real GDP (in purchasing power parity prices) was $4.4 trillion. In the same year, the population of India was 1.2 billion and real GDP (in purchasing power parity prices) was $1.2 trillion. In 2005, the most recent year for which we have the data, China's HDI was 0.777 and India's was 0.619.

   Based on this information, which country has the higher standard of living? What features of the information provided lead you to your conclusion?

2. Classify each of the items in List 1 as a final good or service or an intermediate good or service and identify which is a component of consumption expenditure, investment, or government expenditure on goods and services.

LIST 1

- Banking services bought by Target
- Security system bought by the White House
- Coffee beans bought by Starbucks
- New coffee machines bought by Starbucks
- Starbucks grande mocha frappuccino bought by a student
- New battle ship bought by the U.S. navy

Use the following information to work Problems 3 and 4.

Mitsubishi Heavy Industries makes the wings of the new Boeing 787 Dreamliner in Japan. Toyota assembles cars for the U.S. market in Kentucky.

3. Explain where these activities appear in the National Income and Product Accounts of the United States.
4. Explain where these activities appear in the National Income and Product Accounts of Japan.

Use the data on the economy of Iberia in Table 1 to work Problems 5 and 6.

TABLE 1

Item	Amount
Net taxes	$18 billion
Government expenditure	$20 billion
Saving	$15 billion
Consumption expenditure	$67 billion
Investment	$21 billion
Exports	$30 billion.

5. Calculate Iberia's GDP.
6. Calculate Iberia's imports of goods and services.

Use Table 2, which shows an economy's total production and the prices of the final goods it produced in 2009 and 2010, to work Problems 7 to 9.

TABLE 2

(a) In 2009:

Item	Quantity	Price
Fish	100	$2
Berries	50	$6

(b) In 2010:

Item	Quantity	Price
Fish	75	$5
Berries	65	$10

7. Calculate nominal GDP in 2009 and 2010.
8. The base year is 2009. Calculate real GDP in 2009 and 2010.
9. Calculate the percentage increase in production in 2010.

Use the following information to work Problems 10 and 11.

Cash-paying vultures pick bones of U.S. housing market as mortgages dry up
New-home sales fell to an annual pace of 250,000 in February, an all-time low in records dating to 1963, the Commerce Department reported March 23. Existing-home sales dropped to a 4.88 million annualized pace in February, down 2.8 percent from a year earlier, the National Association of Realtors said, while the median price of existing homes fell to $156,100, the lowest since February 2002.

Source: Bloomberg, March 29, 2011

10. Where do new-home sales appear in the circular flow of expenditure and income? Explain how a fall in new home sales affects real GDP.
11. Where do sales of previously owned homes appear in the circular flow of expenditure and income? Explain how a fall in sales of previously owned homes affects real GDP.
12. **A bit more bounce in the global economy**
    The global economy is in the early stages of an upturn that will deliver more GDP growth than is expected but less than is needed. The latest economic news points to sustained above-trend global growth.

    Source: J.P. Morgan Global Data Watch, September, 2009

    Does this news mean that the 2008–2009 recession had ended by September 2009? Does recession end only when real GDP returns to potential GDP?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 21 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Gross domestic product is the market value of all the _____ in a given time period.
   A. goods and services bought by Americans
   B. goods and services produced by American companies in all countries
   C. final goods and services produced by all firms located in the United States
   D. U.S.-produced goods and services bought in the United States

2. A _____ is a final good and _____ is an intermediate good.
   A. new car bought by a student; a used SUV bought by a dealer
   B. new textbook; used textbook
   C. new iPhone bought by a student; new computer bought by Wal-Mart
   D. gasoline bought by you; jet fuel bought by Southwest Airlines

3. Saving equals _____.
   A. income minus consumption expenditure minus net taxes
   B. income minus net taxes
   C. total income minus total expenditure
   D. net taxes minus government expenditure

4. The expenditure approach to measuring U.S. GDP equals _____.
   A. the sum of U.S. consumption expenditure and U.S. investment
   B. U.S. government expenditure minus taxes paid by Americans
   C. all expenditure on final goods and services produced in the United States in a given time period
   D. all expenditure by Americans on goods and services produced in the United States in a given time period

5. When using the income approach to measure GDP at market prices, in addition to summing all factor incomes it is necessary to _____.
   A. subtract depreciation because profit is not reported as net profit
   B. add depreciation because capital depreciates when goods are manufactured
   C. add indirect taxes less subsidies to convert aggregate income from factor cost to market prices
   D. add a statistical discrepancy which is the sum of depreciation and indirect taxes less subsidies

6. The following statements about the business cycle are correct *except* _____.
   A. it is a regular predictable cycle in real GDP around potential GDP
   B. from the peak to the trough, the economy is in a recession
   C. from the trough to the peak, the economy is in an expansion
   D. it is a periodic movement in economic activity including employment

7. Real GDP per person is not an accurate measure of the standard of living because it _____.
   A. includes the goods and services that governments buy
   B. omits the goods and services that people produce for themselves
   C. includes goods and services bought by firms
   D. omits the goods and services imported from other countries

APPENDIX: MEASURING REAL GDP

This appendix explains the principles used by the Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA) to calculate real GDP using a measure called **chained-dollar real GDP.** We begin by explaining the problem that arises from using the prices of the base year (the method on pp. 544–545) and how the problem can be overcome.

Chained-dollar real GDP
The measure of real GDP calculated by the Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The Problem With Base-Year Prices

When we calculated real GDP on pp. 544–545, we found that real GDP in 2011 was 60 percent greater than it was in 2005. But instead of using the prices of 2005 as the constant prices, we could have used the prices of 2011. In this case, we would have valued the quantities produced in 2005 at the prices of 2011. By comparing the values of real GDP in 2005 and 2011 at the constant prices of 2011, we get a different number for the percentage increase in production. If you use the numbers in Table 21.3 on p. 545 to value 2005 production at 2011 prices, you will get a real GDP in 2005 of $150 million (2011 dollars). Real GDP in 2011 at 2011 prices is $300 million. So by using the prices of 2011, production doubled—a 100 percent increase—from 2005 to 2011. Did production in fact increase by 60 percent or 100 percent?

The problem arises because to calculate real GDP, we weight the quantity of each item produced by its price. If all prices change by the same percentage, then the *relative* weight on each good or service doesn't change and the percentage change in real GDP from the first year to the second is the same regardless of which year's prices we use. But if prices change by different percentages, then the *relative* weight on each good or service *does* change and the percentage change in real GDP from the first year to the second depends on which prices we use. So which year's prices should we use: those of the first year or those of the second?

The answer given by the BEA method is to use the prices of both years. If we calculate the percentage change in real GDP twice, once using the prices of the first year and again using the prices of the second year, and then take the average of those two percentage changes, we get a unique measure of the change in real GDP and one that gives equal importance to the *relative* prices of both years.

To illustrate the calculation of the BEA measure of real GDP, we'll work through an example. The method has three steps:

- Value production in the prices of adjacent years.
- Find the average of two percentage changes.
- Link (chain) to the base year.

Value Production in the Prices of Adjacent Years

The first step is to value production in *adjacent* years at the prices of both years. We'll make these calculations for 2012, and its preceding year, 2011.

Table A21.1 shows the quantities produced and prices in the two years. Part (a) shows the nominal GDP calculation for 2011—the quantities produced in 2011 valued at the prices of 2011. Nominal GDP in 2011 is $145 million. Part (b) shows the nominal GDP calculation for 2012—the quantities produced in 2012 valued at the prices of 2012. Nominal GDP in 2012 is $172 million. Part (c) shows the value of the quantities produced in 2012 at the prices of 2011. This total is $160 million. Finally, part (d) shows the value of the quantities produced in 2011 at the prices of 2012. This total is $158 million.

TABLE A21.1

Real GDP Calculation Step 1: Value Production in Adjacent Years at Prices of Both Years

Step 1 is to value the production of adjacent years at the prices of both years.

Here, we value the production of 2011 and 2012 at the prices of both 2011 and 2012.

The value of 2011 production at 2011 prices, in part (a), is nominal GDP in 2011.

The value of 2012 production at 2012 prices, in part (b), is nominal GDP in 2012.

Part (c) calculates the value of 2012 production at 2011 prices, and part (d) calculates the value of 2011 production at 2012 prices.

We use these numbers in Step 2.

	Item	Quantity (millions of units)	Price (dollars per unit)	Expenditure (millions of dollars)
(a) In 2011				
C	T-shirts	3	5	15
I	Computer chips	3	10	30
G	Security services	5	20	100
Y	Nominal GDP in 2011			145
(b) In 2012				
C	T-shirts	4	4	16
I	Computer chips	2	12	24
G	Security services	6	22	132
Y	Nominal GDP in 2012			172
(c) Quantities of 2012 valued at prices of 2011				
C	T-shirts	4	5	20
I	Computer chips	2	10	20
G	Security services	6	20	120
Y	2012 production at 2011 prices			160
(d) Quantities of 2011 valued at prices of 2012				
C	T-shirts	3	4	12
I	Computer chips	3	12	36
G	Security services	5	22	110
Y	2011 production at 2012 prices			158

Find the Average of Two Percentage Changes

The second step is to find the percentage change in the value of production based on the prices in the two adjacent years. Table A21.2 summarizes these calculations.

Valued at the prices of 2011, production increased from $145 million in 2011 to $160 million in 2012, an increase of 10.3 percent. Valued at the prices of 2012, production increased from $158 million in 2011 to $172 million in 2012, an increase of 8.9 percent. The average of these two percentage changes in the value of production is 9.6. That is, $(10.3 + 8.9) \div 2 = 9.6$.

By applying this percentage change to real GDP, we can find the value of real GDP in 2012. Because real GDP in 2011 is in 2011 dollars, real GDP in 2012 is also in 2011 dollars. GDP in 2011 is $145 million, so a 9.6 percent increase is $14 million. Real GDP in 2012, expressed in 2011 dollars, is $145 million plus $14 million, which equals $159 million.

Although the real GDP of $159 million is expressed in 2011 dollars, the calculation uses the average of the *relative prices* of the final goods and services that make up GDP in 2011 and 2012.

TABLE A21.2

Real GDP Calculation Step 2: Find Average of Two Percentage Changes

Value of Production in Adjacent Years		Millions of dollars
2011 production at 2011 prices		145
2012 production at 2011 prices		160
Percentage change in production at 2011 prices	10.3	
2011 production at 2012 prices		158
2012 production at 2012 prices		172
Percentage change in production at 2012 prices	8.9	
Average of two percentage changes in production	9.6	

Using the numbers calculated in Step 1, we find the percentage change in production from 2011 to 2012 valued at 2011 prices, which is 10.3 percent.

We also find the percentage change in production from 2011 to 2012 valued at 2012 prices, which is 8.9 percent.

We then find the average of these two percentage changes, which is 9.6 percent.

Link (Chain) to the Base Year

The final step repeats the calculation that we've just described to obtain the real GDP growth rate each year. In the base year, which currently is 2005, real GDP equals nominal GDP. By applying the calculated growth rates to each successive year, we obtain *chained-dollar real GDP* in 2005 dollars.

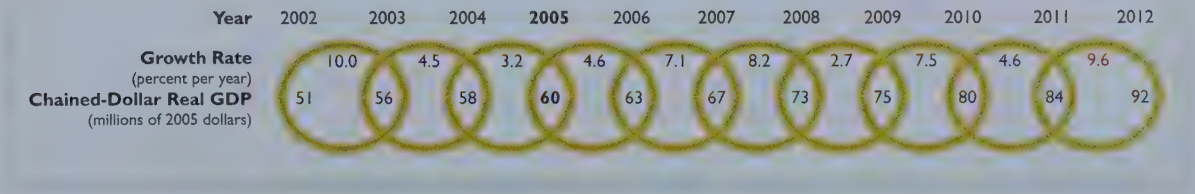
Figure A21.1 shows an example. In the base year, 2005, real GDP equals nominal GDP, which is $60 million. The figure shows the growth rate of real GDP for each year between 2002 and 2012, the final one of which is the 9.6 percent that we calculated in Table A21.2 above.

Starting with real GDP in the base year, we apply the calculated percentage changes to find real GDP in other years. For example, in 2006, the growth rate was 4.6 percent, so real GDP in 2006 was 4.6 percent higher than $60 million, which is $63 million. In 2005, the growth rate was 3.2 percent, so real GDP in 2005 was 3.2 percent higher than real GDP in 2004, which was $58 million. By repeating the calculations through to 2011, real GDP in 2011 was $84 million. In 2012, real GDP grew by 9.6 percent of $84 million, which is $8 million, so real GDP in 2012 was $92 million.

FIGURE A21.1

Real GDP Calculation Step 3: Link (Chain) to the Base Year

MyEconLab Animation



The growth rate of real GDP from one year to the next is calculated for every pair of years and then linked to the base year. Suppose that real GDP was $60 million in the base year, 2005. By applying the growth rate between each pair of years, we find the chained-dollar real GDP for each year, expressed in terms of the value of the dollar in the base year. Here, the percentages for 2002 through to 2012 are assumed. By 2012, the chained-dollar real GDP has increased to $92 million in 2005 dollars.

APPENDIX CHECKPOINT

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 21 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Study Plan Problems

An island economy produces only bananas and coconuts. Table 1 gives the quantities produced and prices in 2010 and in 2011.

TABLE 1

(a) In 2010:

Item	Quantity	Price
Bananas	100	$10
Coconuts	50	$12

(b) In 2011:

Item	Quantity	Price
Bananas	110	$15
Coconuts	60	$10

1. Calculate nominal GDP in 2010 and nominal GDP in 2011.
2. Calculate the value of 2011 production in 2010 prices and the percentage increase in production when valued at 2010 prices.
3. Calculate the value of 2010 production in 2011 prices and the percentage increase in production when valued at 2011 prices.
4. The base year is 2010. Use the chained-dollar method to calculate real GDP in 2010 and 2011. In terms of what dollars is each of these two real GDPs measured?
5. The base year is 2010. Using the chained-dollar method, compare the growth rates of nominal GDP and real GDP in 2011.
6. The base year is 2011. Use the chained-dollar method to calculate real GDP in 2010 and 2011. In terms of what dollars is each of these two real GDPs measured?
7. Compare the growth rates of nominal GDP and real GDP in 2011 dollars in 2011.

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in **MyEconLab**.

Instructor Assignable Problems

An economy produces only food and fun. Table 2 shows the quantities produced and prices in 2010 and 2011.

TABLE 2

(a) In 2010:

Item	Quantity	Price
Food	100	$2
Fun	50	$6

(b) In 2011:

Item	Quantity	Price
Food	75	$5
Fun	65	$10

1. Calculate nominal GDP in 2010 and nominal GDP in 2011.
2. Calculate the value of 2011 production in 2010 prices and the percentage increase in production when valued at 2010 prices.
3. Calculate the value of 2010 production in 2011 prices and the percentage increase in production when valued at 2011 prices.
4. Using the chained-dollar method, calculate real GDP in 2010 and 2011 if the base year is 2011. In terms of what dollars is each of these two real GDPs measured?
5. The base year is 2011. Using the chained-dollar method, compare the growth rates of nominal GDP and real GDP in 2011.
6. The base year is 2010. Use the chained-dollar method to calculate real GDP in 2010 and 2011. In terms of what dollars is each of these two real GDPs measured?
7. Compare the growth rates of nominal GDP and real GDP in 2010 dollars in 2011.

How long does it take to find a job?

22

Jobs and Unemployment

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define the unemployment rate and other labor market indicators.
2. Describe the trends and fluctuations in the indicators of labor market performance in the United States.
3. Describe the types of unemployment, define full employment, and explain the link between unemployment and real GDP.

22.1 LABOR MARKET INDICATORS

Every month, 1,600 field interviewers and supervisors working on a joint project between the Bureau of Labor Statistics (or BLS) and the Bureau of the Census survey 60,000 households and ask a series of questions about the age and labor market status of their members. This survey is called the *Current Population Survey*. Let's look at the types of data collected by this survey.

Current Population Survey

Figure 22.1 shows the categories into which the BLS divides the population. It also shows the relationships among the categories. The first category divides the population into two groups: the working-age civilian population and others. The **working-age population** is the total number of people aged 16 years and over who are not in jail, hospital, or some other form of institutional care or in the U.S. Armed Forces. In August 2011, the estimated population of the United States was 312.1 million, the working-age population was 239.9 million, and 72.2 million people were under 16 years of age, in the military, or living in institutions.

Working-age population
The total number of people aged 16 years and over who are not in jail, hospital, or some other form of institutional care or in the U.S. Armed Forces.

The second category divides the working-age population into two groups: those in the labor force and those not in the labor force. The **labor force** is the number of people employed plus the number unemployed. In August 2011, the U.S. labor force was 153.6 million and 86.3 million people were not in the labor force. Most of those not in the labor force were in school full time or had retired from work.

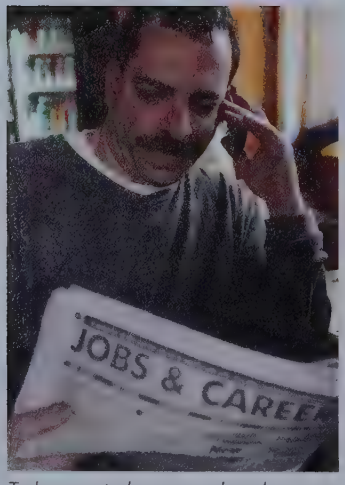
Labor force
The number of people employed plus the number unemployed.

The third category divides the labor force into two groups: the employed and the unemployed. In August 2011 in the United States, 139.6 million people were employed and 14.0 million people were unemployed.

Population Survey Criteria

The survey counts as *employed* all persons who, during the week before the survey, either

1. Worked at least 1 hour as paid employees or worked 15 hours or more as unpaid workers in their family business or
2. Were not working but had jobs or businesses from which they were temporarily absent.



To be counted as unemployed, a person must not only want a job but also have tried to find one.

The survey counts as *unemployed* all persons who, during the week before the survey,

1. Had no employment,
2. Were available for work,

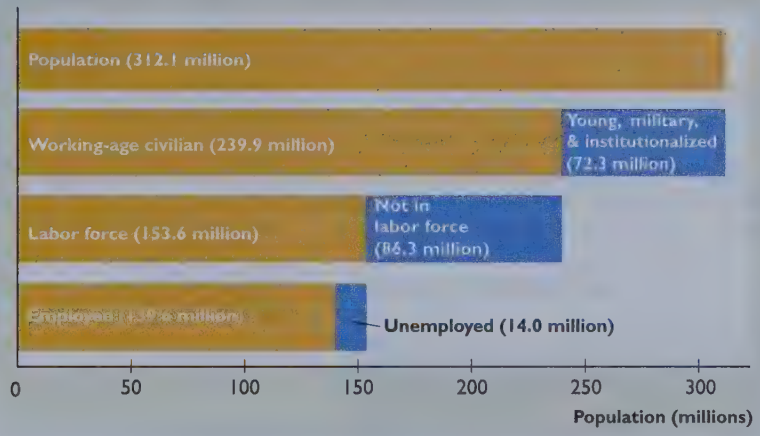
and either

1. Had made specific efforts to find employment during the previous four weeks or
2. Were waiting to be recalled to a job from which they had been laid off.

People in the working-age population who by the above criteria are neither employed nor unemployed are classified as not in the labor force.

FIGURE 22.1
Population Labor Force Categories

MyEconLab Real-time data



The U.S. population is divided into the working-age population and the young, military, and institutionalized. The working-age population is divided into the labor force and those not in the labor force. The labor force is divided into those employed and those unemployed. The figure shows the data for August 2011.

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

Two Main Labor Market Indicators

Using the numbers from the Current Population Survey, the BLS calculates several indicators of the state of the labor market. The two main labor market indicators are

- The unemployment rate
- The labor force participation rate

The Unemployment Rate

The amount of unemployment is an indicator of the extent to which people who want jobs can't find them. It tells us the amount of slack in the labor market. The **unemployment rate** is the percentage of the people in the labor force who are unemployed. That is,

Unemployment rate
The percentage of the people in the labor force who are unemployed.

$$\text{Unemployment rate} = \frac{\text{Number of people unemployed}}{\text{Labor force}} \times 100.$$

In August 2011, the number of people unemployed was 14.0 million and the labor force was 153.6 million. We can use these numbers to calculate the unemployment rate in August 2011, which is

$$\text{Unemployment rate} = \frac{14.0 \text{ million}}{153.6 \text{ million}} \times 100$$

$$= 9.1 \text{ percent.}$$

The Labor Force Participation Rate

Labor force participation rate
The percentage of the working-age population who are members of the labor force.

The number of people in the labor force is an indicator of the willingness of people of working age to take jobs. The **labor force participation rate** is the percentage of the working-age population who are members of the labor force. That is,

$$\text{Labor force participation rate} = \frac{\text{Labor force}}{\text{Working-age population}} \times 100.$$

In August 2011, the labor force was 153.6 million and the working-age population was 239.9 million. We can use these numbers to calculate the labor force participation rate in August 2011, which is

$$\text{Labor force participation rate} = \frac{153.6\,\text{million}}{239.9\,\text{million}} \times 100.$$

$$= 64.0\,\text{percent}.$$

Alternative Measures of Unemployment

The unemployment rate based on the official definition of unemployment omits some types of underutilization of labor. The omissions are

- Marginally attached workers
- Part-time workers

Marginally Attached Workers

Marginally attached worker
A person who does not have a job, is available and willing to work, has not made specific efforts to find a job within the previous four weeks, but has looked for work sometime in the recent past.

Discouraged worker
A marginally attached worker who has not made specific efforts to find a job within the past four weeks because previous unsuccessful attempts to find a job were discouraging.

Some people who think of themselves as being in the labor force and unemployed are not counted in the official labor force numbers. They are marginally attached workers. A **marginally attached worker** is a person who does not have a job, is available and willing to work, has not made specific efforts to find a job within the previous four weeks, but has looked for work sometime in the recent past. A **discouraged worker** is a marginally attached worker who has not made specific efforts to find a job within the previous four weeks because previous unsuccessful attempts were discouraging.

Other marginally attached workers differ from discouraged workers only in their reasons for not having looked for a job during the previous four weeks. For example, Martin doesn't have a job and is available for work, but he has not looked for work in the past four weeks because he was busy cleaning his home after a flood. He is a marginally attached worker but not a discouraged worker. Lena, Martin's wife, doesn't have a job and is available for work, but she hasn't looked for work in the past four weeks because she's been looking for six months and hasn't had a single job offer. She is a discouraged worker.

Neither the unemployment rate nor the labor force participation rate includes marginally attached workers. In August 2011, 988,000 people were discouraged workers. If we add them to both the number unemployed and the labor force, the unemployment rate becomes 9.7 percent—only slightly higher than the standard definition of the unemployment rate. Also in August 2011, 1,432,000 people were other marginally attached workers. If we add them and the discouraged workers to both the number unemployed and the labor force, the unemployment rate becomes 10.5 percent—1.4 percentage points higher than the standard definition.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

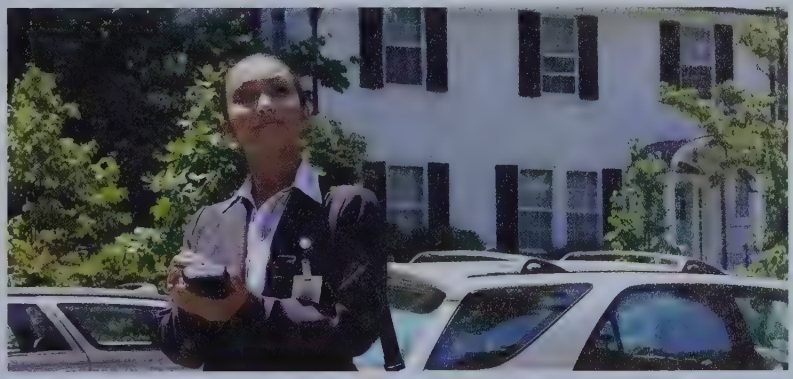
The Current Population Survey

The Bureau of Labor Statistics and the Bureau of the Census go to great lengths to collect accurate labor force data. They constantly train and retrain around 1,600 field interviewers and supervisors. Each month, each field interviewer contacts 37 households and asks basic demographic questions about everyone living at the address and detailed labor force questions about those aged 16 or over.

Once a household has been selected for the survey, it is questioned for four consecutive months and then again for the same four months a year later. Each month, the addresses that have been in the panel eight times are removed and 6,250 new addresses are added. The rotation and overlap of households provide very reliable information about month-to-month and year-to-year changes in the labor market.

The first time that a household is in the panel, an interviewer, armed with a hand-held computer, visits it. If the household has a telephone, most of the subsequent interviews are conducted by phone, many of them from one of the three telephone interviewing centers in Hagerstown, Maryland; Jeffersonville, Indiana; and Tucson, Arizona.

For more information about the Current Population Survey, visit www.bls.gov/cps/cps_faq.htm.



Part-Time Workers

The Current Population Survey measures the number of full-time workers and part-time workers. **Full-time workers** are those who usually work 35 hours or more a week. **Part-time workers** are those who usually work less than 35 hours a week. Part-time workers are divided into two groups: part time for economic reasons and part time for noneconomic reasons.

People who work **part time for economic reasons** (also called *involuntary part-time workers)* are people who work 1 to 34 hours but are looking for full-time work. These people are unable to find full-time work because of unfavorable business conditions or seasonal decreases in the availability of full-time work.

People who work part time for noneconomic reasons do not want full-time work and are not available for such work. This group includes people with health problems, family or personal responsibilities, or education commitments that limit their availability for work.

The Bureau of Labor Statistics uses the data on full-time and part-time status to measure the slack in the labor market that results from people being underemployed—employed but not able to find as much employment as they would like.

In August 2011, when employment was 139.6 million, full-time employment was 112.6 million and part-time employment was 27.0 million. An estimated 8.8 million people worked part time for economic reasons. When this number, along with marginally attached workers, is added to the number unemployed, the unemployment rate becomes 16.2 percent.

Full-time workers
People who usually work 35 hours or more a week.

Part-time workers
People who usually work less than 35 hours a week.

Part time for economic reasons
People who work 1 to 34 hours per week but are looking for full-time work and cannot find it because of unfavorable business conditions.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 22.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 22.1

Define the unemployment rate and other labor market indicators.

Practice Problems

The BLS reported that in July 2009, the labor force was 154.5 million, employment was 140.0 million, and the working-age population was 235.9 million.

1. Calculate the unemployment rate and the labor force participation rate.
2. The BLS also reported that 24 percent of all employment in July 2009 was part time and that 9.1 million people worked part time for economic reasons. How many people worked part time for noneconomic reasons?

In the News

Summer 2011 youth labor market

From April to July 2011, the number of employed youth 16 to 24 years old rose by 1.7 million to 18.6 million. Unemployment of youth increased from 3.4 million to 4.1 million. In July, the youth labor force grew by 2.4 million to a total of 22.7 million and the youth population was 38 million.

Source: BLS Press Release, August 24, 2011

How did the youth unemployment rate change from April to July? Calculate the youth labor force participation rate in July.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The unemployment rate is 9.4 percent. The labor force is the sum of the number employed plus the number unemployed. So the number unemployed equals the labor force minus the number employed, which equals 154.5 million minus 140.0 million, or 14.5 million. The unemployment rate is the number unemployed as a percentage of the labor force. The unemployment rate = (14.5 million ÷ 154.5 million) × 100, or 9.4 percent. The labor force participation rate is 65.5 percent. The labor force participation rate is the percentage of the working-age population who are in the labor force. Labor force participation rate = (154.5 ÷ 235.9) × 100, or 65.5 percent.
2. 24.5 million people worked part time for noneconomic reasons. Employment was 140 million. Part-time employment was 24 percent of 140 million, which equals 33.6 million. Given that 9.1 million worked part time for economic reasons, 33.6 million minus 9.1 million, or 24.5 million worked part time for noneconomic reasons.

Solution to In the News

The unemployment rate is the number unemployed as a percentage of the labor force. The April labor force equals the July labor force (22.7 million) minus the growth of 2.4 million from April to July. That is, the April labor force was 20.3 million. In April, 3.4 million youths were unemployed, so the April unemployment rate was (3.4 ÷ 20.3) × 100, or 16.7 percent. In July, 4.1 million youths were unemployed and the labor force was 22.7 million, so the unemployment rate was 18.1 percent. From April to July, the unemployment rate rose from 16.7 percent to 18.1 percent. The labor force participation rate equals the labor force (22.7 million) as a percentage of the population (38 million), which was 59.7 percent.

22.2 LABOR MARKET TRENDS AND FLUCTUATIONS

What do we learn about the U.S. labor market from changes in the unemployment rate, the labor force participation rate, and the alternative measures of unemployment? Let's explore the trends and fluctuations in these indicators.

Unemployment Rate

Figure 22.2 shows the U.S. unemployment rate over the 82 years from 1929 to 2011. Over these years, the average U.S. unemployment rate was 7.2 percent, but from 1948 to 2011, the long-term average was 5.8 percent. The unemployment rate was below this long-term average during the 1940s through the 1960s and during the late 1990s and early 2000s. It was above the long-term average during the 1970s to the mid 1990s and 2009–2011.

During the 1960s, the unemployment rate gradually fell to 3.5 percent. These years saw a rapid rate of job creation, partly from the demands placed on the economy by the growth of defense production during the Vietnam War and partly from an expansion of consumer spending encouraged by an expansion of social programs. Another burst of rapid job creation driven by the "new economy"—the high-technology sector driven by the expansion of the Internet—lowered the unemployment rate from 1995 through most of the 2000s to below average.

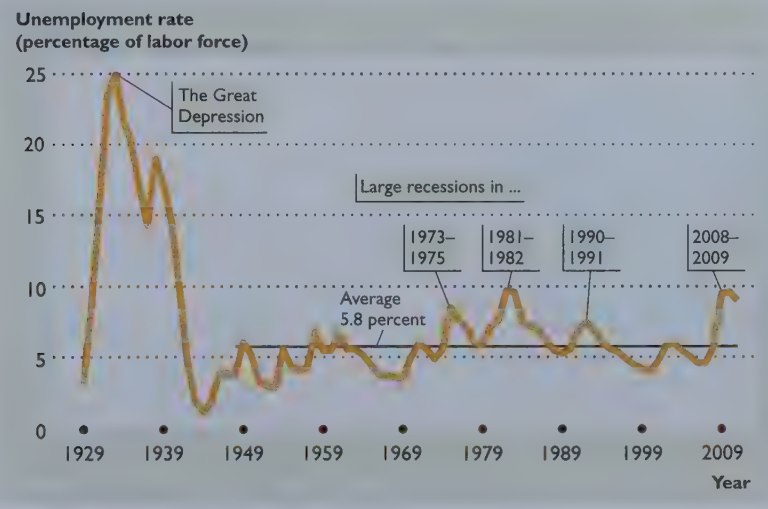
The most striking event visible in Figure 22.2 is the **Great Depression,** a period of high unemployment, low incomes, and extreme economic hardship that lasted from 1929 to 1939. By 1933, the worst of the Great Depression years, real GDP had fallen by a huge 30 percent and as the figure shows, one in four of the people who wanted jobs couldn't find them. The horrors of the Great Depression led to the New Deal and shaped political attitudes that persist today.

Great Depression
A period of high unemployment, low incomes, and extreme economic hardship that lasted from 1929 to 1939.

FIGURE 22.2

The U.S. Unemployment Rate: 1929–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data



The average unemployment rate from 1948 to 2011 was 5.8 percent. The unemployment rate increases in recessions and decreases in expansions. Unemployment was at its lowest during World War II and the expansions of the 1950s, 1960s, and the 1990s and at its highest during the Great Depression and the recessions of 1981–1982 and 2008–2009.

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

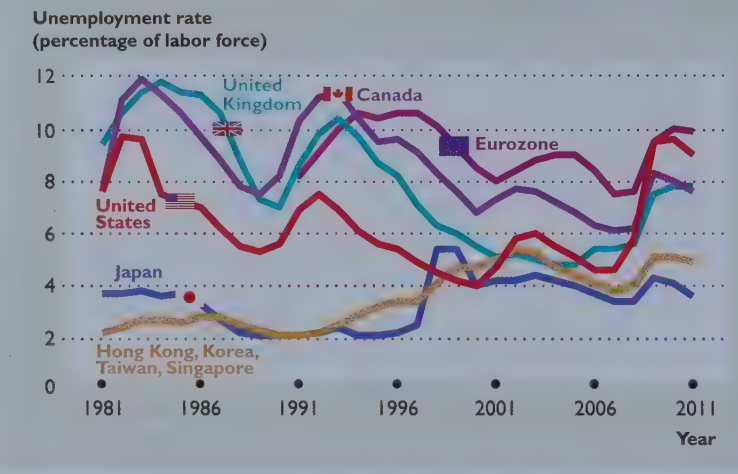
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Unemployment Around the World

Before the 2008–2009 recession, the U.S. unemployment rate fell in the middle of the range experienced by other countries. The highest unemployment rates have been in Europe, Canada, and the United Kingdom and the lowest unemployment rates have been in Japan and the newly industrializing countries of Asia.

Differences in unemployment rates were much greater during the 1980s and 1990s than in the 2000s.

All of the countries with higher average unemployment rates than the United States also have higher unemployment benefits and more regulated labor markets.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook*, April 2011.

During the recessions of 1973–1975, 1981–1982, 1990–1991, and 2008–2009, the unemployment rate increased. During the post-war years, the unemployment rate peaked in November–December 1982, when 10.8 percent of the labor force were unemployed. By mid-2011, although the economy had come out of recession and entered into a slow expansion, the unemployment rate stood at 9.1 percent. While the popular representation of the 2008–2009 recession compares it with the Great Depression, you can see in Figure 22.2 that 2010 is strikingly different from 1933, the year in which the unemployment rate peaked during the Great Depression.

The Participation Rate

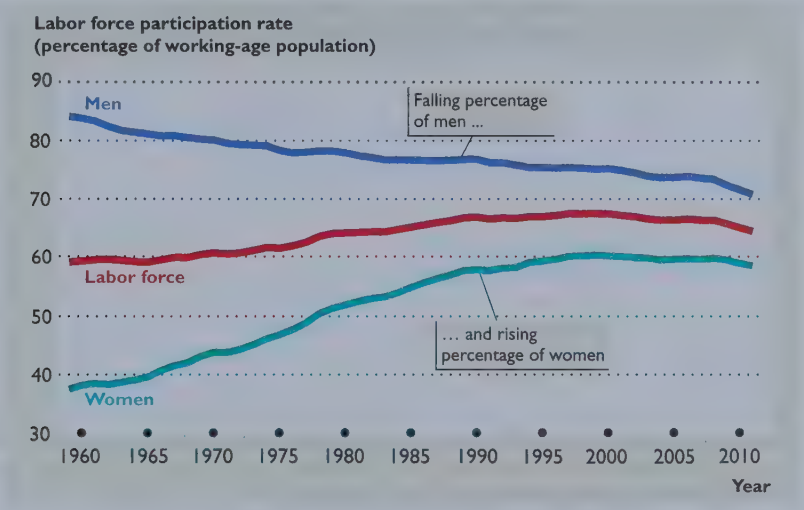
Figure 22.3 shows the labor force participation rate, which increased from 59 percent in 1960 to 67 percent at its peak in the late 1990s. Why has the labor force participation rate increased? The main reason is an increase in the number of women who have entered the labor force.

Figure 22.3 shows that in the 40 years from 1960 to 2000, the participation rate of women increased from 37 percent to 60 percent. This increase is spread across women of all age groups and occurred for four main reasons. First, more women pursued a college education and so increased their earning power. Second, technological change in the workplace created a large number of white-collar jobs with flexible work hours that many women found attractive. Third, technological change in the home increased the time available for paid employment. And fourth, families looked increasingly to a second income to balance tight budgets.

FIGURE 22.3

The Changing Face of the Labor Market: 1960–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data



During the past 51 years, the labor force participation rate has increased. The labor force participation rate of men has decreased, and that of women has increased.

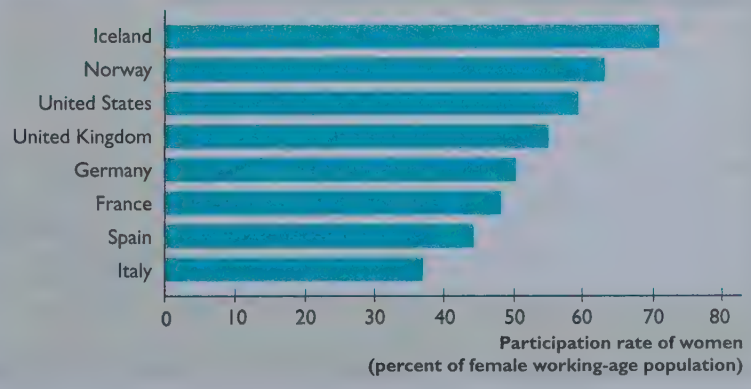
SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Women in the Labor Force

The labor force participation rate of women has increased in most advanced nations. But the participation rate of women in the labor force varies a great deal around the world. The figure compares seven other countries with the United States.

Cultural factors play a role in determining national differences in women's work choices. But economic factors such as the percentage of women with a college degree will ultimately dominate cultural influences and bring a convergence.



SOURCE OF DATA: OECD.

Figure 22.3 also shows another remarkable trend in the U.S. labor force: The participation rate of men *decreased* from 83 percent in 1960 to 70 percent in 2010. As in the case of women, this decrease is spread across all age groups. Some of the decrease occurred because older men chose to retire earlier. During the 1990s, some of this earlier retirement was made possible by an increase in wealth. But some arose from job loss at an age at which finding a new job is difficult. For other men, mainly those in their teens and twenties, decreased labor force participation occurred because more chose to remain in full-time education.

Alternative Measures of Unemployment

You've seen that the official measure of unemployment does not include marginally attached workers and people who work part time for economic reasons. The Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) now provides three broader measures of the unemployment rate, known as U-4, U-5, and U-6, that include these wider groups of the jobless. The official unemployment rate (based on the standard definition of unemployment) is called U-3 and as these names imply, there is also a U-1 and U-2 measure. The U-1 and U-2 measures of the unemployment rate are narrower than the official measure. U-1 is the percentage of the labor force that has been unemployed for 15 weeks or more and is a measure of long-term involuntary unemployment. U-2 is the percentage of the labor force who are laid off and is another measure of involuntary unemployment.

Figure 22.4 shows the history of these six measures of unemployment since 1994 (the year in which the BLS started to measure them). The relative magnitudes of the six measures are explained by what they include—the broader the measure, the higher the average. The six measures follow similar but not identical tracks,

FIGURE 22.4

Alternative Measures of Unemployment: 1994–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data

The alternative measures of unemployment are:

U-1 People unemployed 15 weeks or longer

U-2 People laid off and others who completed a temporary job

U-3 Total unemployed (official measure)

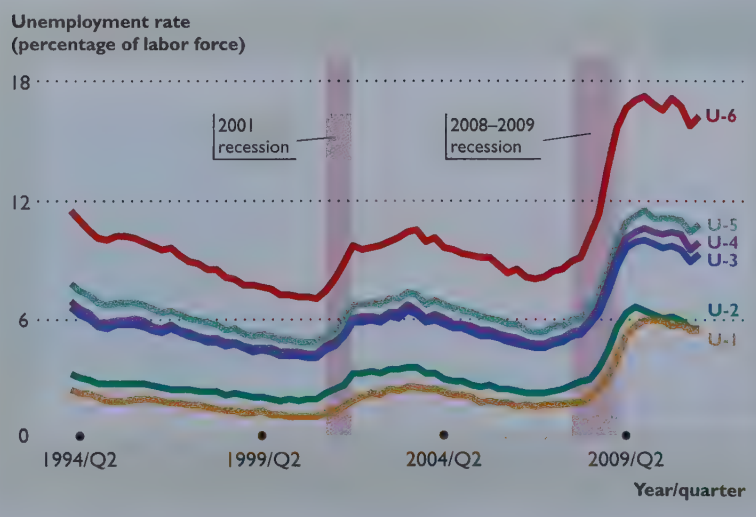
U-4 Total unemployed plus discouraged workers

U-5 U-4 plus other marginally attached workers

U-6 U-5 plus employed part time for economic reasons

U-1, U-2, and U-3 are percentages of the labor force.

U-4, U-5, and U-6 are percentages of the labor force plus the unemployed in the added category.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

rising during the recessions and falling in the expansions between the recessions. But during the 2001 recession, U-1 barely changed while during the 2008–2009 recession, it more than doubled in less than a year.

A Closer Look at Part-Time Employment

The broadest measure of the unemployment rate, U-6, includes people who work part time for economic reasons. Let's take a closer look at part-time employment.

A part-time job is attractive to many workers because it enables them to balance family and other commitments with work. Part-time jobs are attractive to employers because they don't have to pay benefits to part-time workers and are less constrained by government regulations. People who choose part-time jobs are part time for noneconomic reasons. People who take a part-time job because they can't find a full-time job are part time for economic reasons. The BLS measures these two groups and Figure 22.5 shows the data since 1980 (but with a change in the definitions in 1994).

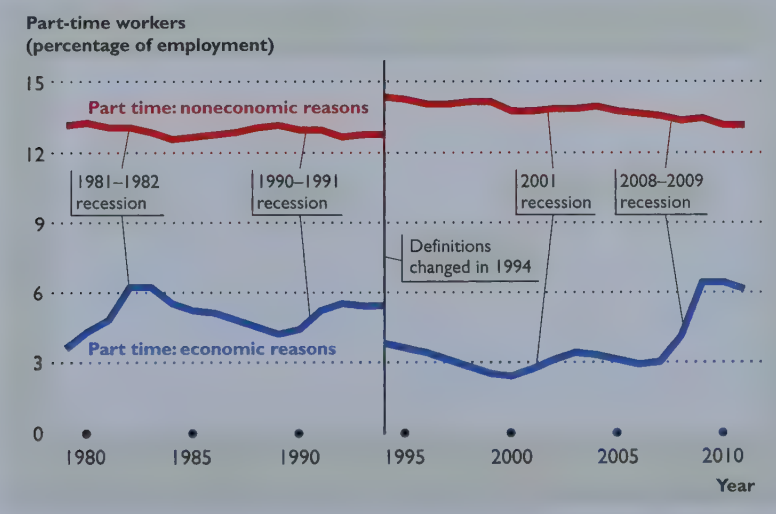
The number of people who work part time for noneconomic reasons is double the number who work part time for economic reasons. Also, the percentage of the labor force who are part time for noneconomic reasons is remarkably steady at an average of 13 percent (old definition) and 14 percent (new definition) of the labor force, and that percentage barely fluctuates with the business cycle.

The percentage of the labor force who work part-time for economic reasons experiences large swings. In the 1981–1982 recession, it climbed to 6.2 percent and in the 2008–2009 recession, it climbed to 6.4 percent.

FIGURE 22.5

Part-Time Workers: 1980–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data



The annual average percentage of all employed workers who are part time for noneconomic reasons is a steady 13 percent (old definition) and 14 percent (new definition) and this percentage barely fluctuates with the business cycle.

But the percentage of all employed workers who are part time for economic reasons fluctuates with the business cycle. It increases in a recession and decreases in an expansion.

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 22.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 22.2

Describe the trends and fluctuations in the indicators of labor market performance in the United States.

Practice Problems

1. Figure 1 shows the unemployment rate in the United States from 1960 to 2010. In which decade—the 1960s, 1970s, 1980s, 1990s, or 2000s—was the average unemployment rate the lowest and what brought low unemployment in that decade? In which decade was the average unemployment rate the highest and what brought high unemployment in that decade?
2. Describe the trends in the participation rates of men and women and of all workers.

FIGURE 1

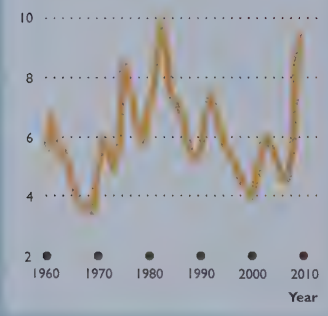


TABLE 1

Recession years	Participation rate (percent in July)	Unemployment rate (percent in July)
1973	71.9	11.1
1974	73.2	12.4
1975	73.0	16.3
1981	75.3	16.2
1982	74.7	18.6
1990	75.1	10.9
1991	73.6	13.7
2008	65.1	14.0
2009	63.0	18.5

In the News

For young people, a jobless summer

In July 2009, the youth unemployment rate hit 18.5 percent—the highest level since the BLS started recording youth labor statistics. The proportion of young people working was 51.4 percent, another historic low for the month of July.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, August 27, 2009

In addition, Table 1 sets out data for the youth labor force participation rate and unemployment rate during four major recent U.S. recessions.

1. Compare the changes in the labor force participation rate during the recessions in Table 1. During which recession did the labor force participation rate drop the most?
2. Compare the changes in the unemployment rate during the recessions in Table 1. During which recession did the unemployment rate rise the most?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Figure 1 shows that the unemployment rate was lowest during the 1960s when defense spending on the Vietnam War and expansion of social programs brought rapid expansions and lowered the unemployment rate.

   Figure 1 shows that the unemployment rate was highest during the 1980s. During the 1981–1982 recession it increased to almost 10 percent.
2. The participation rate of women increased because (1) better-educated women earn more, (2) more white-collar jobs with flexible work hours were created, (3) people have more time for paid employment, and (4) families increasingly needed two incomes to balance their budgets. The participation rate of men decreased because more men remained in school and some men took early retirement. The overall participation rate increased.

Solutions to In the News

1. As each recession progressed, the participation rate dropped, except during the 1973–1975 recession. The biggest drop occurred during the 2008–2009 recession.
2. As each recession progressed, the unemployment rate rose. The biggest rise occurred during the 1973–1975 recession when it rose from 11.1 percent to 16.3 percent—a 5.2 percentage point rise.

22.3 UNEMPLOYMENT AND FULL EMPLOYMENT

There is always someone without a job who is searching for one, so there is always some unemployment. The key reason is that the labor market is constantly churning. New jobs are created and old jobs die; and some people move into the labor force and some move out of it. This churning creates unemployment.

We distinguish among three types of unemployment:

- Frictional unemployment
- Structural unemployment
- Cyclical unemployment

Frictional Unemployment

Frictional unemployment is the unemployment that arises from people entering and leaving the labor force, from quitting jobs to find better ones, and from the ongoing creation and destruction of jobs—from normal labor turnover. Frictional unemployment is a permanent and healthy phenomenon in a dynamic, growing economy.

Frictional unemployment
The unemployment that arises from people entering and leaving the labor force, from quitting jobs to find better ones, and from the ongoing creation and destruction of jobs—from normal labor turnover.

There is an unending flow of people into and out of the labor force as people move through the stages of life—from being in school to finding a job, to working, perhaps to becoming unhappy with a job and looking for a new one, and finally, to retiring from full-time work.

There is also an unending process of job creation and job destruction as new firms are born, firms expand or contract, and some firms fail and go out of business.

The flows into and out of the labor force and the processes of job creation and job destruction create the need for people to search for jobs and for businesses to search for workers. Businesses don't usually hire the first person who applies for a job, and unemployed people don't usually take the first job that comes their way. Instead, both firms and workers spend time searching for what they believe will be the best available match. By this process of search, people can match their own skills and interests with the available jobs and find a satisfying job and a good income.

A new graduate interviews for a job.

Structural Unemployment

Structural unemployment is the unemployment that arises when changes in technology or international competition change the skills needed to perform jobs or change the locations of jobs. Structural unemployment usually lasts longer than frictional unemployment because workers must retrain and possibly relocate to find a job. For example, when a telephone exchange in Gary, Indiana, is automated, some jobs in that city are destroyed. Meanwhile, new jobs for life-insurance salespeople and retail clerks are created in Chicago, Indianapolis, and other cities. The former telephone operators remain unemployed for several months until they move, retrain, and get one of these jobs. Structural unemployment is painful, especially for older workers for whom the best available option might be to retire early but with a lower income than they had expected.

Structural unemployment
The unemployment that arises when changes in technology or international competition change the skills needed to perform jobs or change the locations of jobs.

Sometimes, the amount of structural unemployment is small. At other times, it is large, and at such times, structural unemployment can become a serious long-term problem. It was especially large during the late 1970s and early 1980s.

A job lost to computer technology.

Cyclical Unemployment

Cyclical unemployment
The fluctuating unemployment over the business cycle that increases during a recession and decreases during an expansion.

The higher than normal unemployment at a business cycle trough and the lower than normal unemployment at a business cycle peak is called **cyclical unemployment.** A worker who is laid off because the economy is in a recession and who gets rehired some months later when the expansion begins has experienced cyclical unemployment.

"Natural" Unemployment

Natural unemployment rate
The unemployment rate when the economy is at full employment.

Full employment
When there is no cyclical unemployment or, equivalently, when *all* the unemployment is frictional or structural.

Natural unemployment is the unemployment that arises from frictions and structural change when there is no cyclical unemployment—when all the unemployment is frictional and structural. Natural unemployment as a percentage of the labor force is called the **natural unemployment rate.**

Full employment is defined as a situation in which the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate.

What determines the natural unemployment rate? Is it constant or does it change over time?

The natural unemployment rate is influenced by many factors but the most important ones are

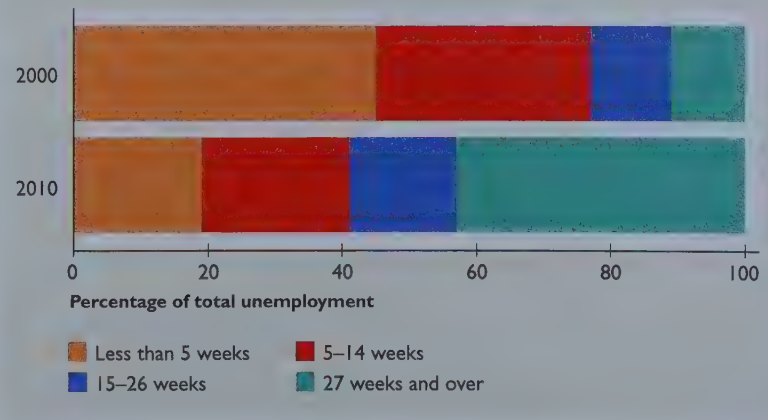
- The age distribution of the population
- The pace of structural change
- The real wage rate
- Unemployment benefits

EYE on the UNEMPLOYED

How Long Does it Take to Find a Job?

The average duration of unemployment spells varies over the business cycle. In 2000, at a cycle peak when the unemployment rate was below the natural rate at 4 percent, the median time to find a job was 6 weeks. In 2010, just after a cycle trough when the unemployment rate was above the natural rate at 9.6 percent, the median time to find a job was 22 weeks.

The figure provides more information: It shows the percentage of the unemployed at four unemployment durations. You can see that long-term unemployment (27 weeks and over) barely exists at a cycle peak but is a huge problem at a cycle trough.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

The Age Distribution of the Population

An economy with a young population has a large number of new job seekers every year and has a high level of frictional unemployment. An economy with an aging population has fewer new job seekers and a low level of frictional unemployment.

The Pace of Structural Change

The pace of structural change is sometimes low. The same jobs using the same machines remain in place for many years. But sometimes there is a technological upheaval. The old ways are swept aside and millions of jobs are lost and the skill to perform them loses value. The amount of structural unemployment fluctuates with the pace of technological change and the change driven by fierce international competition, especially from fast-changing Asian economies. A high level of structural unemployment is present in many parts of the United States today.

The Real Wage Rate

The natural unemployment rate is influenced by the level of the real wage rate. Anything that raises the real wage rate above the market equilibrium level creates a surplus of labor and increases the natural unemployment rate. The real wage rate might exceed the market equilibrium level for two reasons: a minimum wage and an efficiency wage. The federal minimum wage creates unemployment because it is set above the equilibrium wage rate of low-skilled young workers. An efficiency wage is a wage set above the going market wage to enable firms to attract the most productive workers, get them to work hard, and discourage them from quitting. When firms set their wage above the going market wage, some workers would like to work for these firms but can't get jobs.

Unemployment Benefits

Unemployment benefits increase the natural unemployment rate by lowering the opportunity cost of job search. European countries have more generous unemployment benefits and higher natural unemployment rates than the United States. Extending unemployment benefits increases the natural unemployment rate.

There is no controversy about the existence of a natural unemployment rate. Nor is there disagreement that the natural unemployment rate changes. But economists don't know its exact size or the extent to which it fluctuates. The Congressional Budget Office estimates the natural unemployment rate and its estimate for 2010 was 5.2 percent—a bit more than a half of the actual unemployment rate in that year.

Unemployment and Real GDP

Cyclical unemployment is the fluctuating unemployment over the business cycle—unemployment that increases during a recession and decreases during an expansion. At full employment, there is *no* cyclical unemployment. At a business cycle trough, cyclical unemployment is *positive* and at a business cycle peak, cyclical unemployment is *negative*.

Figure 22.6(a) shows the unemployment rate in the United States between 1980 and 2011. It also shows the natural unemployment rate and cyclical unemployment.

The natural unemployment rate in this figure was estimated by the Congressional Budget Office (CBO).

In Figure 22.6(a), you can see that during most of the 1980s, the early 1990s, early 2000s, and during 2008–2009, unemployment was above the natural unemployment rate, so cyclical unemployment was positive (the red sections of the line). You can also see that during the late 1980s, from 1997 to 2001, and during 2005–2008 unemployment was below the natural unemployment rate, so cyclical unemployment was negative (the blue sections of the line).

Potential GDP
The value of real GDP when the economy is at full employment— all the economy's factors of production (labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability) are employed.

Output gap
Real GDP minus potential GDP expressed as a percentage of potential GDP.

As the unemployment rate fluctuates around the natural unemployment rate, real GDP fluctuates around potential GDP. **Potential GDP** is the value of real GDP when the economy is at full employment—all the economy's factors of production (labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability) are employed. Real GDP equals potential GDP when the economy is at full employment. Real GDP minus potential GDP expressed as a percentage of potential GDP is called the **output gap.**

Figure 22.6(b) shows the U.S. *output gap* from 1980 to 2011. You can see that as the unemployment rate fluctuates around the natural unemployment rate, the output gap also fluctuates. When the unemployment rate is above the natural unemployment rate, in part (a), the output gap is negative (real GDP is below potential GDP), in part (b); when the unemployment rate is below the natural unemployment rate, the output gap is positive (real GDP is above potential GDP); and when the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate, the output gap is zero (real GDP equals potential GDP).

You can also see in Figure 22.6 that the unemployment rate is a lagging indicator of the business cycle. Long after a recession is over, the unemployment rate is still rising.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Labor Market Status and Activity

You are going to spend a lot of your life in the labor market. Most of the time, you'll be supplying labor services. But first, you must find a job. Most likely, one job will not last your entire working life. You will want to find a new job when you decide to quit or when changing economic conditions destroy your current job.

As you look for a job, get a job, quit a job or get laid off and look for a new job, you will pass through many and possibly all of the population categories used in the Current Population Survey that you've learned about in this chapter.

Think about your current labor market status while you are studying economics.

- Are you in the labor force or not?
- If you are in the labor force, are you employed or unemployed?
- If you are employed, are you a part-time or a full-time worker?

Now think about someone you know who is unemployed or has been unemployed. Classify the unemployment experienced by this person as

- frictional,
- structural, or
- cyclical.

How can you tell the type of unemployment experienced by this person?

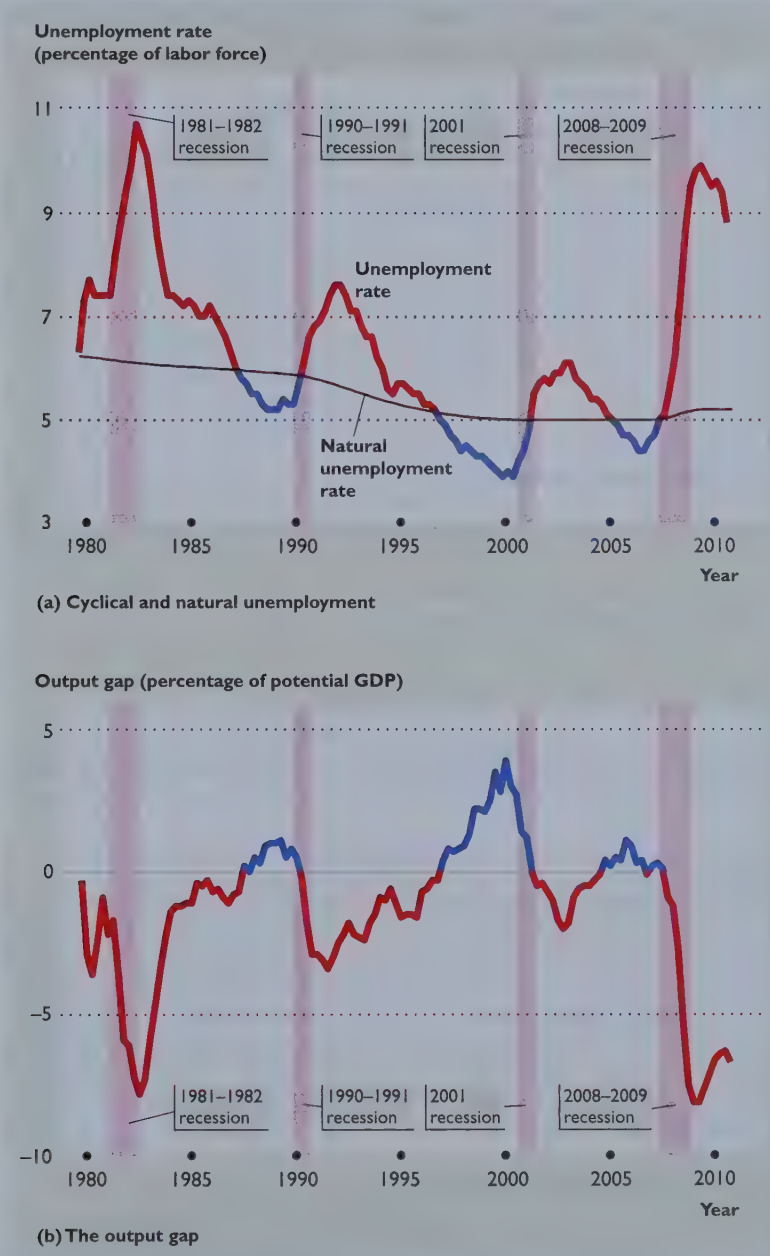
The labor market conditions that you face today or when you graduate and look for a job depend partly on general national economic conditions—on whether the economy is in recession or booming.

Labor market conditions also depend on where you live. Visit the Bureau of Labor Statistics' web site at www.bls.gov/sae/sm_mrs.htm. There you can find information on employment and unemployment for your state and metropolitan area or county. By comparing the labor market conditions in your own region with those in other areas, you can figure out where it might be easier to find work.

FIGURE 22.6

The Relationship Between Unemployment and the Output Gap

MyEconLab Real-time data



As the unemployment rate fluctuates around the natural unemployment rate in part (a), the output gap—real GDP minus potential GDP expressed as a percentage of potential GDP—fluctuates around a zero output gap in part (b).

When the unemployment rate *exceeds* the natural unemployment rate, real GDP is below potential GDP and the output gap is negative (red sections in both parts).

When the unemployment rate is *below* the natural unemployment rate, real GDP is above potential GDP and the output gap is positive (blue sections in both parts).

The natural unemployment rate shown in the graph is the Congressional Budget Office's estimate. It might turn out to be a substantial underestimate for the years since 2008.

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis, Bureau of Labor Statistics, and Congressional Budget Office.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 22.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 22.3

Describe the types of unemployment, define full employment, and explain the link between unemployment and real GDP.

Practice Problems

Recovery won't improve unemployment
Despite some optimism about the seeds of recovery, the Congressional Budget Office (CBO) sees joblessness rising. The CBO sees unemployment peaking at 10.4% next year from an average of 9.3% this year, before it falls to 9.1% in 2011.
Source: *Fortune*, August 25, 2009

Before the recession began, the U.S. unemployment rate was about 6 percent.

1. As a recession begins, firms quickly make layoffs. Is this rise in unemployment mostly a rise in frictional, structural, or cyclical unemployment?
2. Why does unemployment continue to rise as an expansion begins?

In the News

BofA cutbacks may hit 40,000
Bank of America officials have discussed eliminating about 40,000 positions during the first wave of a restructuring. The numbers could change, but the restructuring would reduce the bank's workforce over a period of years.
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 9, 2011

Postal Service targets 220,000 job cuts
The U.S. Postal Service plans to reduce its workforce by 220,000 jobs to remedy its dire financial situation. The Postal Service, financed mostly by postage, has been struggling as a result of the economic slowdown.
Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, August 12, 2011

What type of unemployment will arise from the cut in employment in each of these cases? Explain your answer.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. When a recession starts, firms are quick to lay off workers. Most of the rise in unemployment is cyclical—related to the state of the economy. The unemployment rate rises quickly as the number of layoffs increases.
2. The unemployment rate is a lagging indicator of the business cycle. When an expansion begins, firms start hiring. Unemployed workers get jobs, but the labor force increases as marginally attached workers start to look for jobs. In the early stages of an expansion, the number of marginally attached workers looking for jobs exceeds the number of people hired and unemployment increases.

Solution to In the News

Bank of America is reducing its workforce as it restructures its organization in response to changing technology. Because online banking has grown, the bank will close many branches. Cuts in its workforce will create structural unemployment. The U.S. Postal Service is cutting its workforce in response to a downturn in economic activity. Cuts in its workforce will create cyclical unemployment.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Define the unemployment rate and other labor market indicators.

- The unemployment rate is the number of people unemployed as a percentage of the labor force, and the labor force is the sum of the number of people employed and the number unemployed.
- The labor force participation rate is the labor force as a percentage of the working-age population.

2 Describe the trends and fluctuations in the indicators of labor market performance in the United States.

- The unemployment rate fluctuates with the business cycle, increasing in recessions and decreasing in expansions.
- The labor force participation rate of women has increased, and the labor force participation rate of men has decreased.

3 Describe the types of unemployment, define full employment, and explain the link between unemployment and real GDP.

- Unemployment can be frictional, structural, or cyclical.
- Full employment occurs when there is no cyclical unemployment and at full employment, the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate.
- Potential GDP is the real GDP produced when the economy is at full employment.
- As the unemployment rate fluctuates around the natural unemployment rate, real GDP fluctuates around potential GDP and the output gap fluctuates between negative and positive values.

Key Terms

Cyclical unemployment, 576
Discouraged worker, 566
Frictional unemployment, 575
Full employment, 576
Full-time workers, 567
Great Depression, 569
Labor force, 564
Labor force participation rate, 566
Marginally attached worker, 566
Natural unemployment rate, 576
Output gap, 578
Part time for economic reasons, 567
Part-time workers, 567
Potential GDP, 578
Structural unemployment, 575
Unemployment rate, 565
Working-age population, 564

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 22 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Use the following information gathered by a BLS labor market survey of four households to work Problems **1** and **2**.

- Household 1: Candy worked 20 hours last week setting up her Internet shopping business. The rest of the week, she completed application forms and attended two job interviews. Husband Jerry worked 40 hours at his job at GM. Daughter Meg, a student, worked 10 hours at her weekend job at Starbucks.
- Household 2: Joey, a full-time bank clerk, was on vacation. Wife, Serena, who wants a full-time job, worked 10 hours as a part-time checkout clerk.
- Household 3: Ari had no work last week but was going to be recalled to his regular job in two weeks. Partner Kosta, after months of searching for a job and not being able to find one, has stopped looking and will go back to school.
- Household 4: Mimi and Henry are retired. Son Hank is a professional artist, who painted for 12 hours last week and sold one picture.

1. Classify each of the 10 people into the labor market category used by the BLS. Who are part-time workers and who are full-time workers? Of the part-time workers, who works part time for economic reasons?

2. Calculate the unemployment rate and the labor force participation rate, and compare these rates with those in the United States in 2011.

3. Give two examples of people who work part time for economic reasons and two examples of people who work part time for noneconomic reasons.

4. Explain the relationship between the percentage of employed workers who have part-time jobs and the business cycle.

5. Distinguish among the three types of unemployment: frictional, structural, and cyclical. Provide an example of each type of unemployment in the United States today.

6. Describe the relationship between the unemployment rate and the natural unemployment rate as the output gap fluctuates between being positive and being negative.

Use the following information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

July unemployment dips in 17 states, rises in 26
The Labor Department said that the largest job gains occurred in New York, which added 62,100 jobs, while Minnesota added 10,300 jobs, its first gains in almost a year. Vermont added 900 jobs but its unemployment rate fell from 7.3% to 6.8%—the biggest drop of all states.

Source: The Associated Press, August 21, 2009

7. Explain how, other things remaining the same, the increase of 62,100 jobs in New York and of 10,300 in Minnesota changed the number of people employed, the labor force, and the unemployment rate.

8. Explain why when Vermont added only 900 jobs, its unemployment fell by more than any other state.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. In the United States,
   - Compare the duration of unemployment in 2010 with that in 2000 and explain whether the difference was most likely the result of frictions, structural change, or the business cycle.
   - Why are teenage unemployment rates much higher than those for older workers?
   - How might the unemployment of marginally attached workers influence the duration of unemployment in 2010 compared with that in 2000?
2. The Bureau of Labor Statistics reported that in the second quarter of 2008 the working-age population was 233,410,000, the labor force was 154,294,000, and employment was 146,089,000. Calculate for that quarter the labor force participation rate and the unemployment rate.
3. In July 2011, in the economy of Sandy Island, 10,000 people were employed and 1,000 were unemployed. During August 2011, 80 people lost their jobs and didn't look for new ones, 20 people quit their jobs and retired, 150 people who had looked for work were hired, 50 people became discouraged workers, and 40 new graduates looked for work. Calculate the change in the unemployment rate from July 2011 to August 2011.
4. The BLS survey reported the following data in a community of 320 people: 200 worked at least 1 hour as paid employees; 20 did not work but were temporarily absent from their jobs; 40 did not have jobs and didn't want to work; 10 were available for work and last week they had looked for work; and 6 were available for work and were waiting to be recalled to their previous job. Calculate the unemployment rate and the labor force participation rate.
5. Describe the trends and fluctuations in the unemployment rate in the United States from 1949 through 2011. In which periods was the unemployment rate above average and in which periods was it below average?
6. Describe how the labor force participation rate in the United States changed between 1960 and 2010. Contrast and explain the different trends in the labor force participation rates of women and men.
7. Explain why the natural unemployment rate is not zero and why the unemployment rate fluctuates around the natural unemployment rate.

Use the following information to work Problems **8** and **9**.

Michigan unemployment tops 15%

The U.S. Department of Labor reported that Michigan's unemployment rate in June 2009 rose to 15.2%, becoming the first state in 25 years to suffer an unemployment rate exceeding 15%. Michigan has been battered by the collapse of the auto industry and the housing crisis and has had the highest unemployment rate in the nation for the past 12 months.

Source: CNN Money, July 17, 2009

8. Why is the reality of the unemployment problem in Michigan actually worse than the unemployment rate statistic of 15.2 percent?
9. Is this increased unemployment frictional, structural, or cyclical? Explain.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 22 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The BLS count Jody as being unemployed if she _____.
   A. had a job last month but not this month
   B. doesn't have a job because the U.S. factory where she worked cannot compete with cheap Chinese imports
   C. wants a job and looked for a job last year but has now stopped looking
   D. wants a job and is willing to take a job but after searching last week cannot find a job
2. A marginally attached worker is a person who _____.
   A. works part time for economic reasons
   B. works part time for noneconomic reasons
   C. doesn't work, is available and willing to work, but hasn't looked for a job recently
   D. has no job but would like one and has gone back to school to retrain
3. If the BLS included all marginally attached workers as being unemployed, the _____ would be _____.
   A. unemployment rate; higher
   B. labor force; unchanged
   C. labor force participation rate; lower
   D. unemployment rate; lower
4. When the economy goes into recession, the biggest increase in unemployment is _____.
   A. structural because jobs are lost in most states
   B. cyclical because jobs are lost in many industries as they cut production
   C. frictional because the creation of jobs slows
   D. the combination of structural and frictional as few new jobs are created
5. The economy is at full employment when all unemployment is _____.
   A. structural
   B. cyclical
   C. structural and cyclical
   D. structural and frictional
6. Potential GDP is the value of real GDP when _____.
   A. the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate
   B. there is no frictional unemployment
   C. there is no structural unemployment
   D. the unemployment rate is zero
7. When the unemployment rate_____ the natural unemployment rate, real GDP is _____ potential GDP and the output gap is _____.
   A. exceeds; below; negative
   B. is below; below; negative
   C. exceeds; above; positive
   D. is below; above; negative

Which movie *really* was the biggest box office hit?

The CPI and the Cost of Living

23

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain what the Consumer Price Index (CPI) is and how it is calculated.
2. Explain the limitations of the CPI and describe other measures of the price level.
3. Adjust money values for inflation and calculate real wage rates and real interest rates.

23.1 THE CONSUMER PRICE INDEX

Consumer Price Index
A measure of the average of the prices paid by urban consumers for a fixed market basket of consumption goods and services.

The **Consumer Price Index** (CPI) is a measure of the average of the prices paid by urban consumers for a fixed market basket of consumption goods and services. The Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) calculates the CPI every month, and we can use these numbers to compare what the fixed market basket costs this month with what it cost in some previous month or other period.

Reading the CPI Numbers

Reference base period
A period for which the CPI is defined to equal 100. Currently, the reference base period is 1982–1984.

The CPI is defined to equal 100 for a period called the **reference base period.** Currently, the reference base period is 1982–1984. That is, the CPI equals 100 on the average over the 36 months from January 1982 through December 1984.

In July 2011, the CPI was 225.4. This number tells us that the average of the prices paid by urban consumers for a fixed market basket of consumption goods and services was 125.4 percent higher in July 2011 than it was on the average during 1982–1984.

In June 2011, the CPI was 224.3. Comparing the July CPI with the June CPI tells us that the average of the prices paid by urban consumers for a fixed market basket of consumption goods and services *increased* by 1.1 percentage points in July 2011.

Constructing the CPI

Constructing the CPI is a huge operation that costs millions of dollars and involves three stages:

- Selecting the CPI market basket
- Conducting the monthly price survey
- Calculating the CPI

The CPI Market Basket

The first stage in constructing the CPI is to determine the *CPI market basket.* This "basket" contains the goods and services represented in the index and the relative importance, or weight, attached to each of them. The idea is to make the weight of the items in the CPI basket the same as in the budget of an average urban household. For example, if the average household spends 2 percent of its income on public transportation, then the CPI places a weight of 2 percent on the prices of bus, subway, and other transit system rides.

Although the CPI is calculated every month, the CPI market basket isn't updated every month. The information used to determine the CPI market basket comes from a survey, called the *Consumer Expenditure Survey*, that discovers what people actually buy. This survey is an ongoing activity, and the CPI market basket in 2011 was based on a survey conducted during 2007 and 2008. An astonishing 88,000 individuals and families contributed information. Some of them were interviewed every three months, and others kept detailed diaries for two weeks in which they listed absolutely everything they bought. (Before 1999, the Consumer Expenditure Survey was conducted much less frequently.)

The reference base period for the CPI has been fixed at 1982–1984 for more than 20 years and doesn't change when a new Consumer Expenditure Survey is used to update the market basket.

Figure 23.1 shows the CPI market basket in July 2011. The basket contains around 80,000 goods and services arranged in the eight large groups shown in the figure. The most important item in a household's budget is housing, which accounts for 41.5 percent of total expenditure. Transportation comes next at 17.3 percent. Third in relative importance is food and beverages at 14.8 percent. These three groups account for almost three quarters of the average household budget. Medical care, recreation, and education and communication take a bit more than 6 percent each, and apparel (clothing and footwear) takes 3.6 percent. Another 3.5 percent is spent on other goods and services.

The BLS breaks down each of these categories into smaller ones. For example, education and communication breaks down into textbooks and supplies, tuition, telephone services, and personal computer services.

As you look at these numbers, remember that they apply to the average household. Each individual household is spread around the average. Think about your own expenditure and compare it with the average.

The Monthly Price Survey

Each month, BLS employees check the prices of the 80,000 goods and services in the CPI market basket in 30 metropolitan areas. Because the CPI aims to measure price changes, it is important that the prices recorded each month refer to exactly the same items. For example, suppose the price of a box of jelly beans has increased but a box now contains more beans. Has the price of a jelly bean increased? The BLS employee must record the details of changes in quality, size, weight, or packaging so that price changes can be isolated from other changes.

Once the raw price data are in hand, the next task is to calculate the CPI.

FIGURE 23.1

The CPI Market Basket

MyEconLab Animation

This shopping cart is filled with the items that an average household buys. Housing (41.5 percent), transportation (17.3 percent), and food and beverages (14.8 percent) take almost 75 percent of household income.

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

Calculating the CPI

The CPI calculation has three steps:

- Find the cost of the CPI market basket at base period prices.
- Find the cost of the CPI market basket at current period prices.
- Calculate the CPI for the base period and the current period.

We'll work through these three steps for a simple example. Suppose the CPI market basket contains only two goods and services: oranges and haircuts. We'll construct an annual CPI rather than a monthly CPI with the reference base period 2005 and the current period 2012.

Table 23.1 shows the quantities in the CPI market basket and the prices in the base period and the current period. Part (a) contains the data for the base period. In that period, consumers bought 10 oranges at $1 each and 5 haircuts at $8 each. To find the cost of the CPI market basket in the base period prices, multiply the quantities in the CPI market basket by the base period prices. The cost of oranges is $10 (10 at $1 each), and the cost of haircuts is $40 (5 at $8 each). So total expenditure in the base period on the CPI market basket is $50 ($10 + $40).

Part (b) contains the price data for the current period. The price of an orange increased from $1 to $2, which is a 100 percent increase ($1 ÷ $1 × 100 = 100 percent). The price of a haircut increased from $8 to $10, which is a 25 percent increase ($2 ÷ $8 × 100 = 25 percent).

The CPI provides a way of averaging these price increases by comparing the cost of the basket rather than the price of each item. To find the cost of the CPI market basket in the current period, 2012, multiply the quantities in the basket by their 2012 prices. The cost of oranges is $20 (10 at $2 each), and the cost of haircuts is $50 (5 at $10 each). So total expenditure on the fixed CPI market basket at current period prices is $70 ($20 + $50).

TABLE 23.1

The Consumer Price Index: A Simplified CPI Calculation

(a) The cost of the CPI basket at base period prices: 2005

	CPI market basket		
Item	Quantity	Price	Cost of CPI basket
Oranges	10	$1 each	$10
Haircuts	5	$8 each	$40
		Cost of CPI market basket at base period prices	$50

(b) The cost of the CPI basket at current period prices: 2012

	CPI market basket		
Item	Quantity	Price	Cost of CPI basket
Oranges	10	$2 each	$20
Haircuts	5	$10 each	$50
		Cost of CPI market basket at current period prices	$70

You've now taken the first two steps toward calculating the CPI. The third step uses the numbers you've just calculated to find the CPI for 2005 and 2012. The formula for the CPI is

$$\text{CPI} = \frac{\text{Cost of CPI basket at current period prices}}{\text{Cost of CPI basket at base period prices}} \times 100.$$

In Table 23.1, you established that in 2005, the cost of the CPI market basket was \$50 and in 2012, it was \$70. If we use these numbers in the CPI formula, we can find the CPI for 2005 and 2012. The base period is 2005, so

$$\text{CPI in 2005} = \frac{\$50}{\$50} \times 100 = 100.$$

$$\text{CPI in 2012} = \frac{\$70}{\$50} \times 100 = 140.$$

The principles that you've applied in this simplified CPI calculation apply to the more complex calculations performed every month by the BLS.

Figure 23.2(a) shows the CPI in the United States during the 40 years between 1971 and 2011. The CPI increased every year during this period until 2009 when it fell slightly. During the late 1970s and in 1980, the CPI was increasing rapidly, but since the early 1980s, the rate of increase has slowed.

Measuring Inflation and Deflation

A major purpose of the CPI is to measure *changes* in the cost of living and in the value of money. To measure these changes, we calculate the **inflation rate,** which is the percentage change in the price level from one year to the next. To calculate the inflation rate, we use the formula

Inflation rate
The percentage change in the price level from one year to the next.

$$\text{Inflation rate} = \frac{(\text{CPI in current year} - \text{CPI in previous year})}{\text{CPI in previous year}} \times 100.$$

Suppose that the current year is 2012 and the CPI for 2012 is 140. And suppose that in the previous year, 2011, the CPI was 120. Then in 2012,

$$\text{Inflation rate} = \frac{(140 - 120)}{120} \times 100 = 16.7\,\text{percent}.$$

If the inflation rate is *negative*, the price level is *falling* and we have **deflation.** The United States has rarely experienced deflation but 2009 was one of those rare years. You can check the latest data by visiting the BLS Web site. In July 2009, the CPI was 214.8, and in July 2008, it was 219.1. So during the year to July 2009,

Deflation
A situation in which the price level is *falling* and the inflation rate is *negative*.

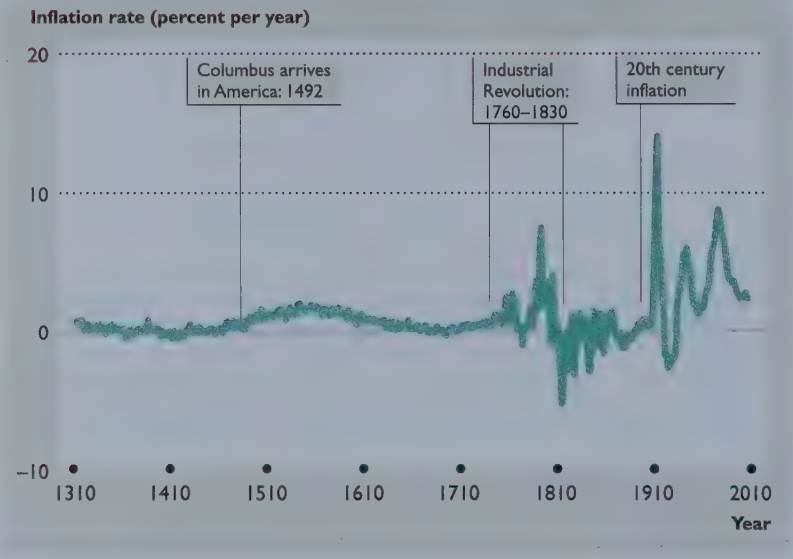
$$\text{Inflation rate} = \frac{(214.8 - 219.1)}{219.1} \times 100 = -2.0\,\text{percent}.$$

Figure 23.2(b) shows the inflation rate in the United States between 1971 and 2011. The change in the price level in part (a) and the inflation rate in part (b) are related. When the price *level* rises rapidly, the inflation rate is high; when the price *level* rises slowly, the inflation rate is low; and when the price level is falling, the inflation rate is negative.

EYE on THE PAST

700 Years of Inflation and Deflation

These extraordinary data show that inflation became a persistent problem only after 1900. During the preceding 600 years, inflation was almost unknown. Inflation increased slightly during the sixteenth century after Europeans discovered gold in America. But this inflation barely reached 2 percent a year—less than we have today—and eventually subsided. The Industrial Revolution saw a temporary burst of inflation followed by a period of deflation.

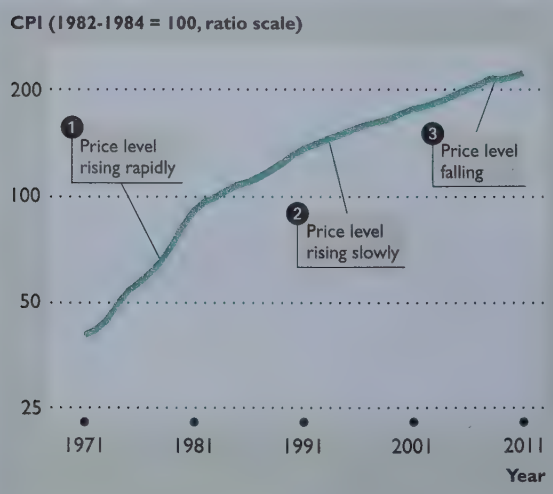


SOURCES OF DATA: E.H. Phelps Brown and Sheila V. Hopkins, *Economica*, 1955, and Robert Sahr, http://oregonstate.edu/dept/pol_sci/fac/sahr/sahr.htm.

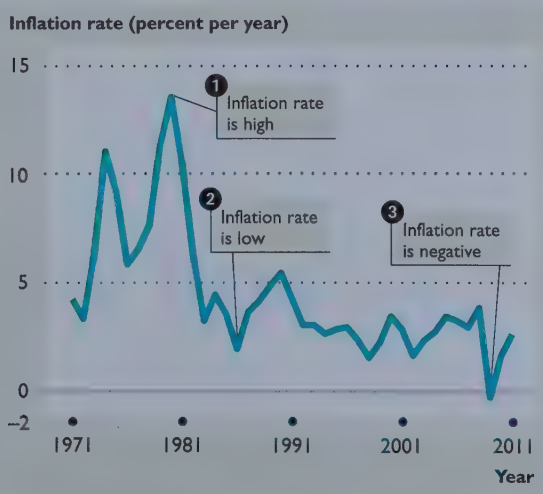
FIGURE 23.2

The CPI and the Inflation Rate: 1971–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data



(a) CPI: 1971–2011



(b) CPI inflation rate: 1971–2011

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

❶ The price level in part (a) was rising rapidly during the 1970s and 1980s and the inflation rate in part (b) was high. ❷ The price level was rising slowly during the 1990s and 2000s and the inflation rate was low. ❸ In 2009, the price level fell and the inflation rate was negative.

CHECKPOINT 23.1

Explain what the Consumer Price Index (CPI) is and how it is calculated.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 23.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

A Consumer Expenditure Survey in Sparta shows that people buy only juice and cloth. In 2010, the year of the Consumer Expenditure Survey and also the reference base year, the average household spent $40 on juice and $25 on cloth. Table 1 sets out the prices of juice and cloth in 2010 and 2012.

TABLE 1 PRICES

	2010	2012
Juice	$4 a bottle	$4 a bottle
Cloth	$5 a yard	$6 a yard

1. Calculate the CPI market basket and the percentage of the average household budget spent on juice in the reference base year.
2. Calculate the CPI in 2012 and the inflation rate between 2010 and 2012.
3. Table 2 shows the CPI in Russia. Calculate the inflation rates in 2006 and 2007. Did the price level rise in 2007? Did the inflation rate increase in 2007?

TABLE 2

Year	CPI
2005	200
2006	219
2007	237

In the News

Consumer price index rises 0.2% in May

The CPI in May 2011 was 226, 0.2% higher than the April CPI. That's down from April's increase of 0.4%. Food prices rose 0.4%, but energy prices fell 1%.

Source: *USA Today*, June 15, 2011

Distinguish between the price level and the inflation rate and explain why the CPI rose when energy prices fell by more than food prices rose.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The CPI market basket is the quantities bought during the Consumer Expenditure Survey year, 2010. The average household spent $40 on juice at $4 a bottle, so it bought 10 bottles of juice. The average household spent $25 on cloth at $5 a yard, so it bought 5 yards of cloth. The CPI market basket is made up of 10 bottles of juice and 5 yards of cloth.
   In the reference base year, the average household spent $40 on juice and $25 on cloth, so the household budget was $65. Expenditure on juice was 61.5 percent of the household budget: ($40 ÷ $65) × 100 = 61.5 percent.
2. To calculate the CPI in 2012, find the cost of the CPI market basket in 2010 and 2012. In 2010, the CPI basket costs $65 ($40 for juice + $25 for cloth). In 2012, the CPI market basket costs $70 (10 bottles of juice at $4 a bottle + 5 yards of cloth at $6 a yard). The CPI in 2012 is ($70 ÷ $65) × 100 = 107.7. The inflation rate is [(107.7 − 100) ÷ 100] × 100 = 7.7 percent.
3. The inflation rate in 2006 is [(219 − 200) ÷ 200] × 100 = 9.5 percent. The inflation rate in 2007 is [(237 − 219) ÷ 219] × 100 = 8.2 percent. In 2007, the price level increased, but the inflation rate decreased.

Solution to In the News

The CPI is the price level. The percentage change in the CPI is the inflation rate. Food is 14.8 percent of the CPI basket. Energy is included in transportation and housing. For the CPI to have risen by 0.2 percent when energy prices fell 1 percent, other prices must have risen by more than 0.2 percent.

23.2 THE CPI AND OTHER PRICE LEVEL MEASURES

Cost of living index
A measure of the change in the amount of money that people need to spend to achieve a given standard of living.

The purpose of the CPI is to measure the cost of living or what amounts to the same thing, the *value of money*. The CPI is sometimes called a **cost of living index** —a measure of the change in the amount of money that people need to spend to achieve a given standard of living. The CPI is not a perfect measure of the cost of living (value of money) for two broad reasons.

First, the CPI does not try to measure all the changes in the cost of living. For example, the cost of living rises in a severe winter as people buy more natural gas and electricity to heat their homes. A rise in the prices of these items increases the CPI. The increased quantities of natural gas and electricity bought don't change the CPI because the CPI market basket is fixed. So part of this increase in spending—the increase in the cost of maintaining a given standard of living—doesn't show up as an increase in the CPI.

Second, even those components of the cost of living that are measured by the CPI are not always measured accurately. The result is that the CPI is possibly a biased measure of changes in the cost of living.

Let's look at some of the sources of bias in the CPI and the ways the BLS tries to overcome them.

Sources of Bias in the CPI

The potential sources of bias in the CPI are

- New goods bias
- Quality change bias
- Commodity substitution bias
- Outlet substitution bias

New Goods Bias

Every year, some new goods become available and some old goods disappear. Make a short list of items that you take for granted today that were not available 10 or 20 years ago. This list includes cell phones, iPods, laptop computers, and flat-panel, large-screen television sets. A list of items no longer available or rarely bought includes audiocassette players, vinyl records, photographic film, and typewriters.

When we want to compare the price level in 2011 with that in 2001, 1991, or 1981, we must do so by comparing the prices of different baskets of goods. We can't compare the same baskets because today's basket wasn't available 10 years ago and the basket of 10 years ago isn't available today.

To make comparisons, the BLS tries to measure the price of the service performed by yesterday's goods and today's goods. It tries to compare, for example, the price of listening to recorded music, regardless of the technology that delivers that service. But the comparison is hard to make. Today's iPod delivers an improved quality of sound and level of convenience compared to yesterday's Walkman and Discman.

How much of a new product represents an increase in quantity and quality and how much represents a higher price? The BLS does its best to answer this question, but there is no sure way of making the necessary adjustment. It is believed that the arrival of new goods puts an upward bias into the CPI and its measure of the inflation rate.

To measure the CPI, the BLS must compare the price of today's iPod with that of the 1970s Walkman and 1980s Discman.

Quality Change Bias

Cars, cell phones, laptops, and many other items get better every year. For example, central locking, airbags, and antilock braking systems all add to the quality of a car. But they also add to the cost. Is the improvement in quality greater than the increase in cost? Or do car prices rise by more than can be accounted for by quality improvements? To the extent that a price rise is a payment for improved quality, it is not inflation. Again, the BLS does the best job it can to estimate the effects of quality improvements on price changes. But the CPI probably counts too much of any price rise as inflation and so overstates inflation.

To compare the price of today's cars with those of earlier years, the BLS must value the improvements in features and quality.

Commodity Substitution Bias

Changes in relative prices lead consumers to change the items they buy. People cut back on items that become relatively more costly and increase their consumption of items that become relatively less costly. For example, suppose the price of carrots rises while the price of broccoli remains constant. Now that carrots are more costly relative to broccoli, you might decide to buy more broccoli and fewer carrots. Suppose that you switch from carrots to broccoli, spend the same amount on vegetables as before, and get the same enjoyment as before. Your cost of vegetables has not changed. The CPI says that the price of vegetables has increased because it ignores your substitution between goods in the CPI market basket.

When consumers substitute lower priced broccoli for higher priced carrots, the CPI overstates the rise in the price of vegetables.

Outlet Substitution Bias

When confronted with higher prices, people use discount stores more frequently and convenience stores less frequently. This phenomenon is called *outlet substitution.* Suppose, for example, that gas prices rise by 10¢ a gallon. Instead of buying from your nearby gas station for $4.579 a gallon, you now drive farther to a gas station that charges $4.479 a gallon. Your cost of gas has increased because you must factor in the cost of your time and the gas that you use driving several blocks down the road. But your cost has not increased by as much as the 10¢ a gallon increase in the pump price. However, the CPI says that the price of gas has increased by 10¢ a gallon because the CPI does not measure outlet substitution.

The growth of online shopping in recent years has provided an alternative to discount stores that makes outlet substitution even easier and potentially makes this source of bias more serious.

As consumers shop around for the lowest prices, outlet substitution occurs and the CPI overstates the rise in prices actually paid.

The Magnitude of the Bias

You have reviewed the sources of bias in the CPI. But how big is the bias? When this question was tackled in 1996 by a Congressional Advisory Commission chaired by Michael Boskin, an economics professor at Stanford University, the answer was that the CPI overstated inflation by 1.1 percentage points a year. That is, if the CPI reports that inflation is 3.1 percent a year, most likely inflation is actually 2 percent a year.

In the period since the Boskin Commission reported, the BLS has taken steps to reduce the CPI bias. The more frequent Consumer Expenditure Survey that we described earlier in this chapter is one of these steps. Beyond that, the BLS uses ever more sophisticated models and methods to try to eliminate the sources of bias and make the CPI as accurate as possible.

Two Consequences of the CPI Bias

Avoiding bias in the CPI is important for two main reasons. Bias leads to

- Distortion of private contracts
- Increases in government outlays and decreases in taxes

Distortion of Private Contracts

Many wage contracts contain a cost of living adjustment. For example, the United Auto Workers Union (UAW) and Ford Motor Company might agree on a wage rate of $30 an hour initially that increases over three years at the same rate as the cost of living increases. The idea is that both the union and the employer want a contract in "real" terms. As the cost of living rises, the firm wants to pay the workers the number of dollars per hour that buys a given market basket of goods and services. And the firm is happy to pay the higher wage because it can sell its output for a higher price.

Suppose that over the three years of a UAW and Ford contract, the CPI increases by 5 percent each year. The wage rate paid by Ford will increase to $31.50 in the second year and $33.08 in the third year.

But suppose that the CPI is biased and the true price increase is 3 percent a year. The workers' cost of living increases by this amount, so in the second year, $30.90 rather than $31.50 is the intended wage. In the third year, a wage rate of $31.83 and not $33.08 compensates for the higher cost of living. So in the second year, the workers gain 60¢ an hour, or $21 for a 35-hour workweek. And in the third year, they gain $1.25 an hour, or $43.75 for a 35-hour workweek.

The workers' gain is Ford's loss. With a work force of a few thousand, the loss amounts to several thousand dollars a week and a few million dollars over the life of a 3-year wage contract.

If the CPI bias was common knowledge and large, the CPI would not be used without some adjustment in contracts. Unions and employers would seek agreement on the extent of the bias and make an appropriate adjustment to their contract. But for a small bias, the cost of negotiating a more complicated agreement might be too large.

Increases in Government Outlays and Decreases in Taxes

Because rising prices decrease the buying power of the dollar, the CPI is used to adjust the incomes of the 49 million Social Security beneficiaries, 27 million food stamp recipients, and 4 million retired former military personnel and federal civil servants (and their surviving spouses). The CPI is also used to adjust the budget for 3 million school lunches.

Close to a third of federal government outlays are linked directly to the CPI. If the CPI has a 1.1 percentage point bias, all of these expenditures increase by more than required to compensate for the fall in the buying power of the dollar and, although a bias of 1.1 percent a year seems small, accumulated over a decade, it adds up to almost a trillion dollars of additional government outlays.

The CPI is also used to adjust the income levels at which higher tax rates apply. The tax rates on large incomes are higher than those on small incomes so, as incomes rise, if these adjustments were not made, the burden of taxes would rise relentlessly. To the extent that the CPI is biased upward, the tax adjustments over-compensate for rising prices and decrease the amount paid in taxes.

Alternative Measures of the Price Level and Inflation Rate

Several alternative measures of the price level and inflation rate are available. One based on wholesale prices and another based on producers' prices are similar to the CPI, both in the way they are constructed and their potential for bias. But three other price indexes that we'll briefly describe here are less biased. These indexes are the

- GDP price index
- Personal consumption expenditures (PCE) price index
- PCE price index excluding food and energy

GDP Price Index

The **GDP price index** (also called the *GDP deflator*) is an average of the current prices of all the goods and services included in GDP expressed as a percentage of base-year prices. Two key differences between the GDP price index and the CPI result in different estimates of the price level and inflation rate.

GDP price index
An average of the current prices of all the goods and services included in GDP expressed as a percentage of base-year prices.

First, the GDP price index uses the prices of all the goods and services in GDP—consumption goods and services, capital goods, government goods and services, and export goods and services—while the CPI uses prices of consumption goods and services only. For example, the GDP price index includes the prices of paper mills bought by 3M to make Post-it® Notes, nuclear submarines bought by the Defense Department, and Boeing 747s bought by British Airways.

Second, the GDP price index weights each item using information about current quantities. In contrast, the CPI weights each item using information from a *past* Consumer Expenditure Survey. But because of the breadth of the items that the GDP price index includes, it is not an alternative to the CPI as a measure of the cost of living.

Personal Consumption Expenditures (PCE) Price Index

The **Personal Consumption Expenditures price index** (or **PCE price index**) is an average of the current prices of the goods and services included in the consumption expenditure component of GDP expressed as a percentage of base-year prices. The PCE price index has the same advantages as the GDP price index—it uses current information on quantities and to some degree overcomes the sources of bias in the CPI. It also has an advantage shared by the CPI of focusing on consumption expenditure and therefore being a possible measure of the cost of living.

PCE price index
An average of the current prices of the goods and services included in the consumption expenditure component of GDP expressed as a percentage of base-year prices.

A weakness of the PCE price index is that it is based on data that become known after the lapse of several months. So the CPI provides more current information about the inflation rate than what the PCE price index provides.

PCE Price Index Excluding Food and Energy

Food and energy prices fluctuate much more than other prices and their changes can obscure the underlying trends in prices. By excluding these highly variable items, the underlying price level and inflation trends can be seen more clearly. The percentage change in the PCE price index excluding food and energy is called the **core inflation rate.**

Core inflation rate
The annual percentage chnage in the PCE price index excluding the prices of food and energy.

Figure 23.3(a) shows the three *price levels* measured by the CPI, the PCE price index, and PCE price index excluding food and energy. The two measures based on the PCE price index are very similar but the CPI measure rises above the other

two and the gap widens to 100 percentage points over the 40 years shown here.

Figure 23.3(b) shows the three consumer price *inflation rates*. These measures move up and down in similar ways, but the CPI measure exceeds the PCE price index measures. The average difference between the CPI and PCE measures is about a half a percentage point. The core inflation rate has almost the same average as the PCE inflation rate, but it fluctuates less. You can see why this measure provides a better indication of the inflation trend than the index that includes food and energy prices.

This higher CPI is a reflection of its bias and a confirmation that the PCE price index, which is based on current period actual expenditures, avoids most of the sources of bias in the CPI.

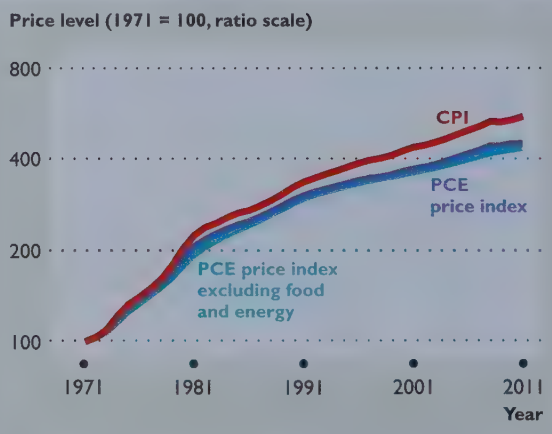
FIGURE 23.3

Three Measures of Consumer Prices

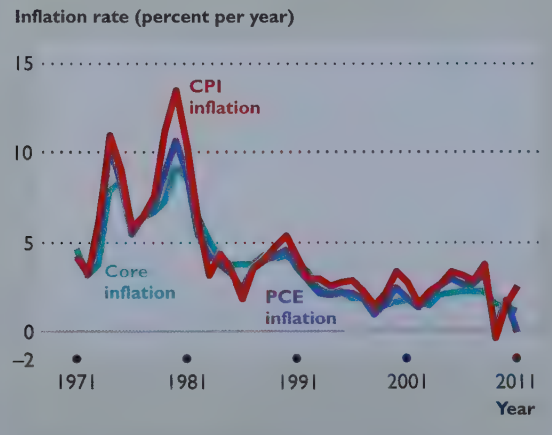
MyEconLab Real-time data

The three measures of the *price level* in part (a), rise together but the CPI rises above the two PCE measures reflecting the bias in the CPI.

The three measures of the *inflation rate* in part (b) fluctuate together, but the CPI inflation rate is higher than the PCE price index inflation rate or the core inflation rate. The core inflation rate fluctuates less than the other two measures.



(a) Three measures of price level



(b) Three measures of inflation

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

CHECKPOINT 23.2

Explain the limitations of the CPI and describe other measures of the price level.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 23.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Economists in the Statistics Bureau decide to check the CPI substitution bias. To do so, they conduct a Consumer Expenditure Survey in both 2010 and 2011. Table 1 shows the results of the survey. It shows the items that consumers buy and their prices. The Statistics Bureau fixes the reference base year as 2010.

TABLE 1

	2010		2011	
Item	Quantity	Price	Quantity	Price
Broccoli	10	$3.00	15	$3.00
Carrots	15	$2.00	10	$4.00

1. Calculate the CPI in 2011 if the CPI basket contains the 2010 quantities.
2. Calculate the CPI in 2011 if the CPI basket contains the 2011 quantities.
3. Is there any substitution bias in the CPI that uses the 2010 basket? Explain.

In the News

News releases

In 2011, the CPI increased by 1.4 percent, the GDP price index increased by 1.2 percent, and the PCE price index increased by 1.8 percent.

Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, August 29, 2011

Why do these three measures of the price level give different inflation rates?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Table 2 shows the calculation of the CPI in 2011 when the CPI basket is made of the 2010 quantities. The cost of the 2010 basket at 2010 prices is $60 and the cost of the 2010 basket at 2011 prices is $90. So the CPI in 2011 using the 2010 basket is ($90 ÷ $60) × 100 = 150.

TABLE 2

Item	2010 basket at 2010 prices	2010 basket at 2011 prices
Broccoli	$30	$30
Carrots	$30	$60
Total	$60	$90

2. Table 3 shows the calculation of the CPI in 2011 when the CPI basket is made of the 2011 quantities. The cost of the 2011 basket at 2010 prices is $65, and the cost of the 2011 basket at 2011 prices is $85. So the CPI in 2011 using the 2011 basket is ($85 ÷ $65) × 100 = 131.

TABLE 3

Item	2011 basket at 2010 prices	2011 basket at 2011 prices
Broccoli	$45	$45
Carrots	$20	$40
Total	$65	$85

3. The CPI that uses the 2010 basket displays some bias. With the price of broccoli constant and the price of carrots rising, consumers buy fewer carrots and more broccoli and they spend $85 on vegetables. But they would have spent $90 if they had not substituted broccoli for some carrots. The price of vegetables does not rise by 50 percent as shown by the CPI. Because of substitution, the price of vegetables rises by only 42 percent ($85 is 42 percent greater than $60). Using the 2011 basket, the price of vegetables rises by only 31 percent ($85 compared with $65). A CPI substitution bias exists.

Solution to In the News

These three measures of the price level are based on the prices of different baskets of goods and services. The GDP price index is the broadest measure and its basket contains all the goods and services that are counted in GDP—U.S.-produced goods and services that households, firms, governments, and foreigners buy in the current year. The basket of the PCE price index contains the goods and services in GDP that households buy in the current year. The CPI basket contains only the goods and services that urban consumers buy in the base year.

Which postage stamp has the higher real price: the 2¢ stamp of 1911 or today's 44¢ stamp?

23.3 NOMINAL AND REAL VALUES

In 2011, it cost 44 cents to mail a first-class letter. One hundred years earlier, in 1911, that same letter would have cost 2 cents to mail. Does it *really* cost you 22 times the amount that it cost your great-great-grandmother to mail a letter?

You know that it does not. You know that a dollar today buys less than what a dollar bought in 1911, so the cost of a stamp has not really increased to 22 times its 1911 level. But has it increased at all? Did it really cost you any more to mail a letter in 2011 than it cost your great-great-grandmother in 1911?

The CPI can be used to answer questions like these. In fact, that is one of the main reasons for constructing a price index. Let's see how we can compare the price of a stamp in 1911 and the price of a stamp in 2011.

Dollars and Cents at Different Dates

To compare dollar amounts at different dates, we need to know the CPI at those dates. Currently, the CPI has a base of 100 for 1982–1984. That is, the average of the CPI in 1982, 1983, and 1984 is 100. (The numbers for the three years are 96.4, 99.6, and 103.9, respectively. Calculate the average of these numbers and check that it is indeed 100.)

In 2011, the CPI was 225.4, and in 1911, it was 9.8. By using these two numbers, we can calculate the relative value of the dollar in 1911 and 2011. To do so, we divide the 2011 CPI by the 1911 CPI. That ratio is 225.4 ÷ 9.8 = 23. That is, prices on average were 23 times higher in 2011 than in 1911.

We can use this ratio to convert the price of a 2-cent stamp in 1911 into its 2011 equivalent. The formula for this calculation is

$$\text{Price of stamp in 2011 dollars} = \text{Price of stamp in 1911 dollars} \times \frac{\text{CPI in 2011}}{\text{CPI in 1911}}$$

$$= 2\,\text{cents} \times \frac{225.4}{9.8} = 46\,\text{cents}.$$

So your great-great-grandmother paid a bit more than you pay! It really cost her two cents more to mail that first-class letter than it cost you in 2011. She paid the equivalent of 46 cents in 2011 money, and you paid 44 cents.

We've just converted the 1911 price of a stamp to its 2011 equivalent. We can do a similar calculation the other way around—converting the 2011 price to its 1911 equivalent. The formula for this alternative calculation is

$$\text{Price of stamp in 1911 dollars} = \text{Price of stamp in 2011 dollars} \times \frac{\text{CPI in 1911}}{\text{CPI in 2011}}$$

$$= 44\,\text{cents} \times \frac{9.8}{225.4} = 1.91\,\text{cents}.$$

The interpretation of this number is that you pay the *equivalent* of 1.91 cents in 1911 dollars. Your *real* price of a stamp is 1.91 cents expressed in 1911 dollars.

The calculations that we've just done are examples of converting a *nominal* value into a *real* value. A nominal value is one that is expressed in current dollars. A real value is one that is expressed in the dollars of a given year. We're now going to see how we convert nominal macroeconomic variables into real variables using a similar method.

Nominal and Real Values in Macroeconomics

Macroeconomics makes a big issue of the distinction between nominal and real values. Three nominal and real variables occupy a central position in macroeconomics. They are

- Nominal GDP and real GDP
- The nominal wage rate and the real wage rate
- The nominal interest rate and the real interest rate

We begin our examination of real and nominal variables in macroeconomics by reviewing what you've already learned about the distinction between nominal GDP and real GDP and interpreting that distinction in a new way.

Nominal GDP and Real GDP

When we calculated the 1911 value of a 44-cent 2011 postage stamp, we multiplied the 2011 price by the ratio of the CPI in 1911 to the CPI in 2011. By this calculation, we found the "real" value of a 2011 stamp in 1911 dollars.

But when we calculated the real GDP of 2011 in 2005 dollars in Chapter 21 (pp. 544–545 and 559–561), we didn't multiply nominal GDP in 2011 by the ratio of a price index in the two years. Instead, we expressed the values of the goods and services produced in 2011 in terms of the prices that prevailed in 2005. We calculated real GDP directly.

But we can *interpret* real GDP in 2011 as nominal GDP in 2011 multiplied by the ratio of the GDP price index in 2005 to the GDP price index in 2011. The GDP price

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

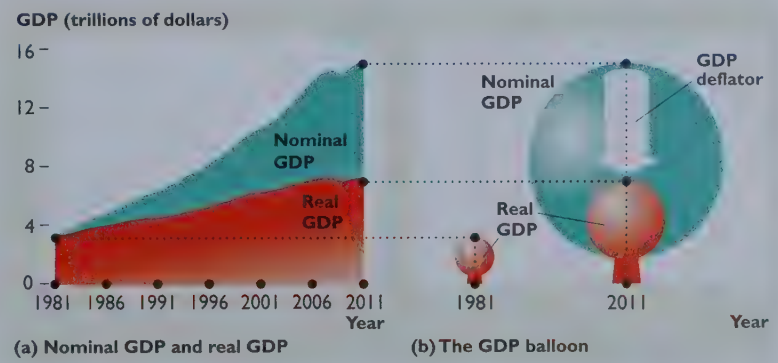
Deflating the GDP Balloon

Nominal GDP increased every year between 1981 and 2011 except for 2009. Part of the increase reflects increased production, and part of it reflects rising prices.

You can think of GDP as a balloon that is blown up by growing production and rising prices. In the figure, the GDP price index or *GDP deflator* lets the inflation air—the contribution of rising prices—out of the nominal GDP balloon so that we can see what has happened to real GDP.

The small red balloon for 1981 shows real GDP in that year. The green balloon shows nominal GDP in 2011. The red balloon for 2011 shows real GDP for that year.

To see real GDP in 2011, we use the GDP price index to deflate nominal GDP. With the inflation air removed, we can see by how much real GDP grew from 1981 to 2011.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis.

index in 2005 (the base year) is defined to be 100, so we can interpret real GDP in any year as nominal GDP divided by the GDP price index in that year multiplied by 100. We don't calculate real GDP this way, but we can interpret it this way.

The GDP price index, or the CPI, or some other price index might be used to convert a nominal variable to a real variable.

Nominal Wage Rate and Real Wage Rate

Nominal wage rate
The average hourly wage rate measured in current dollars.

Real wage rate
The average hourly wage rate measured in the dollars of a given reference base year.

The price of labor services is the wage rate—the income that an hour of labor earns. In macroeconomics, we are interested in economy-wide performance, so we focus on the *average* hourly wage rate. The **nominal wage rate** is the average hourly wage rate measured in *current* dollars. The **real wage rate** is the average hourly wage rate measured in the dollars of a given reference base year.

To calculate the real wage rate relevant to a consumer, we divide the nominal wage rate by the CPI and multiply by 100. That is,

$$\text{Real wage rate in 2011} = \frac{\text{Nominal wage rate in 2011}}{\text{CPI in 2011}} \times 100.$$

In 2011, the nominal wage rate (average hourly wage rate) of production workers was $19.04 and the CPI was 225.4, so

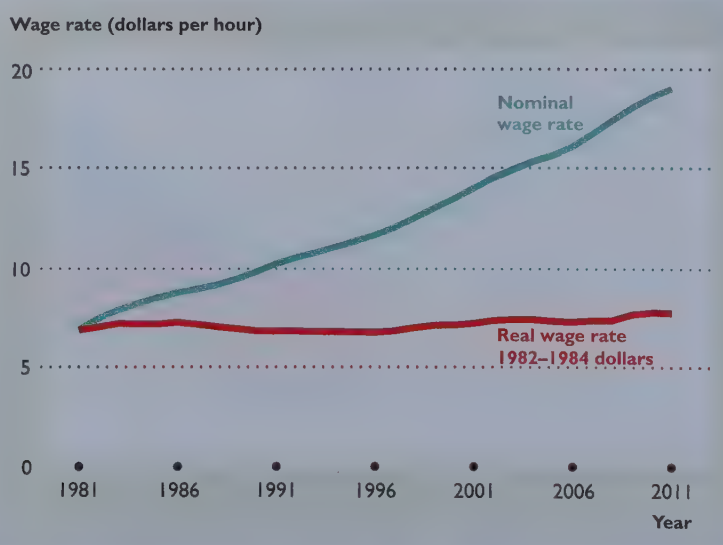
$$\text{Real wage rate in 2011} = \frac{\$19.04}{225.4} \times 100 = \$8.45.$$

Because we measure the real wage rate in constant base period dollars, a change in the real wage rate measures the change in the quantity of goods and ser-

FIGURE 23.4
Nominal and Real Wage Rates: 1981–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data

The nominal wage rate has increased every year since 1981. The real wage rate decreased slightly from 1981 through the mid-1990s, after which it increased slightly again. Over the entire 30-year period, the real wage rate remained steady.



SOURCE OF DATA: *Economic Report of the President*, 2011.

vices that an hour's work can buy. In contrast, a change in the nominal wage rate measures a combination of a change in the quantity of goods and services that an hour's work can buy and a change in the price level. So the real wage rate removes the effects of inflation from the changes in the nominal wage rate.

The real wage rate is a significant economic variable because it measures the real reward for labor, which is a major determinant of the standard of living. The real wage rate is also significant because it measures the real cost of labor services, which influences the quantity of labor that firms are willing to hire.

Figure 23.4 shows what has happened to the nominal wage rate and the real wage rate in the United States between 1981 and 2011. The nominal wage rate is the average hourly earnings of production workers. This measure is just one of several different measures of average hourly earnings that we might have used.

The nominal wage rate increased from $6.85 an hour in 1981 to $19.04 an hour in 2011, but the real wage rate barely changed. In 1982–1984 dollars (the CPI base period dollars), the real wage rate in 2011 was only $8.45 an hour.

The real wage rate barely changed as the nominal wage rate increased because the nominal wage rate grew at a rate almost equal to the inflation rate. When the effects of inflation are removed from the nominal wage rate, we can see what is happening to the buying power of the average wage rate.

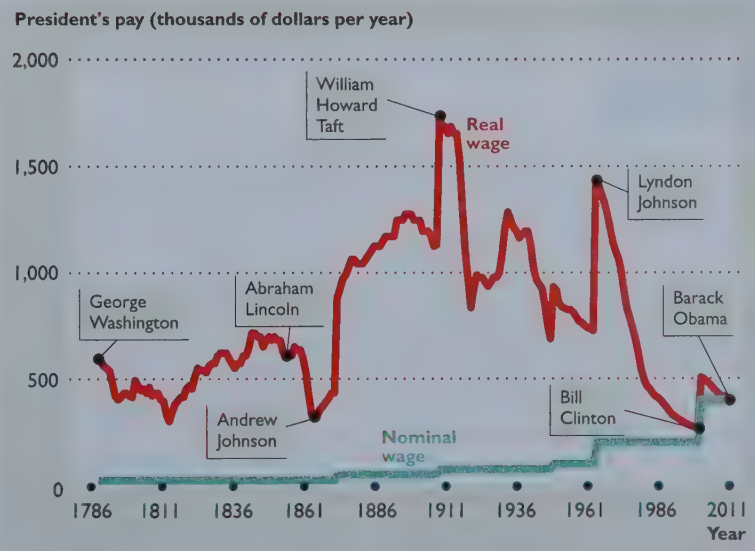
You can also see that the real wage rate has fluctuated a little. It decreased slightly until the mid-1990s, after which it increased slightly.

EYE on the PAST

The Nominal and Real Wage Rates of Presidents of the United States

Who earned more, Barack Obama in 2011, or George Washington in 1789? George Washington's pay was $25,000 (on the green line) but in 2011 dollars it was $597,000 (on the red line). Barack Obama was paid $400,000 in 2011.

But presidential accommodations are more comfortable today, and presidential travel arrangements are a breeze compared to earlier times. So adding in the perks of the job, Barack Obama doesn't get such a raw deal.



SOURCE OF DATA: Robert Sahr, Oregon State University, http://www.orst.edu/dept/pol_sci/sci/fac/sahr/sahr.htm.

Nominal Interest Rate and Real Interest Rate

Nominal interest rate
The dollar amount of interest expressed as a percentage of the amount loaned.

Real interest rate
The goods and services forgone in interest expressed as a percentage of the amount loaned and calculated as the nominal interest rate minus the inflation rate.

You've just seen that we can calculate real values from nominal values by deflating them using the CPI. And you've seen that to make this calculation, we *divide* the nominal value by a price index. Converting a nominal interest rate to a real interest rate is a bit different. To see why, we'll start with their definitions.

A **nominal interest rate** is the dollar amount of interest expressed as a percentage of the amount loaned. For example, suppose that you have $1,000 in a bank deposit—a loan by you to a bank—on which you receive interest of $50 a year. The nominal interest rate is $50 as a percentage of $1,000, which is 5 percent a year.

A **real interest rate** is the goods and services forgone in interest expressed as a percentage of the amount loaned. Continuing with the above example, at the end of one year your bank deposit has increased to $1,050—the original $1,000 plus the $50 interest. Suppose that prices have increased by 3 percent, so now you need $1,030 to buy what $1,000 would have bought a year earlier. How much interest have you *really* received? The answer is $20, or a real interest rate of 2 percent a year.

To convert a nominal interest rate to a real interest rate, we *subtract* the *inflation rate*. That is,

Real interest rate = Nominal interest rate − Inflation rate.

Plug your numbers into this formula. Your nominal interest rate is 5 percent a year, and the inflation rate is 3 percent a year. Your real interest rate is 5 percent minus 3 percent, which equals 2 percent a year.

Figure 23.5 shows the nominal and the real interest rates in the United States between 1971 and 2011. When the inflation rate is high, the gap between the real interest rate and nominal interest rate is large. Sometimes, the real interest rate is negative (as it was in the mid-1970s) and the lender pays the borrower!

EYE on BOX OFFICE HITS

Which Movie *Really* Was the Biggest Box Office Hit?

Gone with the Wind is the answer to the question that we posed at the beginning of this chapter.

To get this answer, Box-Office Mojo (www.boxofficemojo.com) calculates the amount that a movie *really* earns by converting the dollars earned to their equivalent in current-year dollars. But rather than use the CPI, it uses the average prices of movie tickets as its price index.

Gone with the Wind was made in 1939. Looking only at its performance in the United States, the movie was released in nine subsequent years and by 2011 it had earned a total box office revenue of almost $200 million.

Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows, Part 2 was released in 2011 and during the summer of that year it earned $366 million.

So the 2011 *Harry Potter* movie earned 1.83 times the dollars earned by *Gone with the Wind*.

To convert the *Gone with the Wind* revenues into 2011 dollars, Box-Office Mojo multiplies the dollars received each year by the 2011 ticket price and divides by the ticket price for the year in which the dollars were earned.

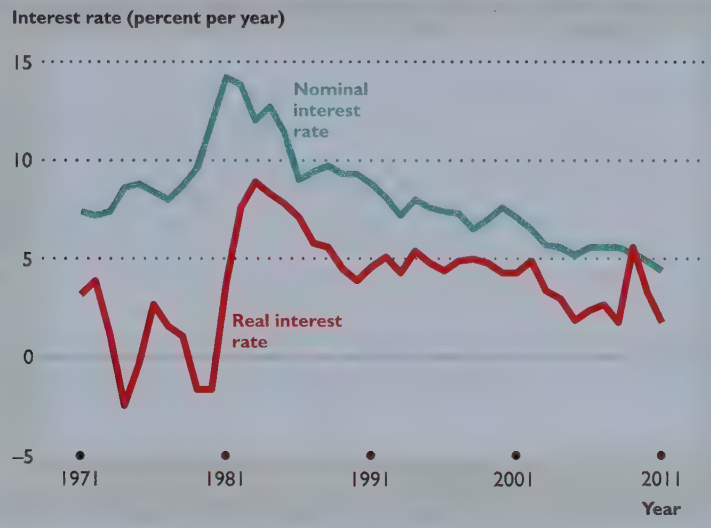
According to Box-Office Mojo, valuing the tickets for *Gone with the Wind* at 2011 movie-ticket prices, it has earned $1,620,000,000, about 4.4 times *Harry Potters'* revenue.

Because Box-Office Mojo uses average ticket prices, the real variable that it compares is the number of tickets sold. The average ticket price in 2011 was $7.96, so 204 million have seen *Gone with the Wind* and 46 million have seen the 2011 Harry Potter movie.

FIGURE 23.5

Nominal and Real Interest Rates: 1971–2011

MyEconLab Real-time data

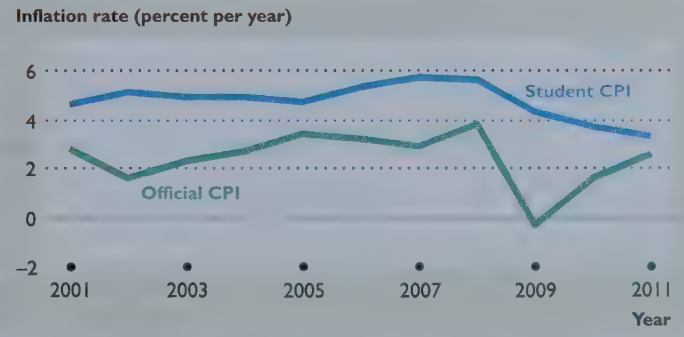


The interest rate shown here is that paid by the safest large corporations on long-term bonds (known as Moody's AAA). The real interest rate equals the nomi-nal interest rate minus the inflation rate. The vertical gap between the nominal interest rate and the real interest rate is the inflation rate. The real interest rate is usually positive, but during the 1970s, it became negative.

SOURCE OF DATA: *Economic Report of the President*, 2011.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

A Student's CPI



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

The CPI measures the percentage change in the average prices paid for the basket of goods and services bought by a typical urban household.

A student is not a typical household. How have the prices of a student's basket of goods and services changed? The answer is by a lot more than those of an average household.

Suppose that a student spends 25 percent of her income on rent, 25 percent on tuition, 25 percent on books and study supplies, 10 percent on food, 10 percent on transportation, and 5 percent on clothing.

We can use these weights and the data collected by the BLS on individual price categories to find the student's CPI and the inflation rate that it implies.

The graph shows this student's inflation rate compared to that of the official CPI. Between 2001 and 2011, a student's CPI rose 28 percent above the official CPI. Rent, textbooks, and tuition are the main items whose prices rose faster than average.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 23.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 23.3

Adjust money values for inflation and calculate real wage rates and real interest rates.

Practice Problems

TABLE 1

Year	Price of gasoline (cents per gallon)	CPI
1971	36	40.5
1981	138	90.9
1991	114	136.2
2001	146	176.6

1. Table 1 shows the price of gasoline and the CPI for four years. The reference base period is 1982–1984. Calculate the real price of gasoline each year. In which year was this real price highest and in which year was it lowest?
2. Ford says it cut its labor costs by 35 percent between 2006 and 2011. Ford's wage rate, including benefits, was $80 an hour in 2006 and $58 an hour in 2011. The CPI was 202 in 2006 and 218 in 2011. Did the real wage rate fall by more or less than 35 percent?
3. Sally worked all year and put her savings into a mutual fund that paid a nominal interest rate of 7 percent a year. During the year, the CPI increased from 165 to 177. What was the real interest rate that Sally earned?

In the News

Inflation can act as a safety valve
Workers will more readily accept a real wage cut that arises from an increase in the CPI than a cut in their nominal wage rate.

Source: FT.com, May 28, 2009

Explain why inflation influences a worker's real wage rate. Why might this observation be true?

Solutions to Practice Problems

TABLE 2

Year	Price of gasoline (cents per gallon)	CPI	Price of gasoline (1982–1984 cents per gallon)
1971	36	40.5	89
1981	138	90.9	152
1991	114	136.2	84
2001	146	176.6	83

1. To calculate the real price, divide the nominal price by the CPI and multiply by 100. Table 2 shows the calculations. The real price was highest in 1981, when it was 152 cents (1982–1984 cents) per gallon. The real price was lowest in 2001, when it was 83 cents (1982–1984 cents) per gallon.
2. The real wage rate in 2006, expressed in dollars of the reference base year, equals ($80 ÷ 202) × 100, or $39.60 an hour. The real wage rate in 2011, expressed in dollars of the reference base year, equals ($58 ÷ 218) × 100, or $26.61 an hour. The real wage rate of these workers fell by 32.8 percent.
3. The inflation rate during the year equals (177 − 165) ÷ 165 × 100 = 7.3 percent. The real interest rate that Sally earned equals the nominal interest rate minus the inflation rate, which is 7.0 − 7.3 = −0.3 percent. Sally's real interest rate was negative. (If Sally had kept her savings in cash, her nominal interest rate would have been zero, and her real interest rate would have been −7.3 percent. She would have been worse off.)

Solution to In the News

The real wage rate equals the (Nominal wage rate ÷ CPI) × 100. Two reasons why a real wage cut from inflation is more acceptable are: A rising CPI *gradually* lowers the real wage rate, while a cut in the nominal wage rate *suddenly* lowers the real wage rate. Inflation lowers everyone's real wage rate but a cut in one worker's nominal wage rate lowers only that worker's real wage rate.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain what the Consumer Price Index (CPI) is and how it is calculated.

- The Consumer Price Index (CPI) is a measure of the average of the prices of the goods and services that an average urban household buys.
- The CPI is calculated by dividing the cost of the CPI market basket in the current period by its cost in the base period and then multiplying by 100.

2 Explain the limitations of the CPI and describe other measures of the price level.

- The CPI does not include all the items that contribute to the cost of living.
- The CPI cannot provide an accurate measure of price changes because of new goods, quality improvements, and substitutions that consumers make when relative prices change.
- Other measures of the price level include the GDP price index, the PCE price index, and the PCE price index excluding food and energy.
- Both the GDP price index and the PCE price index use current information on quantities and to some degree overcome the sources of bias in the CPI.
- The PCE price index excluding food and energy is used to calculate the core inflation rate, which shows the inflation trend.

3 Adjust money values for inflation and calculate real wage rates and real interest rates.

- To adjust a money value (also called a nominal value) for inflation, we express the value in terms of the dollars of a given year.
- To convert a dollar value of year *B* to the dollars of year *A*, multiply the value in year *B* by the price level in year *A* and divide by the price level in year *B*.
- The real wage rate equals the nominal wage rate divided by the CPI and multiplied by 100.
- The real interest rate equals the nominal interest rate minus the inflation rate.

Key Terms

Consumer Price Index, 586
Core inflation rate, 595
Cost of living index, 592
Deflation, 589
GDP price index, 595
Inflation rate, 589
Nominal interest rate, 602
Nominal wage rate, 600
PCE price index, 595
Real interest rate, 602
Real wage rate, 600
Reference base period, 586

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 23 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1 DATA FOR WEEK 1

Item	Quantity	Price (per unit)
Coffee	11 cups	$3.25
DVDs	1	$25.00
Gasoline	15 gallons	$2.50

TABLE 2 DATA FOR WEEK 2

Item	Quantity	Price (per unit)
Coffee	11 cups	$3.25
DVDs	3	$12.50
Gasoline	5 gallons	$3.00
Concert	1 ticket	$95.00

TABLE 3

Item	Price in June (dollars per unit)	Price in July (dollars per unit)
Steak	4.11	4.01
Bread	3.25	3.12
Bacon	3.62	3.64
Milk	2.62	2.62
Tomatoes	1.60	1.62
Apples	1.18	1.19
Bananas	0.62	0.66
Chicken	1.28	1.26
Lettuce	1.64	1.68

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Looking at some travel magazines, you read that the CPI in Turkey in 2008 was 434 and in Russia, it was 224. You do some further investigating and discover that the reference base period in Turkey is 2000 and in Russia it is 2001. The CPI in Russia in 2000 was 82. Calculate the percentage rise in the CPI in Turkey and in Russia from 2000 to 2008.
2. In Brazil, the reference base period for the CPI is 2000. By 2005, prices had risen by 51 percent since the base period. The inflation rate in Brazil in 2006 was 10 percent, and in 2007, the inflation rate was 9 percent. Calculate the CPI in Brazil in 2006 and 2007. Brazil's CPI in 2008 was 173. Did Brazil's inflation rate increase or decrease in 2008?
3. Tables 1 and 2 show the quantities of the goods that Suzie bought and the prices she paid during two consecutive weeks. Suzie's CPI market basket contains the goods she bought in Week 1. Calculate the cost of Suzie's CPI market basket in Week 1 and in Week 2. What percentage of the CPI market basket is gasoline? Calculate the value of Suzie's CPI in Week 2 and her inflation rate in Week 2.

Use the following information to work Problems **4** and **5**.

The GDP price index in the United States in 2000 was about 90, and real GDP in 2000 was $11 trillion (2005 dollars). The GDP price index in 2010 was about 111, and real GDP in 2010 was $13.1 trillion (2005 dollars).

4. Calculate nominal GDP in 2000 and in 2010 and the percentage increase in nominal GDP between 2000 and 2010.
5. What was the percentage increase in production between 2000 and 2010, and by what percentage did the cost of living rise between 2000 and 2010?
6. Table 3 shows the prices that Terry paid for some of his expenditures in June and July 2011. Explain and discuss why these prices might have led to commodity substitution or outlet substitution.
7. In 2010, Annie, an 80-year-old, is telling her granddaughter Mary about the good old days. Annie says that in 1930, you could buy a nice house for $15,000 and a jacket for $5. Mary says that today such a house costs $220,000 and such a jacket costs $70. The CPI in 1930 was 16.7 and in 2010 it was 218.1. Which house and which jacket have the lower prices?

Use the following information to work Problems **8** and **9**.

CPI: Inflation rate picks up in August

The CPI rose 3.8% in August compared to a year earlier. Food prices rose 4.6% and clothing prices were up 4.2%, while new car prices rose 3.8% and medical care was up 3.2%.

Source: CNN Money, September 15, 2011

8. What percentage change in the CPI during the year to August 2011 is accounted for by the changes in the prices of food, clothing, and medical care?
9. Given the changes in the prices of food, clothing, and medical care, by what percentage did the prices of the other items in the CPI basket change?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Made in 1982, *E.T.: The Extra-Terrestrial* earned $435 million at the box office. Made in 1997, *Titanic* earned $601 million. Using BLS data for the CPI in 1982 and 1997, determine which movie had the greater *real* box office revenues.
2. Pete is a student who spends 10 percent of his expenditure on books and supplies, 30 percent on tuition, 30 percent on rent, 10 percent on food and drink, 10 percent on transportation, and the rest on clothing. The price index for each item was 100 in 2000. Table 1 shows the prices in 2011. What is Pete's CPI in 2011? (Hint: The contribution of each item to the CPI is its price weighted by its share of total expenditure.) Did Pete experience a higher or lower inflation rate between 2000 and 2011 than the student whose CPI is shown on p. 603?
3. The people on Coral Island buy only juice and cloth. The CPI market basket contains the quantities bought in 2010. The average household spent $60 on juice and $30 on cloth in 2010 when the price of juice was $2 a bottle and the price of cloth was $5 a yard. In the current year, 2011, juice is $4 a bottle and cloth is $6 a yard. Calculate the CPI and the inflation rate in 2011.
4. Tables 2 and 3 show the quantities of the goods that Harry bought and the prices he paid during two consecutive weeks. Harry's CPI market basket contains the goods he bought in Week 1. Calculate Harry's CPI in Week 2. What was his inflation rate in Week 2?

Use the following information to work Problems **5** and **6**.

The base year is 2005. Real GDP in 2005 was $10 trillion (2005 dollars). The GDP price index in 2009 was 112, and real GDP in 2009 was $11 trillion (2005 dollars).

5. Calculate nominal GDP in 2005 and in 2009 and the percentage increase in nominal GDP from 2005 to 2009.
6. What was the percentage increase in production from 2005 to 2009, and by what percentage did the cost of living rise from 2005 to 2009?
7. In 1988, the average wage rate was $9.45 an hour and in 2008 the average wage rate was $18.00 an hour. The CPI in 1988 was 118.3 and in 2008 it was 215.3. Which real wage rate is higher?
8. Imagine that you are given $1,000 to spend and told that you must spend it all buying items from a Sears catalog. But you do have a choice of catalog. You may select from the 1903 catalog or from Sears.com today. You will pay the prices quoted in the catalog that you choose.

   Which catalog will you choose and why? Refer to any biases in the CPI that might be relevant to your choice.

Use the following information to work Problems **9** and **10**.

Money market funds are yielding almost nothing

Last month, the interest rate on a money market fund averaged 0.08% a year and on 5-year CDs it was 2.6% a year. The inflation rate was 0.1% a year.

Source: *USA Today*, August 12, 2009

9. Calculate the real interest rate on each of these financial assets.
10. To maintain these real interest rates in the coming months, how will these nominal rates change if the inflation rate increases to 0.2 percent a year?

TABLE 1

Item	Price in 2011
Books and supplies	172.6
Tuition	169.0
Rent	159.0
Food and drink	129.8
Transportation	115.4
Clothing	92.9

TABLE 2 DATA FOR WEEK 1

Item	Quantity	Price (per unit)
Coffee	5 cups	$3.00
iTunes songs	5	$1.00
Gasoline	10 gallons	$2.00

TABLE 3 DATA FOR WEEK 2

Item	Quantity	Price (per unit)
Coffee	4 cups	$3.25
iTunes songs	10	$1.00
Gasoline	10 gallons	$3.00

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 23 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The CPI measures the average prices paid by _____ for _____.
   A. urban consumers; a fixed basket of consumption goods and services
   B. urban consumers; the average basket of goods and services they buy
   C. all consumers; housing, transportation, and food
   D. everyone who earns an income; the necessities of life
2. The BLS reported that the CPI in July 2010 was 226. This news tells you that _____.
   A. consumer prices during July were 226 percent higher than they were during the base year
   B. the CPI inflation rate in July was 26 percent a year
   C. consumer prices rose by 26 percent during the month of July
   D. the prices of consumption goods and services have risen, on average, by 126 percent since the base year
3. When the price level _____ the inflation rate _____.
   A. rises rapidly; increases
   B. rises rapidly; is high
   C. falls; is zero
   D. rises slowly; falls
4. The CPI bias arises from all of the following items *except* _____.
   A. the introduction of new goods and services
   B. the improved quality of goods
   C. the goods and services bought by poor people
   D. consumers' responses to price changes
5. Of the alternative measures of the price level, _____ overcomes the bias of the CPI and is a better measure of the cost of living because it _____.
   A. GDP price index; uses a current basket
   B. PCE price index; uses a current basket of all consumption goods
   C. PCE price index excluding food and energy; is less volatile
   D. GDP price index; includes all goods and services bought by Americans
6. If nominal GDP increases by 5 percent a year and the GDP price index rises by 2 percent a year, then real GDP increases by _____.
   A. 7 percent a year
   B. 3 percent a year
   C. 2.5 percent a year
   D. 10 percent a year
7. When the CPI increases from 200 in 2010 to 210 in 2011 and the nominal wage rate is constant at $10 an hour, the real wage rate _____.
   A. increases by 10 percent
   B. increases to $15 an hour
   C. decreases by 5 percent
   D. is $10 an hour
8. When the price level is rising at _____ and the real interest rate is 1 percent a year, the nominal interest rate is 3 percent a year.
   A. 4 percent a year
   B. 3 percent a year
   C. 2 percent a year
   D. 1 percent a year

Why do Americans earn more and produce more than Europeans?

Potential GDP and the Natural Unemployment Rate

24

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1 Explain what determines potential GDP.

2 Explain what determines the natural unemployment rate.

MACROECONOMIC APPROACHES AND PATHWAYS

In the three previous chapters, you learned how economists define and measure real GDP, employment and unemployment, the price level, and the inflation rate—the key variables that *describe* macroeconomic performance. Your task in this chapter and those that follow is to learn the *macroeconomic theory* that *explains* macroeconomic performance and provides the basis for *policies* that might improve it.

The macroeconomic theory that we present is today's consensus view on how the economy works. But it isn't the view of all macroeconomists. Today's consensus is a merger of three earlier schools of thought that have sharply contrasting views about the causes of recessions and the best policies for dealing with them. Some economists continue to identify with these schools of thought, and the severity of the 2008–2009 recession and slow recovery intensified debate and gave economists of all shades of opinion a platform from which to present their views.

We begin with an overview of the three schools of thought from which today's consensus has emerged.

The Three Main Schools of Thought

The three main schools of macroeconomic thought are:

- Classical macroeconomics
- Keynesian macroeconomics
- Monetarist macroeconomics

Classical Macroeconomics

Classical macroeconomics
The view that the market economy works well, that aggregate fluctuations are a natural consequence of an expanding economy, and that government intervention cannot improve the efficiency of the market economy.

According to **classical macroeconomics,** markets work well and deliver the best available macroeconomic performance. Aggregate fluctuations are a natural consequence of an expanding economy with rising living standards, and government intervention can only hinder the ability of the market to allocate resources efficiently. The first classical macroeconomists included Adam Smith, David Ricardo, and John Stuart Mill, all of whom worked in the 18th and 19th centuries. Modern day classical economists include the 2004 Nobel Laureates Edward C. Prescott of the University of Arizona and Finn E. Kydland of Carnegie-Mellon University and the University of California at Santa Barbara.

Classical macroeconomics fell into disrepute during the Great Depression of the 1930s, a time when many people believed that *capitalism,* the political system of private ownership, free markets, and democratic political institutions, could not survive and began to advocate *socialism,* a political system based on state ownership of capital and central economic planning.

Classical macroeconomics predicted that the Great Depression would eventually end but offered no method for ending it more quickly.

Keynesian Macroeconomics

Keynesian macroeconomics
The view that the market economy is inherently unstable and needs active government intervention to achieve full employment and sustained economic growth.

According to **Keynesian macroeconomics,** the market economy is inherently unstable and requires active government intervention to achieve full employment and sustained economic growth. One person, John Maynard Keynes, and his book *The General Theory of Employment, Interest, and Money,* published in 1936, began this school of thought. Keynes' theory was that depression and high unemployment occur when households don't spend enough on consumption goods and services

and businesses don't spend enough investing in new capital. That is, too little *private* spending is the cause of depression (and recession). To counter the problem of too little private spending, *government* spending must rise.

This Keynesian view picked up many followers and by the 1950s it was the mainstream, but it lost popularity during the inflationary 1970s when it seemed ever more remote from the problems of that decade. The global recession of 2008–2009 and the fear of another great depression revived interest in Keynesian ideas and brought a new wave of attacks on classical macroeconomics with Nobel Laureate Paul Krugman leading the charge in the columns of the *New York Times*.

Monetarist Macroeconomics

According to **monetarist macroeconomics,** the *classical* view of the world is broadly correct but in addition to fluctuations that arise from the normal functioning of an expanding economy, fluctuations in the quantity of money generate the business cycle. A slowdown in the growth rate of money brings recession and a large decrease in the quantity of money brought the Great Depression.

Monetarist macroeconomics
The view that the market economy works well, that aggregate fluctuations are a natural consequence of an expanding economy, but that fluctuations in the quantity of money generate the business cycle.

Milton Friedman, intellectual leader of the Chicago School of economists during the 1960s and 1970s, was the most prominent monetarist. The view that monetary contractions are the sole source of recessions and depressions is held by few economists today. But the view that the quantity of money plays a role in economic fluctuations is accepted by all economists and is part of today's consensus.

Today's Consensus

Each of the earlier schools provides insights and ingredients that survive in today's consensus. *Classical* macroeconomics provides the story of the economy at or close to full employment. But the classical approach doesn't explain how the economy performs in the face of a major slump in spending.

Keynesian macroeconomics takes up the story in a recession or depression. When spending is cut and the demand for most goods and services and the demand for labor all decrease, prices and wage rates don't fall but the quantity of goods and services sold and the quantity of labor employed do fall and the economy goes into recession. In a recession, an increase in spending by governments, or a tax cut that leaves people with more of their earnings to spend, can help to restore full employment.

Monetarist macroeconomics elaborates the Keynesian story by emphasizing that a contraction in the quantity of money brings higher interest rates and borrowing costs, which are a major source of cuts in spending that bring recession. Increasing the quantity of money and lowering the interest rate in a recession can help to restore full employment. And keeping the quantity of money growing steadily in line with the expansion of the economy's production possibilities can help to keep inflation in check and can also help to moderate the severity of a recession.

Another component of today's consensus is the view that the *long-term* problem of economic growth is more important than the *short-term* problem of recessions. Take a look at *Eye on the U.S. Economy,* on p. 612, and you will see why. Even a small slowdown in economic growth brings a huge cost in terms of a permanently lower level of income per person. This cost is much larger than that arising from the income lost during recessions. But the costs of recessions are serious because they are concentrated on those who are unemployed.

The Road Ahead

This book bases your tour of macroeconomics on the new consensus. We begin in this chapter and the two that follow by explaining what determines potential GDP and the pace at which it grows. We then study money and explain what brings inflation. Finally, we explain how real and monetary forces interact to bring about the business cycle. We also explain the policy tools available to governments and central banks to improve macroeconomic performance.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

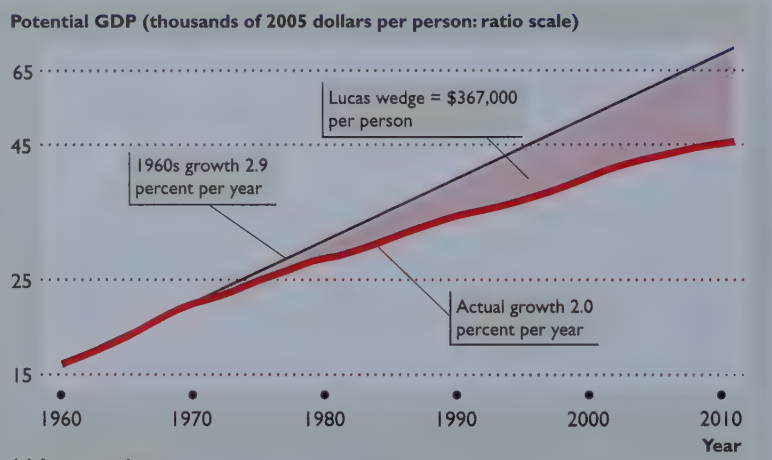
The Lucas Wedge and the Okun Gap

During the 1960s, U.S. real GDP per person grew at a rate of 2.9 percent a year. The black line in part (a) shows the path that would have been followed if this growth rate had been maintained. After 1970, growth slowed to 2.0 percent per year and the red line shows the path that potential GDP followed. University of Chicago economist Robert E. Lucas, Jr. pointed out the large output loss that resulted from this growth slowdown. Part (a) shows this loss as the *Lucas wedge*, which is equivalent to a staggering $367,000 per person or more than 8 years' income.

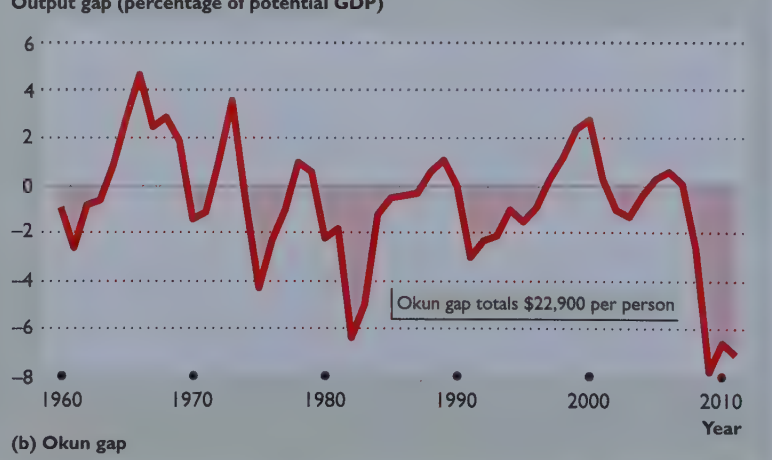
Real GDP fluctuates around potential GDP and when the output gap is negative, output is lost. Brookings Institution economist Arthur B. Okun drew attention to this loss. Part (b) shows this loss as the *Okun gap*, which is equivalent to $22,900 per person or about 6 months' income.

Smoothing the business cycle and eliminating the Okun gap has a big payoff. But finding ways of restoring real GDP growth to its 1960s rate has a vastly bigger payoff.

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Congressional Budget Office.



(a) Lucas wedge



(b) Okun gap

24.1 POTENTIAL GDP

Potential GDP is the value of real GDP when all the economy's factors of production—labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability—are fully employed. It is vital to understand the forces that determine potential GDP for three reasons. First, when the economy is *at* full employment, real GDP equals potential GDP; so actual real GDP is determined by the same factors that determine potential GDP. Second, real GDP can exceed potential GDP only temporarily as it approaches and then recedes from a business cycle peak. So potential GDP is the *sustainable* upper limit of production. Third, real GDP fluctuates around potential GDP, which means that on the average over the business cycle, real GDP equals potential GDP.

Potential GDP
The value of real GDP when all the economy's factors of production—labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability—are fully employed.

We produce the goods and services that make up real GDP by using the *factors of production:* labor and human capital, physical capital, land (and natural resources), and entrepreneurship. At any given time, the quantities of capital, land, and entrepreneurship and the state of technology are fixed. But the quantity of labor is not fixed. It depends on the choices that people make about the allocation of time between work and leisure. So with fixed quantities of capital, land, and entrepreneurship and fixed technology, real GDP depends on the quantity of labor employed. To describe this relationship between real GDP and the quantity of labor employed, we use a relationship that is similar to the production possibilities frontier, which is called the production function.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Potential GDP in the United States and European Union

In 2010, real GDP in the United States was $59 per hour worked. In 14 major European economies, real GDP averaged only $52 per hour worked—a gap of 13 percent. (Both numbers are measured in 2010 U.S. dollars.) Part (a) of the figure shows this difference.

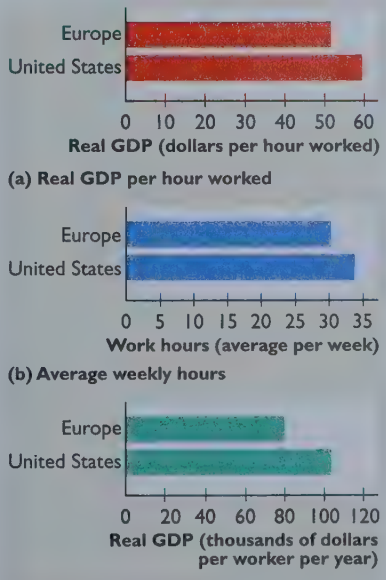
Not only do Americans produce more per hour than Europeans, they work longer hours too. In 2010, Americans worked an average of 34 hours per week while Europeans worked only an average of 30 hours per week—a difference of more than 13 percent. Part (b) of the figure shows this difference.

Europeans achieve their shorter work hours by taking longer vacations and having more sick days than Americans.

The combination of greater production per hour and longer work hours translates into a substantially larger real GDP per worker in the United States than in Europe.

In 2010, real GDP per worker in the United States was $103,000 while in Europe it was only $80,000—a gap of more than 20 percent.

This chapter enables you to understand the sources of these differences in wage rates, work hours, and production.


Europe
United States
0 10 20 30 40 50 60
Real GDP (dollars per hour worked)
(a) Real GDP per hour worked
Europe
United States
0 5 10 15 20 25 30 35
Work hours (average per week)
(b) Average weekly hours
Europe
United States
0 20 40 60 80 100 120
Real GDP (thousands of dollars per worker per year)
(c) Real GDP per worker

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

The Production Function

Production function
A relationship that shows the maximum quantity of real GDP that can be produced as the quantity of labor employed changes and all other influences on production remain the same.

The **production function** is a relationship that shows the maximum quantity of real GDP that can be produced as the quantity of labor employed changes and all other influences on production remain the same. Figure 24.1 shows a production function, which is the curve labeled *PF*.

In Figure 24.1, 100 billion labor hours can produce a real GDP of $9 trillion (at point *A*); 200 billion hours can produce a real GDP of $13 trillion (at point *B*); and 300 billion hours can produce a real GDP of $16 trillion (at point *C*).

The production function shares a feature of the *production possibilities frontier* that you studied in Chapter 3 (p. 60). Like the *PPF*, the production function is a boundary between the attainable and the unattainable. It is possible to produce at any point along the production function and beneath it in the shaded area. But it is not possible to produce at points above the production function. Those points are unattainable.

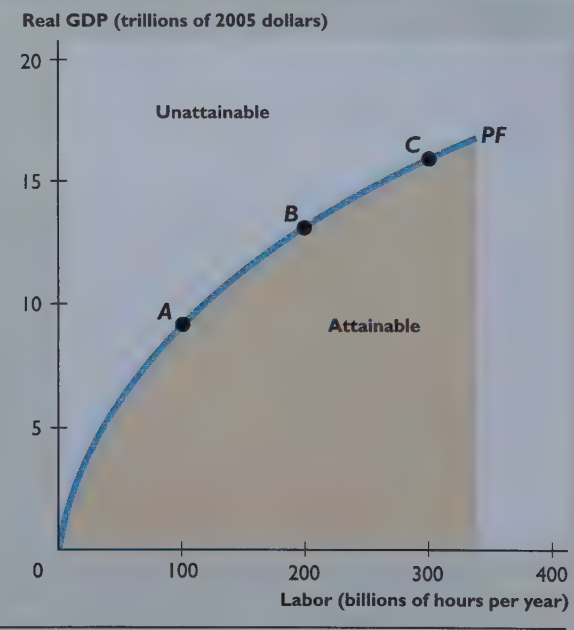
Diminishing returns
The tendency for each additional hour of labor employed to produce a successively smaller additional amount of real GDP.

The production function displays **diminishing returns**—each additional hour of labor employed produces a successively smaller additional amount of real GDP. The first 100 billion hours of labor produces $9 trillion of real GDP. The second 100 billion hours of labor increases real GDP from $9 trillion to $13 trillion, so the

FIGURE 24.1
The Production Function
MyEconLab Animation

The production function shows the maximum quantity of real GDP that can be produced as the quantity of labor employed changes and all other influences on production remain the same. In this example, 100 billion hours of labor can produce $9 trillion of real GDP at point *A*, 200 billion hours of labor can produce $13 trillion of real GDP at point *B*, and 300 billion hours of labor can produce $16 trillion of real GDP at point *C*.

The production function separates attainable combinations of labor hours and real GDP from unattainable combinations and displays diminishing returns: Each additional hour of labor produces a successively smaller additional amount of real GDP.



Labor (billions of hours per year)	100	200	300
Real GDP (trillions of 2005 dollars)	9	13	16
	A	*B*	*C*

second 100 billion hours produces only an additional $4 trillion of real GDP. The third 100 billion hours of labor increases real GDP from $13 trillion to $16 trillion, so the third 100 billion hours produces only an additional $3 trillion of real GDP.

Diminishing returns arise because the quantity of capital (and other factors of production) is fixed. As more labor is hired, the additional output produced decreases because the extra workers have less capital with which to work. For example, a forest service has three chain saws and an axe and hires three workers to clear roads and trails of fallen trees and debris during the spring thaw. Hiring a fourth worker will contribute less to the amount cleared than the amount that the third worker added, and hiring a fifth worker will add even less.

Because real GDP depends on the quantity of labor employed, potential GDP depends on the production function and the quantity of labor employed. To find potential GDP, we must understand what determines the quantity of labor employed.

The Labor Market

You've already studied the tool that we use to determine the quantity of labor employed: demand and supply. In macroeconomics, we apply the concepts of demand, supply, and market equilibrium to the economy-wide labor market.

The quantity of labor employed depends on firms' decisions about how much labor to hire (the demand for labor). It also depends on households' decisions about how to allocate time between employment and other activities (the supply of labor). And it depends on how the labor market coordinates the decisions of firms and households (labor market equilibrium). So we will study

- The demand for labor
- The supply of labor
- Labor market equilibrium

The Demand for Labor

The **quantity of labor demanded** is the total labor hours that all the firms in the economy plan to hire during a given time period at a given real wage rate. The **demand for labor** is the relationship between the quantity of labor demanded and the real wage rate when all other influences on firms' hiring plans remain the same. The lower the real wage rate, the greater is the quantity of labor demanded.

Quantity of labor demanded
The total labor hours that all the firms in the economy plan to hire during a given time period at a given real wage rate.

Demand for labor
The relationship between the quantity of labor demanded and the real wage rate when all other influences on firms' hiring plans remain the same.

The real wage rate is the *nominal wage rate* (the dollars per hour that people earn on average) divided by the price level (see Chapter 23, p. 600). We express the real wage rate in constant dollars—today in 2005 dollars. Think of the real wage rate as the quantity of real GDP that an hour of labor earns.

The lower the real wage rate, the greater is the quantity of labor that firms find it profitable to hire. The real wage rate influences the quantity of labor demanded because what matters to firms is not the number of dollars they pay for an hour of labor (the nominal wage rate) but how much output they must sell to earn those dollars. So firms compare the extra output that an hour of labor can produce with the real wage rate.

If an additional hour of labor produces at least as much additional output as the real wage rate, a firm hires that labor. At a small quantity of labor, an extra hour of labor produces more output than the real wage rate. But each additional hour of labor produces less additional output than the previous hour. As a firm hires more labor, eventually the extra output from an extra hour of labor equals the real wage rate. This equality determines the quantity of labor demanded at the real wage rate.

The Demand for Labor in a Soda Factory You might understand the demand for labor better by thinking about a single firm rather than the economy as a whole. Suppose that the money wage rate is $15 an hour and that the price of a bottle of soda is $1.50. For the soda factory, the real wage rate is a number of bottles of soda. To find the soda factory's real wage rate, divide the money wage rate by the price of its output—$15 an hour ÷ $1.50 a bottle. The real wage rate is 10 bottles of soda an hour. It costs the soda factory 10 bottles of soda to hire an hour of labor. As long as the soda factory can hire labor that produces more than 10 additional bottles of soda an hour, it is profitable to hire more labor. Only when the extra output produced by an extra hour of labor falls to 10 bottles an hour has the factory reached the profit-maximizing quantity of labor.

Labor Demand Schedule and Labor Demand Curve We can represent the demand for labor as either a demand schedule or a demand curve. The table in Figure 24.2 shows part of a demand for labor schedule. It tells us the quantity of labor demanded at three different real wage rates. For example, if the real wage rate is $50 an hour (row *B*), the quantity of labor demanded is 200 billion hours a year. If the real wage rate rises to $80 an hour (row *A*), the quantity of labor demanded decreases to 100 billion hours a year. And if the real wage rate falls to $25 an hour (row *C*), the quantity of labor demanded increases to 300 billion hours a year.

Figure 24.2 shows the demand for labor curve. Points *A*, *B*, and *C* on the demand curve correspond to rows *A*, *B*, and *C* of the demand schedule.

FIGURE 24.2

The Demand for Labor

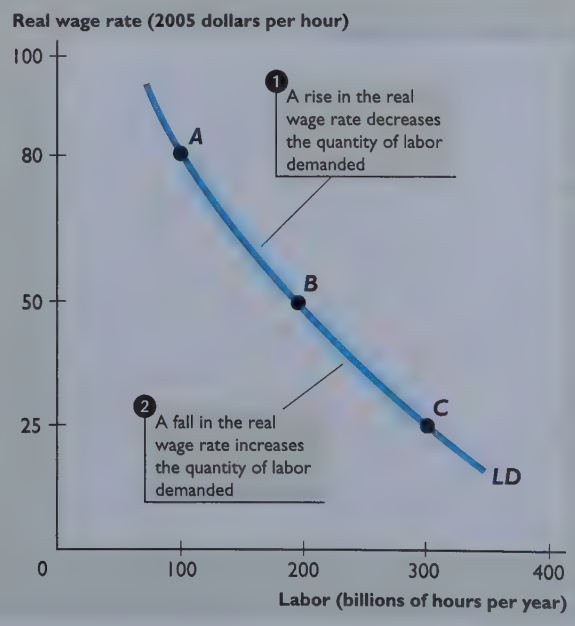
MyEconLab Animation

Firms are willing to hire labor only if the labor produces more than its real wage rate. So the lower the real wage rate, the more labor firms can profitably hire and the greater is the quantity of labor demanded.

At a real wage rate of $50 an hour, the quantity of labor demanded is 200 billion hours at point *B*.

1. If the real wage rate rises to $80 an hour, the quantity of labor demanded decreases to 100 billion hours at point *A*.
2. If the real wage rate falls to $25 an hour, the quantity of labor demanded increases to 300 billion hours at point *C*.

	Real wage rate (2005 dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor demanded (billions of hours per year)
A	80	100
B	50	200
C	25	300



The Supply of Labor

The **quantity of labor supplied** is the number of labor hours that all the households in the economy plan to work during a given time period at a given real wage rate. The **supply of labor** is the relationship between the quantity of labor supplied and the real wage rate when all other influences on work plans remain the same.

Quantity of labor supplied
The number of labor hours that all the households in the economy plan to work during a given time period at a given real wage rate.

Supply of labor
The relationship between the quantity of labor supplied and the real wage rate when all other influences on work plans remain the same.

We can represent the supply of labor as either a supply schedule or a supply curve. The table in Figure 24.3 shows a supply of labor schedule. It tells us the quantity of labor supplied at three different real wage rates. For example, if the real wage rate is $50 an hour (row *B*), the quantity of labor supplied is 200 billion hours a year. If the real wage rate falls to $25 an hour (row *A*), the quantity of labor supplied decreases to 100 billion hours a year. And if the real wage rate rises to $75 an hour (row *C*), the quantity of labor supplied increases to 300 billion hours a year.

Figure 24.3 shows the supply of labor curve. It corresponds to the supply schedule, and the points *A*, *B*, and *C* on the supply curve correspond to the rows *A*, *B*, and *C* of the supply schedule.

The real wage rate influences the quantity of labor supplied because what matters to people is not the number of dollars they earn but what those dollars will buy.

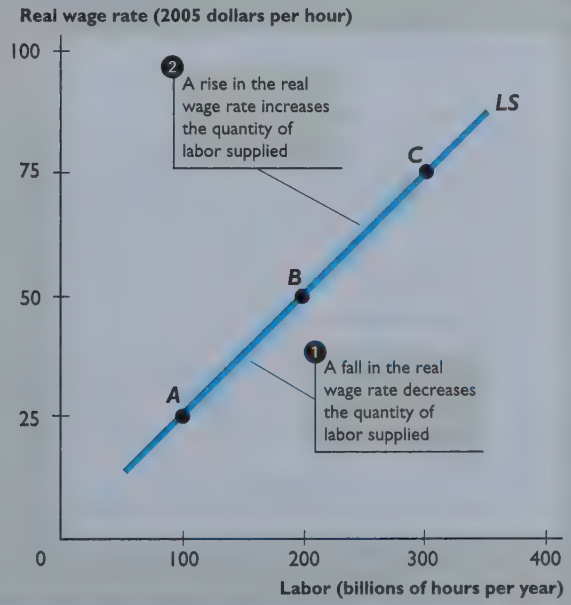
The quantity of labor supplied increases as the real wage rate increases for two reasons:

- Hours per person increase.
- Labor force participation increases.

FIGURE 24.3
The Supply of Labor

MyEconLab Animation

	Real wage rate (2005 dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor supplied (billions of hours per year)
C	75	300
B	50	200
A	25	100



Households are willing to supply labor only if the real wage rate is high enough to attract them from other activities. The higher the real wage rate, the greater is the quantity of labor supplied.

At a real wage rate of $50 an hour, the quantity of labor supplied is 200 billion hours at point *B*.

1. If the real wage rate falls to $25 an hour, the quantity of labor supplied decreases to 100 billion hours at point *A*.
2. If the real wage rate rises to $75 an hour, the quantity of labor supplied increases to 300 billion hours at point *C*.

Hours per Person The real wage rate is the opportunity cost of taking leisure and not working. As the opportunity cost of taking leisure rises, other things remaining the same, households choose to work more. But other things don't remain the same. A higher real wage rate brings a higher income, which increases the demand for leisure and encourages less work.

So a rise in the real wage rate has two opposing effects. But for most households, the opportunity cost effect is stronger than the income effect, so a rise in the real wage rate brings an increase in the quantity of labor supplied.

Labor Force Participation Most people have productive opportunities outside the labor force and choose to work only if the real wage rate exceeds the value of other productive activities. For example, a parent might spend time caring for her or his child. The alternative is day care. The parent will choose to work only if he or she can earn enough per hour to pay the cost of day care and have enough left to make the work effort worthwhile. The higher the real wage rate, the more likely it is that a parent will choose to work and so the greater is the labor force participation rate.

Other Influences on Labor Supply Decisions Many factors other than the real wage rate influence labor supply decisions and influence the position of the labor supply curve. Income taxes and unemployment benefits are two of these factors.

The work-leisure decision depends on the *after-tax* wage rate—the wage rate actually received by the household. So, for a given wage rate, the income tax decreases the after-tax wage rate and the quantity of labor supplied decreases. The result is a decrease in the supply of labor. (The income tax rate doesn't change the demand for labor because for the employer, the cost of labor is the before-tax wage rate.)

Unemployment benefits lower the cost of searching for a job and encourage unemployed workers to take longer to find the best job available. The result is a decrease in the supply of labor.

Higher income tax rates and more generous unemployment benefits decrease the supply of labor—the labor supply curve lies farther to the left.

Let's now see how the labor market determines employment, the real wage rate, and potential GDP.

Labor Market Equilibrium

The forces of supply and demand operate in labor markets just as they do in the markets for goods and services. The price of labor services is the real wage rate. A rise in the real wage rate eliminates a shortage of labor by decreasing the quantity demanded and increasing the quantity supplied. A fall in the real wage rate eliminates a surplus of labor by increasing the quantity demanded and decreasing the quantity supplied. If there is neither a shortage nor a surplus, the labor market is in equilibrium.

Figure 24.4(a) shows the labor market equilibrium. The demand curve and the supply curve are the same as those in Figures 24.2 and 24.3. In part (a), if the real wage rate is less than $50 an hour, the quantity of labor demanded exceeds the quantity supplied and there is a shortage of labor. In this situation, the real wage rate rises.

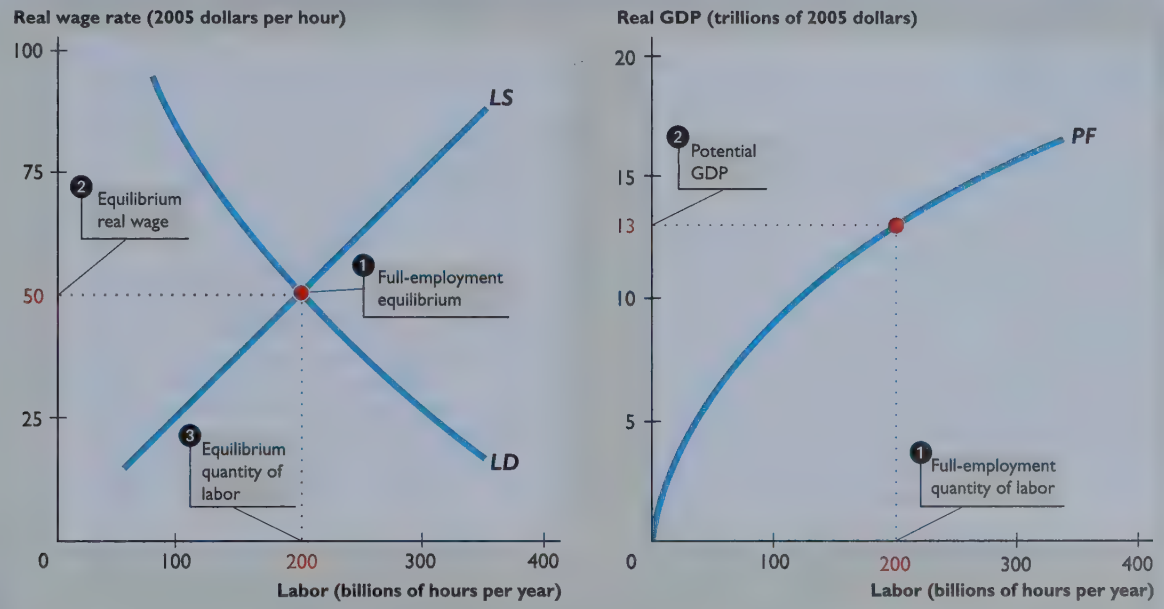
If the real wage rate exceeds $50 an hour, the quantity of labor supplied exceeds the quantity demanded and there is a surplus of labor. In this situation, the real wage rate falls.

If the real wage rate is $50 an hour, the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity supplied and there is neither a shortage nor a surplus of labor. In this

FIGURE 24.4

Labor Market Equilibrium and Potential GDP

MyEconLab Animation



1 Full employment occurs when the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity of labor supplied. 2 The equilibrium real wage rate is $50 an hour, and 3 the equilibrium quantity of labor employed is 200 billion hours a year.

Potential GDP is the real GDP produced on the production function by the full-employment quantity of labor. 1 The full-employment quantity of labor, 200 billion hours a year, produces a 2 potential GDP of $13 trillion.

situation, the labor market is in equilibrium and the real wage rate remains constant. The equilibrium quantity of labor is 200 billion hours a year. When the equilibrium quantity of labor is employed, the economy is at full employment. So the full-employment quantity of labor is 200 billion hours a year.

Full Employment and Potential GDP

When the labor market is in equilibrium, the economy is at full employment and real GDP equals potential GDP.

You've seen that the quantity of real GDP depends on the quantity of labor employed. The production function tells us how much real GDP a given amount of employment can produce. Now that we've determined the full-employment quantity of labor, we can find potential GDP.

Figure 24.4(b) shows the relationship between labor market equilibrium and potential GDP. The equilibrium quantity of labor employed in Figure 24.4(a) is 200 billion hours. The production function in Figure 24.4(b) tells us that 200 billion hours of labor produces $13 trillion of real GDP. This quantity of real GDP is potential GDP.

EYE on U.S. POTENTIAL GDP

Why Do Americans Earn More and Produce More Than Europeans?

The quantity of capital per worker is greater in the United States than in Europe, and U.S. technology, on the average, is more productive than European technology.

These differences between the United States and Europe mean that U.S. labor is more productive than European labor.

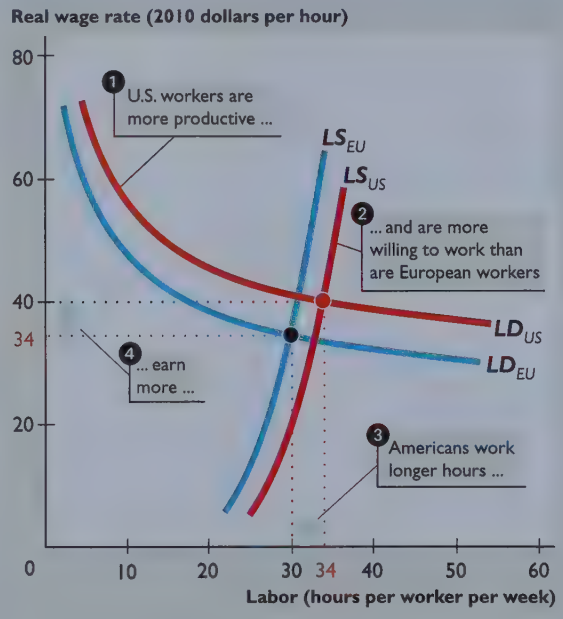
Because U.S. labor is more productive than European labor, U.S. employers are willing to pay more for a given quantity of labor than European employers are. So the demand for labor curve in the United States, LD_{US}, lies to the right of the European demand for labor curve, LD_{EU}, in part (a) of the figure.

This difference in the productivity of labor also means that the U.S. production function, PF_{US}, lies above the European production function, PF_{EU}, in part (b) of the figure.

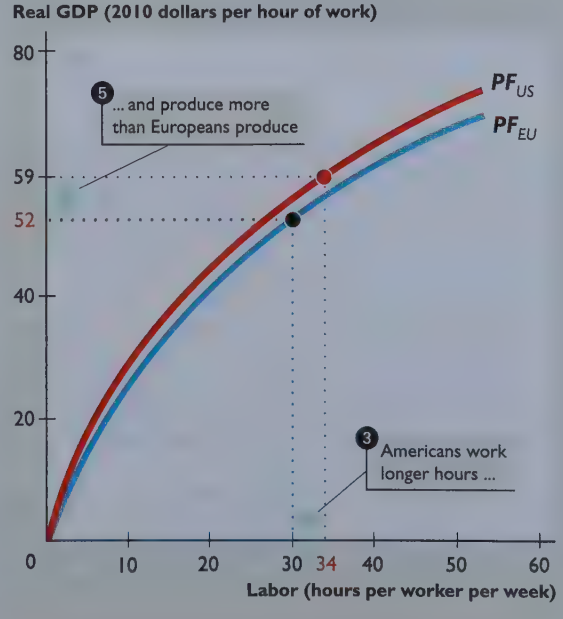
Higher income taxes and unemployment benefits in Europe mean that to induce a person to take a job, a firm in Europe must offer a higher wage rate than a firm in the United States has to offer. So the European labor supply curve, LS_{EU}, lies to the left of the U.S. labor supply curve, LS_{US}.

Equilibrium employment is higher in the United States than in Europe—Americans work longer hours—and the equilibrium real wage rate is higher in the United States than in Europe.

Potential GDP is higher in the United States than in Europe for two reasons: U.S. workers are more productive per hour of work and they work longer hours than Europeans.



(a) Labor market in Europe and the United States



(b) Production function in Europe and the United States

CHECKPOINT 24.1

Explain what determines potential GDP.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 24.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problem

1. Table 1 describes an economy's production function and demand for labor.

TABLE 1

Quantity of labor demanded (billions of hours per year)	0	1	2	3	4
Real GDP (billions of 2005 dollars)	0	40	70	90	100
Real wage rate (2005 dollars per hour)	50	40	30	20	10

Table 2 describes the supply of labor in this economy.

TABLE 2

Quantity of labor supplied (billions of hours per year)	0	1	2	3	4
Real wage rate (2005 dollars per hour)	10	20	30	40	50

Use the data in Tables 1 and 2 to make graphs of the labor market and production function. What are the equilibrium real wage rate and employment? What is potential GDP?

In the News

Chevron signs $73b gas deal

Gorgon, Chevron's huge liquefied natural gas project, is finally going forward. The company, along with Exxon Mobil and Shell, will produce natural gas off the northwest coast of Australia. Gorgon and surrounding fields hold an estimated 40 trillion cubic feet of natural gas, the equivalent of 6.7 billion barrels of oil. Gorgon is located for easy shipment to Asia and will employ 10,000 workers.

Source: Radio Australia, September 10, 2009

Explain how this huge project will influence Australia's potential GDP and U.S. potential GDP.

Solution to Practice Problem

1. The demand for labor is a graph of the first and last row of Table 1 and the supply of labor is a graph of the data in Table 2 (Figure 1). The production function is a graph of the first two rows of Table 1 (Figure 2).

   Labor market equilibrium occurs when the real wage rate is $30 an hour and 2 billion hours of labor are employed (Figure 1). Potential GDP is the real GDP produced by the equilibrium quantity of labor (2 billion hours in Figure 1). Potential GDP is $70 billion (Figure 2).

Solution to In the News

Australia's potential GDP will increase, but U.S. potential GDP will not change. Accessing these new resources will shift Australia's production function upward. With no change in employment, real GDP would increase. But the project will increase the demand for labor, increase the full-employment quantity of labor, and increase potential GDP. Even though this project is undertaken by U.S. firms, the production takes place in Australia. Neither the U.S. production function nor the demand for labor in the United States changes, so the project has no effect on U.S. potential GDP.

FIGURE 1

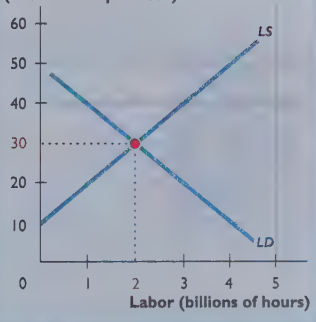
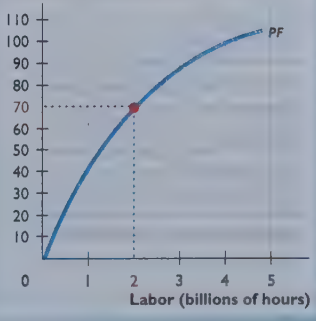


FIGURE 2



24.2 THE NATURAL UNEMPLOYMENT RATE

So far, we've focused on the forces that determine the real wage rate, the quantity of labor employed, and real GDP at full employment. We're now going to bring unemployment into the picture.

You learned in Chapter 22 that the BLS measures the amount of unemployment by counting the number of people who do not have a job, are willing to work, and have looked for work in the past 4 weeks. And you learned how we classify unemployment as frictional, structural, or cyclical. Finally, you learned that when the economy is at full employment, all the unemployment is frictional or structural and the unemployment rate is called the *natural unemployment rate.*

Measuring, describing, and classifying unemployment tell us a lot about it. But these activities do not *explain* the amount of unemployment that exists or why the unemployment rate changes over time and varies across economies.

Many forces interact to determine the unemployment rate. Understanding these forces is a challenging task. Economists approach this task in two steps. The first step is to understand what determines the natural unemployment rate—the unemployment rate when the economy is at full employment. The second step is to understand what makes unemployment fluctuate around the natural unemployment rate. In this chapter, we take the first of these steps. We take the second step in Chapters 29–31 when we study economic fluctuations.

EYE on the PAST

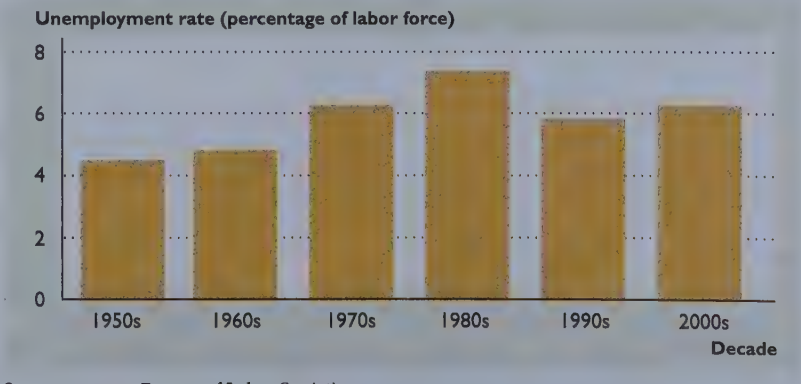
Average Unemployment Rates over Six Decades

If we look back at the U.S. economy decade by decade, we can see through some of the ups and downs of the business cycle and reveal the broad trends. By looking at the average unemployment rates across the decades, we get an estimate of movements in the natural unemployment rate.

The figure shows these averages. During the 1950s and 1960s, the unemployment rate averaged less than 5 percent. During the 1970s, the average unemployment rate climbed to 6 percent, and in the 1980s, it climbed to more than 7 percent. The 1990s saw the average unemployment rate fall but not quite back to the rate of the 1950s and 1960s.

High cyclical unemployment since 2008 swells the 2000s average.

You will be a member of the labor force of the 2010s. The average unemployment rate of the second decade of the 2000s will have a big effect on your job market success.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

To understand the amount of frictional and structural unemployment that exists at the natural unemployment rate, economists focus on two fundamental causes of unemployment that cut across the frictional-structural classification. These two fundamental causes of unemployment are

- Job search
- Job rationing

Job Search

Job search is the activity of looking for an acceptable vacant job. Because the labor market is in a constant state of change, there are always some people who have not yet found suitable jobs and who are actively searching. The failure of businesses destroys jobs. The expansion of businesses and the startup of new businesses create jobs. As people pass through different stages of life, some enter or reenter the labor market, others leave their jobs to look for better ones, and others retire. This constant churning in the labor market means that there are always some people looking for jobs, and these people are part of the unemployed.

Job search
The activity of looking for an acceptable vacant job.

The amount of job search depends on a number of factors that change over time. The main ones are

- Demographic change
- Unemployment benefits
- Structural change

Demographic Change

An increase in the proportion of the population that is of working age brings an increase in the entry rate into the labor force and an increase in the unemployment rate. This factor was important in the U.S. labor market during the 1970s. The bulge in the birth rate that occurred in the late 1940s and early 1950s increased the proportion of new entrants into the labor force during the 1970s and brought an increase in the unemployment rate.

As the birth rate declined, the bulge moved into higher age groups and the proportion of new entrants declined during the 1990s. During this period, the unemployment rate decreased.

Another source of demographic change has been an increase in the number of households with two incomes. When unemployment comes to one of these workers, it is possible, with income still flowing in, to take longer to find a new job. This factor might have increased frictional unemployment.

Unemployment Benefits

The opportunity cost of job search influences the length of time that an unemployed person spends searching for a job. With no unemployment benefits, the opportunity cost of job search is high, and a person is likely to accept a job that is found quickly. With generous unemployment benefits, the opportunity cost of job search is low, and a person is likely to spend a considerable time searching for the ideal job.

Generous unemployment benefits are a large part of the story of high unemployment rates in Europe and some other countries such as Canada—see *Eye on the Global Economy* on p. 624.

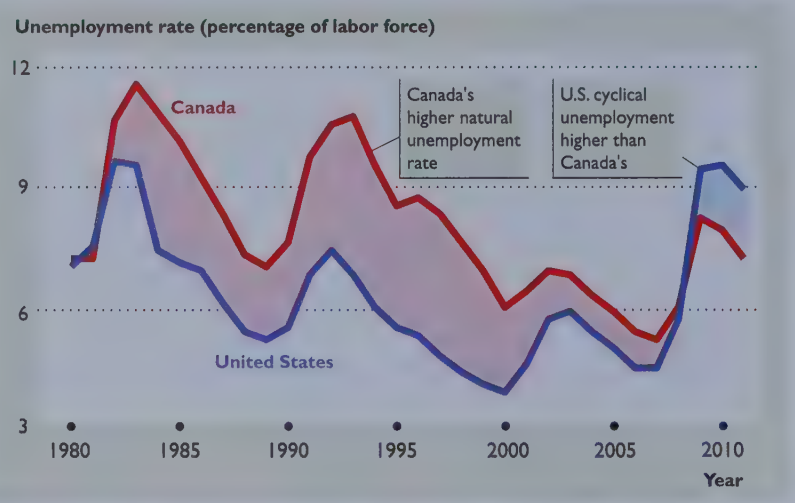
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Unemployment Benefits and the Natural Unemployment Rate

The gap between U.S. and Canadian unemployment rates provides information about the influence of unemployment benefits. The two unemployment rates followed similar cycles, but the Canadian unemployment rate exceeded the U.S. rate, which suggests that the natural unemployment rate was higher in Canada than in the United States.

Why? In 1980, Canadian unemployment benefits increased and are available to all the unemployed. In the United States only 38 percent of the unemployed receive benefits.

U.S. unemployment benefits were extended to provide a further 20 weeks of income to the unemployed during the last recession and this change contributed to narrowing the Canada–U.S. unemployment gap. But cyclical unemployment increased in the United States by more than in Canada and was the main source of the reversal of the gap between the two unemployment rates.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics and Statistics Canada.

Structural Change

Technological change influences unemployment. Sometimes it brings a structural slump, a condition in which some industries and even regions contract while other industries and regions flourish. When these events occur, labor turnover is high, job search increases, and the natural unemployment rate rises.

At other times, technological change brings a structural boom. It creates new jobs that are a good match for the people who are losing their jobs. When these events occur, labor turnover might be high, but job search decreases because new jobs are found quickly, and the natural unemployment rate falls. The Internet economy of the 1990s is an example of a structural boom. Lots of new jobs were created in every major population center, and those jobs were a good match for the skills available, so the natural unemployment rate decreased.

Job Rationing

Job rationing
A situation that arises when the real wage rate is above the full-employment equilibrium level.

Job rationing occurs when the real wage rate is above the full-employment equilibrium level. You have learned that markets allocate scarce resources by adjusting the market price to bring buying plans and selling plans into balance. You can think of the market as *rationing* scarce resources. In the labor market, the real wage rate rations employment and therefore rations jobs. Changes in the real wage rate keep the number of people seeking work and the number of jobs available in balance. But the real wage rate is not the only possible instrument for rationing jobs.

In some industries, the real wage rate is set above the full-employment equilibrium level, which brings a surplus of labor. In these labor markets, jobs are rationed by some other means.

The real wage rate might be set above the full-employment equilibrium level for three reasons:

- Efficiency wage
- Minimum wage
- Union wage

Efficiency Wage

An **efficiency wage** is a real wage rate that is set above the full-employment equilibrium wage rate to induce a greater work effort. The idea is that if a firm pays only the going market average wage, employees have no incentive to work hard because they know that even if they are fired for slacking off, they can find a job with another firm at a similar wage rate. But if a firm pays *more* than the going market average wage, employees have an incentive to work hard because they know that if they are fired, they *cannot* expect to find a job with another firm at a similar wage rate.

Efficiency wage
A real wage rate that is set above the full-employment equilibrium wage rate to induce greater work effort.

Further, by paying an efficiency wage, a firm can attract the most productive workers. Also, its workers are less likely to quit their jobs, so the firm faces a lower rate of labor turnover and lower training costs. Finally, the firm's recruiting costs are lower because it always faces a steady stream of available new workers.

Paying an efficiency wage is costly, so only those firms that can't directly monitor the work effort of their employees use this device. For example, truck drivers and plant maintenance workers might receive efficiency wages. If enough firms pay an efficiency wage, the average real wage rate will exceed the full-employment equilibrium level.

The Minimum Wage

A **minimum wage law** is a government regulation that makes hiring labor for less than a specified wage illegal. If the minimum wage is set below the equilibrium wage, the minimum wage has no effect. The minimum wage law and market forces are not in conflict. But if a minimum wage is set above the equilibrium wage, the minimum wage is in conflict with market forces and unemployment arises.

Minimum wage law
A government regulation that makes hiring labor for less than a specified wage illegal.

The current federal minimum wage is $7.25 an hour, and the minimum wage has a major effect in the markets for low-skilled labor. Because skill grows with work experience, teenage labor is particularly affected by the minimum wage.

Union Wage

A **union wage** is a wage rate that results from collective bargaining between a labor union and a firm. Because a union represents a group of workers, it can usually achieve a wage rate that exceeds the level that would prevail in a competitive labor market.

Union wage
A wage rate that results from collective bargaining between a labor union and a firm.

For the United States, it is estimated that, on average, union wage rates are 30 percent higher than nonunion wage rates. But this estimate probably overstates the true effects of labor unions on the wage rate. In some industries, union wages are higher than nonunion wages because union members do jobs that require greater skill than nonunion jobs. In these cases, even without a union, those workers would earn a higher wage.

One way to calculate the effects of unions is to examine the wages of union and nonunion workers who do nearly identical work. For workers with similar

skill levels, the union-nonunion wage difference is between 10 and 25 percent. For example, pilots who are members of the Air Line Pilots Association earn about 25 percent more than nonunion pilots with the same level of skill.

Labor unions are much more influential in Europe than in the United States. In Europe, unions not only achieve wage rates above those of a competitive market but also have broad political influence on labor market conditions.

Job Rationing and Unemployment

Whether because of efficiency wages, a minimum wage law, or the actions of labor unions, if the real wage rate is above the full-employment equilibrium level, the natural unemployment rate increases. The above-equilibrium real wage rate decreases the quantity of labor demanded and increases the quantity of labor supplied.

Figure 24.5 illustrates job rationing and the frictional and structural unemployment it creates. The full-employment equilibrium real wage rate is $50 an hour, and the equilibrium quantity of labor is 200 billion hours a year. The existence of efficiency wages, the minimum wage, and union wages raises the economy's average real wage rate to $60 an hour. At this wage rate, the quantity of labor demanded decreases to 175 billion hours and the quantity of labor supplied increases to 240 billion hours. Firms ration jobs and choose the workers to hire on the basis of criteria such as education and previous job experience. The labor market is like a game of musical chairs in which a large number of chairs have been removed. So the quantity of labor supplied persistently exceeds the quantity demanded, and additional unemployment arises from job rationing.

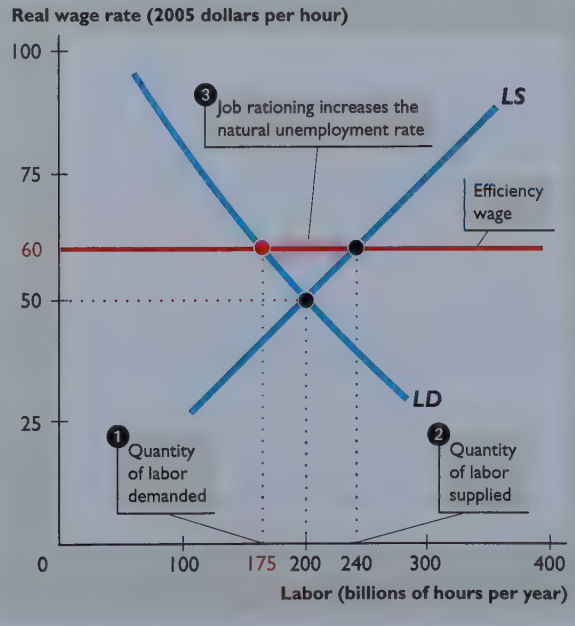
FIGURE 24.5

Job Rationing Increases the Natural Unemployment Rate

MyEconLab Animation

The full-employment equilibrium real wage rate is $50 an hour. Efficiency wages, the minimum wage, and union wages put the average real wage rate above the full-employment equilibrium level—at $60 an hour.

1. The quantity of labor demanded decreases to 175 billion hours.
2. The quantity of labor supplied increases to 240 billion hours.
3. A surplus of labor arises and increases the natural unemployment rate.

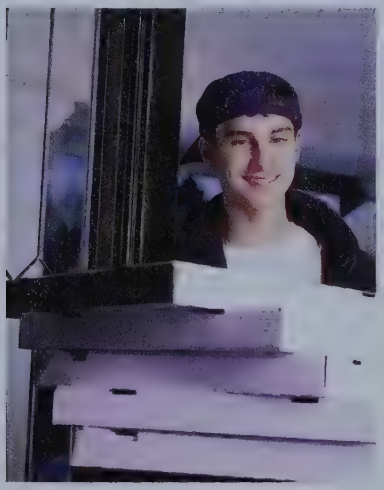


EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

The Federal Minimum Wage

The Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938 set the federal minimum wage in the United States at 25¢ an hour. Over the years, the minimum wage has increased, and in 2011 it was $7.25 an hour. Although the minimum wage has increased, it hasn't kept up with the rising cost of living.

The figure shows the real minimum wage rate in 2005 dollars. You can see that during the late 1960s, the real minimum wage in 2005 dollars was $9 an hour. It decreased during the 1970s and 1980s and has fluctuated around an average of about $6 an hour since the mid-1980s.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Natural Unemployment

You will encounter natural unemployment at many points in your life.

If you now have a job, you probably went through a spell of natural unemployment as you searched for it.

When you graduate and look for a full-time job, you will most likely spend some more time searching for the best match for your skills and location preferences.

In today's world of rapid technological change, most of us must retool and change our jobs at least once and for many of us, more than once.

You might know an older worker who has recently lost a job and is going through the agony of figuring out what to do next.

Although natural unemployment can be painful for people who experience it, from a social perspective, it is productive. It enables scarce labor resources to be *re*-allocated to their most valuable uses.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 24.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 24.2

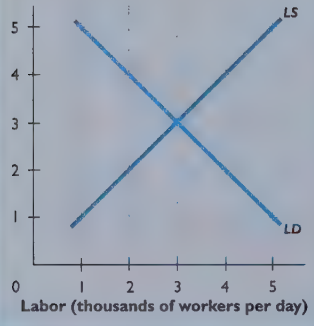
Explain what determines the natural unemployment rate.

Practice Problems

During the past 50 years, Singapore has seen huge changes: rapid population growth and the introduction of newer and newer technologies. Singapore has modest unemployment benefits, no minimum wage, and weak labor unions.

1. Does Singapore's unemployment arise mainly from job search or job rationing?
2. Which of the factors listed above suggest that Singapore has a higher natural unemployment rate than the United States and which suggest that Singapore has a lower natural unemployment rate?
3. Figure 1 illustrates the labor market in an economy in which at full employment, 1,000 people a day job search. What is the equilibrium real wage rate and employment? Calculate the natural unemployment rate.

FIGURE 1



In the News

The minimum wage increases again

A minimum wage increase provides a silver lining for part-time workers, as employers choose to promote more from within the firm than from outside. Low-skilled and youth workers who are employed gain, but for unemployed teenage workers, job prospects look grim.

Source: laborlawcenter.com

Explain why some part-time workers, low-skilled workers, and youth workers gain and why unemployed teenagers find it hard to get jobs.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Singapore's unemployment arises mainly from job search. Of the sources of job rationing (efficiency wages, minimum wages, and union wages) only efficiency wages applies.
2. Singapore's rapid population growth and the introduction of new technologies increase the amount of job search —factors that increase the natural unemployment rate.

   Singapore has modest unemployment benefits, which limit the amount of job search, and no minimum wage and weak labor unions, which limit the amount of job rationing—factors that lower the natural unemployment rate
3. Labor market equilibrium determines the equilibrium real wage rate at $3 an hour and full employment at 3,000 workers. Unemployment is 1,000, so the labor force is 4,000 and the natural unemployment rate equals $(1{,}000 \div 4{,}000) \times 100$, or 25 percent.

Solution to In the News

When the government raises the minimum wage, firms retain those workers who produce at least as much output per hour as the minimum wage rate. Job experience helps part-time and low-skilled employees retain their jobs, but teenagers with no experience will find it hard to get jobs.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain what determines potential GDP.

- Potential GDP is the quantity of real GDP that the full-employment quantity of labor produces.
- The production function describes the relationship between real GDP and the quantity of labor employed when all other influences on production remain the same. As the quantity of labor increases, real GDP increases.
- The quantity of labor demanded increases as the real wage rate falls, other things remaining the same.
- The quantity of labor supplied increases as the real wage rate rises, other things remaining the same.
- At full-employment equilibrium, the real wage rate makes the quantity of labor demanded equal the quantity of labor supplied.

2 Explain what determines the natural unemployment rate.

- The unemployment rate at full employment is the natural unemployment rate.
- Unemployment is always present because of job search and job rationing.
- Job search is influenced by demographic change, unemployment benefits, and structural change.
- Job rationing arises from an efficiency wage, the minimum wage, and a union wage.

Key Terms

Classical macroeconomics, 610
Demand for labor, 615
Diminishing returns, 614
Efficiency wage, 625
Job rationing, 624
Job search, 623
Keynesian macroeconomics, 610
Minimum wage law, 625
Monetarist macroeconomics, 611
Potential GDP, 613
Production function, 614
Quantity of labor demanded, 615
Quantity of labor supplied, 617
Supply of labor, 617
Union wage, 625

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 24 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Use the following list of events that occur one at a time in the United States to work Problems **1** to **4**.

- Dell introduces a new supercomputer that everyone can afford.
- A major hurricane hits Florida.
- More high school graduates go to college.
- The CPI rises.
- An economic slump in the rest of the world decreases U.S. exports.

1. Sort the items into four groups: those that change the production function, those that change the demand for labor, those that change the supply of labor, and those that do not change the production function, the demand for labor, or the supply of labor. Say in which direction any changes occur.

2. Which of the events increase the equilibrium quantity of labor and which decrease it?

3. Which of the events raise the real wage rate and which lower it?

4. Which of the events increase potential GDP and which decrease it?

Use the information set out in Table 1 and Table 2 about the economy of Athabasca to work Problems **5** and **6**.

TABLE 1 PRODUCTION FUNCTION

Labor hours (millions)	Real GDP (millions of 2005 dollars)
0	0
1	10
2	19
3	27
4	34
5	40

TABLE 2 LABOR MARKET

Real wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor demanded (millions of hours per year)	Quantity of labor supplied (millions of hours per year)
10	1	5
9	2	4
8	3	3
7	4	2
6	5	1

5. Calculate the quantity of labor employed, the real wage rate, and potential GDP.

6. If the labor force participation increases, explain how employment, the real wage rate, and potential GDP change.

Use the following information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

Suppose that the United States cracks down on illegal immigrants and returns millions of workers to their home countries.

7. Explain how the U.S. real wage rate, U.S. employment, and U.S. potential GDP would change.

8. In the countries to which the immigrants return, explain how employment, the real wage rate, and potential GDP would change.

9. Two island economies, Cocoa Island and Plantation Island, are identical in every respect except one. A survey tells us that at full employment, people on Cocoa Island spend 1,000 hours a day on job search, while the people on Plantation Island spend 2,000 hours a day on job search. Which economy has the greater potential GDP? Which has the higher real wage rate? And which has the higher natural unemployment rate?

10. Jobs starting to open up, but companies picky with hiring
The Job Openings and Labor Turnover Survey indicated the number of job openings rose 33% in the year ended in August 2010, while hirings edged up 4%. The data appear to show many firms see rising demand and want to hire but hold off for various reasons.

Source: *USA Today*, October 11, 2010

Compare U.S. labor market openings and hirings in August 2010 with that in August 2009. If hiring picks up, explain how U.S. employment, real GDP, and potential GDP will change.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

Use the following information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

In Korea, real GDP per hour of labor is $22, the real wage rate is $15 per hour, and people work an average of 46 hours per week.

1. Draw a graph of the demand for and supply of labor in Korea and the United States. Mark a point at the equilibrium quantity of labor per person per week and the real wage rate in each economy. Explain the difference in the two labor markets.

2. Draw a graph of the production functions in Korea and the United States. Mark a point on each production function that shows potential GDP per hour of work in each economy. Explain the difference in the two production functions.

Use the following list of events that occur one at a time to work Problems **3** to **6**.

- The Middle East cuts supplies of oil to the United States.
- The New York Yankees win the World Series.
- U.S. labor unions negotiate wage hikes that affect all workers.
- A huge scientific breakthrough doubles the output that an additional hour of U.S. labor can produce.
- Migration to the United States increases the working-age population.

3. Sort the items into four groups: those that change the production function, those that change the demand for labor, those that change the supply of labor, and those that do not change the production function, the demand for labor, or the supply of labor. Say in which direction each change occurs.

4. Which of the events increase the equilibrium quantity of labor and which decrease the equilibrium quantity of labor?

5. Which of the events raise the real wage rate and which of the events lower the real wage rate?

6. Which of the events increase potential GDP and which decrease potential GDP?

Use the information set out in Table 1 and Table 2 about the economy of Nautica to work Problems **7** and **8**.

7. What is the quantity of labor employed, potential GDP, the real wage rate, and total labor income?

8. Suppose that the government introduces a minimum wage of $0.80 an hour. What is the real wage rate, the quantity of labor employed, potential GDP, and unemployment? Does the unemployment arise from job search or job rationing? Is the unemployment cyclical? Explain.

9. Fixing up for the fall show

Businesses damaged by flooding from Tropical Storm Irene are under pressure to rebuild and reopen this week as Vermont's peak leaf-peeping season begins. Not everyone is cheering. Vermont's recovery hasn't reached every road, and the rebuilding work will persist long after the maple leaves fall.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 21, 2011

Explain the effect of Tropical Storm Irene on employment across Vermont. Did Vermont move along its production function or did its production function shift? How did Vermont's potential GDP change?

TABLE 1 PRODUCTION FUNCTION

Labor hours (per day)	Real GDP (2005 dollars per year)
0	0
10	100
20	180
30	240
40	280

TABLE 2 LABOR MARKET

Real wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor demanded (hours per day)	Quantity of labor supplied (hours per day)
1.00	10	50
0.80	20	40
0.60	30	30
0.40	40	20

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 24 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. U.S. potential GDP is the value of the goods and services produced in the United States _____.
   A. in the reference base year
   B. when the U.S. unemployment rate is zero
   C. when the U.S. economy is at full employment
   D. when the U.S. inflation rate is zero
2. The demand for labor curve shows the relationship between _____.
   A. the quantity of labor employed and firms' profits
   B. all households' willingness to work and the real wage rate
   C. the quantity of labor businesses are willing to hire and the real wage rate
   D. the labor force and the real wage rate
3. The supply of labor is the relationship between _____.
   A. the quantity of labor supplied and leisure time forgone
   B. the real wage rate and the quantity of labor supplied
   C. firms' willingness to supply jobs and the real wage rate
   D. the labor force participation rate and the real wage rate
4. Households' labor supply decisions are influenced by all of the following *except* _____.
   A. the opportunity cost of taking leisure and not working
   B. the after-tax wage rate
   C. unemployment benefits
   D. the number of full-time jobs available
5. The full-employment quantity of labor _____.
   A. increases if labor becomes more productive
   B. cannot increase because everyone who wants a job has one
   C. increases as the economy moves along its production function
   D. decreases if the income tax rate decreases
6. The natural unemployment rate _____.
   A. increases if unemployment benefits become more generous
   B. increases in a recession
   C. increases as the average age of the labor force rises
   D. decreases as firms outsource manufacturing jobs
7. Job rationing _____.
   A. increases the natural unemployment rate
   B. has no effect on the natural unemployment rate
   C. increases labor turnover as firms compete for high quality labor
   D. decreases the demand for labor, which lowers the real wage rate
8. An efficiency wage results in all of the following *except* _____.
   A. a decrease in the rate of labor turnover
   B. an increase in the full-employment quantity of labor
   C. greater work effort
   D. an increase in the cost of monitoring work effort

Why are some nations rich and others poor?

25

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

Economic Growth

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define and calculate the economic growth rate, and explain the implications of sustained growth.
2. Explain the sources of labor productivity growth.
3. Review the theories of economic growth.
4. Describe policies that speed economic growth.

25.1 THE BASICS OF ECONOMIC GROWTH

Economic growth
A sustained expansion of production possibilities.

Economic growth is a sustained expansion of production possibilities. Maintained over decades, rapid economic growth can transform a poor nation into a rich one. Such has been the experience of Hong Kong, South Korea, Taiwan, and some other Asian economies. Slow economic growth or the absence of growth can condemn a nation to devastating poverty. Such has been the fate of Sierra Leone, Somalia, Zambia, and much of the rest of Africa.

Economic growth is different from the rise in incomes that occurs during the recovery from a recession. Economic growth is a sustained trend, not a temporary cyclical expansion.

Calculating Growth Rates

Economic growth rate
The annual percentage change of real GDP.

We express the **economic growth rate** as the annual percentage change of real GDP. To calculate this growth rate, we use the formula:

$$\text{Growth rate of real GDP} = \frac{\text{Real GDP in current year} - \text{Real GDP in previous year}}{\text{Real GDP in previous year}} \times 100.$$

For example, if real GDP in the current year is $8.4 trillion and if real GDP in the previous year was $8.0 trillion, then

$$\text{Growth rate of real GDP} = \frac{\$8.4\,\text{trillion} - \$8.0\,\text{trillion}}{\$8.0\,\text{trillion}} \times 100 = 5\,\text{percent}.$$

The growth rate of real GDP tells us how rapidly the total economy is expanding. This measure is useful for telling us about potential changes in the balance of economic power among nations, but it does not tell us about changes in the standard of living.

Real GDP per person
Real GDP divided by the population.

The standard of living depends on **real GDP per person** (also called *per capita real GDP*), which is real GDP divided by the population. So the contribution of real GDP growth to the change in the *standard of living* depends on the growth rate of real GDP per person. We use the above formula to calculate this growth rate, replacing real GDP with real GDP per person.

Suppose, for example, that in the current year, when real GDP is $8.4 trillion, the population is 202 million. Then real GDP per person in the current year is $8.4 trillion divided by 202 million, which equals $41,584. And suppose that in the previous year, when real GDP was $8.0 trillion, the population was 200 million. Then real GDP per person in that year was $8.0 trillion divided by 200 million, which equals $40,000.

Use these two values of real GDP per person with the growth formula to calculate the growth rate of real GDP per person. That is,

$$\text{Growth rate of real GDP per person} = \frac{\$41{,}584 - \$40{,}000}{\$40{,}000} \times 100 = 4\,\text{percent}.$$

We can also calculate the growth rate of real GDP per person by using the formula:

$$\text{Growth rate of real GDP per person} = \text{Growth rate of real GDP} - \text{Growth rate of population.}$$

In the example you've just worked through, the growth rate of real GDP is 5 percent. The population changes from 200 million to 202 million, so

$$\text{Growth rate of population} = \frac{202\,\text{million} - 200\,\text{million}}{200\,\text{million}} \times 100 = 1\,\text{percent}$$

and

$$\text{Growth rate of real GDP per person} = 5\,\text{percent} - 1\,\text{percent} = 4\,\text{percent.}$$

This formula makes it clear that real GDP per person grows only if real GDP grows faster than the population grows. If the growth rate of the population exceeds the growth of real GDP, then real GDP per person falls.

The Magic of Sustained Growth

Sustained growth of real GDP per person can transform a poor society into a wealthy one. The reason is that economic growth is like compound interest. Suppose that you put $100 in the bank and earn 5 percent a year interest on it. After one year, you have $105. If you leave that money in the bank for another year, you earn 5 percent interest on the original $100 and on the $5 interest that you earned last year. You are now earning interest on interest! The next year, things get even better. Then you earn 5 percent on the original $100 and on the interest earned in the first year and the second year. Your money in the bank is *growing* at a rate of 5 percent a year. Before too many years have passed, you'll have $200 in the bank. But after *how many* years?

The answer is provided by a formula known as the **Rule of 70,** which states that the number of years it takes for the level of any variable to double is approximately 70 divided by the annual percentage growth rate of the variable. Using the Rule of 70, you can now calculate how many years it takes your $100 to become $200. It is 70 divided by 5, which is 14 years.

Rule of 70
The number of years it takes for the level of any variable to double is approximately 70 divided by the annual percentage growth rate of the variable.

The Rule of 70 applies to any variable, so it applies to real GDP per person. Table 25.1 shows the doubling time for a selection of other growth rates. You can see that real GDP per person doubles in 70 years (70 divided by 1)—an average human life span—if the growth rate is 1 percent a year. It doubles in 35 years if the growth rate is 2 percent a year and in just 10 years if the growth rate is 7 percent a year.

TABLE 25.1 GROWTH RATES

Growth rate (percent per year)	Years for level to double
1	70
2	35
3	23
4	18
5	14
6	12
7	10
8	9
9	8
10	7

We can use the Rule of 70 to answer other questions about economic growth. For example, in 2010, U.S. real GDP per person was approximately 4 times that of China. China's recent growth rate of real GDP per person was 7 percent a year. If this growth rate were to be maintained, how long would it take China's real GDP per person to reach that of the United States in 2010?

The answer, provided by the Rule of 70, is 20 years. China's real GDP per person doubles in 10 (70 divided by 7) years. It doubles again to 4 times its current level in another 10 years. So after 20 years of growth at 7 percent a year—that is by 2030—China's real GDP per person would be 4 times its current level and equal to that of the United States in 2010.

EYE on the PAST

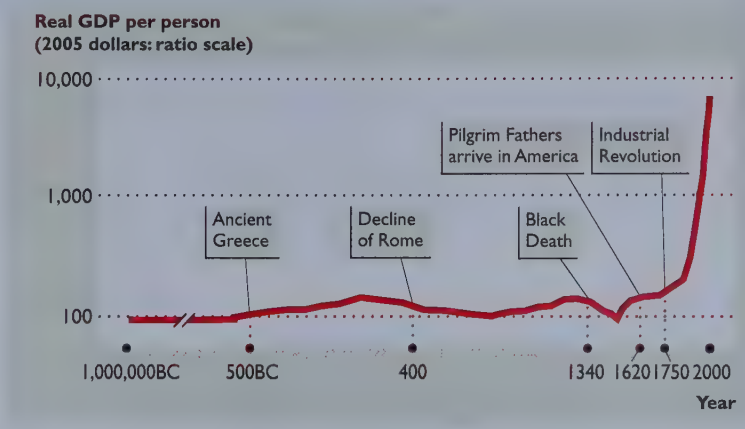
How Fast Has Real GDP per Person Grown?

Professor Michael Kremer of Harvard University and Professor J. Bradford DeLong of the University of California, Berkeley, have constructed an extraordinary picture of real GDP in the global economy going back one million years. According to their numbers, human societies lived for a million years with no economic growth.

The top figure shows the numbers using the value of the dollar in 2005 as the measuring rod. Real GDP per person averaged $150 a year from 1,000,000 BC until 1620! It rose to $190 when Aristotle and Plato were teaching in Athens, around 500 BC, but slipped back over the next thousand years to $140 as the Roman Empire collapsed around 400 AD. When the Black Death gripped Europe in the 1340s, incomes fell to a 1-million-year low and even when the Pilgrim Fathers began to arrive in America in the 1620s, incomes were still the same as those of Ancient Greece!

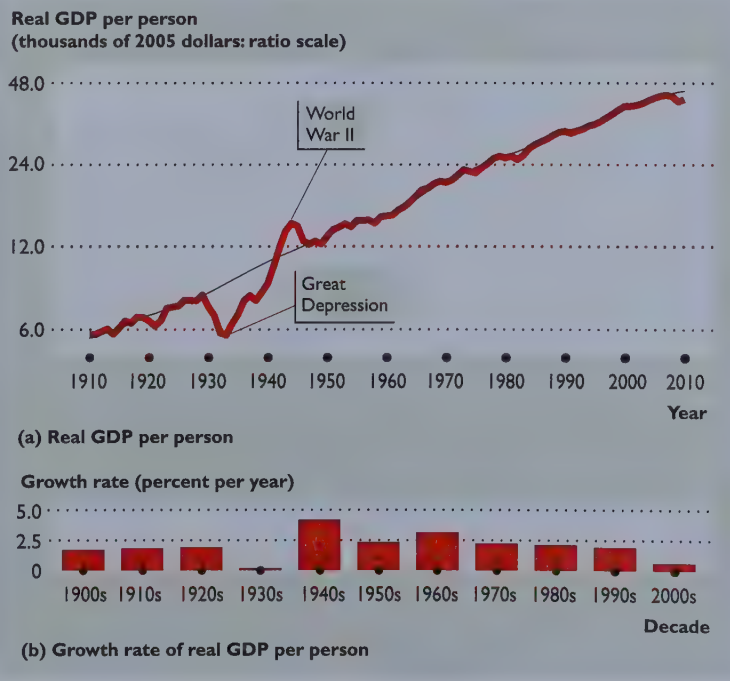
Then, beginning around 1750, first in England and then in Europe and the United States, an astonishing change known as the Industrial Revolution occurred. Real GDP per person began to increase, apparently without limit. By 1850, real GDP per person was twice its 1650 level. By 1950, it was more than five times its 1850 level, and by 2000, it was four times its 1950 level.

The lower figure gives you a close-up view of U.S. real GDP per person over the past 100 years. In 2009, real GDP per person was almost eight times its level in 1909. It has grown by 2 percent a year, but the growth rate has been uneven: Almost no growth in the 1930s and the fastest growth in the 1940s. Measured decade by decade, growth has slowed since the 1960s.



SOURCE OF DATA: J. Bradford DeLong, *"Estimating World GDP, One Million B.C.—Present."*

The growth rate between 2000 and 2010 is lower than that in any decade except the 1930s. But the reason is not that potential GDP growth slowed. Rather, it is because there was a deep recession in 2008 and 2009. If we measure the growth rate of *potential* GDP, the 2000s had a higher growth rate than the 1990s.



SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

CHECKPOINT 25.1

Define and calculate the economic growth rate, and explain the implications of sustained growth.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 25.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Mexico's real GDP was 8,762 billion pesos in 2010 and 9,105 billion pesos in 2011. Mexico's population growth rate in 2011 was 1 percent. Calculate Mexico's economic growth rate in 2011 and the growth rate of real GDP per person in Mexico in 2011.
2. Calculate the approximate number of years it will take for real GDP per person to double if an economy maintains an economic growth rate of 12 percent a year and a population growth rate of 2 percent a year.
3. Calculate the change in the number of years it will take for real GDP per person in India to double if the growth rate of real GDP per person increases from 8 percent a year to 10 percent a year.

In the News

ADB reduces China growth estimate

Since 1980 China's real GDP per person has grown at 10 percent a year. The Asian Development Bank (ADB) cut its estimate for China's growth to 9.3 percent this year.

Source: Bloomberg, September 13, 2011

If China's growth rate remains at 9.3 percent a year, how many additional years will it take for China to double its real GDP per person?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Mexico's economic growth rate in 2011 was 3.9 percent. The economic growth rate equals the percentage change in real GDP:
   [(Real GDP in 2011 − Real GDP in 2010) ÷ Real GDP in 2010] × 100, which is [(9,105 billion − 8,762 billion) ÷ 8762 billion] × 100, or 3.9 percent.
   The growth rate of real GDP per person equals 2.9 percent.
   Growth rate of real GDP per person equals (Growth rate of real GDP minus Population growth rate), which is (3.9 percent − 1 percent), or 2.9 percent.
2. It will take 7 years for real GDP per person to double. The growth rate of real GDP per person equals the economic growth rate minus the population growth rate. Real GDP per person grows at 12 percent minus 2 percent, which is 10 percent a year. The Rule of 70 tells us that the level of a variable that grows at 10 percent a year will double in 70 ÷ 10 years, or 7 years.
3. Two years. The Rule of 70 tells us that a variable that grows at 8 percent a year will double in 70 ÷ 8 years, which is approximately 9 years. By increasing its growth rate to 10 percent a year, the variable will double in 7 years.

Solution to In the News

With a growth rate of 10 percent a year, real GDP per person will double in 7 years (70 ÷ 10). If the growth rate is maintained at 9.3 per cent a year, real GDP per person will double in 7.5 years (70 ÷ 9.3)—taking an additional 0.5 year.

25.2 LABOR PRODUCTIVITY GROWTH

Real GDP grows when the quantities of the factors of production grow or when persistent advances in technology make them increasingly productive. To understand what determines the growth rate of real GDP, we must understand what determines the growth rates of the factors of production and the rate of increase in their productivity. You're going to see how saving and investment determine the growth rate of physical capital and how the growth of physical capital and human capital and advances in technology interact to determine the economic growth rate.

We are interested in real GDP growth because it contributes to improvements in our standard of living. But our standard of living improves only if we produce more goods and services with each hour of labor. So our main concern is to understand the forces that make our labor more productive. Let's start by defining labor productivity.

Labor Productivity

Labor productivity
The quantity of real GDP produced by one hour of labor.

Labor productivity is the quantity of real GDP produced by one hour of labor. It is calculated by using the formula:

$$\text{Labor productivity} = \frac{\text{Real GDP}}{\text{Aggregate hours}}.$$

For example, if real GDP is $8,000 billion and if aggregate hours are 200 billion, then we can calculate labor productivity as

$$\text{Labor productivity} = \frac{\$8{,}000\,\text{billion}}{200\,\text{billion hours}} = \$40\,\text{per hour}.$$

When labor productivity grows, real GDP per person grows. So the growth in labor productivity is the basis of the rising standard of living. What makes labor productivity grow? We'll answer this question by considering the influences on labor productivity growth under two broad headings:

- Saving and investment in physical capital
- Expansion of human capital and discovery of new technologies

These two broad influences on labor productivity growth interact and are the sources of the extraordinary growth in productivity during the past 200 years. Although they interact, we'll begin by looking at each on its own.

Saving and Investment in Physical Capital

Saving and investment in physical capital increase the amount of capital per worker and increase labor productivity. Labor productivity took a dramatic upturn when the amount of capital per worker increased during the Industrial Revolution. Production processes that use hand tools can create beautiful objects, but production methods that use large amounts of capital per worker, such as auto plant assembly lines, enable workers to be much more productive. The accumulation of capital on farms and building sites; in textile factories, iron foundries and steel mills, coal mines, chemical plants, and auto plants; and at banks and insurance companies added incredibly to the productivity of our labor.

A strong and experienced farm worker of 1830, using a scythe, could harvest 3 acres of wheat a day. A farm worker of 1831, using a mechanical reaper, could harvest 15 acres a day. And a farm worker of today, using a combine harvester, can harvest and thresh hundreds of acres a day.

The next time you see a movie set in the old West, look carefully at how little capital there is. Try to imagine how productive you would be in such circumstances compared with your productivity today.

Capital Accumulation and Diminishing Marginal Returns

Although saving and investment in additional capital is a source of labor productivity growth, without the expansion of human capital and technological change, it would not bring sustained economic growth. Eventually growth would slow and most likely stop. The reason is a fundamental fact about capital known as the **law of diminishing marginal returns,** which states that:

> **If the quantity of capital is small, an increase in capital brings a large increase in production; and if the quantity of capital is large, an increase in capital brings a small increase in production.**

This law applies to all factors of production, not only to capital, and is the reason why the demand for labor curve slopes downward (see Chapter 24, p. 616).

You can see why the law of diminishing marginal returns applies to capital by thinking about how your own productivity is influenced by the capital you own. When you got your first computer your small quantity of capital increased and your productivity increased enormously. You most likely don't have two computers, but if you do, the productivity boost from your second computer was much smaller than that from the first. If you don't have two computers, one of the reasons is that you doubt it would be worth the expense because it would contribute such a small amount to your labor productivity.

Farm labor productivity increased from harvesting 3 acres per day in 1830 ...

to harvesting hundreds of acres per day in the twenty-first century.

Productivity curve
The relationship that shows how real GDP per hour of labor changes as the quantity of capital per hour of labor changes.

Illustrating the Law of Diminishing Marginal Returns

Figure 25.1 illustrates the relationship between capital and productivity. The curve *PC* is a **productivity curve**, which shows how real GDP per hour of labor changes as the quantity of capital per hour of labor changes.

In Figure 25.1, when the quantity of capital (measured in real dollars) increases from $40 to $80 per hour of labor, real GDP per hour of labor increases from $16 to $20, a $4 or 25 percent increase. But when the quantity of capital increases from $180 to $220 per hour of labor, the same $40 increase as before, real GDP per hour of labor increases from $26 to $28, only a $2 or 8 percent increase. If capital per hour of labor keeps increasing, labor productivity increases by ever smaller amounts and eventually stops rising.

Expansion of Human Capital and Discovery of New Technologies

The expansion of human capital and the discovery of new technologies have a profoundly different effect on labor productivity than capital accumulation has. They don't display diminishing marginal returns.

Expansion of Human Capital Human capital—the accumulated skill and knowledge of people—comes from three sources:

1. Education and training
2. Job experience
3. Health and diet

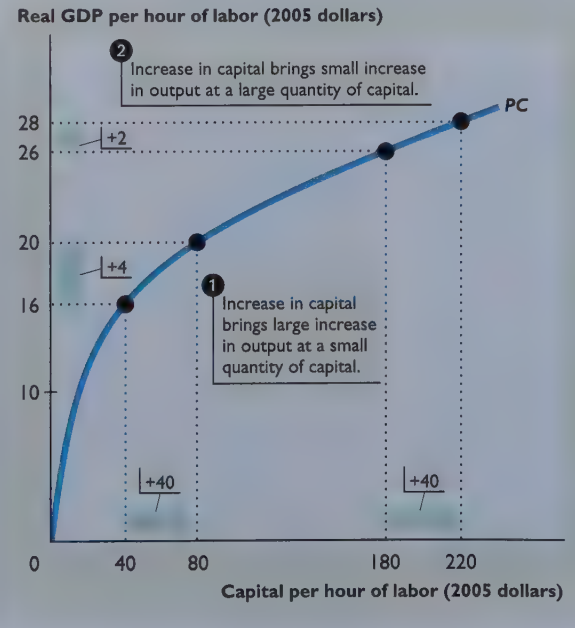
FIGURE 25.1
The Effects of an Increase in Capital
MyEconLab Animation

When workers are equipped with more capital, they become more productive. The productivity curve *PC* shows how an increase in capital per hour of labor increases real GDP per hour of labor.

❶ When the quantity of capital per hour of labor increases from a low $40 to $80, real GDP per hour of labor increases by $4.

❷ When the quantity of capital per hour of labor increases from a high $180 to $220, real GDP per hour of labor increases by $2.

An equal-size increase in capital per hour of labor brings a diminishing increase in output, the greater is the quantity of capital.



A hundred years ago, most people attended school for around eight years. A hundred years before that, most people had no formal education at all. Today, 90 percent of Americans complete high school and more than 60 percent go to college or university. Our ability to read, write, and communicate effectively contributes enormously to our productivity.

The education of thousands of scientists, engineers, mathematicians, biologists, computer programmers, and people equipped with a host of other specialist skills has made huge contributions to labor productivity and to the advance in technology.

While formal education is productive, school is not the only place where people acquire human capital. We also learn from on-the-job experience—from *learning by doing*. One carefully studied example illustrates the importance of learning by doing. Between 1941 and 1944 (during World War II), U.S. shipyards produced 2,500 Liberty Ships—cargo ships built to a standardized design. In 1941, it took 1.2 million person-hours to build a ship. By 1942, it took 600,000, and by 1943, it took only 500,000. Not much change occurred in the physical capital employed during these years, but an enormous amount of human capital was accumulated. Thousands of workers and managers learned from experience and their productivity more than doubled in two years.

Strong, healthy, well-nourished workers are much more productive than those who lack good nutrition, health care, and opportunties to exercise. This fact creates a virtuous circle. Improved health care, diet, and exercise increase labor productivity; and increased labor productivity brings the increased incomes that make these health improvements possible.

The expansion of human capital is the most fundamental source of economic growth because it directly increases labor productivity and is the source of the discovery of new technologies.

Discovery of New Technologies The growth of physical capital and the expansion of human capital have made large contributions to economic growth, but the discovery of new technologies has made an even greater contribution.

The development of writing, one of the most basic human skills, was the source of some of the earliest productivity gains. The ability to keep written records made it possible to reap ever-larger gains from specialization and trade. Imagine how hard it would be to do any kind of business if all the accounts, invoices, and agreements existed only in people's memories.

Later, the development of mathematics laid the foundation for the eventual extension of knowledge in physics, chemistry, and biology. This base of scientific knowledge was the foundation for the technological advances of the Industrial Revolution 200 years ago and of today's Information Revolution.

Since the Industrial Revolution, technological change has become a part of everyday life. Firms routinely conduct research to develop technologies that are more productive, and partnerships between business and the universities are commonplace in fields such as biotechnology and electronics.

Production using 1950s technology.

Production using 2000s technology.

Illustrating the Effects of Human Capital and Technological Change

Figure 25.2 illustrates the effects of the expansion of human capital and the discovery of new technologies and labor productivity: They shift the *productivity curve* upward. In the figure, these influences shift the productivity curve from PC_0 to PC_1. Imagine that PC_0 is the productivity curve in 1960 and PC_1 is the productivity curve for 2010. With capital of $180 per hour of labor, workers could

produce $60 of real GDP per hour of labor in 2010. If workers had been equipped with the same amount of capital but with the technology of 1960, they would have produced only $25 of real GDP per hour of labor. The upward shift of the productivity curve illustrates the fact that labor and capital become more productive at each quantity of capital per hour of labor. Capital is still subject to diminishing marginal returns but the overall level of productivity is higher with expanded human capital and more productive technologies.

Combined Influences Bring Labor Productivity Growth

To reap the benefits of technological change—to use new technologies to make labor productivity grow—capital must increase. Some of the most powerful and far-reaching technologies are embodied in human capital—for example, language, writing, mathematics, physics, biology, and engineering. But most technologies are embodied in physical capital. For example, to increase the productivity of transportation workers by using the discovery of the internal combustion engine, millions of horse-drawn carriages had to be replaced by automobiles and trucks; more recently, to increase the labor productivity of office workers by using the discovery of computerized word processing, millions of typewriters had to be replaced by computers and printers.

Figure 25.3 shows how the combined effects of capital accumulation, the expansion of human capital, and the discovery of new technologies bring labor productivity growth. In 1960, the productivity curve is PC_0, workers have $80 of capital per hour and produce $20 of real GDP per hour. By 2010, capital has increased to $180 per hour. With no expansion of human capital or technological

FIGURE 25.2

The Effects of Human Capital and Technological Change

MyEconLab Animation

When human capital expands or technology advances and labor becomes more productive, a given amount of capital per hour of labor can produce more real GDP per hour of labor.

Here, with 1960's technology on PC_0, $180 of capital per hour of labor can produce $25 of goods and services—real GDP per hour of labor.

With 2010's technology on PC_1, the same $180 of capital per hour of labor can produce $60 of goods and services—real GDP per hour of labor.

The expansion of human capital and the discovery of new technologies shift the productivity curve upward and are not subject to diminishing marginal returns.

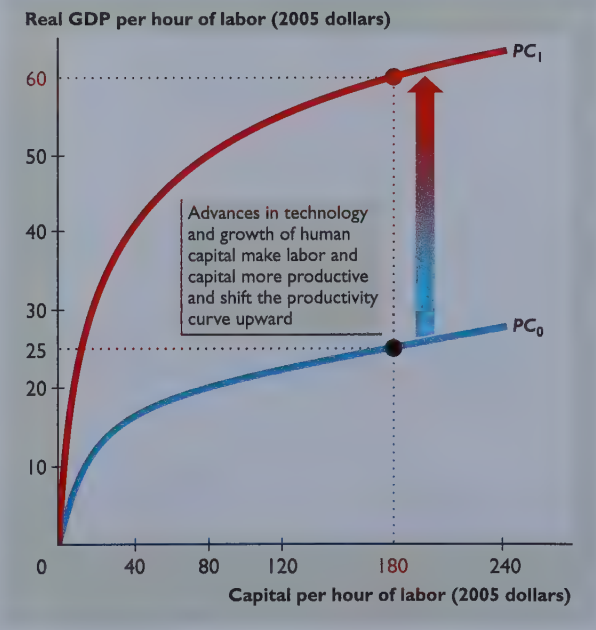
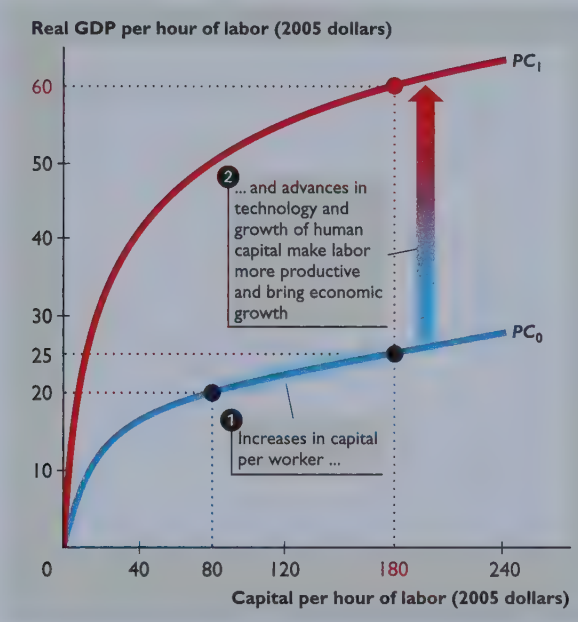


FIGURE 25.3

How Labor Productivity Grows

MyEconLab Animation



In 1960, workers had $80 of capital per hour of labor and produced real GDP per hour of $20 on PC_0.

1 When the quantity of capital increased from $80 per hour of labor in 1960 to $180 per hour of labor in 2010, real GDP per hour of labor increased from $20 to $25 along PC_0.

2 The expansion of human capital and discovery of new technologies shifted the productivity curve upward and increased real GDP per hour of labor from $25 to $60.

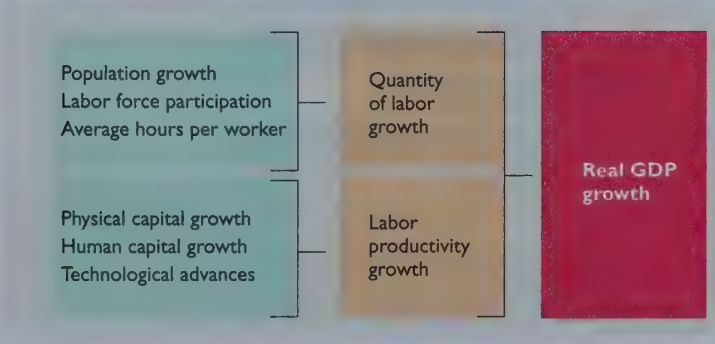
advance, real GDP per hour of labor would have increased to $25. But with the human capital and technology of 2010, output per hour increases to $60.

You've now seen what makes labor productivity grow. *Eye on the U.S. Economy* on p. 644 looks at the quantitative importance of the sources of growth since 1960. Real GDP grows because labor becomes more productive and also because the *quantity of labor* increases. Figure 25.4 summarizes the sources of economic growth and shows how the growth in labor productivity together with the growth in the quantity of labor bring real GDP growth.

FIGURE 25.4

The Sources of Economic Growth

MyEconLab Animation



Real GDP depends on the quantity of labor and labor productivity.

The quantity of labor depends on the population, the labor force participation rate, and the average hours per worker.

Labor productivity depends on the amounts of physical capital and human capital and the state of technology.

Growth in quantity of labor and growth in labor productivity bring real GDP growth.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

U.S. Labor Productivity Growth Since 1960

The top figure shows labor productivity growth (red line) and its changing trends (black line). Rapid growth during the 1960s was followed by slower growth after 1969 and even slower growth after 1974. It is this productivity slowdown that brought the enormous Lucas wedge described in Chapter 24, p. 612.

Why does labor productivity growth fluctuate? The bottom figure provides a summary of the answer. Using a method developed by MIT economist Robert Solow, we've separated the contribution of capital accumulation from those of human capital growth and technological change.

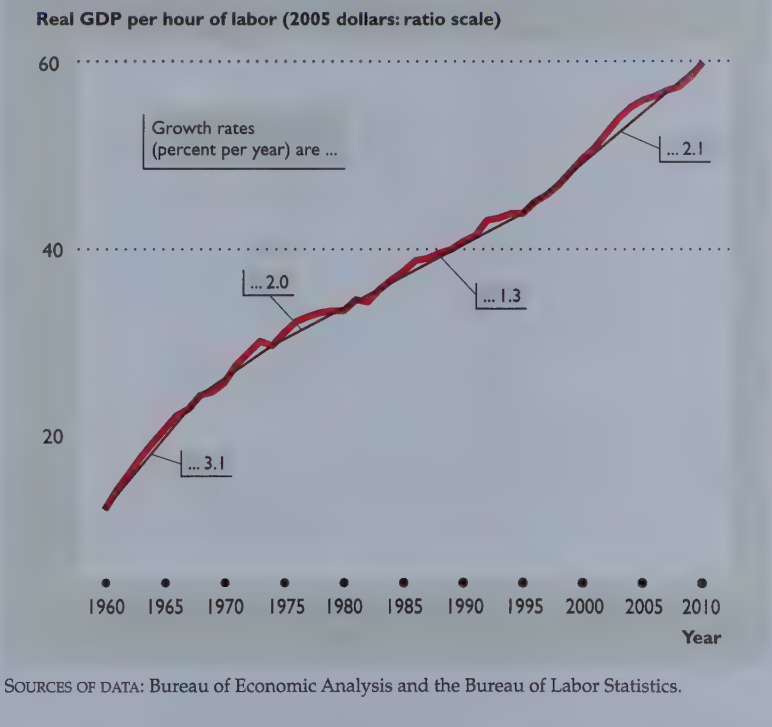
You can see that the 1960s were years of rapid human capital growth and technological change. Spillover effects from World War II, plastics, and the transistor were some of the key sources of this rapid growth.

The contribution of human capital growth and technological change slowed during the 1970s for several reasons.

First, oil price hikes in 1973–1974 and 1979–1980 diverted technological change toward saving energy rather than increasing labor productivity. (For example, airplanes became more fuel efficient, but they didn't operate with smaller crews.)

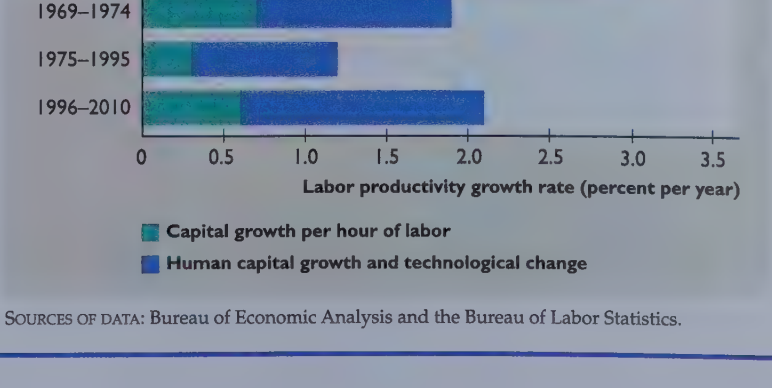
Second, taxes and government regulation increased during the late 1960s and 1970s, and so weakened incentives.

Third, rapid inflation distorted saving and investment decisions and shortened the horizon over which firms made their borrowing and lending plans.



SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

The contribution of human capital growth and technological change remained low until the 1990s, when computer and information technology kicked in to bring faster labor productivity growth again. But the technological advances of the 1990s and 2000s did not bring labor productivity gains to match those that occurred during the 1960s.



SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

CHECKPOINT 25.2

Explain the sources of labor productivity growth.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 25.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Use the data in Table 1 to work Problems **1** and **2**.

TABLE 1

Item	2009	2010
Aggregate labor hours (billions)	25.0	25.6
Real GDP (billions of 2005 dollars)	1,000	1,050

1. Calculate the growth rate of real GDP in 2010.
2. Calculate labor productivity in 2009 and 2010, and the growth rate of labor productivity in 2010.

In the News

Labor productivity on the rise

The BLS reported the following data for the year to June 2011: In the nonfarm sector, output increased 2.4 percent as aggregate hours increased 1.6 percent; in the manufacturing sector, output increased 4.6 percent as aggregate hours increased by 2.1 percent.

Source: bls.gov/news.release

As aggregate hours increased, output increased but did labor productivity in each sector increase? In which sector was growth in labor productivity greater?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The growth rate of real GDP in 2010 was 5 percent.

   Growth rate = [($1,050 billion − $1,000 billion) ÷ $1,000 billion] × 100 = 5 percent

2. Labor productivity is $40.00 an hour in 2009 and $41.02 an hour in 2010.

   Labor productivity equals real GDP divided by aggregate labor hours.
   In 2009, labor productivity was ($1,000 billion ÷ 25 billion) or $40.00 per hour of labor.
   In 2010, labor productivity was ($1,050 billion ÷ 25.6 billion) or $41.02 per hour of labor.

   The growth rate of labor productivity in 2010 was 2.55 percent.
   Labor productivity growth rate was [($41.02 − $40.00) ÷ $40.00] × 100 or 2.55 percent.

Solution to In the News

Output = Aggregate hours × Labor productivity. In each sector, output increased by more than the increase in aggregate hours, so labor productivity must have increased. Output growth in manufacturing was almost double that in the nonfarm sector while growth in aggregate hours was approximately the same, so labor productivity must have increased by a larger percentage in the manufacturing sector than in the nonfarm sector.

25.3 ECONOMIC GROWTH THEORIES: OLD AND NEW

You've seen that real GDP grows when labor productivity and the quantity of labor grow. You've also seen that labor productivity grows when saving and investment increase physical capital, when education and on-the-job training expand human capital, and when research leads to the discovery of new technologies. But what *causes* saving and investment in new capital, the expansion of human capital, the discovery of new technologies, and population growth? Economists have been trying to answer this question and understand why and how poor countries become rich and rich countries become richer since the time of Adam Smith in the eighteenth century. We'll look at two sets of ideas: old and new.

Old Growth Theory

Classical growth theory
The theory that the clash between an exploding population and limited resources will eventually bring economic growth to an end.

An old growth theory remains relevant today because some people believe that it might turn out to be correct. It is called **classical growth theory**, and it predicts that a clash between an exploding population and limited resources will eventually bring economic growth to an end. According to classical growth theory, labor productivity growth is temporary. When labor productivity rises and lifts real GDP per person above the subsistence level, which is the minimum real income needed to maintain life, a population explosion occurs. Eventually, the population grows so large that capital per worker and labor productivity fall and real GDP per person returns to the subsistence level.

Adam Smith, Thomas Robert Malthus, and David Ricardo, the leading economists of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, proposed this theory, but the view is most closely associated with Malthus and is sometimes called the **Malthusian theory**. It is also sometimes called the Doomsday theory.

Malthusian theory
Another name for classical growth theory—named for Thomas Robert Malthus.

Many people today are Malthusians. They say that if today's global population of 7 billion explodes to 11 billion by 2200, we will run out of many natural resources and the population will grow faster than the quantity of capital so labor productivity will fall and we will return to the primitive standard of living that was experienced before the Industrial Revolution. (You can see in *Eye on the Past* on p. 636 that for most of human history, people did live on the brink of subsistence.) We must act, say the Malthusians, to contain the population growth. This dismal implication led to economics being called the *dismal science*.

New Growth Theory

New growth theory
The theory that our unlimited wants will lead us to ever greater productivity and perpetual economic growth.

New growth theory predicts that our unlimited wants will lead us to ever greater productivity and perpetual economic growth. According to new growth theory, real GDP per person grows because of the choices people make in the pursuit of profit. Paul Romer of Stanford University developed this theory during the 1980s, building on ideas developed by Joseph Schumpeter during the 1930s and 1940s.

Choices and Innovation

The new growth theory emphasizes three facts about market economies:

- Human capital expands because of choices.
- Discoveries result from choices.
- Discoveries bring profit, and competition destroys profit.

Human Capital Expansion and Choices People decide how long to remain in school, what to study, and how hard to study. And when they graduate from school, people make more choices about job training and on-the-job learning. All these choices govern the speed at which human capital expands.

Discoveries and Choices When people discover a new product or technique, they consider themselves lucky. They are right, but chance does not determine the pace at which new discoveries are made—and at which technology advances. It depends on how many people are looking for a new technology and how intensively they are looking.

Discoveries and Profits Profit is the spur to technological change. The forces of competition squeeze profits, so to increase profit, people constantly seek either lower-cost methods of production or new and better products for which people are willing to pay a higher price. Inventors can maintain a profit for several years by taking out a patent or copyright, but eventually a new discovery is copied and profits disappear.

Two other facts play a key role in the new growth theory:

- Many people can use discoveries at the same time.
- Physical activities can be replicated.

Discoveries Used by All Once a profitable new discovery has been made, everyone can use it. For example, when Marc Andreeson created Mosaic, the Web browser that led to the creation of Netscape Navigator and Microsoft's Internet Explorer, everyone who was interested in navigating the Internet had access to a new and more efficient tool. One person's use of a Web browser does not prevent others from using it. This fact means that as the benefits of a new discovery spread, free resources become available. These resources are free because nothing is given up when an additional person uses them. They have a zero opportunity cost.

Replicating Activities Production activities can be replicated. For example, there might be 2, 3, or 53 identical firms making fiber-optic cable by using an identical assembly line and production technique. If one firm increases its capital and output, that *firm* experiences diminishing returns. But the economy can increase its capital and output by adding another identical fiber cable factory, and the *economy* does not experience diminishing returns.

The assumption that capital does not experience diminishing returns is the central novel proposition of the new growth theory. The implication of this simple and appealing idea is astonishing. As capital accumulates, labor productivity grows indefinitely as long as people devote resources to expanding human capital and introducing new technologies.

Perpetual Motion

Economic growth is like the perpetual motion machine in Figure 25.5. Growth is driven by insatiable wants that lead us to pursue profit and innovate. New and better products result from this process; new firms start up, and old firms go out of business. As firms start up and die, jobs are created and destroyed. New and better jobs lead to more leisure and more consumption. But our insatiable wants are still there, so the process continues—wants, profit incentives, innovation, and new products. The economic growth rate depends on the ability and the incentive to innovate.

FIGURE 25.5

A Perpetual Motion Machine

MyEconLab Animation

❶ People want a higher standard of living and are spurred by ❷ profit incentives to make the ❸ innovations that lead to ❹ new and better techniques and new and better products, which in turn lead to ❺ the birth of new firms and the death of some old firms, ❻ new and better jobs, and ❼ more leisure and more consumption goods and services. The result is ❽ a higher standard of living. But people want a yet higher standard of living, and the growth process continues.

Based on a similar figure in *These Are the Good Old Days: A Report on U.S. Living Standards,* Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas 1993 Annual Report.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

How You Influence and Are Influenced by Economic Growth

Many of the choices that you make affect your personal economic growth rate—the pace of expansion of your own standard of living. And these same choices, in combination with similar choices made by millions of other people, have a profound effect on the economic growth of the nation and the world.

The most important of these choices right now is your choice to increase your human capital. By being in school, you have decided to expand your human capital.

You will continue to expand your human capital long after you finish school as your earning power rises with on-the-job experience. You might even decide to return to school at a later stage in your life.

A choice that will become increasingly important later in your life is to accumulate a retirement fund. This choice provides not only a source of income for you when you eventually retire but also financial resources that firms can use to finance the expansion of physical capital.

Not only do your choices influence economic growth; economic growth also has a big influence on you—on how you earn your income and on the standard of living that your income makes possible.

Because of economic growth, the jobs available today are more interesting and less dangerous and strenuous than those of 100 years ago; and jobs are hugely better paid. But for many of us, economic growth means that we must accept change and be ready to learn new skills and get new jobs.

CHECKPOINT 25.3

Review the theories of economic growth.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 25.3 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. What is the classical growth theory and why does it predict that economic growth will eventually end?
2. What is the driving force of economic growth according to new growth theory? Why does it predict that the economic growth will never end?

In the News

The productivity watch
Former Federal Reserve chairman Alan Greenspan attributes the growth of labor productivity to IT investments that boosted labor productivity, which boosted company profits, which led to more IT investments, and so on, leading to a nirvana of high growth.

Source: *Fortune* Magazine, September 4, 2006

Which of the growth theories that you've studied in this chapter best corresponds to the explanation given by Mr. Greenspan?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The classical growth theory predicts that labor productivity growth is temporary: When labor productivity increases, real GDP per person increases and because it exceeds the real income needed to maintain life, a population explosion occurs. The population becomes so large that capital per worker and labor productivity decrease and real GDP per person returns to its subsistence level.
2. The driving force of economic growth according to new growth theory is a persistent pursuit of profit that is the incentive to innovate along with an absence of diminishing returns. New growth theory predicts that economic growth will never end because our unlimited wants will lead us to make choices that will bring ever-greater productivity and perpetual economic growth.

Solution to In the News

Mr. Greenspan is describing the new growth theory. According to this theory, real GDP per person grows because of the choices people make in the pursuit of profit. The perpetual pursuit of profit leads to innovations (IT innovations in the period described here) that increase labor productivity and increase profit. The perpetual pursuit of profit will bring persistent economic growth.

25.4 ACHIEVING FASTER GROWTH

Why did it take more than a million years of human life before economic growth began? Why are some countries even today still barely growing? Why don't all societies save and invest in new capital, expand human capital, and discover and apply new technologies on a scale that brings rapid economic growth? What actions can governments take to encourage growth?

Preconditions for Economic Growth

The main reason economic growth is either absent or slow is that some societies lack the incentive system that encourages growth-producing activities. One of the fundamental preconditions for creating the incentives that lead to economic growth is economic freedom.

Economic Freedom

Economic freedom
A condition in which people are able to make personal choices, their private property is protected by the rule of law, and they are free to buy and sell in markets.

Economic freedom is present when people are able to make personal choices, their private property is protected by the rule of law, and they are free to buy and sell in markets. The rule of law, an efficient legal system, and the ability to enforce contracts are essential foundations for creating economic freedom. Impediments to economic freedom are corruption in the courts and government bureaucracy; barriers to trade, such as import bans; high tax rates; stringent regulations on business, such as health, safety, and environmental regulation; restrictions on banks; labor market regulations that limit a firm's ability to hire and lay off workers; and illegal markets, such as those that violate intellectual property rights.

No unique political system is necessary to deliver economic freedom. Democratic systems do a good job, but the rule of law, not democracy, is the key requirement for creating economic freedom. Nondemocratic political systems that respect the rule of law can also work well. Hong Kong is the best example of a place with little democracy but a lot of economic freedom—and a lot of economic growth. No country with a high level of economic freedom is economically poor, but many countries with low levels of economic freedom stagnate.

Property Rights

Property rights
The social arrangements that govern the protection of private property.

Economic freedom requires the protection of private property—the factors of production and goods that people own. The social arrangements that govern the protection of private property are called **property rights**. They include the rights to physical property (land, buildings, and capital equipment), to financial property (claims by one person against another), and to intellectual property (such as inventions). Clearly established and enforced property rights provide people with the incentive to work and save. If someone attempts to steal their property, a legal system will protect them. Such property rights also assure people that government itself will not confiscate their income or savings.

Markets

Economic freedom also requires free markets. Buyers and sellers get information and do business with each other in *markets*. Market prices send signals to buyers and sellers that create incentives to increase or decrease the quantities demanded and supplied. Markets enable people to trade and to save and invest. But markets cannot operate without property rights.

Property rights and markets create incentives for people to specialize and trade, to save and invest, to expand their human capital, and to discover and apply new technologies. Early human societies based on hunting and gathering did not experience economic growth because they lacked property rights and markets. Economic growth began when societies evolved the institutions that create incentives. But the presence of an incentive system and the institutions that create it do not guarantee that economic growth will occur. They permit economic growth but do not make it inevitable.

Growth begins when the appropriate incentive system exists because people can specialize in the activities at which they have a comparative advantage and trade with each other. You saw in Chapter 3 how everyone gains from such activity. By specializing and trading, everyone can acquire goods and services at the lowest possible cost. Consequently, people can obtain a greater volume of goods and services from their labor.

As an economy moves from one with little specialization to one that reaps the gains from specialization and trade, its production and consumption grow. Real GDP per person increases, and the standard of living rises.

But for growth to be persistent, people must face incentives that encourage them to pursue the three activities that generate *ongoing* economic growth: saving and investment, expansion of human capital, and the discovery and application of new technologies.

Policies to Achieve Faster Growth

To achieve faster economic growth, we must increase the growth rate of capital per hour of labor, increase the growth rate of human capital, or increase the pace of technological advance. The main actions that governments can take to achieve these objectives are

- Create incentive mechanisms.
- Encourage saving.
- Encourage research and development.
- Encourage international trade.
- Improve the quality of education.

Create Incentive Mechanisms

Economic growth occurs when the incentives to save, invest, and innovate are strong enough. These incentives require property rights enforced by a well-functioning legal system. Property rights and a legal system are the key ingredients that are missing in many societies. For example, they are absent throughout much of Africa. The first priority for growth policy is to establish these institutions so that incentives to save, invest, and innovate exist. Russia is a leading example of a country that is striving to take this step toward establishing the conditions in which economic growth can occur.

Encourage Saving

Saving finances investment, which brings capital accumulation. So encouraging saving can increase the growth of capital and stimulate economic growth. The East Asian economies have the highest saving rates and the highest growth rates. Some African economies have the lowest saving rates and the lowest growth rates.

Tax incentives can increase saving. Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) are an example of a tax incentive to save. Economists claim that a tax on consumption rather than on income provides the best incentive to save.

Encourage Research and Development

Everyone can use the fruits of basic research and development efforts. For example, all biotechnology firms can use advances in gene-splicing technology. Because basic inventions can be copied, the inventor's profit is limited and so the market allocates too few resources to this activity.

Governments can direct public funds toward financing basic research, but this solution is not foolproof. It requires a mechanism for allocating public funds to their highest-valued use. The National Science Foundation is one possibly efficient channel for allocating public funds to universities and public research facilities to finance and encourage basic research. Government programs such as national defense and space exploration also lead to innovations that have wide use. Laptop computers and nonstick coatings are two prominent examples of innovations that came from the U.S. space program.

Encourage International Trade

Free international trade stimulates economic growth by extracting all the available gains from specialization and trade. The fastest-growing nations today are those with the fastest-growing exports and imports. The creation of the North American Free Trade Agreement and the integration of the economies of Europe through the formation of the European Union are examples of successful actions that governments have taken to stimulate economic growth through trade.

Improve the Quality of Education

The free market would produce too little education because it brings social benefits beyond the benefits to the people who receive the education. By funding basic education and by ensuring high standards in skills such as language, mathematics, and science, governments can contribute enormously to a nation's growth potential. Education can also be expanded and improved by using tax incentives to encourage improved private provision. Singapore's Information Technology in Education program is one of the best examples of a successful attempt to stimulate growth through education.

How Much Difference Can Policy Make?

It is easy to make a list of policy actions that could increase a nation's economic growth rate. It is hard to convert that list into acceptable actions that make a big difference.

Societies are the way they are because they balance the interests of one group against the interests of another group. Change brings gains for some and losses for others, so change is slow. And even when change occurs, if the economic growth rate can be increased by even as much as half a percentage point, it takes many years for the full benefits to accrue.

A well-intentioned government cannot dial up a big increase in the economic growth rate, but it can pursue policies that will nudge the economic growth rate upward. Over time, the benefits from these policies will be large.

EYE on RICH AND POOR NATIONS

Why Are Some Nations Rich and Others Poor?

Political stability, property rights protected by the rule of law, and limited government intervention in markets: These are key features of the economies that enjoy high or rapidly rising incomes and they are the features missing in economies that remain poor. All the rich nations have possessed these growth-inducing characteristics for the many decades during which their labor productivity and standard of living have been rising.

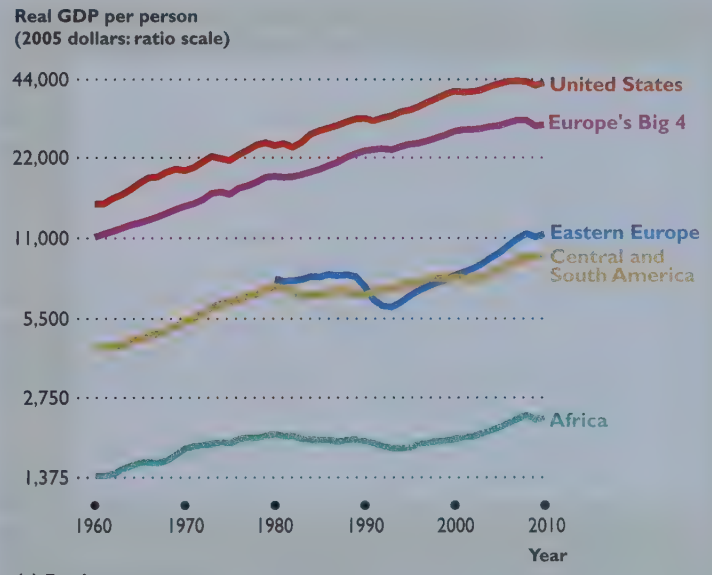
The United States started to grow rapidly 150 years ago and overtook Europe in the early 20th century. In the past 50 years, the gaps between these countries haven't changed much. (See part (a) of the figure.)

In a transition from Communism to a market economy, Eastern Europe is now growing faster.

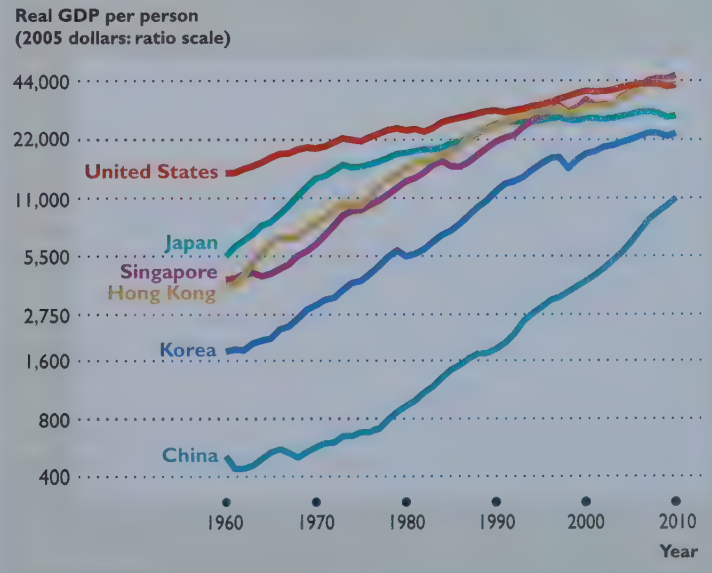
Tribal conflict in Africa and bureaucratic overload in Central and South America have kept growth slow and the gap between the United States and these regions has widened.

Real GDP per person in East Asian economies, in part (b), has converged toward that in the United States. These economies are like fast trains running on the same track at similar speeds with roughly constant gaps between them. Hong Kong and Singapore are the lead trains and run about 15 years in front of Taiwan, 20 years in front of South Korea, and almost 40 years in front of China.

Between 1960 and 2010, Hong Kong and Singapore transformed themselves from poor developing economies to take their places among the world's richest economies.



(a) Persistent gaps



(b) Convergence

SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook Database.*

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 25.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 25.4

Describe policies that speed economic growth.

Practice Problems

1. What are the preconditions for economic growth?
2. Why does much of Africa experience slow economic growth?
3. Why is economic freedom crucial for achieving economic growth?
4. What role do property rights play in encouraging economic growth?
5. Explain why, other things remaining the same, a country with a well-educated population has a faster economic growth rate than a country that has a poorly educated population.

In the News

India's economy hits the wall

Just six months ago, the Indian economy was growing rapidly; now growth has halted. India needs to spend $500 billion upgrading its infrastructure and education and health-care facilities. Agriculture remains unproductive; and reforms, like strengthening the legal system, have been ignored.

Source: *BusinessWeek*, July 1, 2008

Explain how the measures reported in the news clip could lead to faster growth.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The preconditions for economic growth are economic freedom, private property rights, and markets. Without these preconditions, people have little incentive to undertake the actions that lead to economic growth.
2. Some African countries experience slow economic growth because they lack economic freedom, private property rights are not enforced, and markets do not function well. People in these countries have little incentive to specialize and trade or to accumulate both physical and human capital.
3. Economic freedom is crucial for achieving economic growth because economic freedom allows people to make choices and gives them the incentives to pursue growth-producing activities.
4. Clearly defined private property rights and a legal system to enforce them give people the incentive to work, save, invest, and accumulate human capital.
5. A well-educated population has more skills and greater labor productivity than a poorly educated population. A well-educated population can contribute to the research and development that create new technology.

Solution to In the News

Investment in infrastructure and education and heath-care facilities would increase India's stock of physical capital, which would increase labor productivity. Better education and heath care would increase human capital and again increase labor productivity. With better technology and more capital used on farms, productivity of farm workers would increase. Strengthening the legal system could better enforce property rights. Each of these measures could lead to faster growth in labor productivity and faster growth in real GDP per person in India.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Define and calculate the economic growth rate, and explain the implications of sustained growth.

- Economic growth is the sustained expansion of production possibilities. The annual percentage change in real GDP measures the economic growth rate.
- Real GDP per person must grow if the standard of living is to rise.
- Sustained economic growth transforms poor nations into rich ones.
- The Rule of 70 tells us the number of years in which real GDP doubles—70 divided by the percentage growth rate of real GDP.

2 Explain the sources of labor productivity growth.

- Real GDP grows when aggregate hours and labor productivity grow.
- Real GDP per person grows when labor productivity grows.
- The interaction of saving and investment in physical capital, expansion of human capital, and technological advances bring labor productivity growth.
- Saving and investment in physical capital alone cannot bring sustained steady growth because of diminishing marginal returns to capital.

3 Review the theories of economic growth.

- Classical growth theory predicts that economic growth will end because a population explosion will lower real GDP per person to its subsistence level.
- New growth theory predicts that capital accumulation, human capital growth, and technological change respond to incentives and can bring persistent growth in labor productivity.

4 Describe policies that speed economic growth.

- Economic growth requires an incentive system created by economic freedom, property rights, and markets.
- It might be possible to achieve faster growth by encouraging saving, subsidizing research and education, and encouraging international trade.

Key Terms

Classical growth theory, 646
Economic freedom, 650
Economic growth, 634
Economic growth rate, 634
Labor productivity, 638
Law of diminishing marginal returns, 639
Malthusian theory, 646
New growth theory, 646
Productivity curve, 640
Property rights, 650
Real GDP per person, 634
Rule of 70, 635

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 25 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Explain why sustained growth of real GDP per person can transform a poor country into a wealthy one.
2. In 2005 and 2006, India's real GDP grew by 9.2 percent a year and its population grew by 1.6 percent a year. If these growth rates are sustained, in what years would
   - Real GDP be twice what it was in 2006?
   - Real GDP per person be twice what it was in 2006?
3. Describe how U.S. real GDP per person has changed over the last 100 years.
4. Explain the link between labor hours, labor productivity, and real GDP.
5. Explain how saving and investment in capital change labor productivity. Why do diminishing returns arise? Provide an example of diminishing returns. Use a graph of the productivity curve to illustrate your answer.
6. Explain how advances in technology change labor productivity. Do diminishing returns arise? Provide an example of an advance in technology. Use a graph of the productivity curve to illustrate your answer.
7. Explain how an increase in human capital changes labor productivity. Do diminishing returns arise? Provide an example of an increase in human capital. Use a graph of the productivity curve to illustrate your answer.
8. What were the sources of labor productivity growth in the U.S. economy during the fifty years since 1960? How did the 1960s differ from the more recent decades?
9. Draw productivity curves to illustrate the changes in labor productivity that occured in the U.S. economy in the 1960s and the years since 1996. Can you think of some of the new technologies that arrived in these two periods?
10. What can governments in Africa do to encourage economic growth and raise the standard of living in their countries?

Use the following information to work Problems **11** and **12**.

Slowing down growth

China's GDP growth target for the 12th Five-Year-Plan period 2011–2015 is 7 percent a year. This largely symbolic goal (China's average growth rate for the past five years was a whopping 11 percent a year) shows that the central government wants to fundamentally restructure the economy through slower economic growth, increased consumption, technological advancement, and environmental protection measures.

Source: *The Daily Telegraph*, September 25, 2011

11. If China reduces its economic growth rate from 11 percent a year to 7 percent a year, how many additional years will it take for GDP to double? In what year will China's GDP quadruple?
12. Explain how increased consumption, advances in technology, and increased environmental protection measures will influence the economic growth rate.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Distinguish between a low and high income and a low and high economic growth rate. What are the key features of an economy that are present when incomes are high or fast growing and absent when incomes are low and stagnating or growing slowly? Provide an example of an economy with a low income and slow growth rate, a low income and rapid growth rate, and a high income with sustained growth over many decades.

Use the following information to work Problems 2 and 3.

China's growth rate of real GDP in 2005 and 2006 was 10.5 percent a year and its population growth rate was 0.5 percent a year.

2. If these growth rates continue, in what year would real GDP be twice what it was in 2006?
3. If these growth rates continue, in what year would real GDP per person be twice what it was in 2006?
4. Explain how an increase in physical capital and an increase in human capital change labor productivity. Use a graph to illustrate your answer.
5. Table 1 describes labor productivity in an economy. What must have occured in this economy during year 1?
6. Describe and illustrate in a graph what happened in the economy in Table 1 if in year 1, capital per hour of labor was 30 and in year 2 it was 40.
7. China invests almost 50 percent of its annual production in new capital compared to 15 percent in the United States. Capital per hour of labor in China is about 25 percent of that in the United States. Explain which economy has the higher real GDP per hour of labor, the faster growth rate of labor productivity, and which experiences the more severe diminishing returns.

TABLE 1 LABOR PRODUCTIVITY

Capital per hour of labor	Real GDP per hour of labor	
	in year 1	in year 2
10	7	9
20	13	17
30	18	24
40	22	30
50	25	35
60	27	39
70	28	42

Use the following information to work Problems 8 to 10.

India's growth could be even better, says OECD

India's already impressive economic growth could improve even more if it further opened its markets and relaxed government controls, according to the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD).

The OECD said that while the current growth that has averaged 8.5 percent a year over the past four years was sustainable, a rate of 10 percent was possible if greater reforms were introduced. The OECD suggests that ongoing economic liberalization, which India began in 1991, could help the country double its real GDP per person in 10 years. The OECD said it would have taken India 55 years to double real GDP per person if it had stayed on the growth path experienced in the 30 years following independence in 1947.

Source: *The Independent*, October 10, 2007

8. What was the average growth rate achieved by India in the 30 years after 1947?
9. By raising the real GDP growth rate from 8.5 percent a year to 10 percent a year and maintaining a constant population growth rate, how many years earlier will real GDP per person be doubled?
10. Suggest some government controls that if removed might spur India's growth rate to a sustained 10 percent a year.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 25 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. If real GDP increases from $5 billion to $5.25 billion and the population increases from 2 million to 2.02 million, real GDP per person increases by _____ percent.
   A. 5.0
   B. 1.0
   C. 2.5
   D. 4.0
2. If the population growth rate is 2 percent, real GDP per person will double in 7 years if real GDP grows by _____ percent per year.
   A. 7
   B. 10
   C. 12
   D. 14
3. All of the following increase labor productivity *except* _____.
   A. the accumulation of skill and knowledge
   B. an increase in capital per hour of labor
   C. an increase in consumption
   D. the employment of a new technology
4. The increase in real GDP per hour of labor that results from an increase in capital per hour of labor _____.
   A. is constant and independent of the quantity of capital
   B. is larger at a small quantity of capital than at a large quantity of capital
   C. is smaller at a small quantity of capital than at a large quantity of capital
   D. decreases as technology advances
5. The increase in real GDP per hour of labor that results from an advance in technology makes labor _____ productive _____.
   A. more; at all quantities of capital
   B. less; and capital more productive
   C. more; only at a large quantity of capital
   D. more; and capital less productive
6. The classical growth theory is that real GDP per person _____.
   A. only temporarily rises and then returns to the subsistence level
   B. grows forever
   C. is constant and does not change
   D. increases as the population grows
7. In new growth theory, the source of economic growth is _____.
   A. more leisure
   B. new and better jobs
   C. the persistent want for a higher standard of living
   D. an ever increasing growth rate of capital per hour of labor
8. An economy can achieve faster economic growth *without* _____.
   A. markets and property rights
   B. people being willing to save and invest
   C. incentives to encourage the research for new technologies
   D. an increase in the population growth rate

What created the global financial crisis?

Finance, Saving, and Investment

26

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the financial markets and the key financial institutions.
2. Explain how borrowing and lending decisions are made and how these decisions interact in the loanable funds market.
3. Explain how a government budget surplus or deficit influences the real interest rate, investment, and saving.

26.1 FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS AND MARKETS

Financial institutions and markets provide the channels through which saving flows to finance the investment in capital that makes our economy grow. The health of these institutions and markets spreads to affect the performance of every other market—of the labor market and the markets for goods and services.

When financial institutions are in good health and financial markets are working well, a high level of investment brings a rapidly growing economy and rising living standards. When financial institutions get sick and financial markets dry up, a low level of investment slows economic growth and sometimes puts the economy in recession with falling living standards.

Some Finance Definitions

Finance, money, and capital are three terms that we use in our everyday lives almost interchangeably. Yet these terms have distinctly different meanings in the study of financial markets. Let's examine their differences.

Finance and Money

Finance is the lending and borrowing that moves funds from savers to spenders. *Money* is the object (or objects) that people use to make payments. You might say "I'm going to borrow some money to buy a car." Your borrowing and someone else's lending is a financial transaction—*finance*. You pay for the new car using *money*. By distinguishing between finance and money and studying them separately, we can better understand their roles and effects on the economy. For the rest of this chapter, we study finance; in Chapters 27 and 28, we study money.

Capital: Physical and Financial

Capital or physical capital
The tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other items that have been produced in the past and that are used to produce goods and services.

Capital—also called **physical capital**—is the tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other items that have been produced in the past and that are used to produce goods and services. Inventories of raw materials, semifinished goods, and components are part of physical capital. *Financial capital* is the funds used to buy physical capital. You're going to see how decisions about investment and saving, along with borrowing and lending, influence the quantity of physical capital.

Investment, Capital, Wealth, and Saving

Gross investment
The total amount spent on new capital.

Net investment
The change in the quantity of capital—equals gross investment minus depreciation.

Wealth
The value of all the things that people own.

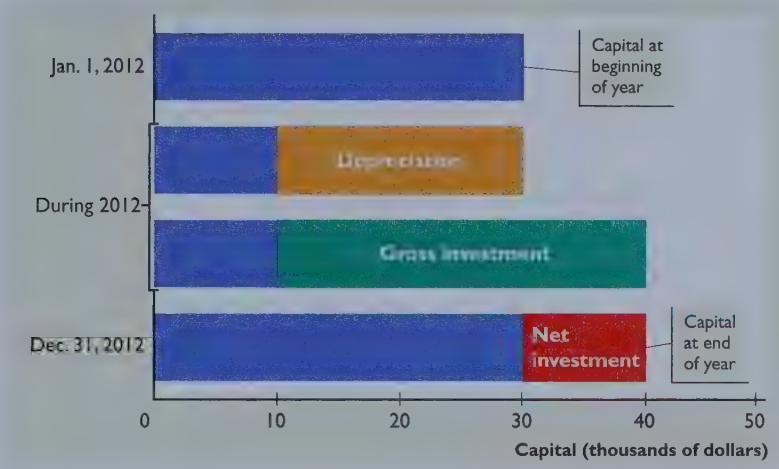
Investment (Chapter 21, p. 535) increases the quantity of capital and *depreciation* (Chapter 21, p. 542) decreases it. The total amount spent on new capital is called **gross investment.** The change in the quantity of capital is called **net investment.** Net investment equals gross investment minus depreciation. Figure 26.1 illustrates these concepts. Tom's end-of-year capital of $40,000 equals his initial capital of $30,000 plus net investment of $10,000; and net investment equals gross investment of $30,000 minus depreciation of $20,000.

Wealth is the value of all the things that people own. What people own is related to what they earn, but it is not the same thing. People earn an income, which is the amount they receive during a given time period from supplying the services of the resources they own. *Saving* (Chapter 21, p. 536), the amount of income that is not paid in taxes or spent on consumption, adds to wealth. Wealth also increases when the market value of assets rises—called *capital gains*.

FIGURE 26.1

Capital and Investment

MyEconLab Animation



On January 1, 2012, Tom's DVD Burning, Inc. had DVD-recording machines valued at $30,000. During 2012, the value of Tom's machines fell by $20,000—depreciation—and he spent $30,000 on new machines—gross investment. Tom's net investment was $10,000, so at the end of 2012, Tom had capital valued at $40,000.

If at the end of the school year, you have $250 in the bank and textbooks worth $300 and that's all that you own, your wealth is $550. If during the summer, you earn $5,000 (after-tax income) and spend $1,000 on consumption, your bank account increases to $4,250 and your wealth becomes $4,550. Your wealth has increased by $4,000, which equals your saving—your income of $5,000 minus your consumption expenditure of $1,000.

National wealth and national saving work like this personal example. The wealth of a nation at the end of a year equals its wealth at the start of the year plus its saving during the year, which equals income minus consumption expenditure.

To make real GDP grow, saving and wealth must be transformed into investment and capital. This transformation takes place in the markets for financial capital and through the activities of financial institutions that we now describe.

Markets for Financial Capital

Saving is the source of the funds that are used to finance investment, and these funds are supplied and demanded in three types of financial markets:

- Loan markets
- Bond markets
- Stock markets

Loan Markets

Businesses often want short-term loans to buy inventories or to extend credit to their customers. Sometimes they get these funds in the form of a loan from a bank. Households often want funds to purchase big-ticket items, such as automobiles or household furnishings and appliances. They get these funds as bank loans, often in the form of outstanding credit card balances.

Households also get funds to buy new homes. (Expenditure on new homes is counted as part of investment.) These funds are usually obtained as a loan that is secured by a *mortgage*—a legal contract that gives ownership of a home to the lender in the event that the borrower fails to meet the agreed payment schedule (of loan repayments and interest). Mortgages were at the center of the U.S. credit crisis of 2007–2008.

All of these types of financing take place in loan markets.

Bond Markets

When Wal-Mart expands its business and opens new stores, it gets the funds it needs by selling bonds. Governments—federal, state, and municipal—also get the funds they need to finance a budget deficit by issuing bonds.

Bond
A promise to pay specified sums of money on specified dates.

A **bond** is a promise to make specified payments on specified dates. For example, you can buy a Western Union bond that promises to pay $6.20 every year until 2035 and then to make a final payment of $100 in October 2036.

The buyer of a Western Union bond makes a loan to the company and is entitled to the payments promised by the bond. When a person buys a newly issued bond, he or she may hold the bond until the borrower has repaid the amount borrowed or sell it to someone else. Bonds issued by firms and governments are traded in the *bond market*.

The term of a bond might be long (decades) or short (just a month or two). Firms often issue very short-term bonds as a way of getting paid for their sales before the buyer is able to pay. For example, when GM sells $100 million of railway locomotives to Union Pacific, GM wants to be paid when the items are shipped. But Union Pacific doesn't want to pay until the locomotives are earning an income. In this situation, Union Pacific might promise to pay GM $101 million three months in the future. A bank would be willing to buy this promise for (say) $100 million. GM gets $100 million immediately and the bank gets $101 million in three months when Union Pacific honors its promise. The U.S. Treasury issues promises of this type, called *Treasury bills*.

Another type of bond is a *mortgage-backed security*, which entitles its holder to the income from a package of mortgages. Mortgage lenders create mortgage-backed securities. They make mortgage loans to home buyers and then create securities that they sell to obtain more funds to make more mortgage loans. The holder of a mortgage-backed security is entitled to receive payments that derive from the payments received by the mortgage lender from the homebuyer–borrower.

Mortgage-backed securities were at the center of the storm in the financial markets in 2007–2008.

Stock Markets

Stock
A certificate of ownership and claim to the profits that a firm makes.

When Boeing wants to raise funds to expand its airplane-building business, it issues stock. A **stock** is a certificate of ownership and claim to a firm's profits. Boeing has issued about 900 million shares of its stock. If you owned 900 Boeing shares, you would own one millionth of Boeing and be entitled to receive one millionth of its profits.

A *stock market* is a financial market in which shares in corporations' stocks are traded. The New York Stock Exchange, the London Stock Exchange (in England), the Frankfurt Stock Exchange (in Germany), and the Tokyo Stock Exchange are all examples of stock markets.

Financial Institutions

Financial markets are highly competitive because of the role played by financial institutions in those markets. A **financial institution** is a firm that operates on both sides of the markets for financial capital: It borrows in one market and lends in another. The key financial institutions are

- Investment banks
- Commercial banks
- Government-sponsored mortgage lenders
- Pension funds
- Insurance companies

Financial institution
A firm that operates on both sides of the markets for financial capital: It borrows in one market and lends in another.

Investment Banks

Investment banks are firms that help other financial institutions and governments raise funds by issuing and selling bonds and stocks, as well as providing advice on transactions such as mergers and acquisitions. Until the late 1980s, the United States maintained a sharp separation between investment banking and commercial banking—a separation that was imposed by the Glass-Steagall Act of 1933. Until 2008, four big Wall Street firms—Goldman Sachs, Lehman Brothers, Merrill Lynch, and Morgan Stanley—provided investment banking services. But in the financial meltdown of 2008, Lehman disappeared and Merrill Lynch was taken over by the Bank of America, a commercial bank.

Commercial Banks

The bank that you use for your own banking services and that issues your credit card is a commercial bank. We'll explain their role in Chapter 27 where we study the role of money in our economy.

Government-Sponsored Mortgage Lenders

Two large financial institutions, the Federal National Mortgage Association, or Fannie Mae, and the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, or Freddie Mac, are government-sponsored enterprises that buy mortgages from banks, package them into *mortgage-backed securities*, and sell them. In September 2008, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac owned or guaranteed $6 trillion worth of mortgages (half of the U.S. total of $12 trillion) and were taken over by the federal government.

Pension Funds

Pension funds are financial institutions that use the pension contributions of firms and workers to buy bonds and stocks. The mortgage-backed securities of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac are among the assets of pension funds. Some pension funds are very large and play an active role in the firms whose stock they hold.

Insurance Companies

Insurance companies enter into agreements with households and firms to provide compensation in the event of accident, theft, fire, ill health, and a host of other misfortunes. Some companies, for example, provide insurance that pays out if a firm fails and cannot meet its bond obligations; and some insure other insurers in a complex network of reinsurance.

Insurance companies receive premiums from their customers, make payments against claims, and use the funds they have received but not paid out as claims to buy bonds and stocks on which they earn interest.

In normal times, insurance companies have a steady flow of funds coming in from premiums and interest on the financial assets they hold and a steady, but smaller, flow of funds paying claims. Their profit is the gap between the two flows. But in unusual times, when large and widespread losses are being incurred, insurance companies can run into difficulty in meeting their obligations. Such a situation arose in 2008 for one of the biggest insurers, AIG, and the firm was taken into public ownership.

Insolvency and Illiquidity

Net worth
The total market value of what a financial institution has lent minus the market value of what it has borrowed.

A financial institution's **net worth** is the total market value of what it has lent minus the market value of what it has borrowed. If net worth is positive, the institution is *solvent* and can remain in business. But if net worth is negative, the institution is *insolvent* and must stop trading. The owners of an insolvent financial institution—usually its stockholders—bear the loss when the assets are sold and debts paid.

A financial institution both borrows and lends, so it is exposed to the risk that its net worth might become negative. To limit that risk, institutions are regulated and a minimum amount of their lending must be backed by their net worth.

Sometimes, a financial institution is solvent but illiquid. A firm is *illiquid* if it has made long-term loans with borrowed funds and is faced with a sudden demand to repay more of what it has borrowed than its available cash. In normal times, a financial institution that is illiquid can borrow from another institution. But if all financial institutions are short of cash, the market for loans among financial institutions dries up.

Insolvency and illiquidity were at the core of the financial meltdown of 2007–2008.

Interest Rates and Asset Prices

Stocks, bonds, short-term securities, and loans are collectively called *financial assets*. The *interest rate* on a financial asset is a percentage of the price of the asset.

Because the interest rate is a percentage of the price of an asset, if the asset price rises, other things remaining the same, the interest rate falls. And conversely, if the asset price falls, other things remaining the same, the interest rate rises.

To see this *inverse relationship* between an asset price and interest rate, look at the example of a Microsoft share. In September 2009, the price of a Microsoft share was $25 and each share entitled its owner to 50 cents of Microsoft profit. The interest rate on a Microsoft share as a percentage was

$$\text{Interest rate} = (\$0.50 \div \$25) \times 100 = 2 \text{ percent.}$$

If the price of a Microsoft share increased to $50 and each share still entitled its owner to 50 cents of Microsoft profit, the interest rate on a Microsoft share as a percentage would become

$$\text{Interest rate} = (\$0.50 \div \$50) \times 100 = 1 \text{ percent.}$$

This relationship means that an asset price and interest rate are determined simultaneously—one implies the other. In the next part of this chapter, we learn how asset prices and interest rates are determined in the financial markets.

CHECKPOINT 26.1

Describe the financial markets and the key financial institutions.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 26.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Michael is an Internet service provider. On December 31, 2011, he bought an existing business with servers and a building worth $400,000. During 2012, he bought new servers for $500,000. The market value of his older servers fell by $100,000. What was Michael's gross investment, depreciation, and net investment during 2012? What is Michael's capital at the end of 2012?
2. Lori is a student who teaches golf on the weekend and in a year earns $20,000 after paying her taxes. At the beginning of 2011, Lori owned $1,000 worth of books, DVDs, and golf clubs and she had $5,000 in a savings account at the bank. During 2011, the interest on her savings account was $300 and she spent a total of $15,300 on consumption goods and services. The market value of her books, DVDs, and golf clubs did not change. How much did Lori save in 2011? What was her wealth at the end of 2011?

In the News

IMF urges EU banks to raise capital

European banks face $400 billion in potential losses from the euro-zone debt crisis, the International Monetary Fund said as it urged banks to raise capital.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 22, 2011

What are the financial institutions that the IMF urges to raise more capital? What exactly is the "capital" referred to in the news clip? How might raising more capital make financial institutions safer?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Michael's gross investment during 2012 was $500,000—the market value of the new servers he bought.

   Michael's depreciation during 2012 was $100,000—the fall in the market value of his older servers.

   Michael's net investment during 2012 was $400,000. Net investment equals gross investment minus depreciation, which is ($500,000 − $100,000).

   At the end of 2012, Michael's capital was $800,000. The capital grew during 2012 by the amount of net investment, so at the end of 2012 capital was $400,000 + $400,000, which equals $800,000.
2. Lori saved $5,000. Saving equals income (after tax) minus the amount spent. That is, Lori's saving was $20,300 minus $15,300, or $5,000.

   Lori's wealth at the end of 2011 was $11,000—the sum of her wealth at the start of 2011 ($6,000) plus her saving during 2011 ($5,000).

Solution to In the News

The institutions are some European banks. "Capital" in the news clip is the banks' own funds. By using more of its own funds and less borrowed funds, a financial institution decreases its risk of insolvency in the event that its assets lose value.

26.2 THE LOANABLE FUNDS MARKET

Loanable funds market
The aggregate of all the individual financial markets.

In macroeconomics, we group all the individual financial markets into a single loanable funds market. The **loanable funds market** is the aggregate of the markets for loans, bonds, and stocks. In the loanable funds market, there is just one average interest rate that we refer to as *the* interest rate.

Thinking about financial markets as a single loanable funds market makes sense because the individual markets are highly interconnected with many common influences that move the interest rates on individual assets up and down together.

Flows in the Loanable Funds Market

The circular flow model (see Chapter 21, pp. 536–537) provides the accounting framework that describes the flows in the loanable funds market.

Loanable funds are used for three purposes:

1. Business investment
2. Government budget deficit
3. International investment or lending

And loanable funds come from three sources:

1. Private saving
2. Government budget surplus
3. International borrowing

Firms often use *retained earnings*—profits not distributed to stockholders—to finance business investment. These earnings belong to the firm's stockholders and are borrowed from the stockholders rather than being paid to them as dividends. To keep the accounts in the clearest possible way, we think of these retained earnings as being both a use and a source of loanable funds. They are part of business investment on the uses side and part of private saving on the sources side.

We measure all the flows of loanable funds in real terms—in constant 2005 dollars.

You're now going to see how these real flows and the real interest rate are determined in the loanable funds market by studying

- The demand for loanable funds
- The supply of loanable funds
- Equilibrium in the loanable funds market

The Demand for Loanable Funds

The *quantity of loanable funds demanded* is the total quantity of funds demanded to finance investment, the government budget deficit, and international investment or lending during a given period. Investment is the major item and the focus of our explanation of the forces that influence the demand side of the loanable funds market. The other two items—the government budget deficit and international investment and lending—can be thought of as amounts to be added to investment. (We study the effects of the government budget later in this chapter on pp. 676–679 and international borrowing and lending in Chapter 34.)

What determines investment and the demand for loanable funds? How does Amazon.com decide how much to borrow to build some new warehouses? Many details influence such a decision, but we can summarize them in two factors:

1. The real interest rate
2. Expected profit

The real interest rate is the opportunity cost of the funds used to finance the purchase of capital, and firms compare the real interest rate with the rate of profit they expect to earn on their new capital. Firms invest only when they expect to earn a rate of profit that exceeds the real interest rate. Fewer projects are profitable at a high real interest rate than at a low real interest rate, so:

Other things remaining the same, the higher the real interest rate, the smaller is the quantity of loanable funds demanded; and the lower the real interest rate, the greater is the quantity of loanable funds demanded.

Demand for Loanable Funds Curve

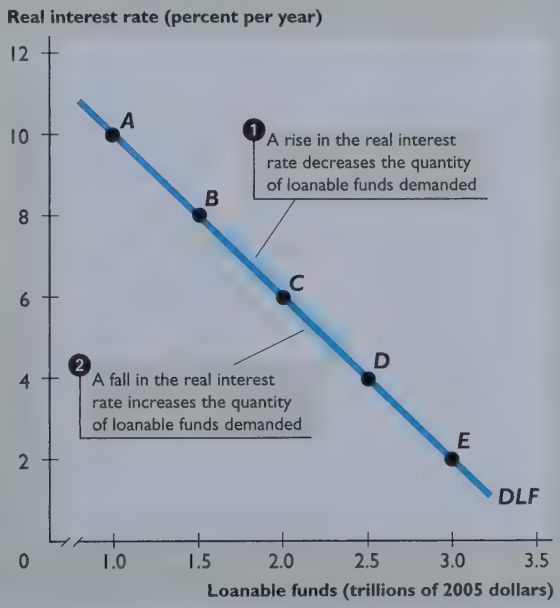
The **demand for loanable funds** is the relationship between the quantity of loanable funds demanded and the real interest rate when all other influences on borrowing plans remain the same. Figure 26.2 illustrates the demand for loanable funds as a schedule and as a curve.

Demand for loanable funds
The relationship between the quantity of loanable funds demanded and the real interest rate when all other influences on borrowing plans remain the same.

FIGURE 26.2
The Demand for Loanable Funds

MyEconLab Animation

	Real interest rate (percent per year)	Loanable funds demanded (trillions of 2005 dollars)
A	10	1.0
B	8	1.5
C	6	2.0
D	4	2.5
E	2	3.0



The table shows the quantity of loanable funds demanded at five real interest rates. The graph shows the demand for loanable funds curve, *DLF*. Points *A* through *E* correspond to the rows of the table.

1. If the real interest rate rises, the quantity of loanable funds demanded decreases.
2. If the real interest rate falls, the quantity of loanable funds demanded increases.

To understand the demand for loanable funds, think about Amazon.com's decision to borrow $100 million to build some new warehouses. Suppose that Amazon expects to get a return of $5 million a year from this investment before paying interest costs. If the interest rate is less than 5 percent a year, Amazon expects to make a profit, so it builds the warehouses. If the interest rate is more than 5 percent a year, Amazon expects to incur a loss, so it doesn't build the warehouses. The quantity of loanable funds demanded is greater, the lower is the interest rate.

Changes in the Demand for Loanable Funds

When the expected profit changes, the demand for loanable funds changes. Other things remaining the same, the greater the expected profit from new capital, the greater is the amount of investment and the greater is the demand for loanable funds.

The expected profit rises during a business cycle expansion and falls during a recession; rises when technological change creates profitable new products; rises as a growing population brings increased demand; and fluctuates with contagious swings of optimism and pessimism, called "animal spirits" by Keynes and "irrational exuberance" by Alan Greenspan.

Figure 26.3 shows how the demand for loanable funds curve shifts when the expected profit changes. With average profit expectations, the demand for loanable funds curve is DLF_0. A rise in expected profit shifts the demand curve rightward to DLF_1; a fall in expected profit shifts the demand curve leftward to DLF_2.

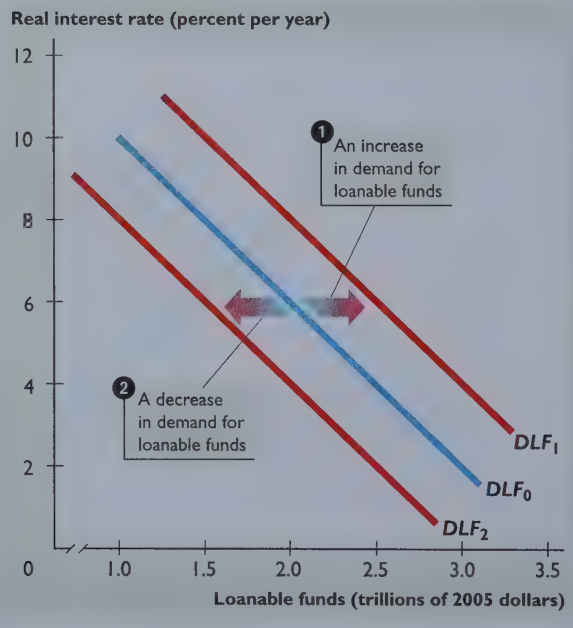
FIGURE 26.3

Changes in the Demand for Loanable Funds

MyEconLab Animation

A change in expected profit changes the demand for loanable funds and shifts the demand for loanable funds curve.

1. An increase in expected profit increases the demand for loanable funds and shifts the demand curve rightward to DLF_1.
2. A decrease in expected profit decreases the demand for loanable funds and shifts the demand curve leftward to DLF_2.



The Supply of Loanable Funds

The *quantity of loanable funds supplied* is the total funds available from private saving, the government budget surplus, and international borrowing during a given period. Saving is the main source of supply of loanable funds. A government budget surplus and international borrowing are other sources.

Saving and the supply of loanable funds are determined by decisions by people like you. Suppose that you've graduated and landed a great job that pays you $50,000 a year. How do you decide how much of your income to spend on consumption goods and how much to save and supply in the loanable funds market? Your decision will be influenced by many factors, but chief among them are

1. The real interest rate
2. Disposable income
3. Wealth
4. Expected future income
5. Default risk

We begin by focusing on the real interest rate.

Other things remaining the same, the higher the real interest rate, the greater is the quantity of loanable funds supplied; and the lower the real interest rate, the smaller is the quantity of loanable funds supplied.

The Supply of Loanable Funds Curve

The **supply of loanable funds** is the relationship between the quantity of loanable funds supplied and the real interest rate when all other influences on lending plans remain the same. Figure 26.4 illustrates the supply of loanable funds.

Supply of loanable funds
The relationship between the quantity of loanable funds supplied and the real interest rate when all other influences on lending plans remain the same.

The key reason the supply of loanable funds curve slopes upward is that the real interest rate is the *opportunity cost* of consumption expenditure. A dollar spent is a dollar not saved, so the interest that could have been earned on that saving is forgone. Forgone interest is the opportunity cost of consumption regardless of whether a person is a lender or a borrower. For a lender, saving less means receiving less interest. For a borrower, saving less means paying less off a loan (or increasing a loan) and paying more interest.

By thinking about student loans, you can see why the real interest rate influences saving and the supply of loanable funds. If the real interest rate on student loans jumped to 20 percent a year, graduates would save more (buying cheaper food and finding lower-rent accommodations) to pay off their loans as quickly as possible and avoid, as much as possible, paying the higher interest cost of their loan. If the real interest rate on student loans fell to 1 percent a year, graduates would save less and take longer to pay off their loans because the interest burden was easier to bear.

Changes in the Supply of Loanable Funds

A change in any influence on saving, other than the real interest rate, changes the supply of loanable funds. The other four factors listed above—disposable income, wealth, expected future income, and default risk—are the main things that change the supply of loanable funds.

FIGURE 26.4

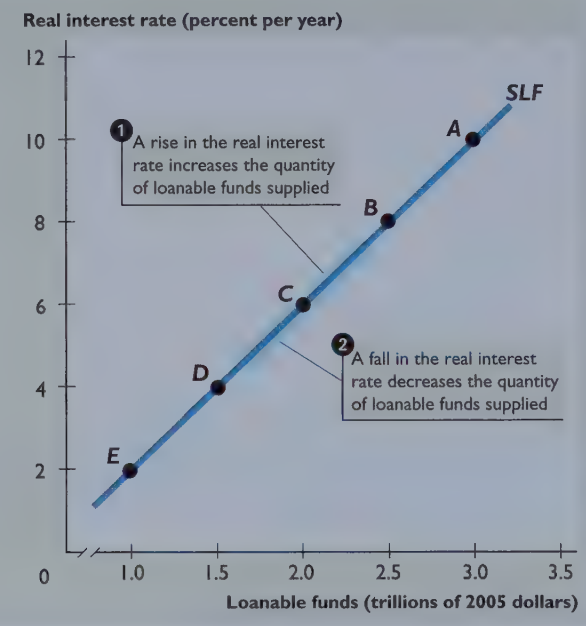
The Supply of Loanable Funds

MyEconLab Animation

The table shows the quantity of loanable funds supplied at five real interest rates. The graph shows the supply of loanable funds curve, *SLF*. Points *A* through *E* correspond to the rows of the table.

1. If the real interest rate rises, the quantity of loanable funds supplied increases.
2. If the real interest rate falls, the quantity of loanable funds supplied decreases.

	Real interest rate (percent per year)	Loanable funds supplied (trillions of 2005 dollars)
A	10	3.0
B	8	2.5
C	6	2.0
D	4	1.5
E	2	1.0



Disposable Income A household's *disposable income* is the income earned minus net taxes. The greater a household's disposable income, other things remaining the same, the greater is its saving. For example, a student whose disposable income is $10,000 a year spends the entire $10,000 and saves nothing. An economics graduate whose disposable income is $50,000 a year spends $40,000 and saves $10,000.

Wealth A household's wealth is what it owns. The greater a household's wealth, other things remaining the same, the less it will save.

Patty is a department store executive who has $15,000 in the bank and no debts: She decides to spend $5,000 on a vacation and save nothing this year. Tony, another department store executive, has nothing in the bank and owes $10,000 on his credit card: He decides to cut consumption and start saving.

Expected Future Income The higher a household's expected future income, other things remaining the same, the smaller is its saving today: If two households have the same current disposable income, the household with the larger expected future disposable income will spend a larger portion of its current disposable income on consumption goods and services and so save less today.

Look at Patty and Tony again. Patty has just been promoted and will receive a $10,000 pay raise next year. Tony has just been told that he will be laid off at the end of the year. On receiving this news, Patty buys a new car—increases her

consumption expenditure and cuts her saving—and Tony sells his car and takes the bus—decreases his consumption expenditure and increases his saving.

Most young households expect to have a higher future income for some years and then to have a lower income during retirement. Because of this pattern of income over the life cycle, young people save a small amount, middle-aged people save a lot, and retired people gradually spend their accumulated savings.

Default Risk Default risk is the risk that a loan will not be repaid, or not repaid in full. The greater that risk, the higher is the interest rate needed to induce a person to lend and the smaller is the supply of loanable funds. In normal times, default risk is low but in times of financial crisis when asset prices tumble, default can become widespread as financial institutions become *illiquid* or *insolvent*.

Shifts of the Supply of Loanable Funds Curve

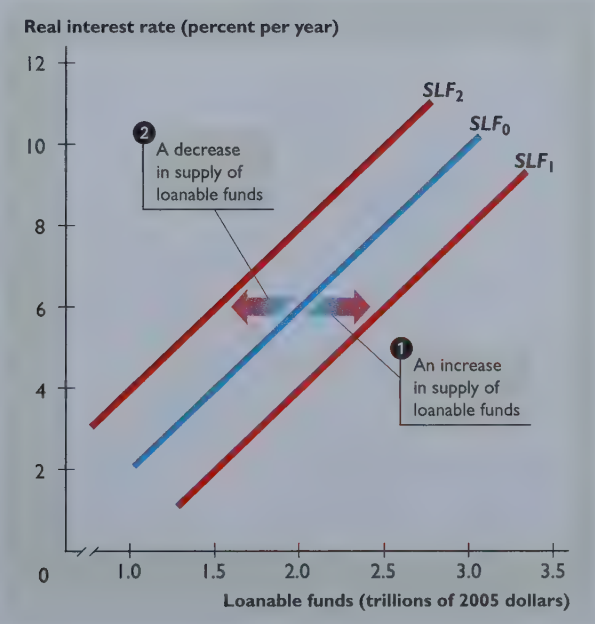
When any of the four influences we've just described changes, the supply of loanable funds changes and the supply of loanable funds curve shifts. An increase in disposable income, or a decrease in wealth, expected future income, or default risk increases the supply of loanable funds.

Figure 26.5 shows how the supply of loanable funds curve shifts. Initially, the supply of loanable funds curve is SLF_0. Then disposable income increases or wealth, expected future income, or default risk decreases. The supply of loanable funds curve shifts rightward from SLF_0 to SLF_1. Changes in these factors in the opposite direction shift the supply curve leftward from SLF_0 to SLF_2.

FIGURE 26.5

Changes in the Supply of Loanable Funds

MyEconLab Animation



1. An increase in disposable income or a decrease in wealth, expected future income, or default risk increases the supply of loanable funds and shifts the supply of loanable funds curve rightward from SLF_0 to SLF_1.
2. A decrease in disposable income or an increase in wealth, expected future income, or default risk decreases the supply of loanable funds and shifts the supply of loanable funds curve leftward from SLF_0 to SLF_2.

Equilibrium in the Loanable Funds Market

You've seen that, other things remaining the same, the quantities of loanable funds demanded and supplied depend on the real interest rate. The higher the real interest rate, the greater is the amount of saving and the larger is the quantity of loanable funds supplied. But the higher the real interest rate, the smaller is the amount of investment and the smaller is the quantity of loanable funds demanded. There is one interest rate at which the quantities of loanable funds demanded and supplied are equal, and that interest rate is the equilibrium real interest rate.

Figure 26.6 shows how the demand for and supply of loanable funds determine the real interest rate. The *DLF* curve is the demand curve and the *SLF* curve is the supply curve. When the real interest rate exceeds 6 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds supplied exceeds the quantity demanded. Borrowers have an easy time finding the funds they want, but lenders are unable to lend all the funds they have available. The real interest rate falls and continues to fall until the quantity of funds supplied equals the quantity of funds demanded.

Alternatively, when the interest rate is less than 6 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds supplied is less than the quantity demanded. Borrowers can't find the funds they want, but lenders are able to lend all the funds they have available. So the real interest rate rises and continues to rise until the quantity of funds supplied equals the quantity demanded.

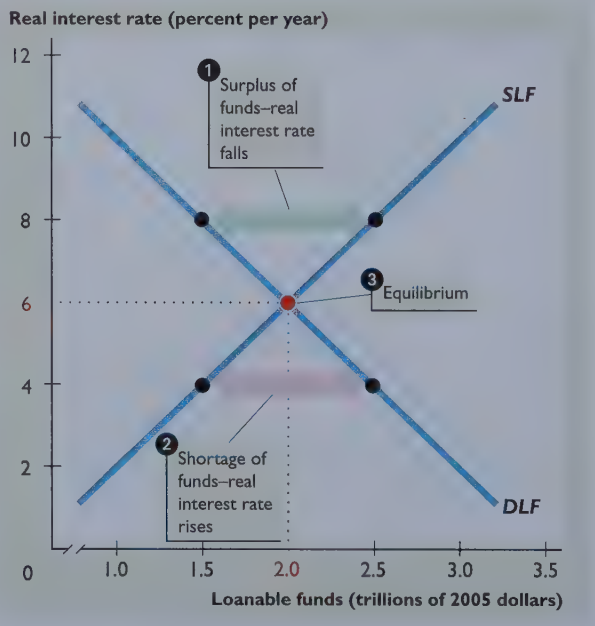
Regardless of whether there is a surplus or a shortage of loanable funds, the real interest rate changes and is pulled toward an equilibrium level. In Figure 26.6,

FIGURE 26.6

Equilibrium in the Loanable Funds Market

MyEconLab Animation

1. If the real interest rate is 8 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds demanded is less than the quantity supplied. There is a surplus of funds, and the real interest rate falls.
2. If the real interest rate is 4 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds demanded exceeds the quantity supplied. There is a shortage of funds, and the real interest rate rises.
3. When the real interest rate is 6 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds demanded equals the quantity supplied. There is neither a shortage nor a surplus of funds, and the real interest rate is at its equilibrium level.



the equilibrium real interest rate is 6 percent a year. At this interest rate, there is neither a surplus nor a shortage of funds. Borrowers can get the funds they want, and lenders can lend all the funds they have available. The plans of borrowers (investors) and lenders (savers) are consistent with each other.

Changes in Demand and Supply

Fluctuations in either the demand for loanable funds or the supply of loanable funds bring fluctuations in the real interest rate and in the equilibrium quantity of funds lent and borrowed. Here we'll illustrate the effects of an increase in each.

An increase in expected profit increases the demand for loanable funds. With no change in supply, there is a shortage of funds and the interest rate rises until the equilibrium is restored. In Figure 26.7(a), the increase in the demand for loanable funds shifts the demand for loanable funds curve rightward from DLF_0 to DLF_1. At a real interest rate of 6 percent a year, there is a shortage of funds. The real interest rate rises to 8 percent a year, and the equilibrium quantity of funds increases.

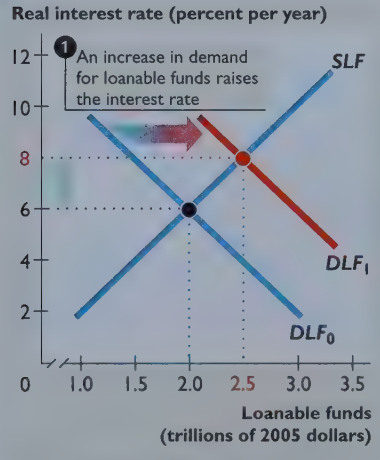
If one of the influences on saving plans changes and increases saving, the supply of loanable funds increases. With no change in demand, there is a surplus of funds and the interest rate falls until the equilibrium is restored. In Figure 26.7(b), the increase in the supply of loanable funds shifts the supply of loanable funds curve rightward from SLF_0 to SLF_1. At a real interest rate of 6 percent a year, there is a surplus of funds. The real interest rate falls to 4 percent a year, and the equilibrium quantity of funds increases.

Over time, both demand and supply in the loanable funds market fluctuate and the real interest rate rises and falls. Both the supply of loanable funds and the demand for loanable funds tend to increase over time. On the average, they increase at a similar pace, so although demand and supply trend upward, the real interest rate has no trend. It fluctuates around a constant average level.

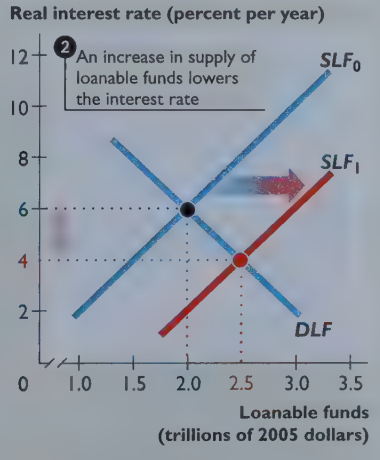
FIGURE 26.7

Changes in Demand and Supply in the Loanable Funds Market

MyEconLab Animation



(a) An increase in investment



(b) An increase in saving

1. If the demand for loanable funds increases and the supply of loanable funds remains the same, the real interest rate rises and the equilibrium quantity of funds increases.
2. If the supply of loanable funds increases and the demand for loanable funds remains the same, the real interest rate falls and the equilibrium quantity of funds increases.

EYE on FINANCIAL CRISIS

What Created the Global Financial Crisis?

Events in the loanable funds market, on both the supply side and demand side, created the global financial crisis.

An increase in default risk decreased supply; and the disappearance of some major Wall Street institutions and lowered profit expectations decreased demand.

Bear Stearns was absorbed by JP Morgan with help from the Federal Reserve; Lehman Brothers' assets were taken over by Barclays; Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac went into government oversight with U.S. taxpayer guarantees; Merrill Lynch became part of the Bank of America; AIG received an $85 billion lifeline from the Federal Reserve and sold off parcels of its business to financial institutions around the world; Wachovia was taken over by Wells Fargo and Washington Mutual by JP Morgan Chase.

But what caused the increase in default risk and the failure of so many financial institutions?

Between 2002 and 2005, interest rates were low. There were plenty of willing borrowers and plenty of willing lenders. Fueled by easy loans, home prices rose rapidly. Lenders bundled their loans into mortgage-backed securities and sold them to eager buyers around the world.

Then, in 2006, interest rates began to rise and home prices began to fall. People defaulted on mortgages; banks took losses and some became insolvent. A downward spiral of lending was under way.

CHECKPOINT 26.2

Explain how borrowing and lending decisions are made and how these decisions interact in the loanable funds market.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 26.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

First Call, Inc. is a cellular phone company. It plans to build an assembly plant that costs $10 million if the real interest rate is 6 percent a year. If the real interest rate is 5 percent a year, First Call will build a larger plant that costs $12 million. And if the real interest rate is 7 percent a year, First Call will build a smaller plant that costs $8 million. Use this information to work Problems **1** and **2**.

1. Draw a graph of First Call's demand for loanable funds curve.
2. First Call expects its profit from the sale of cellular phones to double next year. If other things remain the same, explain how this increase in expected profit influences First Call's demand for loanable funds.
3. Draw graphs that illustrate how an increase in the supply of loanable funds and a decrease in the demand for loanable funds can lower the real interest rate and leave the equilibrium quantity of loanable funds unchanged.

In the News

Poof! How home loans transform

Banks make a profit by transforming home loans into mortgage-backed securities and trading them on financial loans markets. Banks then use this profit to issue more home loans. During the credit crisis, the market for mortgage-backed securities issued by banks almost stopped functioning.

Source: *The New York Times*, September 18, 2009

Explain why the market for mortgage-backed securities almost stopped functioning during the credit crisis of 2007–2008.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The demand for loanable funds curve is the downward-sloping curve DLF_0 and passes through the points highlighted in Figure 1.
2. An increase in the expected profit increases investment today, which increases the quantity of loanable funds demanded at each real interest rate. The demand for loanable funds curve shifts rightward to DLF_1 (Figure 1).
3. The increase in the supply of loanable funds shifts the supply curve rightward. The decrease in the demand for loanable funds shifts the demand curve leftward. The real interest rate falls. If the shifts are of the same magnitude, the equilibrium quantity of funds remains unchanged (Figure 2). If the shift of the supply curve is greater (less) than that of the demand curve, then the equilibrium quantity of funds increases (decreases).

Solution to In the News

The banks that create and sell mortgage-backed securities demand loanable funds and the banks that buy these securities supply loanable funds. When home prices started to fall and home owners defaulted, banks made fewer home loans and the demand for mortgage-backed securities decreased. These securities also became riskier, so the supply of loanable funds to buy them dried up.

FIGURE 1

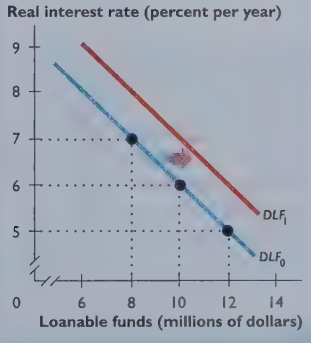
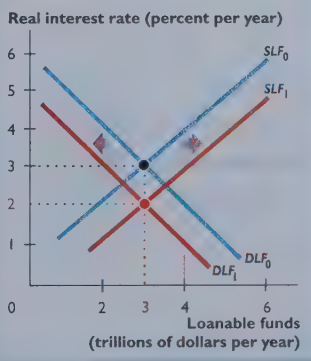


FIGURE 2



26.3 GOVERNMENT IN LOANABLE FUNDS MARKET

The government enters the loanable funds market when it has a budget surplus or budget deficit. So actions that change the government's budget balance influence the loanable funds market and the real interest rate. A change in the real interest rate influences both saving and investment. To complete our study of the forces that determine the quantity of investment and the real interest rate, we investigate the role played by the government's budget balance.

A Government Budget Surplus

A government budget surplus increases the supply of loanable funds. The real interest rate falls, which decreases private saving and decreases the quantity of private funds supplied. The lower real interest rate increases the quantity of loanable funds demanded and increases investment.

Figure 26.8 shows these effects of a government budget surplus. The private supply of loanable funds curve is *PSLF*. The supply of loanable funds curve, *SLF*, shows the sum of the private supply and the government budget surplus. Here, the government budget surplus is $1 trillion, so at each real interest rate the *SLF* curve lies $1 trillion to the right of the *PSLF* curve. That is, the horizontal distance between the *PSLF* curve and the *SLF* curve is the government budget surplus.

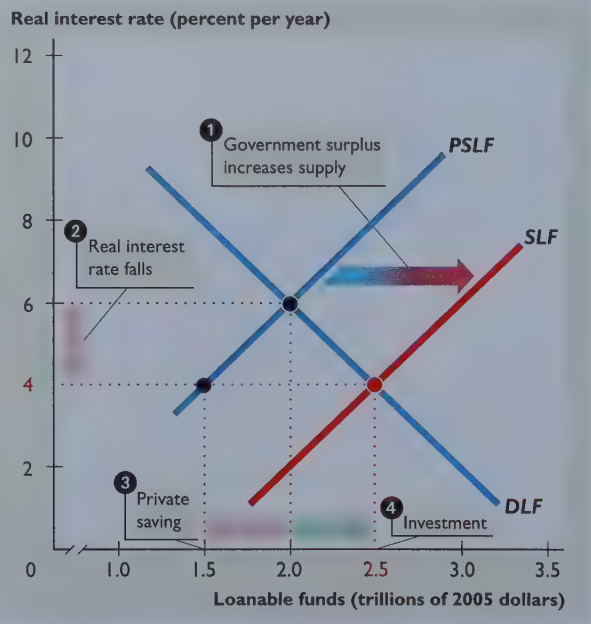
FIGURE 26.8

Government Budget Surplus

MyEconLab Animation

The demand for loanable funds curve is *DLF*, and the private supply of loanable funds curve is *PSLF*. With a balanced government budget, the real interest rate is 6 percent a year and investment is $2 trillion a year. Private saving and investment are $2 trillion a year.

1. A government budget surplus of $1 trillion is added to private saving to determine the supply of loanable funds curve *SLF*.
2. The real interest rate falls to 4 percent a year.
3. The quantity of private saving decreases to $1.5 trillion.
4. The quantity of loanable funds demanded and investment increase to $2.5 trillion.



With no government budget surplus, the real interest rate is 6 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds is $2 trillion a year and investment is $2 trillion a year. But with the government budget surplus of $1 trillion a year, the equilibrium real interest rate falls to 4 percent a year and the quantity of loanable funds increases to $2.5 trillion a year.

The fall in the real interest rate decreases private saving to $1.5 trillion, but investment increases to $2.5 trillion, which is financed by private saving and the government budget surplus (government saving).

A Government Budget Deficit

A government budget deficit increases the demand for loanable funds. The real interest rate rises, which increases private saving and increases the quantity of private funds supplied. But the higher real interest rate decreases investment and the quantity of loanable funds demanded by firms to finance investment.

Figure 26.9 shows these effects of a government budget deficit. The private demand for loanable funds curve is *PDLF*. The demand for loanable funds curve, *DLF*, shows the sum of the private demand and the government budget deficit. Here, the government budget deficit is $1 trillion, so at each real interest rate the *DLF* curve lies $1 trillion to the right of the *PDLF* curve. That is, the horizontal distance between the *PDLF* curve and the *DLF* curve equals the government budget deficit.

With no government budget deficit, the real interest rate is 6 percent a year, the quantity of loanable funds is $2 trillion a year and investment is $2 trillion a

FIGURE 26.9

Government Budget Deficit

MyEconLab Animation

The supply of loanable funds curve is *SLF* and the private demand for loanable funds curve is *PDLF*. With a balanced government budget, the real interest rate is 6 percent a year and the quantity of loanable funds is $2 trillion a year. Private saving and investment are $2 trillion a year.

1. A government budget deficit of $1 trillion is added to the private demand for funds to determine the demand for loanable funds curve *DLF*.
2. The real interest rate rises to 8 percent a year.
3. The quantity of private funds supplied and the quantity of loanable funds increase to $2.5 trillion.
4. Investment decreases to $1.5 trillion. Investment is crowded out.

year. But with the government budget deficit of $1 trillion, the real interest rate rises from 6 percent a year to 8 percent a year and the quantity of loanable funds increases from $2 trillion to $2.5 trillion.

The rise in the real interest rate increases private saving to $2.5 trillion, but investment decreases to $1.5 trillion. The tendency for a government budget deficit to raise the real interest rate and decrease investment is called the **crowding-out effect.** Investment does not decrease by the full amount of the government budget deficit because private saving increases. In this example, private saving increases by $0.5 trillion to $2.5 trillion.

Crowding-out effect
The tendency for a government budget deficit to raise the real interest rate and decrease investment.

The Ricardo-Barro Effect

First suggested by the English economist David Ricardo in the eighteenth century and refined by Robert J. Barro of Harvard University during the 1980s, the Ricardo-Barro effect holds that the effects we've just shown are wrong and that the government budget deficit has no effect on the real interest rate or investment. Barro says that rational taxpayers can see that a deficit today means that future taxes will be higher and future disposable incomes will be smaller. With smaller expected future disposable incomes, saving increases. The increase in saving increases the supply of loanable funds—shifts the *SLF* curve rightward—by an amount equal to the government budget deficit. The supply of loanable funds might increase and lessen the influence of the government budget deficit on the real interest rate and investment, but most economists regard the full Ricardo-Barro effect as unlikely.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Did the Rescue Plan Crowd Out Investment?

In mid-2007, on the eve of the onset of the global financial crisis, U.S. investment expenditure was running at $2.2 trillion. The government had a budget deficit of $0.2 trillion, so the quantity of loanable funds demanded and supplied was $2.4 trillion. The real interest rate at that time was 3 percent per year.

By mid-2009, U.S. investment expenditure had fallen to $1.5 trillion and the real interest rate had risen to 4.5 percent per year.

What caused the collapse of investment and the rise in the real interest rate?

One possible answer is that the federal government's rescue plan for troubled financial institutions and other firms created a large crowding-out effect. Let's examine the plausibility of this answer.

During 2008 and 2009, government rescue-plan outlays on Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, the insurance giant AIG, the U.S. auto industry, and many other financial institutions boosted the federal budget deficit by $1 trillion. In 2009, the deficit reached $1.2 trillion.

To finance this deficit, the government issued bonds. These government bonds competed with corporate bonds for loanable funds and increased the demand for loanable funds by $1 trillion. With an increase in the demand for loanable funds and no change in the supply of loanable funds, the real interest rate would be expected to rise. The higher interest rate would crowd out investment expenditure.

The figure illustrates this crowding-out effect. In 2007, the supply of loanable funds curve was *SLF* and the demand for loanable funds curve was DLF_{07}. The private demand for loanable funds to finance investment expenditure was *PDLF*, and the horizontal gap between the two demand curves DLF_{07} and *PDLF* was the government budget deficit of $0.2 trillion.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Participation in the Loanable Funds Market

Think about the amount of saving that you do. How much of your disposable income do you save? Is it a positive amount or a negative amount?

If you save a positive amount, what do you do with your savings? Do you put them in a bank, in the stock market, in bonds, or just keep money at home? What is the interest rate you earn on your savings?

If you save a negative amount, just what does that mean? It means that you have a deficit (like a government deficit). You're spending more than your disposable income. In this case, how do you finance your deficit? Do you get a student loan? Do you run up an outstanding credit card balance? How much do you pay to finance your negative saving (your *dissaving*)?

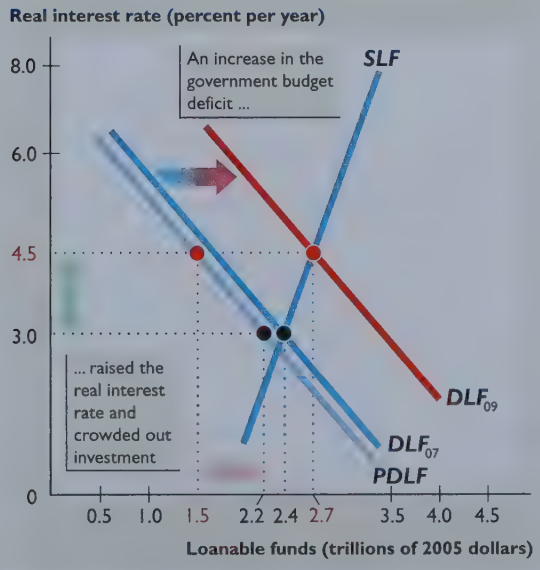
How do you think your saving will change when you graduate and get a better-paying job?

Also think about the amount of investment that you do. You are investing in your human capital by being in school. What is this investment costing you? How are you financing this investment?

When you graduate and start a well-paying job, you will need to decide whether to buy an apartment or a house or to rent your home.

How would you make a decision whether to buy or rent a home? Would it be smart to borrow $300,000 to finance the purchase of a home? How would the interest rate influence your decision?

These examples show just some of the many decisions and transactions you will make in the loanable funds market—the link between your saving and your investment.



The rescue-plan expenditures increased the demand for loanable funds and shifted the demand curve rightward to DLF_{09}.

The increase in the demand for loanable funds raised the equilibrium interest rate to 4.5 percent per year and the higher interest rate brought a decrease in the quantity of loanable funds demanded to finance a smaller volume of investment expenditure.

Although the higher real interest rate crowded out some investment, without the rescue package, depressed profit expectations might have lowered investment even more.

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and Federal Reserve. The interest rate is the average of the Aaa and Baa corporate bond rates adjusted for inflation measured by the GDP price index.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 26.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 26.3

Explain how a government budget surplus or deficit influences the real interest rate, investment, and saving.

Practice Problems

Table 1 shows the demand for loanable funds schedule and the supply of loanable funds schedule when the government budget is balanced.

TABLE 1

Real interest rate (percent per year)	Loanable funds demanded (trillions of 2005 dollars per year)	Loanable funds supplied (trillions of 2005 dollars per year)
4	3.5	0.5
5	3.0	1.0
6	2.5	1.5
7	2.0	2.0
8	1.5	2.5
9	1.0	3.0
10	0.5	3.5

1. If the government budget surplus is $1 trillion, what are the real interest rate, the quantity of investment, and the quantity of private saving?
2. If the government budget deficit is $1 trillion, what are the real interest rate, the quantity of investment, and the quantity of private saving? Is there any crowding out in this situation?
3. If the government budget deficit is $1 trillion and the Ricardo-Barro effect occurs, what are the real interest rate and the quantity of investment?

FIGURE 1

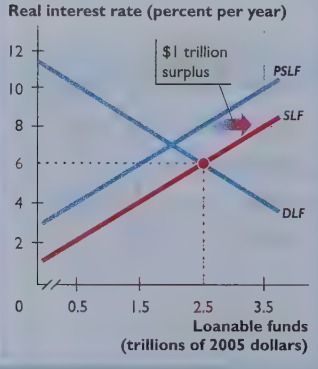
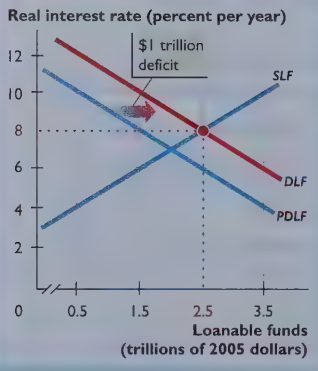


FIGURE 2



In the News

Budget vote surprises GOP leaders

A group of lawmakers joined forces to defeat a bill to fund a federal government deficit of $1.043 trillion for 2012.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 22, 2011

Explain the effect of a large federal deficit and debt on economic growth.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. If the government budget surplus is $1 trillion, the supply of loanable funds increases. Figure 1 shows the supply of loanable funds *SLF*. The equilibrium real interest rate falls from 7 percent to 6 percent a year and the quantity of loanable funds increases to $2.5 trillion. Investment is $2.5 trillion and private saving is $1.5 trillion.
2. If the government budget deficit is $1 trillion, the demand for loanable funds increases. Figure 2 shows the demand for loanable funds curve *DLF*. The equilibrium real interest rate rises from 7 percent to 8 percent a year and the quantity of loanable funds increases to $2.5 trillion. Investment decreases to $1.5 trillion. Crowding out occurs because the deficit increases the real interest rate, which decreases investment.
3. If the Ricardo-Barro effect occurs, private saving adjusts to offset the budget deficit of $1 trillion. The supply of loanable funds increases by $1 trillion and the equilibrium real interest rate remains at 7 percent a year. The quantity of loanable funds is $3 trillion and it finances investment of $2 trillion and the budget deficit of $1 trillion. Crowding out does not occur.

Solution to In the News

Compared to a balanced budget, a large federal deficit and debt increases the demand for loanable funds. It raises the real interest rate and lowers private investment. Investment increases the capital stock, which increases labor productivity and real GDP. The higher real interest rate slows the growth of the capital stock, slows labor productivity growth, and slows real GDP growth.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the financial markets and the key financial institutions.

- Firms use financial capital to buy and operate physical capital.
- Gross investment is the total amount spent on physical capital in a given period. Net investment equals gross investment minus depreciation.
- Wealth is the value of what people own; saving is the amount of disposable income that is not spent, and it adds to wealth.
- The market for financial capital is a market made up of the markets for loans, bonds, and stocks.

2 Explain how borrowing and lending decisions are made and how these decisions interact in the loanable funds market.

- Other things remaining the same, the lower the real interest rate or the higher the expected profit rate, the greater is the quantity of loanable funds demanded.
- The demand for loanable funds changes when the expected profit rate changes.
- Other things remaining the same, the higher the real interest rate, the greater is the quantity of loanable funds supplied.
- The supply of loanable funds changes when disposable income, wealth, expected future income, or default risk changes.
- Equilibrium in the loanable funds market determines the real interest rate.
- At the equilibrium real interest rate, the quantity of loanable funds demanded equals the quantity of loanable funds supplied.

3 Explain how a government budget surplus or deficit influences the real interest rate, investment, and saving.

- A government budget surplus increases the supply of loanable funds and a government budget deficit increases the demand for loanable funds.
- With no change in private saving, an increase in the government budget deficit raises the real interest rate and crowds out investment.
- A government budget deficit might increase private saving because it decreases expected future disposable income.

Key Terms

Bond, 662
Capital or physical capital, 660
Crowding-out effect, 678
Demand for loanable funds, 667
Financial institution, 663
Gross investment, 660
Loanable funds market, 666
Net investment, 660
Net worth, 664
Stock, 662
Supply of loanable funds, 669
Wealth, 660

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 26 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. On January 1, 2011, Terry's Towing Service owned 4 tow trucks valued at $300,000. During 2011, Terry's bought 2 new trucks for a total of $180,000. At the end of 2011, the market value of all of the firm's trucks was $400,000. What was Terry's gross investment? Calculate Terry's depreciation and net investment.

Use the following information to work Problems **2** and **3**.

The Bureau of Economic Analysis reported that the U.S. capital stock was $31.4 trillion at the end of 2006, $32.2 trillion at the end of 2007, and $32.7 trillion at the end of 2008. Depreciation in 2007 was $1.4 trillion, and gross investment during 2008 was $2.0 trillion (all in 2005 dollars).

2. Calculate U.S. net investment and gross investment during 2007.
3. Calculate U.S. depreciation and net investment during 2008.
4. Mike takes a summer job washing cars. During the summer, he earns an after-tax income of $3,000 and he spends $1,000 on goods and services. What was Mike's saving during the summer and the change, if any, in his wealth?
5. What is the market for financial capital? What is financial capital? Explain why, when the real interest rate rises, the demand for loanable funds does not change but the quantity of funds demanded decreases.
6. With an increase in global tension during 2005 and 2006, many governments increased defense spending, which decreased government budget surpluses. Show, on a graph, the effects of a decrease in government budget surpluses if there is no Ricardo-Barro effect. Explain how the effects differ if there is a partial Ricardo-Barro effect.
7. **Riding the digital express**

   The first undersea fiber-optic cable, Seacom, reached the east African coast in July 2009. This "Digital Express" is the most important infrastructure investment in east Africa since the construction of the Uganda Railway in 1903. The $700m project will reduce business costs, create an e-commerce sector, and open up the region to foreign investment. Its impact will be unparalleled in contemporary African economic history.

   Source: BBCNews, September 15, 2009

   Draw a graph of the loanable funds market. Suppose that firms decide to invest in east Africa and they borrow the required funds in the loanable funds market. How will this borrowing change the real interest rate and the quantity of saving?
8. **Celtic Tiger purrs**

   Last November, a disastrous banking crisis forced Ireland to seek a $91.61 billion bailout from the EU and the IMF. Under the terms of its bailout, the government must reduce its budget deficit of around 10% of GDP this year to 8.6% in 2012. Ireland's economy grew strongly in the second quarter despite the cutbacks in government spending.

   Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 22, 2011

   Explain the effect of the cut in the budget deficit on the loanable funds market in Ireland. Why might the economy have grown strongly?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Explain why the supply of loanable funds and the demand for loanable funds decreased during the global financial crisis of 2007–2008. Draw a graph of the loanable funds market before the crisis and use your graph to illustrate the source and effects of the crisis on saving, investment, and the real interest rate.
2. On January 1, 2011, Sophie's Internet Cafe owned 10 computer terminals valued at $8,000. During 2011, Sophie's bought 5 new computer terminals at a cost of $1,000 each, and at the end of the year, the market value of all of Sophie's computer terminals was $11,000. What was Sophie's gross investment, depreciation, and net investment?
3. The numbers in the second column of Table 1 are the Federal Reserve's estimates of personal wealth at the end of each year. The numbers in the third column are the Bureau of Economic Analysis's estimates of personal saving each year. In which years did the change in wealth exceed saving? In which years did saving exceed the change in wealth? Given the definitions of saving and wealth, how can the change in wealth differ from saving?
4. Cindy takes a summer job painting houses. During the summer, she earns an after-tax income of $8,000 and she spends $2,000 on living expenses. What was Cindy's saving during the summer and the change, if any, in her wealth?
5. The stock market boom of 2002–2007 increased wealth by trillions of dollars. Explain the effect of this increase in wealth on the equilibrium real interest rate, investment, and saving.

TABLE 1

Year	Wealth (billions of dollars)	Saving (billions of dollars)
2007	64,266	249
2008	51,476	592
2009	54,239	553
2010	57,578	593

Use the following information to work Problems 6 and 7.

The U.S. saving rate increased from –0.2 percent in 2006 to 4.8 percent in 2007 to 8.7 percent in 2008, and 5.3 percent in 2010.

6. How can the saving rate be negative? Why might a negative saving rate be something to worry about? How might U.S. saving be increased?
7. Explain why the U.S. saving rate might have increased and its effect on the supply of loanable funds.

Use the following information to work Problems 8 to 10.

IMF says it battled crisis well

The International Monetary Fund (IMF) reported that it acted effectively in combating the global recession, especially in Eastern Europe. Since September 2008, the IMF made $163 billion available to developing countries. While the IMF urged the United States, Western European countries, and China to run deficits to stimulate their economies, the IMF required countries in Eastern Europe with large deficits to cut spending and not increase spending.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 29, 2009

8. Explain how an increase in government expenditure will change the government's budget balance and the loanable funds market.
9. Why do you think the IMF required countries with large deficits, like those in Eastern Europe, to cut spending rather than increase it?
10. The Center for Economic and Policy Research in Washington, D.C., claims that the IMF didn't allow developing countries that were looking for loans to expand their deficits sufficiently. Would these countries have weathered the global recession better if they had obtained larger loans from the IMF?

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 26 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Financial capital is the _____.
   A. money used to buy stocks and bonds
   B. money used to buy physical capital
   C. funds that savers supply and buyers of physical capital borrow
   D. money in the bank
2. If the price of a U.S. government bond is $50 and the owner of the bond is entitled to $2.50 income each year, then the interest rate on the bond is _____.
   A. 0.2 percent
   B. 5 percent
   C. 10 percent
   D. 20 percent
3. In the loanable funds market, an increase in _____.
   A. the real interest rate increases the demand for loanable funds
   B. expected profit increases the demand for loanable funds
   C. expected profit doesn't change the demand for loanable funds, but the quantity of loanable funds demanded increases
   D. the real interest rate doesn't change the demand for loanable funds, but the quantity of loanable funds demanded increases
4. The supply of loanable funds increases _____.
   A. when the demand for loanable funds increases
   B. when people increase saving as the real interest rate rises
   C. when disposable income increases or wealth decreases
   D. if net taxes decrease or expected future income increases
5. An increase in expected profit _____ the real interest rate and _____ the quantity of loanable funds.
   A. decreases; decreases
   B. increases; decreases
   C. decreases; increases
   D. increases; increases
6. A government budget surplus _____.
   A. increases the supply of loanable funds
   B. raises the real interest rate
   C. decreases the demand for loanable funds and lowers the real interest rate
   D. decreases net taxes, increases disposable income, and increases saving
7. Crowding out occurs when _____.
   A. households' budgets are in deficit and saving decreases
   B. the government budget is in surplus, so people have paid too much tax
   C. the government budget is in deficit and the real interest rate rises
   D. the government budget is in deficit but taxpayers are rational and the Ricardo-Barro effect operates
8. An increase in the government budget deficit _____.
   A. increases private saving and investment
   B. increases private saving and decreases investment
   C. increases the supply of private saving and decreases investment
   D. decreases private saving and investment

How does the Fed create money and regulate its quantity?

27

The Monetary System

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define money and describe its functions.
2. Describe the functions of banks.
3. Describe the functions of the Federal Reserve System (the Fed).
4. Explain how the banking system creates money and how the Fed controls the quantity of money.

27.1 WHAT IS MONEY?

Money, like fire and the wheel, has been around for a very long time. An incredible array of items has served as money. North American Indians used wampum (beads made from shells), Fijians used whales' teeth, and early American colonists used tobacco. Cakes of salt served as money in Ethiopia and Tibet. What do wampum, whales' teeth, tobacco, and salt have in common? Why are they examples of money? Today, when we want to buy something, we use coins or notes (dollar bills), write a check, send an e-check, present a credit or debit card, or use a "smart card." Are all these things that we use today money? To answer these questions, we need a definition of money.

Definition of Money

Money
Any commodity or token that is generally accepted as a *means of payment*.

Money is any commodity or token that is generally accepted as a *means of payment*. This definition has three parts that we'll examine in turn.

A Commodity or Token

Money is always something that can be recognized and that can be divided up into small parts. So money might be an actual commodity, such as a bar of silver or gold. But it might also be a token, such as a quarter or a $10 bill. Money might also be a virtual token, such as an electronic record in a bank's database (more about this type of money later).

Generally Accepted

Money is *generally* accepted, which means that it can be used to buy *anything and everything*. Some tokens can be used to buy some things but not others. For example, a bus pass is accepted as payment for a bus ride, but you can't use your bus pass to buy toothpaste. So a bus pass is not money. In contrast, you can use a $5 bill to buy either a bus ride or toothpaste—or anything else that costs $5 or less. So a $5 bill is money.

Means of Payment

Means of payment
A method of settling a debt.

A **means of payment** is a method of settling a debt. When a payment has been made, the deal is complete. Suppose that Gus buys a car from his friend Ann. Gus doesn't have enough money to pay for the car right now, but he will have enough three months from now, when he gets paid. Ann agrees that Gus may pay for the car in three months' time. Gus buys the car with a loan from Ann and then pays off the loan. The loan isn't money. Money is what Gus uses to pay off the loan.

So what wampum, whales' teeth, tobacco, and salt have in common is that they have served as a generally accepted means of payment, and that is why they are examples of money.

The Functions of Money

Money performs three vital functions. It serves as a

- Medium of exchange
- Unit of account
- Store of value

Medium of Exchange

A **medium of exchange** is an object that is generally accepted in return for goods and services. Money is a medium of exchange. Without money, you would have to exchange goods and services directly for other goods and services—an exchange called **barter**. Barter requires a *double coincidence of wants*. For example, if you want a soda and have only a paperback novel to offer in exchange for it, you must find someone who is selling soda and who also wants your paperback novel. Money guarantees that there is a double coincidence of wants because people with something to sell will always accept money in exchange for it. Money acts as a lubricant that smoothes the mechanism of exchange. Money enables you to specialize in the activity in which you have a comparative advantage (see Chapter 3, pp. 74–76) instead of searching for a double coincidence of wants.

Medium of exchange
An object that is generally accepted in return for goods and services.

Barter
The direct exchange of goods and services for other goods and services, which requires a double coincidence of wants.

Unit of Account

A **unit of account** is an agreed-upon measure for stating the prices of goods and services. To get the most out of your budget, you have to figure out whether going to a rock concert is worth its opportunity cost. But that cost is not dollars and cents. It is the number of movies, cappuccinos, ice-cream cones, or sticks of gum that you must give up to attend the concert. It's easy to do such calculations when all these goods have prices in terms of dollars and cents (see Table 27.1). If a rock concert costs $64 and a movie costs $8, you know right away that going to the concert costs you 8 movies. If a cappuccino costs $4, going to the concert costs 16 cappuccinos. You need only one calculation to figure out the opportunity cost of any pair of goods and services. For example, the opportunity cost of the rock concert is 128 sticks of gum ($64 ÷ 50¢ = 128 sticks of gum).

Now imagine how troublesome it would be if the rock concert ticket agent posted its price as 8 movies, and if the movie theater posted its price as 2 cappuccinos, and if the coffee shop posted the price of a cappuccino as 2 ice-cream cones, and if the ice-cream shop posted its price as 4 sticks of gum! Now how much running around and calculating do you have to do to figure out how much that rock concert is going to cost you in terms of the movies, cappuccino, ice cream, or sticks of gum that you must give up to attend it? You get the answer for movies right away from the sign posted by the ticket agent. For all the other goods, you're going to have to visit many different places to establish the price of each commodity in terms of another and then calculate prices in units that are relevant for your own decision. Cover up the column labeled "price in money units" in Table 27.1 and see how hard it is to figure out the number of sticks of gum it costs to attend a rock concert. It's enough to make a person swear off rock! How much simpler it is using dollars and cents.

Unit of account
An agreed-upon measure for stating the prices of goods and services.

TABLE 27.1 A UNIT OF ACCOUNT SIMPLIFIES PRICE COMPARISONS

Good	Price in money units	Price in units of another good
Rock concert	$64.00	8 movies
Movie	$8.00	2 cappuccinos
Cappuccino	$4.00	2 ice-cream cones
Ice-cream cone	$2.00	4 sticks of gum
Stick of gum	$0.50	

Store of Value

Any commodity or token that can be held and exchanged later for goods and services is called a **store of value**. Money acts as a store of value. If it did not, it would not be accepted in exchange for goods and services. The more stable the value of a commodity or token, the better it can act as a store of value and the more useful it is as money. No store of value is completely stable. The value of a physical object, such as a house, a car, or a work of art, fluctuates over time. The value of the commodities and tokens that we use as money also fluctuates, and when there is inflation, money persistently falls in value.

Store of value
Any commodity or token that can be held and exchanged later for goods and services.

Money Today

Fiat money
Objects that are money because the law decrees or orders them to be money.

Money in the world today is called **fiat money**. *Fiat* is a Latin word that means decree or order. Fiat money is money because the law decrees it to be so. The objects used as money have value only because of their legal status as money.

Today's fiat money consists of

- Currency
- Deposits at banks and other financial institutions

Currency

Currency
Notes (dollar bills) and coins.

The notes (dollar bills) and coins that we use in the United States today are known as **currency**. The government declares notes to be money with the words printed on every dollar bill, "This note is legal tender for all debts, public and private."

Deposits

Deposits at banks, credit unions, savings banks, and savings and loan associations are also money. Deposits are money because they can be used to make payments. You don't need to go to the bank to get currency to make a payment. You can write a check or use your debit card to tell your bank to move some money from your account to someone else's.

Currency Inside the Banks Is Not Money

Although currency and bank deposits are money, currency *inside the banks* is *not money*. The reason is while currency is inside a bank, it isn't available as a means of payment. When you get some cash from the ATM, you convert your bank deposit into currency. You change the form of your money, but there is no change in the quantity of money that you own. Your bank deposit decreases, and your currency holding increases.

If we counted bank deposits and currency inside the banks as money, think about what would happen to the quantity of money when you get cash from the ATM. The quantity of money would appear to decrease. Your currency would increase, but both bank deposits and currency inside the banks would decrease.

You can see that counting both bank deposits and currency inside the banks as money would be double counting.

Official Measures of Money: M1 and M2

M1
Currency held by individuals and businesses, traveler's checks, and checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses.

M2
M1 plus savings deposits and small time deposits, money market funds, and other deposits.

Figure 27.1 shows the items that make up two official measures of money. **M1** consists of currency held by individuals and businesses, traveler's checks, and checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses. **M2** consists of M1 plus savings deposits and time deposits (less than $100,000), money market funds, and other deposits. Time deposits are deposits that can be withdrawn only after a fixed term. Money market funds are deposits that are invested in short-term securities.

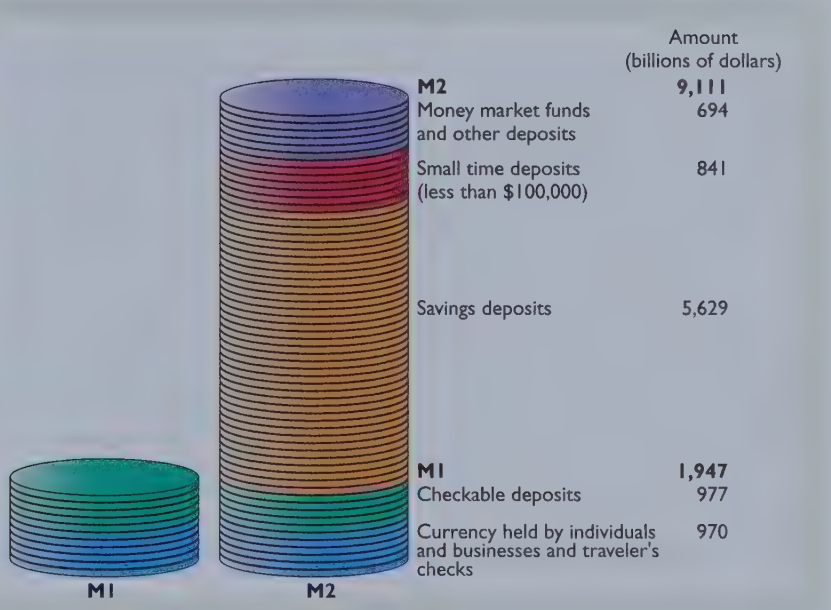
Are M1 and M2 Means of Payment?

The test of whether something is money is whether it is a generally accepted means of payment. Currency passes the test. Checkable deposits also pass the test because they can be transferred from one person to another by using a debit card or writing a check. So all the components of M1 serve as means of payment.

FIGURE 27.1

Two Measures of Money: June 2011

MyEconLab Real-time data



M1 Currency held by individuals and businesses and traveler's checks plus checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses.

M2 M1 plus savings deposits plus same time deposits plus money market funds and other deposits.

SOURCE OF DATA: Federal Reserve.

Some of the savings deposits in M2 are also instantly convertible into a means of payment. You can use the ATM to get currency to pay for your groceries or gas. But other savings deposits, time deposits, and money market funds are not instantly convertible and are *not* a means of payment.

Checks, Credit Cards, Debit Cards, and E-Checks

In defining money and describing the things that serve as money today, we have not included checks, credit cards and debit cards, or e-checks. Aren't these things that we use when we buy something also money?

Checks

A check is not money. It is an instruction to a bank to make a payment. The easiest way to see why a check is not money is to think about how the quantity of money you own changes if you write a check. You don't suddenly have more money because you've written a check to pay a bill. Your money is your bank deposit, not the value of the checks you've written.

Credit Cards

A credit card is not money. It is a special type of ID card that gets you an instant loan. Suppose that you use your credit card to buy a textbook. You sign or enter your PIN and leave the store with your book. The book may be in your possession,

but you've not yet paid for it. You've taken a loan from the bank that issued your credit card. Your credit card issuer pays the bookstore and you eventually get your credit card bill, which you pay using money.

Debit Cards

A debit card works like a paper check, only faster. And just as a check isn't money, neither is a debit card. To see why a debit card works like a check, think about what happens if you use your debit card to buy your textbook. When the sales clerk swipes your card in the bookstore, the computer in the bookstore's bank gets a message: Take $100 from your account and put it in the account of the bookstore. The transaction is done in a flash. But again, the bank deposits are the money and the debit card is the tool that causes money to move from you to the bookstore.

E-Checks

An *electronic check* (or *e-check*) is an electronic equivalent of a paper check. A group of more than 90 banks and other financial institutions have formed the Financial Services Technology Consortium to collaborate on developing the electronic check. Bank of Internet USA offers an Internet e-check system via e-mail. Like a paper check, an e-check is not money. The deposit transferred is money.

You now know that checks, credit cards and debit cards, and e-checks are not money, but one new information-age money is gradually emerging—e-cash.

An Embryonic New Money: E-Cash

Electronic cash (or *e-cash*) is an electronic equivalent of paper notes (dollar bills) and coins. It is an electronic currency, and for people who are willing to use it, e-cash works like other forms of money. But for e-cash to become a widely used form of money, it must evolve some of the characteristics of physical currency.

People use physical currency because it is portable, recognizable, transferable, untraceable, and anonymous and can be used to make change. The designers of e-cash aim to reproduce all of these features of notes and coins. Today's e-cash is portable, untraceable, and anonymous, but it has not yet reached the level of recognition that makes it *universally* accepted as a means of payment. E-cash doesn't yet meet the definition of money.

Like notes and coins, e-cash can be used in shops. It can also be used over the Internet. To use e-cash in a shop, the buyer uses a smart card that stores some e-cash and the shop uses a smart card reader. When a transaction is made, e-cash is transferred from the smart card directly to the shop's bank account. Users of smart cards receive their e-cash by withdrawing it from a bank account by using a special ATM or a special cell phone.

Several versions of e-cash in U.S. dollars, euros, and other currencies are available on the Internet. The most popular and widely used e-cash system is PayPal, which is owned by eBay. The most sophisticated and secure e-cash is a currency called Bitcoin, which can be used to settle debts and be traded for dollars and other currencies on the Internet.

A handy advantage of e-cash over paper notes arises when you lose your wallet. If it is stuffed with dollar bills, you're out of luck. If it contains e-cash recorded on your smart card, your bank can cancel the e-cash stored on the card and issue you replacement e-cash.

Although e-cash is not yet universally accepted, it is likely that its use will grow and that it will gradually replace physical forms of currency.

CHECKPOINT 27.1

Define money and describe its functions.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 27.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. In the United States today, which of the items in List 1 are money?
2. In January 2011, currency held by individuals and businesses was $920 billion; traveler's checks were $5 billion; checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses were $926 billion; savings deposits were $5,378 billion; small time deposits were $905 billion; and money market funds and other deposits were $705 billion. Calculate M1 and M2 in January 2011.
3. In August 2011, M1 was $2,108 billion; M2 was $9,545 billion; checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses were $1,127 billion; time deposits were $810 billion; and money market funds and other deposits were $716 billion. Calculate currency held by individuals and businesses and traveler's check. Calculate savings deposits.

LIST 1

- Your Visa card
- The quarters inside vending machines
- U.S. dollar bills in your wallet
- The check that you have just written to pay for your rent
- The loan you took out last August to pay for your school fees

In the News

The cell phone as wallet: Will the trend catch on?
With the simple swipe of a phone—even when the battery's dead—consumers can now pay for their coffee, gas, or groceries. But as this technology becomes increasingly available, experts ask will it catch on?

Source: CTVNews.ca, September 24, 2011

As people use their cell phones to make payments, will currency disappear? How will the components of M1 change? Will debit cards disappear?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Money is defined as a means of payment. Only the quarters inside vending machines and U.S. dollar bills in your wallet are money.
2. M1 is $1,851 billion. M1 is the sum of currency held by individuals and businesses ($920 billion), traveler's checks ($5 billion), and checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses ($926 billion).

   M2 is $8,839 billion. M2 is the sum of M1 ($1,851 billion), savings deposits ($5,378 billion), small time deposits ($905 billion), and money market funds and other deposits ($705 billion).
3. Currency held by individuals and businesses and traveler's checks is $981 billion. Currency and traveler's checks equals M1 ($2,108 billion) minus checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses ($1,127 billion).

   Savings deposits are $5,911 billion. Savings deposits equals M2 ($9,545 billion) minus M1 ($2,108 billion) minus time deposits ($810 billion) minus money market funds and other deposits ($716 billion)

Solution to In the News

Most people will probably carry less currency, but it won't disappear because currency is used in the underground economy. Most of M1 will be checkable deposits. Cell phones and debit cards will be perfect substitutes, so debit cards will probably disappear.

27.2 THE BANKING SYSTEM

Banking system
The Federal Reserve and the banks and other institutions that accept deposits and provide the services that enable people and businesses to make and receive payments.

The **banking system** consists of the Federal Reserve and the banks and other institutions that accept deposits and that provide the services that enable people and businesses to make and receive payments. Sitting at the top of the system (see Figure 27.2), the Federal Reserve (or Fed) sets the rules and regulates and influences the activities of the banks and other institutions. Three types of financial institutions accept the deposits that are part of the nation's money:

- Commercial banks
- Thrift institutions
- Money market funds

Here, we describe the functions of these institutions, and in the next section, we describe the structure and functions of the Fed.

Commercial Banks

Commercial bank
A firm that is chartered by the Comptroller of the Currency in the U.S. Treasury (or by a state agency) to accept deposits and make loans.

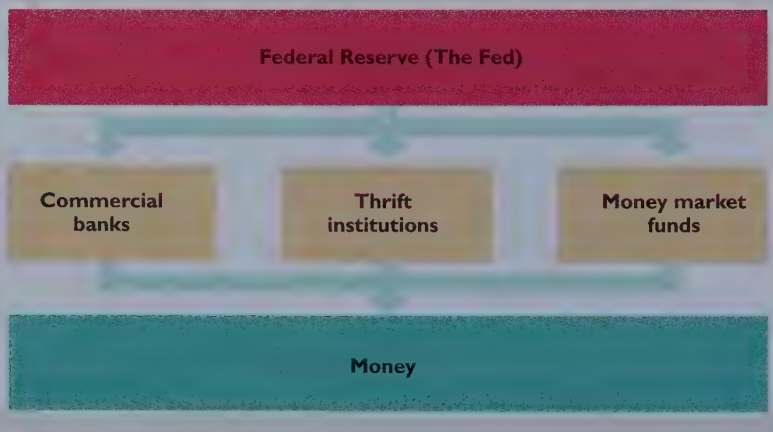
A **commercial bank** is a firm that is chartered by the Comptroller of the Currency in the U.S. Treasury (or by a state agency) to accept deposits and make loans. In 2011, about 7,250 commercial banks operated in the United States, down from 13,000 a few years ago. The number of banks has shrunk because in 1997 the rules under which banks operate were changed, permitting them to open branches in every state. A wave of mergers followed this change of rules. Also, more than 130 banks failed during the financial crisis of 2008–2009.

Bank Deposits

A commercial bank accepts three broad types of deposits: checkable deposits, savings deposits, and time deposits. A bank pays a low interest rate (sometimes zero) on checkable deposits, and it pays the highest interest rate on time deposits.

FIGURE 27.2
The Institutions of the Banking System
MyEconLab Animation

The Federal Reserve regulates and influences the activities of the commercial banks, thrift institutions, and money market funds, whose deposits make up the nation's money.



EYE on the PAST

The "Invention" of Banking

It is the sixteenth century somewhere in Europe: Because gold is valuable and easy to steal, goldsmiths have well-guarded safes in which people "deposit" their gold. The goldsmiths issue gold receipts entitling owners to reclaim their "deposits" on demand.

Isabella, who has a receipt for 100 ounces of gold deposited with Samuel Goldsmith, buys some land from Henry. She can pay for the land in one of two ways: She can visit Samuel, collect her gold, and hand the gold to Henry. Or she can give Henry her gold receipt, which enables Henry to claim the 100 ounces of gold.

It is a simpler and safer transaction to use the receipt. When Henry wants to buy something, he too can pass the receipt on to someone else.

So Samuel Goldsmith's gold receipt is circulating as a means of payment. It is money!

Because the receipts circulate while the gold remains in his safe, Samuel realizes that he can lend gold receipts and charge interest for doing so. Samuel writes receipts for gold that he doesn't own, but has on deposit, and lends these receipts. Samuel is one of the first bankers.

Profit and Risk: A Balancing Act

Commercial banks try to maximize their stockholders' wealth by lending for long terms at high interest rates and borrowing from depositors and others. But lending is risky. Risky loans sometimes don't get repaid and the prices of risky securities sometimes fall. In either of these events, a bank incurs a loss that could even wipe out the stockholders' wealth. Also, when depositors see their bank incurring losses, mass withdrawals—called a run on the bank—might create a crisis. So a bank must perform a balancing act. It must be careful in the way it uses the depositors' funds and balance security for depositors and stockholders against high but risky returns. To trade off between risk and profit a bank divides its assets into four parts: reserves, liquid assets, securities, and loans.

Reserves

A bank's **reserves** consist of currency in its vaults plus the balance on its reserve account at a Federal Reserve Bank.

The currency in a bank's vaults is a reserve to meet its depositors' withdrawals. Your bank must replenish currency in its ATM every time you and your friends have raided it for cash for a midnight pizza.

A commercial bank's deposit at a Federal Reserve Bank is similar to your own bank deposit. The bank uses its reserve account at the Fed to receive and make payments to other banks and to obtain currency. The Fed requires banks to hold a minimum percentage of deposits as reserves, called the **required reserve ratio**. Banks *desired* reserves might exceed the required reserves, especially when the cost of borrowing reserves is high.

Reserves
The currency in the bank's vaults plus the balance on its reserve account at a Federal Reserve Bank.

Required reserve ratio
The minimum percentage of deposits that the Fed requires banks and other financial institutions to hold in reserves.

Federal funds rate
The interest rate on interbank loans (loans made in the federal funds market).

Liquid Assets

Banks' *liquid assets* are short-term Treasury bills and overnight loans to other banks. The interest rates on liquid assets are low but these are low-risk assets. The interest rate on interbank loans, called the **federal funds rate**, is the central target of the Fed's monetary policy actions.

Securities and Loans

Securities are bonds issued by the U.S. government and by other organizations. Some bonds have low interest rates and are safe. Some bonds have high interest rates and are risky. Mortgage-backed securities are examples of risky securities.

Loans are the provision of funds to businesses and individuals. Loans earn the bank a high interest rate, but they are risky and, even when not very risky, cannot be called in before the agreed date. Banks earn the highest interest rate on unpaid credit card balances, which are loans to credit card holders.

Bank Assets and Liabilities: The Relative Magnitudes

Figure 27.3 shows the relative magnitudes of the banks' assets and liabilities—deposits and other borrowing—in 2011. After performing their profit-versus-risk balancing acts, the banks kept 13 percent of total assets in reserves, placed another 13 percent in liquid assets, 21 percent in securities, and 53 percent in loans. Checkable deposits (part of M1) were 8 percent of total funds. Another 51 percent of total funds were savings deposits and small time deposits (part of M2).

The commercial banks' asset allocation in 2011 is not normal and is a consequence of a financial crisis in 2008 and 2009. *Eye on the U.S. Economy* on the next page contrasts normal times with the immediate aftermath of the crisis.

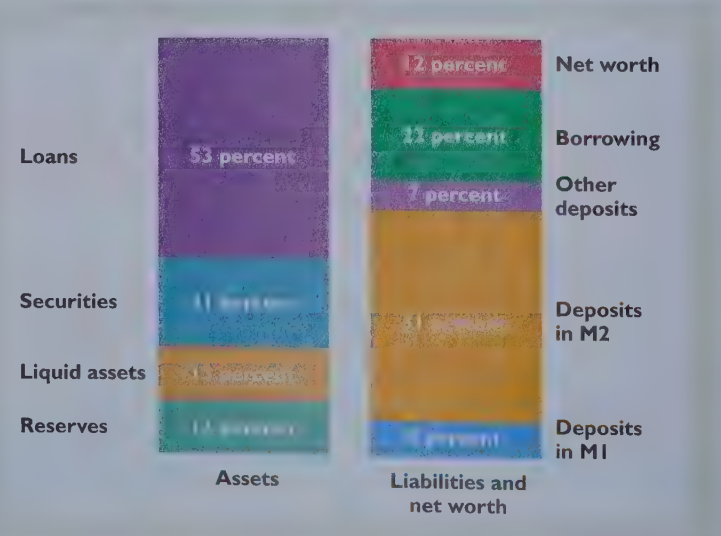
FIGURE 27.3

Commercial Banks' Assets, Liabilities, and Net Worth

MyEconLab Animation

In 2011, commercial bank loans were 53 percent of total assets, securities were 21 percent, liquid assets were 13 percent, and reserves were 13 percent. Reserves were unusually large in 2011.

The banks obtained the funds allocated to these assets from checkable deposits in M1, which were 8 percent of total funds; savings deposits and small time deposits in M2 were 51 percent; other deposits were 7 percent; other borrowing was 22 percent; and bank stockholders' net worth was 12 percent.



SOURCE OF DATA: Federal Reserve.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

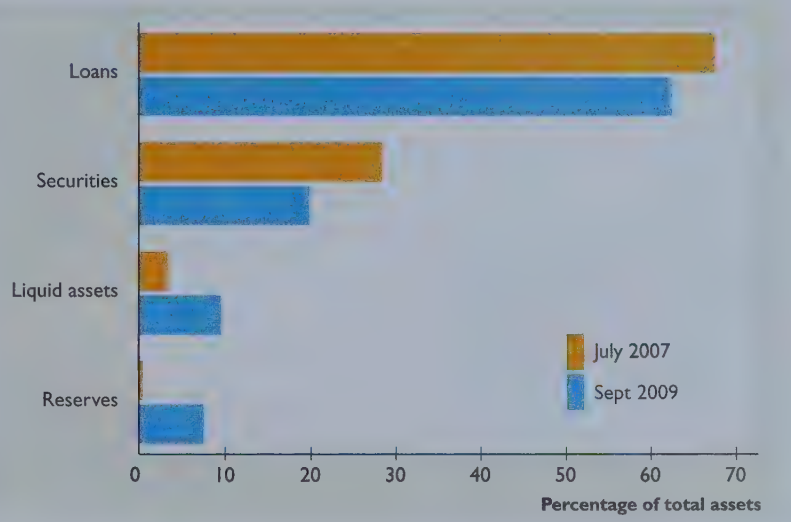
Commercial Banks Under Stress in the Financial Crisis

In normal times, bank reserves are less than 1 percent of total assets and liquid assets are less than 4 percent. Loans are 68 percent and securities 28 percent. July 2007 was such a normal time (the orange bars).

During the financial crisis that started in 2007 and intensified in September 2008, the banks took big hits as the value of their securities and loans fell.

Faced with a riskier world, the banks increased their liquid assets and reserves. In September 2009 (the blue bars), liquid assets were almost 10 percent of total assets and reserves were 8 percent.

The balancing act tipped away from risk-taking and toward security.



SOURCE OF DATA: Federal Reserve.

Thrift Institutions

The three types of thrift institutions are savings and loan associations, savings banks, and credit unions. A *savings and loan association* (*S&L*) is a financial institution that accepts checkable deposits and savings deposits and that makes personal, commercial, and home-purchase loans. A *savings bank* is a financial institution that accepts savings deposits and makes mostly consumer and home-purchase loans. The depositors own some savings banks (called mutual savings banks). A *credit union* is a financial institution owned by a social or economic group, such as a firm's employees, that accepts savings deposits and makes mostly consumer loans.

Like commercial banks, the thrift institutions hold reserves and must meet minimum reserve ratios set by the Fed.

Money Market Funds

A *money market fund* is a financial institution that obtains funds by selling shares and uses these funds to buy assets such as U.S. Treasury bills. Money market fund shares act like bank deposits. Shareholders can write checks on their money market fund accounts, but there are restrictions on most of these accounts. For example, the minimum deposit accepted might be $2,500 and the smallest check a depositor is permitted to write might be $500.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 27.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 27.2

Describe the functions of banks.

Practice Problems

1. What are the institutions that make up the banking system?
2. What is a bank's balancing act?

Use the following information to work Problems **3** and **4**. A bank's deposits and assets are $320 in checkable deposits, $896 in savings deposits, $840 in small time deposits, $990 in loans to businesses, $400 in outstanding credit card balances, $634 in government securities, $2 in currency, and $30 in its reserve account at the Fed.

3. Calculate the bank's total deposits, deposits that are part of M1, and deposits that are part of M2.
4. Calculate the bank's loans, securities, and reserves.

In the News

Regulators close Georgia bank in 95th failure for the year
Regulators shut down Atlanta-based Georgian Bank. On July 24, 2009, Georgian Bank has $2 billion in assets and $2 billion in deposits. By September 29, 2009, Georgian Bank had lost about $2 billion in home loans and other assets.
Source: *USA Today*, September 30, 2009

Explain how Georgian Bank's balancing act failed.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The institutions that make up the banking system are the Fed, commercial banks, thrift institutions, and money market funds.
2. A bank makes a profit by borrowing from depositors at a low interest rate and lending at a higher interest rate. The bank must hold enough reserves to meet depositors' withdrawals. The bank's balancing act is to balance the risk of loans (profits for stockholders) against the security for depositors.
3. Total deposits are $320 + $896 + $840 = $2,056.
   Deposits that are part of M1 are checkable deposits, $320.
   Deposits that are part of M2 include all deposits, $2,056.
4. Loans are $990 + $400 = $1,390. Securities are $634.
   Reserves are $30 + $2 = $32.

Solution to In the News

In July, Georgian Bank's $2 billion of assets (home loans and securities) balanced its deposits of $2 billion. The bank expected to make a profit on its assets that exceeded the interest it paid to depositors. The financial crisis increased the risk on all financial assets. The bank was now holding assets that were more risky than it had planned. As people defaulted on their home loans and the value of securities fell, the value of Georgian Bank's assets crashed to zero. With fewer assets than deposits, regulators had no choice other than to close the bank and sell its assets and deposits. The bank failed to balance risk against profit.

27.3 THE FEDERAL RESERVE SYSTEM

The **Federal Reserve System (the Fed)** is the central bank of the United States. A **central bank** is a public authority that provides banking services to banks and governments and regulates financial institutions and markets. A central bank does not provide banking services to businesses and individual citizens. Its only customers are banks such as Bank of America and Citibank and the U.S. government. The Fed is organized into 12 Federal Reserve districts shown in Figure 27.4.

The Fed's main task is to regulate the interest rate and quantity of money to achieve low and predictable inflation and sustained economic expansion.

Federal Reserve System (the Fed)
The central bank of the United States.

Central bank
A public authority that provides banking services to banks and governments and regulates financial institutions and markets.

The Structure of the Federal Reserve

The key elements in the structure of the Federal Reserve are

- The Chairman of the Board of Governors
- The Board of Governors
- The regional Federal Reserve Banks
- The Federal Open Market Committee

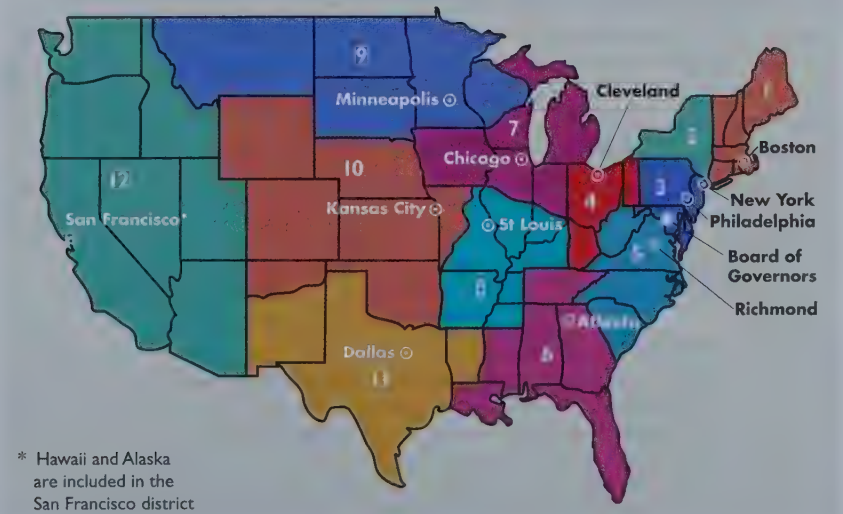
The Chairman of the Board of Governors

The Chairman of the Board of Governors is the Fed's chief executive, public face, and center of power and responsibility. When things go right, the Chairman gets the credit; when they go wrong, he gets the blame. Ben S. Bernanke, a former Princeton University economics professor, is the Fed's current Chairman.

Fed Chairman Ben S. Bernanke

FIGURE 27.4
The Federal Reserve Districts

MyEconLab Animation



The nation is divided into 12 Federal Reserve districts, each having a Federal Reserve Bank. (Some of the larger districts also have branch banks.) The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System is located in Washington, D.C.

SOURCE: *Federal Reserve Bulletin.*

The Board of Governors

The Board of Governors has seven members (including the Chairman), who are appointed by the President of the United States and confirmed by the Senate, each for a 14-year term. The terms are staggered so that one seat on the board becomes vacant every two years. The President appoints one of the board members as Chairman for a term of four years, which is renewable.

The Regional Federal Reserve Banks

There are 12 regional Federal Reserve Banks, one for each of the 12 Federal Reserve districts shown in Figure 27.4. Each regional Federal Reserve Bank has nine directors, three of whom are appointed by the Board of Governors and six of whom are elected by the commercial banks in the Federal Reserve district. The directors of each regional Federal Reserve Bank appoint that Bank's president, and the Board of Governors approves this appointment.

The Federal Reserve Bank of New York (known as the New York Fed) occupies a special place because it implements some of the Fed's most important policy decisions.

The Federal Open Market Committee

Federal Open Market Committee
The Fed's main policy-making committee.

The **Federal Open Market Committee** (FOMC) is the Fed's main policy-making committee. The FOMC consists of the following twelve members:

- The Chairman and the other six members of the Board of Governors
- The president of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York
- Four presidents of the other regional Federal Reserve Banks (on a yearly rotating basis)

The FOMC meets approximately every six weeks to review the state of the economy and to decide the actions to be carried out by the New York Fed.

The Fed's Policy Tools

The Fed's most important tasks are to influence the interest rate and regulate the amount of money circulating in the United States. How does the Fed perform these tasks? It does so by adjusting the reserves of the banking system. Also, by adjusting the reserves of the banking system and standing ready to make loans to banks, the Fed is able to prevent bank failures. The Fed's policy tools are:

- Required reserve ratios
- Discount rate
- Open market operations
- Extraordinary crisis measures

Required Reserve Ratios

You've seen that banks hold reserves of currency and deposits at a Federal Reserve Bank. The Fed requires the banks and thrifts to hold a minimum percentage of deposits as reserves. This minimum is known as a *required reserve ratio*. The Fed determines a required reserve ratio for each type of deposit. Currently, required reserve ratios range from zero to 3 percent on checkable deposits below a specified level to 10 percent on deposits in excess of the specified level.

Discount Rate

The **discount rate** is the interest rate at which the Fed stands ready to lend reserves to commercial banks. A change in the discount rate begins with a proposal to the FOMC by at least one of the 12 Federal Reserve Banks. If the FOMC agrees that a change is required, it proposes the change to the Board of Governors for its approval.

Discount rate
The interest rate at which the Fed stands ready to lend reserves to commercial banks.

Open Market Operations

An **open market operation** is the purchase or sale of government securities—U.S. Treasury bills and bonds—by the Federal Reserve in the open market. When the Fed conducts an open market operation, it makes a transaction with a bank or some other business but it does not transact with the federal government. The New York Fed conducts the Fed's open market operations.

Open market operation
The purchase or sale of government securities—U.S. Treasury bills and bonds—by the New York Fed in the open market.

Extraordinary Crisis Measures

The financial crisis of 2008, the slow recovery, and ongoing financial stress have brought three more tools into play. They are:

- Quantitative easing (or QE)
- Credit easing
- Operation Twist

Quantitative Easing (QE) When the Fed creates bank reserves by conducting a large-scale open market purchase at a low or possibly zero federal funds rate, the action is called *quantitative easing*. There have been two episodes of quantitative easing, QE1 and QE2—see *Eye on Creating Money* on pp. 708–709.

Credit Easing When the Fed buys private securities or makes loans to financial institutions to stimulate their lending, the action is called *credit easing*.

Operation Twist When the Fed buys long-term government securities and sells short-term government securities, the action is called *Operation Twist*. The idea is to lower long-term interest rates and stimulate long-term borrowing and investment expenditure. An Operation Twist was conducted in September 2011.

How the Fed's Policy Tools Work

The Fed's normal policy tools work by changing either the demand for or the supply of the monetary base, which in turn changes the interest rate. The **monetary base** is the sum of coins, Federal Reserve notes, and banks' reserves at the Fed.

Monetary base
The sum of coins, Federal Reserve notes, and banks' reserves at the Fed.

By increasing the required reserve ratio, the Fed can force the banks to hold a larger quantity of monetary base. By raising the discount rate, the Fed can make it more costly for the banks to borrow reserves—borrow monetary base. And by selling securities in the open market, the Fed can decrease the monetary base. All of these actions lead to a rise in the interest rate.

Similarly, by decreasing the required reserve ratio, the Fed can permit the banks to hold a smaller quantity of monetary base. By lowering the discount rate, the Fed can make it less costly for the banks to borrow monetary base. And by buying securities in the open market, the Fed can increase the monetary base. All of these actions lead to a decrease in the interest rate.

Open market operations are the Fed's main tool and in the next section you will learn in more detail how they work.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 27.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 27.3

Describe the functions of the Federal Reserve System (the Fed).

Practice Problems

1. What is the Fed and what is the FOMC?
2. Who is the Fed's chief executive, and what are the Fed's main policy tools?
3. What is the monetary base?
4. Suppose that at the end of December 2009, the monetary base in the United States was $700 billion, Federal Reserve notes were $650 billion, and banks' reserves at the Fed were $20 billion. Calculate the quantity of coins.

In the News

Risky assets: Counting to a trillion
Prior to September 15, 2008, the start of the credit crisis, the Fed had less than $1 trillion in assets and most were safe U.S. government securities. By mid-December, 2008, the Fed's balance sheet had increased to more than $2.3 trillion. Much of the increase was in mortgage-backed securities. The massive expansion began when the Fed starting sending banks cash in exchange for risky assets.
Source: CNN Money, September 29, 2009

What are the Fed's policy tools and which policy tool did the Fed use to increase its assets to $2.3 trillion in 2008?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The Federal Reserve (Fed) is the U.S. central bank—a public authority that provides banking services to banks and the U.S. government and that regulates the quantity of money and the banking system. The FOMC is the Federal Open Market Committee—the Fed's main policy-making committee.
2. The Fed's chief executive is the Chairman of the Board of Governors, currently Ben Bernanke. The Fed's main policy tools are required reserve ratios, the discount rate, and open market operations. In unusual times, extraordinary crisis measures are an additional tool.
3. The monetary base is the sum of coins, Federal Reserve notes (dollar bills), and banks' reserves at the Fed.
4. To calculate the quantity of coins, we use the definition of the monetary base: coins plus Federal Reserve notes plus banks' reserves at the Fed.

   Quantity of coins = Monetary base − Federal Reserve notes − Banks' reserves at the Fed.

   So at the end of December 2009,

   Quantity of coins = $700 billion − $650 billion − $20 billion
   = $30 billion.

Solution to In the News

The Fed's policy tools are the required reserve ratio, discount rate, open market operations, and extraordinary crisis measures. The Fed used extraordinary crisis measures called *quantitative easing* and *credit easing*—the Fed's lending program bought risky assets of banks and increased their reserve deposits at the Fed.

27.4 REGULATING THE QUANTITY OF MONEY

Banks create money, but this doesn't mean that they have smoke-filled back rooms in which counterfeiters are busily working. Remember, most money is deposits, not currency. What banks create is deposits, and they do so by making loans.

Creating Deposits by Making Loans

The easiest way to see that banks create deposits is to think about what happens when Andy, who has a Visa card issued by Citibank, uses his card to buy a tank of gas from Chevron. When Andy signs the card sales slip, he takes a loan from Citibank and obligates himself to repay the loan at a later date. At the end of the business day, a Chevron clerk takes a pile of signed credit card sales slips, including Andy's, to Chevron's bank. For now, let's assume that Chevron also banks at Citibank. The bank immediately credits Chevron's account with the value of the slips (minus the bank's commission).

You can see that these transactions have created a bank deposit and a loan. Andy has increased the size of his loan (his credit card balance), and Chevron has increased the size of its bank deposit. And because deposits are money, Citibank has created money.

If, as we've just assumed, Andy and Chevron use the same bank, no further transactions take place. But the outcome is essentially the same when two banks are involved. If Chevron's bank is the Bank of America, then Citibank uses its reserves to pay the Bank of America. Citibank has an increase in loans and a decrease in reserves; the Bank of America has an increase in reserves and an increase in deposits. The banking system as a whole has an increase in loans, an increase in deposits, and no change in reserves.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Money and Your Role in Its Creation

Imagine a world without money in which you must barter for everything you buy. What kinds of items would you have available for these trades? Would you keep some stocks of items that you know lots of people are willing to accept? Would you really be bartering, or would you be using a commodity as money? How much longer would it take you to conduct all the transactions of a normal day?

Now think about your own holdings of money today. How much money do you have in your pocket or wallet? How much do you have in the bank? How does the money you hold change over the course of a month?

Of the money you're holding, which items are part of M1 and which are part of M2? Are all the items in M2 means of payment?

Now think about the role that *you* play in creating money. Every time you charge something to your credit card, you help the bank that issued it to create money. The increase in your credit card balance is a loan from the bank to you. The bank pays the seller right away. So the seller's bank deposit and your outstanding balance increase together. Money is created.

You contribute to the currency drain that limits the ability of your bank to create money when you visit the ATM and get some cash to pay for your late-night pizza.

Of course, your transactions are a tiny part of the total. But together, you and a few million other students like you play a big role in the money creation process.

If Andy had swiped his card at an automatic payment pump, all these transactions would have occurred at the time he filled his tank, and the quantity of money would have increased by the amount of his purchase (minus the bank's commission for conducting the transactions).

Three factors limit the quantity of deposits that the banking system can create:

- The monetary base
- Desired reserves
- Desired currency holding

The Monetary Base

You've seen that the monetary base is the sum of coins, Federal Reserve notes, and banks' deposits at the Fed. The size of the monetary base limits the total quantity of money that the banking system can create because banks have a desired level of reserves and households and firms have a desired level of currency holding and both of these desired holdings of the monetary base depend on the quantity of money.

Desired Reserves

A bank's *desired* reserves are the reserves that the bank chooses to hold. The *desired reserve ratio* is the ratio of reserves to deposits that a bank wants to hold. This ratio exceeds the *required reserve ratio* by an amount that the banks determine to be prudent on the basis of their daily business requirements.

A bank's *actual reserve ratio* changes when its customers make a deposit or a withdrawal. If a bank's customer makes a deposit, reserves and deposits increase by the same amount, so the bank's reserve ratio increases. Similarly, if a bank's customer makes a withdrawal, reserves and deposits decrease by the same amount, so the bank's reserve ratio decreases.

Excess reserves
A bank's actual reserves minus its desired reserves.

A bank's **excess reserves** are its actual reserves minus its desired reserves. When the banking system as a whole has excess reserves, banks can create money by making new loans. When the banking system as a whole is short of reserves, banks must destroy money by decreasing the quantity of loans.

Desired Currency Holding

We hold our money in the form of currency and bank deposits. The proportion of money held as currency isn't constant but at any given time, people have a definite view as to how much they want to hold in each form of money.

Because households and firms want to hold some proportion of their money in the form of currency, when the total quantity of bank deposits increases, so does the quantity of currency that they want to hold.

Because desired currency holding increases when deposits increase, currency leaves the banks when loans are made and deposits increase. We call the leakage of currency from the banking system the *currency drain*. And we call the ratio of currency to deposits the *currency drain ratio*.

The greater the currency drain ratio, the smaller is the quantity of deposits and money that the banking system can create from a given amount of monetary base. The reason is that as currency drains from the banks, they are left with a smaller level of reserves (and smaller excess reserves) so they make fewer loans.

How Open Market Operations Change the Monetary Base

When the Fed buys securities in an open market operation, it pays for them with newly created bank reserves and money. With more reserves in the banking system, the supply of interbank loans increases, the demand for interbank loans decreases, and the federal funds rate—the interest rate in the interbank loans market—falls.

Similarly, when the Fed sells securities in an open market operation, buyers pay for the securities with bank reserves and money. With smaller reserves in the banking system, the supply of interbank loans decreases, the demand for interbank loans increases, and the federal funds rate rises. The Fed sets a target for the federal funds rate and conducts open market operations on the scale needed to hit its target.

A change in the federal funds rate is only the first stage in an adjustment process that follows an open market operation. If banks' reserves increase, the banks can increase their lending and create even more money. If banks' reserves decrease, the banks must decrease their lending, which decreases the quantity of money. We'll study the effects of open market operations in some detail, beginning with an open market purchase.

The Fed Buys Securities

Suppose the Fed buys $100 million of U.S. government securities in the open market. There are two cases to consider, depending on who sells the securities. A bank might sell some of its securities, or a person or business that is not a commercial bank—the general public—might sell. The outcome is essentially the same in the two cases. To convince you of this fact, we'll study the two cases, starting with the simpler case in which a commercial bank sells securities. (The seller will be someone who thinks the Fed is offering a good price for securities and it is profitable to make the sale.)

FOMC meeting.

A Commercial Bank Sells When the Fed buys $100 million of securities from the Manhattan Commercial Bank, two things happen:

1. The Manhattan Commercial Bank has $100 million less in securities, and the Fed has $100 million more in securities.
2. To pay for the securities, the Fed increases the Manhattan Commercial Bank's reserve account at the New York Fed by $100 million.

Figure 27.5 shows the effects of these actions on the balance sheets of the Fed and the Manhattan Commercial Bank. Ownership of the securities passes from the commercial bank to the Fed, so the bank's securities decrease by $100 million and the Fed's securities increase by $100 million, as shown by the red-to-blue arrow running from the Manhattan Commercial Bank to the Fed.

The Fed increases the Manhattan Commercial Bank's reserves by $100 million, as shown by the green arrow running from the Fed to the Manhattan Commercial Bank. This action increases the reserves of the banking system.

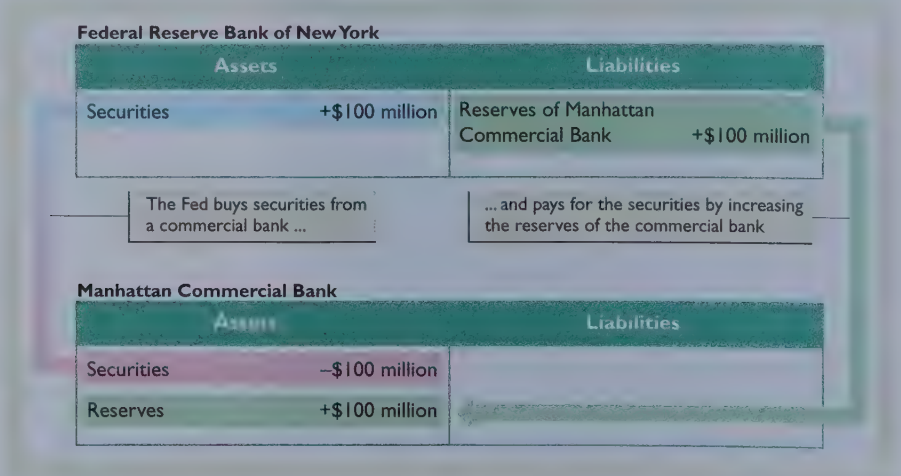
The commercial bank's total assets remain constant, but their composition changes. Its holdings of government securities decrease by $100 million, and its reserves increase by $100 million. The bank can use these additional reserves to make loans. When the bank makes loans, it creates deposits and the quantity of money increases.

We've just seen that when the Fed buys government securities from a bank, the bank's reserves increase. What happens if the Fed buys government securities from the public—say, from AIG, an insurance company?

FIGURE 27.5

The Fed Buys Securities from a Commercial Bank

MyEconLab Animation


Federal Reserve Bank of New York
Assets
Liabilities
Securities +$100 million
Reserves of Manhattan Commercial Bank +$100 million
The Fed buys securities from a commercial bank ...
... and pays for the securities by increasing the reserves of the commercial bank
Manhattan Commercial Bank
Assets
Liabilities
Securities –$100 million
Reserves +$100 million

The Nonbank Public Sells When the Fed buys $100 million of securities from AIG, three things happen:

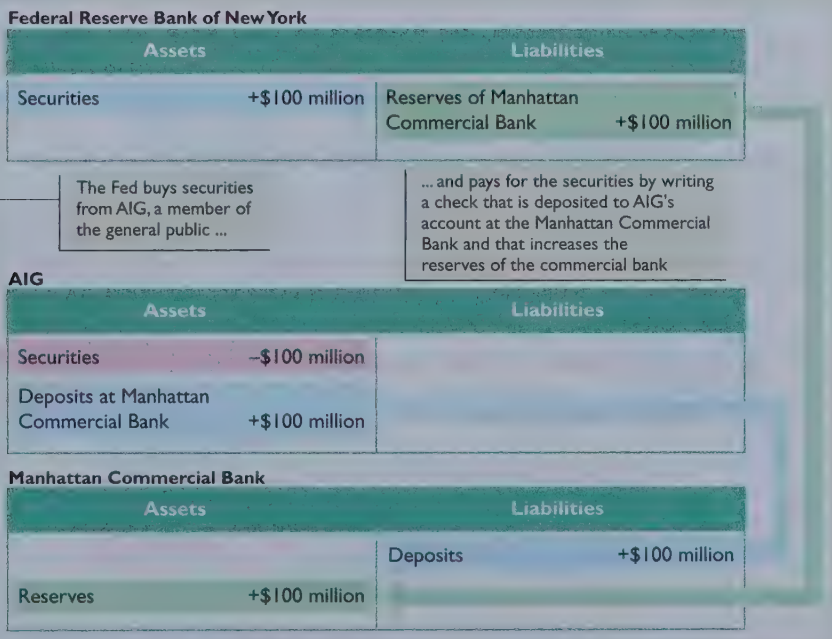
1. AIG has $100 million less in securities, and the Fed has $100 million more in securities.
2. The Fed pays for the securities with a check for $100 million drawn on itself, which AIG deposits in its account at the Manhattan Commercial Bank.
3. The Manhattan Commercial Bank collects payment of this check from the Fed, and the Manhattan Commercial Bank's reserves increase by $100 million.

Figure 27.6 shows the effects of these actions on the balance sheets of the Fed, AIG, and the Manhattan Commercial Bank. Ownership of the securities passes from AIG to the Fed, so AIG's securities decrease by $100 million and the Fed's securities increase by $100 million (red-to-blue arrow). The Fed pays for the securities with a check payable to AIG, which AIG deposits in the Manhattan Commercial Bank. This payment increases Manhattan's reserves by $100 million (green arrow). It also increases AIG's deposit at the Manhattan Commercial Bank by $100 million (blue arrow). This action increases the reserves of the banking system.

FIGURE 27.6

The Fed Buys Securities from the Public

MyEconLab Animation


Federal Reserve Bank of New York
Assets
Liabilities
Securities +$100 million
Reserves of Manhattan Commercial Bank +$100 million
The Fed buys securities from AIG, a member of the general public ...
... and pays for the securities by writing a check that is deposited to AIG's account at the Manhattan Commercial Bank and that increases the reserves of the commercial bank
AIG
Assets
Liabilities
Securities –$100 million
Deposits at Manhattan Commercial Bank +$100 million
Manhattan Commercial Bank
Assets
Liabilities
Deposits +$100 million
Reserves +$100 million

AIG has the same total assets as before, but their composition has changed. It now has more money and fewer securities. The Manhattan Commercial Bank's reserves increase, and so do its deposits—both by $100 million. Because bank reserves and deposits have increased by the same amount, the bank has excess reserves, which it can use to make loans. When it makes loans, the quantity of money increases.

We've worked through what happens when the Fed buys government securities from either a bank or the public. When the Fed sells securities, the transactions that we've just traced operate in reverse.

The Fed Sells Securities

If the Fed sells $100 million of U.S. government securities in the open market, most likely a person or business other than a bank buys them. (A bank would buy them only if it had excess reserves and couldn't find a better use for its funds.)

When the Fed sells $100 million of securities to AIG, three things happen:

1. AIG has $100 million more in securities, and the Fed has $100 million less in securities.
2. AIG pays for the securities with a check for $100 million drawn on its deposit account at the Manhattan Commercial Bank.
3. The Fed collects payment of this check from the Manhattan Commercial Bank by decreasing its reserves by $100 million.

These actions decrease the reserves of the banking system. The Manhattan Commercial Bank is now short of reserves and must borrow in the federal funds market to meet its desired reserve ratio.

The changes in the balance sheets of the Fed and the banks that we've just described are not the end of the story about the effects of an open market operation; they are just the beginning.

The Multiplier Effect of an Open Market Operation

An open market purchase that increases bank reserves also increases the *monetary base* by the amount of the open market purchase. Regardless of whether the Fed buys securities from the banks or from the public, the quantity of bank reserves increases and gives the banks excess reserves that they then lend.

The following sequence of events takes place:

- An open market purchase creates excess reserves.
- Banks lend excess reserves.
- Bank deposits increase.
- The quantity of money increases.
- New money is used to make payments.
- Some of the new money is held as currency—a currency drain.
- Some of the new money remains in deposits in banks.
- Banks' desired reserves increase.
- Excess reserves decrease but remain positive.

The sequence described above repeats in a series of rounds, but each round begins with a smaller quantity of excess reserves than did the previous one. The process ends when there are no excess reserves. This situation arises when the

increase in the monetary base resulting from the open market operation is willingly held—when the increase in desired reserves plus the increase in desired currency holding equals the increase in the monetary base. Figure 27.7 illustrates and summarizes the sequence of events in one round of the multiplier process.

An open market *sale* works similarly to an open market *purchase*, but the sale *decreases* the monetary base and sets off a multiplier process similar to that described in Figure 27.7. At the end of the process the quantity of money has decreased by an amount that lowers desired reserves and desired currency holding by an amount equal to the decrease in the monetary base resulting from the open market sale. (Make your own version of Figure 27.7 to trace the multiplier process when the Fed *sells* and the banks or public *buys* securities.)

The magnitude of the change in the quantity of money brought about by an open market operation is determined by the money multiplier that we now explain.

The Money Multiplier

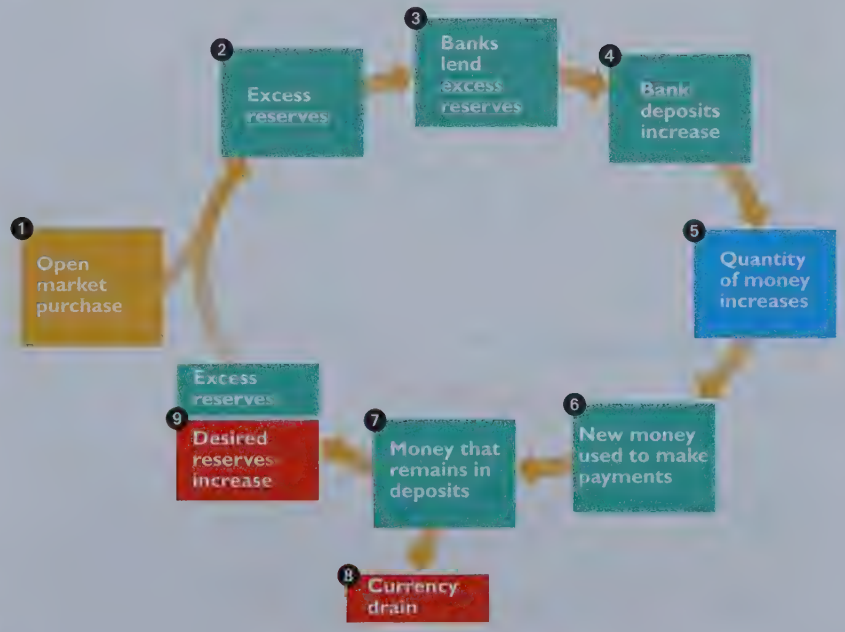
The **money multiplier** is the number by which a change in the monetary base is multiplied to find the resulting change in the quantity of money. It is also the ratio of the change in the quantity of money to the change in the monetary base.

Money multiplier
The number by which a change in the monetary base is multiplied to find the resulting change in the quantity of money.

The magnitude of the money multiplier depends on the desired reserve ratio and the currency drain ratio. The smaller are these two ratios, the larger is the money multiplier. Let's explore the money multiplier in more detail.

FIGURE 27.7
A Round in the Multiplier Process Following an Open Market Operation

MyEconLab Animation


1 Open market purchase
2 Excess reserves
3 Banks lend excess reserves
4 Bank deposits increase
5 Quantity of money increases
6 New money used to make payments
7 Money that remains in deposits
8 Currency drain
9 Desired reserves increase
Excess reserves

1 An open market purchase increases bank reserves and 2 creates excess reserves.

3 Banks lend the excess reserves, 4 new deposits are created, and 5 the quantity of money increases.

6 New money is used to make payments.

7 Households and firms receiving payments keep some on deposit in banks and 8 some in the form of currency—a currency drain.

The increase in bank deposits increases banks' reserves but also 9 increases banks' desired reserves.

Desired reserves increase by less than actual reserves, so the banks still have some excess reserves, but less than before. The process repeats until excess reserves have been eliminated.

To see how the desired reserve ratio and the currency drain ratio determine the size of the money multiplier, begin with two facts:

The quantity of money, M, is the sum of deposits, D, and currency, C, or $M = D + C$, and

The monetary base, MB, is the sum of reserves, R, and currency, C, or $MB = R + C$.

The money multiplier is equal to the quantity of money, M, divided by the monetary base, MB, that is:

$$\text{Money multiplier} = M/MB.$$

Because $M = D + C$ and $MB = R + C$ then:

$$\text{Money multiplier} = (D + C)/(R + C).$$

EYE on CREATING MONEY

How Does the Fed Create Money and Regulate Its Quantity?

During the Great Depression, many banks failed, bank deposits were destroyed, and the quantity of money crashed by 25 percent. Most economists believe that it was these events that turned an ordinary recession in 1929 into a deep and decade-long depression.

Fed Chairman Ben Bernanke is one of the economists who has studied this tragic episode in U.S. economic history, and he had no intention of witnessing a similar event on his watch.

Figure 1 shows what the Fed did to pump reserves into the banking system. In the fall of 2008 in an episode called QE1 (see p. 699), the Fed doubled the monetary base. In 2010 and 2011, a more gradual but sustained QE2 took the monetary base to more than three times its pre-crisis level.

This extraordinary increase in the monetary base did not bring a

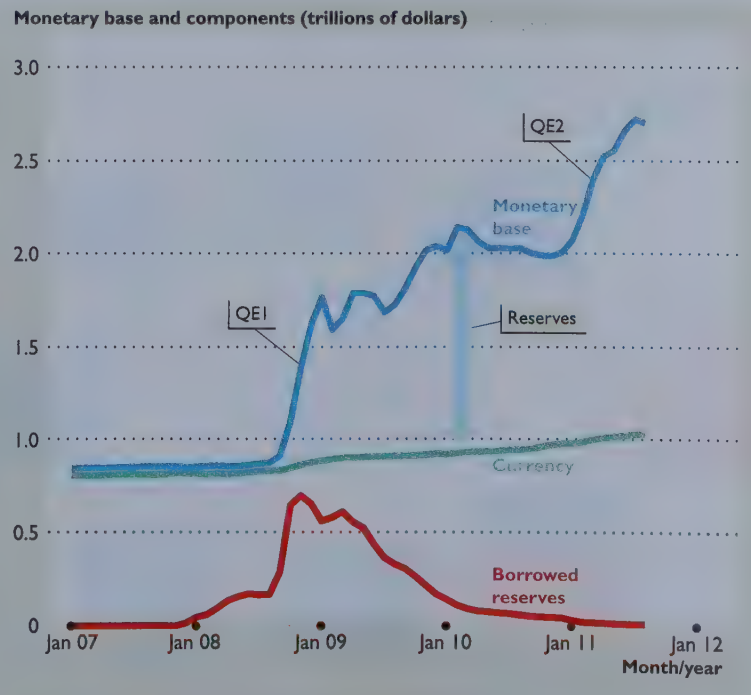


Figure 1 The monetary base in financial crisis

Now divide each item on the right-hand side of the previous equation by deposits, D, to get:

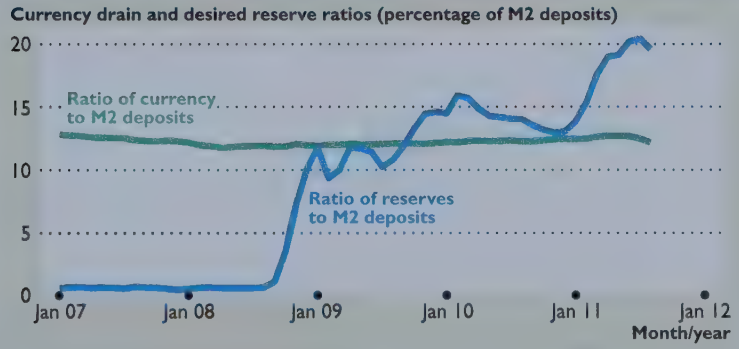
$$\text{Money multiplier} = (1 + C/D)/(R/D + C/D).$$

Notice the $D/D = 1$; C/D is the currency drain ratio, and R/D is the desired reserves ratio.

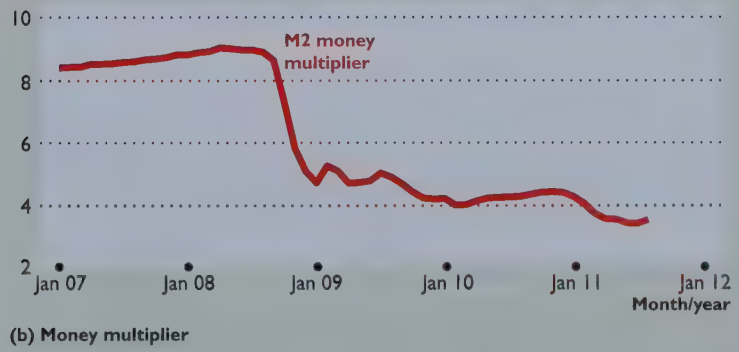
If the currency drain ratio is 50 percent, $C/D = 0.5$; and if the desired reserve ratio is 10 percent, $R/D = 0.1$ so the money multiplier is $1.5/0.6 = 2.5$.

The larger the reserve ratio and the larger the currency drain ratio, the smaller is the money multiplier.

The reserve ratio and the currency drain ratio that determine the magnitude of the money multiplier are not constant, so neither is the money multiplier constant. You can see in *Eye on Creating Money* below that the desired reserve ratio and money multiplier changed dramatically in 2008.



(a) Currency drain and reserve ratios



(b) Money multiplier

Figure 2 The changing money multiplier

similar increase in the quantity of money. Figure 2 shows the reason.

In 2008, the banks' desired reserve ratio, in part (a), increased tenfold from its normal level of 1.2 percent to 12 percent. This increase brought a crash in the money multiplier, in part (b), from a normal value of 9 to an unusually low value of 5.

The surge in the desired reserve ratio is the sole reason for the collapse in the money multiplier. You can see, in part (a), that the other influence on the multiplier, the currency drain ratio, barely changed.

The failure of Lehman Brothers signalled to the banks that they faced an unusually high level of risk and this was the main source of the increase in the desired reserve ratio. As the risk faced by banks returns to normal, the desired reserve ratio will fall, and when this happens the Fed will decrease the monetary base or create an explosion in the quantity of money.

SOURCES OF DATA: Federal Reserve and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 27.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 27.4

Explain how the banking system creates money and how the Fed controls the quantity of money.

Practice Problems

1. How do banks create new deposits by making loans, and what factors limit the amount of deposits and loans that they can create?
2. If the Fed makes an open market sale of $1 million of securities, who can buy the securities? What initial changes occur if the Fed sells to a bank?
3. If the Fed makes an open market sale of $1 million of securities, what is the process by which the quantity of money changes? What factors determine the change in the quantity of money?

In the News

Fed doubles monetary base
During the fourth quarter of 2008, the Fed doubled the monetary base but the quantity of money (M2) increased by only 5 percent.

Source: Federal Reserve

Why did M2 not increase by much more than 5 percent? What would have happened to the quantity of M2 if the Fed had kept the monetary base constant?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Banks can make loans when they have excess reserves. When a bank makes a loan, it creates a new deposit for the person who receives the loan. The amount of deposits created (loans made) is limited by the banks' excess reserves, its desired reserve ratio, and the currency drain ratio.
2. The Fed sells securities to banks or the public, but not the government. The initial change is a decrease in the monetary base of $1 million. Ownership of the securities passes from the Fed to the bank, and the Fed's assets decrease by $1 million. The bank pays for the securities by decreasing its reserves at the Fed by $1 million. The Fed's liabilities decrease by $1 million. The bank's total assets are unchanged, but it has $1 million less in reserves and $1 million more in securities.
3. When the Fed sells securities to a bank, the bank's reserves decrease by $1 million. The bank's deposits do not change, so the bank is short of reserves. The bank calls in loans and deposits decrease by the same amount. The desired reserve ratio and the currency drain ratio determine the decrease in the quantity of money. The larger the desired reserve ratio or the currency drain ratio, the smaller is the decrease in the quantity of money.

Solution to In the News

M2 equals the money multiplier, $(1 + C/D)/(R/D + C/D)$, multiplied by the monetary base. (R/D is the banks' desired reserve ratio and C/D is the currency drain ratio). M2 didn't increase by more because the banks increased their desired reserve ratio, R/D, which decreased the money multiplier. If the Fed had kept the monetary base unchanged, M2 would have decreased because the money multiplier decreased.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Define money and describe its functions.

- Money is anything that serves as a generally accepted means of payment.
- Money functions as a medium of exchange, unit of account, and store of value.
- M1 consists of currency held by individuals and businesses, travelers' checks, and checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses. M2 consists of M1 plus savings deposits, small time deposits, and money market funds.

2 Describe the functions of banks.

- The deposits of commercial banks and thrift institutions are money.
- Banks borrow short term and lend long term and make a profit on the spread between the interest rates that they pay and receive.

3 Describe the functions of the Federal Reserve System (the Fed).

- The Federal Reserve is the central bank of the United States.
- The Fed influences the economy by setting the required reserve ratio for banks, by setting the discount rate, by open market operations, and by taking extraordinary measures in a financial crisis.

4 Explain how the banking system creates money and how the Fed controls the quantity of money.

- Banks create money by making loans.
- The maximum quantity of deposits the banks can create is limited by the monetary base, the banks' desired reserves, and desired currency holding.
- When the Fed buys securities in an open market operation, it creates bank reserves. When the Fed sells securities in an open market operation, it destroys bank reserves.
- An open market operation has a multiplier effect on the quantity of money.

Key Terms

Banking system, 692
Barter, 687
Central bank, 697
Commercial bank, 692
Currency, 688
Discount rate, 699
Excess reserves, 702
Federal funds rate, 694
Federal Open Market Committee, 698
Federal Reserve System (the Fed), 697
Fiat money, 688
M1, 688
M2, 688
Means of payment, 686
Medium of exchange, 687
Monetary base, 699
Money, 686
Money multiplier, 707
Open market operation, 699
Required reserve ratio, 693
Reserves, 693
Store of value, 687
Unit of account, 687

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 27 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

LIST 1

- Store coupons for noodles
- A $100 Amazon.com gift certificate
- Frequent flier miles
- Credit available on your Visa card
- The dollar coins that a coin collector owns

1. What is money? Would you classify any of the items in List 1 as money?
2. What are the three functions that money performs? Which of the following items perform some but not all of these functions, and which perform all of these functions? Which of the items are money?
   - A checking account at the Bank of America
   - A dime
   - A debit card
3. Monica transfers $10,000 from her savings account at the Bank of Alaska to her money market fund. What is the immediate change in M1 and M2?
4. Terry takes $100 from his checking account and deposits the $100 in his savings account. What is the immediate change in M1 and M2?
5. Suppose that banks had deposits of $500 billion, a desired reserve ratio of 4 percent and no excess reserves. The banks had $15 billion in notes and coins. Calculate the banks' reserves at the central bank.
6. Explain the Fed's policy tools and briefly describe how each works.
7. Table 1 shows a bank's balance sheet. The bank has no excess reserves and there is no currency drain. Calculate the bank's desired reserve ratio.
8. The Fed buys $2 million of securities from AIG. If the desired reserve ratio is 0.1 and there is no currency drain, calculate the bank's excess reserves as soon as the open market purchase is made, the maximum amount of loans that the banking system can make, and the maximum amount of new money that the banking system can create.

TABLE 1

Assets		Liabilities	
(millions of dollars)			
Reserves at the Fed	20	Checkable deposits	80
Cash in vault	5	Savings deposits	120
Securities	75		
Loans	100		

Use the following information to work Problems **9** and **10**.

If the desired reserve ratio is 5 percent, the currency drain ratio is 20 percent of deposits, and the central bank makes an open market purchase of $1 million of securities, calculate the change in

9. The monetary base and the change in its components.
10. The quantity of money, and how much of the new money is currency and how much is bank deposits.

Use the following information to work Problems **11** and **12**.

South Korea: Bank reserves raised
To rein in spending, the Bank of Korea raised the required reserve ratio to 7 percent from 5 percent—the first raise in almost 17 years. With higher required reserves, banks will have to cut the amount of loans they make.

Source: *The New York Times*, November 24, 2006

11. Explain why the higher required reserve ratio means that banks will have to cut the amount of loans they can make.
12. Assuming that the currency drain is zero and that the desired reserve ratio equals the required reserve ratio, calculate the change in the money multiplier that results from the increase in Korea's required reserve ratio.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. When the Fed increased the monetary base between 2008 and 2011, which component of the monetary base increased most: banks' reserves or currency? What happened to the reserves that banks borrowed from the Fed?
2. What happened to the money multiplier between 2008 and 2011? What would the money multiplier have been if the currency drain ratio had increased? What would the money multiplier have been if the banks' desired reserve ratio had not changed?
3. What are the three functions that money performs? Which of the items in List 1 perform some but not all of these functions and which of the items are money?

LIST 1

- An antique clock
- An S&L savings deposit
- Your credit card
- The coins in the Fed's museum
- Government securities

4. Naomi buys $1,000 worth of American Express travelers' checks and charges the purchase to her American Express card. What is the immediate change in M1 and M2?
5. A bank has $500 million in checkable deposits, $600 million in savings deposits, $400 million in small time deposits, $950 million in loans to businesses, $500 million in government securities, $20 million in currency, and $30 million in its reserve account at the Fed. Calculate the bank's deposits that are part of M1, deposits that are part of M2, the bank's loans, securities, and reserves.
6. What can the Fed do to increase the quantity of money and keep the monetary base constant? Explain why the Fed would or would not
   - Change the currency drain ratio.
   - Change the required reserve ratio.
   - Change the discount rate.
   - Conduct an open market operation.

Use Table 1, which shows a bank's balance sheet, to work Problems 7 and 8. The desired reserve ratio on all deposits is 5 percent and there is no currency drain.

TABLE 1

Assets		Liabilities	
(millions of dollars)			
Reserves at the Fed	25	Checkable deposits	90
Cash in vault	15	Savings deposits	110
Securities	60		
Loans	100		

7. Calculate the bank's excess reserves. If the bank uses all of these excess reserves to make a loan, what is the quantity of the loan and the quantity of total deposits after the bank has made the loan?
8. If there is no currency drain, what is the quantity of loans and the quantity of total deposits when the bank has no excess reserves?

Use the following information to work Problems 9 and 10.

Inflation triggers more bank tightening

To control inflation by limiting bank loans, the People's Bank announced that it would raise the required reserve ratio for commercial banks from 21 percent to 21.5 percent.

Source: *South China Morning Post*, June 15, 2011

9. Compare the required reserve ratio in China on June 15, 2011 and the required reserve ratio on checkable deposits in the United States today.
10. If the currency drain ratio in China and the United States is 10 percent of deposits, compare the money multipliers in the two countries.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 27 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. A commodity or token is money if it is _____.
   A. generally accepted as means of payment
   B. a store of value
   C. used in a barter transaction
   D. completely safe as a store of value
2. Money in the United States today includes _____.
   A. currency and deposits at both banks and the Fed
   B. the currency in people's wallets, stores' tills, and the bank deposits that people and businesses own
   C. currency in ATMs and people's bank deposits
   D. the banks' reserves and bank deposits owned by individuals and businesses
3. Rick withdraws $500 from his savings account, keeps $100 as currency, and deposits $400 in his checking account.
   A. M1 increases by $400 and M2 decreases by $500.
   B. M1 does not change, but M2 decreases by $500.
   C. M1 does not change, but M2 decreases by $400.
   D. M1 increases by $500 and M2 does not change.
4. Commercial banks' assets include _____.
   A. bank deposits of individuals and businesses and bank reserves
   B. loans to individuals and businesses and government securities
   C. bank reserves and the deposits in M2
   D. government securities and borrowed funds
5. The Fed's policy tools include all the following *except* _____.
   A. required reserve ratio and open market operations
   B. quantitative easing
   C. discount rate
   D. taxing banks' deposits at the Fed
6. A commercial bank creates money when it does all the following *except* _____.
   A. decreases its excess reserves
   B. makes loans
   C. creates deposits
   D. puts cash in its ATMs
7. An open market _____ of $100 million of securities _____.
   A. purchase; increases bank reserves
   B. sale; increases bank reserves
   C. purchase; decreases the Fed's liabilities
   D. sale; increases the Fed's liabilities
8. The money multiplier _____.
   A. increases if banks increase their desired reserve ratio
   B. increases if the currency drain ratio increases
   C. is 1 if the desired reserve ratio equals the currency drain ratio
   D. decreases if banks increase their desired reserve ratio

What causes inflation?

Money, Interest, and Inflation

28

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain what determines the demand for money and how the demand for money and the supply of money determine the *nominal* interest rate.
2. Explain how in the long run, the quantity of money determines the price level and money growth brings inflation.
3. Identify the costs of inflation and the benefits of a stable value of money.

WHERE WE ARE AND WHERE WE'RE HEADING

Before we explore the effects of money on the interest rate and the inflation rate, let's take stock of what we've learned and preview where we are heading.

The Real Economy

Real factors that are independent of the price level determine potential GDP and the natural unemployment rate (Chapter 24). The demand for labor and supply of labor determine the quantity of labor employed and the real wage rate at full employment. The full-employment equilibrium quantity of labor and the production function determine potential GDP. At full employment, real GDP equals potential GDP and the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate.

Investment and saving along with population growth, human capital growth, and technological change determine the growth rate of real GDP (Chapter 25).

Investment and saving plans influence the demand for and supply of loanable funds, which in turn determine the real interest rate and the equilibrium amount of investment and saving (Chapter 26).

The Money Economy

Money consists of currency and bank deposits. Banks create deposits by making loans, and the Fed influences the quantity of money through its open market operations, which determine the monetary base and the federal funds rate—the interest rate on interbank loans (Chapter 27).

The effects of the Fed's actions and of changes in the quantity of money are complex. In the current chapter (Chapter 28), we focus on the immediate effects and on the long-run or ultimate effects of the Fed's actions.

The immediate effects are on the short-term nominal interest rate. If the Fed increases (or decreases) the quantity of money, the short-term nominal interest rate falls (or rises).

The long-run effects of the Fed's actions are on the price level and the inflation rate. In the long run, the loanable funds market determines the real interest rate and the Fed's actions determine only the price level and the inflation rate. If the Fed increases (or decreases) the quantity of money, the price level rises (or falls). And if the Fed speeds up (or slows down) the rate at which the quantity of money grows, the inflation rate increases (or decreases).

Real and Money Interactions and Policy

When the Fed changes the short-term nominal interest rate, other changes ripple through the economy. Expenditure plans change and real GDP, employment, unemployment, and the price level (and inflation rate) all change. In the long run, the real effects fade, leaving changes in only the price level and inflation rate. We lay the foundation for studying the ripple effects of the Fed's actions in Chapters 28–30. These chapters explain how the real and monetary factors interact and describe the short-run constraint on the Fed's choices.

Chapters 32 and 33 build on the foundation of all the preceding chapters. Chapter 32 explains how the government uses fiscal policy to sustain economic growth and stabilize output and employment. Chapter 33 explains how the Fed uses monetary policy to achieve those same goals and to control inflation.

28.1 MONEY AND THE INTEREST RATE

To understand the Fed's influence on the interest rate, we study the demand for money, the supply of money, and the forces that bring equilibrium in the market for money. We'll begin with the demand for money.

The Demand for Money

Quantity of money demanded
The amount of money that households and firms choose to hold.

The amount of money that households and firms choose to hold is the **quantity of money demanded.** What determines the quantity of money demanded? The answer is the "price" of money. But what is that "price"?

Two possible answers, both correct, are the value of money and the opportunity cost of holding money. The value of money is the quantity of goods and services that a dollar will buy, which is related to the *price level*. We'll explore this "price" of money when we study the long-run effects of money in the next part of this chapter. The opportunity cost of holding money is the goods and services forgone by holding money rather than some other asset.

To determine the quantity of money to hold, households and firms compare the benefit from holding money to its opportunity cost. They choose to hold the quantity that balances the benefit of holding an *additional* dollar of money against its opportunity cost. What are the benefit and opportunity cost of holding money?

Benefit of Holding Money

You've seen that money is the means of payment (Chapter 27, p. 686). The more money you hold, the easier it is for you to make payments. By holding enough money you can settle your bills at the end of each month without having to spend time and effort raising a loan or selling some other financial asset.

The marginal benefit of holding money is the change in total benefit that results from holding one more dollar as money. The marginal benefit of holding money diminishes as the quantity of money held increases. If you hold only a few dollars in money, then holding a few more dollars brings large benefits—you can buy a coffee or take a bus ride. If you hold enough money to make your normal weekly payments, then holding more dollars brings only a small benefit because you're not very likely to want to spend those extra dollars. Holding even more money brings only a small additional benefit. You barely notice the difference in the benefit of having $1,000 versus $1,001 in your bank account.

To get the most out of your assets, you hold money only up to the point at which its marginal benefit equals its opportunity cost.

Opportunity Cost of Holding Money

The opportunity cost of holding money is the interest rate forgone on an alternative asset. If you can earn 8 percent a year on a mutual fund account, then holding an additional $100 in money costs you $8 a year. Your opportunity cost of holding $100 in money is the goods and services worth $8 that you must forgo.

A fundamental principle of economics is that if the opportunity cost of something increases, people seek substitutes for it. Money is no exception. Other assets such as a mutual fund account are substitutes for money. The higher the opportunity cost of holding money—the higher the interest income forgone by not holding other assets—the smaller is the quantity of money demanded.

Opportunity Cost: *Nominal* Interest Is a *Real* Cost

The opportunity cost of holding money is the nominal interest rate. In Chapter 23 (p. 602), you learned the distinction between the *nominal* interest rate and the *real* interest rate and that

Norminal interest rate = Real interest rate + Inflation rate.

We can use this equation to find the real interest rate for a given nominal interest rate and inflation rate. For example, if the nominal interest rate on a mutual fund account is 8 percent a year and the inflation rate is 2 percent a year, the real interest rate is 6 percent a year. Why isn't the real interest rate of 6 percent a year the opportunity cost of holding money? That is, why isn't the opportunity cost of holding $100 in money only $6 worth of goods and services forgone?

The answer is that if you hold $100 in money rather than in a mutual fund, your buying power decreases by $8, not by $6. With inflation running at 2 percent a year, on each $100 that you hold as money and that earns no interest, you lose $2 worth of buying power a year. On each $100 that you put into your mutual fund account, you gain $6 worth of buying power a year. So if you hold money rather than a mutual fund, you lose the buying power of $6 plus $2, or $8—equivalent to the nominal interest rate on the mutual fund, not the real interest rate.

Because the opportunity cost of holding money is the nominal interest rate on an alternative asset,

Other things remaining the same, the higher the nominal interest rate, the smaller is the quantity of money demanded.

This relationship describes the decision made by an individual or a firm about how much money to hold. It also describes money-holding decisions for the economy—the sum of the decisions of every individual and firm.

We summarize the influence of the nominal interest rate on money-holding decisions in a demand for money schedule and curve.

The Demand for Money Schedule and Curve

Demand for money
The relationship between the quantity of money demanded and the nominal interest rate, when all other influences on the amount of money that people wish to hold remain the same.

The **demand for money** is the relationship between the quantity of money demanded and the nominal interest rate, when all other influences on the amount of money that people wish to hold remain the same. We illustrate the demand for money with a demand for money schedule and a demand for money curve, such as those in Figure 28.1. If the interest rate is 5 percent a year, the quantity of money demanded is $1 trillion. The quantity of money demanded decreases to $0.98 trillion if the interest rate rises to 6 percent a year and increases to $1.02 trillion if the interest rate falls to 4 percent a year.

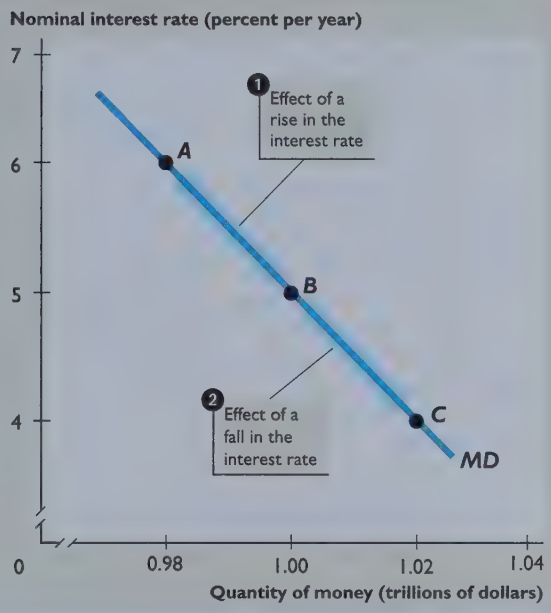
The demand for money curve is *MD*. When the interest rate rises, everything else remaining the same, the opportunity cost of holding money rises and the quantity of money demanded decreases—there is a movement up along the demand for money curve. When the interest rate falls, the opportunity cost of holding money falls and the quantity of money demanded increases—there is a movement down along the demand for money curve.

FIGURE 28.1

The Demand for Money

MyEconLab Animation

	Nominal interest rate (percent per year)	Quantity of money demanded (trillions of dollars)
A	6	0.98
B	5	1.00
C	4	1.02



The demand for money schedule is graphed as the demand for money curve, *MD*. Rows *A*, *B*, and *C* in the table correspond to points *A*, *B*, and *C* on the curve. The nominal interest rate is the opportunity cost of holding money.

Other things remaining the same, ❶ an increase in the nominal interest rate decreases the quantity of money demanded, and ❷ a decrease in the nominal interest rate increases the quantity of money demanded.

Changes in the Demand for Money

A change in the nominal interest rate brings a change in the quantity of money demanded and a movement along the demand for money curve. A change in any other influence on money holding changes the demand for money. The three main influences on the demand for money are

- The price level
- Real GDP
- Financial technology

The Price Level

The demand for money is proportional to the price level—an x percent rise in the price level brings an x percent increase in the quantity of money demanded at each nominal interest rate. The reason is that we hold money to make payments: If the price level changes, the quantity of dollars that we need to make payments changes in the same proportion.

Real GDP

The demand for money increases as real GDP increases. The reason is that when real GDP increases, expenditures and incomes increase. To make the increased expenditures and income payments, households and firms must hold larger average amounts of money.

Financial Technology

Changes in financial technology change the demand for money. Most changes in financial technology come from advances in computing and record keeping. Some advances increase the quantity of money demanded, and some decrease it.

Daily interest checking deposits and automatic transfers between checking and savings deposits enable people to earn interest on money, lower the opportunity cost of holding money, and increase the demand for money. Automatic teller machines, debit cards, and smart cards, which have made money easier to obtain and use, have increased the marginal benefit of money and increased the demand for money.

Credit cards have made it easier for people to buy goods and services on credit and pay for them when their credit card account becomes due. This development has decreased the demand for money.

A change in any of the influences on money holdings that we've just reviewed other than the interest rate changes the demand for money. A rise in the price level, an increase in real GDP, or an advance in financial technology that lowers the opportunity cost of holding money or makes money more useful increases the demand for money. A fall in the price level, a decrease in real GDP, or a technological advance that creates a substitute for money decreases the demand for money.

The Supply of Money

Supply of money
The relationship between the quantity of money supplied and the nominal interest rate.

The quantity of money supplied is determined by the actions of the banking system and the Fed. On any given day, the quantity of money supplied is fixed. The **supply of money** is the relationship between the quantity of money supplied and the nominal interest rate. In Figure 28.2, the quantity of money supplied is $1 trillion regardless of the nominal interest rate, so the supply of money curve is the vertical line *MS*.

The Nominal Interest Rate

People hold some of their financial wealth as money and some in the form of other financial assets. You have seen that the amount of wealth that people hold as money depends on the nominal interest rate that they can earn on other financial assets. Demand and supply determine the nominal interest rate. We can study the forces of demand and supply in either the market for financial assets or the market for money. Because the Fed influences the quantity of money, we focus on the market for money.

On a given day, the price level, real GDP, and the state of financial technology are fixed. Because these influences on the demand for money are fixed, the demand for money curve is given.

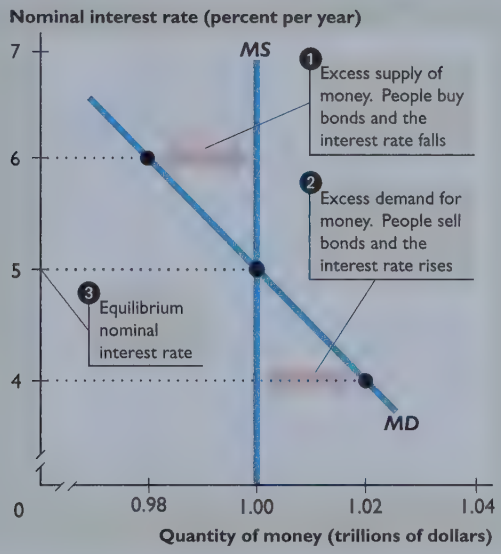
The interest rate is the only influence on the quantity of money demanded that is free to fluctuate. Every day, the interest rate adjusts to make the quantity of money demanded equal the quantity of money supplied—to achieve money market equilibrium.

In Figure 28.2, the demand for money curve is *MD*. The equilibrium interest rate is 5 percent a year. At any interest rate above 5 percent a year, the quantity of money demanded is less than the quantity of money supplied. At any interest rate below 5 percent a year, the quantity of money demanded exceeds the quantity of money supplied.

FIGURE 28.2

Money Market Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation



The supply of money curve is *MS*, and the demand for money curve is *MD*.

1. If the interest rate is 6 percent a year, the quantity of money held exceeds the quantity demanded. People buy bonds, the price of a bond rises, and the interest rate falls.
2. If the interest rate is 4 percent a year, the quantity of money held falls short of the quantity demanded. People sell bonds, the price of a bond falls, and the interest rate rises.
3. If the interest rate is 5 percent a year, the quantity of money held equals the quantity demanded. The money market is in equilibrium.

The Interest Rate and Bond Price Move in Opposite Directions When the government issues a bond, it specifies the dollar amount of interest that it will pay each year on the bond. Suppose that the government issues a bond that pays $100 of interest a year. The interest *rate* that you receive on this bond depends on the price that you pay for it. If the price is $1,000, the interest rate is 10 percent a year—$100 is 10 percent of $1,000.

If the price of the bond *falls* to $500, the interest rate *rises* to 20 percent a year. The reason is that you still receive an interest payment of $100, but this amount is 20 percent of the $500 price of the bond. If the price of the bond *rises* to $2,000, the interest rate *falls* to 5 percent a year. Again, you still receive an interest payment of $100, but this amount is 5 percent of the $2,000 price of the bond.

Interest Rate Adjustment If the interest rate is above its equilibrium level, people would like to hold less money than they are actually holding. They try to get rid of some money by buying other financial assets such as bonds. The demand for financial assets increases, the prices of these assets rise, and the interest rate falls. The interest rate keeps falling until the quantity of money that people want to hold increases to equal the quantity of money supplied.

Conversely, when the interest rate is below its equilibrium level, people are holding less money than they would like to hold. They try to get more money by selling other financial assets. The demand for these financial assets decreases, the prices of these assets fall, and the interest rate rises. The interest rate keeps rising until the quantity of money that people want to hold decreases to equal the quantity of money supplied.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

Credit Cards and Money

Today, 80 percent of U.S. households own a credit card, and most of us use a credit card account as a substitute for money. When we buy goods or services, we use our credit card. When the monthly bill arrives, most of us pay off some of the outstanding balance but not all of it. In 2010, 57 percent of credit card holders had an outstanding balance after making their most recent payment, and the average card balance exceeded $5,000.

But back in 1970, only 20 percent of U.S. households had a credit card.

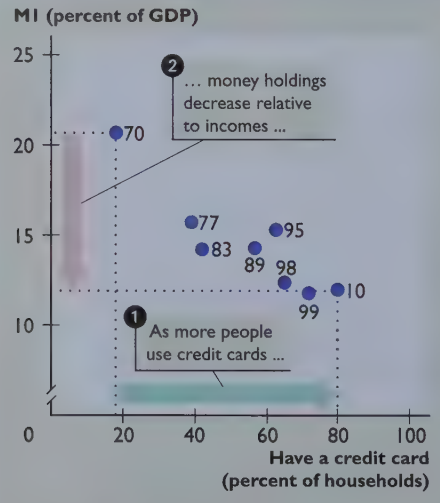
How has the spread of credit cards affected the amount of money that people hold?

The answer is that the quantity of M1 money has decreased as a percentage of GDP. Part (a) of the figure shows that as the ownership of credit cards expanded from almost 20 percent in 1970 to 80 percent in 2010, the quantity of M1—basically, currency plus checking deposits—fell from a bit more than 20 percent of GDP to 12 percent.

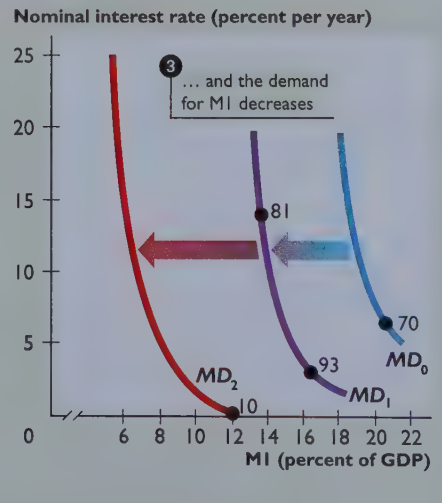
The expansion of credit card ownership is a change in financial technology that has led to a steady decrease in the demand for money.

Part (b) of the figure shows the decrease in the demand for money. Here, we graph the quantity of M1 as a percentage of GDP against the interest rate. You can see that as credit card use increased between 1970 and 2010, the demand for money decreased and the demand for money curve shifted leftward from MD_0 to MD_1 to MD_2.

You can also see that when the interest rate decreased between 1981 and 1993, the quantity of money demanded increased along the demand for money curve MD_1.



(a) Changes in the use of credit cards and money



(b) Changes in the demand for M1

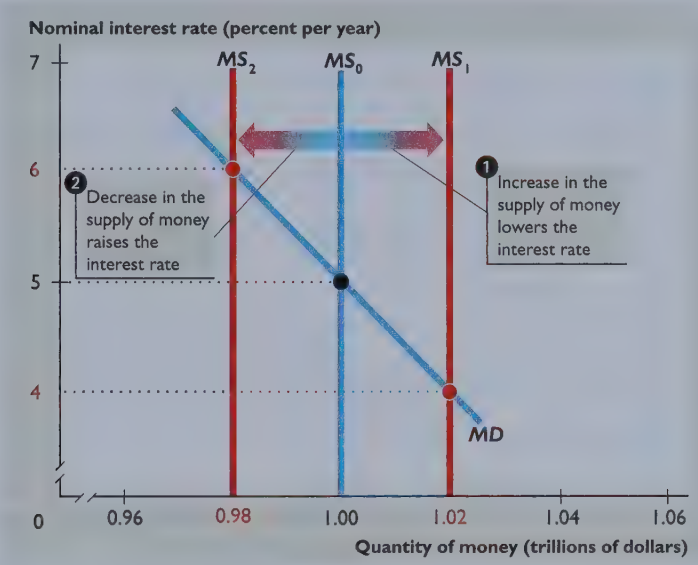
SOURCE OF DATA: Federal Reserve.

■ Changing the Interest Rate

To change the interest rate, the Fed changes the quantity of money. Figure 28.3 illustrates two changes. The demand for money curve is *MD*. If the Fed increases the quantity of money to $1.02 trillion, the supply of money curve shifts rightward from MS_0 to MS_1 and the interest rate falls to 4 percent a year. If the Fed decreases the quantity of money to $0.98 trillion, the supply of money curve shifts leftward from MS_0 to MS_2 and the interest rate rises to 6 percent a year.

FIGURE 28.3
Interest Rate Changes

MyEconLab Animation



The demand for money is *MD*, and initially, the supply of money is MS_0 The interest rate is 5 percent a year.

1. If the Fed increases the quantity of money and the supply of money curve shifts rightward to MS_1, the interest rate falls to 4 percent a year.
2. If the Fed decreases the quantity of money and the supply of money curve shifts leftward to MS_2, the interest rate rises to 6 percent a year.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Money Holding and Fed Watching

How much currency (cash) do you have in your wallet, on average? How much money do you keep in your bank account on average?

Why don't you hold a larger average bank balance by paying off a smaller part of your credit card balance than you can afford to pay?

Wouldn't it be better to keep a bit more money in the bank?

Almost certainly, that would not be a smart idea. Why? Because the opportunity cost of holding that money would be too high.

If you have an outstanding credit card balance, the interest rate on that balance is the opportunity cost of holding money.

By paying off as much of your credit card balance as you can afford, you avoid a high interest rate on the outstanding balance.

Your demand for money is sensitive to this opportunity cost.

Do you watch the Fed? Probably not, but you can learn to become an effective Fed watcher. In the process, you will become much better informed about the state of the U.S. economy and the state of the economy in your region.

To become a Fed watcher, try to get into the habit of visiting the Fed's Web site at www.federalreserve.gov.

Look specifically at the Beige Book, in which you can learn what is happening in your region. Also, keep an eye on the FOMC calendar for the dates of interest rate announcements. On these dates, check the media for opinions on what the Fed's interest rate decision will be. After the decision is made, check the Fed's explanation as to why it made its decision.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 28.1 and get instant feedback.

FIGURE 1

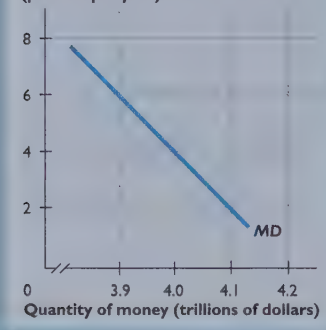


FIGURE 2

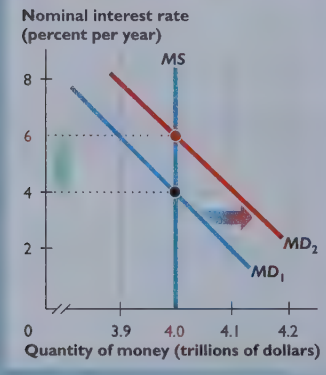
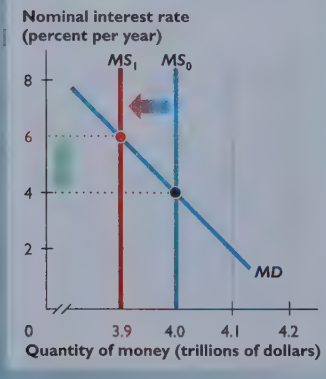


FIGURE 3



CHECKPOINT 28.1

Explain what determines the demand for money and how the demand for money and the supply of money determine the *nominal* interest rate.

Practice Problems

Use the demand for money curve in Figure 1 to work Problems **1** to **3.**

1. If the quantity of money is $4 trillion, what is the supply of money and the nominal interest rate?
2. If the quantity of money is $4 trillion and real GDP increases, how will the interest rate change? Explain the process that changes the interest rate.
3. If the quantity of money is $4 trillion and the Fed decreases it to $3.9 trillion, how will the price of a bond change? Why?
4. If banks increase the interest rate they pay on deposits, how will the demand for money and the nominal interest rate in the money market change?

In the News

What to do with $50,000 now
A good strategy: Put about two-thirds of the money into bonds of developed nations and the rest into riskier emerging-market bonds.

Source: CNNMoney.com

What is the opportunity cost of holding money? If lots of people put their money into bonds, how will the demand for money and the interest rate change?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The supply of money is the curve *MS*. The interest rate is 4 percent a year, at the intersection of MD_1 and *MS* (Figure 2).
2. The demand for money increases, and the demand for money curve shifts from MD_1 to MD_2 (Figure 2). At an interest rate of 4 percent a year, people want to hold more money, so they sell bonds. The price of a bond falls, and the interest rate rises.
3. At 4 percent a year, people would like to hold $4 trillion. With only $3.9 trillion of money available, they sell bonds to get more money. The price of a bond falls, and the interest rate rises. The price will fall and the interest rate will rise until the quantity of money that people want to hold equals the $3.9 trillion available. The interest rate rises to 6 percent a year (Figure 3).
4. A higher interest rate on bank deposits lowers the opportunity cost of holding money, so the demand for money increases. As the demand for money increases, with no change in the supply of money, the nominal interest rate in the money market rises (as Figure 2 shows).

Solution to In the News

The opportunity cost of holding money is the interest rate forgone by not holding bonds. If people decide to buy more bonds, the demand for money decreases. The decrease in the demand for money with no change in the supply of money lowers the interest rate on bonds. (People buy more bonds so the price of a bond rises).

28.2 MONEY, THE PRICE LEVEL, AND INFLATION

A change in the nominal interest rate is the initial effect of a change in the quantity of money, but it is not the ultimate or long-run effect. When the interest rate changes, borrowing and lending and investment and consumption spending also change, which in turn change production and prices—change real GDP and the price level.

The details of this adjustment process are complex, and we explore them in the next two chapters. But the place where the process comes to rest—the *long-run* outcome—is easier to describe. It is crucial to understand the long-run outcome because that is where the economy is heading. We're now going to examine the long-run equilibrium in the money market.

The Money Market in the Long Run

The *long run* refers to the economy at full employment when real GDP equals potential GDP (Chapter 24, p. 613). Over the business cycle, real GDP fluctuates around potential GDP. But averaging over an expansion and recession and a peak and trough, real GDP equals potential GDP. That is, real GDP equals potential GDP *on average*. So another way to think about the *long run* is as a description of the economy *on average* over the business cycle.

The Long-Run Demand for Money

In the long run, equilibrium in the loanable funds market determines the real interest rate (Chapter 26, pp. 666–673). The nominal interest rate that influences money holding plans equals the real interest rate plus the inflation rate. For now, we'll consider an economy that has no inflation, so the real interest rate equals the nominal interest rate. (We'll consider inflation later in this chapter.)

With the interest rate determined by real forces in the long run, what is the variable that adjusts to make the quantity of money that people plan to hold equal the quantity of money supplied? The answer is the "price" of money. The law of demand applies to money just as it does to any other object. The lower the "price" of money, the greater is the quantity of money that people are willing to hold. What is the "price" of money? It is the *value* of money.

The Value of Money

The *value of money* is the quantity of goods and services that a unit of money will buy. It is the inverse of the *price level, P,* which equals the GDP price index divided by 100. That is,

$$\text{Value of money} = 1/P.$$

To see why, suppose that you have $100 in your wallet. If you spend that money, you can buy goods and services valued at $100. Now suppose that the price level rises by 10 percent. After the price rise, the quantity of goods and services that $100 can buy has fallen. Your $100 can now buy only $100 ÷ 1.1 or $91 of goods and services. Yesterday's $100 is worth $91 today. The price level has risen and the value of money has fallen and each percentage change is the same. The higher the value of money, the smaller is the quantity of money that people plan to hold. If it seems strange that a higher value of money makes people want to hold less money, think about how much money you would plan to hold if the

price of a restaurant meal was 20 cents and the price of movie ticket was 10 cents. You would be happy to hold (say) $1 on average. But if the price of a meal is $20 and the price of a movie ticket is $10, you would want to hold $100 on average. The price level is lower and the value of money higher in the first case than in the second; and the amount of money you would plan to hold is lower in the first case than in the second.

Money Market Equilibrium in the Long Run

In the long run, money market equilibrium determines the value of money. If the quantity of money supplied exceeds the long-run quantity demanded, people go out and spend their surplus money. The quantity of goods and services available is fixed equal to potential GDP, so the extra spending forces prices upward. As the price level rises, the value of money falls.

If the quantity of money supplied is less than the long-run quantity demanded, people lower their spending to build up the quantity of money they hold. The shortage of money translates into a surplus of goods and services, so the spending cut-back forces prices downward. The price level falls and the value of money rises. When the quantity of money supplied equals the long-run quantity demanded, the price level and the value of money are at their equilibrium levels.

Figure 28.4 illustrates long-run money market equilibrium. The long-run demand for money curve is *LRMD*. Its position depends on potential GDP and the equilibrium interest rate. The supply of money is *MS*. Equilibrium occurs when the value of money is 1.

FIGURE 28.4

Long-Run Money Market Equilibrium

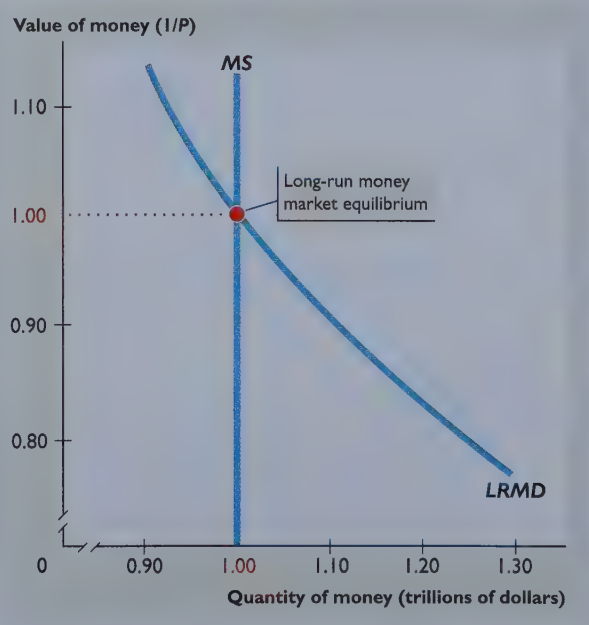
MyEconLab Animation

The long-run demand for money is determined by potential GDP and the equilibrium interest rate.

The *LRMD* curve shows how the quantity of money that households and firms plan to hold, in the long run, depends on the value of money (or 1/*P*, the inverse of the price level).

The *MS* curve shows the quantity of money supplied, which is $1 trillion.

The price level adjusts to make the value of money equal 1 and achieve long-run money market equilibrium.



A Change in the Quantity of Money

Suppose that starting from a long-run equilibrium, the Fed increases the quantity of money by 10 percent. In the short run, the greater quantity of money lowers the nominal interest rate. With a lower interest rate, people and businesses borrow more and spend more. But with real GDP equal to potential GDP, there are no more goods and services to buy, so when people go out and spend, prices start to rise. Eventually, a new long-run equilibrium is reached at which the price level has increased in proportion to the increase in the quantity of money. Because the quantity of money increased by 10 percent, the price level has also risen by 10 percent from 1.0 to 1.1.

Figure 28.5 illustrates this outcome. Initially, the supply of money is MS_0 and the quantity of money is $1 trillion. The Fed increases the supply of money to MS_1 and the quantity of money is now $1.1 trillion—a 10 percent increase. There is now a surplus of money and people go out and spend it. The increased spending on the same unchanged quantity of goods and services raises the price level and lowers the value of money. Eventually, the price level has increased by 10 percent from 1.0 to 1.1 and the value of money has decreased by 10 percent from 1.00 to 0.91.

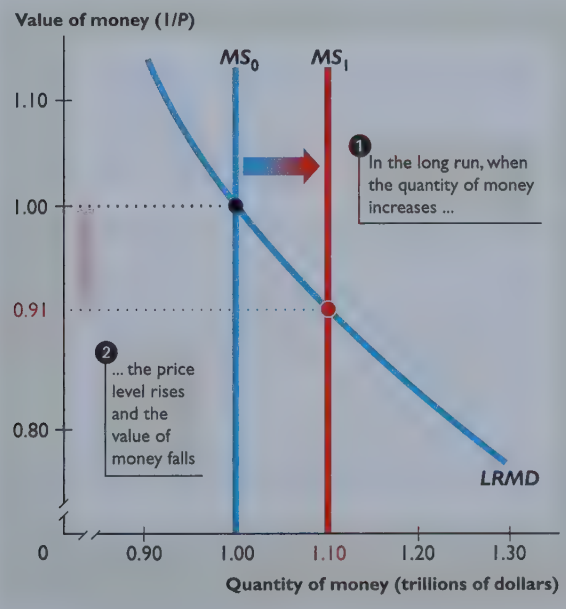
You've just seen a key proposition about the quantity of money and the price level.

In the long run and other things remaining the same, a given percentage change in the quantity of money brings an equal percentage change in the price level.

FIGURE 28.5

The Long-Run Effect of a Change in the Quantity of Money

MyEconLab Animation



1. The Fed increases the supply of money from MS_0 to MS_1 and the quantity of money increases from $1 trillion to $1.1 trillion, a 10 percent increase.
2. The price level rises by 10 percent and the value of money falls by 10 percent to restore long-run money market equilibrium.

The Price Level in a Baby-Sitting Club

It is hard to visualize a long-run equilibrium and even harder to visualize and compare two long-run equilibrium situations like those that we've just described. An example of a simpler situation might help.

In an isolated neighborhood, there are no teenagers but lots of young children, and parents can't find any babysitters. So they form a club and sit for each other. The deal is that each time a parent sits for someone else, he or she receives a token that can be used to buy one babysitting session from another member of the club. The organizer notices that the club is inactive. Every member has a few unspent tokens, but they spend them infrequently. To make the club more active, the organizer decides to issue every member one token for each token that is currently held, so the supply of tokens doubles.

With more tokens to spend, parents start to plan more evenings out. Suddenly, the phones are ringing as parents seek babysitters. Every member of the club wants a sitter, but there are no more sitters than before. After making a few calls and finding no sitters available, anxious parents who really do need a sitter start to offer a higher price: two tokens per session. That does the trick. At the higher price, the quantity of baby-sitting services demanded decreases and the quantity supplied increases. Equilibrium is restored. Nothing real has changed, but the quantity of tokens and the price level have doubled.

Think of the equilibrium quantity of baby-sitting services as potential GDP, the quantity of tokens as the quantity of money, and the price of a baby-sitting session as the price level. You can then see how a given percentage change in the quantity of money at full employment brings an equal percentage change in the price level.

The Quantity Theory of Money

Quantity theory of money
The proposition that when real GDP equals potential GDP, an increase in the quantity of money brings an equal percentage increase in the price level.

The proposition that when real GDP equals potential GDP, an increase in the quantity of money brings an equal percentage increase in the price level is called the **quantity theory of money.** We've derived this proposition by looking at equilibrium in the money market in the long run. Another way of seeing the relationship between the quantity of money and the price level uses the concepts of *the velocity of circulation* and *the equation of exchange.* We're now going to explore the quantity theory. We're then going to see how ongoing money growth brings inflation and see what determines the inflation rate in the long run.

The Velocity of Circulation and Equation of Exchange

Velocity of circulation
The average number of times in a year that each dollar of money gets used to buy final goods and services.

The **velocity of circulation** is the average number of times in a year that each dollar of money gets used to buy final goods and services. The value of final goods and services is nominal GDP, which is real GDP, Y, multiplied by the price level, P. If we call the quantity of money M, then the velocity of circulation is determined by the equation:

$$V = (P \times Y) \div M.$$

In this equation, P is the GDP price index divided by 100. For example, if the GDP price index is 125, the price level is 1.25. If the price level is 1.25, real GDP is \$8 trillion, and the quantity of money is \$2 trillion, then the velocity of circulation is

$$V = (1.25 \times \$8 \text{ trillion}) \div \$2 \text{ trillion, or}$$

$$V = 5.$$

That is, with $2 trillion of money, each dollar gets used an average of 5 times, so $2 trillion × 5 equals $10 trillion of goods and services bought.

The **equation of exchange** states that the quantity of money, *M*, multiplied by the velocity of circulation, *V*, equals the price level *P*, multiplied by real GDP, *Y*. That is,

Equation of exchange
An equation that states that the quantity of money multiplied by the velocity of circulation equals the price level multiplied by real GDP.

$$M \times V = P \times Y.$$

The equation of exchange is *always* true because it is implied by the definition of the velocity of circulation. That is, if you multiply both sides of the equation on p. 728 that defines the velocity of circulation by *M*, you get the equation of exchange.

Using the above numbers—a price level of 1.25, real GDP of $8 trillion, the quantity of money of $2 trillion, and the velocity of circulation of 5—you can see that

$$M \times V = \$2 \text{ trillion} \times 5 = \$10 \text{ trillion},$$

and

$$P \times Y = 1.25 \times \$8 \text{ trillion} = \$10 \text{ trillion}.$$

So,

$$M \times V = P \times Y = \$10 \text{ trillion}.$$

The Quantity Theory Prediction

We can rearrange the equation of exchange to isolate the price level on the left side. To do so, divide both sides of the equation of exchange by real GDP to obtain

$$P = (M \times V) \div Y.$$

On the left side is the price level, and on the right side are all the things that influence the price level. But this equation is still just an implication of the definition of the velocity of circulation. To turn the equation into a theory of what determines the price level, we use two other facts: (1) At full employment, real GDP equals potential GDP, which is determined only by real factors and not by the quantity of money; and (2) the velocity of circulation is relatively stable and does not change when the quantity of money changes.

So with *V* and *Y* constant, if *M* increases *P* must increase, and the percentage increase in *P* must equal the percentage increase in *M*.

We can use the above numbers to illustrate this prediction. Real GDP is $8 trillion, the quantity of money is $2 trillion, and the velocity of circulation is 5. Put these values into the equation:

$$P = (M \times V) \div Y.$$

to obtain

$$P = (\$2 \text{ trillion} \times 5) \div \$8 \text{ trillion} = 1.25.$$

Now increase the quantity of money from $2 trillion to $2.4 trillion. The percentage increase in the quantity of money is

$$(\$2.4 \text{ trillion} - \$2 \text{ trillion}) \div \$2 \text{ trillion} \times 100 = 20 \text{ percent}.$$

Now find the new price level. It is

$$P = (\$2.4 \text{ trillion} \times 5) \div \$8 \text{ trillion} = 1.50.$$

The price level rises from 1.25 to 1.50. The percentage increase in the price level is

$$(1.50 - 1.25) \div 1.25 \times 100 = 20 \text{ percent}.$$

When the economy is at full employment (real GDP equals potential GDP) and the velocity of circulation is stable, the price level and the quantity of money increase by the same 20 percent.

Inflation and the Quantity Theory of Money

The equation of exchange tells us about the price *level*, the quantity of money, the level of real GDP, and the level of the velocity of circulation. We can turn the equation into one that tells us about *rates of change* or *growth rates* of these variables. We want to make this conversion because we want to know what determines the inflation rate—the rate of change of the price level.

In rates of change or growth rates,

Money growth + Velocity growth = Inflation rate + Real GDP growth,

which means that

Inflation rate = Money Growth + Velocity growth − Real GDP growth.

Constant Inflation

Figure 28.6 illustrates three cases in which the inflation rate is constant—at zero, at a low or moderate rate, and at a high or rapid rate. In each case, the velocity growth rate is 1 percent a year and the real GDP growth rate is 3 percent a year. The money growth rate is the only thing that is different across the three cases, and it is this difference that brings the different inflation rates.

If the quantity of money grows at 2 percent a year, there is no inflation. That is,

Inflation rate = 2 percent + 1 percent − 3 percent = 0 percent a year.

With the quantity of money growing at 4 percent a year, the inflation rate is 2 percent a year. That is,

Inflation rate = 4 percent + 1 percent − 3 percent = 2 percent a year.

And with the quantity of money growing at 10 percent a year, the inflation rate is 8 percent a year. That is,

Inflation rate = 10 percent + 1 percent − 3 percent = 8 percent a year.

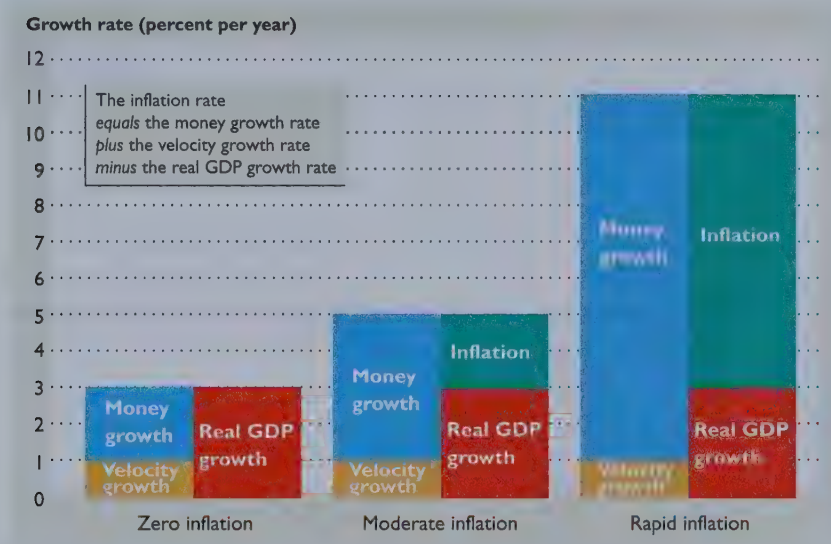
A Change in the Inflation Rate

We've looked at three different inflation rates—zero, moderate, and rapid—with given growth rates of real GDP and velocity of circulation. We're now going to see what happens when the growth rate of money *changes*. We'll start with an increase in the money growth rate.

FIGURE 28.6

Money Growth and Inflation

MyEconLab Real-time data



The velocity of circulation grows at 1 percent a year (the orange block), and real GDP grows at 3 percent a year (the red block). The inflation rate (green block) is determined by money growth (blue block).

If the quantity of money grows at 2 percent a year, the inflation rate is zero.

If the quantity of money grows at 4 percent a year, the inflation rate is a moderate 2 percent a year.

But if the quantity of money grows at 10 percent a year, the inflation rate is a rapid 8 percent a year.

Increase in Money Growth Rate When the money growth rate increases, the inflation rate increases slowly and there is a temporary (short-run) increase in the real GDP growth rate. The velocity of circulation increases as the inflation rate speeds up but this increase does not persist. Once the velocity has increased in response to a higher inflation rate, it remains constant at its new level. (You can see in *Eye on the Cause of Inflation* on p. 733 that velocity growth has been zero for most of the past 40 years. It increased during the 1990s but decreased again during the 2000s.)

A faster inflation reduces potential GDP and slows real GDP growth (for reasons that we explore in the final section of this chapter) but for low inflation rates, these effects are small and are dominated by the main direct effect of money growth on the inflation rate. Eventually, real GDP growth slows to that of potential GDP, velocity growth returns to its long-run rate, and the inflation rate changes by the full amount of the change in the money growth rate.

Decrease in Money Growth Rate When the money growth rate decreases, the effects that we've just described work in the opposite direction.

You can see in *Eye on Inflation* (p. 733) that changes in the growth rate of real GDP and changes in velocity growth have been small in comparison to the changes in the growth rate of money and the inflation rate. So,

In the long run and other things remaining the same, a change in the *growth rate* of the quantity of money brings an equal change in the inflation rate.

The relationship between the money growth rate and the inflation rate is at its clearest when inflation is rapid in *hyperinflation*.

Hyperinflation

Hyperinflation
Inflation at a rate that exceeds 50 percent *a month* (which translates to 12,875 percent per year).

When the inflation rate exceeds 50 percent *a month,* it is called **hyperinflation.** An inflation rate of 50 percent per month translates to an inflation rate of 12,875 percent per year. Hyperinflation occurs when the quantity of money grows at a rapid pace. The reason money growth sometimes becomes rapid is that government expenditure gets out of control and exceeds what the government can collect in tax revenue or borrow. In such a situation, the government prints money to finance its spending and the quantity of money increases at an extraordinarily rapid and increasing rate.

Hyperinflation is rare but not unknown (see *Eye on the Past* below). The highest inflation in the world in recent times was in the African nation of Zimbabwe, where the inflation rate peaked at 231,150,888.87 percent a year in July 2008.

EYE on the PAST

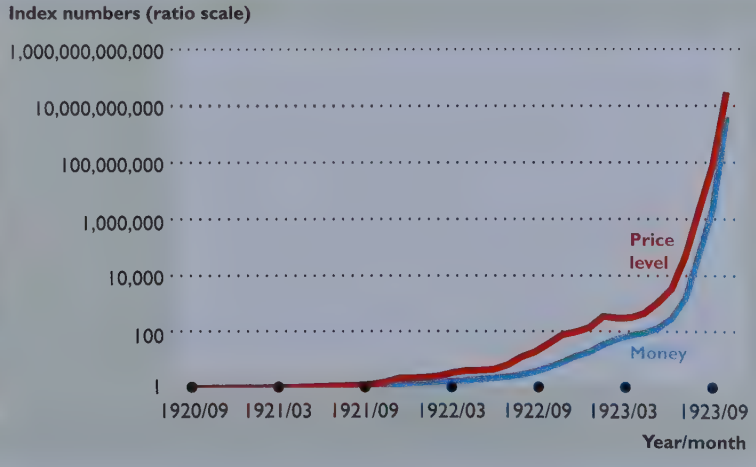
Hyperinflation in Germany in the 1920s

An international treaty signed in 1919 required Germany to pay large amounts as compensation for war damage to other countries in Europe. To meet its obligations, Germany started to print money. The quantity of money increased by 24 percent in 1921, by 220 percent in 1922, and by 43 *billion* percent in 1923!

Not surprisingly, the price level increased rapidly. The figure shows you how rapidly.

In November 1923 when the hyperinflation reached its peak, the price level was more than doubling every day. Wages were paid twice a day, and people spent their morning's wages at lunchtime to avoid the loss in the value of money that the afternoon would bring.

Hyperinflation made bank notes more valuable as fire kindling than as money. The sight of people burning Reichmarks (the name of Germany's money at that time) was a common one, as the photo shows.



SOURCE OF DATA: Phillip Cagan, "The Monetary Dynamics of Hyperinflation," in Milton Friedman (editor), *Studies in the Quantity Theory of Money,* University of Chicago Press, 1956.

EYE on INFLATION

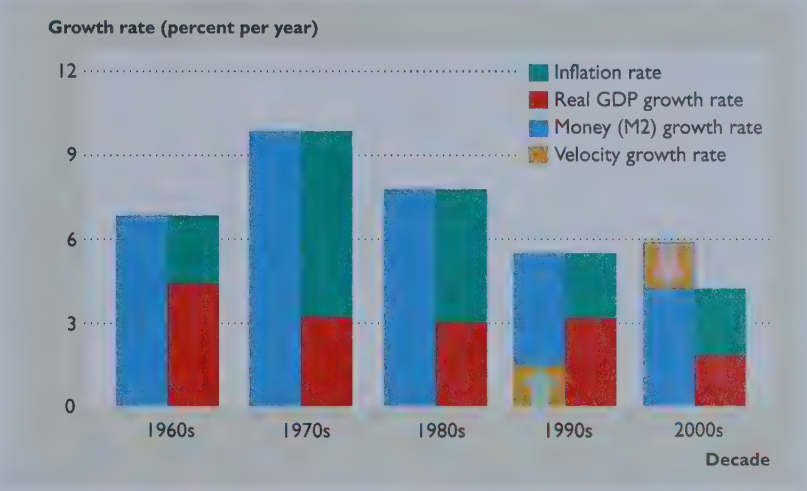
What Causes Inflation?

According to the quantity theory of money, whether we face a future with inflation, deflation, or a stable price level depends entirely on the rate at which the Fed permits the quantity of money to grow.

But is the quantity theory correct? Does it explain our past inflation with enough accuracy to be a guide to future inflation?

The quantity theory does not predict the year-to-year changes in the inflation rate. The quantity theory does an especially bad job of explaining 2008 and 2009 because in those years, the velocity of circulation tumbled.

But on average, over a number of years, the quantity theory is a remarkably accurate predictor of the inflation rate. The figure shows that the quantity theory explains our past decade-average inflation rates.



SOURCE OF DATA: Federal Reserve and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

During the 1960s, 1970s, and 1980s, the velocity of circulation (of M2) was constant. The growth rate of real GDP slowed from the fast-expanding 1960s to a more moderate pace during the 1970s and 1980s. The growth rate of the quantity of M2 increased in the 1970s and slowed in the 1980s, and the inflation rate moved in line with the changed money growth rate—exactly as predicted by the quantity theory of money.

During the 1990s the M2 growth slowed again but the velocity of circulation increased. With the real GDP growth rate unchanged, the inflation rate slowed.

The 2000s saw the M2 growth rate increase but the velocity of circulation shrank at a similar rate to that at which it had grown during the 1990s. Inflation remained close to its level in the previous decade, but real GDP growth slowed.

Aside from the small changes in velocity growth during the 1990s and 2000s, which cancelled each other out, all the decade-by-decade variation in the inflation rate has resulted from changes in the growth rate of the quantity of money.

To predict our future decade-average inflation rates, we must predict the future growth rate of money.

The Fed is able to influence the inflation rate and the money growth rate and absent any pressures that the Fed finds impossible to resist, we can expect that the Fed will do a good job of keeping inflation in check. That doesn't mean zero inflation. It means an inflation rate running at around 2 percent per year.

Will the Fed face irresistible pressure to create money too rapidly or too slowly? It is unlikely that pressure will force the Fed to shrink the quantity of money and generate deflation.

But there could be pressure in the opposite direction. Inflation is a tax. If the Fed creates money by buying government bonds, the government gets revenue just like it gets tax revenue.

With a large and long-lasting federal budget deficit, Congress might be tempted to lean on the Fed to keep interest rates down. If Congress were successful in such a move, the result would be money creation at too rapid a pace and an outbreak of inflation.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 28.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 28.2

Explain how in the long run, the quantity of money determines the price level and money growth brings inflation.

Practice Problems

In 1999, the Canadian economy was at full employment. Real GDP was $886 billion, the nominal interest rate was around 6 percent a year, the inflation rate was 2 percent a year, the price level was 1.1, and the velocity of circulation was constant at 10. Use this data to work Problems **1** and **2**.

1. Calculate the real interest rate. If the real interest rate remains unchanged when the inflation rate increases to 4 percent a year and then remains constant, explain how the nominal interest rate changes in the long run.
2. What was the quantity of money in Canada?
3. If the quantity of money grows at 10 percent a year, velocity of circulation is constant, and potential GDP grows at 3 percent a year, what is the inflation rate in the long run?

In the News

"The U.S. can pay any debt because we can always print more money."
Source: Alan Greenspan, *Meet the Press*, August 7, 2011

Explain why "always printing money" will "pay off the debt."

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The real interest rate equals the nominal interest rate minus the inflation rate. That is, the real interest rate equals 6 percent a year minus 2 percent a year, which equals 4 percent a year. If inflation increases to 4 percent a year, then the nominal interest rate rises from 6 percent a year to 8 percent a year.
2. The quantity of money was $97.5 billion.
   Velocity of circulation (V) = Nominal GDP ($P \times Y$) ÷ Quantity of money (M).
   Rewrite this equation as: $M = (P \times Y) \div V$.
   $(P \times Y) = 1.1 \times \$886$ billion, or $975 billion, so $M = \$975$ billion ÷ 10, or $97.5 billion.
3. With velocity constant, velocity growth is zero. So the inflation rate in the long run equals the money growth rate minus the real GDP growth rate, which is 10 percent a year minus 3 percent a year, or 7 percent a year.

Solution to In the News

"Printing money" means the Fed increases the quantity of money by buying government bonds. This transaction doesn't "pay off the debt." It merely transfers the debt to the Fed. But at full employment and a given velocity of circulation, when the Fed increases the quantity of money, the price level rises (the quantity theory of money). The higher price level means that the real value of the government debt falls. That is how "printing money" ends up "paying off the debt."

28.3 THE COST OF INFLATION

Inflation decreases potential GDP, slows economic growth, and consumes leisure time. These outcomes occur for four reasons that we classify as the four costs of inflation:

- Tax costs
- Shoe-leather costs
- Confusion costs
- Uncertainty costs

Tax Costs

We've seen that inflation occurs when the quantity of money grows more rapidly than real GDP. But why would we ever want to make this happen? Why don't we keep the quantity of money growing at the same pace as real GDP grows? One part of the answer is that the government gets revenue from inflation.

Inflation Is a Tax

A government can pay its expenses with newly created money. But the things a government buys with this money aren't free. They are paid for by people and businesses in proportion to the amount of money they hold—by a tax on money holding that we call the inflation tax.

When the government spends newly created money, the quantity of money increases and, as predicted by the quantity theory, the price level rises. The inflation rate equals the growth rate of the quantity of money (other things remaining the same).

To see how the inflation tax gets paid, suppose that the Coca-Cola Company is holding $110,000 in money. The annual inflation rate is 10 percent, and the price level rises from 1.0 to 1.1. At the end of the year, Coca-Cola's money will buy only $100,000 of goods and services ($110,000 ÷ 1.1 = $100,000). The firm has lost $10,000—it has "paid" a $10,000 inflation tax.

Governments in today's world don't create new money by printing it. Money gets created when the central bank buys government bonds. In the United States, the Fed doesn't buy bonds directly from the government: it buys them in open market operations. When the Fed buys bonds, the monetary base increases and through the money multiplier, the quantity of money increases. The Fed pays its profits to the government, so the government ends up paying no interest on its bonds held by the Fed. By this process, the government prints money.

Inflation, Saving, and Investment

The income tax on interest income drives a wedge between the before-tax interest rate paid by borrowers and the after-tax interest rate received by lenders. A rise in the income tax rate increases the before-tax interest rate and decreases the after-tax interest rate. The increase in the before-tax interest rate decreases borrowing and investment, and the decrease in the after-tax interest rate decreases lending and saving.

An increase in the inflation rate increases the true tax rate on interest income, and strengthens the effect that we have just described. To see why, let's consider an example.

Suppose that the real interest rate is 4 percent a year and the income tax rate is 50 percent. With no inflation, the nominal interest rate is also 4 percent a year and the real after-tax interest rate is 2 percent a year (50 percent of 4 percent).

Now suppose the inflation rate rises to 4 percent a year, so the nominal interest rate rises to 8 percent a year. The after-tax nominal interest rate rises to 4 percent a year (50 percent of 8 percent). Subtract the 4 percent inflation rate from this amount, and you see that the after-tax real interest rate is zero! The true income tax rate has increased to 100 percent.

The fall in the after-tax real interest rate weakens the incentive to lend and save and the rise in the before-tax interest rate weakens the incentive to borrow and invest. With a fall in saving and investment, the rates of capital accumulation and real GDP growth slow down.

Shoe-Leather Costs

The "shoe-leather costs" of inflation are costs that arise from an increase in the velocity of circulation of money and an increase in the amount of running around that people do to try to avoid incurring losses from the falling value of money.

When money loses value at a rapid anticipated rate, it does not function well as a store of value and people try to avoid holding it. They spend their incomes as soon as they receive them, and firms pay out incomes—wages and dividends—as soon as they receive revenue from their sales. The velocity of circulation increases.

During the 1990s when inflation in Brazil was around 80 percent a year, people would end a taxi ride at the ATM closest to their destination, get some cash, pay the driver, and finish their journey on foot. The driver would deposit the cash in his bank account before looking for the next customer.

During the 1920s when inflation in Germany exceeded 50 percent a month—hyperinflation—wages were paid and spent twice in a single day!

Imagine the inconvenience of spending most of your time figuring out how to keep your money holdings close to zero.

One way of keeping money holdings low is to find other means of payment such as tokens, commodities, or even barter. All of these are less efficient than money as a means of payment. For example, in Israel during the 1980s, when inflation reached 1,000 percent a year, the U.S. dollar started to replace the increasingly worthless shekel. Consequently, people had to keep track of the exchange rate between the shekel and the dollar hour by hour and had to engage in many additional and costly transactions in the foreign exchange market.

Confusion Costs

We make economic decisions by comparing marginal cost and marginal benefit. Marginal cost is a real cost—an opportunity forgone. Marginal benefit is a real benefit—a willingness to forgo an opportunity. Although costs and benefits are real, we use money as our unit of account and standard of value to calculate them. Money is our measuring rod of value. Borrowers and lenders, workers and employers, all make agreements in terms of money. Inflation makes the value of money change, so it changes the units on our measuring rod.

Does it matter that our units of value keep changing? Some economists think it matters a lot. Others think it matters only a little.

Economists who think it matters a lot point to the obvious benefits of stable units of measurement in other areas of life. For example, suppose that we had not invented an accurate time-keeping technology and clocks and watches gained 5 to

15 minutes a day. Imagine the hassle you would have arriving at class on time or catching the start of the ball game. For another example, suppose that a tailor used an elastic tape measure. You would end up with a jacket that was either too tight or too loose, depending on how tightly the tape was stretched.

For a third example, recall the crash of the Mars Climate Orbiter.

> "Mars Climate Orbiter... failed to achieve Mars orbit because of a navigation error.... Spacecraft operating data needed for navigation were provided... in English units rather than the specified metric units. This was the direct cause of the failure." (Mars Program Independent Assessment Team Summary Report, March 14, 2000)

If rocket scientists can't make correct calculations that use just two units of measurement, what chance do ordinary people and business decision makers have of making correct calculations that involve money when its value keeps changing?

These examples of confusion and error that can arise from units of measurement don't automatically mean that a changing value of money is a big problem. But they raise the possibility that it might be.

Uncertainty Costs

A high inflation rate brings increased uncertainty about the long-term inflation rate. Will inflation remain high for a long time or will price stability be restored? This increased uncertainty makes long-term planning difficult and gives people a shorter-term focus. Investment falls, and so the economic growth rate slows.

But this increased uncertainty also misallocates resources. Instead of concentrating on the activities at which they have a comparative advantage, people find it more profitable to search for ways of avoiding the losses that inflation inflicts. As a result, inventive talent that might otherwise work on productive innovations works on finding ways of profiting from the inflation instead.

Uncertainty about inflation makes the economy behave a bit like a casino in which some people gain and some lose and no one can predict where the gains and losses will fall. Gains and losses occur because of unpredictable changes in the value of money. In a period of rapid, unpredictable inflation, resources get diverted from productive activities to forecasting inflation. It becomes more profitable to forecast the inflation rate correctly than to invent a new product. Doctors, lawyers, accountants, farmers—just about everyone—can make themselves better off, not by specializing in the profession for which they have been trained but by spending more of their time dabbling as amateur economists and inflation forecasters and managing their investment portfolios.

From a social perspective, this diversion of talent resulting from uncertainty about inflation is like throwing scarce resources onto the garbage heap. This waste of resources is a cost of inflation.

How Big Is the Cost of Inflation?

The cost of inflation depends on its rate and its predictability. The higher the inflation rate, the greater is the cost. And the more unpredictable the inflation rate, the greater is the cost. Peter Howitt of Brown University, building on work by Robert Barro of Harvard University, has estimated that if inflation is lowered from 3 percent a year to zero, the growth rate of real GDP will rise by between 0.06 and 0.09 percentage points a year. These numbers might seem small, but they are growth

rates. After 30 years, real GDP would be 2.3 percent higher and the accumulated value of all the additional future output would be worth 85 percent of current GDP, or $11.7 trillion!

In hyperinflation, the costs are much greater. Hyperinflation is rare, but there have been some spectacular examples of it. Several European countries experienced hyperinflation during the 1920s after World War I and again during the 1940s after World War II. In these examples the costs of inflation were enormous.

Hyperinflation is more than just a historical curiosity. It has occurred in the recent past. In 1994, the African nation of Zaire had a hyperinflation that peaked at a monthly inflation rate of 76 percent. Also in 1994, Brazil almost reached the hyperinflation stratosphere with a monthly inflation rate of 40 percent. A cup of coffee that cost 15 cruzeiros in 1980 cost 22 billion cruzeiros in 1994. In 1989 to 1994, Russia experienced a near hyperinflation.

The most spectacular recent hyperinflation was in Zimbabwe, which peaked at 231,150,888.87 percent per year. At that point, the monetary system collapsed, the Zimbabwe dollar was taken out of circulation and replaced by the U.S. dollar, and economic life was at a near standstill.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 28.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 28.3

Identify the costs of inflation and the benefits of a stable value of money.

Practice Problems

1. Ben has $1,000 in his savings account and the bank pays an interest rate of 5 percent a year. The inflation rate is 3 percent a year. The government taxes the interest that Ben earns on his deposit at 20 percent. Calculate the after-tax nominal interest rate and the after-tax real interest rate that Ben earns.
2. **Inflation-adjusted savings bonds hit 0% rate**

   Inflation-adjusted savings bonds purchased from May through October 2009 will earn 0% for the first six months. The fixed interest rate on these bonds is 0.1% and over the previous 6 months, inflation fell at an annual rate of 5.56%. The minimum interest rate on savings bonds is set at 0%.

   Source: *USA Today*, May 5, 2009

   Are these savings bonds a better deal than cash under the mattress?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Ben's interest income equals 5 percent of $1,000, which is $50. The government takes $10 of his $50 of interest in tax, so the interest income Ben earns after tax is $40. The after-tax nominal interest rate is ($40 ÷ $1,000) × 100, which equals 4 percent a year.

   The after-tax real interest rate equals the after-tax nominal interest rate minus the inflation rate. The after-tax nominal interest rate is 4 percent a year. So the after-tax real interest rate equals 4 percent a year minus the inflation rate of 3 percent a year, which is 1 percent a year.
2. At 0 percent interest rate, these bonds are just as good a deal as cash under the mattress, but if inflation starts to rise as the economy recovers from recession, the nominal interest rate will exceed 0.1 percent but the real interest rate will be certain and equal 0.1 percent a year—a better deal than cash.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain what determines the demand for money and how the demand for money and the supply of money determine the *nominal* interest rate.

- The demand for money is the relationship between the quantity of money demanded and the nominal interest rate, other things remaining the same—the higher the nominal interest rate, other things remaining the same, the smaller is the quantity of money demanded.
- Increases in real GDP increase the demand for money. Some advances in financial technology increase the demand for money, and some advances decrease it.
- Each day, the price level, real GDP, and financial technology are given and money market equilibrium determines the nominal interest rate.
- To lower the interest rate, the Fed increases the supply of money. To raise the interest rate, the Fed decreases the supply of money.

2 Explain how in the long run, the quantity of money determines the price level and money growth brings inflation.

- In the long run, real GDP equals potential GDP and the real interest rate is the level that makes the quantity of loanable funds demanded equal the quantity of loanable funds supplied in the global financial market.
- The nominal interest rate in the long run equals the equilibrium real interest rate plus the inflation rate.
- Money market equilibrium in the long run determines the price level.
- An increase in the quantity of money, other things remaining the same, increases the price level by the same percentage.
- The inflation rate in the long run equals the growth rate of the quantity of money minus the growth rate of potential GDP.
- The equation of exchange and the velocity of circulation provide an alternative way of viewing the relationship between the quantity of money and the price level (and money growth and inflation).

3 Identify the costs of inflation and the benefits of a stable value of money.

- Inflation has four costs: tax costs, shoe-leather costs, confusion costs, and uncertainty costs.
- The higher the inflation rate, the greater are these four costs.

Key Terms

Demand for money, 718
Equation of exchange, 729
Hyperinflation, 732
Quantity of money demanded, 717
Quantity theory of money, 728
Supply of money, 720
Velocity of circulation, 728

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 28 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Draw a graph to illustrate the demand for money curve. On the graph show the effect of an increase in real GDP and the effect of an increase in the number of families that have a credit card.
2. The Fed decreases the quantity of money. Explain the effects of this action in the short run on the quantity of money demanded and the nominal interest rate.
3. The Fed conducts an open market purchase of securities. (Hint: Check back with Chapter 27 if you need a reminder about the effects of an open market operation.) Explain the effects of this action on the nominal interest rate in the short run and the value of money in the long run.

In 2007, the United States was at full employment. The quantity of money was growing at 6.4 percent a year, the nominal interest rate was 4.4 percent a year, real GDP grew at 1.9 percent a year, and the inflation rate was 2.9 percent a year. Use this information to work Problems **4** and **5**.

4. Calculate the real interest rate.
5. Was the velocity of circulation constant? (Hint: Use the quantity theory of money.) If velocity of circulation was not constant, how did it change and why might it have changed?
6. If the quantity of money is $3 trillion, real GDP is $10 trillion, the price level is 0.9, the real interest rate is 2 percent a year, and the nominal interest rate is 7 percent a year, calculate the velocity of circulation, the value of $M \times V$, and nominal GDP.
7. If the velocity of circulation is growing at 1 percent a year, the real interest rate is 2 percent a year, the nominal interest rate is 7 percent a year, and the growth rate of real GDP is 3 percent a year, calculate the inflation rate, the growth rate of money, and the growth rate of nominal GDP.
8. Suppose that the government passes a new law that sets a limit on the interest rate that credit card companies can charge on overdue balances. As a result, the nominal interest rate charged by credit card companies falls from 15 percent a year to 7 percent a year. If the average income tax rate is 30 percent, explain how the after-tax real interest rate on overdue credit card balances changes.

Zimbabwe inflation eases

Zimbabwe's inflation rate in July 2009 was reported at 1 percent a month. Last year, Zimbabwe's annual inflation rate was more than 231,000,000%, a kilo of tomatoes cost 61 billion Zimbabwe dollars, and the shelves in stores were almost empty. Now the Zimbabwean dollar has disappeared, the U.S. dollar is king, and the shelves and aisles of stores are full. Although no annual inflation rate is reported, the indication is that Zimbabwe is recovering from hyperinflation.

Source: BBCNews, September 16, 2009

9. What is hyperinflation? Compare inflation in Zimbabwe in 2009 with that in Germany in 1923. Why did Germany print money in 1923 and create hyperinflation? Why is Zimbabwe printing less money today?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Explain what causes inflation. Why is it easier to predict the decade-average inflation rate than the inflation rate in a single year?
2. If the Fed doubled the quantity of money and nothing else changed, what would happen to the price level in the short run and the long run? What would happen to the inflation rate?
3. Suppose that banks launch an aggressive marketing campaign to get everyone to use debit cards for every conceivable transaction. They offer prizes to new debit card holders and introduce a charge on using a credit card. How would the demand for money and the nominal interest rate change?
4. Draw a graph of the money market to illustrate equilibrium in the short run. If the growth rate of the quantity of money increases, explain what happens to the real interest rate and the nominal interest rate in the short run.
5. The Fed conducts an open market sale of securities. Explain the effects of this action in the short run on the nominal interest rate and in the long run on the value of money and the price level.
6. What is the quantity theory of money? Define the velocity of circulation and explain how it is measured.
7. If the velocity of circulation is constant, real GDP is growing at 3 percent a year, the real interest rate is 2 percent a year, and the nominal interest rate is 7 percent a year, calculate the inflation rate, the growth rate of money, and the growth rate of nominal GDP.
8. Sara has $200 in currency and $2,000 in a bank account on which the bank pays no interest. The inflation rate is 2 percent a year. Calculate the amount of inflation tax that Sara pays in a year.

Use the following information to work Problems 9 to 12.

The Fed's $2.2 trillion fire hose

The Fed threw a lot of money at the financial crisis in 2008 to unfreeze credit markets and encourage economic activity. As part of its effort to keep the interest rate low, the Fed purchased government bonds worth $300 billion during 2009. By October, the Fed held $770 billion in government securities, nearly double its pre-crisis total. Before the crisis, the Fed held mainly government securities, which it used to control the quantity of money in the economy. Now government securities make up just 35% of the Fed's balance sheet.

Source: CNN Money, October 9, 2009

9. If government securities make up just 35 percent of the Fed's assets, calculate the Fed's total assets. What effect did the Fed's purchase of $300 billion of government bonds have on the Fed's total liabilities?
10. If the Fed purchased the government securities on the open market, explain why the purchase of $300 billion of government securities would influence the interest rate.
11. As the Fed purchased $300 billion of government securities, did the price of government securities fall or rise? Explain your answer.
12. Explain how the Fed uses its government securities to control the nominal interest rate.

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 28 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Holding money provides a benefit _____.
   A. because it is a means of payment
   B. because its opportunity cost is low
   C. which is constant no matter how much money is held
   D. because most money is in bank deposits
2. The opportunity cost of holding money _____.
   A. is determined by the inflation rate
   B. is zero because money earns no interest
   C. equals the nominal interest rate on bonds
   D. equals the real interest rate on bonds
3. The quantity of money demanded increases if _____.
   A. the supply of money increases
   B. the nominal interest rate falls
   C. banks increase the interest rate on deposits
   D. the price of a bond falls
4. If the Fed increases the quantity of money, people will be holding _____.
   A. too much money, so they buy bonds and the interest rate rises
   B. too much money, so they buy bonds and the interest rate falls
   C. the quantity of money they demand and banks will hold more money
   D. more money and will increase their demand for money
5. In the long run, money market equilibrium determines the _____.
   A. real interest rate
   B. price level
   C. nominal interest rate
   D. economic growth rate
6. If the quantity theory of money is correct and other things remain the same, an increase in the quantity of money increases _____.
   A. nominal GDP and the velocity of circulation
   B. the price level and potential GDP
   C. real GDP
   D. nominal GDP and the price level
7. In the long run with a constant velocity of circulation, the inflation rate _____.
   A. is constant and equals the money growth rate
   B. equals the money growth rate minus the growth rate of real GDP
   C. equals the growth rate of real GDP minus the growth rate of money
   D. is positive if the economic growth rate is positive
8. The costs of inflation do *not* include _____.
   A. the cost of running around to compare prices at different outlets
   B. the increased opportunity cost of holding money
   C. the tax on money held by individuals and businesses
   D. an increase in saving and investment

Why did the U.S. economy go into recession in 2008?

29

Aggregate Supply and Aggregate Demand

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Define and explain the influences on aggregate supply.
2. Define and explain the influences on aggregate demand.
3. Explain how trends and fluctuations in aggregate demand and aggregate supply bring economic growth, inflation, and the business cycle.

29.1 AGGREGATE SUPPLY

The purpose of the aggregate supply–aggregate demand model is to explain how real GDP and the price level are determined. The model uses similar ideas to those that you encountered in Chapter 4 where you learned how the quantity and price are determined in a competitive market. But the *aggregate* supply–*aggregate* demand model (*AS-AD* model) isn't just an application of the competitive market model. Some differences arise because the *AS-AD* model is a model of an imaginary market for the total of all the final goods and services that make up real GDP. The quantity in this "market" is real GDP and the price is the price level measured by the GDP price index.

The *quantity of real GDP supplied* is the total amount of final goods and services that firms in the United States plan to produce and it depends on the quantities of

- Labor employed
- Capital, human capital, and the state of technology
- Land and natural resources
- Entrepreneurial talent

You saw in Chapter 24 that at full employment, real GDP equals *potential GDP*. The quantities of land, capital and human capital, the state of technology, and the amount of entrepreneurial talent are fixed. Labor market equilibrium determines the quantity of labor employed, which is equal to the quantity of labor demanded and the quantity of labor supplied at the equilibrium real wage rate.

Over the business cycle, real GDP fluctuates around potential GDP because the quantity of labor employed fluctuates around its full employment level. The aggregate supply–aggregate demand model explains these fluctuations.

We begin on the supply side with the basics of aggregate supply.

Aggregate Supply Basics

Aggregate supply
The relationship between the quantity of real GDP supplied and the price level when all other influences on production plans remain the same.

Aggregate supply is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP supplied and the price level when all other influences on production plans remain the same. This relationship can be described as follows:

> **Other things remaining the same, the higher the price level, the greater is the quantity of real GDP supplied, and the lower the price level, the smaller is the quantity of real GDP supplied.**

Figure 29.1 illustrates aggregate supply as an aggregate supply schedule and aggregate supply curve. The aggregate supply schedule lists the quantities of real GDP supplied at each price level, and the upward-sloping *AS* curve graphs these points.

The figure also shows potential GDP: $13 trillion in the figure. When the price level is 110, the quantity of real GDP supplied is $13 trillion, which equals potential GDP (at point *C* on the *AS* curve).

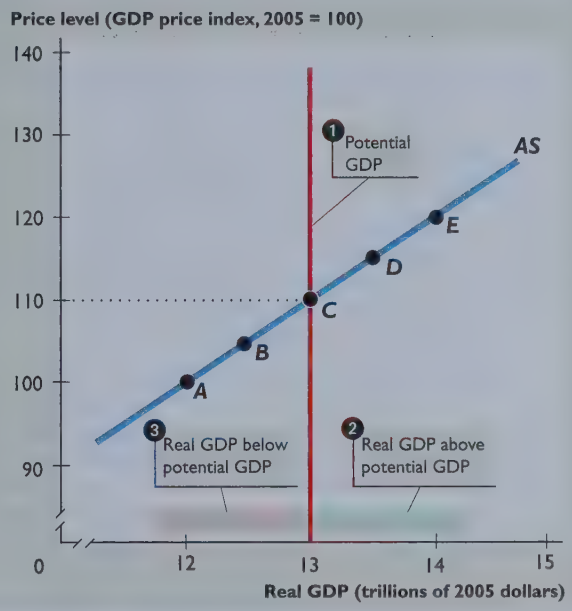
Along the aggregate supply curve, the price level is the only influence on production plans that changes. A rise in the price level brings an increase in the quantity of real GDP supplied and a movement up along the aggregate supply curve; a fall in the price level brings a decrease in the quantity of real GDP supplied and a movement down along the aggregate supply curve.

FIGURE 29.1

Aggregate Supply Schedule and Aggregate Supply Curve

MyEconLab Animation

	Price level (GDP price index, 2005 = 100)	Quantity of real GDP supplied (trillions of 2005 dollars)
E	120	14.0
D	115	13.5
C	110	13.0
B	105	12.5
A	100	12.0



The aggregate supply schedule and aggregate supply curve, *AS*, show the relationship between the quantity of real GDP supplied and the price level when all other influences on production plans remain the same. Each point *A* through *E* on the *AS* curve corresponds to the row identified by the same letter in the schedule.

1. Potential GDP is $13 trillion, and when the price level is 110, real GDP equals potential GDP.
2. If the price level is above 110, real GDP exceeds potential GDP.
3. If the price level is below 110, real GDP is less than potential GDP.

Among the other influences on production plans that remain constant along the *AS* curve are

- The money wage rate
- The money prices of other resources

In contrast, along the potential GDP line, when the price level changes, the money wage rate and the money prices of other resources change by the same percentage as the change in the price level to keep the real wage rate (and other real prices) at the full-employment equilibrium level.

Why the *AS* Curve Slopes Upward

Why does the quantity of real GDP supplied increase when the price level rises and decrease when the price level falls? The answer is that a movement along the *AS* curve brings a change in the real wage rate (and changes in the real cost of other resources whose money prices are fixed). If the price level rises, the real wage rate falls, and if the price level falls, the real wage rate rises. When the real wage rate changes, firms change the quantity of labor employed and the level of production.

Think about a concrete example. A ketchup producer has a contract with its workers to pay them $20 an hour. The firm sells ketchup for $1 a bottle. The real wage rate of a ketchup bottling worker is 20 bottles of ketchup. That is, the firm

must sell 20 bottles of ketchup to buy one hour of labor. Now suppose the price of ketchup falls to 50 cents a bottle. The real wage rate of a bottling worker has increased to 40 bottles—the firm must now sell 40 bottles of ketchup to buy one hour of labor.

If the price of a bottle of ketchup increased, the real wage rate of a bottling worker would fall. For example, if the price increased to $2 a bottle, the real wage rate would be 10 bottles per worker—the firm needs to sell only 10 bottles of ketchup to buy one hour of labor.

Firms respond to a change in the real wage rate by changing the quantity of labor employed and the quantity produced. For the economy as a whole, employment and real GDP change. There are three ways in which these changes occur:

- Firms change their output rate.
- Firms shut down temporarily or restart production.
- Firms go out of business or start up in business.

Change in Output Rate

To change its output rate, a firm must change the quantity of labor that it employs. It is profitable to hire more labor if the additional labor costs less than the revenue it generates. If the price level rises and the money wage rate doesn't change, an extra hour of labor that was previously unprofitable becomes profitable. So when the price level rises and the money wage rate doesn't change, the quantity of labor demanded and production increase. If the price level falls and the money wage rate doesn't change, an hour of labor that was previously profitable becomes unprofitable. So when the price level falls and the money wage rate doesn't change, the quantity of labor demanded and production decrease.

Temporary Shutdowns and Restarts

A firm that is incurring a loss might foresee a profit in the future. Such a firm might decide to shut down temporarily and lay off its workers.

The price level relative to the money wage rate influences temporary shutdown decisions. If the price level rises relative to wages, fewer firms decide to shut down temporarily; so more firms operate and the quantity of real GDP supplied increases. If the price level falls relative to wages, a larger number of firms find that they cannot earn enough revenue to pay the wage bill and so temporarily shut down. The quantity of real GDP supplied decreases.

Business Failure and Startup

People create businesses in the hope of earning a profit. When profits are squeezed or when losses arise, more firms fail, fewer new firms start up, and the number of firms decreases. When profits are generally high, fewer firms fail, more firms start up, and the number of firms increases.

The price level relative to the money wage rate influences the number of firms in business. If the price level rises relative to wages, profits increase, the number of firms in business increases, and the quantity of real GDP supplied increases. If the price level falls relative to wages, profits fall, the number of firms in business decreases, and the quantity of real GDP supplied decreases.

In a severe recession, business failure can be contagious. The failure of one firm puts pressure on both its suppliers and its customers and can bring a flood of failures and a large decrease in the quantity of real GDP supplied.

Changes in Aggregate Supply

Aggregate supply changes when any influence on production plans other than the price level changes. In particular, aggregate supply changes when

- Potential GDP changes.
- The money wage rate changes.
- The money prices of other resources change.

Change in Potential GDP

Anything that changes potential GDP changes aggregate supply and shifts the aggregate supply curve. Figure 29.2 illustrates such a shift. You can think of point C as an anchor point. The *AS* curve and potential GDP line are anchored at this point, and when potential GDP changes, aggregate supply changes along with it. When potential GDP increases from $13 trillion to $14 trillion, point C shifts to point C', and the *AS* curve and potential GDP line shift rightward together. The *AS* curve shifts from AS_0 to AS_1.

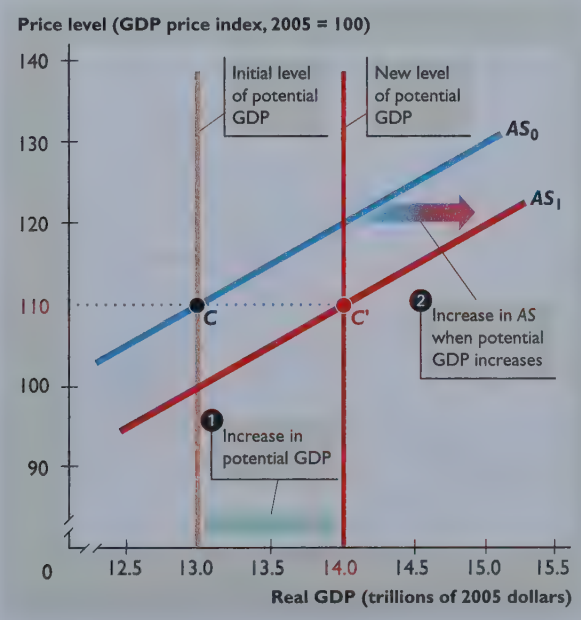
Change in Money Wage Rate

A change in the money wage rate changes aggregate supply because it changes firms' costs. The higher the money wage rate, the higher are firms' costs and the smaller is the quantity that firms are willing to supply at each price level. So an increase in the money wage rate decreases aggregate supply.

FIGURE 29.2

An Increase in Potential GDP

MyEconLab Animation



1. An increase in potential GDP increases aggregate supply.
2. When potential GDP increases from $13 trillion to $14 trillion, the aggregate supply curve shifts rightward from AS_0 to AS_1.

Suppose that the money wage rate is $33 an hour and the price level is 110. Then the real wage rate is $30 an hour ($33 × 100 ÷ 110 = $30)—see Chapter 23, p. 600. If the full-employment equilibrium real wage rate is $30 an hour, the economy is at full employment and real GDP equals potential GDP. In Figure 29.3, the economy is at point *C* on the aggregate supply curve AS_0. The money wage rate is $33 an hour at all points on AS_0.

Now suppose the money wage rate rises to $36 an hour but the full-employment equilibrium real wage rate remains at $30 an hour. Real GDP now equals potential GDP when the price level is 120, at point *D* on the aggregate supply curve AS_2. (If the money wage rate is $36 an hour and the price level is 120, the real wage rate is $36 × 100 ÷ 120 = $30 an hour.) The money wage rate is $36 an hour at all points on AS_2. The rise in the money wage rate *decreases* aggregate supply and shifts the aggregate supply curve leftward from AS_0 to AS_2.

A change in the money wage rate does not change potential GDP. The reason is that potential GDP depends only on the economy's real ability to produce and on the full-employment quantity of labor, which occurs at the equilibrium *real* wage rate. The equilibrium real wage rate can occur at any money wage rate.

Change in Money Prices of Other Resources

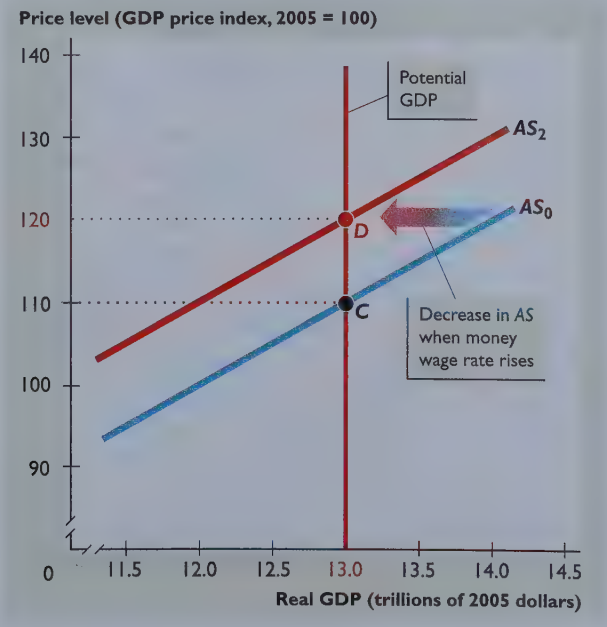
A change in the money prices of other resources has a similar effect on firms' production plans to a change in the money wage rate. It changes firms' costs. At each price level, firms' real costs change and the quantity that firms are willing to supply changes so aggregate supply changes.

FIGURE 29.3

A Change in the Money Wage Rate

MyEconLab Animation

A rise in the money wage rate decreases aggregate supply. The aggregate supply curve shifts leftward from AS_0 to AS_2. A rise in the money wage rate does not change potential GDP.



CHECKPOINT 29.1

Define and explain the influences on aggregate supply.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 29.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problem

1. Explain the influence of each of the events in List 1 on the quantity of real GDP supplied and aggregate supply in India and use a graph to illustrate.

LIST 1

- Fuel prices rise.
- U.S. firms move their IT and data functions to India.
- Wal-Mart and Starbucks open in India.
- Universities in India increase the number of engineering graduates.
- The money wage rate in India rises.
- The price level in India rises.

In the News

Minimum wage to rise in eight states

Colorado, Montana, Ohio, Washington, and Oregon recently announced their 2012 minimum wages, which contain rises ranging from 28 cents to 37 cents per hour. This translates into annual raises of between $582 and $770 for full-time workers.

Source: CNN Money, October 3, 2011

Explain how the rise in the minimum wage will influence aggregate supply.

Solution to Practice Problem

1. As fuel prices rise, the quantity of real GDP supplied at the current price level decreases. The *AS* curve shifts leftward (Figure 1).

   As U.S. firm move their IT and data functions to India, real GDP supplied at the current price level increases. The *AS* curve shifts rightward (Figure 2).

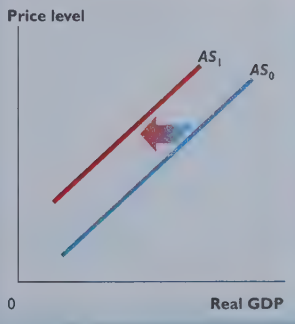
   As Wal-Mart and Starbucks open, the quantity of real GDP supplied at the current price level increases. The *AS* curve shifts rightward (Figure 2).

   With more graduates, the number of skilled workers increases, and production increases at the current price level. The *AS* curve shifts rightward (Figure 2).

   As the money wage rate rises, firms' costs increase and the quantity of real GDP supplied at the current price level decreases. The *AS* curve shifts leftward (Figure 1).

   As the price level increases, other things remaining the same, businesses become more profitable and increase the quantity of real GDP supplied along the *AS* curve (Figure 3). The *AS* curve does not shift.

FIGURE 1



Solution to In the News

The rise in the money wage rate at the current price level increases the real wage rate and decreases aggregate supply. If the rise in the minimum wage increases the natural unemployment rate, potential GDP decreases and aggregate supply decreases further.

FIGURE 2

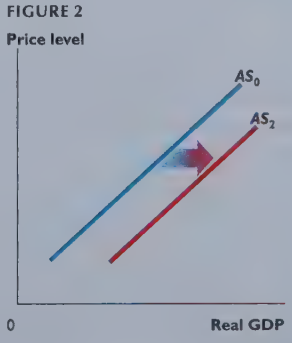
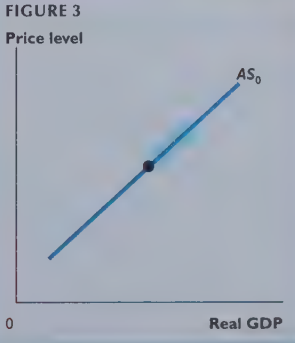


FIGURE 3



29.2 AGGREGATE DEMAND

The *quantity of real GDP demanded* (Y) is the total amount of final goods and services produced in the United States that people, businesses, governments, and foreigners plan to buy. This quantity is the sum of the real consumption expenditure (C), investment (I), government expenditure on goods and services (G), and exports (X) minus imports (M). That is,

$$Y = C + I + G + X - M.$$

Many factors influence expenditure plans. To study aggregate demand, we divide those factors into two parts: the price level and everything else. We'll first consider the influence of the price level on expenditure plans and then consider the other influences.

Aggregate Demand Basics

Aggregate demand
The relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same.

Aggregate demand is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same. This relationship can be described as follows:

> **Other things remaining the same, the higher the price level, the smaller is the quantity of real GDP demanded; and the lower the price level, the greater is the quantity of real GDP demanded.**

Figure 29.4 illustrates aggregate demand by using an aggregate demand schedule and aggregate demand curve. The aggregate demand schedule lists the quantities of real GDP demanded at each price level, and the downward-sloping *AD* curve graphs these points.

Along the aggregate demand curve, the only influence on expenditure plans that changes is the price level. A rise in the price level decreases the quantity of real GDP demanded and brings a movement up along the aggregate demand curve; a fall in the price level increases the quantity of real GDP demanded and brings a movement down along the aggregate demand curve.

The price level influences the quantity of real GDP demanded because a change in the price level brings a change in

- The buying power of money
- The real interest rate
- The real prices of exports and imports

The Buying Power of Money

A rise in the price level lowers the buying power of money and decreases the quantity of real GDP demanded. To see why, think about the buying plans in two economies—Russia and Japan—where the price level has changed a lot in recent years.

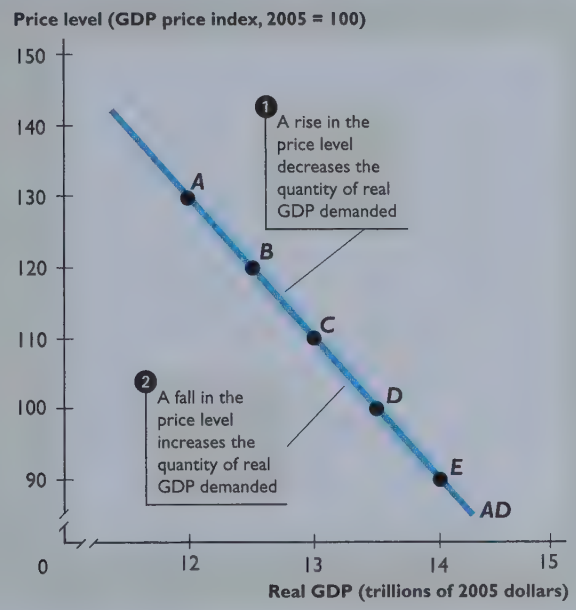
Anna lives in Moscow, Russia. She has worked hard all summer and has saved 20,000 rubles (the ruble is the currency of Russia), which she plans to spend attending graduate school when she has earned her economics degree. So Anna's money holding is 20,000 rubles. Anna has a part-time job, and her income from this job pays her expenses. The price level in Russia rises by 100 percent. Anna needs 40,000 rubles to buy what 20,000 rubles once bought. To make up some of the fall in the buying power of her money, Anna slashes her spending.

FIGURE 29.4

Aggregate Demand Schedule and Aggregate Demand Curve

MyEconLab Animation

	Price level (GDP price index, 2005 = 100)	Quantity of real GDP demanded (trillions of 2005 dollars)
A	130	12.0
B	120	12.5
C	110	13.0
D	100	13.5
E	90	14.0



The aggregate demand schedule and aggregate demand curve, *AD*, show the relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same. Each point *A* through *E* on the *AD* curve corresponds to the row identified by the same letter in the schedule.

The quantity of real GDP demanded

1. decreases when the price level rises and
2. increases when the price level falls.

Similarly, a fall in the price level, other things remaining the same, brings an increase in the quantity of real GDP demanded. To see why, think about the buying plans of Mika, who lives in Tokyo, Japan. She too has worked hard all summer and has saved 200,000 yen (the yen is the currency of Japan), which she plans to spend attending school next year. The price level in Japan falls by 10 percent; now Mika needs only 180,000 yen to buy what 200,000 yen once bought. With a rise in what her money buys, Mika decides to buy a DVD player.

The Real Interest Rate

When the price level rises, the real interest rate rises. You saw in Chapter 28 (p. 719) that an increase in the price level increases the amount of money that people want to hold—increases the demand for money. When the demand for money increases, the nominal interest rate rises. In the short run, the inflation rate does not change, so a rise in the nominal interest rate brings a rise in the real interest rate. Faced with a higher real interest rate, businesses and people delay plans to buy new capital and consumer durable goods and they cut back on spending. As the price level rises, the quantity of real GDP demanded decreases.

Anna and Mika Again Think about Anna and Mika again. Both of them want to buy a computer. In Moscow, a rise in the price level increases the demand for money and raises the real interest rate. At a real interest rate of 5 percent a year,

Anna was willing to borrow to buy the new computer. But at a real interest rate of 10 percent a year, she decides that the payments would be too high, so she delays buying it. The rise in the price level decreases the quantity of real GDP demanded.

In Tokyo, a fall in the price level lowers the real interest rate. At a real interest rate of 5 percent a year, Mika was willing to borrow to buy a low-performance computer. But at a real interest rate of close to zero, she decides to buy a fancier computer that costs more: The fall in the price level increases the quantity of real GDP demanded.

The Real Prices of Exports and Imports

When the U.S. price level rises and other things remain the same, the prices in other countries do not change. So a rise in the U.S. price level makes U.S.-made goods and services more expensive relative to foreign-made goods and services. This change in real prices encourages people to spend less on U.S.-made items and more on foreign-made items. For example, if the U.S. price level rises relative to the foreign price level, foreigners buy fewer U.S.-made cars (U.S. exports decrease) and Americans buy more foreign-made cars (U.S. imports increase).

Anna's and Mika's Imports In Moscow, Anna is buying some new shoes. With a sharp rise in the Russian price level, the Russian-made shoes that she planned to buy are too expensive, so she buys a less expensive pair imported from Brazil. In Tokyo, Mika is buying a DVD player. With the fall in the Japanese price level, a Sony DVD player made in Japan looks like a better buy than one made in Taiwan.

In the long run, when the price level changes by more in one country than in other countries, the exchange rate changes. The exchange rate change neutralizes the price level change, so this international price effect on buying plans is a short-run effect only. But in the short run, it is a powerful effect.

Changes in Aggregate Demand

A change in any factor that influences expenditure plans other than the price level brings a change in aggregate demand. When aggregate demand increases, the aggregate demand curve shifts rightward, which Figure 29.5 illustrates as the rightward shift of the *AD* curve from AD_0 to AD_1. When aggregate demand decreases, the aggregate demand curve shifts leftward, which Figure 29.5 illustrates as the leftward shift of the *AD* curve from AD_0 to AD_2. The factors that change aggregate demand are

- Expectations about the future
- Fiscal policy and monetary policy
- The state of the world economy

Expectations

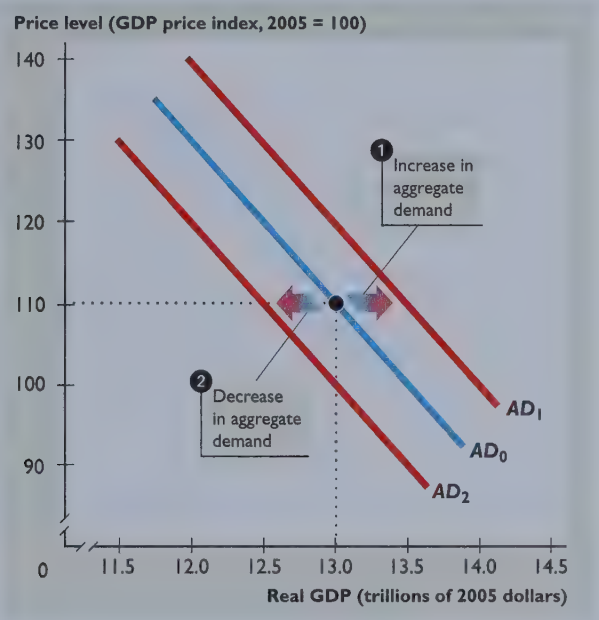
An increase in expected future income increases the amount of consumption goods (especially big-ticket items such as cars) that people plan to buy now. Aggregate demand increases. An increase in expected future inflation increases aggregate demand because people decide to buy more goods and services now before their prices rise. An increase in expected future profit increases the investment that firms plan to undertake now. Aggregate demand increases.

A decrease in expected future income, future inflation, or future profit has the opposite effect and decreases aggregate demand.

FIGURE 29.5

Change in Aggregate Demand

MyEconLab Animation



1 Aggregate demand *increases if*

- Expected future income, inflation, or profits increase.
- The government or the Federal Reserve takes steps that increase planned expenditure.
- The exchange rate falls or the global economy expands.

2 Aggregate demand *decreases if*

- Expected future income, inflation, or profits decrease.
- The government or the Federal Reserve takes steps that decrease planned expenditure.
- The exchange rate rises or the global economy contracts.

Fiscal Policy and Monetary Policy

We study the effects of policy actions on aggregate demand in Chapters 31 and 32. Here, we'll just briefly note that the government can use **fiscal policy**—changing taxes, transfer payments, and government expenditure on goods and services—to influence aggregate demand. The Federal Reserve can use **monetary policy**—changing the quantity of money and the interest rate—to influence aggregate demand. A tax cut or an increase in either transfer payments or government expenditure on goods and services increases aggregate demand. A cut in the interest rate or an increase in the quantity of money increases aggregate demand.

Fiscal policy
Changing taxes, transfer payments, and government expenditure on goods and services.

Monetary policy
Changing the quantity of money and the interest rate.

The World Economy

Two main influences that the world economy has on aggregate demand are the foreign exchange rate and foreign income. The foreign exchange rate is the amount of a foreign currency that you can buy with a U.S. dollar. Other things remaining the same, a rise in the foreign exchange rate decreases aggregate demand.

To see how the foreign exchange rate influences aggregate demand, suppose that $1 exchanges for 100 Japanese yen. A Fujitsu phone made in Japan costs 12,500 yen, and an equivalent Motorola phone made in the United States costs $110. In U.S. dollars, the Fujitsu phone costs $125, so people around the world buy the cheaper U.S. phone. Now suppose the exchange rate rises to 125 yen per dollar. At 125 yen per dollar, the Fujitsu phone costs $100 and is now cheaper than the Motorola phone. People will switch from the U.S. phone to the Japanese phone.

U.S. exports will decrease and U.S. imports will increase, so U.S. aggregate demand will decrease.

An increase in foreign income increases U.S. exports and increases U.S. aggregate demand. For example, an increase in income in Japan and Germany increases Japanese and German consumers' and producers' planned expenditures on U.S.-made goods and services.

The Aggregate Demand Multiplier

The aggregate demand multiplier is an effect that magnifies changes in expenditure plans and brings potentially large fluctuations in aggregate demand. When any influence on aggregate demand changes expenditure plans, the change in expenditure changes income; and the change in income induces a change in consumption expenditure. The increase in aggregate demand is the initial increase in expenditure plus the induced increase in consumption expenditure.

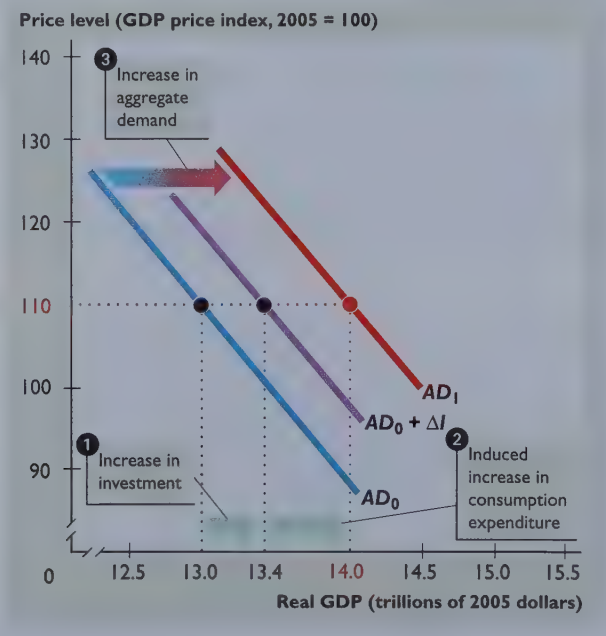
Suppose that an increase in expenditure induces an increase in consumption expenditure that is 1.5 times the initial increase in expenditure. Figure 29.6 illustrates the change in aggregate demand that occurs when investment increases by $0.4 trillion. Initially, the aggregate demand curve is AD_0. Investment then increases by $0.4 trillion ($\Delta I$) and the purple curve $AD_0 + \Delta I$ now describes aggregate spending plans at each price level. An increase in income induces an increase in consumption expenditure of $0.6 trillion, and the aggregate demand curve shifts rightward to AD_1. Chapter 30 (pp. 782–786) explains the expenditure multiplier in detail.

FIGURE 29.6

The Aggregate Demand Multiplier

MyEconLab Animation

1. An increase in investment increases aggregate demand and increases income.
2. The increase in income induces an increase in consumption expenditure, so 3 aggregate demand increases by more than the initial increase in investment.



CHECKPOINT 29.2

Define and explain the influences on aggregate demand.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 29.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Mexico trades with the United States. Explain the effect of each of the following events on Mexico's aggregate demand.
   - The government of Mexico cuts income taxes.
   - The United States experiences strong economic growth.
   - Mexico sets new environmental standards that require factories to upgrade their production facilities.
2. Explain the effect of each of the following events on the quantity of real GDP demanded and aggregate demand in Mexico.
   - Europe trades with Mexico and goes into a recession.
   - The price level in Mexico rises.
   - Mexico increases the quantity of money.

In the News

Durable goods orders fall, new-homes sales pick up

The BEA announced that demand for durable goods fell 5.3%, while new-home sales rose 4.2% in the second quarter of 2011. U.S. exports increased 3.6%.

Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, September 29, 2011

Explain how the items in the news clip influence U.S. aggregate demand.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. A tax cut increases disposable income, which increases consumption expenditure, which increases aggregate demand. Strong U.S. growth increases the demand for Mexican-produced goods, which increases Mexico's aggregate demand. As factories upgrade their facilities, investment increases. Aggregate demand increases. In each case, the *AD* curve shifts rightward (Figure 1).
2. A recession in Europe decreases the demand for Mexico's exports, so aggregate demand decreases. The *AD* curve shifts leftward (Figure 2). A rise in the price level decreases the quantity of real GDP demanded along the *AD* curve, but the *AD* curve does not shift (Figure 3). An increase in the quantity of money increases aggregate demand, and the *AD* curve shifts rightward (Figure 1).

FIGURE 1

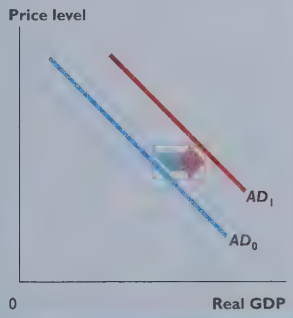


FIGURE 2

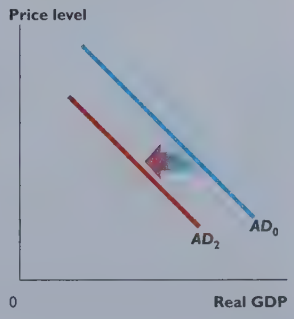
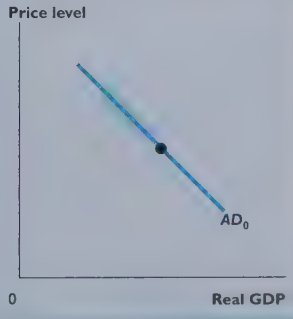


FIGURE 3



Solution to In the News

The purchase of durable goods and new homes is investment. A decrease in durable good sales decreases aggregate demand, while the increase in new-home sales increased aggregate demand. The rise in U.S. exports is an increase in the demand for U.S.-produced goods and services, so it increased U.S. aggregate demand.

29.3 EXPLAINING ECONOMIC TRENDS AND FLUCTUATIONS

The main purpose of the *AS-AD* model is to explain business cycle fluctuations in real GDP and the price level. But the model also helps our understanding of economic growth and inflation trends that we've studied in earlier chapters. The first step toward explaining economic trends and fluctuations is to combine aggregate supply and aggregate demand and determine macroeconomic equilibrium.

Macroeconomic Equilibrium

Macroeconomic equilibrium
When the quantity of real GDP demanded equals the quantity of real GDP supplied at the point of intersection of the *AD* curve and the *AS* curve.

Aggregate supply and aggregate demand determine real GDP and the price level. **Macroeconomic equilibrium** occurs when the quantity of real GDP demanded equals the quantity of real GDP supplied at the point of intersection of the *AD* curve and the *AS* curve. Figure 29.7 shows such an equilibrium at a price level of 110 and real GDP of $13 trillion.

To see why this position is the equilibrium, think about what happens if the price level is something other than 110. Suppose the price level is 100 and real GDP is $12 trillion (point *A* on the *AS* curve). The quantity of real GDP demanded exceeds $12 trillion, so firms are unable to meet the demand for their output. Inventories decrease, and customers clamor for goods and services. In this situation, firms increase production and raise prices. Eventually they can meet demand when real GDP is $13 trillion and the price level is 110.

Now suppose that the price level is 120 and that real GDP is $14 trillion (point *B* on the *AS* curve). The quantity of real GDP demanded is less than $14 trillion, so firms are unable to sell all their output. Unwanted inventories pile up. Firms cut production and lower prices until they can sell all their output, which occurs when real GDP is $13 trillion and the price level is 110.

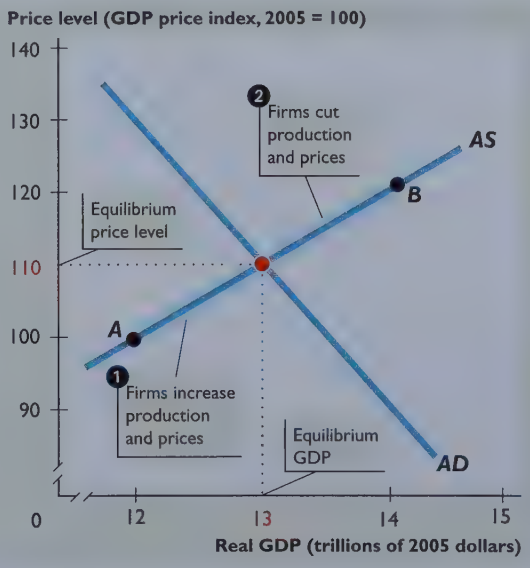
FIGURE 29.7
Macroeconomic Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation

Macroeconomic equilibrium occurs when the quantity of real GDP supplied on the *AS* curve equals the quantity of real GDP demanded on the *AD* curve.

1. At a price level of 100, the quantity of real GDP supplied is $12 trillion at point *A*. The quantity of real GDP demanded exceeds the quantity supplied, so firms increase production and raise prices.
2. At a price level of 120, the quantity of real GDP supplied is $14 trillion at point *B*. The quantity of real GDP demanded is less than the quantity supplied, so firms cut production and lower prices.

At a price level of 110, the quantity of real GDP supplied equals the quantity of real GDP demanded in macroeconomic equilibrium.



Three Types of Macroeconomic Equilibrium

In macroeconomic equilibrium, the economy might be at full employment or above or below full employment. Figure 29.8(a) shows these three possibilities. **Full-employment equilibrium**—when equilibrium real GDP equals potential GDP—occurs where the *AD* curve intersects the aggregate supply curve *AS**.

At a higher money wage rate, aggregate supply is AS_1. Real GDP is $12.5 trillion and is less than potential GDP. The economy is *below full employment* and there is a **recessionary gap.** At a lower money wage rate, aggregate supply is AS_2. In this situation, real GDP is $13.5 trillion and is greater than potential GDP. The economy is *above full employment* and there is an **inflationary gap.**

Full-employment equilibrium
When equilibrium real GDP equals potential GDP.

Recessionary gap
A gap that exists when potential GDP exceeds real GDP and that brings a falling price level.

Inflationary gap
A gap that exists when real GDP exceeds potential GDP and that brings a rising price level.

Adjustment toward Full Employment

When real GDP is below or above potential GDP, the money wage rate gradually changes to bring full employment. Figure 29.8(b) illustrates this adjustment.

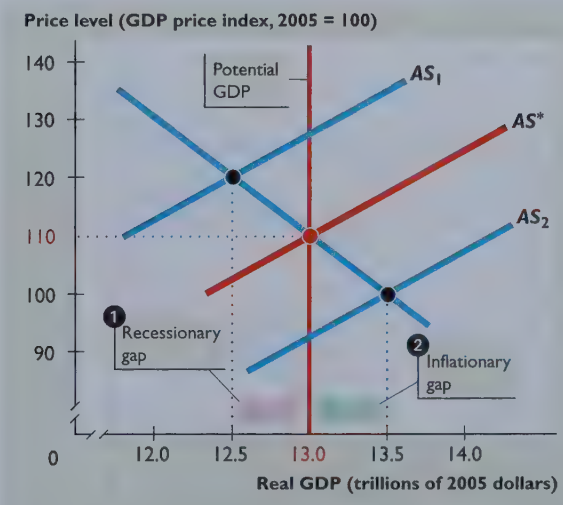
In a *recessionary gap*, there is a surplus of labor and firms can hire new workers at a lower wage rate. As the money wage rate falls, the *AS* curve shifts from AS_1 toward *AS** and the price level falls and real GDP rises. The money wage continues to fall until real GDP equals potential GDP—full-employment equilibrium.

In an *inflationary gap*, there is a shortage of labor and firms must offer a higher wage rate to hire the labor they demand. As the money wage rate rises, the *AS* curve shifts from AS_2 toward *AS** and the price level rises and real GDP falls. The money wage rate continues to rise until real GDP equals potential GDP.

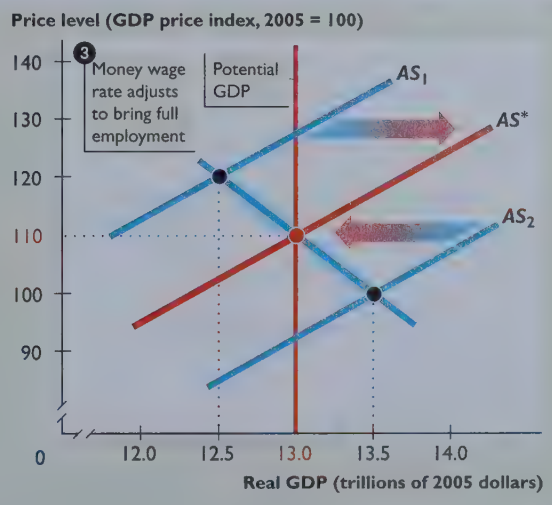
FIGURE 29.8

Output Gaps and Full-Employment Equilibrium

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Three types of macroeconomic equilibrium



(b) Adjustment to full employment

In part (a), when equilibrium real GDP is less than potential GDP, ❶ there is a recessionary gap; when equilibrium real GDP is greater than potential GDP, ❷ there is an inflationary gap; and when equilibrium real GDP equals potential GDP, the economy is at full employment.

In part (b), when an output gap exists ❸ the money wage rate adjusts to move the economy toward full employment. With a recessionary gap, the money wage rate falls and the *AS* curve shifts rightward from AS_1 to *AS**. With an inflationary gap, the money wage rate rises and the *AS* curve shifts leftward from AS_2 to *AS**.

Economic Growth and Inflation Trends

Economic growth results from a growing labor force and increasing labor productivity, which together make potential GDP grow (Chapter 25, pp. 638–644). Inflation results from a growing quantity of money that outpaces the growth of potential GDP (Chapter 28, pp. 725–733).

The *AS-AD* model can be used to understand economic growth and inflation trends. In the *AS-AD* model, economic growth is increasing potential GDP—a persistent rightward shift in the potential GDP line. Inflation arises from a persistent increase in aggregate demand at a faster pace than that of the increase in potential GDP—a persistent rightward shift of the *AD* curve at a faster pace than the growth of potential GDP. *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below shows how the *AS-AD* model explains U.S. economic growth and inflation trends.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

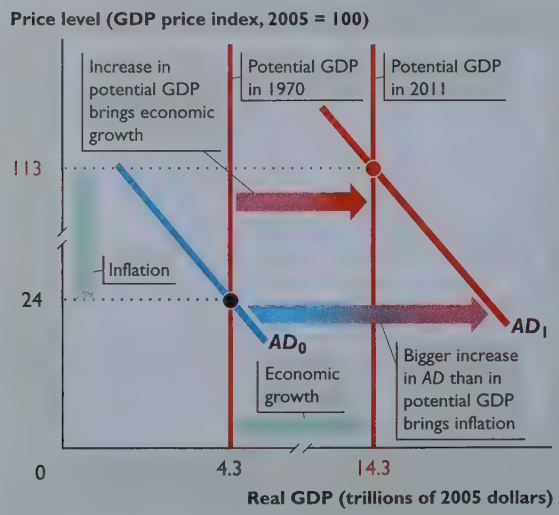
U.S. Economic Growth, Inflation, and the Business Cycle

U.S. economic growth, inflation, and the business cycle result from changes in aggregate supply and aggregate demand. A rightward movement in the U.S. potential GDP line brings economic growth and a greater rightward movement of the U.S. *AD* curve brings inflation. Part (a) shows the shifting curves that generate growth and inflation.

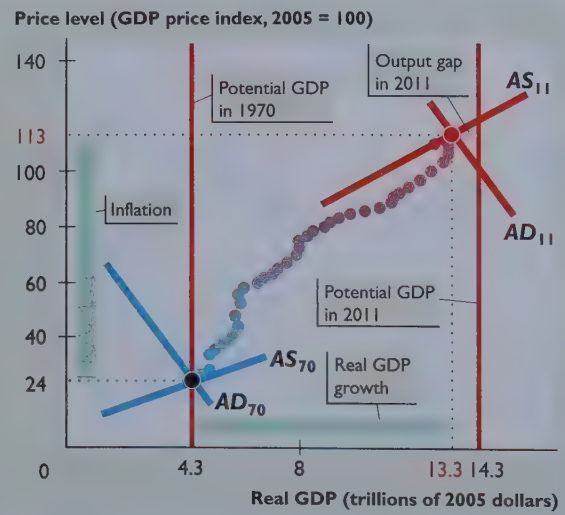
Part (b) shows the history of U.S. real GDP growth and inflation from 1970 to 2011. Each dot represents the real GDP and price level in a year—the black dot 1970 and the red dot 2011. The rightward movement of the dots is economic growth and the upward movement is a rising price level—inflation.

When the dots follow a path that is gently rising, as during the 1990s, the inflation rate is low and real GDP growth is quite rapid. When the dots follow a path that is steep, as during the 1970s, inflation is rapid and economic growth is slow.

Notice that the dots move rightward and upward in waves and occa-



(a) Economic growth and inflation



(b) U.S. economic growth and inflation

The Business Cycle

The business cycle results from fluctuations in aggregate supply and aggregate demand. Aggregate supply fluctuates because labor productivity grows at a variable pace, which brings fluctuations in the growth rate of potential GDP. The resulting cycle is called a **real business cycle.** But aggregate demand fluctuations are the main source of the business cycle. The key reason is that the swings in aggregate demand occur more quickly than changes in the money wage rate that change aggregate supply. The result is that the economy swings from inflationary gap to full employment to recessionary gap and back again.

Real business cycle
A cycle that results from fluctuations in the pace of growth of labor productivity and potential GDP.

Eye on the U.S. Economy below shows the most recent cycle interpreted as driven by aggregate demand fluctuations. But in the 2008–2009 recession, both aggregate demand and aggregate supply were at work as you can see on p. 763.

sionally leftward. The pattern shows the business cycle expansions and recessions.

By comparing the dots with potential GDP, we can see that the economy was at full employment in 1970, and that the recessionary gap during the 2008–2009 recession was large.

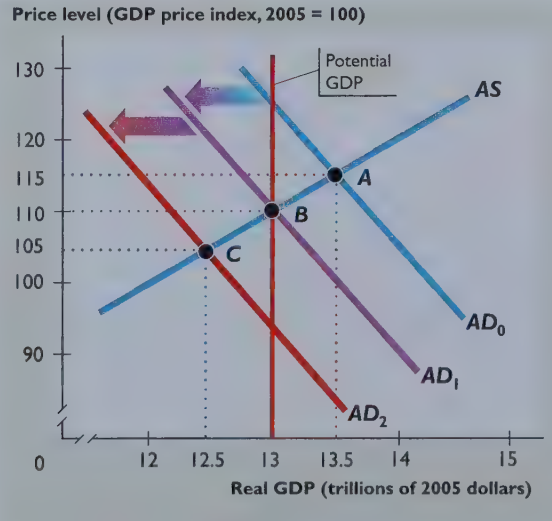
Part (c) shows how aggregate demand changes bring the business cycle, and part (d) shows the most recent cycle from 2000 to 2011.

When the *AD* curve is AD_0 in part (c), the economy is at point *A* and there is an inflationary gap. Part (d) identifies the actual gap in 2000 as *A*.

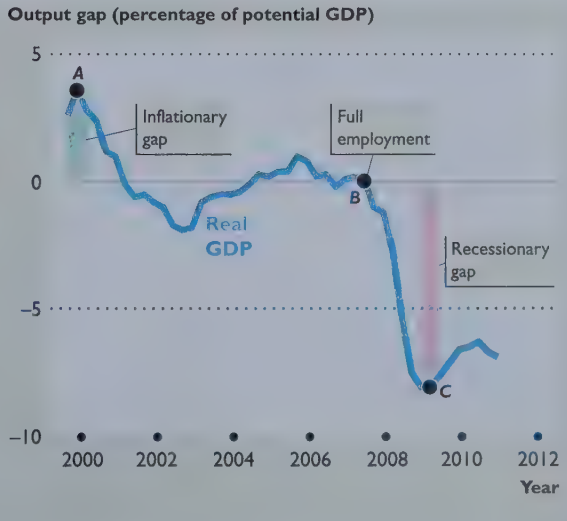
A decrease in aggregate demand to AD_1 lowers real GDP to potential GDP and the economy moves to point *B* in parts (c) and (d).

A further decrease in aggregate demand to AD_2 lowers real GDP to below potential GDP and opens up a recessionary gap at point *C* in both parts (c) and (d).

In reality, *AD* doesn't decrease. It increases at a slower pace than the increase in potential GDP, but the relative positions of the *AD* curve and the potential GDP line are like those shown in part (c).



(c) Aggregate demand fluctuations



(d) The U.S. output gap

SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics, Bureau of Economic Analysis, and Congressional Budget Office.

Inflation Cycles

You've seen that inflation occurs if aggregate demand grows faster than potential GDP. But just as there are cycles in real GDP, there are also cycles in the inflation rate. And the two cycles are related. To study the interaction of real GDP and inflation cycles, we distinguish between two sources of inflation:

- Demand-pull inflation
- Cost-push inflation

Demand-Pull Inflation

Demand-pull inflation
Inflation that starts because aggregate demand increases.

Inflation that starts because aggregate demand increases is called **demand-pull inflation.** Demand-pull inflation can be kicked off by any of the factors that change aggregate demand but the only thing that can sustain it is growth in the quantity of money.

Figure 29.9 illustrates the process of demand-pull inflation. Potential GDP is $13 trillion. Initially, the aggregate demand curve is AD_0, the aggregate supply curve is AS_0, and real GDP equals potential GDP. Aggregate demand increases, shifting the aggregate demand curve to AD_1. Real GDP increases and the price level rises. There is now an *inflationary gap*. A shortage of labor brings a rise in the money wage rate, which shifts the aggregate supply curve to AS_1. The price level rises further and real GDP returns to potential GDP.

The quantity of money increases again, and the aggregate demand curve shifts rightward to AD_2. The price level rises further, and real GDP again exceeds potential GDP. Yet again, the money wage rate rises and decreases aggregate supply. The *AS* curve shifts to AS_2, and the price level rises further. As the quantity of money continues to grow, aggregate demand increases and the price level rises in an ongoing demand-pull inflation spiral.

FIGURE 29.9
A Demand-Pull Inflation

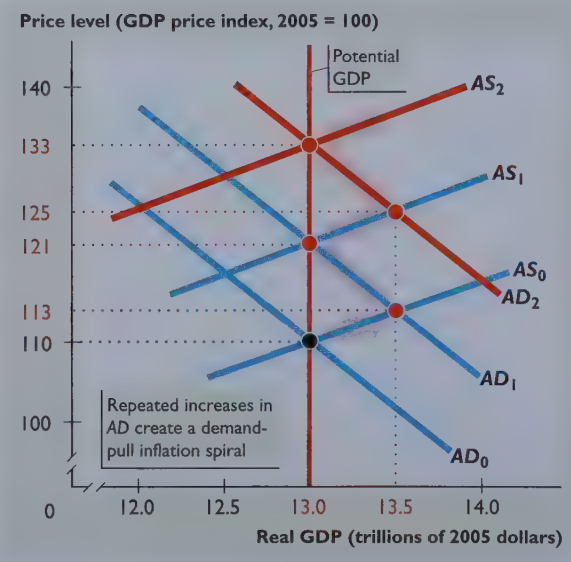
MyEconLab Animation

Each time the quantity of money increases, aggregate demand increases and the aggregate demand curve shifts rightward from AD_0 to AD_1 to AD_2, and so on.

Each time real GDP increases above potential GDP, the money wage rate rises and the aggregate supply curve shifts leftward from AS_0 to AS_1 to AS_2, and so on.

The price level rises from 110 to 113, 121, 125, 133, and so on.

A demand-pull inflation spiral results with real GDP fluctuating between $13 trillion and $13.5 trillion.



Cost-Push Inflation

Inflation that begins with an increase in cost is called **cost-push inflation**. The two main sources of cost increases are increases in the money wage rate and increases in the money prices of raw materials such as oil.

Cost-push inflation
An inflation that begins with an increase in cost.

Cost-push inflation can be kicked off by an increase in costs but the only thing that can sustain it is growth in the quantity of money.

Figure 29.10 illustrates cost-push inflation. The aggregate demand curve is AD_0, the aggregate supply curve is AS_0, and real GDP equals potential GDP. The world price of oil rises, which decreases aggregate supply. The aggregate supply curve shifts leftward to AS_1, the price level rises, and real GDP decreases so there is a *recessionary gap*.

When real GDP decreases, unemployment rises above its natural rate and the Fed increases the quantity of money to restore full employment. Aggregate demand increases and the *AD* curve shifts rightward to AD_1. Real GDP returns to potential GDP but the price level rises further.

Oil producers now see the prices of everything they buy rising so they raise the price of oil again to restore its new higher relative price. The *AS* curve now shifts to AS_2, the price level rises again and real GDP decreases again.

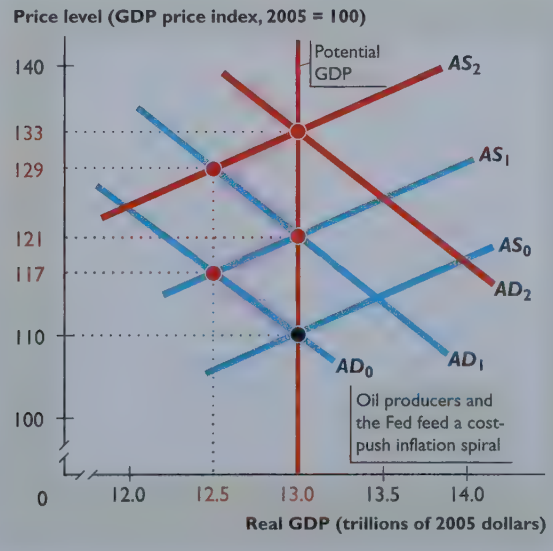
If the Fed responds yet again with an increase in the quantity of money, aggregate demand increases and the *AD* curve shifts to AD_2. The price level rises even higher and full employment is again restored. A cost-push inflation spiral results.

The combination of a decreasing real GDP and a rising price level is called **stagflation**. You can see that stagflation poses a dilemma for the Fed. If the Fed does not respond when producers raise the oil price, the economy remains below full employment. If the Fed increases the quantity of money to restore full employment, it invites another oil price hike that will call forth yet a further increase in the quantity of money.

Stagflation
The combination of recession (decreasing real GDP) and inflation (rising price level).

FIGURE 29.10
A Cost-Push Inflation

MyEconLab Animation



Each time a cost increase occurs, the aggregate supply curve shifts leftward from AS_0 to AS_1 to AS_2, and so on.

Each time real GDP decreases below potential GDP, the Fed increases the quantity of money and the aggregate demand curve shifts rightward from AD_0 to AD_1 to AD_2, and so on.

The price level rises from 110 to 117, 121, 129, 133, and so on.

A cost-push inflation spiral results with real GDP fluctuating between $13 trillion and $12.5 trillion.

Deflation and the Great Depression

When a financial crisis hit the United States in October 2008, many people feared a repeat of the dreadful events of the 1930s. From 1929 through 1933, the United States and most of the world experienced deflation and depression—the *Great Depression*. The price level fell by 22 percent and real GDP fell by 31 percent.

The recession of 2008–2009 turned out to be much less severe than the Great Depression. Real GDP fell by less than 4 percent and the price level continued to rise, although at a slower pace. Why was the Great Depression so bad and why was 2008–2009 so mild in comparison? You can answer these questions with what you've learned in this chapter.

During the Great Depression, banks failed and the quantity of money contracted by 25 percent. The Fed stood by and took no action to counteract the collapse of buying power, so aggregate demand also collapsed. Because the money wage rate didn't fall immediately, the decrease in aggregate demand brought a large fall in real GDP. The money wage rate and price level fell eventually, but not until employment and real GDP had shrunk to 75 percent of their 1929 levels.

In contrast, during the 2008 financial crisis, the Fed bailed out troubled financial institutions and doubled the monetary base. The quantity of money kept growing. Also, the government increased its own expenditures, which added to aggregate demand. The combined effects of continued growth in the quantity of money and increased government expenditure limited the fall in aggregate demand and prevented a large decrease in real GDP.

The challenge that now lies ahead is to unwind the monetary and fiscal stimulus as the components of private expenditure—consumption expenditure, investment, and exports—begin to increase and return to more normal levels and so bring an increase in aggregate demand. Too much stimulus will bring an inflationary gap and faster inflation. Too little stimulus will leave a recessionary gap.

You will explore these monetary and fiscal policy actions and their effects in Chapters 32 and 33.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Using the *AS-AD* Model

Using all the knowledge that you have accumulated over the term, and by watching or reading the current news, try to figure out where the U.S. economy is in its business cycle right now.

First, can you determine if real GDP is currently above, below, or at potential GDP? Second, can you determine if real GDP is expanding or contracting in a recession?

Next, try to form a view about where the U.S. economy is heading. What do you see as the main pressures on aggregate supply and aggregate demand, and in which directions are they pushing or pulling the economy?

Do you think that real GDP will expand more quickly or more slowly over the coming months? Do you think the gap between real GDP and potential GDP will widen or narrow?

How do you expect the labor market to be affected by the changes in aggregate supply and aggregate demand that you are expecting? Do you expect the unemployment rate to rise, fall, or remain constant?

Talk to your friends in class about where they see the U.S. economy right now and where it is heading. Is there a consensus or is there a wide range of opinion?

EYE on the BUSINESS CYCLE

Why Did the U.S. Economy Go into Recession in 2008?

What causes the business cycle and what caused the 2008–2009 recession?

Business Cycle Theory

The mainstream business cycle theory is that potential GDP grows at a steady rate while aggregate demand grows at a fluctuating rate.

Because the money wage rate is slow to change, if aggregate demand grows more quickly than potential GDP, real GDP moves above potential GDP and an inflationary gap emerges. The inflation rate rises and real GDP is pulled back toward potential GDP.

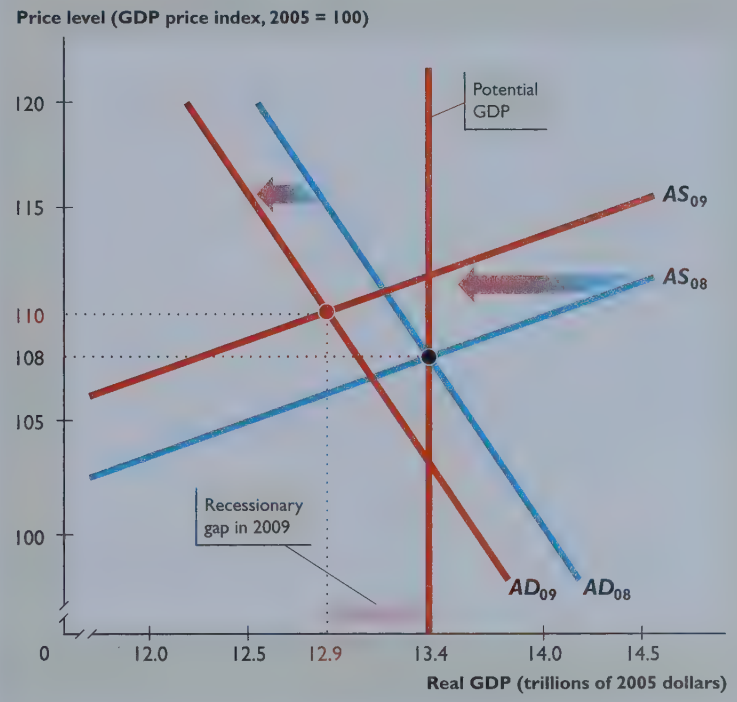
If aggregate demand grows more slowly than potential GDP, real GDP moves below potential GDP and a recessionary gap emerges. The inflation rate slows. Because the money wage rate responds very slowly to the recessionary gap, real GDP does not return to potential GDP until another increase in aggregate demand occurs.

Fluctuations in investment are the main source of fluctuations in aggregate demand. Consumption expenditure responds to changes in income.

A recession can also occur if aggregate supply decreases to bring stagflation. And a recession might occur because both aggregate demand and aggregate supply decrease.

The 2008–2009 Recession

The 2008–2009 recession is an example of a recession caused by a decrease in both aggregate demand and aggregate supply. The figure illustrates these two contributing forces.



SOURCES OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis and Congressional Budget Office.

At the peak in 2008, real GDP was $13.4 trillion and the price level was 108. In the second quarter of 2009, real GDP had fallen to $12.9 trillion and the price level had risen to 110.

The financial crisis that began in 2007 and intensified in 2008 decreased the supply of loanable funds and investment fell. In particular, construction investment collapsed.

Recession in the global economy decreased the demand for U.S. exports, so this component of aggregate demand also decreased.

The decrease in aggregate demand was moderated by a large injection of spending by the U.S. government, but this move was not enough to stop aggregate demand from decreasing.

We cannot account for the combination of a rise in the price level and a decrease in real GDP with a decrease in aggregate demand alone. Aggregate supply must also have decreased. The rise in oil prices in 2007 and a rise in the money wage rate were the two factors that brought about the decrease in aggregate supply.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 29.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 29.3

Explain how trends and fluctuations in aggregate demand and aggregate supply bring economic growth, inflation, and the business cycle.

Practice Problems

The U.S. economy is at full employment when the following events occur:

- A deep recession hits the world economy.
- The world oil price rises by a large amount.
- U.S. businesses expect future profits to fall.

1. Explain the effect of each event separately on aggregate demand and aggregate supply. How will real GDP and the price level change in the short run?
2. Explain the combined effect of these events on real GDP and the price level.
3. Which event, if any, brings stagflation?

In the News

U.S. incomes fall for first time in 2 years

Consumer spending rose 0.2 percent in August, down from 0.7 percent in July. Incomes fell 0.1 percent—the first decline since October 2009. Consumer spending accounts for 70 percent of economic activity.

Source: Associated Press, September 30, 2011

Explain the effect of these events in terms of the *AS-AD* model.

FIGURE 1

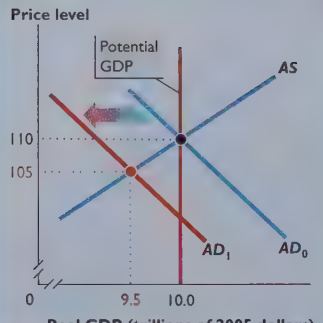
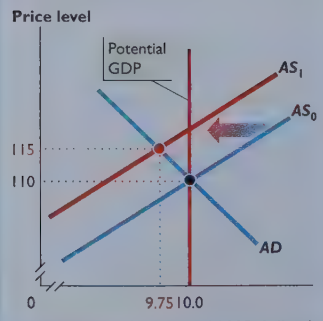


FIGURE 2



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. A deep recession in the world economy decreases U.S. aggregate demand. The *AD* curve shifts leftward. In the short run, U.S. real GDP decreases and the price level falls (Figure 1). A rise in the world oil price decreases U.S. aggregate supply. The *AS* curve shifts leftward. In the short run, U.S. real GDP decreases and the price level rises (Figure 2). A fall in expected future profits decreases U.S. aggregate demand. The *AD* curve shifts leftward. In the short run, U.S. real GDP decreases and the price level falls (Figure 1).
2. All three events decrease U.S. real GDP (Figures 1 and 2). The deep world recession and the fall in expected future profits decrease the price level (Figure 1). The rise in the world oil price increases the price level (Figure 2). So the combined effect on the price level is ambiguous.
3. Stagflation is a rising price level and a decreasing real GDP together. The rise in the world oil price brings stagflation because it decreases aggregate supply, decreases real GDP, and raises the price level (Figure 2).

Solution to In the News

The news clip gives no information about aggregate supply. Consumption expenditure is 70 percent of aggregate demand, so an increase in consumption expenditure would increase aggregate demand, GDP, and aggregate incomes. But incomes fell, so the other components of aggregate demand (investment, government expenditure, net exports) must have decreased, moving the economy down along the *AS* curve. Or aggregate supply must have decreased, moving the economy up along the *AD* curve.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Define and explain the influences on aggregate supply.

- Aggregate supply is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP supplied and the price level when all other influences on production plans remain the same.
- The *AS* curve slopes upward because with a given money wage rate, a rise in the price level lowers the real wage rate, increases the quantity of labor demanded, and increases the quantity of real GDP supplied.
- A change in potential GDP, a change in the money wage rate, or a change in the money price of other resources changes aggregate supply.

2 Define and explain the influences on aggregate demand.

- Aggregate demand is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same.
- The *AD* curve slopes downward because a rise in the price level decreases the buying power of money, raises the real interest rate, raises the real price of domestic goods compared with foreign goods, and decreases the quantity of real GDP demanded.
- A change in expected future income, inflation, and profits; a change in fiscal policy and monetary policy; and a change in the foreign exchange rate and foreign real GDP all change aggregate demand—the aggregate demand curve shifts.

3 Explain how trends and fluctuations in aggregate demand and aggregate supply bring economic growth, inflation, and the business cycle.

- Aggregate demand and aggregate supply determine real GDP and the price level in macroeconomic equilibrium, which can occur at full employment or above or below full employment.
- Away from full employment, gradual changes in the money wage rate move real GDP toward potential GDP.
- Economic growth is a persistent increase in potential GDP and inflation occurs when aggregate demand grows at a faster rate than potential GDP.
- Business cycles occur because aggregate demand and aggregate supply fluctuate.
- Demand-pull and cost-push forces bring inflation and real GDP cycles.

Key Terms

Aggregate demand, 750
Aggregate supply, 744
Cost-push inflation, 761
Demand-pull inflation, 760
Fiscal policy, 753
Full-employment equilibrium, 757
Inflationary gap, 757
Macroeconomic equilibrium, 756
Monetary policy, 753
Real business cycle, 759
Recessionary gap, 757
Stagflation, 761

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 29 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

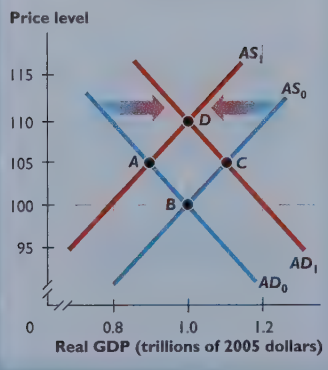
1. As more people in India have access to higher education, explain how potential GDP and aggregate supply will change in the long run.
2. Explain the effect of each of the following events on the quantity of U.S. real GDP demanded and the demand for U.S. real GDP:
   - The world economy goes into a strong expansion.
   - The U.S. price level rises.
   - Congress raises income taxes.
3. The United States is at full employment when the Fed cuts the quantity of money, and all other things remain the same. Explain the effect of the cut in the quantity of money on aggregate demand in the short run.
4. Table 1 sets out an economy's aggregate demand and aggregate supply schedules. What is the macroeconomic equilibrium? If potential GDP is $600 billion, what is the type of macroeconomic equilibrium? Explain how real GDP and the price level will adjust in the long run.
5. Suppose that the U.S. economy has a recessionary gap and the world economy goes into an expansion. Explain the effect of the expansion on U.S. real GDP and unemployment in the short run.
6. Suppose that the Fed increases the quantity of money. On an *AS-AD* graph show the effect of the increased quantity of money on the macroeconomic equilibrium in the short run. Explain the adjustment process that restores the economy to full employment.

TABLE 1

Price level (GDP price index)	Real GDP demanded (billions of 2005 dollars)	Real GDP supplied (billions of 2005 dollars)
90	900	600
100	850	700
110	800	800
120	750	900
130	700	1,000

Use Figure 1 and the fact that initially, the aggregate supply curve is AS_0 and the aggregate demand curve is AD_0 to work Problems 7 to 9.

FIGURE 1



7. Some events shifted the aggregate demand curve from AD_0 to AD_1. Describe two events that could have created this change in aggregate demand. What is the equilibrium after aggregate demand changed? If potential GDP is $1 trillion, the economy is at what type of macroeconomic equilibrium?
8. Some events shifted the aggregate supply curve from AS_0 to AS_1. Describe two events that could have created this change in aggregate supply. What is the equilibrium after aggregate supply changed? If potential GDP is $1 trillion, is there an inflationary gap, a recessionary gap, or no output gap?
9. Some events changed aggregate demand from AD_0 to AD_1 and aggregate supply from AS_0 to AS_1. What is the new macroeconomic equilibrium?
10. **Japan economic recovery under way as deflation eases**
    Consumer prices excluding fresh food declined 0.4 percent from a year earlier—the smallest drop since 2009. The unemployment rate unexpectedly fell to 4.9 percent from 5.1 percent—the first decrease since September. The economy will emerge from its slump "soon."

    Source: Bloomberg, January 27, 2011

    On an *AS-AD* graph show the macroeconomic equilibrium in Japan in 2010. Show why economic recovery is under way and deflation easing.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. What, according to the mainstream theory of the business cycle, is the most common source of recession: a decrease in aggregate demand, a decrease in aggregate supply, or both? Which is the most likely component of aggregate demand to start a recession? How does the aggregate demand multiplier influence a recession?
2. Suppose that the United States is at full employment. Explain the effect of each of the following events on aggregate supply:
   - Union wage settlements push the money wage rate up by 10 percent.
   - The price level increases.
   - Potential GDP increases.
3. Suppose that the United States is at full employment. Then the federal government cuts taxes, and all other influences on aggregate demand remain the same. Explain the effect of the tax cut on aggregate demand in the short run.

Use the following information to work Problems 4 and 5.

Because fluctuations in the world oil price make the U.S. short-run macroeconomic equilibrium fluctuate, someone suggests that the government should vary the tax rate on oil, lowering the tax when the world oil price rises and increasing the tax when the world oil price falls, to stabilize the oil price in the U.S. market.

4. How would such an action influence aggregate demand?
5. How would such an action influence aggregate supply?
6. Table 1 sets out the aggregate demand and aggregate supply schedules in Japan. Potential GDP is 600 trillion yen. What is the short-run macroeconomic equilibrium? Does Japan have an inflationary gap or a recessionary gap and what is its magnitude?
7. Suppose that the world price of oil rises. On an *AS-AD* graph, show the effect of the world oil price rise on U.S. macroeconomic equilibrium in the short run. Explain the adjustment process that restores the economy to full employment.
8. Explain the effects of a global recession on the U.S. macroeconomic equilibrium in the short run. Explain the adjustment process that restores the economy to full employment.

Use the following information to work Problems 9 and 10.

House GOP changes course on infrastructure

House Republicans abandoned plans to slash U.S. infrastructure spending and now say they are trying to find ways to pay for a multiyear highway-construction program, which will exceed $300 billion.

Source: *The Wall Street Journal*, September 30, 2011

9. Explain the effect of the government's increased expenditure on infrastructure on U.S. aggregate demand and aggregate supply.
10. The United States in 2011 has a recessionary gap. Use the *AS-AD* model to show the effect on U.S. real GDP as the new infrastructure is completed.

TABLE 1

Price level (GDP price index)	Real GDP demanded	Real GDP supplied
	(trillions of 2000 yen)	
75	600	400
85	550	450
95	500	500
105	450	550
115	400	600
125	350	650
135	300	700

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 29 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. Aggregate supply increases when _____.
   A. the price level rises
   B. the money wage rate falls
   C. consumption increases
   D. the money price of oil increases
2. When potential GDP increases, _____.
   A. aggregate demand increases
   B. aggregate supply increases
   C. both aggregate demand and aggregate supply increase
   D. the price level rises
3. The quantity of real GDP demanded increases if _____.
   A. the buying power of money increases
   B. the money wage rate rises
   C. the price level falls
   D. the nominal interest rate falls
4. An increase in expected future income increases _____.
   A. consumption expenditure, which increases current aggregate demand
   B. investment, which increases current aggregate supply
   C. the demand for money, which decreases current aggregate demand
   D. future consumption expenditure and has no effect on current aggregate demand
5. Macroeconomic equilibrium occurs when the quantity of real GDP _____ equals the quantity of _____.
   A. demanded; real GDP supplied
   B. demanded; potential GDP
   C. supplied; potential GDP
   D. demanded; real GDP supplied and potential GDP
6. If the economy is at full employment and the Fed increases the quantity of money, _____.
   A. aggregate demand increases, a recessionary gap appears, and the money wage rate starts to rise
   B. aggregate supply increases, the price level starts to fall, and an expansion begins
   C. aggregate demand increases, an inflationary gap appears, and the money wage rate starts to rise
   D. potential GDP and aggregate supply increase together and the price level does not change
7. Over the past decade, the demand for goods produced in China has brought a sustained increase in demand for China's exports that has outstripped the growth of supply. As a result, China has experienced a _____.
   A. period of stable prices and sustained economic growth
   B. rising price level and demand-pull inflation
   C. rising price level and cost-push inflation
   D. rising price level and a falling real wage rate

How big is the government expenditure multiplier?

30

Aggregate Expenditure Multiplier

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Explain how real GDP influences expenditure plans.
2. Explain how real GDP adjusts to achieve equilibrium expenditure.
3. Explain the expenditure multiplier.
4. Derive the *AD* curve from equilibrium expenditure.

30.1 EXPENDITURE PLANS AND REAL GDP

When the government spends $1 million on a highway construction project, does that expenditure stimulate consumption expenditure in a multiplier effect? This question lies at the core of this chapter.

To answer the question, we use the *aggregate expenditure model*, a model that explains what determines the quantity of real GDP demanded and changes in that quantity *at a given price level*.

The aggregate expenditure model—also known as the *Keynesian model*—was originally designed to explain what happens in an economy in deep recession when firms can't cut their prices any further but can increase production without raising their prices, so the price level is actually fixed. The severity of the global recession of 2008–2009 gave the model a rebirth and the question of the size of the government expenditure multiplier became a hot issue.

You learned in Chapter 21 (pp. 535–537) that aggregate expenditure equals the sum of consumption expenditure, *C*, investment, *I*, government expenditure on goods and services, *G*, and net exports, *NX*. **Aggregate planned expenditure** is the sum of the spending plans of households, firms, and governments. We divide expenditure plans into autonomous expenditure and induced expenditure. *Autonomous expenditure* does not respond to changes in real GDP and *induced expenditure* does respond to changes in real GDP. We start by looking at induced expenditure and its main component, consumption expenditure.

Aggregate planned expenditure
Planned consumption expenditure plus planned investment, plus planned government expenditure, plus planned exports minus planned imports.

The Consumption Function

The **consumption function** is the relationship between consumption expenditure and disposable income, other things remaining the same. *Disposable income* is aggregate income—GDP—minus net taxes. (Net taxes are taxes paid to the government minus transfer payments received from the government.)

Consumption function
The relationship between consumption expenditure and disposable income, other things remaining the same.

Households must either spend their disposable income on consumption or save it. A decision to spend a dollar on consumption is a decision not to save a dollar. The consumption decision and the saving decision is one decision.

Consumption Plans

For households and the economy as a whole, as disposable income increases, planned consumption expenditure increases. But the increase in planned consumption is less than the increase in disposable income. The table in Figure 30.1 shows a consumption schedule. It lists the consumption expenditure that people plan to undertake at each level of disposable income.

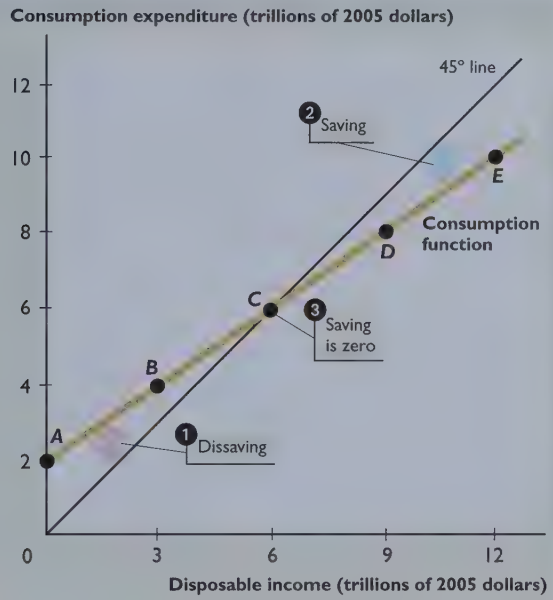
Figure 30.1 shows a consumption function based on the consumption schedule. Along the consumption function, the points labeled *A* through *E* correspond to the columns of the table. For example, when disposable income is $9 trillion at point *D*, consumption expenditure is $8 trillion. Along the consumption function, as disposable income increases, consumption expenditure increases.

At point *A* on the consumption function, consumption expenditure is $2 trillion even though disposable income is zero. This consumption expenditure is called *autonomous consumption*, and it is the amount of consumption expenditure that would take place in the short run, even if people had no current income. This consumption expenditure would be financed either by spending past savings or by borrowing.

FIGURE 30.1

The Consumption Function

MyEconLab Animation



(trillions of 2005 dollars)

Disposable income	0	3	6	9	12
Planned consumption expenditure	2	4	6	8	10
	A	***B***	***C***	***D***	***E***

The table shows consumption expenditure (and saving) plans at various levels of disposable income. The figure graphs these data as the consumption function. The figure also shows a 45° line along which consumption expenditure equals disposable income.

1. When the consumption function is above the 45° line, saving is negative (dissaving occurs).
2. When the consumption function is below the 45° line, saving is positive.
3. At the point where the consumption function intersects the 45° line, all disposable income is consumed and saving is zero.

Figure 30.1 also shows a 45° line. Because the scale on the *x*-axis measures disposable income and the scale on the *y*-axis measures consumption expenditure, and because the two scales are equal, along the 45° line consumption expenditure equals disposable income. So the 45° line serves as a reference line for comparing consumption expenditure and disposable income. Between *A* and *C*, consumption expenditure exceeds disposable income; between *C* and *E*, disposable income exceeds consumption expenditure; and at point *C*, consumption expenditure equals disposable income.

You can see saving in Figure 30.1. When consumption expenditure exceeds disposable income (and the consumption function is above the 45° line), saving is negative—called *dissaving*. When consumption expenditure is less than disposable income (the consumption function is below the 45° line), saving is positive. And when consumption expenditure equals disposable income (the consumption function intersects the 45° line), saving is zero.

When consumption expenditure exceeds disposable income, past savings are used to pay for current consumption. Such a situation cannot last forever, but it can and does occur if disposable income falls temporarily.

Marginal propensity to consume
The fraction of a change in disposable income that is spent on consumption—the change in consumption expenditure divided by the change in disposable income that brought it about.

Marginal Propensity to Consume

The **marginal propensity to consume** (*MPC*) is the fraction of a change in disposable income that is spent on consumption. It is calculated as the change in consumption expenditure divided by the change in disposable income that brought it about. That is,

$$MPC = \frac{\text{Change in consumption expenditure}}{\text{Change in disposable income}}.$$

Suppose that when disposable income increases from $6 trillion to $9 trillion, consumption expenditure increases from $6 trillion to $8 trillion. The $3 trillion increase in disposable income increases consumption expenditure by $2 trillion. Using these numbers in the formula to calculate the *MPC*,

$$MPC = \frac{\$2 \text{ trillion}}{\$3 \text{ trillion}} = 0.67.$$

The marginal propensity to consume tells us that when disposable income increases by $1, consumption expenditure increases by 67¢.

Figure 30.2 shows that the *MPC* equals the slope of the consumption function. A $3 trillion increase in disposable income from $6 trillion to $9 trillion is the base of the red triangle. The increase in consumption expenditure that results from this increase in income is $2 trillion and is the height of the triangle. The slope of the consumption function is given by the formula "slope equals rise over run" and is $2 trillion divided by $3 trillion, which equals 0.67—the *MPC*.

FIGURE 30.2
Marginal Propensity to Consume

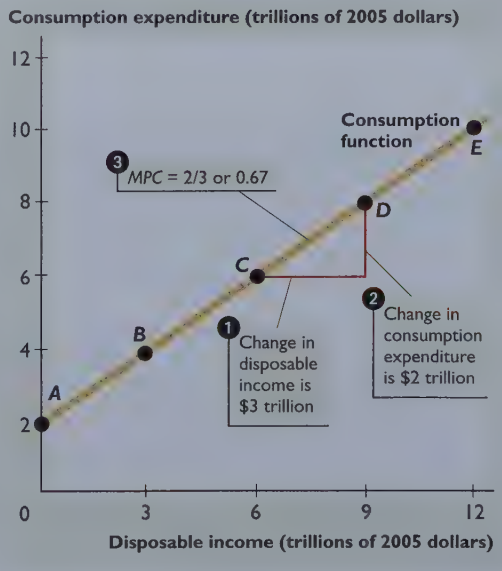
MyEconLab Animation

The marginal propensity to consume, *MPC*, is equal to the change in consumption expenditure divided by the change in disposable income, other things remaining the same.

The slope of the consumption function measures the *MPC*.

In the figure:

1. A $3 trillion change in disposable income brings
2. A $2 trillion change in consumption expenditure, so
3. The *MPC* equals $2 trillion ÷ $3 trillion = 0.67.



Other Influences on Consumption Expenditure

Consumption plans are influenced by many factors other than disposable income. The more important influences are:

- Real interest rate
- Wealth
- Expected future income

Real Interest Rate When the real interest rate falls, consumption expenditure increases (and saving decreases) and when the real interest rate rises, consumption expenditure decreases (and saving increases).

Wealth and Expected Future Income When either wealth or expected future income decreases, consumption expenditure also decreases and when wealth or expected future income increases, consumption expenditure also increases.

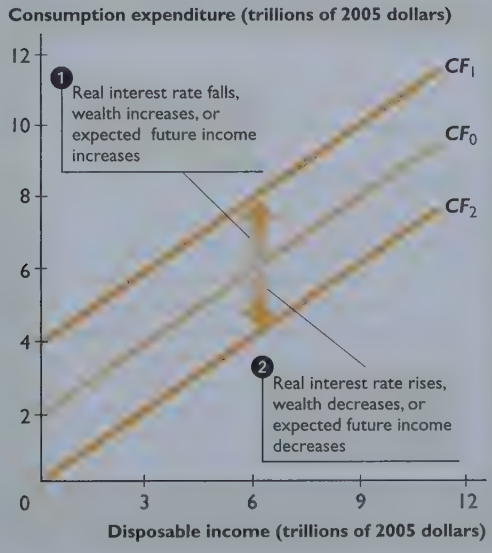
Figure 30.3 shows the effects of these influences on the consumption function. When the real interest rate falls or when wealth or expected future income increases, the consumption function shifts upward from CF_0 to CF_1. Such a shift occurs during the expansion phase of the business cycle if a stock market boom increases wealth and expected future income increases.

When the real interest rate rises, or when wealth or expected future income decreases, the consumption function shifts downward from CF_0 to CF_2. Such a shift occurs during a recession if a stock market crash decreases wealth and expected future income decreases.

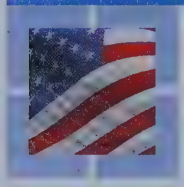
FIGURE 30.3

Shifts in the Consumption Function

MyEconLab Animation



1. A fall in the real interest rate or an increase in either wealth or expected future income increases consumption expenditure and shifts the consumption function upward from CF_0 to CF_1.
2. A rise in the real interest rate or a decrease in either wealth or expected future income decreases consumption expenditure and shifts the consumption function downward from CF_0 to CF_2.



EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

The U.S. Consumption Function

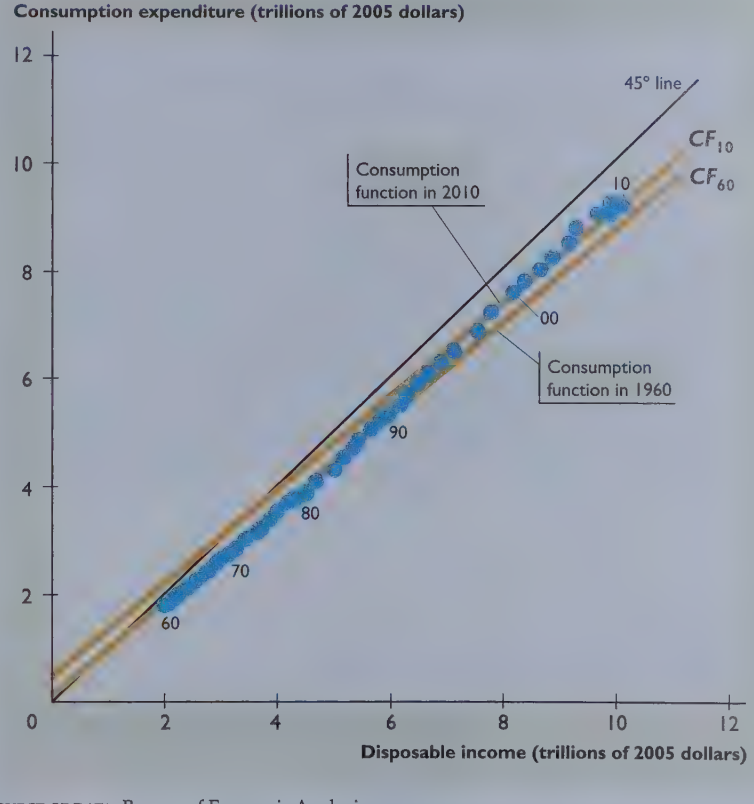
Each blue dot in the figure represents consumption expenditure and disposable income in the United States for a year between 1960 and 2010 (some labeled).

The lines labeled CF_{60}, and CF_{10} are estimates of the U.S. consumption function in 1960 and 2010, respectively.

The slope of these consumption functions—the marginal propensity to consume—is 0.87, which means that a $1 increase in disposable income brings an 87¢ increase in consumption expenditure.

The consumption function shifted upward from 1960 to 2010 because as economic growth brought higher expected future income and greater wealth, people chose to increase consumption expenditure from a given level of income.

During the recession of 2009, the consumption function temporarily shifted downward as a fall in house prices lowered wealth and encouraged people to save more.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis.

Imports and Real GDP

Imports are the other major component of induced expenditure. Many factors influence U.S. imports, but in the short run, one factor dominates: U.S. real GDP. Other things remaining the same, an increase in U.S. real GDP brings an increase in U.S. imports. Because an increase in real GDP is also an increase in income, as incomes increase, people increase their expenditures on most goods and services. Many goods and services are imported, so as incomes increase imports increase.

Marginal propensity to import
The fraction of an increase in real GDP that is spent on imports—the change in imports divided by the change in real GDP.

The relationship between imports and real GDP is described by the **marginal propensity to import,** which is the fraction of an increase in real GDP that is spent on imports.

$$\text{Marginal propensity to import} = \frac{\text{Change in imports}}{\text{Change in real GDP}}.$$

For example, if a $1 trillion increase in real GDP increases imports by $0.2 trillion, then the marginal propensity to import is $0.2 trillion ÷ $1 trillion, which is 0.2.

CHECKPOINT 30.1

Explain how real GDP influences expenditure plans.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 30.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. If the marginal propensity to consume is 0.8 and disposable income increases by $0.5 trillion, by how much will consumption expenditure change?
2. Explain how each of the following events influences the U.S. consumption function:
   - The marginal propensity to consume decreases.
   - U.S. autonomous consumption decreases.
   - Americans expect an increase in future income.
3. Figure 1 shows the consumption function. What is the marginal propensity to consume, and what is autonomous consumption?

In the News

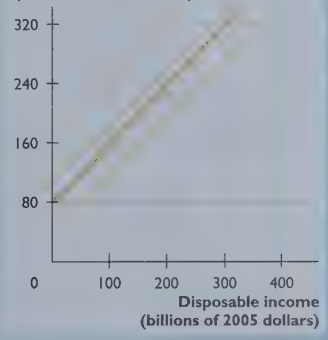
Personal income falls as spending rises

Personal income fell 0.1% in August, after increasing 0.1% in July, while personal spending rose just 0.2% in August, after rising 0.8% in July.

Source: CNN Money, September 30, 2011

How can consumers increase spending when personal income falls? Does the rise in consumer spending arise from a movement along the consumption function or a shift of the consumption function? Explain your answer.

FIGURE 1



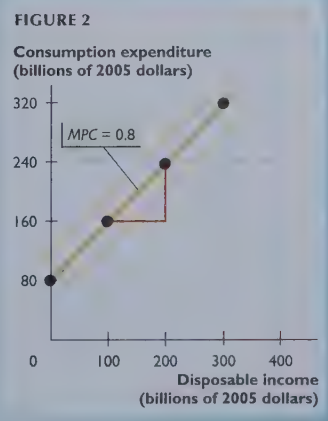
Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Consumption expenditure will increase by $0.4 trillion, which is 0.8 multiplied by the change in disposable income of $0.5 trillion.
2. The marginal propensity to consume equals the slope of the consumption function. So when the marginal propensity to consume decreases, the consumption function becomes flatter.

   Autonomous consumption is the *y*-axis intercept of the consumption function. So when autonomous expenditure decreases, the consumption function shifts downward.

   When expected future income increases, current consumption expenditure increases and the consumption function shifts upward.
3. When disposable income increases by $100 billion, consumption expenditure increases by $80 billion. The *MPC* is $80 billion ÷ $100 billion = 0.8. Autonomous consumption (consumption expenditure that is independent of disposable income) equals the *y*-axis intercept and is $80 billion (Figure 2).

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

Other things remaining the same, a fall in personal income brings a fall in consumption expenditure in a movement along the consumption function. When an increase in consumption expenditure occurs at the same time that personal income decreases, the consumption function has shifted upward. Autonomous consumption expenditure has increased as households spent part of their past savings.

30.2 EQUILIBRIUM EXPENDITURE

You are now going to discover how, with a fixed price level, aggregate expenditure plans interact to determine real GDP. We will study the relationship between aggregate planned expenditure and real GDP; and we'll study the forces that make aggregate planned expenditure and actual expenditure equal.

But first we'll return to the distinction between *induced* expenditure and *autonomous* expenditure.

Induced Expenditure and Autonomous Expenditure

Aggregate planned expenditure is the sum of *induced* expenditure and *autonomous* expenditure. *Induced* expenditure equals consumption expenditure minus imports. You've seen that consumption expenditure increases when disposable income increases. But disposable income equals aggregate income—real GDP—minus net taxes. So disposable income and consumption expenditure increase when real GDP increases. You've also seen that imports increase when real GDP increases. An increase in real GDP brings a larger increase in consumption expenditure than in imports, so induced expenditure—consumption expenditure minus imports—increases as real GDP increases.

Autonomous expenditure—expenditure that does not respond directly to changes in real GDP—consists of investment, government expenditure on goods and services, exports, and autonomous consumption expenditure. These items of aggregate expenditure do change but in response to influences other than real GDP. For example, investment responds to the real interest rate and expected profit. Government expenditure on goods and services depend on the government's policy priorities. And exports depend on global demand for U.S.-produced goods and services.

We combine induced expenditure plans and autonomous expenditure to determine aggregate planned expenditure and equilibrium real GDP.

Aggregate Planned Expenditure and Real GDP

An aggregate expenditure schedule and an aggregate expenditure curve describe the relationship between aggregate planned expenditure and real GDP. The table in Figure 30.4 sets out an aggregate expenditure schedule. The columns are the components of aggregate expenditure, C, I, G, X, and M, and aggregate planned expenditure, AE, equals $C + I + G + X - M$.

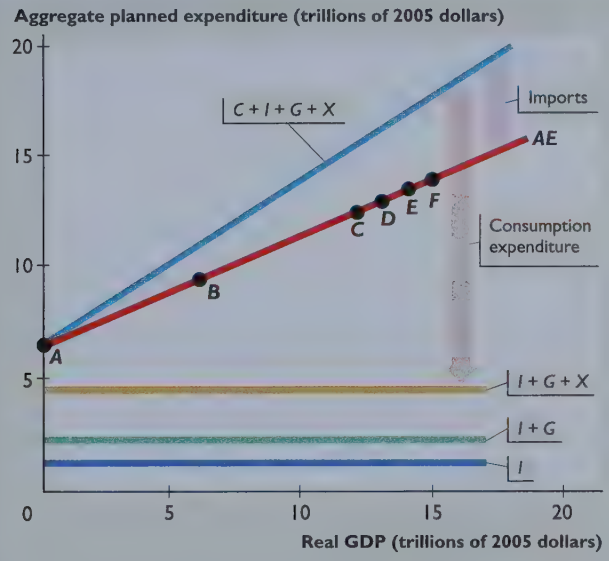
Figure 30.4 plots an aggregate expenditure curve. The aggregate expenditure curve is the red line AE. Points A through F on that curve correspond to the rows of the table. The AE curve is a graph of aggregate planned expenditure (the last column) plotted against real GDP (the first column).

The horizontal lines in Figure 30.4 show the components of autonomous expenditure I, G, and X. The line labeled $C + I + G + X$ adds consumption expenditure to these components of autonomous expenditure. Aggregate expenditure is expenditure on U.S.-produced goods and services, but the line $C + I + G + X$ includes expenditure on imports. So the AE curve is the $C + I + G + X$ line minus imports. For example, if a student buys a Honda motorbike made in Japan, the student's expenditure is part of C, but it is not an expenditure on a U.S.-produced good. To find the expenditure on U.S.-produced goods, we subtract the value of the imported motorbike.

FIGURE 30.4

Aggregate Expenditure

MyEconLab Animation



The aggregate expenditure schedule shows the relationship between aggregate planned expenditure and real GDP. For example, in row *B* of the table, when real GDP is $6 trillion, aggregate planned expenditure is $9.50 trillion ($6.50 + $1.25 + $1.00 + $2.25 – $1.50). As real GDP increases, aggregate planned expenditure increases.

This relationship is graphed as the aggregate expenditure curve *AE*. The components of aggregate expenditure that increase with real GDP are consumption expenditure and imports. The other components—investment, government expenditure, and exports—do not vary with real GDP.

	Real GDP (*Y*)	Planned expenditure: Consumption expenditure (*C*)	Investment (*I*)	Government expenditure (*G*)	Exports (*X*)	Imports (*M*)	Aggregate planned expenditure (*AE* = *C* + *I* + *G* + *X* – *M*)
	(trillions of 2005 dollars)						
A	0.00	2.00	1.25	1.00	2.25	0.00	6.50
B	**6.00**	**6.50**	**1.25**	**1.00**	**2.25**	**1.50**	**9.50**
C	12.00	11.00	1.25	1.00	2.25	3.00	12.50
D	13.00	11.75	1.25	1.00	2.25	3.25	13.00
E	14.00	12.50	1.25	1.00	2.25	3.50	13.50
F	15.00	13.25	1.25	1.00	2.25	3.75	14.00

Figure 30.4 shows that aggregate planned expenditure increases as real GDP increases. But notice that for each $1 increase in real GDP, aggregate planned expenditure increases by less than $1. For example, when real GDP increases by $1 trillion, from $12 trillion in row *C* to $13 trillion in row *D* of the table, aggregate planned expenditure increases by $0.5 trillion, from $12.5 trillion to $13 trillion. This feature of the *AE* curve is important and plays a big role in determining equilibrium expenditure and the effect of a change in autonomous expenditure.

The *AE* curve summarizes the relationship between aggregate planned expenditure and real GDP. But what determines the point on the *AE* curve at which the economy operates? What determines actual aggregate expenditure?

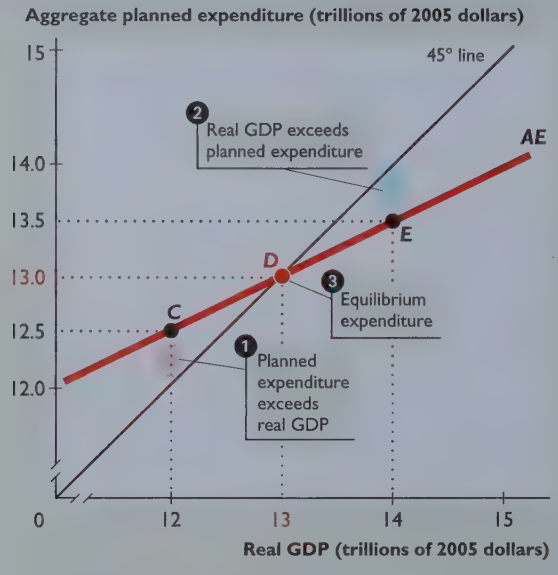
Equilibrium Expenditure

Equilibrium expenditure
The level of aggregate expenditure that occurs when aggregate *planned* expenditure equals real GDP.

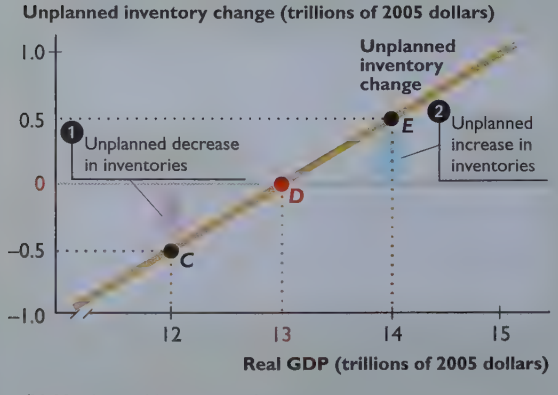
Equilibrium expenditure occurs when aggregate *planned* expenditure equals real GDP. In Figure 30.5(a) aggregate planned expenditure equals real GDP at all the points on the 45° line. Equilibrium occurs where the *AE* curve intersects the 45° line at point *D* with real GDP at $13 trillion. If real GDP is less than $13 trillion, aggregate planned expenditure exceeds real GDP; and if real GDP exceeds $13 trillion, aggregate planned expenditure is less than real GDP.

FIGURE 30.5
Equilibrium Expenditure

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Equilibrium expenditure



(b) Unplanned inventory change

	Real GDP	Aggregate planned expenditure	Unplanned inventory change
	(trillions of 2005 dollars)		
C	12.0	12.5	–0.5
D	13.0	13.0	0.0
E	14.0	13.5	0.5

The table shows expenditure plans and unplanned changes in inventories at different levels of real GDP. Part (a) illustrates equilibrium expenditure, and part (b) shows the unplanned inventory changes that bring changes in real GDP.

1. When aggregate planned expenditure exceeds real GDP, an unplanned decrease in inventories occurs. Firms increase production, and real GDP increases.

2. When real GDP exceeds aggregate planned expenditure, an unplanned increase in inventories occurs. Firms decrease production, and real GDP decreases.

3. When aggregate planned expenditure equals real GDP, there are no unplanned inventory changes and real GDP remains at its equilibrium level.

Convergence to Equilibrium

At equilibrium expenditure, production plans and spending plans agree, and there is no reason for production or spending to change. But when aggregate planned expenditure and actual aggregate expenditure are unequal, production plans and spending plans are misaligned, and a process of convergence toward equilibrium expenditure occurs. Throughout this convergence process, real GDP adjusts.

What are the forces that move aggregate expenditure toward equilibrium? To answer this question, we look at a situation in which aggregate expenditure is away from equilibrium.

Convergence from Below Equilibrium

Suppose that in Figure 30.5, real GDP is $12 trillion. At this level of real GDP, actual aggregate expenditure is also $12 trillion, but aggregate planned expenditure is $12.5 trillion—point *C* in Figure 30.5(a). Aggregate planned expenditure exceeds actual expenditure. When people spend $12.5 trillion and firms produce goods and services worth $12 trillion, firms' inventories decrease by $0.5 trillion—point *C* in Figure 30.5(b). This change in inventories is *unplanned*. Because the change in inventories is part of investment, the decrease in inventories decreases actual investment. So actual investment is $0.5 trillion less than planned investment.

Real GDP doesn't remain at $12 trillion for long. Firms have inventory targets based on their sales, and when inventories fall below target, firms increase production. Firms keep increasing production as long as unplanned decreases in inventories occur.

Eventually firms will have increased production by $1 trillion, so real GDP will have increased to $13 trillion. At this real GDP, aggregate planned expenditure rises to $13 trillion—point *D* in Figure 30.5(a). With aggregate planned expenditure equal to actual expenditure, the unplanned change in inventories is zero and firms hold production constant. The economy has converged on equilibrium expenditure.

Convergence from Above Equilibrium

Now suppose that in Figure 30.5, real GDP is $14 trillion. Actual aggregate expenditure is also $14 trillion, but aggregate planned expenditure is $13.5 trillion—point *E* in Figure 30.5(a). Actual expenditure exceeds planned expenditure and firms' inventories pile up by an unwanted $0.5 trillion—point *E* in Figure 30.5(b).

Real GDP doesn't remain at $14 trillion. Firms now want to lower their inventories, so they decrease production.

Eventually, firms will have decreased production by $1 trillion, so real GDP will have decreased to $13 trillion. At this real GDP, aggregate planned expenditure falls to $13 trillion—point *D* in Figure 30.5(a). With aggregate planned expenditure equal to actual expenditure, the unplanned change in inventories is zero and firms hold production constant. The economy has converged on equilibrium expenditure.

Starting from below equilibrium, unplanned decreases in inventories induce firms to increase production; starting from above equilibrium, unplanned increases in inventories induce firms to decrease production. In both cases, production is pulled toward the equilibrium level at which there are no unplanned inventory changes.

EYE on the PAST

Say's Law and Keynes' Principle of Effective Demand

During the Industrial Revolution, which began around 1760 and lasted for 70 years, technological change was rapid. People have talked about the "new economy" of the 1990s, but the 1990s was just another phase of a process that began in the truly new economy of the late 1700s. The pace of change in economic life during those years was unprecedented. Never before had old jobs been destroyed and new jobs created on such a scale. In this environment of rapid economic change, people began to wonder whether the economy could create enough jobs and a high enough level of demand to ensure that people would buy all the things that the new industrial economy could produce.

A French economist, Jean-Baptiste Say, provided the assurance that people were looking for. Born in 1767 (he was 9 years old when Adam Smith's *Wealth of Nations* was published—see Chapter 1, p. 13), Say suffered the wrath of Napoleon for his conservative call for smaller and leaner government and was the most famous economist of his era. His book *A Treatise on Political Economy (Traité d'économie politique)*, published in 1803, became the best-selling university economics textbook in both Europe and America.

In this book, Say reasoned that *supply creates its own demand*—an idea that came to be called *Say's Law*.

You've seen Say's Law at work in the full-employment economy. The real wage rate adjusts to ensure that the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity of labor supplied and real GDP equals potential GDP. The real interest rate adjusts to ensure that the quantity of investment that firms plan equals the quantity of saving. Because saving equals income minus consumption expenditure, the equilibrium real interest rate ensures that consumption expenditure plus investment exactly equals potential GDP.

Say's Law came under attack at various times during the nineteenth century. But it came under an onslaught during the Great Depression of the 1930s. With a quarter of the labor force unemployed and real GDP at around three quarters of potential GDP, it seemed like a stretch to argue that supply creates its own demand. But there was no simple principle or slogan with which to replace Say's Law.

In the midst of the Great Depression, in 1936, a British economist, John Maynard Keynes, provided the catch phrase that the world was looking for: *effective demand*.

Born in England in 1883, Keynes was one of the outstanding people of the twentieth century. He was a prolific writer on economic issues, represented Britain at the Versailles peace conference at the end of World War I, and played a prominent role in creating the International Monetary Fund, which monitors the global macroeconomy today.

Keynes revolutionized macroeconomic thinking by turning Say's Law on its head. In Keynes' view, supply does *not* create its own demand, and *effective demand* determines real GDP. If businesses spend less on new capital than the amount that people save, equilibrium expenditure will be less than potential GDP. Prices and wages are sticky, and resources can become unemployed and remain unemployed indefinitely.

The aggregate expenditure model that you're studying in this chapter is the modern distillation of Keynes' idea.

Jean-Baptiste Say

John Maynard Keynes

CHECKPOINT 30.2

Explain how real GDP adjusts to achieve equilibrium expenditure.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 30.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Table 1 gives real GDP (Y) and its components in billions of dollars.

TABLE 1

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		Y	C	I	G	X	M
2	A	100	110	50	60	60	15
3	B	200	170	50	60	60	30
4	C	300	230	50	60	60	45
5	D	400	290	50	60	60	60
6	E	500	350	50	60	60	75
7	F	600	410	50	60	60	90

1. Calculate aggregate planned expenditure when real GDP is $200 billion and when real GDP is $600 billion.
2. Calculate equilibrium expenditure.
3. If real GDP is $200 billion, explain the process that moves the economy toward equilibrium expenditure.
4. If real GDP is $600 billion, explain the process that moves the economy toward equilibrium expenditure.

In the News

Wholesale inventories decline, sales rise

Wholesale inventories fell 1.3 percent in August, which helped depress economic output during the recession. Rising sales might encourage businesses to begin restocking their inventories, which would help boost economic growth.

Source: *The New York Times*, October 8, 2009

Explain why a fall in inventories is associated with recession and a restocking of inventories might boost economic growth.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Aggregate planned expenditure equals $C + I + G + X - M$. When real GDP is $200 billion (row B of Table 1), aggregate planned expenditure is $310 billion. When real GDP is $600 billion (row F), aggregate planned expenditure is $490 billion.
2. Equilibrium expenditure occurs when aggregate planned expenditure equals real GDP. Equilibrium expenditure is $400 billion (row D of Table 1).
3. If real GDP is $200 billion, aggregate planned expenditure is $310 billion, which exceeds real GDP. Firms' inventories decrease by $110 billion. Firms' expenditure plans are not fulfilled, so they increase production to restore their inventories. Real GDP increases. As long as aggregate planned expenditure exceeds real GDP, firms increase production and real GDP increases.
4. If real GDP is $600 billion, aggregate planned expenditure is $490 billion, which is less than real GDP. Firms' inventories increase by $110 billion. Firms cut production and try to reduce their inventories. Real GDP decreases. As long as aggregate planned expenditure is less than real GDP, firms' inventories will increase. Firms will cut production as they try to reduce their inventories to their target level. Real GDP decreases.

Solution to In the News

When firms reduce their target level of inventories, planned investment falls and equilibrium expenditure and real GDP decrease—as occurred during the year to August 2009. When firms plan to restock their inventories, the reverse occurs. Equilibrium expenditure and real GDP increase.

30.3 EXPENDITURE MULTIPLIERS

Multiplier
The amount by which a change in any component of autonomous expenditure is magnified or multiplied to determine the change that it generates in equilibrium expenditure and real GDP.

When autonomous expenditure (investment, government expenditure, or exports) increases, aggregate expenditure and real GDP also increase. A **multiplier** determines the amount by which a change in autonomous expenditure is magnified or multiplied to determine the change in equilibrium expenditure and real GDP that it generates.

The Basic Idea of the Multiplier

An increase in investment increases real GDP, which increases disposable income and consumption expenditure. The increase in consumption expenditure adds to the increase in investment and a multiplier determines the magnitude of the resulting increase in aggregate expenditure.

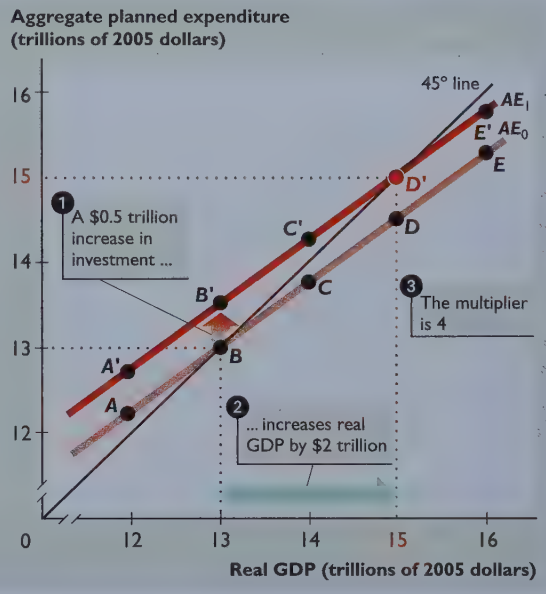
Figure 30.6 illustrates the multiplier. The initial aggregate expenditure schedule graphs as AE_0. Equilibrium expenditure and real GDP are $13 trillion. You can see this equilibrium in row *B* of the table and where the curve AE_0 intersects the 45° line at point *B* in the figure.

Suppose that investment increases by $0.5 trillion. This increase in investment increases aggregate planned expenditure by $0.5 trillion at each level of real GDP. The new *AE* curve is AE_1. The new equilibrium expenditure (row *D'*) occurs where AE_1 intersects the 45° line and is $15 trillion (point *D'*). At this real GDP, aggregate planned expenditure equals real GDP. The increase in equilibrium expenditure ($2 trillion) is *larger* than the increase in investment ($0.5 trillion).

FIGURE 30.6
The Multiplier

MyEconLab Animation

Real GDP (*Y*)	Aggregate planned expenditure: Original (AE_0)		Aggregate planned expenditure: New (AE_1)	
(trillions of 2005 dollars)				
12.00	*A*	12.25	*A'*	12.75
13.00	*B*	13.00	*B'*	13.50
14.00	*C*	13.75	*C'*	14.25
15.00	*D*	14.50	*D'*	15.00
16.00	*E*	15.25	*E'*	15.75



1. A $0.5 trillion increase in investment shifts the *AE* curve upward by $0.5 trillion from AE_0 to AE_1.
2. Equilibrium expenditure increases by $2 trillion from $13 trillion to $15 trillion.
3. The increase in equilibrium expenditure is 4 times the increase in autonomous expenditure, so the multiplier is 4.

The Size of the Multiplier

The multiplier is the amount by which a change in autonomous expenditure is multiplied to determine the change in equilibrium expenditure that it generates. To calculate the multiplier, we divide the change in equilibrium expenditure by the change in autonomous expenditure that generated it. That is,

$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\text{Change in equilibrium expenditure}}{\text{Change in autonomous expenditure}}.$$

The change in equilibrium expenditure also equals the change in real GDP, which we'll call ΔY. In Figure 30.6, the change in autonomous expenditure is a change in investment, which we'll call ΔI. The multiplier is

$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\Delta Y}{\Delta I}.$$

In Figure 30.6, equilibrium expenditure increases by \$2 trillion (ΔY = \$2 trillion) and investment increases by \$0.5 trillion (ΔI = \$0.5 trillion), so

$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\Delta Y}{\Delta I} = \frac{\$2\,\text{trillion}}{\$0.5\,\text{trillion}} = 4.$$

The multiplier is 4—real GDP changes by 4 times the change in investment.

Why is the multiplier greater than 1? It is because an increase in autonomous expenditure induces further increases in aggregate expenditure—induced expenditure increases. If the State of California spends \$10 million on a new highway, aggregate expenditure and real GDP immediately increase by \$10 million. Highway construction workers now have more income, and they spend part of it on cars, vacations, and other goods and services. Real GDP now increases by the initial \$10 million plus the extra consumption expenditure. The producers of cars, vacations, and other goods now have increased incomes, and they in turn spend part of the increase on consumption goods and services. Additional income induces additional expenditure, which creates additional income.

The Multiplier and the *MPC*

Ignoring imports and income taxes, the magnitude of the multiplier depends only on the marginal propensity to consume. To see why, let's do a calculation. The change in real GDP (ΔY) equals the change in consumption expenditure (ΔC) plus the change in investment (ΔI). That is,

$$\Delta Y = \Delta C + \Delta I.$$

But with no income taxes, the change in consumption expenditure is determined by the change in real GDP and the marginal propensity to consume. It is

$$\Delta C = MPC \times \Delta Y.$$

Now substitute $MPC \times \Delta Y$ for ΔC in the previous equation:

$$\Delta Y = MPC \times \Delta Y + \Delta I.$$

Now solve for ΔY as

$$(1 - MPC) \times \Delta Y = \Delta I,$$

and rearrange the equation:

$$\Delta Y = \frac{1}{(1 - MPC)} \Delta I.$$

Finally, divide both sides of the equation by ΔI to give

$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\Delta Y}{\Delta I} = \frac{1}{(1 - MPC)}.$$

In Figure 30.6, the *MPC* is 0.75. So if we use this value of *MPC*,

$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\Delta Y}{\Delta I} = \frac{1}{(1 - 0.75)} = \frac{1}{0.25} = 4.$$

The greater the marginal propensity to consume, the larger is the multiplier. For example, with a marginal propensity to consume of 0.9, the multiplier would be 10. Let's now look at the influence of imports and income taxes.

The Multiplier, Imports, and Income Taxes

The size of the multiplier depends on imports and income taxes, both of which make the multiplier smaller.

When an increase in investment increases consumption and real GDP, part of the increase in expenditure is on imports, not U.S.-produced goods and services. Only expenditure on U.S.-produced goods and services increases U.S. real GDP. The larger the marginal propensity to import, the smaller is the multiplier.

When an increase in investment increases real GDP, income tax payments increase so disposable income increases by less than the increase in real GDP, which means that consumption expenditure increases by less than it would if income tax payments had not changed. The marginal tax rate determines the extent to which income tax payments change when real GDP changes. The **marginal tax rate** is the fraction of a change in real GDP that is paid in income taxes. The larger the marginal tax rate, the smaller are the changes in disposable income and real GDP that result from a given change in autonomous expenditure.

Marginal tax rate
The fraction of a change in real GDP that is paid in income taxes—the change in tax payments divided by the change in real GDP.

The marginal propensity to import and the marginal tax rate together with the marginal propensity to consume determine the multiplier, and their combined influence determines the slope of the *AE* curve. The general formula for the multiplier is

$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\Delta Y}{\Delta I} = \frac{1}{(1 - \text{Slope of } AE \text{ curve})}.$$

Figure 30.7 compares two situations. In Figure 30.7(a), there are no imports and no income taxes. The slope of the *AE* curve equals *MPC*, which is 0.75, so the multiplier is 4 (as we calculated above). In Figure 30.7(b), imports and income taxes decrease the slope of the *AE* curve to 0.5. In this case,

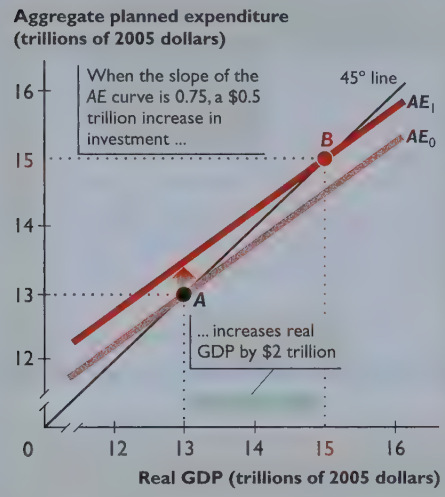
$$\text{Multiplier} = \frac{\Delta Y}{\Delta I} = \frac{1}{(1 - 0.5)} = 2.$$

Over time, the value of the multiplier changes as the marginal tax rate, the marginal propensity to consume, and the marginal propensity to import change. These ongoing changes make the multiplier hard to predict.

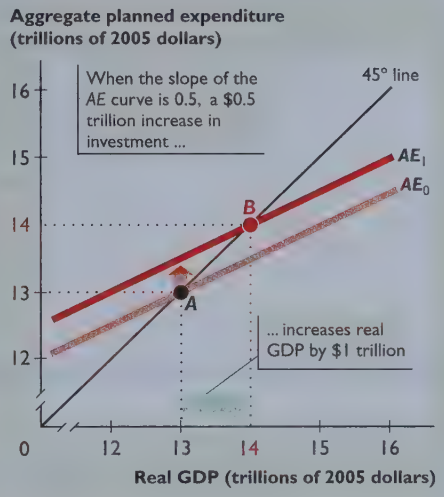
FIGURE 30.7

The Multiplier and the Slope of the *AE* Curve

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Multiplier is 4



(b) Multiplier is 2

In part (a), with no imports and no income taxes, the slope of the *AE* curve equals the marginal propensity to consume, which in this example is 0.75. The multiplier is 4.

In part (b), with imports and income taxes, the slope of the *AE* curve is less than the marginal propensity to consume. In this example, the slope of the *AE* curve is 0.5 and the multiplier is 2.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Looking for Multipliers

You can see multipliers in your daily life if you look in the right places and in the right way.

Look for an event in your home city or state that brings new economic activity. It might be a major construction project that is going on near your home or school. It might be a major sporting event that occurs infrequently and brings a large number of people to a city. Or it might be a major new business that moves into an area or expands its activity level.

What supplies do you see being delivered to the site, event, or new business? How many people do you estimate have jobs at this new activity? Where do the supplies and the workers come from?

This new economic activity sets off a multiplier process. What are the first round multiplier effects? Whose incomes are higher because of the purchase of these supplies and the expenditure of the workers hired by the project?

Where do the workers buy their coffee and lunch? Do their purchases create new jobs for students and others in local coffee shops and fast-food outlets?

Where do the workers and suppliers spend the rest of their incomes?

Now think about the second round and subsequent round effects. Where do the students hired by coffee shops spend their incomes and what additional jobs do those expenditures create?

The process goes on and on.

Business-Cycle Turning Points

When an expansion is triggered by an increase in autonomous expenditure, as the economy turns the corner into expansion, aggregate planned expenditure exceeds real GDP. Firms see their inventories taking an unplanned dive. To meet their inventory targets, firms increase production, and real GDP begins to increase. This initial increase in real GDP brings higher incomes, which stimulate consumption expenditure. The multiplier process kicks in, and the expansion picks up speed.

When a recession is triggered by a decrease in autonomous expenditure, as the economy turns the corner into recession, real GDP exceeds aggregate planned expenditure and unplanned inventories pile up. To cut inventories, firms produce less, and real GDP falls. This initial fall in real GDP brings lower incomes. People cut their consumption expenditure. The multiplier process reinforces the initial cut in autonomous expenditure, and the recession takes hold.

EYE on the MULTIPLIER

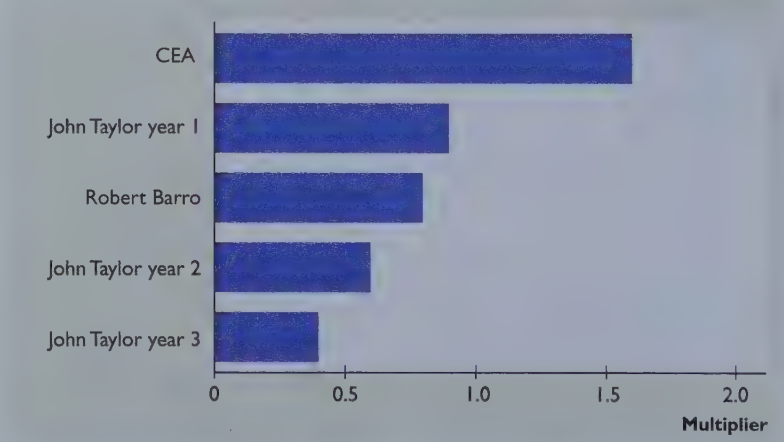
How Big Is the Government Expenditure Multiplier?

Christina Romer, former Chair of the President's Council of Economic Advisers, has estimated the government expenditure multiplier to be 1.6. This number led administration economists to predict that the stimulus plan that increased government expenditure would prevent the unemployment rate from rising much above 8 percent. This prediction turned out to be optimistic and one reason might be that the multiplier assumption is also too optimistic.

Robert Barro, a leading macroeconomist at Harvard University, has studied the effects of very large increases in government expenditure during wars. He finds that the multiplier is only 0.8, which means that real GDP increases by *less than* the increase in government expenditure. The reason is that some private expenditure, mainly investment, gets "crowded out" and real GDP falls.

John Taylor of Stanford University, another leading macroeconomist, agrees with Barro that the government expenditure multiplier is less than 1. He says that crowding out gets more severe as time passes, so the multiplier gets smaller after two years and smaller still after three years.

A big multiplier can occur only if there is substantial slack in the economy—when the recessionary gap is large.



SOURCES OF DATA: Council of Economic Advisers (CEA), Christina Romer and Jared Bernstein, "The Job Impact of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Plan," January 2009; Robert J. Barro, "Government Spending Is No Free Lunch," *The Wall Street Journal*, January 22, 2009; John F. Cogan, Tobias Cwik, John B. Taylor, Volker Wieland, "New Keynesian versus Old Keynesian Government Spending Multipliers," February 2009.

CHECKPOINT 30.3

Explain the expenditure multiplier.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 30.3 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

An economy has no imports and no income taxes, *MPC* is 0.80, and real GDP is $150 billion. Businesses increase investment by $5 billion. Use this information to answer Problems **1** and **2**.

1. Calculate the multiplier and the change in real GDP.
2. Calculate the new level of real GDP and explain why real GDP increases by more than $5 billion.
3. In an economy with no imports and no income taxes, an increase in autonomous expenditure of $2 trillion increases equilibrium expenditure by $8 trillion. Calculate the multiplier and the marginal propensity to consume. What happens to the multiplier if an income tax is introduced?

In the News

Keystone XL pipeline—Alberta to the Gulf of Mexico

TransCanada says building the $7 billion pipeline would put 20,000 Americans directly to work during the construction phase and add an expected 118,000 spin-off jobs. The project would also pump $20 billion into the U.S. economy.

Source: CNN Money, September 30, 2011

Explain how TransCanada's investment of $7 billion could create spin-off jobs and pump $20 billion into the U.S. economy.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The multiplier equals $1/(1 - MPC)$. *MPC* is 0.8, so the multiplier is 5.

   Real GDP increases by $25 billion. The increase in investment increases real GDP by the multiplier (5) times the change in investment ($5 billion).
2. Real GDP increases from $150 billion to $175 billion. Real GDP increases by more than $5 billion because the increase in investment induces an increase in consumption expenditure.
3. The multiplier is the increase in equilibrium expenditure ($8 trillion) divided by the increase in autonomous expenditure ($2 trillion). The multiplier is 4.

   The marginal propensity to consume is 0.75. The multiplier is $1/(1 - MPC)$. So $4 = 1/(1 - MPC)$ and *MPC* is 0.75.

   If the government introduces an income tax, the slope of the *AE* curve becomes smaller and the multiplier becomes smaller.

Solution to In the News

The investment of $7 billion will increase real GDP by more than $7 billion because the investment multiplier exceeds 1. When construction begins, new jobs are created and these workers will receive an income. They will spend part of it on consumption goods and services, which in turn will create jobs in other industries—spin-off jobs. These workers will earn an income and they will spend part of it on consumption goods and services. TransCanada says that the multiplier is $20 billion ÷ $7 billion, which is almost 3, an optimistic estimate.

30.4 THE *AD* CURVE AND EQUILIBRIUM EXPENDITURE

In this chapter, we've studied the aggregate expenditure model, in which firms change production when sales and inventories change but they don't change their prices. The aggregate expenditure model determines equilibrium expenditure and real GDP at a given price level. In Chapter 29, we studied the simultaneous determination of real GDP and the price level using the *AS-AD* model. The aggregate demand curve and equilibrium expenditure are related, and this section shows you how.

Deriving the *AD* Curve from Equilibrium Expenditure

The *AE* curve is the relationship between aggregate planned expenditure and real GDP when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same. A movement along the *AE* curve arises from a change in real GDP.

The *AD* curve is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same. A movement along the *AD* curve arises from a change in the price level.

Equilibrium expenditure depends on the price level. When the price level rises, other things remaining the same, aggregate planned expenditure decreases and equilibrium expenditure decreases. And when the price level falls, other things remaining the same, aggregate planned expenditure increases and equilibrium expenditure increases. The reason is that a change in the price level changes the buying power of money, the real interest rate, and the real prices of exports and imports (see Chapter 29, pp. 750–752).

When the price level rises, each of these effects decreases aggregate planned expenditure at each level of real GDP. So the *AE* curve shifts downward. A fall in the price level has the opposite effect. When the price level falls, the *AE* curve shifts upward.

Figure 30.8(a) shows the effects of a change in the price level on the *AE* curve and equilibrium expenditure. When the price level is 110, the *AE* curve is AE_0, and it intersects the 45° line at point *B*. Equilibrium expenditure is $14 trillion. If the price level rises to 130, aggregate planned expenditure decreases and the *AE* curve shifts downward to AE_1. Equilibrium expenditure decreases to $13 trillion at point *A*. If the price level falls to 90, aggregate planned expenditure increases and the *AE* curve shifts upward to AE_2. Equilibrium expenditure increases to $15 trillion at point *C*.

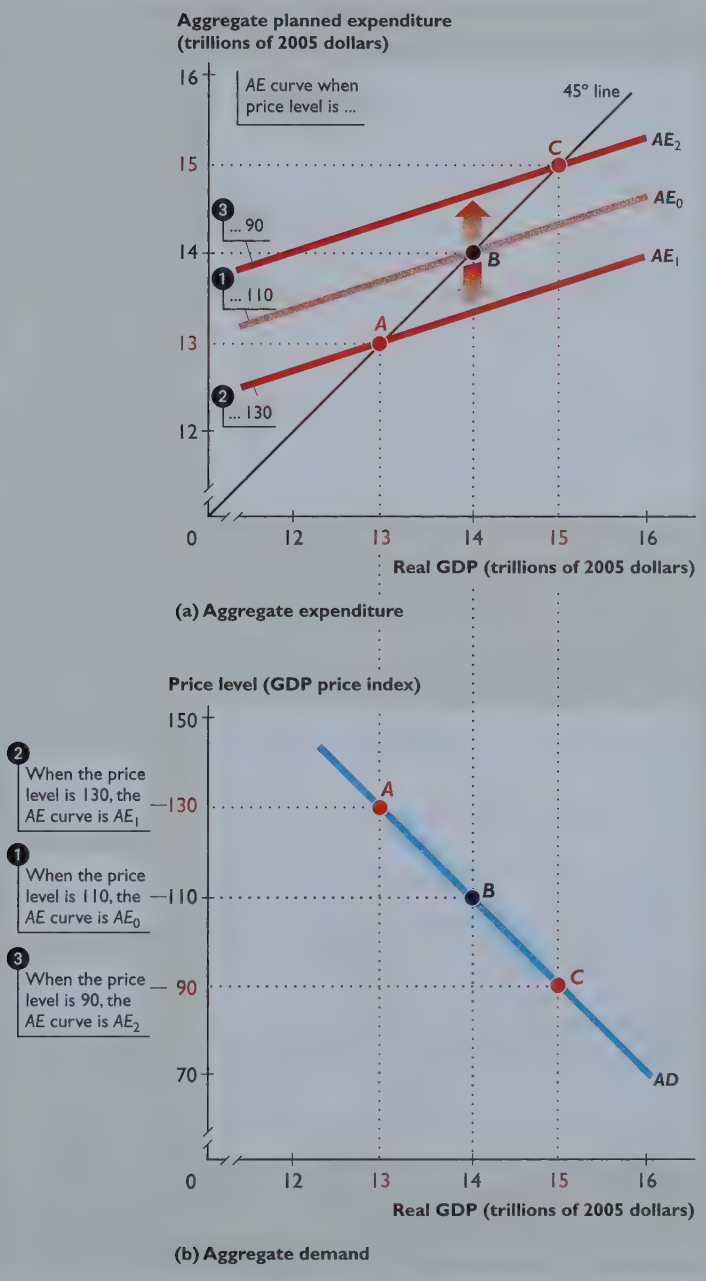
The price level changes that shift the *AE* curve and change equilibrium expenditure bring movements along the *AD* curve. Figure 30.8(b) shows these movements. At a price level of 110, the quantity of real GDP demanded is $14 trillion—point *B* on the *AD* curve. If the price level rises to 130, the quantity of real GDP demanded decreases along the *AD* curve to $13 trillion at point *A*. If the price level falls to 90, the quantity of real GDP demanded increases along the *AD* curve to $15 trillion at point *C*.

The two parts of Figure 30.8 are connected and illustrate the relationship between the *AE* curve and the *AD* curve. Each point of equilibrium expenditure corresponds to a point on the *AD* curve. The equilibrium expenditure points *A*, *B*, and *C* (part a) correspond to the points *A*, *B*, and *C* on the *AD* curve (part b).

FIGURE 30.8

Equilibrium Expenditure and Aggregate Demand

MyEconLab Animation



A change in the price level shifts the *AE* curve and results in a movement along the *AD* curve.

1. When the price level is 110, equilibrium expenditure is $14 trillion at point *B* on the *AE* curve AE_0 and the quantity of real GDP demanded is $14 trillion at point *B* on the *AD* curve.
2. When the price level rises to 130, the *AE* curve shifts downward to AE_1 and equilibrium expenditure decreases to $13 trillion at point *A*. The quantity of real GDP demanded decreases along the *AD* curve to point *A*.
3. When the price level falls to 90, the *AE* curve shifts upward to AE_2 and equilibrium expenditure increases to $15 trillion at point *C*. The quantity of real GDP demanded increases along the *AD* curve to point *C*.

Points *A*, *B*, and *C* on the *AD* curve in part (b) correspond to the equilibrium expenditure points *A*, *B*, and *C* in part (a).

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 30.4 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 30.4

Derive the *AD* curve from equilibrium expenditure.

Practice Problems

An economy has the following aggregate expenditure schedules:

TABLE 1

Real GDP (trillions of 2005 dollars)	Aggregate planned expenditure in trillions of 2005 dollars when the price level is		
	110	100	90
0	1.0	1.5	2.0
1.0	1.5	2.0	2.5
2.0	2.0	2.5	3.0
3.0	2.5	3.0	3.5
4.0	3.0	3.5	4.0
5.0	3.5	4.0	4.5
6.0	4.0	4.5	5.0

1. Make a graph of the *AE* curve at each price level. On the graph, mark the equilibrium expenditure at each price level.
2. Construct the aggregate demand schedule and plot the *AD* curve.

In the News

Price jump worst in 3 years

An increase in the price of essentials such as oil, food and cotton left U.S consumers struggling with the highest inflation rate in three years.

Source: CNN Money, September 26, 2011

Explain the effect of a rise in the price level on equilibrium expenditure.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Figure 1 shows the three *AE* curves and the three levels of equilibrium expenditure. When the price level is 90, equilibrium expenditure is $4 trillion. When the price level is 100, equilibrium expenditure is $3 trillion. When the price level is 110, equilibrium expenditure is $2 trillion.
2. Table 2 shows the aggregate demand schedule, and Figure 2 shows the aggregate demand curve.

Solution to In the News

A rise in the price level decreases consumption expenditure, which decreases aggregate planned expenditure and shifts the *AE* curve downward. Equilibrium expenditure decreases.

FIGURE 1

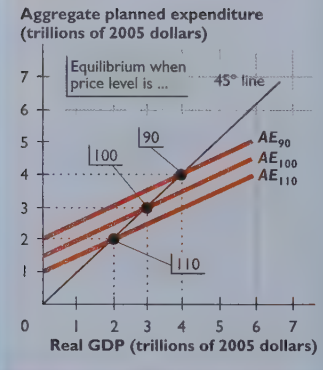
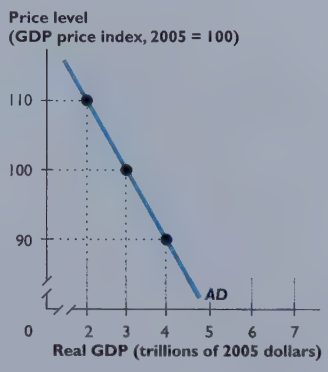


TABLE 2

Price level	Real GDP demanded (trillions of 2005 dollars)
90	4
100	3
110	2

FIGURE 2



CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Explain how real GDP influences expenditure plans.

- Autonomous expenditure is the sum of the components of aggregate expenditure that real GDP does not influence directly.
- Induced expenditure is the sum of the components of aggregate expenditure that real GDP influences.
- Consumption expenditure varies with disposable income and real GDP and depends on the marginal propensity to consume.
- Imports vary with real GDP and depend on the marginal propensity to import.

2 Explain how real GDP adjusts to achieve equilibrium expenditure.

- Actual aggregate expenditure equals real GDP, but when aggregate planned expenditure differs from real GDP, firms have unplanned inventory changes.
- If aggregate planned expenditure exceeds real GDP, firms increase production and real GDP increases. If real GDP exceeds aggregate planned expenditure, firms decrease production and real GDP decreases.
- Real GDP changes until aggregate planned expenditure equals real GDP.

3 Explain the expenditure multiplier.

- When autonomous expenditure changes, equilibrium expenditure changes by a larger amount: There is a multiplier.
- The multiplier is greater than 1 because a change in autonomous expenditure changes induced expenditure.
- The larger the marginal propensity to consume, the larger is the multiplier.
- Income taxes and imports make the multiplier smaller.

4 Derive the *AD* curve from equilibrium expenditure.

- The *AD* curve is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same.
- The quantity of real GDP demanded on the *AD* curve is the equilibrium real GDP when aggregate planned expenditure equals real GDP.

Key Terms

Aggregate planned expenditure, 770
Consumption function, 770
Equilibrium expenditure, 778
Marginal propensity to consume, 772
Marginal propensity to import, 774
Marginal tax rate, 784
Multiplier, 782

MyEconLab
You can work this quiz in Chapter 30 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Table 1 shows disposable income and saving in an economy. Use Table 1 to answer Problems **1** and **2**.

TABLE 1

Disposable income	Saving
(trillions of dollars)	
0	−5
10	−3
20	−1
30	1
40	3
50	5

1. Calculate consumption expenditure at each level of disposable income. Over what range of disposable income is there dissaving? Estimate the level of disposable income at which saving is zero.
2. Calculate the marginal propensity to consume. If wealth increases by $10 trillion, in which direction will the consumption function change?

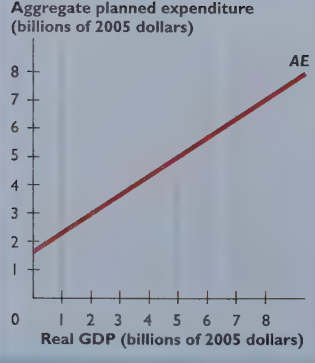
Table 2 shows real GDP, *Y*, consumption expenditure, *C*, investment, *I*, government expenditure on goods and services, *G*, exports, *X*, imports, *M*, and aggregate planned expenditure, *AE*, in millions of dollars. Taxes are constant. Use Table 2 to work Problems **3**, **4**, and **5**.

TABLE 2

	Planned expenditure					
Y	*C*	*I*	*G*	*X*	*M*	*AE*
0	2.0	1.75	1.0	1.25	0	6.0
2	**Q**	1.75	1.0	1.25	0.4	6.8
4	4.4	**R**	1.0	1.25	0.8	7.6
6	5.6	1.75	**S**	1.25	1.2	8.4
8	6.8	1.75	1.0	**T**	1.6	9.2
10	8.0	1.75	1.0	1.25	**U**	10.0
12	9.2	1.75	1.0	1.25	2.4	**V**

3. Find the value of Q, R, S, T, U, and V.
4. Calculate the marginal propensity to consume and the marginal propensity to import. What is equilibrium expenditure?
5. If investment crashes to $0.55 million but nothing else changes, what is equilibrium expenditure and what is the multiplier?
6. Figure 1 shows aggregate planned expenditure when the price level is 100. When the price level increases to 110, aggregate planned expenditure changes by $0.5 trillion. What is the quantity of real GDP demanded when the price level is 100 and 110?

FIGURE 1



Durable goods orders rebound in May; GDP revised up
Businesses boosted their orders for machinery 1.2%, computers 1.3%, communications equipment 3.6%, and transportation products 5.8%—much was a surge in orders for commercial aircraft.

Source: Associated Press, June 24, 2011

Use this information to work Problems **7** and **8**.

7. Explain the process by which an increase in planned investment at a constant price level changes equilibrium expenditure and real GDP.
8. What determines the increase in aggregate demand resulting from an increase in business investment?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. The output gap in the second quarter of 2009 was $0.8 trillion. How much fiscal stimulus would be required to close the output gap if the multiplier was as large as the Obama team believes? How much fiscal stimulus would be required if the multiplier was as large as Robert Barro believes?

Table 1 shows disposable income and consumption expenditure in an economy. Use Table 1 to work Problems 2 and 3.

TABLE 1

Disposable income	Consumption expenditure
(billions of dollars)	
200	350
400	500
600	650
800	800
1,000	950

2. Calculate saving at each level of disposable income. Over what range of disposable income does consumption expenditure exceed disposable income? Calculate autonomous consumption expenditure.
3. Calculate the marginal propensity to consume. At what level of disposable income will saving be zero? If expected future income increases, in which direction will the consumption function change?

Use the following information to work Problems 4 to 6.

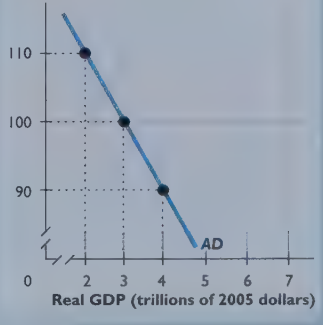
In an economy with no exports and no imports, autonomous consumption is $1 trillion, the marginal propensity to consume is 0.8, investment is $5 trillion, and government expenditure on goods and services is $4 trillion. Taxes are $4 trillion and do not vary with real GDP.

4. If real GDP is $30 trillion, calculate disposable income, consumption expenditure, and aggregate planned expenditure. What is equilibrium expenditure?
5. If real GDP is $30 trillion, explain the process that takes the economy to equilibrium expenditure. If real GDP is $40 trillion, explain the process that takes the economy to equilibrium expenditure.
6. If investment increases by $0.5 trillion, calculate the change in equilibrium expenditure and the multiplier.

Use the following information to work Problems 7 and 8.

Figure 1 shows the aggregate demand curve in an economy. Suppose that aggregate planned expenditure increases by $0.75 trillion for each $1 trillion increase in real GDP.

FIGURE 1



7. If investment increases by $1 trillion, calculate the change in the quantity of real GDP demanded if the price level is 100.
8. Compare the shift of the *AD* curve with the $1 trillion increase in investment. Explain the magnitude of the shift of the *AD* curve.
9. **Federal deficit hits record $1.42 trillion**

   The 2009 federal budget deficit of $1.42 trillion is more than three times as large as the deficit in any other single year. In September, the government spent $46.6 billion more than it collected in tax revenue. The 2008 budget deficit was $459 billion.

   Source: *USA Today*, October 16, 2009

   By how much did real GDP increase as a result of the government's additional $46.6 billion of expenditure if the multiplier is what the Obama team believed it to be?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 30 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The consumption function shows how an increase in _____ influences _____.
   A. income; households' aggregate planned expenditure
   B. nominal GDP; consumption expenditure
   C. disposable income; consumption expenditure
   D. consumption as a fraction of income; real GDP
2. The marginal propensity to consume tells us by how much _____ changes when _____ changes.
   A. consumption expenditure; wealth
   B. the real interest rate; planned consumption
   C. expected future income; the percentage of income spent
   D. consumption expenditure; disposable income
3. Induced expenditure includes _____.
   A. consumption expenditure, government expenditure, and exports
   B. investment, exports, and imports
   C. consumption expenditure and imports
   D. consumption expenditure, investment, and government expenditure
4. The aggregate planned expenditure curve _____ increases.
   A. slopes upward because induced expenditure increases as income
   B. is horizontal because autonomous expenditure is constant when income
   C. shifts upward if induced expenditure increases as income
   D. slopes upward because autonomous expenditure
5. If real GDP _____ planned expenditure, the economy converges to equilibrium expenditure because inventories _____ and firms increase production.
   A. exceeds ; pile up
   B. exceeds; are run down
   C. is less than; are run down
   D. is less than; pile up
6. The multiplier equals _____ divided by _____.
   A. the marginal propensity to consume; autonomous expenditure
   B. 1; (1 – Slope of the *AE* curve)
   C. 1; Slope of the *AE* curve
   D. Slope of the *AE* curve; the marginal propensity to consume
7. The multiplier will increase if the marginal propensity to consume _____ or the marginal tax rate _____.
   A. increases; decreases
   B. increases; increases
   C. decreases; increases
   D. decreases; decreases
8. A rise in the price level shifts the *AE* curve _____.
   A. upward and creates a movement up along the *AD* curve
   B. downward and creates a movement up along the *AD* curve
   C. upward and shifts the *AD* curve rightward
   D. downward and shifts the *AD* curve leftward

Can we have low unemployment *and* low inflation?

31

The Short-Run Policy Tradeoff

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the short-run tradeoff between inflation and unemployment.
2. Distinguish between the short-run and the long-run Phillips curves and describe the shifting tradeoff between inflation and unemployment.
3. Explain how the Fed can influence the inflation rate and the unemployment rate.

31.1 THE SHORT-RUN PHILLIPS CURVE

Short-run Phillips curve
A curve that shows the relationship between the inflation rate and the unemployment rate when the natural unemployment rate and the expected inflation rate remain constant.

The **short-run Phillips curve** is a curve that shows the relationship between the inflation rate and the unemployment rate when the natural unemployment rate and the expected inflation rate remain constant.

Figure 31.1 illustrates the short-run Phillips curve. Here, the natural unemployment rate is 6 percent and the expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year. At full employment, the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate and the inflation rate equals the expected inflation rate at point *B*. This point is the anchor point for the short-run Phillips curve.

In an expansion, the unemployment rate decreases and the inflation rate rises. For example, the economy might move to a point such as *A*, where the unemployment rate is 5 percent and the inflation rate is 4 percent a year.

In a recession, the unemployment rate increases and the inflation rate falls. For example, the economy might move to a point such as *C*, where the unemployment rate is 7 percent and the inflation rate is 2 percent a year.

The short-run Phillips curve presents a *tradeoff* between inflation and unemployment. Along a given short-run Phillips curve, a lower unemployment rate can be achieved only by paying the cost of a higher inflation rate, and a lower inflation rate can be achieved only by paying the cost of a higher unemployment rate. For example, in Figure 31.1, a decrease in the unemployment rate from 6 percent to 5 percent costs a 1-percentage-point increase in the inflation rate from 3 percent a year to 4 percent a year.

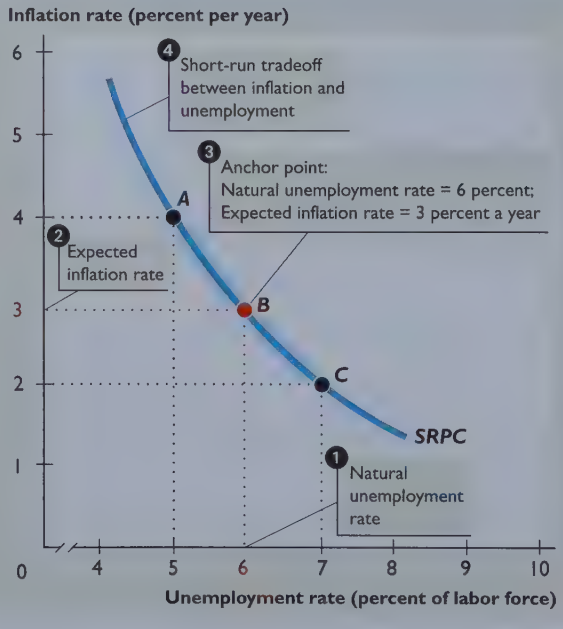
FIGURE 31.1
A Short-Run Phillips Curve

MyEconLab Animation

❶ If the natural unemployment rate is 6 percent, and ❷ the expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year, then ❸ point *B* is at full employment on a short-run Phillips curve.

❹ The short-run Phillips curve (*SRPC*) shows the tradeoff between inflation and unemployment at the given natural unemployment rate and expected inflation rate.

A higher unemployment rate brings a lower inflation rate, and a lower unemployment rate brings a higher inflation rate.



Aggregate Supply and the Short-Run Phillips Curve

The short-run Phillips curve is another way of looking at the upward-sloping aggregate supply curve that you learned about in Chapter 29—see pp. 744–748.

Both the short-run Phillips curve and the aggregate supply curve arise because the money wage rate is fixed in the short run.

Along an aggregate supply curve, the money wage rate is fixed. So when the price level rises, the *real wage rate* falls, and a fall in the real wage rate increases the quantity of labor employed and increases the quantity of real GDP supplied.

The events that we've just described also play out along a short-run Phillips curve. The rise in the price level means that the inflation rate has (perhaps temporarily) increased. The increase in the quantity of labor employed means a decrease in the number unemployed and a fall in the unemployment rate.

So a movement along an aggregate supply curve is equivalent to a movement along a short-run Phillips curve. Let's explore these connections between the aggregate supply curve and the short-run Phillips curve a bit more closely.

Unemployment and Real GDP

In a given period, with a fixed amount of capital and a given state of technology, real GDP depends on the quantity of labor employed. At full employment, the quantity of real GDP is *potential GDP* and the unemployment rate is the natural unemployment rate. If real GDP exceeds potential GDP, employment exceeds its full-employment level and the unemployment rate falls below the natural unemployment rate. Similarly, if real GDP is less than potential GDP, employment is less than its full-employment level and the unemployment rate rises above the natural unemployment rate.

The quantitative relationship between the unemployment rate and real GDP was first estimated by economist Arthur M. Okun and is called **Okun's Law.** Okun's Law states that for each percentage point that the unemployment rate is above (below) the natural unemployment rate, real GDP is 2 percentage points below (above) potential GDP. For example, if the natural unemployment rate is 6 percent and potential GDP is $10 trillion, then when the actual unemployment rate is 7 percent, real GDP is $9.8 trillion—98 percent of potential GDP, or 2 percentage points below potential GDP. And when the actual unemployment rate is 5 percent, real GDP is $10.2 trillion—102 percent of potential GDP, or 2 percentage points above potential GDP. Table 31.1 summarizes this relationship.

Okun's Law
For each percentage point that the unemployment rate is above (below) the natural unemployment rate, real GDP is 2 percentage points below (above) potential GDP.

TABLE 31.1

	Unemployment rate (percent)	Real GDP (trillions of 2005 dollars)
A	5	10.2
B	6	10.0
C	7	9.8

Inflation and the Price Level

The inflation rate is the percentage change in the price level. So starting from last period's price level, the higher the inflation rate, the higher is the current period's price level. Suppose that last year, the price level was 100. If the inflation rate is 2 percent, the price level rises to 102; if the inflation rate is 3 percent, the price level rises to 103; and if the inflation rate is 4 percent, the price level rises to 104.

With these relationships between the unemployment rate and real GDP (in Table 31.1) and between the inflation rate and the price level, we can establish the connection between the short-run Phillips curve and the aggregate supply curve. Figure 31.2 shows this connection.

First suppose that in the current year, real GDP equals potential GDP and the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate. In Figure 31.2, real

GDP is $10 trillion and the unemployment rate is 6 percent. The economy is at point *B* on the short-run Phillips curve in part (a) and point *B* on the aggregate supply curve in part (b). The inflation rate is 3 percent a year (its expected rate) in part (a), and the price level is 103 (also its expected level) in part (b).

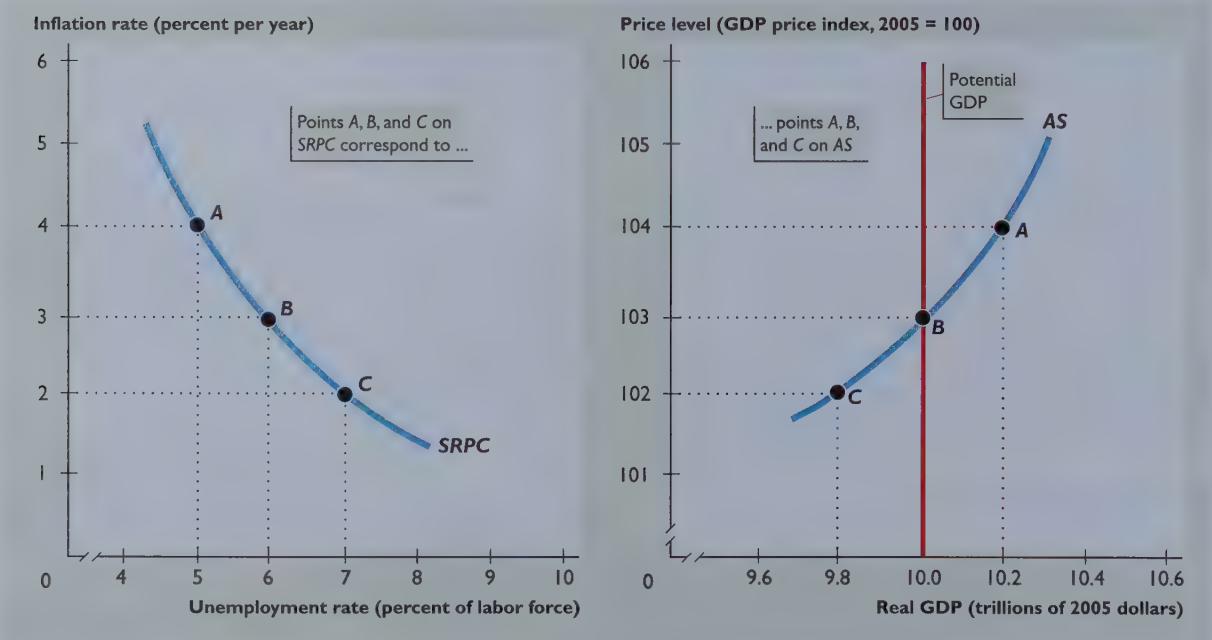
Next suppose that instead of being at full employment, the economy is above full employment with real GDP of $10.2 trillion at point *A* on the aggregate supply curve in Figure 31.2(b). In this case, the unemployment rate is 5 percent in Table 31.1 and the economy is at point *A* on the short-run Phillips curve in Figure 31.2(a). The inflation rate is 4 percent a year (higher than expected) in part (a), and the price level is 104 (also higher than expected) in part (b).

Finally, suppose that the economy is below full employment with real GDP of $9.8 trillion at point *C* on the aggregate supply curve in Figure 31.2(b). In this case, the unemployment rate is 7 percent in Table 31.1 and the economy is at point *C* on the short-run Phillips curve in Figure 31.2(a). The inflation rate is 2 percent a year (lower than expected) in part (a), and the price level is 102 (also lower than expected) in part (b).

FIGURE 31.2

The Short-Run Phillips Curve and the Aggregate Supply Curve

MyEconLab Animation



(a) The short-run Phillips curve

(b) The aggregate supply curve

Point *A* on the Phillips curve corresponds to point *A* on the aggregate supply curve: The unemployment rate is 5 percent and the inflation rate is 4 percent a year in part (a), and real GDP is $10.2 trillion and the price level is 104 in part (b).

Point *B* on the Phillips curve corresponds to point *B* on the aggregate supply curve: The unemployment rate is 6 percent and the inflation rate is 3 percent a year in part (a), and real GDP is $10 trillion and the price level is 103 in part (b).

Point *C* on the Phillips curve corresponds to point *C* on the aggregate supply curve: The unemployment rate is 7 percent and the inflation rate is 2 percent a year in part (a), and real GDP is $9.8 trillion and the price level is 102 in part (b).

Aggregate Demand Fluctuations

A decrease in aggregate demand that brings a movement down along the aggregate supply curve from point *B* to point *C* lowers the price level and decreases real GDP. That same decrease in aggregate demand brings a movement down along the Phillips curve from point *B* to point *C*.

Similarly, an increase in aggregate demand that brings a movement up along the aggregate supply curve from point *B* to point *A* raises the price level and increases real GDP relative to what they would have been. That same increase in aggregate demand brings a movement up along the Phillips curve from point *B* to point *A*.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

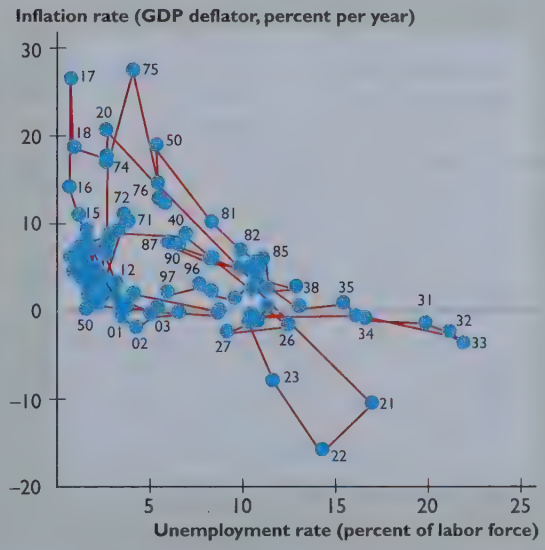
Inflation and Unemployment

The Phillips curve is so named because New Zealand economist A.W. (Bill) Phillips discovered the relationship in about 100 years of unemployment and wage inflation data for the United Kingdom.

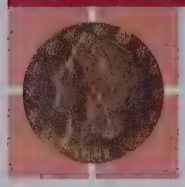
The figure shows data on inflation and unemployment in the United Kingdom over most of the twentieth century—1900 to 1997. The data reveal no neat, tight tradeoff. The short-run tradeoff shifts around a great deal.

The highest inflation rate did not occur at the lowest unemployment rate, and the lowest inflation rate did not occur at the highest unemployment rate. But the lowest unemployment rate in 1917 did bring a high inflation rate. And the highest unemployment rate during the Great Depression of the 1930s brought a gently falling price level.

A.W. (Bill) Phillips



SOURCE: Michael Parkin, "Unemployment, Inflation, and Monetary Policy," *Canadian Journal of Economics*, November 1998.

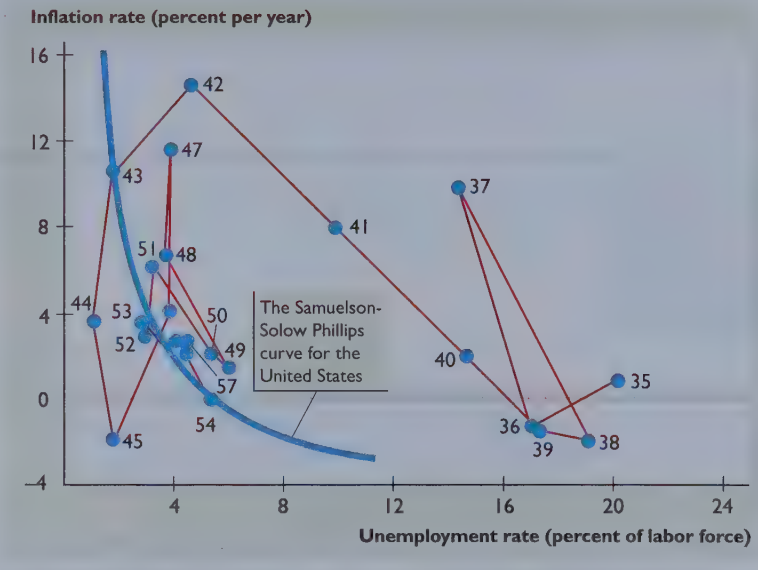


EYE on the PAST

The U.S. Phillips Curve

Phillips made his discovery in 1958, two years before the election of John F. Kennedy as President of the United States. Very soon thereafter, two young American economists, Paul A. Samuelson and Robert M. Solow, both at MIT and eager to help the new Kennedy administration to pursue a low-unemployment strategy, looked for a Phillips curve in the U.S. data. The figure shows what they found: The red line joining the blue dots shows no recognizable relationship between inflation and unemployment for the 20 or so years that they studied.

Giving more weight to the 1950s experience, Samuelson and Solow proposed the Phillips curve shown in the figure. They believed that the U.S. Phillips curve provided support for the then growing view that the new Kennedy administration could pursue a low unemployment policy with only a moderate rise in the inflation rate.



SOURCE OF DATA: Paul A. Samuelson and Robert M. Solow, "Problem of Achieving and Maintaining a Stable Price Level, Analytical Aspects of Anti-Inflation Policy." *American Economic Review*, 50(2), May 1960.

As the 1960s unfolded, the Samuelson-Solow version of the Phillips curve began to look like a permanent tradeoff between inflation and unemployment. But in the late 1960s and early 1970s, the relationship disappeared in the face of rising inflation expectations.

■ Why Bother with the Phillips Curve?

You've seen that the short-run Phillips curve is another way of looking at the aggregate supply curve. And you might be wondering, why bother with the short-run Phillips curve? Isn't the aggregate supply curve adequate for describing the short-run tradeoff?

The Phillips curve is useful for two reasons. First, it focuses directly on two policy targets: the inflation rate and the unemployment rate. Second, the aggregate supply curve shifts whenever the money wage rate or potential GDP changes. Such changes occur every day, so the aggregate supply curve is not a stable tradeoff. The short-run Phillips curve isn't a stable tradeoff either, but it is more stable than the aggregate supply curve. The short-run Phillips curve shifts only when the natural unemployment rate changes or when the expected inflation rate changes.

CHECKPOINT 31.1

Describe the short-run tradeoff between inflation and unemployment.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 31.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

Table 1 describes five possible outcomes for 2012, depending on the level of aggregate demand in that year. Potential GDP is $10 trillion, and the natural unemployment rate is 5 percent.

1. Calculate the inflation rate for each possible outcome.
2. Use Okun's Law to find real GDP at each unemployment rate in Table 1.
3. What are the expected price level and the expected inflation rate in 2012?
4. Plot the short-run Phillips curve for 2012. Mark the points *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E* that correspond to the data in Table 1 and that you have calculated.
5. Plot the aggregate supply curve for 2012. Mark the points *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E* that correspond to the data in Table 1.

TABLE 1

	Price level (2011 = 100)	Unemployment rate (percentage)
A	102.5	9
B	105.0	6
C	106.0	5
D	107.5	4
E	110.0	3

In the News

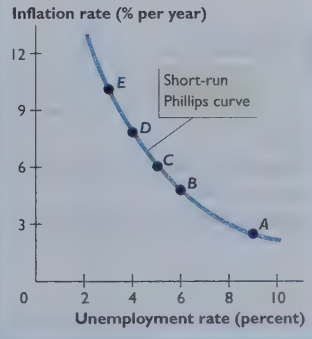
Canada's inflation rises and unemployment falls

After two months of little change, inflation rose to 3.1 percent a year in September and pushed the unemployment rate down to 7.1 percent.

Source: TradingEconomics.com, October 7, 2011

With expected inflation steady at 2.5 percent a year, did the economy move along its short-run Phillips curve? If so, how? Or did the economy move off its short-run Phillips curve?

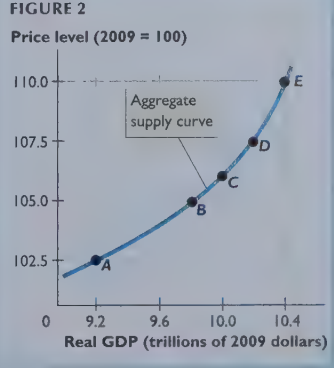
FIGURE 1



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The inflation rate equals the price level minus 100. So for *A*, the inflation rate is 102.5 − 100 = 2.5. Calculate the other inflation rates in the same way.
2. Okun's Law is that the output gap = $-2 \times (U - U^*)$ percent, where U is the unemployment rate and U^* is the natural unemployment rate. So for *A*, the output gap = $-2 \times (9 - 5) = -8$, which means that real GDP is 8 percent below potential GDP and equals $9.2 trillion. Calculate the other levels of real GDP in the same way.
3. The expected price level is 106 and the expected inflation rate is 6 percent—row *C* at full employment.
4. Plot the inflation rate (Problem 1) against the unemployment rate (Table 1) to get the short-run Phillips curve (Figure 1).
5. Plot the price level (Table 1) against real GDP (Problem 2) to get the aggregate supply curve (Figure 2).

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

With the expected inflation rate steady at 2.5 percent a year, the increase in inflation was unexpected. The Canadian economy remained on its short-run Phillips curve and moved leftward up along it as the inflation rate rose and the unemployment rate fell.

31.2 SHORT-RUN AND LONG-RUN PHILLIPS CURVES

The short-run Phillips curve shows the *tradeoff* between inflation and unemployment when the natural unemployment rate and expected inflation rate remain the same. Changes in the natural unemployment rate and the expected inflation rate change the short-run tradeoff and changes in the expected inflation rate give rise to a *long-run* Phillips curve that we'll now examine.

The Long-Run Phillips Curve

Long-run Phillips curve
The vertical line that shows the relationship between inflation and unemployment when the economy is at full employment.

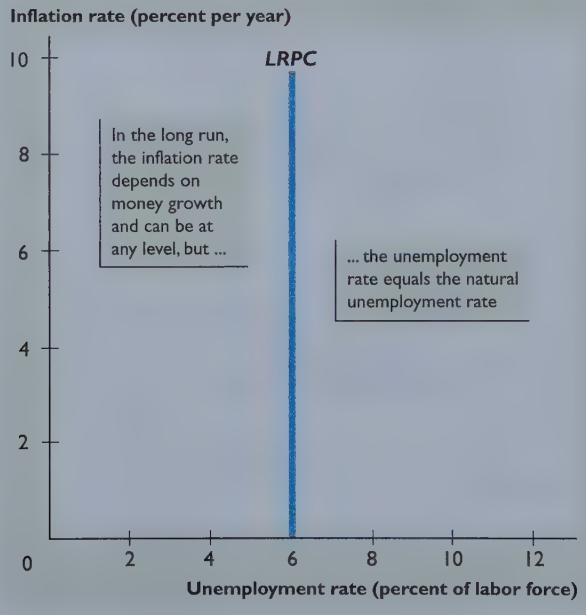
The **long-run Phillips curve** shows the relationship between inflation and unemployment when the economy is at full employment. At full employment, the unemployment rate is the *natural unemployment rate*, so on the long-run Phillips curve, there is only one possible unemployment rate: the natural unemployment rate.

In contrast, the inflation rate can take on any value at full employment. You learned in Chapter 28 (pp. 728–731) that at full employment, for a given real GDP growth rate, the greater the money growth rate, the greater is the inflation rate.

This description of the economy at full employment tells us the properties of the long-run Phillips curve: It is a vertical line located at the natural unemployment rate. In Figure 31.3, the long-run Phillips curve is *LRPC* along which the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate and any inflation rate is possible.

FIGURE 31.3
The Long-Run Phillips Curve
MyEconLab Animation

The long-run Phillips curve is a vertical line at the natural unemployment rate. In the long run, there is no unemployment–inflation tradeoff.



Expected Inflation

Expected inflation rate
The inflation rate that people forecast and use to set the money wage rate and other money prices.

The **expected inflation rate** is the inflation rate that people forecast and use to set the money wage rate and other money prices. Suppose there is full employment and McDonald's servers earn $10 an hour. With no inflation, a money wage rate of $10 an hour keeps the market for servers in equilibrium. But with 10 percent inflation, a constant money wage rate means a falling real wage rate and a shortage of servers. Now, a 10 percent rise in the money wage rate to $11 is needed to keep the market for servers in equilibrium. If McDonald's and everyone else expect 10 percent inflation, the money wage rate will rise by 10 percent to prevent a labor shortage from arising.

If expectations about the inflation rate turn out to be correct, the price level rises by the 10 percent expected and the real wage rate remains constant at its full-employment equilibrium level and unemployment remains at the natural unemployment rate.

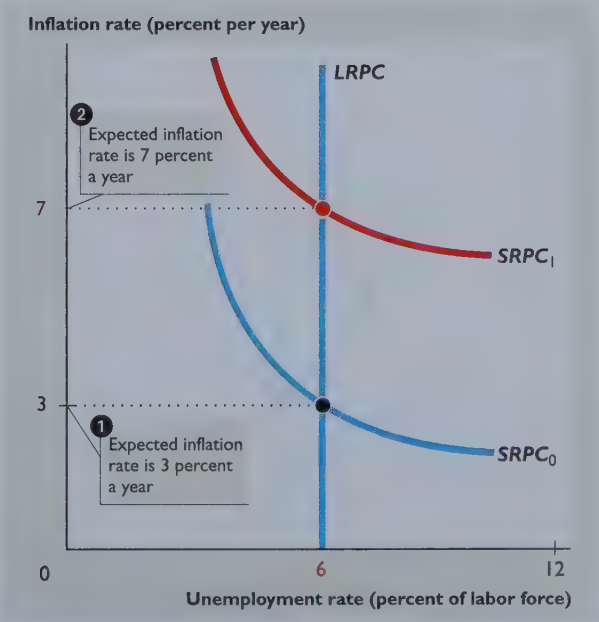
Because the actual inflation rate equals the expected inflation rate at full employment, we can interpret the long-run Phillips curve as the relationship between inflation and unemployment when the inflation rate equals the expected inflation rate.

Figure 31.4 shows short-run Phillips curves for two expected inflation rates. A short-run Phillips curve shows the tradeoff between inflation and unemployment at *a particular expected inflation rate.* When the expected inflation rate changes, the short-run Phillips curve shifts to intersect the long-run Phillips curve at the new expected inflation rate.

FIGURE 31.4

Short-Run and Long-Run Phillips Curves

MyEconLab Animation



If the natural unemployment rate is 6 percent, the long-run Phillips curve is *LRPC*.

1. If the expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year, the short-run Phillips curve is $SRPC_0$.
2. If the expected inflation rate is 7 percent a year, the short-run Phillips curve is $SRPC_1$.

In Figure 31.4, when the expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year, the short-run Phillips curve is $SRPC_0$ and when the expected inflation rate is 7 percent a year, the short-run Phillips curve is $SRPC_1$.

The Natural Rate Hypothesis

Natural rate hypothesis
The proposition that when the inflation rate changes, the unemployment rate changes *temporarily* and eventually returns to the natural unemployment rate.

The **natural rate hypothesis** is the proposition that when the inflation rate changes, the unemployment rate changes *temporarily* and eventually returns to the natural unemployment rate. The temporary change in the unemployment rate occurs because the real wage rate changes, which leads to a change in the quantity of labor demanded. The unemployment rate returns to the natural rate because eventually, the money wage rate changes to catch up with the change in the price level and return the real wage rate to its full-employment level.

Figure 31.5 illustrates the natural rate hypothesis. Initially, the inflation rate is 3 percent a year and the economy is at full employment, at point *A*. Then the quantity of money grows more rapidly, at a rate that will generate inflation at 7 percent a year in the long run. In the short run, with a fixed money wage rate, the real wage rate falls, the quantity of labor employed increases and the unemployment rate falls. The inflation rate rises to 5 percent a year, and the economy moves from point *A* to point *B*. When the higher inflation rate is expected, the money wage rate increases. As the expected inflation rate increases from 3 percent to 7 percent a year, the short-run Phillips curve shifts upward from $SRPC_0$ to $SRPC_1$. Inflation speeds up and the unemployment rate returns to the natural unemployment rate. In Figure 31.5, the economy moves from point *B* to point *C*.

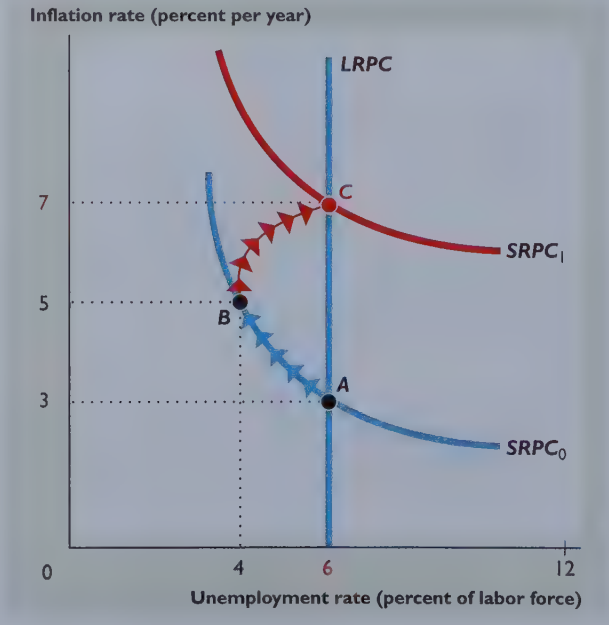
FIGURE 31.5
The Natural Rate Hypothesis

MyEconLab Real-time data

The inflation rate is 3 percent a year, and the economy is at full employment, at point *A*. Then the inflation rate increases.

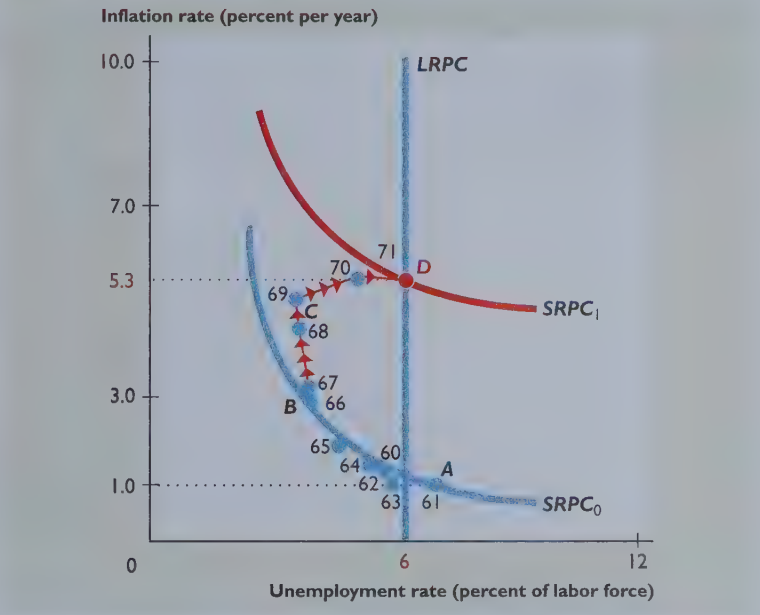
In the short run, the money wage rate is fixed and the increase in the inflation rate brings a decrease in the unemployment rate—a movement along $SRPC_0$ to point *B*.

Eventually, the higher inflation rate is expected, the money wage rate rises, and the short-run Phillips curve shifts upward gradually to $SRPC_1$. At the higher expected inflation rate, unemployment returns to the natural unemployment rate—the natural rate hypothesis. The economy is at point *C*.



EYE on the PAST

A Live Test of the Natural Rate Hypothesis



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The figure describes the U.S. economy from 1960 to 1971 and shows that the natural rate hypothesis describes these years well.

The natural unemployment rate was around 6 percent, so the long-run Phillips curve, *LRPC*, was located at that unemployment rate.

At the beginning of the period, the inflation rate and the expected inflation rate were around 1 percent a year. The short-run Phillips curve was $SRPC_0$.

Through 1966, the expected inflation rate remained at 1 percent a year but the actual inflation rate edged upward and the unemployment rate decreased below the natural unemployment rate. The economy moved up along $SRPC_0$ from point *A* to point *B*.

Then, from 1967 through 1969, the inflation rate increased and so did the expected inflation rate. By 1969, the economy had moved to point *C*. By 1970, the expected inflation rate was around 5 percent a year and the short-run Phillips curve had shifted upward to $SRPC_1$. As the higher inflation rate came to be expected, the unemployment rate increased; by 1971, it had returned to the natural unemployment rate and the economy had moved to point *D*.

Notice the similarity between the actual events of this period and the natural rate hypothesis, which Figure 31.5 illustrates.

Edmund S. Phelps of Columbia University and Milton Friedman of the University of Chicago proposed the natural rate hypothesis and predicted these events *before* they occurred.

Changes in the Natural Unemployment Rate

If the natural unemployment rate changes, both the long-run Phillips curve and the short-run Phillips curve shift. When the natural unemployment rate increases, both the long-run Phillips curve and the short-run Phillips curve shift rightward; and when the natural unemployment rate decreases, both the long-run Phillips curve and the short-run Phillips curve shift leftward.

Figure 31.6 illustrates these changes. When the natural unemployment rate is 6 percent, the long-run Phillips curve is $LRPC_0$. If the expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year, the short-run Phillips curve is $SRPC_0$. A decrease in the natural

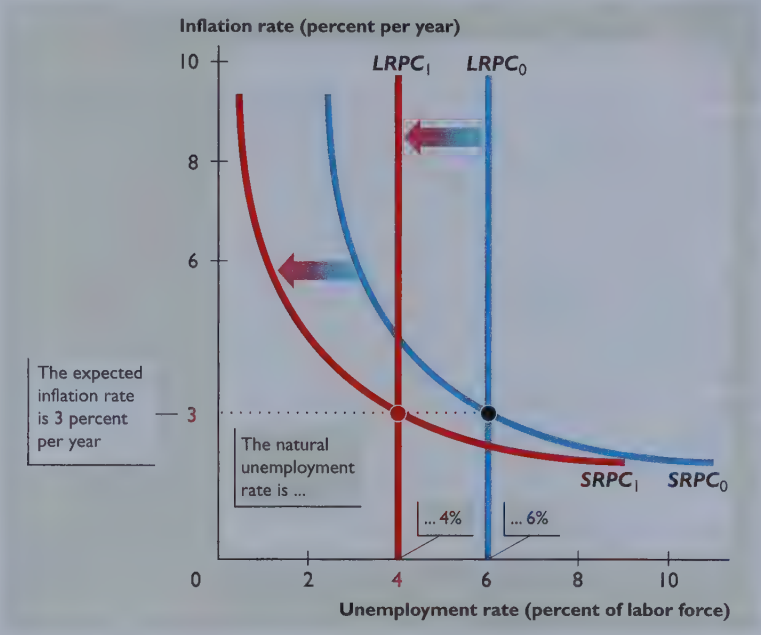
FIGURE 31.6

Changes in the Natural Unemployment Rate

MyEconLab Real-time data

The natural unemployment rate is 6 percent, and the long-run Phillips curve is $LRPC_0$. The expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year, and the short-run Phillips curve is $SRPC_0$.

A decrease in the natural unemployment rate shifts both Phillips curves leftward to $LRPC_1$ and $SRPC_1$.



unemployment rate, with no change in the expected inflation rate, shifts both Phillips curves leftward to $LRPC_1$ and $SRPC_1$.

Have Changes in the Natural Unemployment Rate Changed the Tradeoff?

Changes in the natural unemployment rate have changed the tradeoff. According to the Congressional Budget Office, the natural unemployment rate increased from about 5 percent in 1950 to more than 6 percent in the mid-1970s and then decreased to 4.8 percent by 2000. It has been constant at this level through 2009.

You learned about the factors that influence the natural unemployment rate in Chapter 24 (pp. 622–627). Those factors divide into two groups: influences on job search and influences on job rationing. Job search is influenced by demographic change, unemployment compensation, and structural change. Job rationing arises from efficiency wages, the minimum wage, and union wages.

A bulge in the birth rate (known as the "baby boom") that occurred after World War II in the late 1940s and early 1950s, brought a bulge in the number of young people entering the labor force during the late 1960s and early 1970s. This bulge in the number of new entrants increased the amount of job search and increased the natural unemployment rate.

Structural change during the 1970s and 1980s, much of it a response to massive hikes in the world price of oil, also contributed to the increase in the natural unemployment rate during the 1970s and early 1980s.

EYE on the TRADEOFF

Can We Have Low Unemployment *and* Low Inflation?

In the short run, we can have low unemployment only if we permit the inflation rate to rise. And we can have low inflation only if we permit the unemployment rate to increase. In the long run, we can improve the unemployment-inflation tradeoff.

We can have low unemployment if we can lower the natural unemployment rate, but that is hard to do.

We can have low inflation if we can lower the expected inflation rate. That, too, is hard to do, but it isn't as hard as lowering the natural unemployment rate. The expected inflation rate does change frequently and sometimes by large amounts.

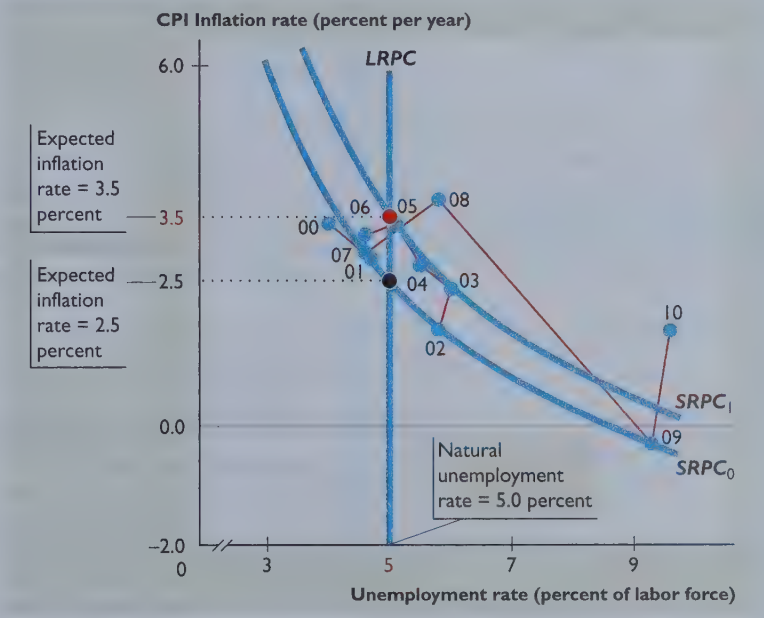
The years 2000–2010 show how changes in the expected inflation rate change the short-run tradeoff.

During these years, the natural unemployment rate was constant at 5 percent, so the long-run Phillips curve remained fixed at *LRPC*.

The expected inflation rate was 2.5 percent a year in 2000–2002 and the short-run Phillips curve was $SRPC_0$. The expected inflation rate then increased to 3.5 percent a year, where it remained until 2005, and the short-run Phillips curve shifted to $SRPC_1$.

In 2006, the expected inflation rate decreased to 2.5 percent a year and the short-run Phillips curve shifted back from $SRPC_1$ to $SRPC_0$. The tradeoff improved.

In 2008 and 2010, both inflation and unemployment increased, most likely because there was a temporary spike in the natural unemployment rate and the expected inflation rate increased.



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Labor Statistics and Congressional Budget Office.

As the baby boom generation approached middle age during the 1980s and 1990s, the number of new labor market entrants decreased and the natural unemployment rate decreased too. Also, during the 1990s, rapid technological change brought an increase in productivity and an increase in the demand for labor that shortened the time people spent on job search and lowered the natural unemployment rate yet further. During the 2000s, the natural unemployment rate remained steady.

The changes in the natural unemployment rate that we've just described shifted the short-run and long-run Phillips curves rightward during the 1960s and 1970s and shifted them leftward during the 1980s and 1990s.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 31.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 31.2

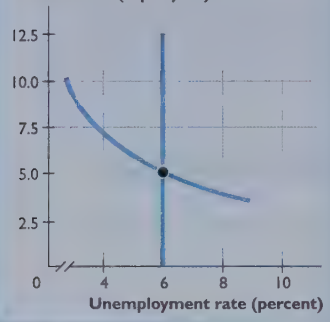
Distinguish between the short-run and the long-run Phillips curves and describe the shifting tradeoff between inflation and unemployment.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows a short-run Phillips curve and a long-run Phillips curve.

1. Identify the curves and label them. What is the expected inflation rate and what is the natural unemployment rate?
2. If the expected inflation rate increases to 7.5 percent a year, show the new short-run and long-run Phillips curves.
3. If the natural unemployment rate increases to 8 percent, show the new short-run and long-run Phillips curves.
4. If aggregate demand starts to grow more rapidly and the inflation rate eventually hits 10 percent a year, how do unemployment and inflation change?

FIGURE 1



In the News

From the Fed's minutes

The Fed expects the unemployment rate will drop from 9.8 percent today to 9.25 percent by the end of 2010 and to 8 percent by the end of 2011. Private economists predict that the unemployment rate won't drop to a more normal 5 or 6 percent until 2013 or 2014. Inflation should stay subdued.

Source: *The New York Times*, October 14, 2009

Is the Fed predicting that the U.S. economy will move along a short-run Phillips curve or that the short-run Phillips curve will shift through 2011?

FIGURE 2

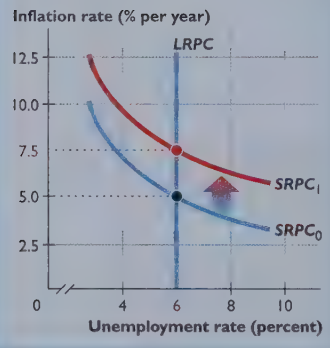
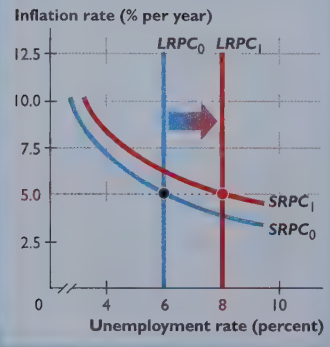


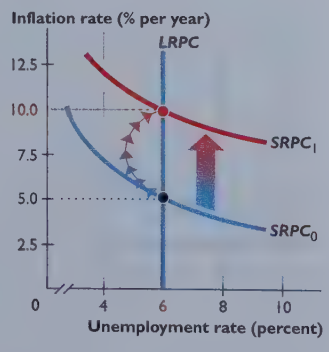
FIGURE 3



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The long-run Phillips curve is the vertical curve, *LRPC*, and the short-run Phillips curve is the downward-sloping curve, $SRPC_0$ (Figure 2). The expected inflation rate is 5 percent a year—the inflation rate at which *LRPC* and $SRPC_0$ intersect. The natural unemployment rate is 6 percent. The *LRPC* is vertical at the natural unemployment rate.
2. The short-run Phillips curve shifts upward, but the long-run Phillips curve does not change (Figure 2).
3. Both the short-run and long-run Phillips curves shift rightward (Figure 3).
4. Figure 4 shows that as expectations change, the inflation rate rises to 10 percent a year and unemployment falls and then gradually returns to its natural rate.

FIGURE 4



Solution to In the News

If inflation remains subdued and inflation expectations do not change, the economy is on a short-run Phillips curve at a point to the right of the *LRPC* and is predicted to move leftward up along the *SRPC* toward the *LRPC*.

31.3 INFLUENCING INFLATION AND UNEMPLOYMENT

How can the Fed influence the inflation rate and the unemployment rate and achieve low levels of both? The basic answer is that the Fed can try to lower the expected inflation rate. When the expected inflation rate is low, as it was in 2000, the tradeoff is more favorable than when the expected inflation rate is high, as it was in 1980.

Influencing the Expected Inflation Rate

The *expected inflation rate* is the inflation rate that people forecast and use to set the money wage rate and other money prices. To forecast the inflation rate, people use the same basic method that they use to forecast other variables that affect their lives.

Data make up the first ingredient in forecasting—data about the past behavior of the phenomenon that we want to forecast. When people lay heavy bets that the Detroit Lions will win a game, they base their forecast on the performance of the Lions and the other teams in recent games.

Science is the second ingredient in forecasting—the specific science that seeks to understand the phenomenon that we wish to forecast. If we want to know whether it is likely to rain tomorrow, we turn to the science of meteorology. Science tells people how to interpret data.

So to forecast inflation, people use data about past inflation and other relevant variables and the science of economics, which seeks to understand the forces that cause inflation.

You already know the relevant economics: the *AS-AD* model. You know that the money growth rate determines the growth of aggregate demand in the long run. And you know that the trend growth rate of real GDP is the growth rate of aggregate supply in the long run. So the trend money growth rate minus the trend real GDP growth rate determines the trend inflation rate.

The inflation rate fluctuates around its trend as the demand-pull and cost-push forces generate the business cycle. In an expansion, the inflation rate rises above trend, and in a recession, the inflation rate falls below trend as aggregate demand fluctuates to bring movements along the aggregate supply curve. And you know that the money growth rate is one of the influences on these aggregate demand fluctuations.

The Fed determines the money growth rate, so the major ingredient in a forecast of inflation is a forecast of the Fed's actions. Professional Fed watchers and economic forecasters use these ideas along with a lot of data and elaborate statistical models of the economy to forecast the inflation rate.

When all the relevant data and economic science are used to forecast inflation, the resulting forecast is called a **rational expectation.** The rational expectation of the inflation rate is a forecast based on the Fed's forecasted monetary policy along with forecasts of the other forces that influence aggregate demand and aggregate supply. But the dominant factor is the Fed's monetary policy.

Rational expectation
The forecast that results from the use of all the relevant data and economic science.

To lower the expected inflation rate, the Fed must conduct its monetary policy in a manner that creates confidence about future inflation. Chapter 34 explores some of the strategies that might achieve such an outcome. If the Fed can lower inflation expectations, it might achieve lower inflation but not a lower unemployment rate. That is constrained by the natural unemployment rate. If the Fed targets the unemployment rate, trouble lies ahead as you're now about to see.

Targeting the Unemployment Rate

Suppose the Fed decides that it wants to lower the unemployment rate. To do so, it speeds up the growth rate of aggregate demand by speeding up the growth rate of money and lowering interest rates. With the expected inflation rate anchored at a low level, the first effect of this action is a lower unemployment rate and a slightly higher inflation rate. But if the Fed drives the unemployment rate below the natural unemployment rate, the inflation rate will continue to rise.

As a higher inflation rate becomes expected, wages and prices start to rise more rapidly, so the actual inflation rate rises further. If the Fed keeps aggregate demand (and the quantity of money) growing fast enough, the inflation rate will keep rising and the unemployment rate will remain below the natural unemployment rate. But eventually, both inflation and unemployment will rise in a return to full employment and the natural rate of unemployment.

Figure 31.7 illustrates the sequence of changes that we've just described. The economy is below full employment with low inflation. Inflation expectations are well anchored at 3 percent per year. Unemployment is above the natural unemployment rate of 6 percent. The economy is on its short-run Phillips curve, $SRPC_0$ at point *A*, to the right of its long-run Phillips curve, *LRPC*.

Now the Fed speeds up the money growth rate and lowers interest rates. Aggregate demand begins to increase at a faster pace. With no change in expected inflation, money wage rates continue to rise by the same amount as before. As the unemployment rate falls and the inflation rate rises, the economy moves up along

FIGURE 31.7

Targeting the Unemployment Rate

MyEconLab Animation

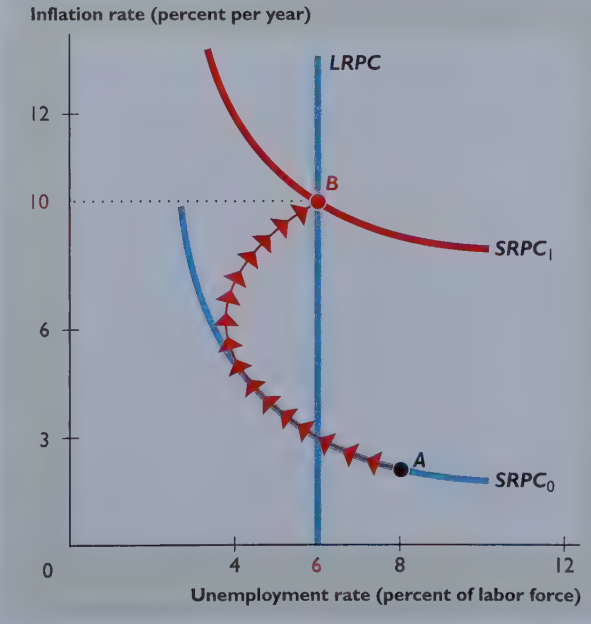
The economy starts out at point *A*.

The Fed wants to lower the unemployment rate, so it makes aggregate demand grow faster and the economy slides leftward and upward along $SRPC_0$. The unemployment rate falls but the inflation rate rises.

If the Fed makes aggregate demand keep growing after the unemployment rate has fallen below the natural unemployment rate, the inflation rate keeps rising and the higher inflation becomes expected.

A rising expected inflation rate shifts the short-run Phillips curve upward toward $SRPC_1$ (red arrows). The unemployment rate remains below the natural unemployment rate throughout the adjustment to point *B*.

The unemployment rate has fallen but only temporarily, and the cost is permanently higher inflation.



$SRPC_0$. When the expected inflation rate rises, the short-run Phillips curve shifts upward toward $SRPC_1$. The Fed's action lowers the unemployment rate but only temporarily and at the cost of permanently higher inflation. The economy follows the path of the red arrows—and unemployment remains below its natural unemployment rate until, eventually, the economy arrives at point *B*.

Reversing the Policy to Lower Inflation

If the inflation that results from targeting unemployment becomes unacceptably high, the only way in which low inflation can be restored is to reverse the sequence of events just described. By lowering the growth rate of aggregate demand by slowing money growth and raising interest rates, the Fed can induce a recession. The unemployment rate moves above the natural unemployment rate but inflation eventually subsides and full employment returns.

Inflation Reduction in Practice

It was back in 1981 that the Fed was last faced with a high inflation rate, and to slow it, we paid a high price. The Fed's policy action was unexpected. Money wage rates had been set too high for the path that the Fed followed. The consequence was recession—a decrease in real GDP and increased unemployment. Because it is difficult to lower the inflation rate without bringing on a recession, it is dangerous to use monetary policy to directly target unemployment. Keeping inflation low and stable is the best that monetary policy can do to keep unemployment low.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

The Short-Run Tradeoff in Your Life

The short-run tradeoff enters your life in three distinct ways:

1) It helps you to interpret and understand the current state of the U.S. economy.

2) It helps you to understand the policy decisions taken by the Fed.

3) It encourages you to take a stand on the relative weight that should be given to unemployment and inflation.

The State of the Economy

Consider the change in the U.S. unemployment rate and inflation rate over the past year. Did they change in the same direction or in opposite directions? Can you interpret the change as a movement along a short-run Phillips curve or as a shifting short-run Phillips curve? Can you think of reasons why the short-run Phillips curve might have shifted? Did the natural unemployment rate change? Did the expected inflation rate change?

Was your expected inflation rate the same as what people on the average expected?

The Fed's Recent Decisions

What has the Fed been doing to the interest rate over the past year? How do you think the changes in unemployment and inflation affected the Fed's policy decisions?

Unemployment or Inflation

You've seen that in the long run, there is no tradeoff between unemployment and inflation. But in the short run, there is a tradeoff. If the inflation rate is high, how much unemployment is worth putting up with, and for how long, to lower the inflation rate?

Economists don't agree on the answer to this question. Some say that if inflation is too high, it must be lowered quickly. Some even say that no unemployment is worth enduring to lower inflation.

What is your view? Which is worse, too much inflation or too much unemployment?

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 31.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 31.3

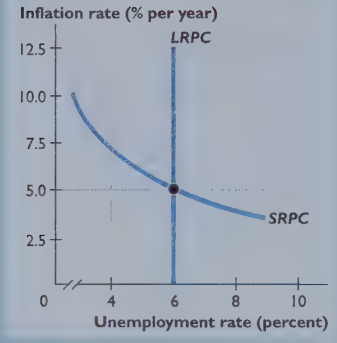
Explain how the Fed can influence the inflation rate and the unemployment rate.

Practice Problems

Figure 1 shows the Phillips curves. Suppose that the current inflation rate is 5 percent a year and the Fed announces that it will slow the money growth rate so that inflation will fall to 2.5 percent a year.

1. If no one believes the Fed and inflation is expected to be 5 percent a year, explain how the Fed's action will affect inflation and unemployment next year.
2. If everyone believes the Fed, explain the effect of the Fed's action on inflation and unemployment next year.
3. If no one believes the Fed but the Fed keeps inflation at 2.5 percent for many years, explain the effect of the Fed's action on inflation and unemployment.

FIGURE 1



In the News

FOMC Press Release, September 21, 2011

The FOMC anticipates a slow growth in the context of price stability and substantial resource slack will keep inflation subdued for some time.

Source: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System

Where on the short-run Phillips curve does the Fed believe the economy to be? What is the Fed anticipating will happen to the short-run Phillips curve?

FIGURE 2

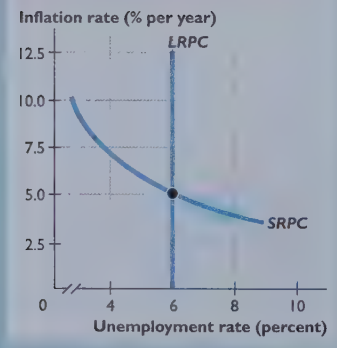
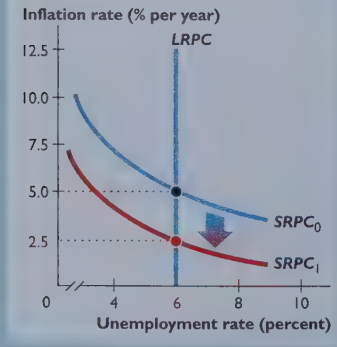


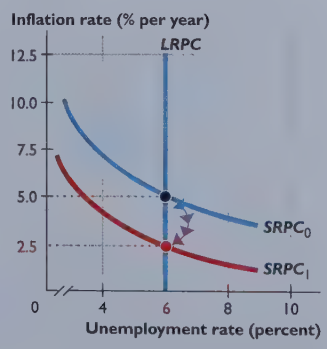
FIGURE 3



Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The inflation rate falls and the unemployment rate rises as the economy moves down along its short-run Phillips curve (see Figure 2).
2. The inflation rate falls to 2.5 percent a year, and unemployment remains at 6 percent. People believe the Fed so expected inflation falls to 2.5 percent a year. The short-run Phillips curve shifts downward to $SRPC_1$ (Figure 3).
3. Initially, inflation falls below 5 percent a year and unemployment rises above 6 percent. The longer the Fed maintains this policy, the lower the expected inflation will be and the short-run Phillips curve will shift downward. The unemployment rate will decrease. Eventually, inflation will be 2.5 percent a year when the unemployment rate returns to 6 percent (Figure 4).

FIGURE 4



Solution to In the News

With substantial resource slack, the Fed believes that the economy is at a point where the unemployment rate is above the natural rate and the inflation rate is below the expected inflation rate. The Fed anticipates that the *SRPC* will shift downward and the inflation rate will fall.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the short-run tradeoff between inflation and unemployment.

- The short-run Phillips curve is the downward-sloping relationship between the inflation rate and the unemployment rate when all other influences on these two variables remain the same.
- The short-run Phillips curve presents a *tradeoff* between inflation and unemployment.
- The short-run Phillips curve is another way of looking at the aggregate supply curve.

2 Distinguish between the short-run and the long-run Phillips curves and describe the shifting tradeoff between inflation and unemployment.

- The long-run Phillips curve shows the relationship between inflation and unemployment when the unemployment rate equals the natural unemployment rate and the inflation rate equals the expected inflation rate.
- The long-run Phillips curve is vertical at the *natural unemployment rate,* and there is no long-run tradeoff between unemployment and inflation.
- When the expected inflation rate changes, the short-run Phillips curve shifts to intersect the long-run Phillips curve at the new expected inflation rate.
- When the money growth rate changes, the unemployment rate changes temporarily and eventually returns to the natural unemployment rate—the natural rate hypothesis.
- Changes in the natural unemployment rate shift both the *SRPC* and the *LRPC.*

3 Explain how the Fed can influence the inflation rate and the unemployment rate.

- The rational expectation of the inflation rate is based on forecasts of the Fed's monetary policy and its influence on aggregate demand growth.
- A fall in the expected inflation rate improves the short-run tradeoff.
- Targeting the unemployment rate can only bring temporarily lower unemployment and at the cost of permanently higher inflation.

Key Terms

Expected inflation rate, 803
Long-run Phillips curve, 802
Natural rate hypothesis, 804
Okun's Law, 797
Rational expectation, 809
Short-run Phillips curve, 796

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 31 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1 DATA 2013

	Price level (2012 = 100)	Real GDP (trillions of 2012 dollars)	Unemployment rate (percent)
A	102	11.0	9
B	104	11.1	7
C	106	11.2	5
D	110	11.4	3

TABLE 2 DATA 2014

	Price level (2012 = 100)	Real GDP (trillions of 2012 dollars)	Unemployment rate (percent)
A	108	11.1	9
B	110	11.2	7
C	112	11.3	5
D	116	11.5	3

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Table 1 describes four situations that might arise in 2013, depending on the level of aggregate demand. Table 2 describes four situations that might arise in 2014. Use Tables 1 and 2 to work Problems **1** to **4**.

1. Plot the short-run Phillips curve and aggregate supply curve for 2013 and mark the points *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* on each curve that correspond to the data in Table 1.
2. In 2013, the outcome turned out to be row *C* of Table 1. Plot the short-run Phillips curve for 2014 and mark the points *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* that correspond to the data in Table 2.
3. Compare the short-run Phillips curve of 2014 with that of 2013.
4. What is Okun's Law? If the natural unemployment rate is 6 percent, does this economy behave in accordance with Okun's Law?
5. Suppose that the natural unemployment rate is 7 percent in 2012 and it decreases to 6 percent in 2013 with no change in expected inflation. Explain how the short-run and long-run tradeoffs change.
6. Suppose that the natural unemployment rate is 7 percent and the expected inflation rate in 2011 is 3 percent a year. If the inflation rate is expected to rise to 5 percent a year in 2012, explain how the short-run and the long-run Phillips curves will change.
7. The inflation rate is 2 percent a year, and the quantity of money is growing at a pace that will maintain that inflation rate. The natural unemployment rate is 7 percent, and the current unemployment rate is 9 percent. In what direction will the unemployment rate change? How will the short-run Phillips curve and the long-run Phillips curve shift?
8. From 1991 until 2010, the average inflation rate in Russia was 175.36 percent. Explain how a history of rapid inflation might influence the short-run and long-run Phillips curves in Russia.

Use the following information to work Problems **9** to **11**.

Changing course, Australia raises interest rate

The Reserve Bank of Australia (the central bank) raised its overnight rate (equivalent to the U.S. federal funds rate) by a quarter of a percentage point, to 3.25 percent a year, amid concerns about rising inflation. The interest rate rise came earlier than many economists had expected.

Source: *The New York Times*, October 6, 2009

9. Sketch the Phillips curves if expected inflation is 2 percent a year and the natural unemployment rate is 5 percent.
10. If with the Reserve Bank's "concerns about rising inflation," people increase the expected inflation rate, explain how the short-run tradeoff will change.
11. If actual inflation had risen prior to the Reserve Bank raising the overnight rate, explain how the short-run tradeoff would change.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. Suppose that the U.S. economy fully recovers from the 2008–2009 recession but the natural unemployment rate has risen to 8 percent and the expected inflation rate is zero. How would the short-run and long-run Phillips curves change? Would the tradeoff be more favorable or less favorable than that of 2011? Draw a graph to illustrate your answer.
2. In an economy, the natural unemployment rate is 4 percent and the expected inflation rate is 3 percent a year. Draw a graph of the short-run and long-run Phillips curves that display this information. Label each curve.

Table 1 describes four possible situations that might arise in 2013, depending on the level of aggregate demand in 2013. Table 2 describes four possible situations that might arise in 2014. Use Tables 1 and 2 to work Problems **3** and **4**.

TABLE 1 DATA 2013

	Price level (2012 = 100)	Real GDP (trillions of 2012 dollars)	Unemployment rate (percent)
A	102	10.0	8
B	104	10.1	6
C	106	10.2	4
D	110	10.4	2

TABLE 2 DATA 2014

	Price level (2012 = 100)	Real GDP (trillions of 2012 dollars)	Unemployment rate (percent)
A	108	10.3	8
B	110	10.4	6
C	112	10.5	4
D	116	10.7	2

3. Plot the short-run Phillips curve and aggregate supply curve for 2013 and mark the points *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* on each curve that correspond to the data in Table 1.
4. In 2013, the outcome turned out to be row *D* of Table 1. Plot the short-run Phillips curve for 2014 and mark the points *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* that correspond to the data in Table 2.
5. Explain the relationship between the long-run Phillips curve and potential GDP and the short-run Phillips curve and the aggregate supply curve.
6. The inflation rate is 3 percent a year, and the quantity of money is growing at a pace that will maintain the inflation rate at 3 percent a year. The natural unemployment rate is 4 percent, and the current unemployment rate is 3 percent. In what direction will the unemployment rate change? How will the short-run Phillips curve and the long-run Phillips curve shift?
7. The inflation rate is 6 percent a year, the unemployment rate is 4 percent, and the economy is at full employment. The Fed announces that it intends to slow the money growth rate to keep the inflation rate at 3 percent a year for the foreseeable future. People believe the Fed. Explain how unemployment and inflation change in the short run and in the long run.

Use the following information to work Problems **8** and **9**.

U.S. consumer confidence edges up

The Reuters/University of Michigan Surveys of Consumers reported a rise in September of consumer confidence that exceeded economists' expectations and a rise in expected inflation to 3.7 percent from 3.5 percent a year. Such a rise should be a concern to the Federal Reserve, which has been pumping money into the economy in an attempt to contain the recession and spur a recovery.

Source: *The New York Times*, September 16, 2011

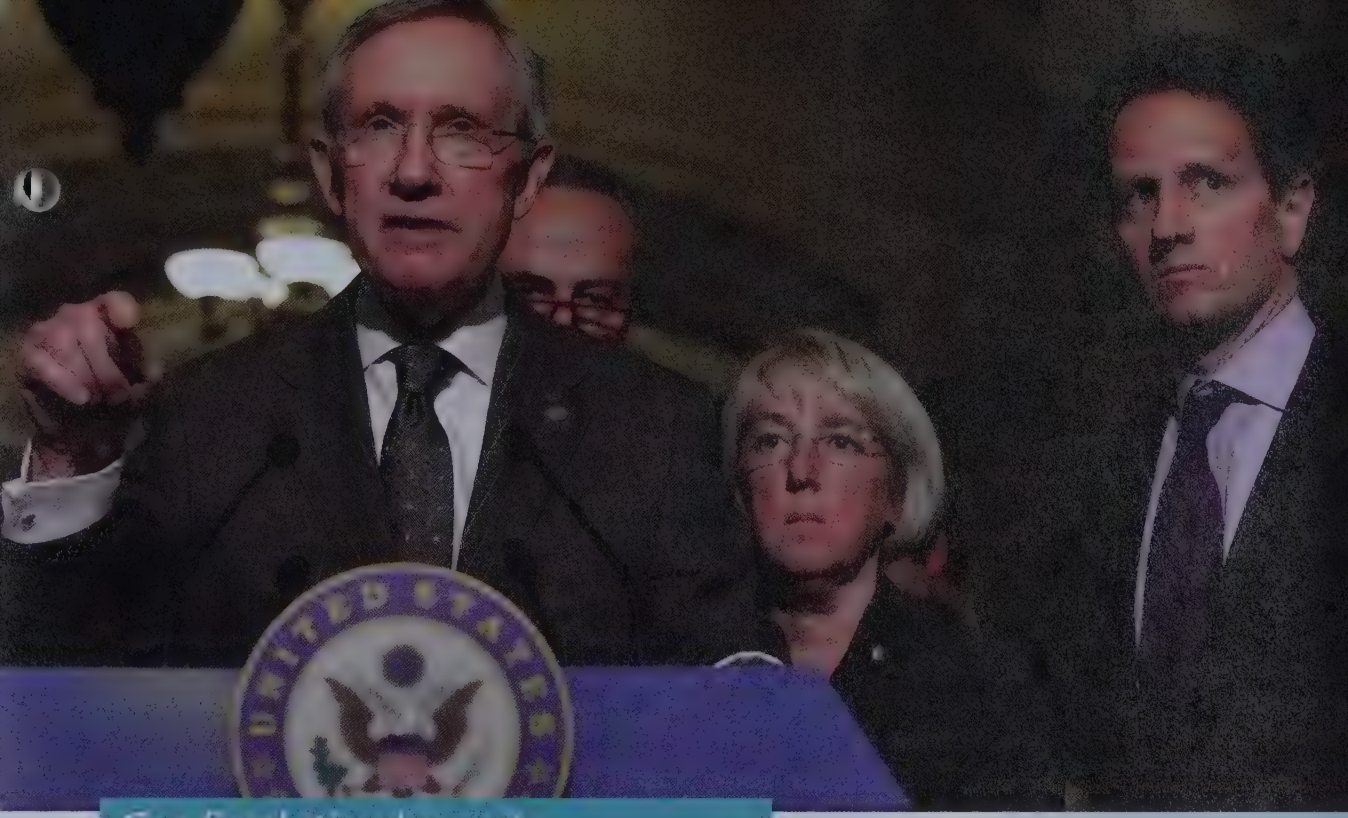
8. Show on a graph the effect of an increase in the expected inflation rate on the Phillips curves if there is no change in the natural unemployment rate.
9. If the Fed is concerned about inflation and unexpectedly slows money growth, explain how unemployment will change in the short run and in the long run.

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 31 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The short-run Phillips curve shows that, other things remaining the same, _____.
   A. an increase in expected inflation will lower the unemployment rate
   B. a fall in unemployment will lower the inflation rate
   C. the inflation rate rises by 1 percent when unemployment falls by 1 percent
   D. a rise in the inflation rate and a fall in the unemployment rate occur together
2. The long-run Phillips curve _____.
   A. is a horizontal curve at the expected inflation rate
   B. is a vertical curve at the natural unemployment rate
   C. slopes downward as the inflation rate falls
   D. slopes upward as the unemployment rate falls
3. The short-run Phillips curve intersects the long-run Phillips curve at _____.
   A. the expected inflation rate and the current unemployment rate
   B. the current inflation rate and the natural unemployment rate
   C. the expected inflation rate and the natural unemployment rate
   D. the current inflation rate and the current unemployment rate
4. An increase in the expected inflation rate, other things remaining the same, _____.
   A. shifts the short-run Phillips curve upward
   B. creates a movement up along the short-run Phillips curve
   C. decreases the natural unemployment rate and shifts the long-run Phillips curve leftward
   D. creates a movement up along the long-run Phillips curve with no change in the short-run Phillips curve
5. A decrease in the natural unemployment rate _____.
   A. shifts both the short-run and the long-run Phillips curves leftward
   B. shifts the short-run Phillips curve leftward but the long-run Phillips curve does not change
   C. creates a movement along the short-run Phillips curve
   D. increases the expected inflation rate and shifts the short-run Phillips curve upward
6. Suppose that the unemployment rate exceeds the natural unemployment rate and the Fed increases the money growth rate. If the Fed's action is _____.
   A. unexpected, the unemployment rate falls but the inflation rate rises
   B. unexpected, the inflation rate doesn't change but the unemployment rate falls
   C. expected, the inflation rate rises but the unemployment rate doesn't change
   D. expected, the unemployment rate doesn't change and the inflation rate equals the expected inflation rate



Can fiscal stimulus end a recession?

32

Fiscal Policy

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the federal budget process and the recent history of tax revenues, outlays, deficits, and debts.
2. Explain how fiscal stimulus is used to fight a recession.
3. Explain the supply-side effects of fiscal policy on employment, potential GDP, and the economic growth rate.

32.1 THE FEDERAL BUDGET

Federal budget
An annual statement of the tax revenues, outlays, and surplus or deficit of the government of the United States.

Fiscal policy
The use of the federal budget to achieve the macroeconomic objectives of high and sustained economic growth and full employment.

The **federal budget** is an annual statement of the tax revenues, outlays, and surplus or deficit of the government of the United States, together with the laws and regulations that authorize these revenues and outlays.

The federal budget has two purposes: to finance the activities of the federal government and to achieve macroeconomic objectives. The first purpose of the federal budget was its only purpose before the Great Depression years of the 1930s. The second purpose evolved as a response to the Great Depression and was initially based on the ideas of *Keynesian macroeconomics* (described in Chapter 24, pp. 610–611). **Fiscal policy** is the use of the federal budget to achieve the macroeconomic objectives of high and sustained economic growth and full employment.

The Institutions and Laws

Fiscal year
A year that begins on October 1 and ends on September 30. Fiscal 2013 *begins* on October 1, 2012.

The President and Congress make the budget and develop fiscal policy on a fixed annual time line and fiscal year. The U.S. **fiscal year** runs from October 1 to September 30 in the next calendar year. Fiscal 2013 is the fiscal year that begins on October 1, 2012.

The Roles of the President and Congress

The President *proposes* a budget to Congress each February. After Congress has passed the budget acts in September, the President either signs those acts into law or vetoes the entire budget bill. The President does not have the veto power to eliminate specific items in a budget bill and approve others—known as a line-item veto. Although the President proposes and ultimately approves the budget, the task of making the tough decisions on spending and taxes rests with Congress.

Congress begins its work on the budget with the President's proposal. The House of Representatives and the Senate develop their own budget ideas in their respective House and Senate Budget Committees. Formal conferences between the two houses eventually resolve differences of view, and a series of spending acts and an overall budget act are usually passed by both houses before the start of the fiscal year.

Figure 32.1 summarizes the budget time line and the roles of the President and Congress in the budget process.

Budget Surplus, Deficit, and Debt

The government's budget balance is equal to tax revenues minus outlays. That is,

$$\text{Budget balance} = \text{Tax revenues} - \text{Outlays}.$$

Balanced budget
The budget balance when tax revenues equal outlays.

Budget surplus
The positive budget balance when tax revenues exceed outlays.

Budget deficit
The negative budget balance when outlays exceed tax revenues.

If tax revenues equal outlays, the government has a **balanced budget**. The government has a **budget surplus** if tax revenues exceed outlays. The government has a **budget deficit** if outlays exceed tax revenues.

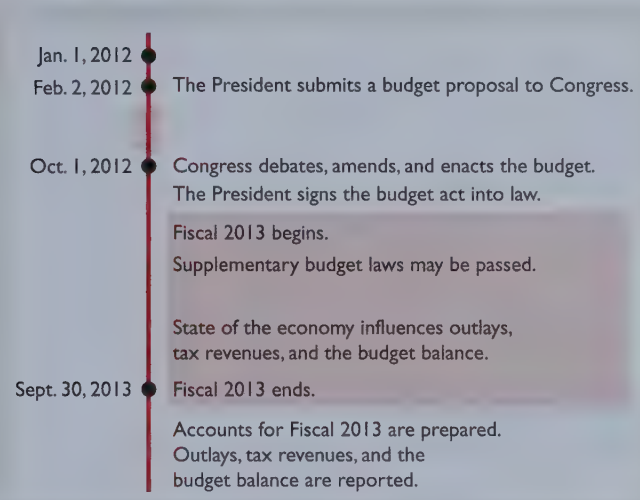
The budget projections for the 2012 fiscal year were tax revenues of $2,850 billion, outlays of $4,091 billion, and a budget deficit of $1,241 billion. You can see that $2,850 billion − $4,091 billion = −$1,241 billion.

The government budget balance is equal to government saving, which might be zero (balanced budget), positive (budget surplus), or negative (budget deficit). When the government has a budget deficit, it incurs debt. That is, the government

FIGURE 32.1

The Federal Budget Time Line for Fiscal 2013

MyEconLab Animation


Jan. 1, 2012
Feb. 2, 2012
The President submits a budget proposal to Congress.
Oct. 1, 2012
Congress debates, amends, and enacts the budget.
The President signs the budget act into law.
Fiscal 2013 begins.
Supplementary budget laws may be passed.
State of the economy influences outlays, tax revenues, and the budget balance.
Sept. 30, 2013
Fiscal 2013 ends.
Accounts for Fiscal 2013 are prepared.
Outlays, tax revenues, and the budget balance are reported.

The federal budget process begins with the President's proposals in February. Congress debates and amends these proposals and enacts a budget before the start of the fiscal year on October 1. The President signs the budget act into law. Throughout the fiscal year, Congress might pass supplementary budget laws. The budget outcome is calculated after the end of the fiscal year.

borrows to finance a budget deficit. When the government has a budget surplus, it repays some of its debt. The amount of government debt outstanding—debt that has arisen from past budget deficits—is called **national debt**.

National debt
The amount of government debt outstanding–debt that has arisen from past budget deficits.

The national debt at the end of a fiscal year equals the national debt at the end of the previous fiscal year plus the budget deficit or minus the budget surplus. For example,

Debt at end of 2012 = Debt at end of 2011 + Budget deficit in 2012.

At the end of the 2011 fiscal year, national debt was $10,856 billion. With a deficit of $1,241 billion in 2012, national debt at the end of the 2012 fiscal year becomes $12,097 billion. That is, $10,856 billion + $1,241 billion = $12,097 billion.

A Personal Analogy

The government's budget and debt are like your budget and debt, only bigger. If you take a student loan each year to go to school, you have a budget deficit and a growing debt. After graduating, if you have a job and repay some of your loan each year, you have a budget surplus each year and a shrinking debt.

The Federal Budget in Fiscal 2012

Table 32.1 (next page) shows the magnitudes of the main items in the federal budget in 2012. Personal income taxes and Social Security taxes are the major sources of revenue. **Transfer payments**—Social Security benefits, Medicare and Medicaid benefits, unemployment benefits, and other cash benefits paid to individuals and firms—take the largest share of the government's financial resources. Expenditure on goods and services, which includes the government's defense and homeland security budgets, is also large.

Transfer payments
Social Security benefits, Medicare and Medicaid benefits, unemployment benefits, and other cash benefits.

The federal government's deficit and debt are large but they don't show the full picture: They omit a Social Security and Medicare time bomb.

TABLE 32.1

The Federal Budget in Fiscal 2012

The federal budget for 2012 was expected to be in a large deficit. Tax revenues of $2,850 billion were expected to be $1,241 billion less than outlays of $4,091 billion.

Personal income taxes are the largest revenue source and transfer payments are the largest outlay.

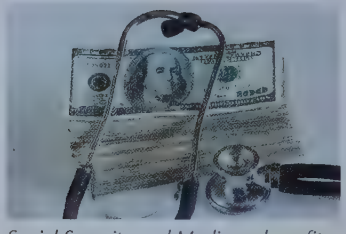
Item	Projections (billions of dollars)
Tax Revenues	**2,850**
Personal income taxes	1,118
Social Security taxes	1,025
Corporate income taxes	421
Indirect taxes	286
Outlays	**4,091**
Transfer payments	2,566
Expenditure on goods and services	1,165
Debt interest	360
Balance	**−1,241**

SOURCE OF DATA: *Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2012*, Table 14.1.

A Social Security and Medicare Time Bomb

The age distribution of the U.S. population today is dominated by the surge in the birth rate after World War II that created what is called the "baby boom generation." There are 77 million "baby boomers" and the first of them started collecting Social Security pensions in 2008 and became eligible for Medicare benefits in 2011. By 2030, all the baby boomers will be supported by Social Security and Medicare and benefit payments will have doubled.

The government's Social Security and Medicare obligations are a debt and are just as real as the bonds that the government issues to finance its current budget deficit. How big is this debt?



Social Security and Medicare benefits create an $80-trillion time bomb.

Economists Jagadeesh Gokhale and Kent Smetters estimate that this debt was $80 trillion in 2010 and that it grows by $2 trillion a year. To put the $80 trillion in perspective, note that U.S. GDP in 2010 was $14.5 trillion, so the debt is equivalent to 5.5 years of GDP.

The time bomb is enormous and points to a catastrophic future. How can the federal government meet its Social Security and Medicare obligations? There are four alternatives:

- Raise income taxes
- Raise Social Security taxes
- Cut Social Security benefits
- Cut other federal government spending

Gokhale and Smetters estimate that to defuse the time bomb, income taxes would need to be raised by 69 percent, or Social Security taxes raised by 95 percent, or Social Security benefits cut by 56 percent. Even if the government stopped all other spending, including that on national defense, it would not be able to pay its bills. By combining the four measures, the pain from each could be lessened, but the pain would still be severe.

This time bomb will dominate fiscal policy decisions for many future years.

EYE on the PAST

Federal Revenues, Outlays, Deficits, and Debt

In 1940, in the first year of World War II, for every dollar earned, the federal government collected 6.5 cents in taxes and spent 9.3 cents. By 1943, at the depth of the most terrible war in history, the government was spending 40 cents of every dollar earned and collecting 12 cents in taxes. The government deficit in 1943 was almost 30 percent of GDP and more than 20 percent in 1944.

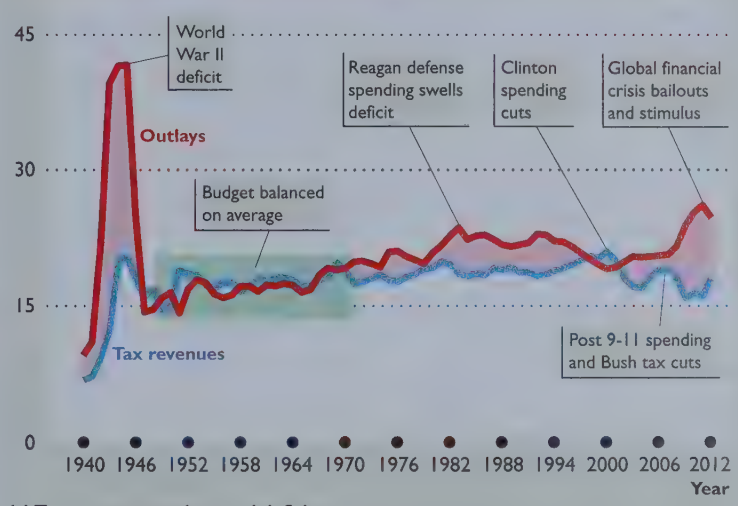
The result of these enormous deficits was a mushrooming government debt. By 1946, when the debt-to-GDP ratio (debt as a percentage of GDP) peaked, the government owed more than a year's GDP.

During the 1950s and 1960s, the government's debt-to-GDP ratio tumbled as balanced budgets combined with rapid real GDP growth. By 1974, the debt-to-GDP ratio had fallen to a low of 23 percent.

Budget deficits returned during the 1980s as the defense budget swelled and some tax rates were cut. The result was a growing debt-to-GDP ratio that climbed to almost 50 percent by 1995.

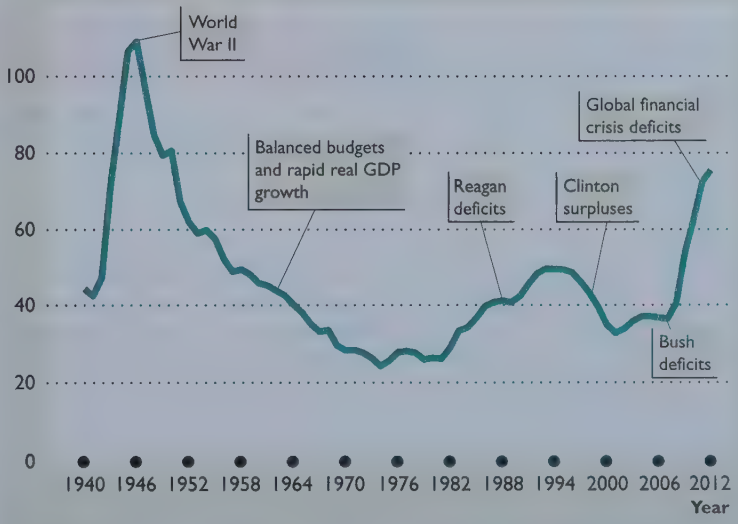
Expenditure restraint combined with sustained real GDP growth lowered the debt-to-GDP ratio during the 1990s, but a surge in expenditures on defense and homeland security, further tax cuts, and a spending surge in 2009 and 2010 to fight the global financial crisis and recession, all combined to swell the debt-to-GDP ratio again.

Tax revenues and outlays (percentage of GDP)



(a) Tax revenues, outlays, and deficits

Debt (percentage of GDP)



(b) Debt

SOURCE OF DATA: *Budget of the U.S. Government, Fiscal Year 2012,* Historical Tables, Tables 7.1 and 14.1.

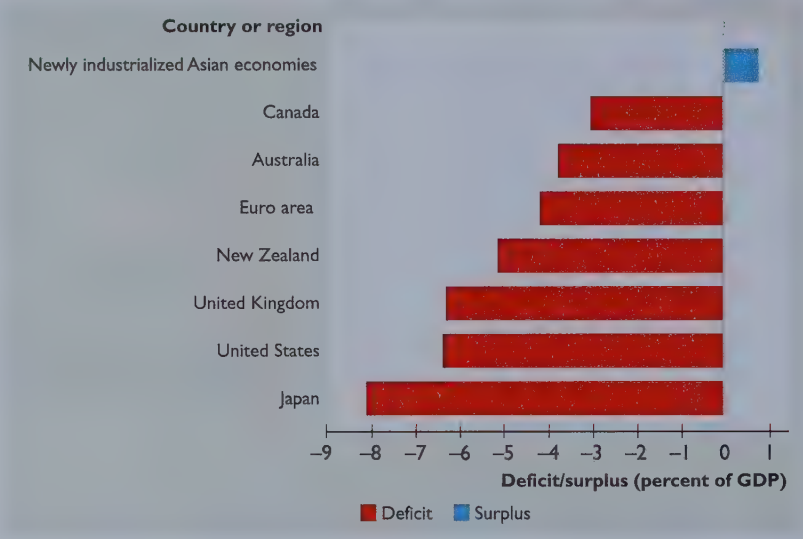
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

The U.S. Budget in Global Perspective

The United States is not alone in having a government budget deficit. All the major countries share this experience. But the United States has one of the largest budget deficits as a percentage of GDP.

To compare the budget deficits across countries, we use the concept of the "general government" deficit, which combines all levels of government: federal, state, and local.

The United States, Japan, and the United Kingdom have large deficits while New Zealand, the Euro area, Australia, and Canada have smaller deficits. The newly industrialized Asian economies have a small surplus.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook*, April 2009.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 32.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 32.1

Describe the federal budget process and the recent history of revenues, outlays, deficits, and debts.

Practice Problems

1. What are the tax revenues and outlays in the federal budget, and what was the projected budget balance for Fiscal 2012?
2. In 2009, national debt was about $10 trillion and the U.S. Treasury faced a national debt limit of $12 trillion. With projected deficits through 2019 that will increase the national debt by $9 trillion, when will the national debt limit be hit if the deficits remain constant?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The tax revenues are personal income taxes, Social Security taxes, corporate income taxes, and indirect taxes; the outlays are transfer payments, expenditure on goods and services, and debt interest. The projected budget balance for Fiscal 2012 was a deficit of $1,241 billion.
2. In 2009, national debt was about $10 trillion. By adding an average of $0.9 trillion ($9 trillion/10 years) per year to the 2009 national debt, the limit of $12 trillion will be hit during 2012.

32.2 FISCAL STIMULUS

We've described the federal budget and the institutions that make fiscal policy, and now we're going to study the *effects* of fiscal policy. In doing so, we move from describing facts to explaining theories, and the theory of fiscal policy is controversial.

Schools of Thought and Cracks in Today's Consensus

We described the three main schools of macroeconomic thought—*classical*, *Keynesian*, and *monetarist* macroeconomics—in Chapter 24 (see pp. 610–611). We also described today's consensus as one that takes insights from each of the schools. While there is a consensus, the macroeconomic events of 2008 and 2009 have placed the consensus under some stress and cracks are emerging. Some of these cracks have become so public, with economists debating in the pages of *The New York Times*, *The Wall Street Journal*, and *The Economist*, that in discussing the theory of fiscal policy, we must explain the divergent views. The main crack is between the views of Keynesian economists and others and it is on this divide that we will focus. Before digging deeper into the details, we'll provide a quick overview of the two sides of the debate.

The Keynesian View

The Keynesian view is that **fiscal stimulus**—an increase in government outlays or a decrease in tax revenue—boosts real GDP and creates or saves jobs. The leading economists who advance this view include the 2008 Nobel Prize Winner Paul Krugman (Princeton University) and President Obama's former chief economic adviser Christina Romer (University of California, Berkeley).

Fiscal stimulus
An increase in government outlays or a decrease in tax revenue designed to boost real GDP and create or save jobs.

Keynesians say that fiscal stimulus boosts real GDP and employment by increasing aggregate demand. Further, the fiscal stimulus has a multiplier effect: A $1 increase in government outlays or decrease in tax revenue brings a greater than $1 increase in aggregate demand and real GDP.

These positive effects of fiscal stimulus, say the Keynesians, make it a vital and powerful tool in the fight against deep recession and depression.

The Mainstream View

The mainstream view is that Keynesians over-estimate the multiplier effects of fiscal stimulus and that these effects are small, short-lived, and incapable of working fast enough to be useful. Among the leading economists who advance this view are Robert J. Barro (Harvard University), the 1995 Nobel Prize Winner Robert E. Lucas Jr. (University of Chicago), and John B. Taylor (Stanford University).

Mainstream economists say that government stimulus does not provide a "free lunch" and instead "crowds out" private consumption expenditure and investment. The durable results of a fiscal stimulus are bigger government, lower potential GDP, a slower real GDP growth rate, and a greater burden of government debt on future generations.

We begin our more detailed look at fiscal policy by explaining the mechanisms that Keynesians emphasize and believe operate to influence aggregate demand. Later in the chapter, we return to the mainstream view and look at supply-side and "crowding out" effects.

Fiscal Policy and Aggregate Demand

A number of different fiscal policy actions might be used in an attempt to stimulate aggregate demand. Government expenditure on goods and service, or government transfer payments might be increased and taxes might be cut. And these changes might occur as an automatic response to the state of the economy or as a result of new spending or tax decisions by Congress. We begin with the distinction between automatic and discretionary fiscal policy.

Automatic Fiscal Policy

Automatic fiscal policy
A fiscal policy action that is triggered by the state of the economy.

A fiscal policy action that is triggered by the state of the economy is called an **automatic fiscal policy**. For example, an increase in unemployment induces an increase in transfer payments, and a fall in incomes induces a decrease in tax revenues.

Discretionary Fiscal Policy

Discretionary fiscal policy
A fiscal policy action that is initiated by an act of Congress.

A fiscal policy action that is initiated by an act of Congress is called a **discretionary fiscal policy**. A discretionary fiscal policy action requires a change in a spending program or in a tax law. Increases in defense spending or cuts in the income tax rates are examples of discretionary fiscal policy.

Automatic Fiscal Policy

Automatic stabilizers
Features of fiscal policy that stabilize real GDP without explicit action by the government.

Automatic fiscal policy is a consequence of tax revenues and outlays that fluctuate with real GDP. These features of fiscal policy are called **automatic stabilizers** because they work to stabilize real GDP without explicit action by the government.

Induced Taxes

Induced taxes
Taxes that vary with real GDP.

On the revenue side of the budget, tax laws define tax *rates*, not tax *dollars*. Tax dollars paid depend on tax rates and incomes. But incomes vary with real GDP, so tax revenues depend on real GDP. Taxes that vary with real GDP are called **induced taxes**. When real GDP increases in an expansion, wages and profits rise, so the taxes paid on these incomes—induced taxes—rise. When real GDP decreases in a recession, wages and profits fall, so the induced taxes on these incomes fall.

Needs-Tested Spending

Needs-tested spending
Spending on programs that entitle suitably qualified people and businesses to receive transfer payments that vary with need and with the state of the economy.

On the expenditure side of the budget, the government creates programs that entitle suitably qualified people and businesses to receive benefits. The spending on such programs is called **needs-tested spending**, and it results in transfer payments that depend on the economic state of individual citizens and businesses. In a recession, as the unemployment rate increases, needs-tested spending on unemployment benefits and food stamps increases. In an expansion, the unemployment rate falls and needs-tested spending decreases.

Automatic Stimulus

Because government tax revenues fall and outlays increase in a recession, the budget provides automatic stimulus that helps to shrink the recessionary gap. Similarly, because tax revenues rise and outlays decrease in a boom, the budget provides automatic restraint to shrink an inflationary gap.

Fluctuations in the government budget balance over the business cycle create a need to distinguish between the budget's cyclical balance and structural balance.

Cyclical and Structural Budget Balances

To identify the government budget deficit that arises from the business cycle, we distinguish between the budget's structural balance and its cyclical balance. The **structural surplus or deficit** is the budget balance that would occur if the economy were at full employment. That is, the structural balance is the balance that the full-employment level of real GDP would generate given the spending programs and tax laws that Congress has created. The **cyclical surplus or deficit** is the budget balance that arises purely because tax revenues and outlays are not at their full-employment levels. That is, the cyclical balance is the balance that arises because tax revenues rise and outlays fall in an inflationary gap and tax revenues fall and outlays rise in a recessionary gap. The *actual* budget balance equals the sum of the structural balance and cyclical balance. A cyclical deficit corrects itself when full employment returns, but a structural deficit requires action by Congress. *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below looks at the recent history of the U.S. structural and cyclical balances.

Structural surplus or deficit
The budget balance that would occur if the economy were at full employment.

Cyclical surplus or deficit
The budget balance that arises because tax revenues and outlays are not at their full-employment levels.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

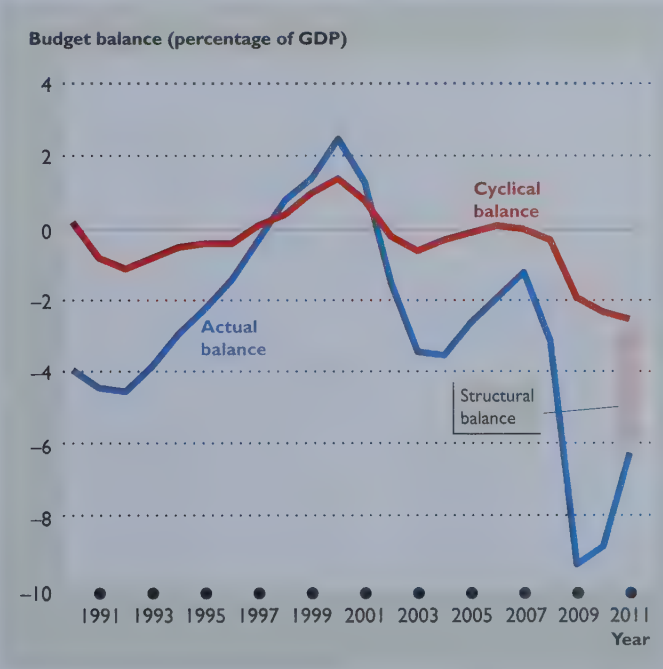
The U.S. Structural and Cyclical Budget Balances

The U.S. federal budget balance in 2011 was a deficit of $1.4 trillion and the recessionary gap was close to $1 trillion. With such a large recessionary gap, you would expect some of the deficit to be cyclical. But how much of the 2011 deficit was cyclical? How much was structural?

According to the Congressional Budget Office (CBO), the cyclical deficit in 2011 was $0.4 trillion and the structural deficit was $1 trillion. The figure shows the actual and cyclical balances as percentages of GDP.

The structural balance equals the gap between the actual and cyclical balances. You can see that the structural deficit was small in 2007, increased in 2008, and exploded in 2009. The 2009 fiscal stimulus package created most of this structural deficit.

When full employment returns, which the CBO says will be in 2014, the cyclical deficit will vanish, but the structural deficit must be addressed by further acts of Congress. No one knows the discretionary measures that will be taken to reduce the structural deficit and this awkward fact creates uncertainty.



SOURCE OF DATA: Congressional Budget Office.

Discretionary Fiscal Policy

Discretionary fiscal policy can take the form of a change in government outlays or a change in tax revenues. And a change in government outlays can take the form of a change in expenditure on goods and services or a change in transfer payments. *Other things remaining the same*, a change in any of the items in the government budget changes aggregate demand and has a multiplier effect—aggregate demand changes by a greater amount than the initial change in the item in the government budget. These multiplier effects are similar to the ones that you studied in Chapters 29 and 30. (Other things might not remain the same, and we'll look at some possible offsetting factors after we've explained the basic Keynesian idea.)

The Government Expenditure Multiplier

Government expenditure multiplier
The effect of a change in government expenditure on goods and services on aggregate demand.

The **government expenditure multiplier** is the effect of a change in government expenditure on goods and services on aggregate demand. Government expenditure is a component of aggregate expenditure, so when government expenditure increases, aggregate demand increases. Real GDP increases and induces an increase in consumption expenditure, which brings a further increase in aggregate expenditure. A multiplier process like the one described in Chapter 30 (pp. 782–786) ensues.

The Tax Multiplier

Tax multiplier
The effect of a change in taxes on aggregate demand.

The **tax multiplier** is the magnification effect of a change in taxes on aggregate demand. A *decrease* in taxes *increases* disposable income, which increases consumption expenditure. A decrease in taxes works like an increase in government expenditure. But the magnitude of the tax multiplier is smaller than the government expenditure multiplier because a $1 tax cut generates *less than* $1 of additional expenditure. The marginal propensity to consume determines the initial increase in expenditure induced by a tax cut and the magnitude of the tax multiplier. For example, if the marginal propensity to consume is 0.75, then the initial increase in consumption expenditure induced by a $1 tax cut is only 75 cents. In this case, the tax multiplier is 0.75 times the magnitude of the government expenditure multiplier.

The Transfer Payments Multiplier

Transfer payments multiplier
The effect of a change in transfer payments on aggregate demand.

The **transfer payments multiplier** is the effect of a change in transfer payments on aggregate demand. This multiplier works like the tax multiplier but in the opposite direction. An *increase* in transfer payments *increases* disposable income, which *increases* consumption expenditure. The magnitude of the transfer payments multiplier is similar to that of the tax multiplier. Just as a $1 tax cut generates *less than* $1 of additional expenditure, so also does a $1 increase in transfer payments. Again, it is the marginal propensity to consume that determines the increase in expenditure induced by an increase in transfer payments.

The Balanced Budget Multiplier

Balanced budget multiplier
The effect on aggregate demand of a *simultaneous* change in government expenditure and taxes that leaves the budget balance unchanged.

The **balanced budget multiplier** is the magnification effect on aggregate demand of a *simultaneous* change in government expenditure and taxes that leaves the budget balance unchanged. The balanced budget multiplier is not zero. It is greater than zero because a $1 increase in government expenditure injects a dollar more into aggregate demand while a $1 tax rise (or decrease in transfer payments) takes less than $1 from aggregate demand. So when both government expenditure and taxes increase by $1, aggregate demand increases.

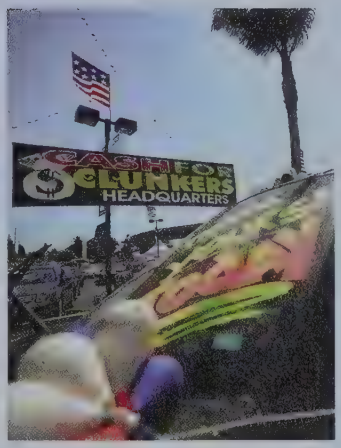
A Successful Fiscal Stimulus

If real GDP is below potential GDP, the government might pursue a fiscal stimulus by increasing its expenditure on goods and services, increasing transfer payments, cutting taxes, or doing some combination of all three. Figure 32.2 shows us how these actions increase aggregate demand for a successful stimulus package.

In Figure 32.2(a), potential GDP is $13 trillion but real GDP is only $12 trillion. The economy is at point *A* and there is a *recessionary gap* (see Chapter 29, p. 757).

To eliminate the recessionary gap and restore full employment, the government introduces a fiscal stimulus. An increase in government expenditure or a tax cut increases aggregate expenditure by ΔE. If this were the only change in spending plans, the *AD* curve would become $AD_0 + \Delta E$ in Figure 32.2(b). But the initial increase in government expenditure sets off a multiplier process, which increases consumption expenditure. As the multiplier process plays out, aggregate demand increases and the *AD* curve shifts rightward to AD_1.

With no change in the price level, the economy would move from the initial point *A* to point *B* on AD_1. But the increase in aggregate demand combined with the upward-sloping aggregate supply curve brings a rise in the price level, and the economy moves to a new equilibrium at point *C*. The price level rises to 110, real GDP increases to $13 trillion, and the economy returns to full employment.

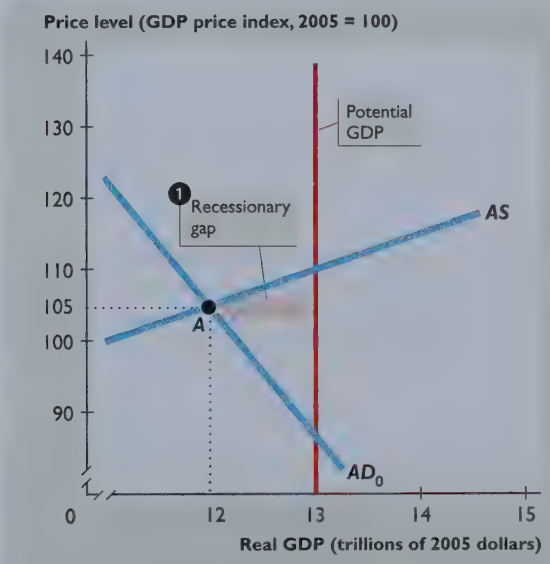


Cash for Clunkers stimulated aggregate demand.

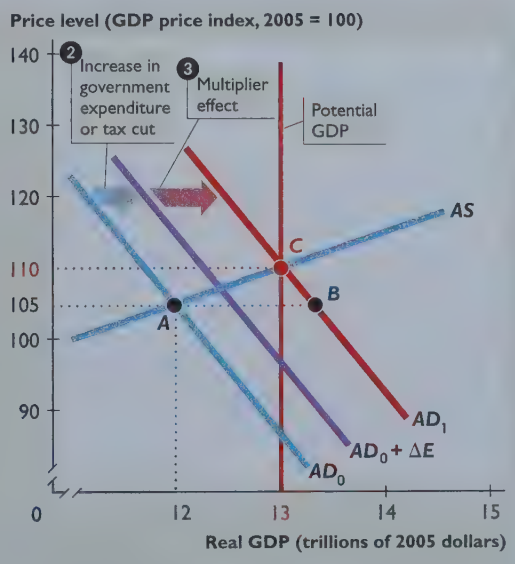
FIGURE 32.2

Fiscal Stimulus in the *AS-AD* Model

MyEconLab Real-time data



(a) Below full-employment equilibrium



(b) Full employment restored

Potential GDP is $13 trillion. At point *A*, real GDP is $12 trillion, and ❶ there is a $1 trillion recessionary gap. ❷ An increase in government expenditure or a tax cut increases expenditure by ΔE. ❸ The multiplier increases induced expenditure. The *AD* curve shifts rightward to AD_1, the price level rises to 110, real GDP increases to $13 trillion, and the recessionary gap is eliminated.

Limitations of Discretionary Fiscal Policy

Discretionary fiscal stabilization policy looks easy. Calculate the output gap and the multiplier, and determine the direction and size of the change in government expenditure or taxes that will eliminate the gap. In reality, discretionary fiscal policy is seriously hampered by many factors, four of which are:

- Law-making time lag
- Shrinking area of law-maker discretion
- Estimating potential GDP
- Economic forecasting

Law-Making Time Lag

The law-making time lag is the amount of time it takes Congress to pass the laws needed to change taxes or spending. This process takes time because each member of Congress has a different idea about what is the best tax or spending program to change, so long debates and committee meetings are needed to reconcile conflicting views. The economy might benefit from fiscal stimulation today, but by the time Congress acts, a different fiscal medicine might be needed.

Shrinking Area of Law-Maker Discretion

During the 2000s, federal spending increased faster than in any other peacetime period. This growth in spending was driven by two forces: increased security threats and an aging population.

The increased security threat resulted in a large increase in expenditure on the military and homeland security. The aging population brought a very large increase in expenditure on entitlement programs such as Medicare.

The growth of this spending has reduced the areas in which Congress can act to change either taxes or outlays. Around 80 percent of the federal budget is effectively off limits for discretionary policy action, and the remaining 20 percent of items are very hard to cut.

So even if the state of the economy calls for a change in fiscal policy, Congress's room to maneuver is severely limited.

Estimating Potential GDP

Potential GDP is not directly observed, so it must be estimated. Because it is not easy to tell whether real GDP is below, above, or at potential GDP, a discretionary fiscal action might move real GDP *away* from potential GDP instead of toward it. This problem is a serious one because too large a fiscal stimulus brings inflation and too little might bring recession.

Economic Forecasting

Fiscal policy changes take a long time to enact in Congress and yet more time to become effective. So fiscal policy must target forecasts of where the economy will be in the future. Economic forecasting has improved enormously in recent years, but it remains inexact and subject to error. So for a second reason, discretionary fiscal action might move real GDP *away* from potential GDP and create the very problems that it seeks to correct.

Further problems with discretionary fiscal policy arise from their supply-side effects that we will examine in the next section.

CHECKPOINT 32.2

Explain how fiscal stimulus is used to fight a recession.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 32.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. Classify the following items as automatic fiscal policy, discretionary fiscal policy, or not part of fiscal policy.
   - A decrease in tax revenues in a recession
   - Additional government expenditure to upgrade highways
   - An increase in the public education budget
   - A cut in infrastructure expenditure during a boom
2. Explain how aggregate demand changes when government expenditure on national defense increases by $100 billion.
3. Explain how aggregate demand changes when the government increases taxes by $100 billion.
4. Explain how aggregate demand changes when the government increases both expenditure on goods and services and taxes by $100 billion.

In the News

How to curb the deficit

Senator Evan Bayh, Democrat of Indiana, noted that Democrats want to spend more than we can afford; Republicans tend to want to cut taxes more than we can afford. So we are stuck with large deficits.

Source: *The New York Times*, October 31, 2009

What policy will change aggregate demand the most: Democrats agreeing to cut the budget outlays or Republicans agreeing to raise taxes?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. A decrease in tax revenues in a recession is an automatic fiscal policy.
   Expenditure to upgrade highways is a discretionary fiscal policy.
   An increase in the public education budget is a discretionary fiscal policy.
   A cut in infrastructure expenditure is a discretionary fiscal policy.
2. Aggregate demand increases by more than $100 billion because government expenditure increases induced expenditure.
3. Aggregate demand decreases but by less than $100 billion because the tax increase decreases disposable income, which decreases induced expenditure.
4. An increase in government expenditure of $100 billion increases aggregate demand by more than $100 billion. An increase in taxes of $100 billion decreases aggregate demand by less than $100 billion. The increase is greater than the decrease, so together aggregate demand increases.

Solution to In the News

The effect of a cut in budget outlays on aggregate demand depends on whether the items cut are expenditure on goods and services (government expenditure multiplier) or transfer payments (transfer payments multiplier). An increase in taxes will decrease aggregate demand (tax multiplier). The magnitude of the government expenditure multiplier exceeds the other two multipliers, so a cut in government expenditure on goods and services will decrease aggregate demand the most.

32.3 THE SUPPLY SIDE: POTENTIAL GDP AND GROWTH

Supply-side effects
The effects of fiscal policy on potential GDP and the economic growth rate.

You've seen how fiscal policy can influence the output gap by changing aggregate demand and real GDP relative to potential GDP. But fiscal policy also influences potential GDP and the growth rate of potential GDP. These influences on potential GDP and economic growth arise because the government provides public goods and services that increase productivity and because taxes change the incentives that people face. These influences, called **supply-side effects**, operate more slowly than the demand-side effects emphasized by Keynesians. Supply-side effects are often ignored in times of recession when the focus is on fiscal stimulus and restoring full employment. But in the long run, the supply-side effects of fiscal policy dominate and determine potential GDP.

We'll begin an account of the supply side with a brief explanation of how full employment and potential GDP are determined in the absence of government services and taxes. Then we'll see how government services and taxes change employment and potential GDP.

Full Employment and Potential GDP

The quantity of labor demanded and the quantity of labor supplied depend on the real wage rate. The higher the real wage rate, other things remaining the same, the smaller is the quantity of labor demanded and the greater is the quantity of labor supplied. When the real wage rate has adjusted to make the quantity of labor demanded equal to the quantity of labor supplied, there is full employment. And when the quantity of labor is the full-employment quantity, real GDP equals potential GDP.

This brief description of how potential GDP and the full-employment quantity of labor are determined is a summary of the more detailed account in Chapter 24 (pp. 613–619).

How do taxes and the provision of government services—the elements of fiscal policy—influence employment and potential GDP?

Fiscal Policy, Employment, and Potential GDP

Both sides of the government budget influence potential GDP. The expenditure side provides public goods and services that enhance productivity and make labor more productive. The revenue side levies taxes that modify incentives that change the full-employment quantities of labor, as well as the amount of saving and investment.

Public Goods and Productivity

Governments provide a legal system and other infrastructure services such as roads and highways, fire-fighting and policing services, and national security, all of which increase the nation's productive potential. Today's world provides a vivid demonstration of the role that good government plays in enhancing productivity. Compare the chaos and absence of productivity in parts of the Middle East and Africa with the order and calm and the productivity they permit in the United States and other industrialized countries.

Public goods and services, financed by the government budget, increase the real GDP that a given amount of labor can produce. So the provision of public goods and services increases potential GDP.

Taxes and Incentives

A tax drives a wedge—called the **tax wedge**—between the price paid by a buyer and the price received by a seller. In the labor market, the income tax drives a wedge between the cost of labor to employers and the take-home pay of workers and decreases the equilibrium quantity of labor employed. A smaller quantity of labor produces a smaller amount of real GDP, so taxes lower potential GDP.

Tax wedge
The gap created by a tax between what a buyer pays and what a seller receives. In the labor market, it is the gap between the before-tax wage rate and the after-tax wage rate.

The income tax wedge is only a part of the tax wedge that affects labor-supply decisions. Taxes on expenditure also create a tax wedge that affects employment and potential GDP.

Taxes on consumption expenditure add to the tax wedge that lowers potential GDP. The reason is that a tax on consumption expenditure raises the prices paid for consumption goods and services and is equivalent to a cut in the real wage rate. The incentive to supply labor depends on the goods and services that an hour of labor can buy. The higher the tax on consumption expenditure, the smaller is the quantity of goods and services that an hour of labor buys and the weaker is the incentive to supply labor.

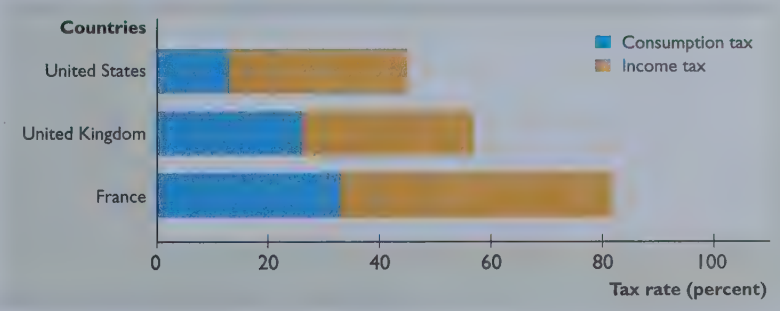
The expenditure tax rate must be added to the income tax rate to find the total tax wedge. If the income tax rate is 25 percent and the tax rate on consumption expenditure is 10 percent, a dollar earned buys only 65 cents worth of goods and services. The tax wedge is 35 percent.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Some Real-World Tax Wedges

Edward C. Prescott of the Arizona State University, who shared the 2004 Nobel Prize for Economic Science, has estimated the tax wedges for a number of countries. The U.S. tax wedge is a combination of consumption taxes, income taxes, and Social Security taxes.

Among the industrial countries, the U.S. tax wedge is relatively small. Prescott estimates that in France, (marginal) taxes on consumption are 33 percent and taxes on incomes are 49 percent. The estimates for the United Kingdom fall between those for France and the United States. The figure shows these components of the tax wedges in the three countries.



SOURCE OF DATA: Edward C. Prescott, *American Economic Review*, 2003.

According to Prescott's estimates, the tax wedge has a powerful effect on employment and potential GDP. Potential GDP per person in France is lower than that of the United States, and the entire difference can be attributed to the difference in the tax wedge in the two countries.

Potential GDP per person in the United Kingdom is lower than that of the United States, and about a third of the difference arises from the different tax wedges. (The rest is due to different productivities.)

Fiscal Policy and Potential GDP: A Graphical Analysis

Figure 32.3 illustrates the effects of fiscal policy on potential GDP. It begins with the economy at full employment and with no income tax.

Full Employment With No Income Tax

In part (a), the demand for labor curve is *LD*, and the supply of labor curve is *LS*. The equilibrium real wage rate is $30 an hour, and 250 billion hours of labor a year are employed. The economy is at full employment. In Figure 32.3(b), the production function is *PF*. (This production function incorporates the productivity of an efficient provision of public services.) When 250 billion hours of labor are employed, real GDP—which is also potential GDP—is $14 trillion.

Let's now see how an income tax changes potential GDP.

The Effects of the Income Tax

The tax on labor income influences potential GDP by changing the full-employment quantity of labor. The income tax weakens the incentive to work and drives a wedge between the take-home wage of workers and the cost of labor to firms. The result is a smaller quantity of labor employed and a smaller potential GDP. Figure 32.3 shows this outcome.

In the labor market in part (a), the income tax has no effect on the demand for labor because the quantity of labor that firms plan to hire depends only on how productive labor is and what labor costs—the real wage rate. The demand for labor curve remains at *LD*.

But the income tax changes the supply of labor. With no income tax, the real wage rate is $30 an hour and 250 billion hours of labor a year are employed. An income tax weakens the incentive to work. Workers must pay the government part of each dollar of the before-tax wage rate, as determined by the income tax code. Workers look at the after-tax wage rate when they decide how much labor to supply. In Figure 32.3, an income tax of $15 an hour shifts the supply of labor curve leftward to *LS* + *tax*. The vertical distance between the *LS* curve and the *LS* + *tax* curve measures the $15 of income tax.

With the smaller supply of labor, the before-tax wage rate rises to $35 an hour but the after-tax wage rate falls to $20 an hour. The gap created between the before-tax wage rate and the after-tax wage rate is the *tax wedge*.

The new equilibrium quantity of labor employed is 200 billion hours a year—less than in the no-tax case. This decrease in the full-employment quantity of labor decreases potential GDP as shown in Figure 32.3(b).

Changes in the Tax Rate

A change in the income tax rate changes equilibrium employment and potential GDP. In the example that you've just worked through, the tax rate is about 43 percent—a $15 tax on a $35 wage rate. If the income tax rate is increased, the supply of labor decreases yet more and the *LS* + *tax* curve shifts farther leftward. Equilibrium employment and potential GDP decrease.

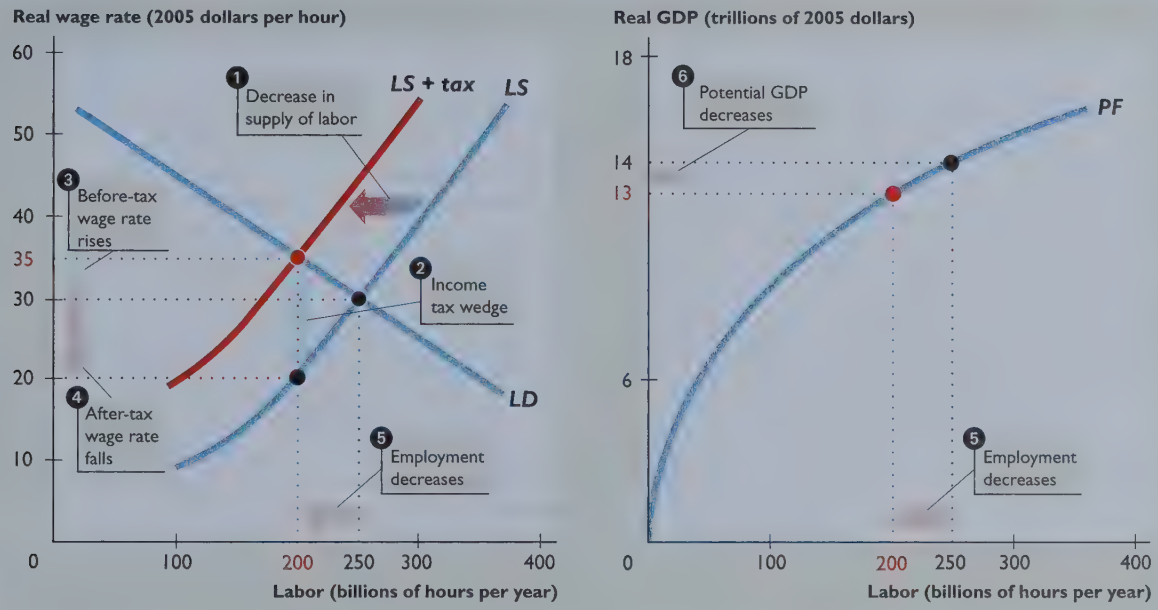
If the income tax rate is decreased, the supply of labor increases and the *LS* + *tax* curve shifts rightward. Equilibrium employment and potential GDP increase.

You can now see that a tax cut has two effects: It increases aggregate demand by boosting consumption expenditure and it increases potential GDP.

FIGURE 32.3

Fiscal Policy and Potential GDP

MyEconLab Animation



(a) Income tax in the labor market

(b) Income tax and potential GDP

In part (a), the demand for labor is *LD* and the supply of labor is *LS*. With no income tax, the equilibrium real wage rate is $30 an hour and employment is 250 billion hours. In part (b), the production function, *PF*, tells us that 250 billion hours of labor (full employment of labor) produces a potential GDP of $14 trillion.

An income tax ❶ decreases the supply of labor and creates ❷ an income tax wedge between the wage that firms pay and the wage that workers receive. ❸ The before-tax wage rate paid by employers rises and ❹ the after-tax wage rate received by workers falls. ❺ Employment decreases and ❻ potential GDP decreases.

Taxes, Deficits, and Economic Growth

You've just seen how taxes can change incentives in the labor market and influence potential GDP. Taxes also affect the market for financial capital, which influences the amount of saving and investment; and saving and investment in turn affect the pace of capital accumulation and the economic growth rate.

Fiscal policy influences the economic growth rate in two ways:

First, taxes drive a wedge between the interest rate paid by borrowers and the interest rate received by lenders. This wedge lowers the amount of saving and investment and slows the economic growth rate.

Second, if the government has a budget deficit, then government borrowing to finance the deficit competes with firms' borrowing to finance investment and to some degree, government borrowing "crowds out" private investment.

Let's examine these two influences on economic growth a bit more closely.

Interest Rate Tax Wedge

Lenders pay an income tax on the interest they receive from borrowers, which creates an interest rate tax wedge. The effects of this tax wedge are analogous to those of the tax wedge on labor income. But they are more serious for two reasons.

First, a tax on wages lowers the quantity of labor employed and lowers potential GDP, while a tax on interest lowers the quantity of saving and investment and slows the *growth rate of real GDP*. A tax on interest income creates a Lucas wedge (Chapter 24, p. 612)—an ever-widening gap between potential GDP and the potential GDP that might have been.

Second, the true tax rate on interest is much higher than that on wages because of the way in which inflation and taxes on interest interact. The interest rate that influences investment and saving plans is the *real after-tax interest rate*.

The *real interest rate* equals the *nominal interest rate* minus the *inflation rate* (see Chapter 23, pp. 602–603). The *after-tax real interest rate* equals the *real interest rate* minus the amount of *income tax paid on interest income*.

But the nominal interest rate, not the real interest rate, determines the amount of tax to be paid; and the higher the inflation rate, the higher is the nominal interest rate, and the higher is the true tax rate on interest income.

Here is an example. Suppose the tax rate on interest is 40 percent of the nominal interest rate. If the nominal interest rate is 4 percent a year and there is no inflation, the real interest rate is also 4 percent a year. The tax on 4 percent interest is 1.6 percent (40 percent of 4 percent), so the after-tax real interest rate is 4 percent minus 1.6 percent, which equals 2.4 percent a year.

Now suppose that the nominal interest rate is 10 percent a year and the inflation rate is 6 percent a year, so the real interest rate is still 4 percent a year. The tax on 10 percent interest is 4 percent (40 percent of 10 percent), so now the after-tax real interest rate is 4 percent minus 4 percent, which equals zero. The true tax rate in this case is not 40 percent but 100 percent!

Even modest inflation makes the true tax rate on interest income extremely high and results in a smaller equilibrium quantity of saving and investment, a slower rate of capital accumulation, and a slower growth rate of real GDP.

Deficits and Crowding Out

With no change in the government's outlays, a tax cut that increases the budget deficit brings an increase in the demand for loanable funds. (You learned about this effect of a government budget deficit in Chapter 26, pp. 676–678.) An increase in the demand for loanable funds raises the real interest rate and crowds out private investment. There is uncertainty about the magnitude of the crowding-out effect but no doubt about its presence.

You can see that this effect of an income tax cut works against the incentive effect. A lower income tax rate shrinks the tax wedge and stimulates employment, saving, and investment, but a higher budget deficit decreases investment.

The Supply-Side Debate

Before 1980, few economists paid attention to the supply-side effects of taxes on employment and potential GDP. Then, when Ronald Reagan took office as President, a group of supply-siders began to argue the virtues of cutting taxes. Arthur Laffer was one of them. Laffer and his supporters were not held in high esteem among mainstream economists, but they did become influential for a period. They correctly argued that tax cuts would increase employment and

EYE on FISCAL STIMULUS

Can Fiscal Stimulus End a Recession?

In February 2009, in the depths of the 2008–2009 recession, Congress passed the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, a $787 billion fiscal stimulus package that the President signed at an economic forum in Denver.

This Act of Congress is an example of discretionary fiscal policy. Did this action by Congress contribute to ending the 2008–2009 recession and making the recession less severe than it might have been?

The Obama Administration economists are confident that the answer is yes: The stimulus package made a significant contribution to easing and ending the recession.

But many, and perhaps most, economists think that the stimulus package played a small role and that the truly big story is not discretionary fiscal policy but the role played by automatic stabilizers.

Let's take a closer look at the fiscal policy actions and their likely effects.

Discretionary Fiscal Policy

In a number of speeches, President Obama promised that fiscal stimulus would save or create 650,000 jobs by the end of the 2009 summer. In October 2009, the Administration economists declared the promise fulfilled. Fiscal stimulus had saved or created the promised 650,000 jobs.

This claim of success might be correct but it isn't startling and it isn't a huge claim. To see why, start by asking how much GDP 650,000 people would produce. In 2009, each employed person produced $100,000 of real GDP on average. So 650,000 people would produce $65 billion of GDP.

Although the fiscal stimulus passed by Congress totalled $787 billion, by October 2009 only 20 percent of the stimulus had been spent (or taken in tax breaks). So the stimulus was about $160 billion.

If government outlays of $160 billion created $65 billion of GDP, the multiplier was 0.4 (65/160 = 0.4).

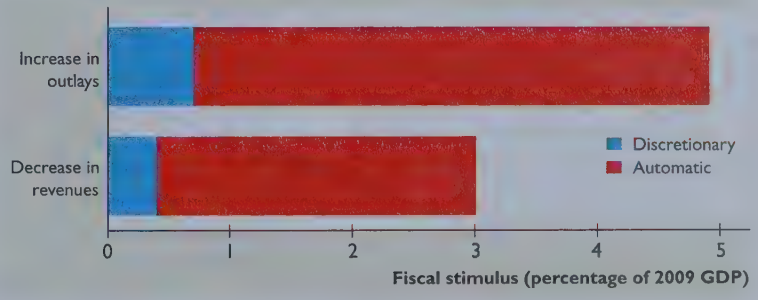
This multiplier is much smaller than the 1.6 that the Obama economists say will eventually occur. They believe, like Keynes, that the multiplier starts out small and gets larger over time as spending plans respond to rising incomes. An initial increase in expenditure increases aggregate expenditure. But the increase in aggregate expenditure generates higher incomes, which in turn induces greater consumption expenditure.

Automatic Fiscal Policy

Government revenue is sensitive to the state of the economy. When personal incomes and corporate profits fall, income tax revenues fall too. When unemployment increases, outlays on unemployment benefits and other social welfare benefits increase. These fiscal policy changes are automatic. They occur with speed and without help from Congress.

The scale of automatic fiscal policy changes depends on the depth of recession. In 2009, real GDP sank to 6 percent below potential GDP—a recessionary gap of $800 billion.

Responding to this deep recession, tax revenues crashed and transfer payments skyrocketed. The figure below shows the magnitudes as percentages of GDP. You can see that the automatic stabilizers were much bigger than the discretionary actions—six times as large. This automatic action, not the stimulus package, played the major role in limiting job losses.



SOURCES OF DATA: Budget of the United States, 2010, Bureau of Economic Analysis, and White House press releases.

increase output. But they incorrectly argued that tax cuts would increase tax revenues by enough to decrease the budget deficit. Given that U.S. tax rates are among the lowest in the industrial world, it is unlikely that tax cuts would increase tax revenues. When the Reagan administration did cut taxes, the budget deficit increased, a fact that reinforces this view.

Supply-side economics became tarnished because of its association with Laffer and came to be called "voodoo economics." But mainstream economists, including Martin Feldstein, a Harvard professor who was Reagan's chief economic adviser, recognized the power of tax cuts as incentives but took the standard view that tax cuts without spending cuts would swell the budget deficit and bring a crowding-out effect. This view is now widely accepted by economists on both sides of the political debate.

Combined Demand-Side and Supply-Side Effects

You've seen that a fiscal stimulus increases aggregate demand and potential GDP. What is the combined demand-side and supply-side effect? When potential GDP increases, aggregate supply also increases (see Chapter 29, p. 747). When both aggregate demand and aggregate supply increase, we know that equilibrium real GDP increases, but the price level might rise, fall, or remain the same.

Figure 32.4 illustrates this last, neutral case. A fiscal stimulus increases aggregate demand and shifts the *AD* curve rightward from AD_0 to AD_1. The same fis-

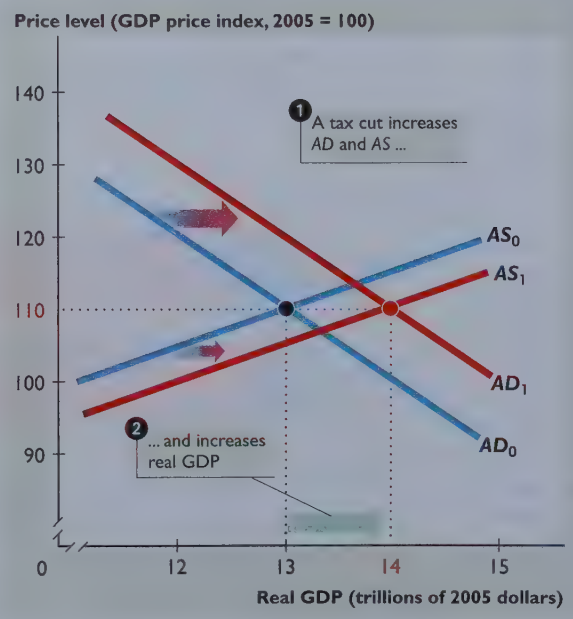
FIGURE 32.4

The Combined Demand-Side and Supply-Side Effects of a Fiscal Stimulus

MyEconLab Animation

1. A tax cut increases disposable income, which increases aggregate demand and shifts the *AD* curve from AD_0 to AD_1. A tax cut also strengthens the incentives to work, save, and invest, which increases potential GDP and aggregate supply. The *AS* curve shifts rightward from AS_0 to AS_1.
2. Because both aggregate demand and aggregate supply increase, real GDP increases.

The price level might rise, fall, or (as shown here) remain constant depending on which effect, the demand-side effect or the supply-side effect, is larger.



cal action increases aggregate supply and shifts the *AS* curve rightward from AS_0 to AS_1. In this example, the increase in aggregate supply equals the increase in aggregate demand. This combination increases real GDP and leaves the price level unchanged.

If a fiscal stimulus increases aggregate supply by more than it increases aggregate demand, real GDP would still increase but the price level would fall. (Draw a figure like Figure 32.4 to show this case.) Similarly, if the increase in aggregate supply were smaller than the increase in aggregate demand, again real GDP would increase but the price level would rise. (Draw another figure like Figure 32.4 to show this case.)

Long-Run Fiscal Policy Effects

The long-run consequences of fiscal policy are the most profound ones. If investment is crowded out by a large budget deficit, the economic growth rate slows and potential GDP gets ever farther below what it might have been as the Lucas wedge widens. If a large budget deficit persists so that debt increases, confidence in the value of money is eroded and inflation erupts. History provides many examples of this consequence of a fiscal stimulus that gets out of control. It is these long-run effects of fiscal policy that make it vital to keep government outlays and budget deficits under control and to have a plan for restoring a balanced budget at full employment.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Views on Fiscal Policy and How Fiscal Policy Affects You

Consider the U.S. economy right now. Using all the knowledge that you have accumulated during your course and by reading or watching the current news, try to determine the macroeconomic policy issues that face the U.S. economy today.

Do we have a business-cycle problem? Does the economy have a recessionary gap or an inflationary gap, or is the economy back at full employment?

Do we have a productivity problem? Is potential GDP either too low or growing too slowly?

In light of your assessment of the current state of the U.S. economy, what type of fiscal policy would you recommend and vote for?

Are you more concerned about the provision of public services, the size of the budget deficit, or the size of the tax wedge?

If you are more concerned about the provision of public services, would your preferred package include increased spending? If so, on what programs? How would you pay for the expenditure?

If you are more concerned about the size of the budget deficit, how would you propose lowering it?

If you are more concerned about the tax wedge, would your preferred fiscal package include tax cuts? If it would, what public services would you cut to achieve lower taxes?

Consider recent changes in fiscal policy that you have seen reported in the media. What do you think these changes say about the federal government's views of the state of the economy? Do these views agree with yours?

Thinking further about the recent changes in fiscal policy: How do you expect these changes to affect you? How might your spending, saving, and labor supply decisions change?

Using your own responses to fiscal policy changes as an example, are these policy changes influencing aggregate demand, aggregate supply, or both? How do you think they will change real GDP?

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 32.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 32.3

Explain the supply-side effects of fiscal policy on employment, potential GDP, and the economic growth rate.

Practice Problems

1. The government cuts the income tax rate. Explain the effects of this action on the supply of labor, the demand for labor, the equilibrium level of employment, the real wage rate, and potential GDP.
2. What is the true income tax rate on interest income if the nominal interest rate is 8 percent a year, the inflation rate is 5 percent a year, and the tax rate on nominal interest is 25 percent?
3. If the government cuts its outlays but tax revenue is unchanged, explain the effects on saving, investment, the real interest rate, and the growth rate of real GDP.

In the News

The logic of cutting payroll taxes
Payroll taxes are not the only thing that stops people from working, but Obama's proposal to cut the employer portion of the payroll tax for two years by 3.1 percentage points could create a million or more jobs.

Source: *The New York Times*, September 21, 2011

Explain how the payroll tax cut will influence employment and potential GDP.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. When the government cuts the income tax rate, the supply of labor increases but the demand for labor does not change. The equilibrium level of employment increases. The real wage rate paid by employers decreases and the real wage rate received by workers increases—the tax wedge shrinks. With increased employment, potential GDP increases.
2. The true tax is 66.67 percent. With a nominal interest rate of 8 percent a year and a tax rate of 25 percent, the tax paid is 25 percent of 8 percent, which is 2 percent. The before-tax real interest rate is 8 percent minus 5 percent, which is 3 percent a year. The true tax paid is 2 percent tax divided by 3 percent before-tax real interest, which is 66.67 percent.
3. If the government cuts outlays but tax revenue is unchanged, the budget deficit decreases or the budget surplus increases. Either way, in the loanable funds market the real interest rate falls and private saving decreases, but total saving and investment increase. With greater investment, capital grows more quickly, and so does real GDP.

Solution to In the News

The cut in payroll taxes will decrease the tax wedge and lower the cost of labor. It will increase the quantity of labor demanded and increase the quantity of labor employed. It will also increase potential GDP. When the tax cut ends after two years, employment and potential GDP will return to their previous levels (other things remaining the same).

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the federal budget process and the recent history of revenues, outlays, deficits, and debts.

- The federal budget is an annual statement of the outlays, tax revenues, and budget surplus or deficit of the government of the United States.
- Fiscal policy is the use of the federal budget to finance the federal government and to influence macroeconomic performance.

2 Explain how fiscal stimulus is used to fight a recession.

- Fiscal policy became controversial during the 2008–2009 recession: Keynesians advocated aggressive fiscal stimulus and others urged a more cautious approach.
- Fiscal policy can be either discretionary or automatic.
- Changes in government expenditure and changes in taxes have multiplier effects on aggregate demand and can be used to try to keep real GDP at potential GDP.
- In practice, law-making time lags, a shrinking area of law-maker discretion, the difficulty of estimating potential GDP, and the limitations of economic forecasting seriously hamper discretionary fiscal policy.
- Automatic stabilizers arise because tax revenues and outlays fluctuate with real GDP.

3 Explain the supply-side effects of fiscal policy on employment, potential GDP, and the economic growth rate.

- The provision of public goods and services increases productivity and increases potential GDP.
- Income taxes create a wedge between the wage rate paid by firms and received by workers and lower both employment and potential GDP.
- Income taxes create a wedge between the interest rate paid by firms and received by lenders and lower saving and investment and the growth rate of real GDP.
- A government budget deficit raises the real interest rate and crowds out some private investment, which slows real GDP growth.

Key Terms

Automatic fiscal policy, 824
Automatic stabilizers, 824
Balanced budget, 818
Balanced budget multiplier, 826
Budget deficit, 818
Budget surplus, 818
Cyclical surplus or deficit, 825
Discretionary fiscal policy, 824
Federal budget, 818
Fiscal policy, 818
Fiscal stimulus, 823
Fiscal year, 818
Government expenditure multiplier, 826
Induced taxes, 824
National debt, 819
Needs-tested spending, 824
Structural surplus or deficit, 825
Supply-side effects, 830
Tax multiplier, 826
Tax wedge, 831
Transfer payments, 819
Transfer payments multiplier, 826

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Chapter 32 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Suppose that in an economy, investment is $400 billion, saving is $400 billion, tax revenues are $500 billion, exports are $300 billion, and imports are $200 billion. Calculate government expenditure and the government's budget balance.
2. Classify the following items as automatic fiscal policy actions, discretionary fiscal policy actions, or neither.
   - An increase in expenditure on homeland security
   - An increase in unemployment benefits paid during a recession
   - Decreased expenditures on national defense during peace time
   - An increase in Medicaid expenditure brought about by a flu epidemic
   - A cut in farm subsidies
3. The U.S. economy is in recession and has a large recessionary gap. Describe what automatic fiscal policy might occur. Describe a fiscal stimulus that could be used that would not increase the budget deficit.

TABLE 1 LABOR MARKET

Real wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor demanded (thousands of hours)	Quantity of labor supplied (thousands of hours)
10	6	2
11	5	3
12	4	4
13	3	5
14	2	6
15	1	7

TABLE 2 PRODUCTION FUNCTION

Employment (thousands of hours)	Real GDP (millions of dollars)
2	6
3	11
4	15
5	18
6	20
7	21

OilPatch is a mineral rich economy in which the government gets most of its tax revenue from oil royalties. But OilPatch has an income tax. Table 1 describes the labor market in OilPatch and Table 2 describes the economy's production function. The government introduces an income tax of $2 per hour worked. Use Tables 1 and 2 to work Problems 4 to 6.

4. What are the levels of employment and potential GDP in OilPatch, what is the real wage rate paid by employers, and what is the after-tax real wage rate received by workers?
5. If OilPatch eliminates its income tax, what then are the levels of employment and potential GDP and what is the real wage rate in OilPatch?
6. If OilPatch doubles its income tax to $4 an hour, what then are the levels of employment and potential GDP? What is the real wage rate paid by employers and the after-tax real wage rate received by workers?
7. The income tax rate on all forms of income is 40 percent and there is a tax of 10 percent on all consumption expenditure. The nominal interest rate is 7 percent a year and the inflation rate is 5 percent a year. What is the size of the tax wedge on wages and what is the true tax rate on interest?

Use the following information to work Problems 8 and 9.

IMF: World economy enters "dangerous new phase"
The IMF expects the U.S. economy to grow just 1.5% this year and 1.8% in 2012. That's down from its June forecast of 2.5% in 2011 and 2.7% next year. Olivier Blanchard, the IMF's chief economist, said that the recovery has weakened considerably and that strong fiscal policies are needed to improve the outlook.
Source: *USA Today*, September 20, 2011

8. Explain the effects of strong fiscal stimulus if it is implemented well.
9. The Canadian Prime Minister Stephen Harper warned on November 6, 2008, that if policy makers adopt too strong a fiscal stimulus then long-term growth might be jeopardized. Explain what he meant.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. From the peak in 1929 to the Great Depression trough in 1933, government tax revenues fell by 1.9 percent of GDP and government expenditure increased by 0.3 percent. Real GDP fell by 25 percent. Compare and contrast this experience with the fiscal policy that accompanied the 2008–2009 recession. What did fiscal policy do to moderate the last recession that was largely absent during the Great Depression?
2. Suppose that the U.S. government increases its expenditure on highways and bridges by $100 billion. Explain the effect that this expenditure would have on aggregate demand and real GDP.
3. Suppose that the U.S. government increases its expenditure on highways and bridges by $100 billion. Explain the effect that this expenditure would have on needs-tested spending and the government's budget surplus.

Table 1 describes the labor market in LowTaxLand and Table 2 describes the economy's production function. LowTaxLand introduces an income tax of $1 per hour worked. Use Tables 1 and 2 to work Problems **4** to **6**.

TABLE 1 LABOR MARKET

Real wage rate (dollars per hour)	Quantity of labor demanded (thousands of hours)	Quantity of labor supplied (thousands of hours)
10.00	18	6
10.50	15	9
11.00	12	12
11.50	9	15
12.00	6	18
12.50	3	21

TABLE 2 PRODUCTION FUNCTION

Employment (thousands of hours)	Real GDP (millions of dollars)
6	7
9	12
12	16
15	19
18	21
21	22

4. What are the levels of employment and potential GDP in LowTaxLand, what is the real wage rate paid by employers, and what is the after-tax real wage rate received by workers?
5. If LowTaxLand eliminates its income tax, what then are the levels of employment and potential GDP and what is the real wage rate in LowTaxLand?
6. If LowTaxLand doubles its income tax to $2 an hour, what then are the levels of employment and potential GDP? What is the real wage rate paid by employers and the after-tax real wage rate received by workers?
7. Describe the supply-side effects of a fiscal stimulus and explain how a tax cut will influence potential GDP.
8. Use an aggregate supply–aggregate demand graph to illustrate the effects on real GDP and the price level of a fiscal stimulus when the economy is in recession.

Use the following information to work Problems **9** and **10**.

CBO estimates $1.3 trillion deficit for 2011

The Congressional Budget Office (CBO) predicts that the federal budget deficit hit a near-record $1.3 trillion in the just-completed fiscal year. The 2011 deficit equaled 8.6% of GDP, a slight drop from the 8.9% of GDP in 2010. It'll take some combination of new revenues and major spending cuts to get the deficit down to about 3% of GDP, the level that many analysts say is sustainable.

Source: *USA Today*, October 8, 2011

9. If the plan to reduce the deficit includes a cut in transfer payments and a rise in taxes of the same amount, how will this policy influence the budget deficit and real GDP?
10. If the plan to reduce the deficit includes an increase in taxes on the wealthy, explain how this policy might have serious supply-side consequences for both potential GDP and the growth rate of real GDP.

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 32 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The federal government's major outlay in its budget is _____ and its major source of revenue is _____.
   A. debt interest; sales of government bonds
   B. expenditure on goods and services; taxes on goods and services
   C. Social Security and other benefits; personal income taxes
   D. subsidies to farmers; corporate taxes
2. U.S. national debt _____ when the federal government's _____ .
   A. increases; outlays exceed tax revenue
   B. decreases; outlays exceed tax revenue
   C. increases; tax revenue rises faster than outlays
   D. decreases; tax revenue rises faster than outlays
3. Discretionary fiscal policy to stimulate the economy includes _____.
   A. lowering the tax rate paid by households with middle incomes
   B. raising the tax on gasoline
   C. the fall in tax revenue as the economy goes into recession
   D. the rise in tax revenue collected from businesses as their profits increase
4. Automatic fiscal policy _____.
   A. requires an action of the government
   B. is weak unless the government cuts its outlays to reduce the deficit
   C. operates as the economy moves along its business cycle
   D. reduces the deficit as the economy goes into recession
5. Needs-tested spending is _____ fiscal policy because it _____ .
   A. automatic; increases in recession and decreases in expansion
   B. discretionary; increases when tax revenue increases
   C. automatic; increases when the government's budget deficit falls
   D. discretionary; is determined by economic hardship
6. A government expenditure multiplier _____ .
   A. equals 1
   B. is less than the tax multiplier
   C. exceeds 1
   D. equals the tax multiplier
7. When the government lowers the income tax rate, _____ .
   A. employment increases and potential GDP increases
   B. employment does not change but labor productivity falls
   C. labor productivity rises and employment decreases
   D. both labor productivity and potential GDP increase
8. A tax cut increases _____ .
   A. aggregate demand but has no effect on aggregate supply
   B. aggregate demand because it increases disposable income and increases aggregate supply because it is an incentive to supply more labor
   C. aggregate demand because it increases consumption expenditure and decreases aggregate supply because labor productivity falls
   D. aggregate supply but has no effect on aggregate demand

Did the Fed save us from another Great Depression?

33

Monetary Policy

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1. Describe the objectives of U.S. monetary policy, the framework for achieving those objectives, and the Fed's monetary policy actions.
2. Explain the transmission channels through which the Fed influences real GDP and the inflation rate.
3. Explain and compare alternative monetary policy strategies.

33.1 HOW THE FED CONDUCTS MONETARY POLICY

A nation's monetary policy objectives and the framework for setting and achieving those objectives stem from the relationship between the central bank and the government. We'll describe the objectives of U.S. monetary policy and the framework and assignment of responsibility for achieving those objectives.

Monetary Policy Objectives

The objectives of monetary policy are ultimately political. In the United States, these objectives are set out in the mandate of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, which is defined by the Federal Reserve Act of 1913 and its subsequent amendments.

Federal Reserve Act

The Fed's mandate was most recently clarified in an amendment to the Federal Reserve Act passed by Congress in 2000, which states that

> The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and the Federal Open Market Committee shall maintain long-run growth of the monetary and credit aggregates commensurate with the economy's long-run potential to increase production, so as to promote effectively the goals of maximum employment, stable prices, and moderate long-term interest rates.

This description of the Fed's monetary policy objectives has two distinct parts: a statement of goals and a prescription of the means by which to pursue the goals.

Goals: The Dual Mandate

The Fed's goals are often described as a "dual mandate" to achieve stable prices and also maximum employment.

The goal of "stable prices" doesn't mean a constant price level. Rather, it is interpreted to mean keeping the inflation rate low and predictable. Success in achieving this goal also ensures "moderate long-term interest rates."

The goal of "maximum employment" means attaining the maximum sustainable growth rate of potential GDP, keeping real GDP close to potential GDP, and keeping the unemployment rate close to the natural unemployment rate.

In the *long run*, these goals are in harmony and reinforce each other. Price stability is the key goal. It provides the best available environment for households and firms to make the saving and investment decisions that bring economic growth. So price stability encourages the maximum sustainable growth rate of potential GDP.

Price stability delivers moderate long-term interest rates because the nominal interest rate equals the real interest rate plus the inflation rate. With stable prices, the nominal interest rate is close to the real interest rate and, most of the time, this rate is likely to be moderate.

While the Fed's goals are in harmony in the long run, in the short run, the Fed faces a tradeoff. In the short run, taking an action that is designed to lower the inflation rate and achieve stable prices raises the unemployment rate and slows real GDP growth. And using monetary policy to try to lower the unemployment rate and boost real GDP growth brings the risk of a rising inflation rate. (See Chapter 31, pp. 810–811.)

Means for Achieving the Goals

The 2000 law instructs the Fed to pursue its goals by "maintain[ing] long-run growth of the monetary and credit aggregates commensurate with the economy's long-run potential to increase production." You can perhaps recognize this statement as being consistent with the quantity theory of money that you studied in Chapter 28 (see pp. 728–731). The "economy's long-run potential to increase production" is the growth rate of potential GDP. The "monetary and credit aggregates" are the quantities of money and loans. By keeping the growth rate of the quantity of money in line with the growth rate of potential GDP, the Fed is expected to be able to maintain full employment and keep the price level stable.

Prerequisite for Achieving the Goals

The financial crisis that started in the summer of 2007 and intensified in the fall of 2008 brought the problem of financial instability to the top of the Fed's agenda. The focus of policy became the single-minded pursuit of **financial stability**—of enabling financial markets and institutions to resume their normal functions of allocating capital resources and risk.

Financial stability
A situation in which financial markets and institutions function normally to allocate capital resources and risk.

The pursuit of financial stability by the Fed is not an abandonment of the mandated goals of maximum employment and stable prices. Rather, it is a prerequisite for attaining those goals. Financial instability has the potential to bring severe recession and deflation—falling prices—and undermine the attainment of the mandated goals.

To pursue its mandated monetary policy goals, the Fed must make the general concepts of maximum employment and stable prices precise and operational.

Operational "Maximum Employment" Goal

The Fed pays close attention to the business cycle and tries to steer a steady course between inflation and recession. To gauge the state of output and employment relative to full employment, the Fed looks at a large number of indicators that include the labor force participation rate, the unemployment rate, measures of capacity utilization, activity in the housing market, the stock market, and regional information gathered by the regional Federal Reserve Banks. All these data are summarized in the Fed's *Beige Book*.

The *output gap*—the percentage deviation of real GDP from potential GDP—summarizes the state of aggregate demand relative to potential GDP. A positive output gap—an *inflationary gap*—brings rising inflation. A negative output gap—a *recessionary gap*—results in lost output and unemployment above the natural unemployment rate. The Fed tries to minimize the output gap.

Operational "Stable Prices" Goal

The Fed believes that core inflation provides the best indication of whether price stability is being achieved. The *core inflation rate* is the annual percentage change in the Personal Consumption Expenditure deflator (PCE deflator) *excluding* the prices of food and fuel (see Chapter 23, pp. 595–596).

The Fed has not defined price stability but many economists regard it as meaning a core inflation rate of between 1 and 2 percent a year. Former Fed Chairman Alan Greenspan said that "price stability is best thought of as an environment in which inflation is so low and stable over time that it does not materially enter into the decisions of households and firms."

Responsibility for Monetary Policy

Who is responsible for monetary policy in the United States? What are the roles of the Fed, Congress, and the President?

The Role of the Fed

The Federal Reserve Act makes the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and the Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC) responsible for the conduct of monetary policy. We described the composition of the FOMC in Chapter 27 (see p. 698). The FOMC makes a monetary policy decision at eight scheduled meetings a year and publishes its minutes three weeks after each meeting.

The Role of Congress

Congress plays no role in making monetary policy decisions, but the Federal Reserve Act requires the Board of Governors to report on monetary policy to Congress. The Fed makes two reports each year, one in February and another in July. These reports, along with the Fed Chairman's testimony before Congress and the minutes of the FOMC, communicate the Fed's thinking on monetary policy to lawmakers and the public.

The Role of the President

The formal role of the President of the United States is limited to appointing the members and the Chairman of the Board of Governors. But some Presidents—Richard Nixon was one—have tried to influence Fed decisions.

You now know the objectives of monetary policy and can describe the framework and assignment of responsibility for achieving those objectives. Your next task is to see how the Fed conducts its monetary policy.

Choosing a Policy Instrument

Monetary policy instrument
A variable that the Fed can directly control or closely target and that influences the economy in desirable ways.

To conduct its monetary policy, the Fed must select a **monetary policy instrument**, a variable that the Fed can directly control or closely target and that influences the economy in desirable ways.

As the sole issuer of the *monetary base*, the Fed is a monopoly. A monopoly can fix the quantity of its product and leave the market to determine the price; or it can fix the price of its product and leave the market to choose the quantity. The "price" of monetary base is the **federal funds rate**, the interest rate at which banks can borrow and lend reserves in the federal funds market. The Fed can target the monetary base or the federal funds rate, but not both. If the Fed wants to decrease the monetary base, the federal funds rate must rise; and if the Fed wants to raise the federal funds rate, the monetary base must decrease.

Federal funds rate
The interest rate at which banks can borrow and lend reserves in the federal funds market.

The Federal Funds Rate

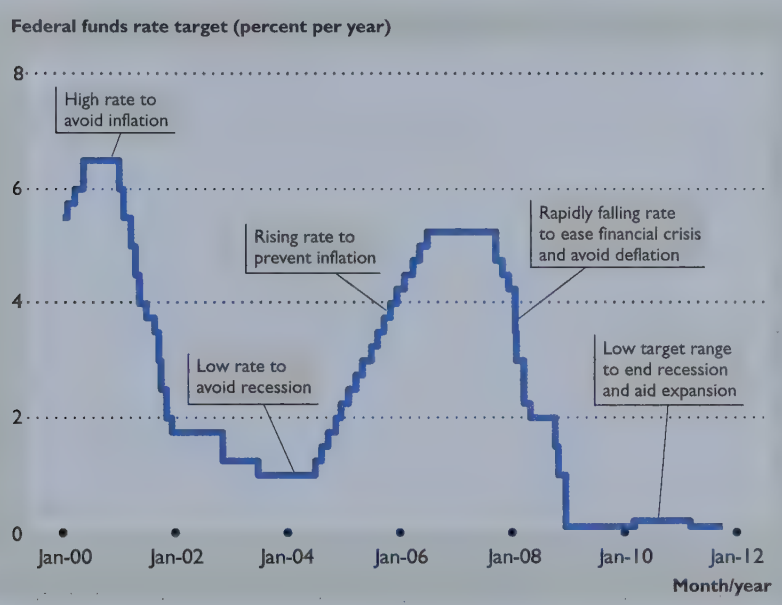
The Fed's choice of monetary policy instrument is the federal funds rate. Given this choice, the Fed permits the monetary base and the quantity of money to find their own equilibrium values and has no preset targets for them.

Figure 33.1 shows the federal funds rate since 2000. You can see that the federal funds rate was 5.5 percent at the beginning of 2000 and during 2000 and 2001, the Fed increased the rate to 6.5 percent. The Fed raised the interest rate to this high level to lower the inflation rate.

FIGURE 33.1

The Fed's Key Monetary Policy Instrument: The Federal Funds Rate

MyEconLab Real-time data



The Fed sets a target for the federal funds rate and then takes actions to keep the rate close to the target.

When the Fed wants to slow inflation, it raises the federal funds rate target.

When the inflation rate is below target and the Fed wants to avoid recession, it lowers the federal funds rate target.

When the Fed focused on restoring financial stability, it cut the federal funds rate target aggressively to almost zero.

SOURCE OF DATA: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

Between 2002 and 2004, the federal funds rate was set at historically low levels. The reason is that with inflation well anchored at close to 2 percent a year, the Fed was less concerned about inflation than it was about recession so it wanted to lean in the direction of avoiding recession.

From mid-2004 through early 2006, the Fed was increasingly concerned about the build-up of inflation pressures and it raised the federal funds rate target on 17 occasions to take it to 5.25 percent, a level that was held until September 2007.

When the global financial crisis began, the Fed acted cautiously in cutting the federal funds rate target. But as the crisis intensified, rate cuts became more frequent and larger, ending in December 2008 with an interest rate close to zero. The normal changes of a quarter of a percentage point (also called 25 *basis points*) were abandoned as the Fed slashed the rate, first by an unusual 50 basis points and finally, in December 2008, by an unprecedented 100 basis points. Since the end of 2008, the federal funds rate has been close to zero.

How does the Fed decide the appropriate level for the federal funds rate? And how, having made that decision, does the Fed move the federal funds rate to its target level?

The Fed's Decision-Making Strategy

Two alternative decision-making strategies might be used by a central bank and they are summarized as two alternative *rules*:

- Instrument rule
- Targeting rule

Instrument Rule

Instrument rule
A decision rule for monetary policy that sets the policy instrument by a formula based on the current state of the economy.

An **instrument rule** is a decision rule for monetary policy that sets the policy instrument by a formula based on the current state of the economy. The best-known instrument rule is the *Taylor Rule*, which sets the federal funds rate by a formula that links it to the current inflation rate and current output gap. (We describe the Taylor Rule in *Eye on the U.S. Economy* below.)

To implement the Taylor rule, the FOMC would plug the current inflation rate and output gap into the formula and calculate the level at which to set the federal funds rate. A computer would make the interest rate decision.

Targeting Rule

Targeting rule
A decision rule for monetary policy that sets the policy instrument at a level that makes the central bank's forecast of the ultimate policy goals equal to their targets.

A **targeting rule** is a decision rule for monetary policy that sets the policy instrument at a level that makes the central bank's forecast of the ultimate policy goals equal to their targets. The Fed employs such a rule. The Fed sets the federal funds rate that gets its forecasts of inflation and the output gap as close as possible to their target levels.

To implement its targeting rule, the FOMC gathers and processes a large amount of information about the economy, the way it responds to shocks, and the way it responds to policy. The FOMC then processes all these data and comes to a judgment about the best level for the federal funds rate.

The Fed does not pursue formal published targets: It has implicit targets and when the economy deviates from these targets, as it does most of the time, the Fed places relative weights on its two objectives and, constrained by the short-run tradeoff (see Chapter 31), decides how quickly to try to get inflation back on track or the economy back to full employment.

EYE on the U.S. ECONOMY

The Fed's Interest Rate Decisions and the Taylor Rule

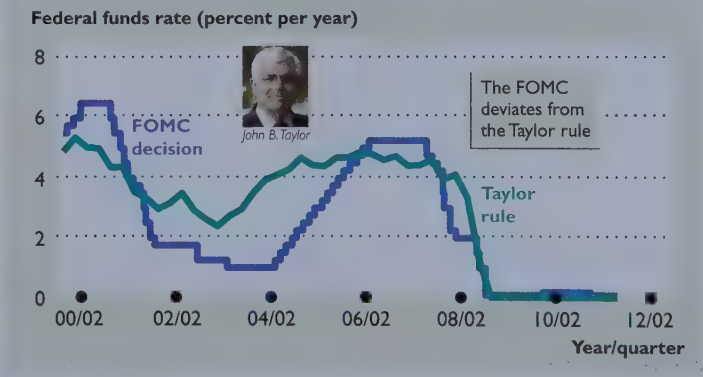
John B. Taylor (Stanford University) has proposed a formula for setting the federal funds rate—the *Taylor Rule*.

If the inflation rate is 2 percent a year and there is no output gap, the Taylor rule sets the federal funds rate to neutral at 4 percent a year.

A 1 percent deviation of the inflation rate from target and a 1 percent deviation of real GDP from potential GDP moves the federal funds rate up or down by 0.5 percent.

The Taylor Rule was derived by crunching a large amount of U.S. macroeconomic data to construct a statistical model of the economy.

The figure shows the Fed's decision and the Taylor rule since 2000. Taylor thinks the Fed moved the interest rate too low and kept it too low for too long and then raised the interest rate too quickly and by too much. He believes the Fed's deviation from his rule contributed to the global financial crisis.



SOURCES OF DATA: Federal Reserve Board and Federal Reserve Bank of St Louis.

We've now described the Fed's monetary policy instrument and the FOMC's strategy for setting it. We next see what the Fed does to make the federal funds rate hit its target.

Hitting the Federal Funds Rate Target

The federal funds rate is the interest rate that banks earn (or pay) when they lend (or borrow) reserves. The federal funds rate is also the opportunity cost of holding reserves. Holding a larger quantity of reserves is the alternative to lending reserves to another bank, and holding a smaller quantity of reserves is the alternative to borrowing reserves from another bank. So the quantity of reserves that banks are willing to hold varies with the federal funds rate: The higher the federal funds rate, the smaller is the quantity of reserves that the banks plan to hold.

The Fed controls the quantity of reserves supplied, and the Fed can change this quantity by conducting an open market operation. You learned in Chapter 27 (pp. 703–706) how an open market purchase increases reserves and an open market sale decreases reserves. To hit the federal funds rate target, the New York Fed conducts open market operations until the supply of reserves is at just the right quantity to hit the target federal funds rate.

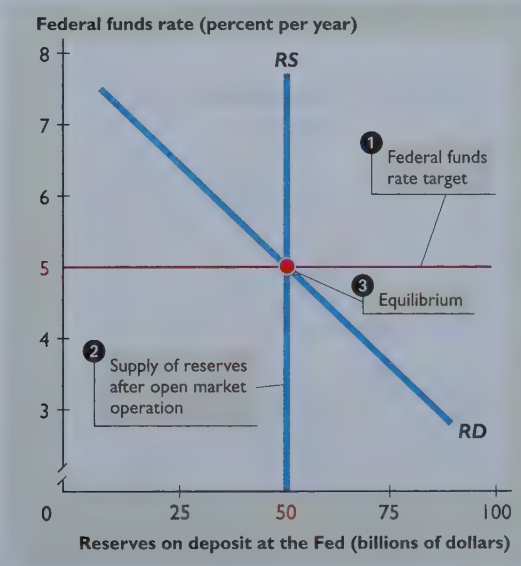
Figure 33.2 illustrates this outcome in the market for bank reserves. The *x*-axis measures the quantity of bank reserves on deposit at the Fed, and the *y*-axis measures the federal funds rate. The demand for reserves—the willingness of the banks to hold reserves—is the curve labeled *RD*.

The Fed's open market operations determine the supply of reserves, which is the supply curve *RS*. To decrease reserves, the Fed conducts an open market sale. To increase reserves, the Fed conducts an open market purchase.

FIGURE 33.2

Equilibrium in the Market for Bank Reserves

MyEconLab Real-time data



The federal funds rate (on the *y*-axis) is the opportunity cost of holding reserves: The higher the federal funds rate, the smaller is the quantity of reserves that banks want to hold. The demand curve for bank reserves is *RD*.

1. The FOMC sets the federal funds rate target at 5 percent a year.
2. The New York Fed conducts open market operations to make the quantity of reserves supplied equal to $50 billion and the supply of reserves curve is *RS*.
3. Equilibrium in the market for bank reserves occurs at the target federal funds rate.

Equilibrium in the market for bank reserves determines the federal funds rate where the quantity of reserves demanded by the banks equals the quantity of reserves supplied by the Fed. By using open market operations, the Fed adjusts the quantity of reserves supplied to keep the federal funds rate on target.

Restoring Financial Stability in a Financial Crisis

During the global financial crisis, the Fed took extraordinary steps to restore financial stability. Chapter 27 describes the tools of quantitative easing and credit easing employed by the Fed (p. 699) and *Eye on Creating Money* (pp. 708–709) shows the enormous surge in bank reserves and the monetary base brought about by "quantitative easing"—QE1—in 2008.

Figure 33.3 illustrates the Fed's QE1 action in the market for bank reserves. In normal times, the demand for reserves is RD_0 and the supply of reserves is RS_0. The federal funds rate is 5 percent and bank reserves are $50 billion.

At a time of financial instability and panic, banks' assessments of risk increase and they decide to hold more of their assets in safe, reserve deposits at the Fed. The demand for reserves increases and the demand curve becomes RD_1. If the Fed took no actions, the federal funds rate would rise, bank lending would shrink, the quantity of money would decrease, and a recession would intensify.

To avoid this outcome, the Fed's lending programs pump billions of dollars into the banks. The supply of reserves increases to RS_1, and the federal funds rate falls to zero. The banks don't start lending their increased reserves. They hang on to them. But flush with reserves, banks don't call in loans and deepen the recession. The Fed's action averted a worsening credit crisis and worsening recession.

FIGURE 33.3

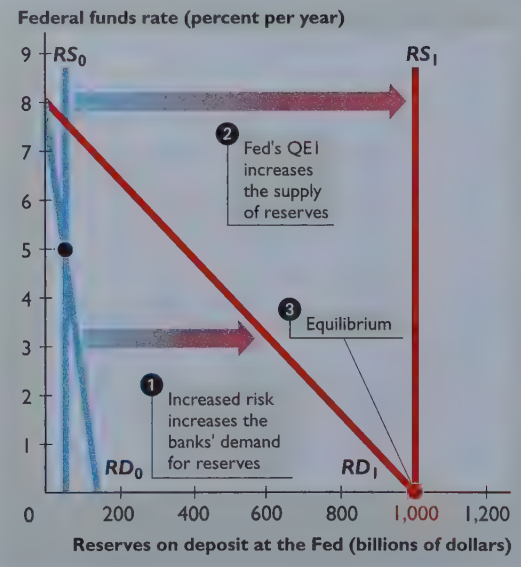
The Market for Bank Reserves in a Financial Crisis

MyEconLab Real-time data

In a normal time, the demand for bank reserves is RD_0 and the supply of reserves is RS_0. The federal funds rate is 5 percent per year.

In a financial crisis:

1. The banks face increased risk and their demand for reserves increases and the demand curve shifts to RD_1.
2. The Fed's QE1 and other actions increase the supply of reserves and the supply curve shifts to RS_1.
3. The equilibrium federal funds rate falls to zero and the quantity of reserves explodes to $1,000 billion.



CHECKPOINT 33.1

Describe the objectives of U.S. monetary policy, the framework for achieving those objectives, and the Fed's monetary policy actions.

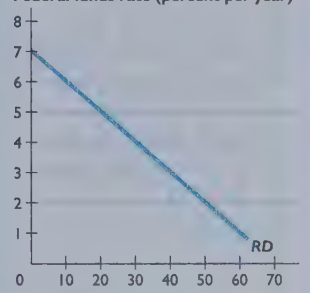
MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 33.1 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. What are the objectives of U.S. monetary policy?
2. What is core inflation and how does it differ from total PCE inflation?
3. What is the Fed's monetary policy instrument and what influences the level at which the Fed sets it?
4. Figure 1 shows the demand curve for bank reserves, *RD*. The current quantity of reserves supplied is $20 billion. The Fed wants to set the federal funds rate at 4 percent a year. Illustrate the target on the graph and show the supply of reserves that will achieve the target. Does the Fed conduct an open market operation and if so, does it buy or sell securities?

FIGURE 1



In the News

Can Fed target jobless rate? Bernanke hints at new policy

With little notice, Bernanke seemed to buck conventional wisdom and suggest that the Fed can, and should, try to influence the long-term unemployment rate.

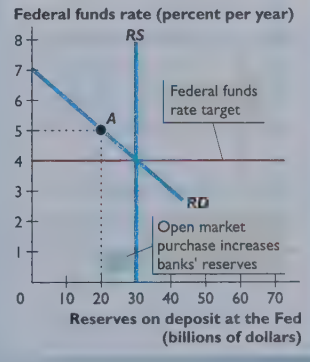
Source: CNBC, October 10, 2011

Explain whether trying to influence the long-term unemployment rate is consistent with the Fed's monetary policy objectives.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The objectives of U.S. monetary policy are to achieve stable prices (interpreted as a core inflation rate of about 2 percent per year) and maximum employment (interpreted as full employment).
2. Core inflation excludes the changes in the prices of food and fuel. The total PCE inflation rate includes the changes in all consumer prices. The core inflation rate fluctuates less than the total PCE inflation rate.
3. The federal funds rate is the Fed's monetary policy instrument and the inflation rate and output gap are two of the influences on the level at which the Fed sets the federal funds rate.
4. Figure 2 shows the market for bank reserves. With the initial quantity of reserves of $20 billion, the federal funds rate must have been 5 percent a year at point *A*. To set the federal funds rate at 4 percent a year, the Fed must conduct an open market purchase to increase the supply of reserves to *RS*. With supply *RS*, the federal funds rate equals the 4 percent target rate.

FIGURE 2



Solution to In the News

The objectives of monetary policy are maximum employment and stable prices. The maximum-employment goal means keeping the economy as close as possible to potential GDP. The stable-prices goal means keeping the inflation rate low. In 2011, the inflation rate was low but the unemployment rate and the output gap were high. By focusing on the output gap, the Fed was seeking to re-establish "maximum employment." The Fed believed that inflation would remain low, so its focus was consistent with its monetary policy objectives.

33.2 MONETARY POLICY TRANSMISSION

You've seen that the Fed's goal is to keep the inflation rate around 2 percent a year and to keep the output gap close to zero. You've also seen how the Fed uses its market power to set the federal funds rate at the level that is designed to achieve these objectives. We're now going to trace the events that follow a change in the federal funds rate and see how those events lead to the ultimate policy goals. We'll begin with a quick overview of the transmission process and then look a bit more closely at each step.

Quick Overview

When the Fed lowers the federal funds rate, other short-term interest rates and the exchange rate also fall. The quantity of money and the supply of loanable funds increase. The long-term real interest rate falls. The lower real interest rate increases consumption expenditure and investment. The lower exchange rate makes U.S. exports cheaper and imports more costly, so net exports increase. Easier bank loans reinforce the effect of lower interest rates on aggregate expenditure. Aggregate demand increases, which increases real GDP and the price level relative to what they would have been. Real GDP growth and inflation speed up.

When the Fed raises the federal funds rate, as the sequence of events that we've just reviewed plays out, the effects are in the opposite directions.

Figure 33.4 provides a schematic summary of these ripple effects for both a cut and a rise in the federal funds rate. These ripple effects stretch out over a period of between one and two years. The interest rate and exchange rate effects are immediate. The effects on money and bank loans follow in a few weeks and run for a few months. Real long-term interest rates change quickly and often in anticipation of the short-term rate changes. Spending plans change and real GDP growth changes after about one year. The inflation rate changes between one year and two years after the change in the federal funds rate. But these time lags are not entirely predictable and can be longer or shorter. We're going to look at each stage in the transmission process, starting with the interest rate effects.

Interest Rate Changes

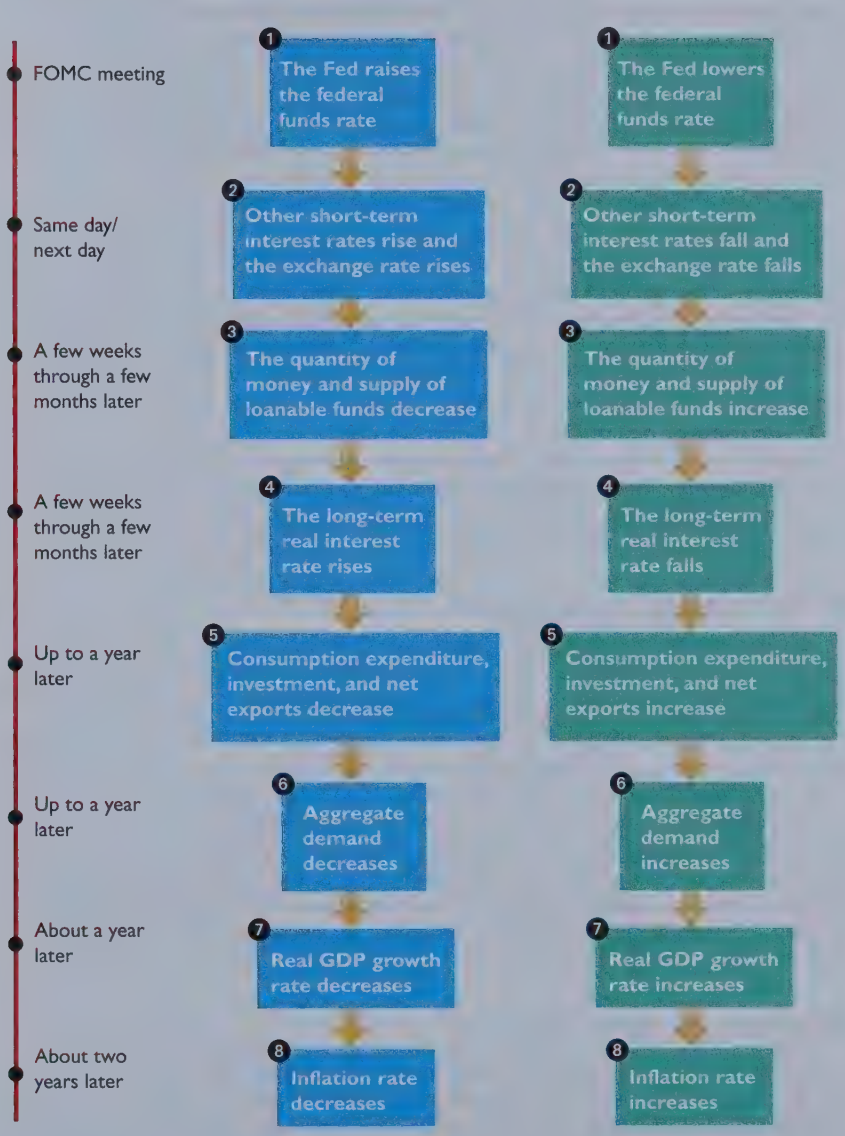
The first effect of a monetary policy decision by the FOMC is a change in the federal funds rate. Other interest rates then change. These interest rate effects occur quickly and relatively predictably.

The interest rate on U.S. government 3-month Treasury bills is immediately affected by a change in the federal funds rate. A powerful *substitution effect* keeps these two rates close to each other. Banks have a choice about how to hold their short-term liquid assets and a loan to another bank is a close substitute for holding Treasury bills. If the interest rate on Treasury bills is higher than the federal funds rate, the banks increase the quantity of Treasury bills held and decrease loans to other banks. The price of a Treasury bill rises and the interest rate falls. Similarly, if the interest rate on Treasury bills is lower than the federal funds rate, the banks decrease the quantity of Treasury bills held and increase loans to other banks. The price of a Treasury bill falls, and the interest rate rises. When the interest rate on Treasury bills is close to the federal funds rate, there is no incentive for a bank to switch between making loans to other banks and holding Treasury bills. Both the Treasury bill market and the federal funds market are in equilibrium.

FIGURE 33.4

Ripple Effects of the Fed's Actions

MyEconLab Animation


FOMC meeting
Same day/ next day
A few weeks through a few months later
A few weeks through a few months later
Up to a year later
Up to a year later
About a year later
About two years later
1 The Fed raises the federal funds rate
2 Other short-term interest rates rise and the exchange rate rises
3 The quantity of money and supply of loanable funds decrease
4 The long-term real interest rate rises
5 Consumption expenditure, investment, and net exports decrease
6 Aggregate demand decreases
7 Real GDP growth rate decreases
8 Inflation rate decreases
1 The Fed lowers the federal funds rate
2 Other short-term interest rates fall and the exchange rate falls
3 The quantity of money and supply of loanable funds increase
4 The long-term real interest rate falls
5 Consumption expenditure, investment, and net exports increase
6 Aggregate demand increases
7 Real GDP growth rate increases
8 Inflation rate increases
(a) The Fed tightens
(b) The Fed eases

The Fed changes its interest rate target and conducts open market operations to ❶ change the federal funds rate. The same day ❷ other short-term interest rates change and so does the exchange rate. A few weeks through a few months after the FOMC meeting, ❸ the quantity of money and supply of loanable funds changes, which ❹ changes the long-term real interest rate.

Up to a year after the FOMC meeting, ❺ consumption, investment, and net exports change, so ❻ aggregate demand changes. Eventually, the change in the federal funds rate has ripple effects that ❼ change real GDP and about two years after the FOMC meeting, ❽ the inflation rate changes.

Long-term interest rates also change, but not by as much as short-term rates. The long-term corporate bond rate, the interest rate paid on bonds issued by large corporations, is the most significant interest rate to be influenced by the federal funds rate. It is this interest rate that businesses pay on the loans that finance their purchases of new capital and that influences their investment decisions.

The long-term corporate bond rate is generally a bit higher than the short-term interest rate because long-term loans are riskier than short-term loans. To provide the incentive that brings forth a supply of long-term loans, lenders must be compensated for the additional risk. Without compensation for the additional risk, only short-term loans would be supplied.

The long-term interest rate fluctuates less than the short-term rate because it is influenced by expectations about future short-term interest rates as well as current short-term interest rates. The alternative to borrowing or lending long term is to borrow or lend using a sequence of short-term securities. If the long-term interest rate exceeds the expected average of future short-term interest rates, people will lend long term and borrow short term. The long-term interest rate will fall. And if the long-term interest rate is below the expected average of future short-term interest rates, people will borrow long term and lend short term. The long-term interest rate will rise.

These market forces keep the long-term interest rate close to the expected average of future short-term interest rates (plus a premium for the extra risk associated with long-term loans). And the expected average future short-term interest rate fluctuates less than the current short-term interest rate.

Exchange Rate Changes

The exchange rate responds to changes in the interest rate in the United States relative to the interest rates in other countries—the *U.S. interest rate differential*. We explain this influence in Chapter 34 (see pp. 882, 885, 887).

When the Fed raises the federal funds rate, the U.S. interest rate differential rises and, other things remaining the same, the U.S. dollar appreciates. And when the Fed lowers the federal funds rate, the U.S. interest rate differential falls and, other things remaining the same, the U.S. dollar depreciates.

Many factors other than the U.S. interest rate differential influence the exchange rate, so when the Fed changes the federal funds rate, the exchange rate does not usually change in exactly the way it would with other things remaining the same. So while monetary policy influences the exchange rate, many other factors also make the exchange rate change.

Money and Bank Loans

The quantity of money and bank loans change when the Fed changes the federal funds rate target. A rise in the federal funds rate decreases the quantity of money and bank loans; and a fall in the federal funds rate increases the quantity of money and bank loans. These changes occur for two reasons: The quantity of deposits and loans created by the banking system changes and the quantity of money demanded changes.

You've seen that to change the federal funds rate, the Fed must change the quantity of bank reserves. A change in the quantity of bank reserves changes the monetary base, which in turn changes the quantity of deposits and loans that the banking system can create. A rise in the federal funds rate decreases reserves and decreases the quantity of deposits and bank loans created; and a fall in the federal

funds rate increases reserves and increases the quantity of deposits and bank loans created.

The quantity of money created by the banking system must be held by households and firms. The change in the interest rate changes the quantity of money demanded. A fall in the interest rate increases the quantity of money demanded and a rise in the interest rate decreases the quantity of money demanded.

A change in the quantity of money and the supply of bank loans directly affects consumption and investment plans. With more money and easier access to loans, consumers and firms spend more. With less money and loans harder to get, consumers and firms spend less.

The Long-Term Real Interest Rate

Demand and supply in the market for loanable funds determine the long-term real interest rate, which equals the long-term nominal interest rate minus the expected inflation rate. The long-term real interest rate influences expenditure decisions.

In the long run, demand and supply in the loanable funds market depend only on real forces—on saving and investment decisions. But in the short run, when the price level is not fully flexible, the supply of loanable funds is influenced by the supply of bank loans. Changes in the federal funds rate change the supply of bank loans, which changes the supply of loanable funds and changes the real interest rate in the loanable funds market.

A fall in the federal funds rate that increases the supply of bank loans increases the supply of loanable funds and lowers the equilibrium real interest rate. A rise in the federal funds rate that decreases the supply of bank loans decreases the supply of loanable funds and raises the equilibrium real interest rate.

These changes in the real interest rate, along with the other factors we've just described, change expenditure plans.

Expenditure Plans

The ripple effects that follow a change in the federal funds rate change three components of aggregate expenditure:

- Consumption expenditure
- Investment
- Net exports

Other things remaining the same, the lower the real interest rate, the greater is the amount of consumption expenditure and the smaller is the amount of saving.

Again, other things remaining the same, the lower the real interest rate, the greater is the amount of investment.

Finally, and again other things remaining the same, the lower the interest rate, the lower is the exchange rate and the greater are exports and the smaller are imports.

A cut in the federal funds rate increases all the components of aggregate expenditure; a rise in the federal funds rate decreases all the components of aggregate expenditure. These changes in aggregate expenditure plans change aggregate demand, which in turn changes real GDP and the inflation rate.

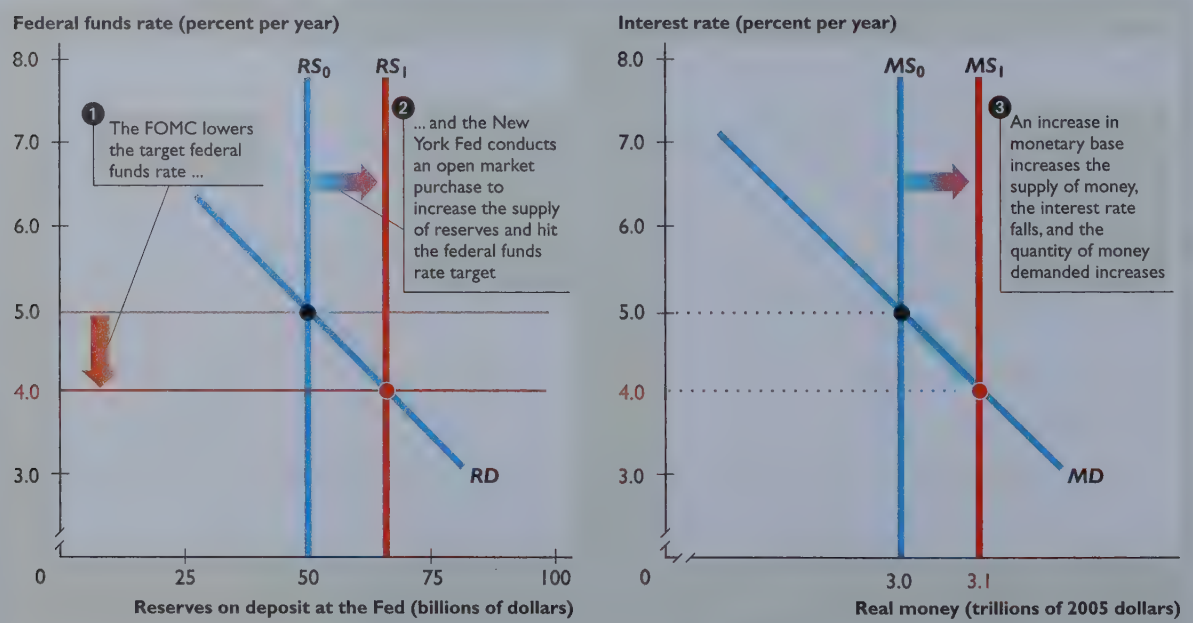
The Fed Fights Recession

We're now going to pull all the steps in the transmission story together. We'll start with inflation below target and real GDP below potential GDP. The Fed takes actions that are designed to restore full employment. Figure 33.5 shows the effects of the Fed's actions, starting in the market for bank reserves and ending in the market for real GDP.

In Figure 33.5(a), which shows the market for bank reserves, the FOMC lowers the target federal funds rate from 5 percent to 4 percent a year. To achieve the new target, the New York Fed buys securities and increases the supply of reserves in the banking system from RS_0 to RS_1.

With increased reserves, the banks create deposits by making loans and the supply of money increases. The short-term interest rate falls and the quantity of money demanded increases. In Figure 33.5(b), the supply of money increases from MS_0 to MS_1, the interest rate falls from 5 percent to 4 percent a year, and the quantity of money increases from $3 trillion to $3.1 trillion. The interest rate in the money market and the federal funds rate are kept close to each other by the powerful substitution effect described on page 852.

FIGURE 33.5
The Fed Fights Recession



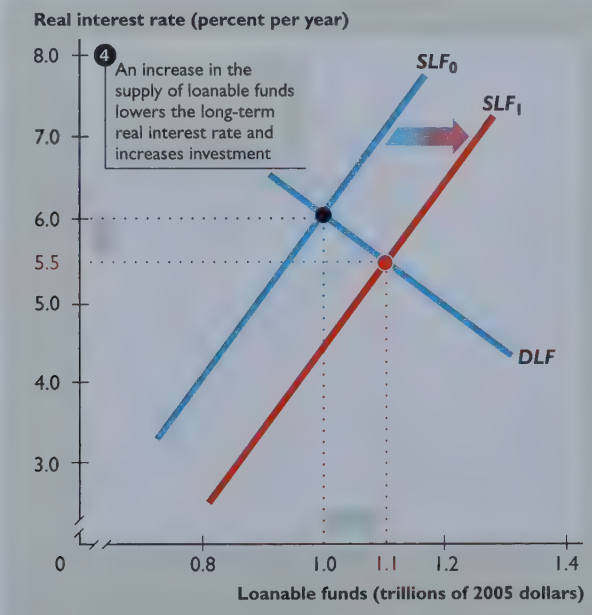
❶ The FOMC lowers the federal funds rate target from 5 percent to 4 percent a year. ❷ The New York Fed buys securities in an open market operation and increases reserves from RS_0 to RS_1 to hit the new federal funds rate target.

❸ The supply of money increases from MS_0 to MS_1, the short-term interest rate falls, and the quantity of money demanded increases. The short-term interest rate and the federal funds rate change by similar amounts.

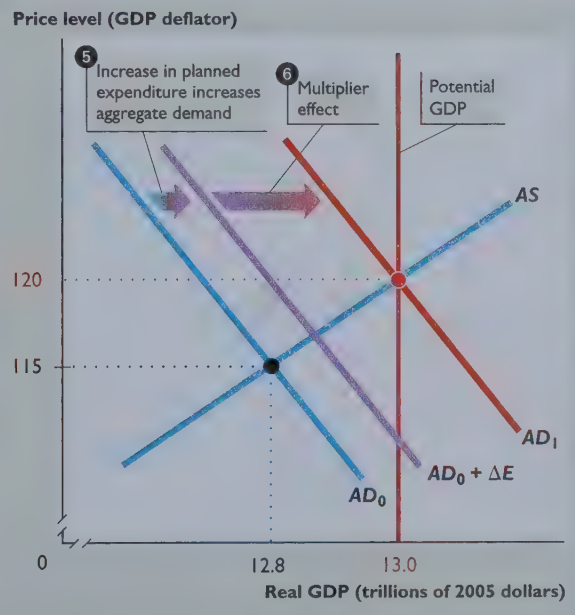
Banks create money by making loans. In the long run, an increase in the supply of bank loans is matched by a rise in the price level and the quantity of real loans is unchanged. But in the short run, with a sticky price level, an increase in the supply of bank loans increases the supply of (real) loanable funds. In Figure 33.5(c), the supply of loanable funds curve shifts rightward from SLF_0 to SLF_1. With the demand for loanable funds at *DLF*, the real interest rate falls from 6 percent to 5.5 percent a year.

Figure 33.5(d) shows aggregate demand and aggregate supply and the recessionary gap that triggered the Fed's action. The increase in money and loans and the decrease in the real interest rate increase aggregate planned expenditure. (Not shown in the figure, a fall in the interest rate lowers the exchange rate, which increases net exports and aggregate planned expenditure.) The increase in aggregate expenditure, ΔE, increases aggregate demand and shifts the aggregate demand curve rightward to $AD_0 + \Delta E$. A multiplier process begins. The increase in expenditure increases income, which induces an increase in consumption expenditure. Aggregate demand increases further, and the aggregate demand curve eventually shifts rightward to AD_1. The new equilibrium is at full employment but with a higher price level (and faster inflation).

MyEconLab Animation



(c) Market for loanable funds



(d) Real GDP and the price level

An increase in the quantity of money increases the supply of loans. ❹ An increase in the supply of bank loans increases the supply of loanable funds from SLF_0 to SLF_1 and the real interest rate falls. Investment increases.

❺ Aggregate planned expenditure increases and the aggregate demand curve shifts to $AD_0 + \Delta E$. ❻ A multiplier effect increases aggregate demand to AD_1. Real GDP increases and the price level rises (inflation speeds up).

The Fed Fights Inflation

If the inflation rate is too high and real GDP is above potential GDP, the Fed takes actions that are designed to lower the inflation rate and restore price stability. Figure 33.6 shows the effects of the Fed's actions starting in the market for reserves and ending in the market for real GDP.

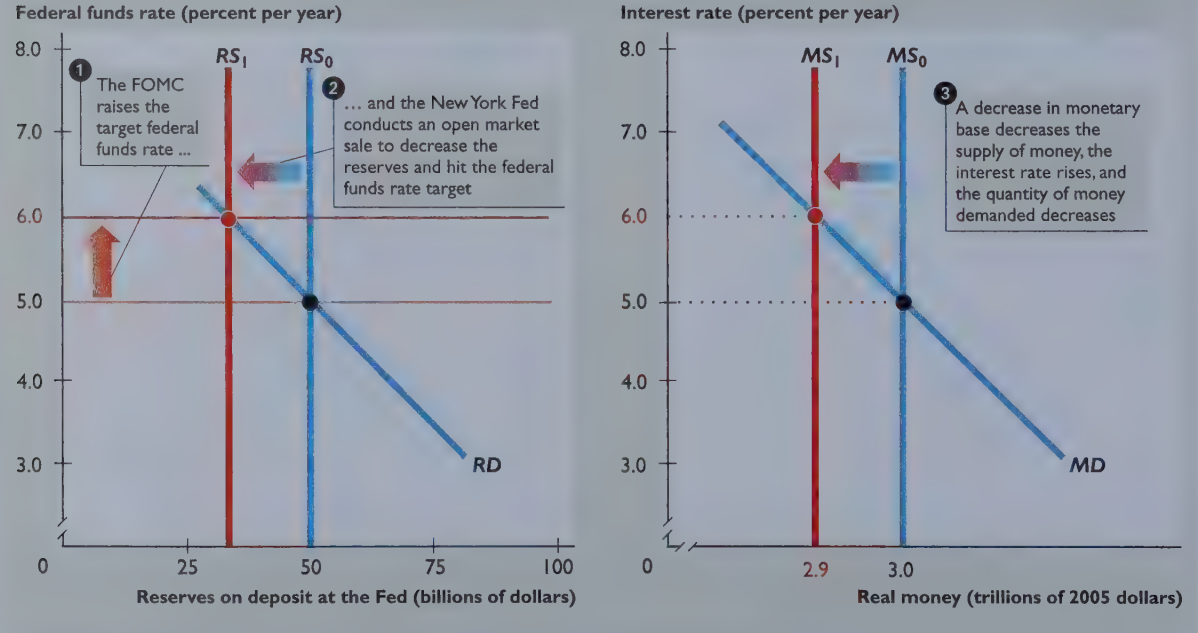
In Figure 33.6(a), which shows the market for bank reserves, the FOMC raises the target federal funds rate from 5 percent to 6 percent a year. To achieve the new target, the New York Fed sells securities and decreases the supply of reserves in the banking system from RS_0 to RS_1.

With decreased reserves, the banks shrink deposits by decreasing loans and the supply of money decreases. The short-term interest rate rises and the quantity of money demanded decreases. In Figure 33.6(b), the supply of money decreases from MS_0 to MS_1, the interest rate rises from 5 percent to 6 percent a year, and the quantity of money decreases from $3 trillion to $2.9 trillion.

With a decrease in reserves, banks must decrease the supply of loans. The supply of (real) loanable funds decreases, and the supply of loanable funds curve shifts leftward in Figure 33.6(c) from SLF_0 to SLF_1. With the demand for loanable

FIGURE 33.6

The Fed Fights Inflation



1 The FOMC raises the federal funds rate target from 5 percent to 6 percent a year. 2 The New York Fed sells securities in an open market operation and decreases reserves from RS_0 to RS_1 to hit the new federal funds rate target.

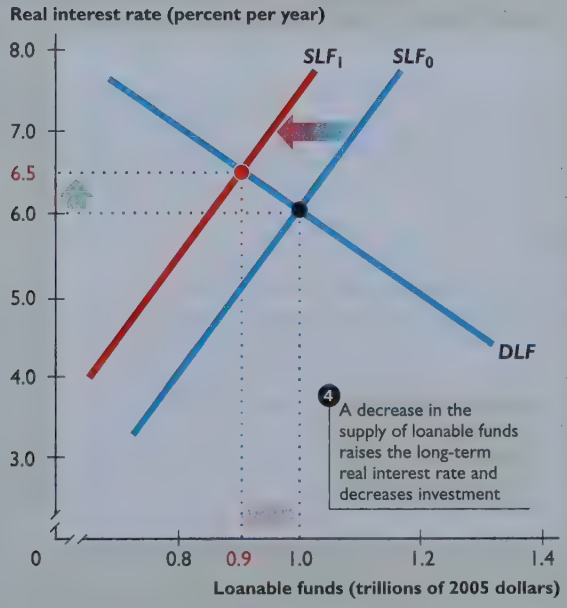
3 The supply of money decreases from MS_0 to MS_1, the short-term interest rate rises, and the quantity of money demanded decreases. The short-term interest rate and the federal funds rate change by similar amounts.

funds at *DLF*, the real interest rate rises from 6 percent to 6.5 percent a year.

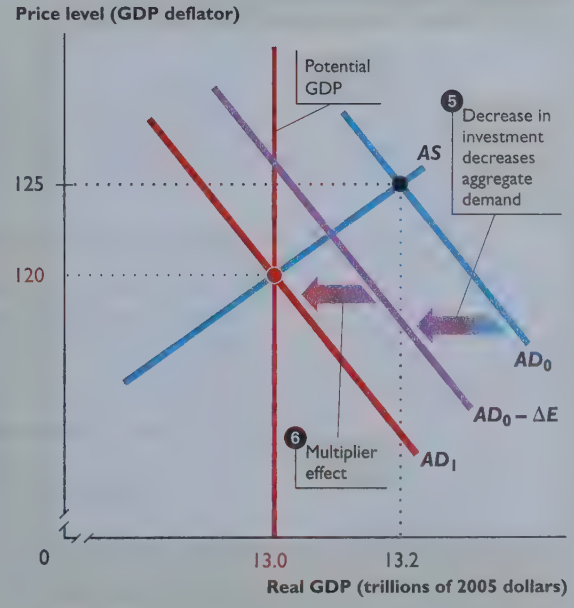
Figure 33.6(d) shows aggregate demand and aggregate supply in the market for real GDP and the inflationary gap to which the Fed is reacting. The decrease in the quantity of money and loans and the rise in the real interest rate decrease aggregate planned expenditure. The decrease in aggregate expenditure, ΔE, decreases aggregate demand and shifts the aggregate demand curve leftward to $AD_0 - \Delta E$. A multiplier process begins. The decrease in expenditure decreases income, which induces a decrease in consumption expenditure. Aggregate demand decreases further, and the aggregate demand curve eventually shifts leftward to AD_1. The economy returns to full employment. Real GDP is equal to potential GDP. The price level falls (the inflation rate slows).

In both of the examples, we have given the Fed a perfect hit at achieving full employment and keeping the price level stable. If the Fed changed aggregate demand by too little and too late, or by too much and too early, the economy would not have returned to full employment. Too little action would leave a recessionary or an inflationary gap. Too much action would overshoot the objective. If the Fed hits the brakes too hard, it pushes the economy from inflation to recession. If it stimulates too much, it turns recession into inflation.

MyEconLab Animation



(c) Market for loanable funds



(d) Real GDP and the price level

A decrease in the quantity of money decreases the supply of bank loans. ❹ A decrease in the supply of bank loans decreases the supply of loanable funds from SLF_0 to SLF_1 and the real interest rate rises. Investment decreases.

❺ Aggregate planned expenditure decreases and the aggregate demand curve shifts leftward from AD_0 to $AD_0 - \Delta E$. ❻ A multiplier decreases aggregate demand to AD_1. Real GDP decreases and the price level falls (inflation slows down).

Loose Links and Long and Variable Lags

The ripple effects of monetary policy that we've just analyzed with the precision of an economic model are, in reality, very hard to predict and anticipate.

To achieve its goals of price stability and full employment, the Fed needs a combination of good judgment and good luck. Too large an interest rate cut in an underemployed economy can bring inflation, as it did during the 1970s. And too large an interest rate rise in an inflationary economy can create unemployment, as it did in 1981 and 1991.

Loose links in the chain that runs from the federal funds rate to the ultimate policy goals make unwanted policy outcomes inevitable. And time lags that are both long and variable add to the Fed's challenges.

Loose Links from Federal Funds Rate to Spending

The long-term real interest rate that influences spending plans is linked only loosely to the federal funds rate. Also, the response of the long-term real interest rate to a change in the nominal rate depends on how inflation expectations change. The response of expenditure plans to changes in the real interest rate depends on many factors that make the response hard to predict.

Time Lags in the Adjustment Process

The Fed is especially handicapped by the fact that the monetary policy transmission process is long and drawn out. Also, the economy does not always respond in exactly the same way to a given policy change. Further, many factors other than policy are constantly changing and bringing new situations to which policy must respond.

The turmoil in credit markets and home loan markets that began during the summer of 2007 is an example of unexpected events to which monetary policy must respond. The Fed found itself facing an ongoing inflation risk but that risk was combined with a fear that a collapse of spending would bring recession.

A Final Reality Check

You've studied the theory of monetary policy. Does it really work in the way we've described? It does. An enormous amount of statistical research has investigated the effects of the Fed's actions on the economy and the conclusions of this research are not in doubt. When the Fed raises the federal funds rate, the economy slows for the reasons that we've described. And when the Fed cuts the federal funds rate, the economy speeds up.

The time lags in the adjustment process are not predictable, but the average time lags are known. On the average, after the Fed takes action to change the course of the economy, real GDP begins to change about one year later. The inflation rate responds with a longer time lag that averages around two years.

This long time lag between the Fed's action and a change in the inflation rate, the ultimate policy goal, makes monetary policy very difficult to implement. The state of the economy two years in the future cannot be predicted, so the Fed's actions might turn out to be exactly the opposite of what is needed to steer a steady course between recession and inflation.

You've now seen how the Fed operates and studied the effects of its actions. We close this chapter by looking at alternative approaches to monetary policy.

CHECKPOINT 33.2

Explain the transmission channels through which the Fed influences real GDP and the inflation rate.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 33.2 and get instant feedback.

Practice Problems

1. List the sequence of events in the transmission from a rise in the federal funds rate to a change in the inflation rate.

The economy has slipped into recession and the Fed takes actions to lessen its severity. Use this information to work Problems **2** and **3**.

2. What action does the Fed take? Illustrate the effects of the Fed's actions in the money market and the loanable funds market.
3. Explain how the Fed's actions change aggregate demand and real GDP.

In the News

The Fed's tricky balancing act

The FOMC was a bit more optimistic about the economy recovering, but said that policy tightening was not going to happen any time soon.

Source: *Business Week*, June 6, 2009

What are the ripple effects and time lags that the Fed must consider in deciding when to start raising the federal funds rate?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. When the Fed raises the federal funds rate, other short-term interest rates rise and the exchange rate rises; the quantity of money and supply of loanable funds decrease and the long-term real interest rate rises; consumption, investment, and net exports decrease; aggregate demand decreases; and eventually the real GDP growth rate and the inflation rate decrease.
2. The Fed lowers the federal funds rate, which lowers the short-term interest rate, and increases the supply of money (Figure 1). The supply of loans and the supply of loanable funds increase. The real interest rate falls (Figure 2).
3. A lower real interest rate (and exchange rate) and greater quantity of money and loanable funds increase aggregate expenditure and the *AD* curve shifts to $AD_0 + \Delta E$. A multiplier effect increases aggregate demand and the *AD* curve shifts to AD_1. Real GDP increases and recession is avoided (Figure 3).

Solution to In the News

Figure 33.4 (p. 853) describes the ripple effects and the time lags. The Fed can influence interest rates quickly but it takes several months before the quantity of money and loans respond, up to a year before expenditure plans respond, and up to two years before the inflation rate responds to the interest rate actions.

FIGURE 1

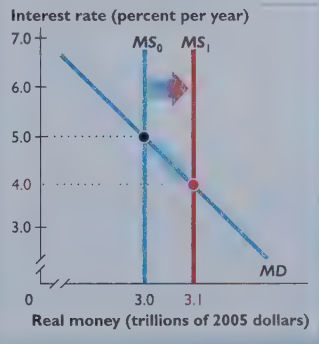


FIGURE 2

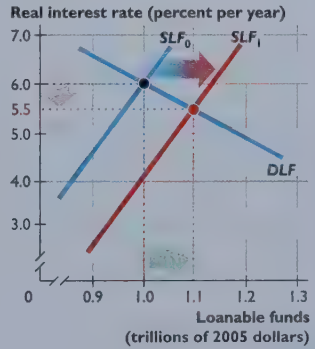
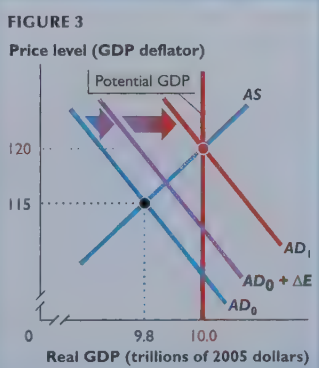


FIGURE 3



33.3 ALTERNATIVE MONETARY POLICY STRATEGIES

So far in this chapter, we've described and analyzed the Fed's method of conducting monetary policy. But the Fed does have choices among alternative monetary policy strategies. We're going to end our discussion of monetary policy by examining the alternatives and explaining why the Fed has rejected them in favor of the interest rate strategy that we've described.

You've seen that we can summarize monetary policy strategies in two broad categories: *instrument rules* and *targeting rules*.

Why Rules?

Discretionary monetary policy
A monetary policy that is based on an expert assessment of the current economic situation.

You might be wondering why all monetary policy strategies involve *rules*. Why doesn't the Fed pursue a **discretionary monetary policy** and just do what seems best every day, month, and year, based on its expert assessment of the current economic situation? The answer is that monetary policy must keep inflation expectations anchored close to the target inflation rate. In both financial markets and labor markets, people must make long-term commitments. These markets work best when plans are based on correctly anticipated inflation outcomes. A well-understood monetary policy rule helps to create an environment in which inflation is easier to forecast and manage.

Although rules beat discretion, there are three alternative rules that the Fed might have chosen. They are

- An inflation targeting rule
- A money targeting rule
- Nominal GDP targeting rule

Inflation Targeting Rule

Inflation targeting
A monetary policy strategy in which the central bank makes a public commitment to achieving an explicit inflation target and to explaining how its policy actions will achieve that target.

Inflation targeting is a monetary policy strategy in which the central bank makes a public commitment to achieving an explicit inflation target and to explaining how its policy actions will achieve that target.

Of the alternatives to the Fed's current strategy, inflation targeting is the most likely to be considered. In fact, some economists see it as a small step from what the Fed currently does.

Several major central banks practice inflation targeting and have done so since the mid-1990s. The most committed inflation-targeting central banks are the Bank of England (the central bank of the United Kingdom), the Bank of Canada, the Reserve Bank of Australia, the Reserve Bank of New Zealand, the Swedish Riksbank, and the European Central Bank (the central bank of the euro countries).

Japan and the United States are the most prominent major industrial economies that do not use this monetary policy strategy. But when Ben Bernanke and Fed Governor Frederic S. Mishkin were economics professors (at Princeton University and Columbia University, respectively) they argued that inflation targeting is a sensible way in which to conduct monetary policy. And in November 2007, the Fed took a major step toward greater transparency, a central feature of inflation targeting, by publishing FOMC members' detailed forecasts of inflation, real GDP growth, and unemployment through 2010.

Inflation targets are specified in terms of a range for the CPI inflation rate. This range is typically between 1 percent and 3 percent a year, with an aim to

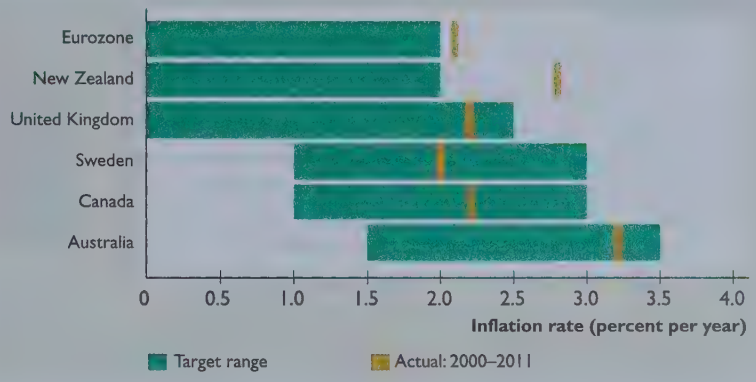
EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

Inflation Targeting Around the World

Five advanced economies and the Eurozone have inflation targets (shown by the green bars) designed to anchor inflation expectations.

Most inflation targets have been achieved (orange lines), which makes it easier for the central bank to stabilize both the inflation rate and real GDP.

High-quality central bank inflation reports encourage an enhanced level of public discussion about inflation and awareness of each central bank's views.



SOURCES OF DATA: National central banks and World Economic Outlook database, April 2009.

achieve an average inflation rate of 2 percent a year. Because the lags in the operation of monetary policy are long, if the inflation rate falls outside the target range, the expectation is that the central bank will move the inflation rate back on target over the next two years.

The idea of inflation targeting is to state clearly and publicly the goals of monetary policy, to establish a framework of accountability, and to keep the inflation rate low and stable while maintaining a high and stable level of employment.

There is wide agreement that inflation targeting achieves its first two goals. It's also clear that the inflation reports of inflation targeters have raised the level of discussion and understanding of the monetary policy process.

It is less clear whether inflation targeting does better than the implicit targeting that the Fed currently pursues in achieving low and stable inflation. The Fed's own record, without a formal inflation target, had been impressive until the global financial crisis called into question its neglect of a potential bubble and bust.

Money Targeting Rule

As long ago as 1948, Nobel Laureate Milton Friedman proposed a targeting rule for the quantity of money. Friedman's **k-percent rule** makes the quantity of money grow at a rate of k percent a year, where k equals the growth rate of potential GDP. Friedman's k-percent rule relies on a stable demand for money, which translates to a stable velocity of circulation. Friedman had examined data on money and nominal GDP and argued that the velocity of circulation of money was one of the most stable macroeconomic variables and that it could be exploited to deliver a stable price level and small business cycle fluctuations.

k-percent rule
A monetary policy rule that makes the quantity of money grow at k percent per year, where k equals the growth rate of potential GDP.

Friedman's idea remained just that until the 1970s, when inflation increased to more than 10 percent a year in the United States and to much higher rates in some other major countries.

EYE on the FED IN A CRISIS

Did the Fed Save Us From Another Great Depression?

The story of the Great Depression is complex and even today, after almost 80 years of research, economists are not in full agreement on its causes. But one part of the story is clear and it is told by Milton Friedman and Anna J. Schwartz: The Fed got it wrong.

An increase in financial risk drove the banks to increase their holdings of reserves and everyone else to lower their bank deposits and hold more currency.

Between 1929 and 1933, (Figure 1) the banks' desired reserve ratio increased from 8 percent to 12 percent and the currency drain ratio increased from 9 percent to 19 percent.

The money multiplier (Figure 2) fell from 6.5 to 3.8.

The quantity of money (Figure 3) crashed by 35 percent.

This massive contraction in the quantity of money was accompanied by a similar contraction of bank loans and by the failure of a large number of banks.

Friedman and Schwartz say that this contraction of money and bank loans and failure of banks could (and should) have been avoided by a more alert and wise Fed.

The Fed could have injected reserves into the banks to accommodate their desire for greater security by holding more reserves and to offset the rise in currency holdings as people switched out of bank deposits.

Ben Bernanke's Fed did almost exactly what Friedman and Schwartz said the Fed needed to do in the Great Depression.

At the end of 2008, when the banks faced increased financial risk, the Fed flooded them with the reserves that they wanted to hold (Figure 1).

The money multiplier fell from 9.1 in 2008 to 4.6 in 2009 (Figure 2)—much more than it had fallen between 1929 and 1933—but there was no contraction of the quantity of money (Figure 3). Rather, the quantity of M2 increased by 8 percent in the year to August 2009.

We can't be sure that the Fed averted a Great Depression in 2009, but we can be confident that the Fed's actions helped to limit the depth and duration of the 2008–2009 recession.

In 2011, the "dual mandate" put the Fed in a dilemma. The economic recovery was not going well and unemployment was not falling. There were signs, too, that inflation might rise. The FOMC was divided on what the Fed's next move should be.

Milton Friedman and Anna J. Schwartz, authors of A Monetary History of the United States, *who say the Fed turned an ordinary recession into the Great Depression.*

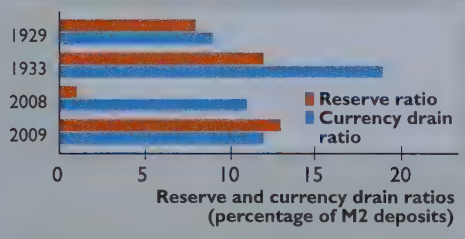


Figure 1 The flight to safety: Reserve and currency ratios increase

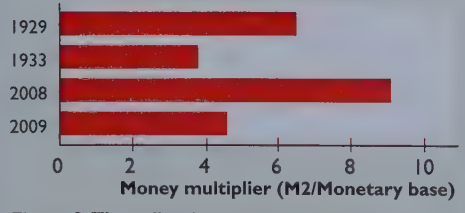


Figure 2 The collapsing money multiplier

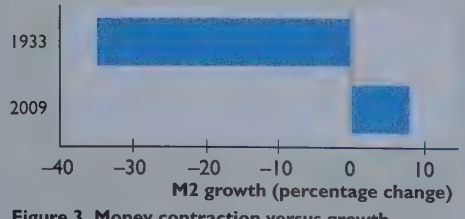


Figure 3 Money contraction versus growth

SOURCE OF DATA: Federal Reserve Board.

During the mid-1970s, in a bid to end the inflation, the central banks of most major countries adopted the *k*-percent rule for the growth rate of the quantity of money. The Fed, too, began to pay close attention to the growth rates of money aggregates, including M1 and M2.

Inflation rates fell during the early 1980s in the countries that had adopted a *k*-percent rule. But one by one, these countries abandoned the *k*-percent rule.

Money targeting works when the demand for money curve is stable and predictable—when the velocity of circulation is stable. But in the world of the 1980s, and possibly in the world of today, technological change in the banking system leads to large and unpredictable shifts in the demand for money curve, which make the use of monetary targeting unreliable.

With money targeting, aggregate demand fluctuates because the demand for money fluctuates. With interest rate targeting, aggregate demand is insulated from fluctuations in the demand for money (and the velocity of circulation).

Nominal GDP Targeting Rule

Under a **nominal GDP targeting** rule, the central bank adjusts the interest rate to achieve a given nominal GDP growth rate target. The target might be set by the government or simply adopted by the central bank. The growth rate of nominal GDP equals the growth rate of real GDP plus the inflation rate as measured by the GDP price index. The growth rate of real GDP, on average, keeps returning to its trend growth rate, so nominal GDP targeting is a version of inflation targeting. Nominal GDP targeting departs from inflation targeting by making the interest rate respond when either the inflation rate departs from its target or the real GDP growth rate departs from its long-term trend growth rate. Specifically, in a recession, monetary policy would become stimulating for two reasons: a low inflation rate and a low real GDP growth rate.

Nominal GDP targeting
A monetary policy rule that adjusts the interest rate to achieve a target growth rate for nominal GDP.

Nominal GDP targeting is an old idea that many economists have recommended, but it gained new momentum in 2011 when former Obama adviser Christina Romer joined the ranks of those supporting it.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Views on Monetary Policy and How Monetary Policy Affects You

Using the knowledge that you have accumulated during your course and by reading or watching the current news, try to determine the monetary policy issues that face the U.S. economy today.

What is the greater monetary policy risk: inflation or recession? If the risk is inflation, what action do you expect the Fed to take? If the risk is recession, what do you expect the Fed to do?

Which of these problems, inflation or recession, do you care most about? Do you want the Fed to be more cautious about inflation and keep the interest rate high, or more cautious about recession and keep the interest rate low?

When Ben Bernanke was an economics professor at Princeton, he studied inflation targeting and found that it works well.

Do you think the United States should join the ranks of inflation targeters? Should the Fed announce an inflation target?

Watch the media for commentary on the Fed's interest rate decisions and evolving monetary policy strategy.

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Study Plan 33.3 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 33.3

Explain and compare alternative monetary policy strategies.

Practice Problems

1. What are the three alternative monetary policy strategies that the Fed could have adopted and why is discretionary monetary policy not one of them?
2. Why does the Fed not target the quantity of money?
3. Which countries practice inflation targeting? How does this monetary policy strategy work and does it achieve a lower inflation rate?

In the News

One tool, one goal

The one-tool, one-goal rule by which central banks operated has gone. Monetary policy is now a messier business.

Source: *The Economist*, April 25, 2009

What is the tool and the goal that the news clip says is gone and what is the problem with "messy" monetary policy?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The Fed could have adopted three alternative monetary policy strategies: an inflation targeting rule, a *k*-percent money targeting rule, and a nominal GDP targeting rule. A rule-based monetary policy beats discretionary monetary policy because it provides a more secure anchor for inflation expectations, which in turn makes long-term contracts in labor and capital markets more efficient.
2. The Fed does not target the quantity of money because it believes that the demand for money is too unstable and fluctuations in demand would bring unwanted fluctuations in interest rates, aggregate demand, real GDP, and the inflation rate.
3. The countries that practice inflation targeting are the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Sweden, and the European countries that use the euro. Inflation targeting works by announcing a target inflation rate, setting the overnight interest rate (equivalent to the federal funds rate) to achieve the target, and publishing reports that explain how and why the central bank believes that its current policy actions will achieve its ultimate policy goals. Eurozone and New Zealand have missed their inflation targets, but the other inflation targeters have achieved their goals.

Solution to In the News

The tool is the federal funds rate. There never has been one goal for U.S. monetary policy. The Fed's "dual mandate" is a low inflation rate and maximum employment. Even the central banks that have a formal inflation target also pay attention to the output gap and the unemployment rate. The problem with "messy" monetary policy is that it might fail to anchor inflation expectations and lead to a worsening of the short-run policy tradeoff.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe the objectives of U.S. monetary policy, the framework for achieving those objectives, and the Fed's monetary policy actions.

- The Federal Reserve Act requires the Fed to use monetary policy to achieve the "dual mandate" of maximum employment and stable prices.
- The Fed's goals can come into conflict in the short run.
- The Fed translates the goal of stable prices as a core inflation rate of between 1 and 2 percent a year.
- The Fed's monetary policy instrument is the federal funds rate.
- The Fed sets the federal funds rate at the level that makes its forecast of inflation and other goals equal to their targets.
- The Fed hits its federal funds rate target by using open market operations and in times of financial crisis by quantitative easing and credit easing.

2 Explain the transmission channels through which the Fed influences real GDP and the inflation rate.

- A change in the federal funds rate changes other interest rates, the exchange rate, the quantity of money and loans, aggregate demand, and eventually real GDP and the inflation rate.
- Changes in the federal funds rate change real GDP about one year later and change the inflation rate with an even longer time lag.

3 Explain and compare alternative monetary policy strategies.

- The main alternatives to setting the federal funds rate are an inflation targeting rule, a money targeting rule, or a nominal GDP targeting rule.
- Rules dominate discretion in monetary policy because they better enable the central bank to manage inflation expectations.

Key Terms

Discretionary monetary policy, 862
Federal funds rate, 846
Financial stability, 845
Inflation targeting, 862
Instrument rule, 848
k-percent rule, 863
Monetary policy instrument, 846
Nominal GDP targeting, 865
Targeting rule, 848

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 33 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

1. Bernanke raises alarm on spending

Fed Chairman Ben Bernanke warned that government spending and budget deficits threaten financial stability and might be setting the scene for the next crisis.

Source: *The Globe and Mail*, June 4, 2009

How might a large increase in government spending and the government's budget deficit threaten financial stability and make the Fed's job harder?

Use the following information to work Problems **2** to **4**.

Suppose that the U.S. economy is at full employment when strong economic growth in Asia increases the demand for U.S.-produced goods and services.

2. Explain how the U.S. price level and real GDP will change in the short run.

3. Explain how the U.S. price level and real GDP will change in the long run if the Fed takes monetary policy actions that are consistent with its objectives as set out in the Federal Reserve Act of 2000.

4. Explain whether the Fed faces a tradeoff in the short run.

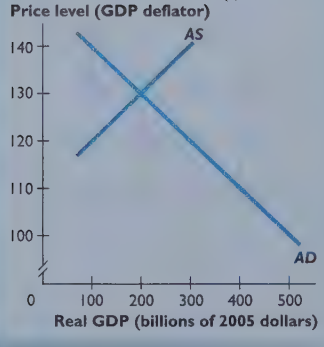
5. What is the Fed's "dual mandate" for the conduct of monetary policy? What are the means to achieving the goals of the dual mandate?

6. What is financial stability? What actions has the Fed taken since 2007 in pursuit of financial stability? Use a graph to illustrate the effects of the Fed's actions.

Use the following information to work Problems **7** to **9**.

Figure 1 shows the aggregate demand curve, *AD*, and the short-run aggregate supply curve, *AS*, in the economy of Artica. Potential GDP is $300 billion.

FIGURE 1



7. What are the price level and real GDP? Does Artica have an unemployment problem or an inflation problem? Why?

8. What do you predict will happen if the central bank takes no monetary policy actions? What monetary policy action would you advise the central bank to take and what do you predict will be the effect of that action?

9. Suppose that a drought decreases potential GDP in Artica to $250 billion. Explain what happens if the central bank lowers the federal funds rate. Do you recommend that the central bank lower the interest rate? Why?

10. Departing Fed official takes shot at policies

"When you encourage consumption by inhibiting your interest rates from rising to their equilibrium level, you will in fact buy problems, and we have in fact bought problems," Kansas City Fed President Thomas Hoenig said in his final speech in office. The Fed has cut rates to near zero and bought more than $2 trillion in bonds to boost the economy.

Source: Reuters, September 28, 2011

What are some of the problems that near zero interest rates and $2 trillion of quantitative easing have created?

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

1. In which episode, the Great Depression or the 2008–2009 recession, did the banks' desired reserve ratio and the currency drain ratio increase by the larger amount and the money multiplier fall by the larger amount?
2. Compare and contrast the Fed's monetary policy response to the surge in desired reserves and currency holdings in the Great Depression and the 2008–2009 recession.

Use the following information to work Problems 3 to 5.

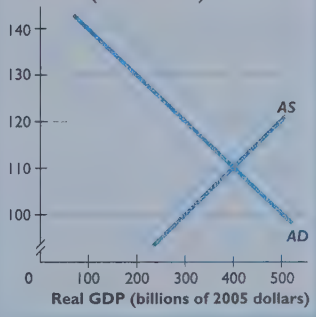
The U.S. economy is at full employment when the world price of oil begins to rise sharply. Short-run aggregate supply decreases.

3. Explain how the U.S. price level and real GDP will change in the short run.
4. Explain how the U.S. price level and real GDP will change in the long run if the Fed takes monetary policy actions that are consistent with its objectives as set out in the Federal Reserve Act of 2000.
5. Does the Fed face a tradeoff in the short run? Explain why or why not.

Use the following information to work Problems 6 to 9.

Figure 1 shows the aggregate demand curve, *AD*, and the short-run aggregate supply curve, *AS*, in the economy of Freezone. Potential GDP is $300 billion.

FIGURE 1



6. What are the price level and real GDP? Does Freezone have an unemployment problem or an inflation problem? Why?
7. What do you predict will happen in Freezone if the central bank takes no monetary policy actions? What monetary policy action would you advise the central bank to take and what do you predict will be the effect of that action?
8. What happens in Freezone if the central bank lowers the federal funds rate? Do you recommend that the central bank lower the interest rate? Why?
9. What happens in Freezone if the central bank conducts an open market sale of securities? How will the interest rate change? Do you recommend that the central bank conduct an open market sale of securities? Why?
10. Suppose that inflation is rising toward 5 percent a year, and the Fed, Congress, and the White House are discussing ways of containing inflation without damaging employment and output. The President wants to cut aggregate demand but to do so in a way that will give the best chance of keeping investment high to encourage long-term economic growth. Explain the Fed's best action for meeting the President's objectives.

Use the following information to work Problems 11 and 12.

Many ways to blow up an economy

Excessive stimulus could bring inflation in the United States in the long term, but for now, inflation is falling. Bond interest rates reflect inflation expectations that are within the Fed's long-term target levels.

Source: *Australian Financial Review*, May 9, 2009

11. Explain why inflation was falling in 2009 and how excessive stimulus could bring inflation in the long term.
12. What does it mean to say that inflation expectations are within the Fed's target levels?

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 33 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The Fed's "dual mandate" is to achieve _____.
   A. a government budget surplus and low interest rates
   B. low inflation and maximum employment
   C. a stable quantity of money and stable prices
   D. zero unemployment and a stable means of payment
2. The Fed's operational goals include _____.
   A. a core inflation rate between 1 and 2 percent a year and an output gap as small as possible
   B. an economic growth rate of 3 percent a year and an unemployment rate equal to the natural unemployment rate
   C. a strong U.S. dollar on foreign exchange markets and a positive output gap
   D. maximum growth of stock prices and a low core inflation rate
3. The Fed's monetary policy instrument is the _____.
   A. inflation rate
   B. federal funds rate
   C. long-term interest rate
   D. monetary base
4. The Fed fights inflation by _____.
   A. lowering the federal funds rate, which lowers interest rates and decreases aggregate demand
   B. raising the federal funds rate, which raises interest rates and decreases aggregate demand
   C. decreasing the monetary base, which raises the interest rate and increases saving
   D. lowering the long-term real interest rate, which increases investment and spurs economic growth
5. To fight unemployment and close a recessionary gap, the Fed _____.
   A. stimulates aggregate demand by lowering the federal funds rate, which increases the quantity of money
   B. stimulates aggregate supply by lowering the federal funds rate, which increases potential GDP
   C. increases employment, which increases real GDP
   D. increases bank reserves, which banks use to make new loans to businesses, which increases aggregate supply
6. The Fed's choice of monetary policy strategy is _____.
   A. discretionary monetary policy
   B. the *k*-percent rule for money growth
   C. adjusting the federal funds rate to best fulfill its dual mandate
   D. setting the foreign exchange rate of the dollar
7. A monetary policy rule is _____ to discretionary monetary policy because _____.
   A. superior; discretion limits what the Fed can do in a financial crisis
   B. inferior; a rule makes it harder for people to forecast the inflation rate
   C. superior; a rule keeps inflation expectations anchored
   D. equivalent; the Fed uses its discretion to set the rule

Why has our dollar been sinking?

34

International Finance

CHAPTER CHECKLIST

When you have completed your study of this chapter, you will be able to

1 Describe a country's balance of payments accounts and explain what determines the amount of international borrowing and lending.

2 Explain how the exchange rate is determined and why it fluctuates.

34.1 FINANCING INTERNATIONAL TRADE

When Apple, Inc. imports iPods manufactured in Taiwan, it pays for them using Taiwanese dollars. When a French construction company buys an earthmover from Caterpillar, Inc., it uses U.S. dollars. Whenever we buy things from another country, we pay in the currency of that country. It doesn't make any difference what the item being traded is; it might be a consumption good or a service or a capital good, a building, or even a firm.

We're going to study the markets in which different types of currency are bought and sold. But first we're going to look at the scale of international trading and borrowing and lending and at the way in which we keep our records of these transactions. These records are called the balance of payments accounts.

Balance of Payments Accounts

Balance of payments accounts
The accounts in which a nation records its international trading, borrowing, and lending.

Current account
Record of receipts from the sale of goods and services to other countries (exports), minus payments for goods and services bought from other countries (imports), plus the net amount of interest and transfers received from and paid to other countries.

Capital account
Record of foreign investment in the United States minus U.S. investment abroad.

Official settlements account
Record of the change in U.S. official reserves.

U.S. official reserves
The government's holdings of foreign currency.

A country's **balance of payments accounts** record its international trading, borrowing, and lending. There are in fact three balance of payments accounts:

- Current account
- Capital account
- Official settlements account

The **current account** records receipts from the sale of goods and services to other countries (exports), minus payments for goods and services bought from other countries (imports), plus the net amount of interest and transfers (such as foreign aid payments) received from and paid to other countries. The **capital account** records foreign investment in the United States minus U.S. investment abroad. The **official settlements account** records the change in U.S. official reserves. **U.S. official reserves** are the government's holdings of foreign currency. If U.S. official reserves increase, the official settlements account balance is negative. The reason is that holding foreign money is like investing abroad and U.S. investment abroad is a minus item in the capital account. (By the same reasoning, if official reserves decrease, the official settlements account balance is positive.)

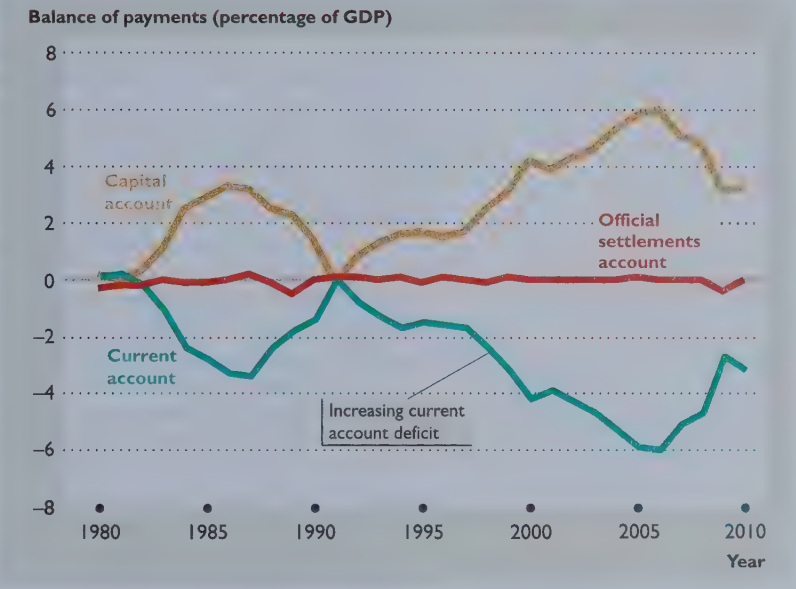
The sum of the balances on the three accounts always equals zero. That is, to pay for our current account deficit, we must either borrow more from abroad than we lend abroad or use our official reserves to cover the shortfall.

Table 34.1 shows the U.S. balance of payments accounts in 2010. Items in the current account and capital account that provide foreign currency to the United States have a plus sign; items that cost the United States foreign currency have a minus sign. The table shows that in 2010, U.S. imports exceeded U.S. exports and the current account deficit was $471 billion. We paid for imports that exceeded the value of our exports by borrowing from the rest of the world. The capital account tells us by how much. We borrowed $1,246 billion (foreign investment in the United States) and made $1,005 billion of loans to the rest of the world (U.S. investment abroad). Other net foreign borrowing of $15 billion and a statistical discrepancy of $217 billion made our capital account balance $473 billion. Our official reserves increased by $2 billion and are shown in Table 34.1 as a negative $2 billion, a convention that makes the three accounts sum to zero.

You might better understand the balance of payments accounts and the way in which they are linked if you think about the income and expenditure, borrowing and lending, and bank account of an individual.

EYE on the PAST

The U.S. Balance of Payments



SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The numbers in Table 34.1 provide a snapshot of the U.S. balance of payments in 2010. The figure puts this snapshot into perspective by showing how the balance of payments evolved from 1980 to 2010.

A current account deficit emerged during the 1980s but briefly disappeared with a near-zero balance in the recession of the early 1990s. As the economy resumed its expansion during the 1990s, the current account deficit increased and kept on increasing until 2006.

As growth slowed and then turned to recession, imports shrank and so did the current account deficit.

The capital account balance is almost a mirror image of the current account balance and the reason is that the official settlements balance—the change in foreign exchange reserves—is very small in comparison with the balances on the other two accounts.

TABLE 34.1

The U.S. Balance of Payments Accounts in 2010

Current account	**(billions of dollars)**
Exports of goods and services	+1,838
Imports of goods and services	−2,338
Net interest	+165
Net transfers	−136
Current account balance	**−471**
Capital account	
Foreign investment in the United States	+1,246
U.S. investment abroad	−1,005
Other net foreign investment in the United States	+15
Statistical discrepancy	+217
Capital account balance	**+473**
Official settlements account	
Official settlements account balance	**−2**

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis.

The three balance of payments accounts are the current account, the capital account, and the official settlements account. The sum of the balances on the three accounts is always zero. That is, the official settlements account always equals the negative of the sum of the current account and the capital account.

Personal Analogy

You have a set of personal balance of payments accounts that parallel those of a nation. You have a current account, a capital account, and a settlements account.

Your current account records your income from supplying the services of factors of production and your expenditure on goods and services. Consider, for example, Joanne. She worked in 2011 and earned an income of $25,000. Joanne has $10,000 worth of investments that earned her interest of $1,000. Joanne's current account shows an income of $26,000. Joanne spent $18,000 buying goods and services for consumption. She also bought a new apartment, which cost her $60,000. So Joanne's total expenditure was $78,000. The difference between her expenditure and her income is $52,000 ($78,000 minus $26,000).

To pay for expenditure of $52,000 in excess of her income, Joanne has to use the money that she has in the bank or she has to take out a loan. Suppose that Joanne took a mortgage of $50,000 to help buy her apartment. This mortgage was the only borrowing that Joanne did, so her capital account surplus was $50,000. With a current account deficit of $52,000 and a capital account surplus of $50,000, Joanne is still $2,000 short. She got that $2,000 from her own bank account. Her cash holdings decreased by $2,000. Joanne's settlements balance was $2,000.

Joanne's income from her work is like a country's income from its exports. Her income from her investments is like a country's interest from foreigners. Her purchases of goods and services, including her purchase of an apartment, are like a country's imports. Joanne's mortgage—borrowing from someone else—is like a country's borrowing from the rest of the world. The change in Joanne's bank account is like the change in a country's official reserves.

Check that the sum of Joanne's balances is zero. Her current account balance is −$52,000, her capital account balance is +$50,000, and her settlements account balance is +$2,000, so the sum of the three balances is zero.

Borrowers and Lenders, Debtors and Creditors

Net borrower
A country that is borrowing more from the rest of the world than it is lending to the rest of the world.

Net lender
A country that is lending more to the rest of the world than it is borrowing from the rest of the world.

A country that is borrowing more from the rest of the world than it is lending to the rest of the world is called a **net borrower**. Similarly, a **net lender** is a country that is lending more to the rest of the world than it is borrowing from it.

The United States is a net borrower, but it is a relative newcomer to the ranks of net borrower nations. Throughout the 1960s and most of the 1970s, the United States was a net lender. It had a surplus on its current account and a deficit on its capital account. It was not until 1983 that the United States became a significant net borrower. Between 1983 and 1987, U.S. borrowing increased each year. Then it decreased and was briefly zero in 1991. From 1991 through 2006, U.S. borrowing increased and after 2006 it decreased. The average net foreign borrowing by the United States between 1983 and 2010 was $296 billion a year.

Most countries are net borrowers like the United States. But a small number of countries, including China and oil-rich Saudi Arabia, are net lenders.

Debtor nation
A country that during its entire history has borrowed more from the rest of the world than it has lent to the rest of the world.

Creditor nation
A country that during its entire history has invested more in the rest of the world than other countries have invested in it.

A net borrower might be reducing its net assets held in the rest of the world, or it might be going deeper into debt. A nation's total stock of foreign investment determines whether the nation is a debtor or creditor. A **debtor nation** is a country that during its entire history has borrowed more from the rest of the world than it has lent to the rest of the world. It has a stock of outstanding debt to the rest of the world that exceeds the stock of its own claims on the rest of the world. A **creditor nation** is a country that during its entire history has invested more in the rest of the world than other countries have invested in it.

Flows and Stocks

At the heart of the distinction between a net borrower and a net lender on the one hand and between a debtor nation and a creditor nation on the other hand is the distinction between flows and stocks, which you have encountered many times in your study of macroeconomics. Borrowing and lending are flows—amounts borrowed or lent per unit of time. Debts are stocks—amounts owed at a point in time. The flow of borrowing and lending changes the stock of debt.

The United States was a debtor nation through the nineteenth century as we borrowed from Europe to finance our westward expansion, railroads, and industrialization. The United States paid off its debt and became a creditor nation for most of the twentieth century. But following a string of current account deficits, the United States became a debtor nation again in 1989.

Since 1989, the total stock of U.S. borrowing from the rest of the world has exceeded U.S. lending to the rest of the world. The largest debtor nations are the capital-hungry developing countries (as the United States was during the nineteenth century). The international debt of these countries grew from less than a third to more than a half of their gross domestic product during the 1980s and created what is called the "Third World debt crisis."

Should we be concerned that the United States is a net borrower? The answer to this question depends mainly on what the net borrower is doing with the borrowed money. If the borrowed money is financing investment that in turn is generating economic growth and higher income, then the borrowing is not a problem. If the borrowed money is being used to finance consumption, then higher interest payments are being incurred, and consequently, consumption will eventually have to be reduced. In this case, the more the borrowing and the longer it goes on, the greater is the reduction in consumption that will eventually be necessary. We'll see below whether the United States is borrowing for investment or consumption.

Current Account Balance

What determines a country's current account balance and net foreign borrowing? You've seen in Table 34.1 that exports of goods and services (X) and imports of goods and services (M) are the largest items in the current account. We call exports minus imports net exports (NX). So net exports is the main component of the current account. We can define the current account balance (CAB) as

$$CAB = NX + \text{Net interest and transfers from abroad.}$$

Fluctuations in net exports are the main source of fluctuations in the current account balance. Net interest and transfers from abroad are small and have trends, but they do not fluctuate much. So we can study the current account balance by looking at what determines net exports.

Net Exports

The government budget and private saving and investment determine net exports. To see how they determine net exports, we need to recall some of the things that we learned about the national income accounts in Chapter 21. Table 34.2 will refresh your memory and summarize some calculations.

Private sector balance
Saving minus investment.

Government sector balance
Net taxes minus government expenditure on goods and services.

Part (a) of Table 34.2 lists the national income variables with their symbols. Part (b) defines three balances. *Net exports* are exports of goods and services minus imports of goods and services.

The **private sector balance** is saving minus investment. If saving exceeds investment, a private sector surplus is lent to other sectors. If investment exceeds saving, borrowing from other sectors finances a private sector deficit.

The **government sector balance** is equal to net taxes minus government expenditure on goods and services. If that number is positive, a government sector surplus is lent to other sectors; if that number is negative, borrowing from other sectors must finance a government deficit. The government sector is the sum of the federal, state, and local governments.

Part (b) also shows the values of these balances for the United States in 2010. As you can see, net exports were −$517 billion, a deficit. The private sector saved $2,834 billion and invested $1,795 billion, so it had a surplus of $1,039 billion. The government sector's revenue from net taxes was $1,447 billion, and its expenditure was $3,003 billion, so the government sector balance was −$1,556 billion, a deficit.

Part (c) of Table 34.2 shows the relationship among the three balances.

TABLE 34.2

Net Exports, the Government Budget, Saving, and Investment

	Symbols and equations	United States in 2010 (billions of dollars)
Net exports equals exports minus imports.		
(a) Variables		
Exports	X	1,840
Imports	M	2,357
Investment	I	1,795
Saving	S	2,834
Government expenditure	G	3,003
Net taxes	NT	1,447
The private sector balance equals saving minus investment.		
(b) Balances		
Net exports	$X - M$	1,840 – 2,357 = –517
Private sector balance	$S - I$	2,834 – 1,795 = 1,039
Government sector balance	$NT - G$	1,447 – 3,003 = –1,556
The government sector balance equals net taxes minus government expenditure on goods and services.		
(c) Relation among balances		
National accounts	$Y = C + I + G + X - M = C + S + NT$	
Rearranging:	$X - M = S - I + NT - G$	
These three balances are related: Net exports equals the sum of the private sector and government sector balances.		
Net exports	$X - M$	–517
Equals:		
Private sector balance	$S - I$	1,039
Plus:		
Government sector balance	$NT - G$	–1,556

SOURCE OF DATA: Bureau of Economic Analysis, 2009. (The *National Income and Product Accounts* measures of exports and imports are slightly different from the Balance of Payments Accounts measures in Table 34.1 on p. 873. The government sector includes state and local governments.)

From the national income accounts, we know that real GDP, Y, is the sum of consumption expenditure, C; investment, I; government expenditure on goods and services, G; and net exports, $X - M$. Real GDP also equals the sum of consumption expenditure, C, saving, S, and net taxes, NT. Rearranging these equations tells us that net exports equals $(S-I)$, the private sector balance, plus $(NT-G)$, the government sector balance. That is,

$$\text{Net exports} = (S - I) + (NT - G).$$

Should we be concerned that the United States is a net borrower? The answer is probably not. Our international borrowing finances the purchase of new capital goods. In 2010, businesses spent $1,795 billion on new buildings, plant, and equipment. Governments spent $505 billion on defense equipment and public structures. All these purchases added to the nation's capital, and much of it increased productivity. Governments also purchased education and health care services, which increased human capital.

Our international borrowing is financing private and public investment, not consumption.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

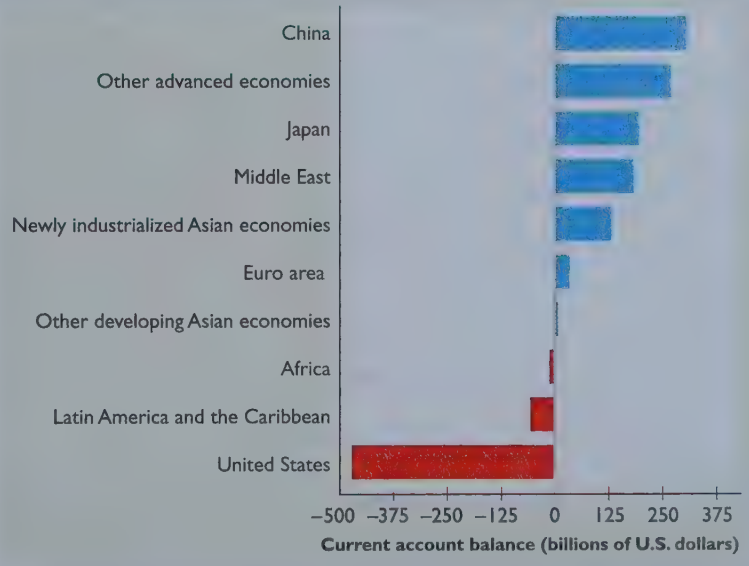
Current Account Balances Around the World

The U.S. current account deficit in 2010 is the major international payments deficit. No other country has a deficit remotely similar to that of the United States.

For every deficit, there must be a corresponding surplus. The figure shows that the U.S. deficit is reflected in a large number of surpluses spread around the world. No single country has a surplus to match the U.S. deficit.

But China, other advanced economies, and Japan have surpluses that in total equal the U.S. deficit.

The oil-exporting countries of the Middle East and the newly industrialized Asian economies also have surpluses.



SOURCE OF DATA: International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook*, September 2011.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 34.1 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 34.1

Describe a country's balance of payments accounts and explain what determines the amount of international borrowing and lending.

Practice Problems

Use the following information about the United States to work Problems 1 and 2.

Imports of goods and services: $2,000 billion; interest paid to the rest of the world: $500 billion; interest received from the rest of the world: $400 billion; decrease in U.S. official reserves: $10 billion; government sector balance: $200 billion; saving: $1,800 billion; investment: $2,000 billion; net transfers: zero.

1. Calculate the current account balance, the capital account balance, the official settlements account balance, and exports of goods and services.
2. Is the United States a debtor or a creditor nation?

In the News

Something has got to give

As the recovery takes hold, the U.S. government must reduce its expenditure to trim its huge budget deficit. To keep aggregate demand growing, consumption, investment, or exports must grow. U.S. consumers are burdened with debt, U.S. firms have unused capital, so exports must grow.

Source: *USA Today*, September 3, 2009

Explain why a cut in government expenditure to trim the budget deficit with no change in net taxes will require exports to grow.

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. The current account balance equals net exports plus net interest from abroad (−$100 billion) plus net transfers (zero). Net exports equal the government sector balance ($200 billion) plus the private sector balance. The private sector balance equals saving ($1,800 billion) minus investment ($2,000 billion), which is −$200 billion So net exports are zero, and the current account balance is −$100 billion.
   The capital account balance is the negative of the sum of the current account and official settlements account balances, which is $90 billion.
   The official settlements account balance is a *surplus* of $10 billion.
   Exports equal net exports (zero) plus imports ($2,000 billion), which equals $2,000 billion.
2. The United States is a debtor nation because it pays more in interest to the rest of the world than it receives in interest from the rest of the world.

Solution to In the News

The link between the government sector balance and the private sector balance is given by the equation: $(X - M) = (S - I) + (NT - G)$. Rewrite the equation as $(G - NT) = (S - I) - (X - M)$. A cut in the budget deficit will decrease the left side of the equation. An increase in consumption or an increase in I decreases $(S - I)$ and makes the right side of the equation decrease. If $(S - I)$ does not change, then to make the right side of the equation decrease, X must increase.

34.2 THE EXCHANGE RATE

When we buy foreign goods or invest in another country, we pay using that country's currency. When foreigners buy U.S.-made goods or invest in the United States, they pay in U.S. dollars. We get foreign currency and foreigners get U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market. The **foreign exchange market** is the market in which the currency of one country is exchanged for the currency of another. The foreign exchange market is not a place like a downtown flea market or produce market. It is made up of thousands of people: importers and exporters, banks, and specialist traders of foreign exchange, called foreign exchange brokers. The foreign exchange market opens on Monday morning in Hong Kong, which is still Sunday evening in New York. As the day advances, markets open in Singapore, Tokyo, Bahrain, Frankfurt, London, New York, Chicago, and San Francisco. As the U.S. West Coast markets close, Hong Kong is only an hour away from opening for the next business day. Dealers around the world are in continual contact, and on a typical day in 2011, more than $3 trillion changed hands.

Foreign exchange market
The market in which the currency of one country is exchanged for the currency of another.

The price at which one currency exchanges for another is called a **foreign exchange rate**. For example, in October 2011, one U.S. dollar bought 75 euro cents. The exchange rate was 0.75 euros per dollar. We can also express the exchange rate in terms of dollars per euro, which in October 2011 was $1.33 per euro.

Foreign exchange rate
The price at which one currency exchanges for another.

Currency appreciation is the rise in the value of one currency in terms of another currency. For example, when the dollar rose from 86 euro cents in 1999 to 1.17 euros in 2000, the dollar appreciated by 36 percent.

Currency appreciation
The rise in the value of one currency in terms of another currency.

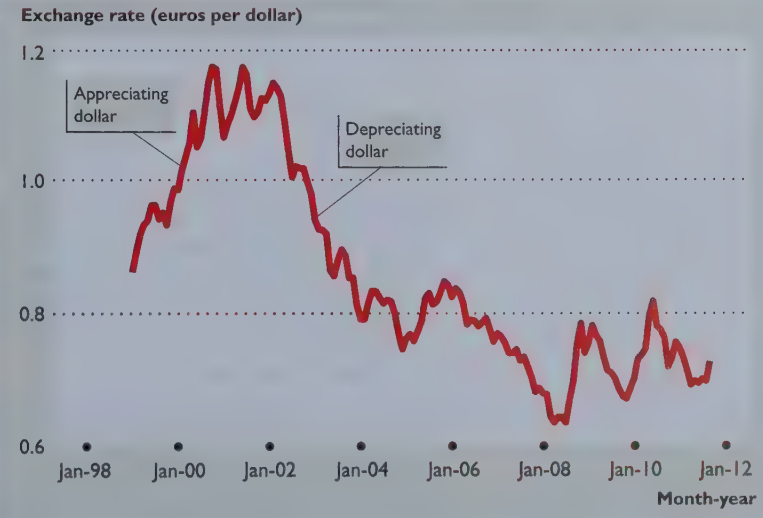
EYE on the PAST

The Dollar and the Euro Since 1999

From 1999 to 2000, the value of the dollar rose against the euro—the dollar *appreciated*. From 2002 to 2008, the value of the dollar fell against the euro—the dollar *depreciated*. The overall fall was from a high of 1.17 euros per dollar in 2000 to a low of 0.68 euros per dollar in 2008.

Since 2008, through the turmoil of global financial crisis and repeated financial and political crises in Europe, the dollar and the euro have fluctuated between around 0.70 and 0.80 euros per dollar.

SOURCE OF DATA: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.



Currency depreciation
The fall in the value of one currency in terms of another currency.

Currency depreciation is the fall in the value of one currency in terms of another currency. For example, when the dollar fell from 1.17 euros in 2000 to 0.63 euros in 2008, the dollar depreciated by 46 percent. Why does the U.S. dollar fluctuate in value? Why does it sometimes depreciate and sometimes appreciate?

The exchange rate is a price. And like all prices, demand and supply determine the exchange rate. So to understand the forces that determine the exchange rate, we need to study demand and supply in the foreign exchange market. We'll begin by looking at the demand side of the market.

Demand in the Foreign Exchange Market

The quantity of U.S. dollars demanded in the foreign exchange market is the amount that traders plan to buy during a given time period at a given exchange rate. This quantity depends on many factors, but the main ones are

- The exchange rate
- Interest rates in the United States and other countries
- The expected future exchange rate

Let's look first at the relationship between the quantity of dollars demanded in the foreign exchange market and the exchange rate.

The Law of Demand for Foreign Exchange

People do not buy dollars because they enjoy them. The demand for dollars is a *derived demand*. People demand dollars so that they can buy U.S.-made goods and services (U.S. exports). They also demand dollars so that they can buy U.S. assets such as bank accounts, bonds, stocks, businesses, and real estate. Nevertheless, the law of demand applies to dollars just as it does to anything else that people value.

Other things remaining the same, the higher the exchange rate, the smaller is the quantity of dollars demanded. For example, if the price of the U.S. dollar rises from 0.70 euros to 0.80 euros but nothing else changes, the quantity of U.S. dollars that people plan to buy decreases. Why does the exchange rate influence the quantity of dollars demanded? There are two separate reasons, and they are related to the two sources of the derived demand for dollars. They are

- Exports effect
- Expected profit effect

Exports Effect

The larger the value of U.S. exports, the larger is the quantity of dollars demanded. But the value of U.S. exports depends on the exchange rate. For example, if the exchange rate falls from 0.70 euros to 0.60 euros per U.S. dollar, other things remaining the same, the cheaper are U.S.-made goods and services to people in Europe, the more the United States exports, and the greater is the quantity of U.S. dollars demanded to pay for them.

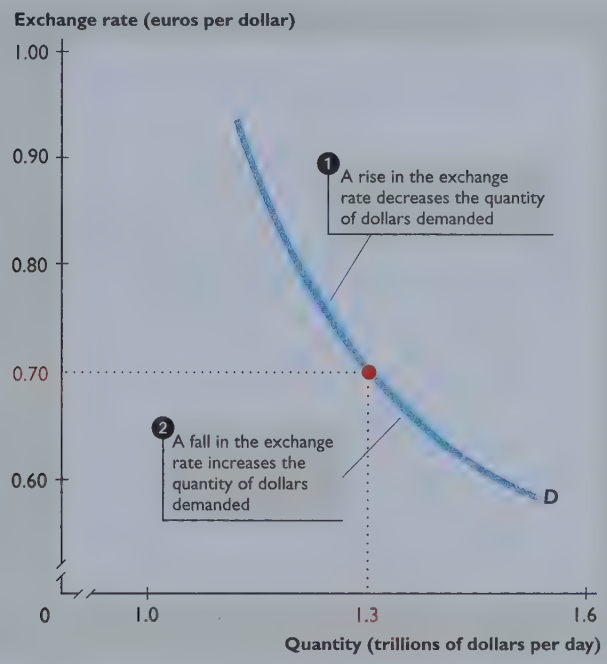
Expected Profit Effect

The larger the expected profit from holding dollars, the greater is the quantity of dollars demanded in the foreign exchange market. But expected profit depends on today's exchange rate and the expected future exchange rate. For a given expected future exchange rate, the lower the exchange rate today, the larger is the expected profit from holding dollars and the greater is the quantity of dollars demanded in the foreign exchange market.

FIGURE 34.1

The Demand for Dollars

MyEconLab Animation



Other things remaining the same, the quantity of dollars that people plan to buy depends on the exchange rate.

1. If the exchange rate rises, the quantity of dollars demanded decreases and there is a movement up along the demand curve for dollars.
2. If the exchange rate falls, the quantity of dollars demanded increases and there is a movement down along the demand curve for dollars.

To understand this effect, suppose that you think the dollar will be worth 0.80 euros by the end of the month. If a dollar costs 0.75 euros today, you buy dollars. But a person who thinks that the dollar will be worth 0.75 euros at the end of the month does not buy dollars. Now suppose that today's exchange rate falls to 0.65 euros per dollar. More people think that they can profit from buying dollars, so the quantity of dollars demanded today increases.

Figure 34.1 shows the demand curve for U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market. For the two reasons we've just reviewed, when the foreign exchange rate rises, other things remaining the same, the quantity of dollars demanded decreases and there is a movement up along the demand curve, as shown by the arrow. When the exchange rate falls, other things remaining the same, the quantity of dollars demanded increases and there is a movement down along the demand curve, as shown by the arrow.

Changes in the Demand for Dollars

A change in any other influence on the quantity of U.S. dollars that people plan to buy in the foreign exchange market brings a change in the demand for dollars. These other influences are

- Interest rates in the United States and other countries
- The expected future exchange rate

Interest Rates in the United States and Other Countries

U.S. interest rate differential
The U.S. interest rate minus the foreign interest rate.

If you can borrow in another country and lend in the United States at a higher interest rate, you will make a profit. What matters is not the level of foreign and U.S. interest rates, but the gap between them. This gap, the U.S. interest rate minus the foreign interest rate, is called the **U.S. interest rate differential**. The larger the U.S. interest rate differential, the greater is the demand for U.S. assets and the greater is the demand for dollars.

The Expected Future Exchange Rate

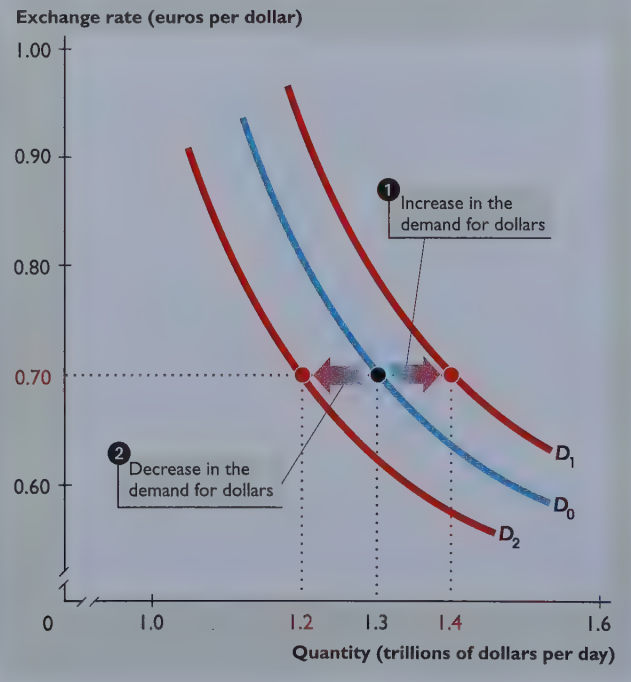
Suppose you are the finance manager of the German auto maker BMW. The exchange rate is 0.70 euros per dollar, and you expect that by the end of the month, it will be 0.80 euros per dollar. You spend 700,000 euros today and buy $1,000,000. At the end of the month, the dollar equals 0.80 euros, as you predicted, and you sell the $1,000,000. You get 800,000 euros. You've made a profit of 100,000 euros. The higher the expected future exchange rate, the greater is the expected profit and the greater is the demand for dollars today.

Figure 34.2 summarizes the influences on the demand for dollars. A rise in the U.S. interest rate differential or a rise in the expected future exchange rate increases the demand for dollars today and shifts the demand curve rightward from D_0 to D_1. A fall in the U.S. interest rate differential or a fall in the expected future exchange rate decreases the demand for dollars today and shifts the demand curve leftward from D_0 to D_2.

FIGURE 34.2
Changes in the Demand for Dollars

MyEconLab Animation

1. The demand for dollars increases if:
   - The U.S. interest rate differential increases.
   - The expected future exchange rate rises.
2. The demand for dollars decreases if:
   - The U.S. interest rate differential decreases.
   - The expected future exchange rate falls.



Supply in the Foreign Exchange Market

The quantity of U.S. dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market is the amount that traders plan to sell during a given time period at a given exchange rate. This quantity depends on many factors, but the main ones are

- The exchange rate
- Interest rates in the United States and other countries
- The expected future exchange rate

Does this list of factors seem familiar? It should: It is the same list as that for demand. The demand side and the supply side of the foreign exchange market are influenced by all the same factors. But the ways in which these three factors influence supply are the opposite of the ways in which they influence demand.

Let's look first at the relationship between the quantity of dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market and the exchange rate.

The Law of Supply of Foreign Exchange

Traders supply U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market when people and businesses buy other currencies. They buy other currencies so that they can buy foreign-made goods and services (U.S. imports). Traders also supply dollars and buy foreign currencies so that people and businesses can buy foreign assets such as bank accounts, bonds, stocks, businesses, and real estate. The law of supply applies to dollars just as it does to anything else that people plan to sell.

Other things remaining the same, the higher the exchange rate, the greater is the quantity of dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market. For example, if the price of the U.S. dollar rises from 0.70 euros to 0.80 euros but nothing else changes, the quantity of U.S. dollars that people plan to sell in the foreign exchange market increases. Why does the exchange rate influence the quantity of dollars supplied?

There are two reasons, and they parallel the two reasons on the demand side of the market. They are

- Imports effect
- Expected profit effect

Imports Effect

The larger the value of U.S. imports, the larger is the quantity of foreign currency demanded to pay for these imports. And when people buy foreign currency, they supply dollars. So the larger the value of U.S. imports, the greater is the quantity of dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market. But the value of U.S. imports depends on the exchange rate. The higher the exchange rate, other things remaining the same, the cheaper are foreign-made goods and services to Americans. So the more the United States imports, the greater is the quantity of U.S. dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market to pay for these imports.

Expected Profit Effect

The larger the expected profit from holding a foreign currency, the greater is the quantity of that currency demanded and the greater is the quantity of dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market. But the expected profit depends on today's exchange rate and the expected future exchange rate. For a given expected future exchange rate, the higher the exchange rate today, the larger is the expected profit from selling dollars and the greater is the quantity of dollars supplied in the foreign exchange market.

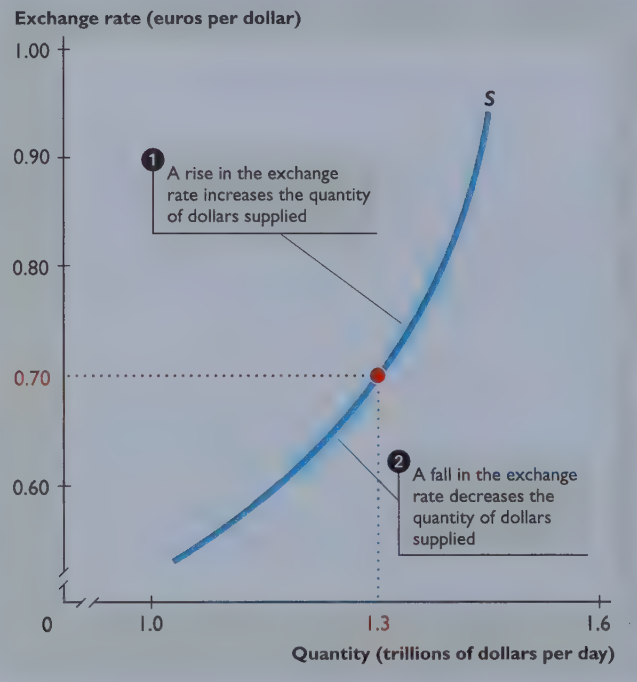
FIGURE 34.3

The Supply of Dollars

MyEconLab Animation

Other things remaining the same, the quantity of dollars that people plan to sell depends on the exchange rate.

1. If the exchange rate rises, the quantity of dollars supplied increases and there is a movement up along the supply curve of dollars.
2. If the exchange rate falls, the quantity of dollars supplied decreases and there is a movement down along the supply curve of dollars.



For the two reasons we've just reviewed, other things remaining the same, when the exchange rate rises, the quantity of dollars supplied increases, and when the exchange rate falls, the quantity of dollars supplied decreases. Figure 34.3 shows the supply curve of U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market. In this figure, when the exchange rate rises, other things remaining the same, there is an increase in the quantity of dollars supplied and a movement up along the supply curve, as shown by the arrow. When the exchange rate falls, other things remaining the same, there is a decrease in the quantity of dollars supplied and a movement down along the supply curve, as shown by the arrow.

Changes in the Supply of Dollars

A change in any other influence on the quantity of U.S. dollars that people plan to sell in the foreign exchange market brings a change in the supply of dollars, and the supply curve of dollars shifts. Supply either increases or decreases. These other influences on supply parallel the other influences on demand but have exactly the opposite effects. These influences are

- Interest rates in the United States and other countries
- The expected future exchange rate

Interest Rates in the United States and Other Countries

The larger the U.S. interest rate differential, the smaller is the demand for foreign assets and the smaller is the supply of dollars in the foreign exchange market.

The Expected Future Exchange Rate

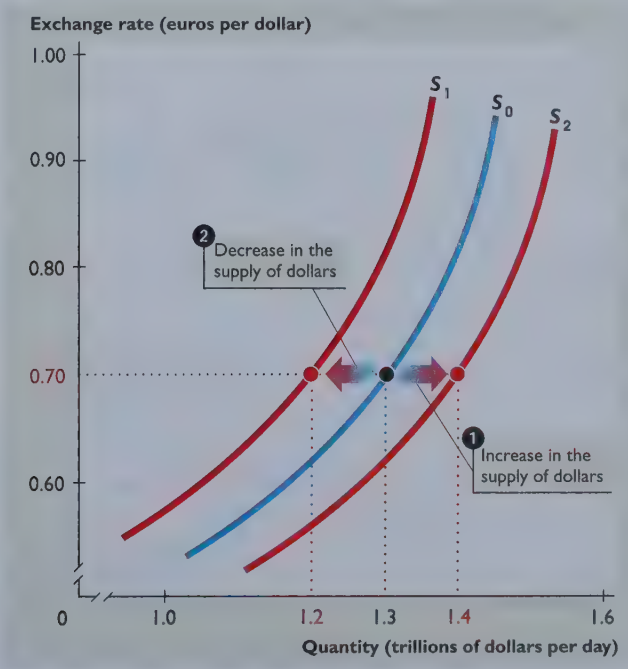
Other things remaining the same, the higher the expected future exchange rate, the smaller is the supply of dollars. To see why, suppose that the dollar is trading at 0.70 euros per dollar today and you think that by the end of the month, the dollar will trade at 0.80 euros per dollar. You were planning on selling dollars today, but you decide to hold off and wait until the end of the month. If you supply dollars today, you get only 0.70 euros per dollar. But at the end of the month, if the dollar is worth 0.80 euros as you predict, you'll get 0.80 euros for each dollar you supply. You'll make a profit of 0.10 euros per dollar. So the higher the expected future exchange rate, other things remaining the same, the smaller is the expected profit from selling U.S. dollars and the smaller is the supply of dollars today.

Figure 34.4 summarizes the influences on the supply of dollars. A rise in the U.S. interest rate differential or the expected future exchange rate decreases the supply of dollars today and shifts the supply curve leftward from S_0 to S_1. A fall in the U.S. interest rate differential or the expected future exchange rate increases the supply of dollars today and shifts the supply curve rightward from to S_0 to S_2.

FIGURE 34.4

Changes in the Supply of Dollars

MyEconLab Animation



1. The supply of dollars increases if:
   - The U.S. interest rate differential decreases.
   - The expected future exchange rate falls.
2. The supply of dollars decreases if:
   - The U.S. interest rate differential increases.
   - The expected future exchange rate rises.

Market Equilibrium

Demand and supply in the foreign exchange market determine the exchange rate. Just as in all the other markets you've studied, the price (the exchange rate) acts as a regulator. If the exchange rate is too high, there is a surplus—the quantity supplied exceeds the quantity demanded. If the exchange rate is too low, there is a shortage—the quantity supplied is less than the quantity demanded. At the equilibrium exchange rate, there is neither a shortage nor a surplus. The quantity supplied equals the quantity demanded.

Figure 34.5 illustrates market equilibrium. The demand for dollars is *D*, and the supply of dollars is *S*. The equilibrium exchange rate is 0.70 euros per dollar. At this exchange rate, the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied and is $1.3 trillion a day. If the exchange rate is above 0.70 euros, for example, 0.80 euros per dollar, there is a surplus of dollars and the exchange rate falls. If the exchange rate is below 0.70 euros, for example, 0.60 euros per dollar, there is a shortage of dollars and the exchange rate rises.

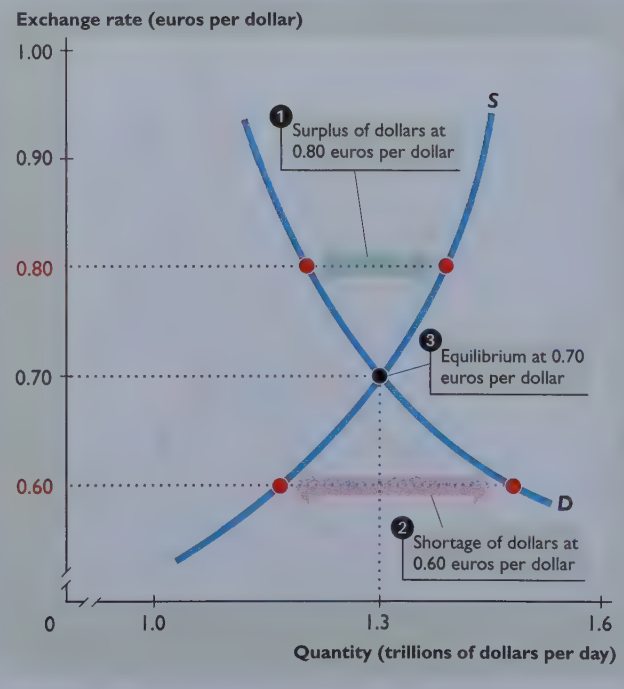
The foreign exchange market is constantly pulled to its equilibrium by the forces of supply and demand. Foreign exchange dealers are constantly looking for the best price they can get. If they are selling, they want the highest price available. If they are buying, they want the lowest price available. Information flows from dealer to dealer through the worldwide computer network, and the price adjusts second by second to keep buying plans and selling plans in balance. That is, price adjusts second by second to keep the market at its equilibrium.

FIGURE 34.5
Equilibrium Exchange Rate

MyEconLab Animation

The demand curve for dollars is *D*, and the supply curve is *S*.

1. If the exchange rate is 0.80 euros per dollar, there is a surplus of dollars and the exchange rate falls.
2. If the exchange rate is 0.60 euros per dollar, there is a shortage of dollars and the exchange rate rises.
3. If the exchange rate is 0.70 euros per dollar, there is neither a shortage nor a surplus of dollars and the exchange rate remains constant. The market is in equilibrium.



EYE on the DOLLAR

Why Has Our Dollar Been Sinking?

Our dollar has been on a falling trend since the early 2000s but it hasn't always been sinking. Let's start by looking at a rising dollar.

A Rising Dollar: 1999–2000

The dollar appreciated against the euro when it rose from 0.86 euros per dollar in 1999 to 1.17 euros per dollar in 2000. Figure 1 explains why this happened.

In 1999, the demand and supply curves were those labeled D_{99} and S_{99}. The equilibrium exchange rate was 0.86 euros per dollar—where the quantity of dollars supplied equaled the quantity of dollars demanded.

During the next two years, the U.S. economy expanded faster than the European economy. Interest rates in Europe were 2 percentage points lower than in the United States, and the euro was expected to depreciate and the dollar was expected to appreciate.

With a positive U.S. interest rate differential and an expected dollar appreciation, the demand for dollars increased and the supply of dollars decreased. The demand curve shifted from D_{99} to D_{00} and the supply curve shifted from S_{99} to S_{00}. These two reinforcing shifts made the exchange rate rise to 1.17 euros per dollar.

A Falling Dollar: 2001–2008

Between 2001 and 2008, the dollar fell from 1.17 euros to 0.63 euros per dollar. Figure 2 explains this fall.

In 2001, the demand and supply curves were those labeled D_{01} and S_{01}. The exchange rate was 1.17 euros per dollar. During the next few years, U.S. economic growth slipped below the European growth rate, European inflation fell, interest rates in Europe exceeded those in the United States, and the U.S. current account deficit continued to increase.

Under these conditions, currency traders expected the exchange rate to fall. The demand for dollars decreased and the supply of dollars increased. The demand curve shifted leftward to D_{08} and the supply curve shifted rightward to S_{08}. The exchange rate fell to 0.63 euros per dollar.

Will the dollar start to rise against the euro, or will it keep falling? No one knows. What happens will depend on the relative economic performance of the United States and Europe.

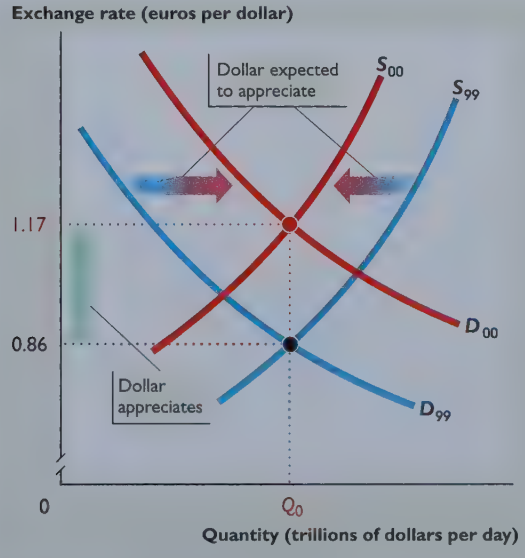


Figure 1 1999 to 2000

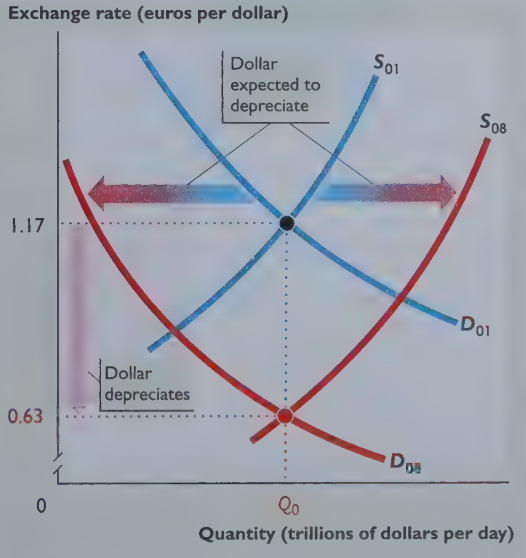


Figure 2 2001 to 2008

Why Exchange Rates Are Volatile

You've seen that sometimes the dollar depreciates and at other times it appreciates. The exchange rates of other currencies are similarly volatile. The Japanese yen, Canadian dollar, and Mexican peso along with most currencies swing between appreciation and depreciation. Yet the quantity of dollars (and other currencies) traded in the foreign exchange market each day barely changes. Why?

A large part of the answer is that everyone in the foreign exchange market is potentially either a buyer or a seller—a demander or a supplier. Each has a price above which he or she will sell and below which he or she will buy.

This fact about the participants in the foreign exchange market means that supply and demand are not independent. The same shocks to the market that change the demand for a currency also change its supply. Demand and supply change in *opposite directions*, and the result is large price changes and small quantity changes.

The two key influences that change both demand and supply in the foreign exchange market are the interest rate differential and the expected future exchange rate.

A rise in the U.S. interest rate differential *increases* the *demand* for U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market and *decreases* the *supply*. A rise in the expected future exchange rate also increases the demand for U.S. dollars and decreases the supply.

These common influences that change demand and supply in *opposite directions* bring changes in the exchange rate and little change in the quantities of currencies traded. They can bring cumulative movements in the exchange rate or frequent changes of direction—volatility.

Exchange Rate Expectations

The changes in the exchange rate that we've just considered occur in part because the exchange rate is expected to change. This explanation sounds a bit like a self-fulfilling forecast. What makes expectations change? The answer is new information about the deeper forces that influence the value of money. There are two such forces:

- Purchasing power parity
- Interest rate parity

Purchasing Power Parity

Money is worth what it will buy. But two kinds of money, U.S. dollars and Canadian dollars, for example, might buy different amounts of goods and services. Suppose a Big Mac costs $4 (Canadian) in Toronto and $3 (U.S.) in New York. If the Canadian dollar exchange rate is $1.33 Canadian per U.S. dollar, the two monies have the same value. You can buy a Big Mac in either Toronto or New York for either $4 Canadian or $3 U.S.

Purchasing power parity
Equal value of money—a situation in which money buys the same amount of goods and services in different currencies.

The situation we've just described is called **purchasing power parity**, which means equal value of money. If purchasing power parity does not prevail, some powerful forces go to work. To understand these forces, suppose that the price of a Big Mac in New York rises to $4 U.S., but in Toronto the price remains at $4 Canadian. Suppose the exchange rate remains at $1.33 Canadian per U.S. dollar. In this case, a Big Mac in Toronto still costs $4 Canadian or $3 U.S. But in New

York, it costs $4 U.S. or $5.32 Canadian. Money buys more in Canada than in the United States. Money is not of equal value in both countries.

If all (or most) prices have increased in the United States and not increased in Canada, then people will generally expect that the U.S. dollar exchange rate is going to fall. The demand for U.S. dollars decreases, and the supply of U.S. dollars increases. The U.S. dollar exchange rate falls, as expected. If the U.S. dollar falls to $1.00 Canadian and there are no further price changes, purchasing power parity is restored. A Big Mac now costs $4 in either U.S. dollars or Canadian dollars in both New York and Toronto.

If prices increase in Canada and other countries but remain constant in the United States, then people will generally expect that the value of the U.S. dollar in the foreign exchange market is too low and that the U.S. dollar exchange rate will rise. The demand for U.S. dollars increases, and the supply of U.S. dollars decreases. The U.S. dollar exchange rate rises, as expected.

Ultimately, the value of money is determined by prices. So the deeper forces that influence the exchange rate have tentacles that spread throughout the economy. If prices in the United States rise faster than those in other countries, the exchange rate falls. And if prices in the United States rise more slowly than those in other countries, the exchange rate rises.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

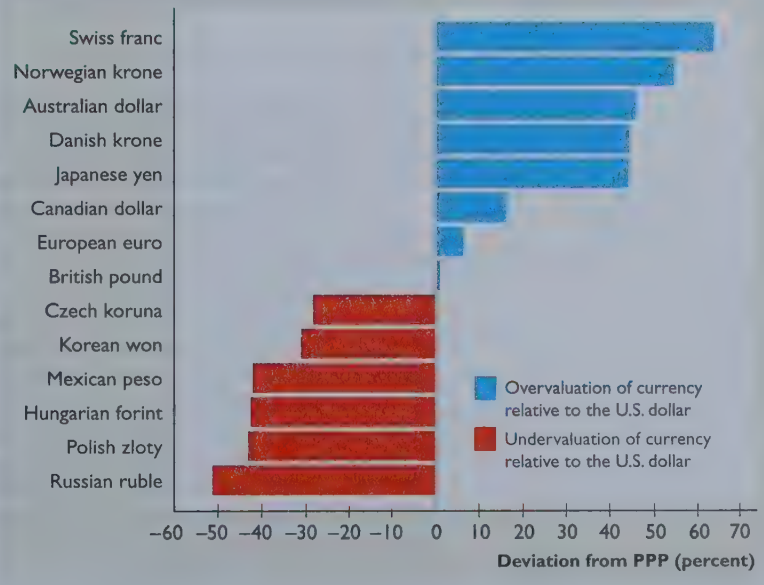
Purchasing Power Parity

Purchasing power parity (PPP) is a long-run phenomenon. In the short run, deviations from PPP can be large.

The figure shows the range of deviations from PPP in October 2011. At that time, the Swiss franc was overvalued by 65 percent and the Norwegian krone by 55 percent. An overvalued currency is one that, according to PPP, will depreciate at some point in the future.

The most undervalued currencies in October 2011 were the Russian ruble and Polish zloty. An undervalued currency is one that, according to PPP, will appreciate at some time in the future.

PPP theory predicts that a currency might depreciate or appreciate but not *when* it will depreciate or appreciate.



SOURCE OF DATA: PACIFIC FX Service, University of British Columbia, October 5, 2011.

Interest Rate Parity

Interest rate parity
Equal interest rates—a situation in which the interest rate in one currency equals the interest rate in another currency when exchange rate changes are taken into account.

Suppose a Canadian dollar bank deposit in a Toronto bank earns 5 percent a year and a U.S. dollar bank deposit in a New York bank earns 3 percent a year. Why does anyone deposit money in New York? Why doesn't all the money flow to Toronto? The answer is: Because of exchange rate expectations. Suppose people expect the Canadian dollar to depreciate by 2 percent a year. This 2 percent depreciation must be subtracted from the 5 percent interest to obtain the net return of 3 percent a year that an American can earn by depositing funds in a Toronto bank. The two returns are equal. This situation is one of **interest rate parity**—equal interest rates when exchange rate changes are taken into account.

Interest rate parity always prevails. Funds move to get the highest return available. If interest rate parity did not hold because the Canadian dollar had too high a value in the foreign exchange market, the expected return in Toronto would be lower than in New York. In seconds, traders would sell the Canadian dollar, its exchange rate would fall, and the expected return from lending in Toronto would rise to equal that in New York.

Monetary Policy and the Exchange Rate

Monetary policy influences the interest rate (see Chapter 28, pp. 720–723), so monetary policy also influences the interest rate differential and the exchange rate. If the Fed increases the U.S. interest rate and other central banks keep interest rates in other countries unchanged, the value of the U.S. dollar rises in the foreign exchange market. If other central banks increase their interest rates and the Fed keeps the U.S. interest rate unchanged, the value of the U.S. dollar falls in the foreign exchange market. So exchange rates fluctuate in response to changes and expected changes in monetary policy in the United States and around the world.

Pegging the Exchange Rate

Some central banks try to avoid exchange rate fluctuations by pegging the value of their currency against another currency. Suppose the Fed wanted to keep the dollar at 0.70 euros per dollar. If the exchange rate rose above 0.70 euros, the Fed would sell dollars and if it fell below 0.70 euros, the Fed would buy dollars.

Figure 34.6 illustrates foreign exchange market intervention. The supply of dollars is S, and initially, the demand for dollars is D_0. The equilibrium exchange rate is 0.70 euros per dollar, which is also the Fed's target—the horizontal red line.

If the demand for dollars increases to D_1, the Fed increases the supply of dollars—sells dollars—and prevents the exchange rate from rising. If the demand for dollars decreases to D_2, the Fed decreases the supply of dollars—buys dollars—and prevents the exchange rate from falling.

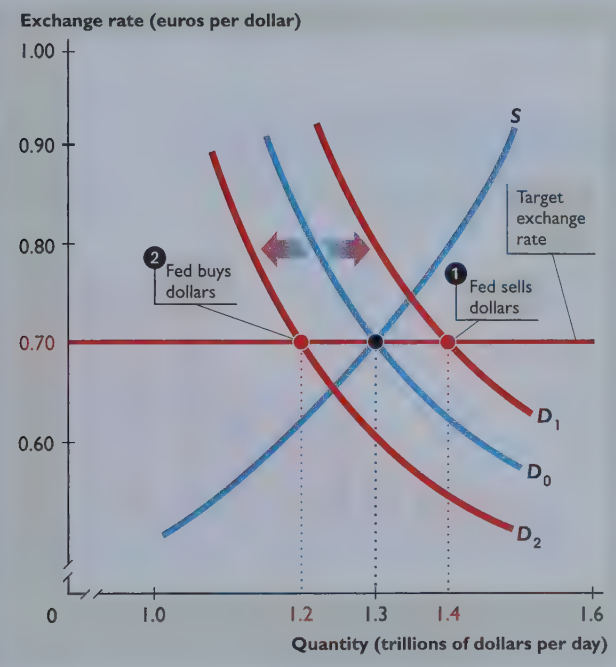
When the Fed buys dollars, it uses its reserves of euros; when the Fed sells dollars, it takes euros in exchange and its reserves of euros increase. As long as the demand for dollars fluctuates around, so on average remains at, D_0, the Fed's reserves of euros fluctuate but neither run dry nor persistently increase.

But if the demand for dollars decreased permanently to D_2, the Fed would have to buy dollars and sell euros every day to maintain the exchange rate at 0.70 euros per dollar. The Fed would soon run out of euros, and when it did, the dollar would sink. If the demand for dollars increased permanently to the D_1, the Fed would have to sell dollars and buy euros every day. The Fed would be piling up unwanted euros and at some point would let the dollar rise.

FIGURE 34.6

Foreign Exchange Market Intervention

MyEconLab Animation



Initially, the demand for dollars is D_0, the supply of dollars is S, and the exchange rate is 0.70 euros per dollar. The Fed can intervene in the foreign exchange market to keep the exchange rate close to its target rate (0.70 euros per dollar in this example).

1. If demand increases from D_0 to D_1, the Fed sells dollars to increase the supply of dollars and maintain the exchange rate.
2. If demand decreases from D_0 to D_2, the Fed buys dollars to decrease the supply of dollars and maintain the exchange rate.

Persistent intervention on one side of the market cannot be sustained.

The People's Bank of China in the Foreign Exchange Market

Although the Fed could peg the value of the dollar, it chooses not to do so. But China's central bank, the People's Bank of China, does intervene to peg the value of its currency—the yuan. *Eye on the Global Economy* on page 893 shows the result of this intervention.

During much of the period that the yuan has been pegged to the U.S. dollar, China has piled up U.S. dollar reserves. Figure 34.7(a) shows the numbers. During 2007 to 2009, China's reserves increased by more than $1 trillion.

Figure 34.7(b), which shows the market for U.S. dollars priced in terms of the yuan, explains why China's reserves increased. The demand curve D and supply curve S intersect at 5 yuan per dollar. If the People's Bank of China took no actions in the foreign exchange market, this exchange rate would be the equilibrium rate. (This particular value is only an example. No one knows what the yuan-dollar exchange rate would be with no intervention.)

By intervening in the market and buying U.S. dollars, the People's Bank can peg the yuan at 6.80 yuan per dollar. But to do so, it must keep holding the dollars that it buys. In Figure 34.7(b), the People's Bank buys $250 billion a year.

Only by allowing the yuan to appreciate can China stop accumulating dollars. That is what the People's Bank decided to do in July 2005. But China continues to intervene in the foreign exchange market to manage the rate of appreciation of the

yuan. Eventually, when China's foreign exchange market becomes more accustomed to a floating yuan, it is likely that the People's Bank will lessen its intervention and the value of the yuan will be determined by market forces.

FIGURE 34.7

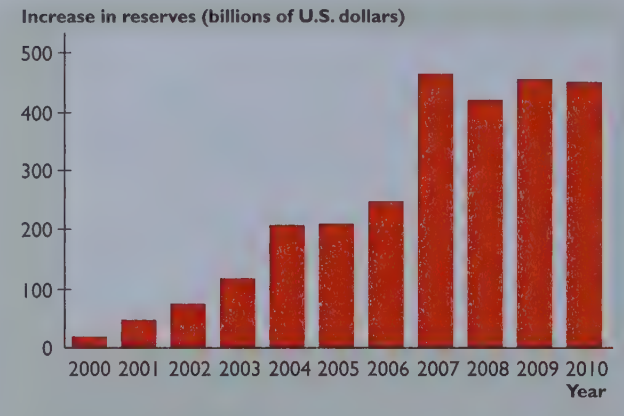
China's Foreign Exchange Market Intervention

MyEconLab Real-time data

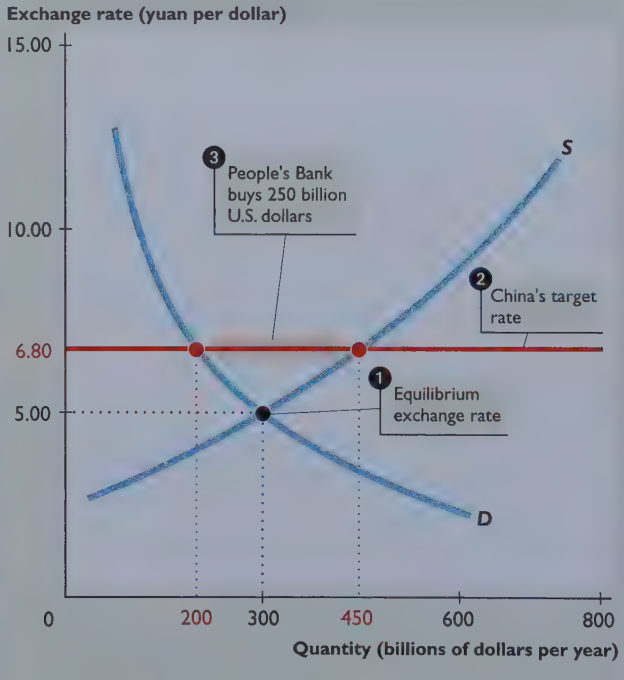
China has been piling up reserves of U.S. dollars since 2000. During 2007 through 2010, the build-up of reserves was very large. Part (a) shows the numbers.

Part (b) shows the market for the U.S. dollar in terms of the Chinese yuan. Note that a higher exchange rate (yuan per dollar) means a lower value of the yuan and a higher value of the dollar. The yuan appreciates when the number of yuan per dollar decreases.

1. With demand curve *D* and supply curve *S*, the equilibrium exchange rate is 5 yuan per dollar. (The actual equilibrium value is not known, and the value assumed is only an example.)
2. In 2010, the People's Bank of China had a target exchange rate of 6.80 yuan per dollar. At this exchange rate, the yuan is *undervalued*.
3. To keep the exchange rate pegged at its target level, the People's Bank of China must buy U.S. dollars in exchange for yuan, and China's reserves of dollars pile up.



(a) Increase in U.S. dollar reserves



(b) Managing the yuan

SOURCE OF DATA: The People's Bank of China.

EYE on the GLOBAL ECONOMY

The Managed Yuan

The Chinese central bank, the People's Bank of China, pegged the value of the yuan in terms of the U.S. dollar for more than 10 years. The figure shows the value of the yuan (yuan per U.S. dollar) from the early 1990s to 2011.

The yuan was devalued in January 1994. It appreciated a bit during 1994 and 1995. But it was then pegged at 8.28 yuan per U.S. dollar, a value that the People's Bank of China maintained for more than 10 years. In July 2005, the yuan began a managed float—a managed appreciation of the yuan. Then, in July 2008, the exchange rate was again pegged, this time at 6.8 yuan per dollar. Since early 2010, the yuan has been floating again.

SOURCE OF DATA: PACIFIC FX Service, University of British Columbia.

EYE on YOUR LIFE

Your Foreign Exchange Transactions

If you plan to go to Europe for a vacation next summer, you will need some euros. What is the best way to get euros?

You could just take your ATM/debit card or credit card and use an ATM in Europe. You'll get euros from the cash machine, and your bank account in the United States will get charged for the cash you obtain.

When you get euros, the number of euros you request is multiplied by the exchange rate to determine how many dollars to take from your bank account.

You have just made a transaction in the foreign exchange market. You have exchanged dollars for euros.

The exchange rate that you paid was probably costly. Your bank took a commission for helping you get euros. Some banks charge as much as 5 percent. Check in advance. It might be better to buy euros from your bank before you leave on your trip.

Another question has possibly occurred to you: How many euros will your budget buy next summer? Should you get the euros now at a price that is certain or would it be better to wait until closer to your travel date and take a chance on the value of the dollar then?

No one can answer this question. But you can buy euros today at a fixed price for delivery at a later date. (This transaction is made in a market called the forward exchange market.) Again, though, you'll end up paying a big commission for the service.

MyEconLab
You can work these problems in Study Plan 34.2 and get instant feedback.

CHECKPOINT 34.2

Explain how the exchange rate is determined and why it fluctuates.

Practice Problems

Suppose that yesterday, the U.S. dollar was trading in the foreign exchange market at 100 yen per dollar. Today, the U.S. dollar is trading at 105 yen per dollar.

1. Which currency appreciated and which depreciated today?
2. List the events that could have caused today's change in the value of the U.S. dollar in the foreign exchange market. Did these events on your list change the demand for U.S. dollars, the supply of U.S. dollars, or both the demand for and supply of U.S. dollars?
3. If the Fed had tried to stabilize the exchange rate at 100 yen per dollar, what action would it have taken? How would U.S. official reserves have changed?

In the News

Dollar up vs euro and yen after Fed signals higher interest rate
The dollar rose against the euro and yen buoyed by the appeal of higher short-term rates after the Fed chose to not increase the money supply.
Source: Reuters, September 20, 2011

1. Did the dollar appreciate or depreciate against the euro and the Japanese yen? Did the euro and the yen appreciate or depreciate against the dollar?
2. What actions in the foreign exchange market raised the foreign exchange value of the dollar?

Solutions to Practice Problems

1. Because the price of the U.S. dollar is a larger number of yen, the U.S. dollar has appreciated. The yen has depreciated because it buys fewer dollars.
2. The main events might be an increase in the U.S. interest rate, a decrease in the Japanese interest rate, or a rise in the expected future exchange rate of the U.S. dollar.

   The events listed change both the demand for and supply of U.S. dollars. The events increase the demand for and decrease the supply of U.S. dollars.
3. To stabilize the exchange rate, the Fed would have sold U.S. dollars to increase the supply of dollars in the foreign exchange market. When the Fed sells U.S. dollars, it buys foreign currency. U.S. official reserves would have increased.

Solutions to In the News

1. Because the dollar buys more euros, the euro has depreciated and the dollar has appreciated. Because the dollar buys more yen, the dollar appreciated against the yen and the yen depreciated against the dollar.
2. As the Fed signaled that short-term interest rates would rise, the U.S. interest rate differential increased and the demand for U.S. dollars increased and the supply of U.S. dollars decreased. The increase in demand and decrease in supply raises the value of the U.S. dollar in the foreign exchange market.

CHAPTER SUMMARY

Key Points

1 Describe a country's balance of payments accounts and explain what determines the amount of international borrowing and lending.

- Foreign currency is used to finance international trade and the purchase of foreign assets.
- A country's balance of payments accounts record its international transactions.
- Historically, the United States has been a net lender to the rest of the world, but in 1983 that situation changed and the United States became a net borrower. In 1989 the United States became a debtor nation.
- Net exports are equal to the private sector balance plus the government sector balance.

2 Explain how the exchange rate is determined and why it fluctuates.

- Foreign currency is obtained in exchange for domestic currency in the foreign exchange market.
- The exchange rate is determined by demand and supply in the foreign exchange market.
- The lower the exchange rate, the greater is the quantity of dollars demanded. A change in the exchange rate brings a movement along the demand curve for dollars.
- Changes in the expected future exchange rate and the U.S. interest rate differential change the demand for dollars and shift the demand curve.
- The lower the exchange rate, the smaller is the quantity of dollars supplied. A change in the exchange rate brings a movement along the supply curve of dollars.
- Changes in the expected future exchange rate and the U.S. interest rate differential change the supply of dollars and shift the supply curve.
- Fluctuations in the exchange rate occur because fluctuations in the demand for and supply of dollars are not independent.
- A central bank can intervene in the foreign exchange market to smooth fluctuations in the exchange rate.

Key Terms

Balance of payments accounts, 872
Capital account, 872
Creditor nation, 874
Currency appreciation, 879
Currency depreciation, 880
Current account, 872
Debtor nation, 874
Foreign exchange market, 879
Foreign exchange rate, 879
Government sector balance, 876
Interest rate parity, 890
Net borrower, 874
Net lender, 874
Official settlements account, 872
Private sector balance, 876
Purchasing power parity, 888
U.S. interest rate differential, 882
U.S. official reserves, 872

MyEconLab

You can work these problems in Chapter 34 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

TABLE 1

Item	(billions of dollars)
Imports	150
Exports of goods and services	50
Net interest	–10
Net transfers	35
Foreign investment in Antarctica	125
Antarctica's investment abroad	55

CHAPTER CHECKPOINT

Study Plan Problems and Applications

Table 1 gives some data that describe the economy of Antarctica in 2050. Use Table 1 to answer Problems **1** and **2**.

1. Calculate Antarctica's current account balance, capital account balance, and the increase in Antarctica's official reserves.
2. Is Antarctica a debtor nation or a creditor nation? Are its international assets increasing or decreasing? Is Antarctica borrowing to finance investment or consumption? Explain.
3. **U.S. trade deficit jumped in May**
   The Commerce Department report said that exports of goods and services were $174.9 billion, while imports were $225.1 billion, resulting in a deficit of $50.2 billion.

   Source: *The New York Times*, July 12, 2011

   Explain how the United States pays for its net export deficit.
4. The U.S. dollar depreciates. Explain which of the following events could have caused the depreciation and why.
   - The Fed intervened in the foreign exchange market. Did the Fed buy or sell U.S. dollars?
   - People began to expect that the U.S. dollar would depreciate.
   - The U.S. interest rate differential increased.
   - Foreign investment in the United States increased.

Suppose that the inflation rate is lower in Japan than it is in the United States, and that the difference in the inflation rates persists for some years. Use this information to answer Problems **5** to **7**.

5. Will the U.S. dollar appreciate or depreciate against the yen and will purchasing power parity be violated? Why or why not?
6. Will U.S. interest rates be higher or lower than Japanese interest rates and will interest rate parity hold? Why or why not?
7. Explain how the expected future exchange rate will change.
8. Suppose that the U.K. pound is trading at 1.82 U.S. dollars per U.K. pound and at this exchange rate purchasing power parity holds. The U.S. interest rate is 2 percent a year and the U.K. interest rate is 4 percent a year. Calculate the U.S. interest rate differential. What is the U.K. pound expected to be worth in terms of U.S. dollars one year from now?
9. **Aussie dollar hit by interest rate talk**
   The Australian dollar fell against the U.S. dollar to its lowest value in the past two weeks. CPI inflation was reported to be generally as expected, but not strong enough to justify expectations for an aggressive interest rate rise by Australia's central bank next week.

   Source: Reuters, October 28, 2009

   Explain why the expected rise of the Australian interest rate with no change in the U.S. interest rate lowered the current value of the Australian dollar against the U.S. dollar.

Instructor Assignable Problems and Applications

1. If the European Central Bank starts to raise its policy interest rate before the Fed starts to raise the federal funds rate target, what do you predict will happen to the dollar/euro exchange rate? Illustrate your answer with an appropriate graphical analysis.
2. Table 1 gives some data that describe the economy of Atlantis in 2020. Calculate the current account balance, the capital account balance, the government sector balance, and the private sector balance.
3. The U.S. dollar appreciates, and U.S. official reserves increase. Explain which of the following events might have caused these changes to occur and why.
   - The Fed intervened in the foreign exchange market and sold U.S. dollars.
   - The Fed conducted an open market operation and sold U.S. bonds.
   - People began to expect that the U.S. dollar would appreciate.
   - The U.S. interest rate differential narrowed.
4. Which of the following events might have caused the euro to appreciate and why?
   - The European Central Bank sold euros in the foreign exchange market.
   - The Fed intervened in the foreign exchange market and bought U.S. dollars.
   - The EU interest rate differential increased.
   - Profits increased in Europe, and U.S. investment in Europe surged.

Use the following information to work Problems 5 and 6.
Suppose that the euro keeps appreciating against the U.S. dollar. The Fed decides to stop the euro from appreciating (stop the U.S. dollar from depreciating) and intervenes in the foreign exchange market.

5. What actions might the Fed take in the foreign exchange market? Could these actions persist in the long run? Would the Fed's actions prevent interest rate parity from being achieved? Why or why not?
6. Are there any other actions that the Fed could take to raise the foreign exchange value of the dollar? Explain your answer.

Use the following information to work Problems 7 and 8.
In July 2011, the exchange rate between the U.S. dollar and the Brazilian real was 1.6 real per dollar. In the same month, the price of a Big Mac was 9.36 real in Sao Paulo and $4.00 in New York. Brazil's interest rate was 12 percent per year and the U.S. interest rate was 1 percent per year.

Sources: Pacific Exchange Rate Service and *The Economist*

7. Does purchasing power parity (PPP) hold between Brazil and the United States? If not, does PPP predict that the real will appreciate or depreciate against the U.S. dollar?
8. Does interest rate parity hold between Brazil and the United States? If interest rate parity does hold, what is the expected rate of appreciation or depreciation of the Brazilian real against the U.S. dollar? If the Fed raised the interest rate while the Brazilian interest rate remained at 12 percent a year, how would the expected appreciation or depreciation of the real change?

MyEconLab

Your instructor can assign these problems as homework, a quiz, or a test in MyEconLab.

TABLE 1

Item	(billions of dollars)
Government expenditure	200
Saving	100
Increase in official reserves of Atlantis	5
Net foreign investment in Atlantis	50
Net taxes	150
Investment	125

MyEconLab

You can work this quiz in Chapter 34 Study Plan and get instant feedback.

Multiple Choice Quiz

1. The current account balance equals _____.
   A. exports minus imports plus net interest and net transfers
   B. net exports plus net foreign investment in the United States
   C. the capital account balance minus the official settlements account balance
   D. net exports plus the official settlements balance
2. China's official reserves have ballooned, fueled by strong foreign investment and large trade surpluses. China is a net _____ and a _____ nation.
   A. lender; borrowing
   B. borrower; debtor
   C. lender; creditor
   D. borrower; creditor
3. Net exports equal the _____.
   A. private sector balance plus the government sector balance
   B. private sector balance minus the government sector balance
   C. government sector balance minus the private sector balance
   D. private sector balance plus the government's budget deficit
4. A net exports deficit will become a surplus if _____.
   A. the government budget deficit is turned into a surplus and the private sector has a surplus
   B. the private sector surplus adjusts to equal the government sector deficit
   C. private saving and government saving exceed private investment
   D. the country appreciates its currency
5. The quantity of U.S. dollars demanded in the foreign exchange market increases if _____.
   A. the value of U.S. imports increases
   B. traders expect the future exchange rate to rise
   C. the U.S. interest rate rises relative to those in other countries
   D. the U.S. dollar depreciates against other currencies
6. The supply of U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market increases if _____.
   A. the value of U.S. imports increases
   B. the U.S. interest rate differential decreases
   C. the U.S. dollar depreciates against other currencies
   D. the U.S. dollar is expected to appreciate against other currencies in the future
7. Purchasing power parity _____.
   A. holds if the price of a good is the same number of euros, pounds, or dollars
   B. means that the value of the euro, the pound, and the dollar are equal
   C. always holds because exchange rates adjust automatically
   D. implies that international trade is competitive
8. To keep the yuan-U.S. dollar exchange rate constant, _____.
   A. the Fed agrees not to sell U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market
   B. the People's Bank of China buys U.S. dollars
   C. the Fed and the People's Bank agree on the value of the exchange rate
   D. the Fed does not buy yuan in the foreign exchange market

Glossary

Ability-to-pay principle The proposition that people should pay taxes according to how easily they can bear the burden. (p. 206)

Absolute advantage When one person (or nation) is more productive than another—needs fewer inputs or takes less time to produce a good or perform a production task. (p. 73)

Adverse selection The tendency for people to enter into transactions that bring them benefits from their private information and impose costs on the uninformed party. (p. 295)

Aggregate demand The relationship between the quantity of real GDP demanded and the price level when all other influences on expenditure plans remain the same. (p. 750)

Aggregate planned expenditure Planned consumption expenditure plus planned investment plus planned government expenditure plus planned exports minus planned imports. (p. 770)

Aggregate supply The relationship between the quantity of real GDP supplied and the price level when all other influences on production plans remain the same. (p. 744)

Allocative efficiency A situation in which the quantities of goods and services produced are those that people *value most highly*—it is not possible to produce more of a good or service without giving up some of another good that people *value more highly*. (p. 141)

Antitrust law A law that regulates oligopolies and prohibits them from becoming monopolies or behaving like monopolies. (p. 473)

Asymmetric information A situation in which either the buyer or the seller has private information. (p. 292)

Automatic fiscal policy A fiscal policy action that is triggered by the state of the economy. (p. 824)

Automatic stabilizers Features of fiscal policy that stabilize real GDP without explicit action by the government. (p. 824)

Average cost pricing rule A rule that sets price equal to average total cost to enable a regulated firm to avoid economic loss. (p. 422)

Average fixed cost Total fixed cost per unit of output. (p. 357)

Average product Total product divided by the quantity of a factor of production. The average product of labor is total product divided by the quantity of labor employed. (p. 352)

Average tax rate The percentage of income that is paid in tax. (p. 197)

Average total cost Total cost per unit of output, which equals average fixed cost plus average variable cost. (p. 357)

Average variable cost Total variable cost per unit of output. (p. 357)

Balance of payments accounts The accounts in which a nation records its international trading, borrowing, and lending. (p. 872)

Balanced budget The budget balance when tax revenues equal outlays. (p. 818)

Balanced budget multiplier The magnification effect on aggregate demand of a *simultaneous* change in government expenditure and taxes that leaves the budget balanced unchanged. (p. 826)

Banking system The Federal Reserve and the banks and other institutions that accept deposits and provide the services that enable people and businesses to make and receive payments. (p. 692)

Barrier to entry Any constraint that protects a firm from competitors. (p. 340)

Barter The direct exchange of goods and services for other goods and services, which requires a double coincidence of wants. (p. 687)

Benefit The benefit of something is the gain or pleasure that it brings. (p. 9)

Benefits principle The proposition that people should pay taxes equal to the benefits they receive from public goods and services. (p. 206)

Big tradeoff A tradeoff between efficiency and fairness that recognizes the cost of making income transfers. (p. 159)

Black market An illegal market that operates alongside a government-regulated market. (p. 169)

Bond A promise to pay specified sums of money on specified dates. (p. 662)

Budget deficit The negative budget balance when outlays exceed tax revenues. (p. 818)

Budget line A line that describes the limits to consumption

possibilities and that depends on a consumer's budget and the prices of goods and services. (p. 316)

Budget surplus The positive budget balance when tax revenues exceed outlays. (p. 818)

Business cycle A periodic but irregular up-and-down movement of total production and other measures of economic activity. (p. 548)

Capital Tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other items that have been produced in the past and that businesses now use to produce goods and services. (pp. 35, 660)

Capital account Record of foreign investment in the United States minus U.S. investment abroad. (p. 872)

Capital goods Goods that are bought by businesses to increase their productive resources. (p. 32)

Capture theory The theory that regulation serves the self-interest of the producer and results in maximum profit, underproduction, and deadweight loss. (p. 420)

Cartel A group of firms acting together to limit output, raise price, and increase economic profit. (p. 456)

Central bank A public authority that provides banking services to banks and governments and regulates financial institutions and markets. (p. 697)

Ceteris paribus Other things remaining the same (often abbreviated as *cet. par.*). (p. 15)

Chained-dollar real GDP The measure of real GDP calculated by the Bureau of Economic Analysis. (p. 559)

Change in demand A change in the quantity that people plan to buy when any influence on buying plans other than the price of the good changes. (p. 88)

Change in the quantity demanded A change in the quantity of a good that people plan to buy that results from a change in the price of the good with all other influences on buying plans remaining the same. (p. 90)

Change in the quantity supplied A change in the quantity of a good that suppliers plan to sell that results from a change in the price of the good with all other influences on selling plans remaining the same. (p. 97)

Change in supply A change in the quantity that suppliers plan to sell when any influence on selling plans other than the price of the good changes. (p. 95)

Circular flow model A model of the economy that shows the circular flow of expenditures and incomes that result from decision makers' choices and the way those choices interact to determine what, how, and for whom goods and services are produced. (p. 46)

Classical growth theory The theory that the clash between an exploding population and limited resources will eventually bring economic growth to an end. (p. 646)

Classical macroeconomics The view that the market economy works well, that aggregate fluctuations are a natural consequence of an expanding economy, and that government intervention cannot improve the efficiency of the market economy. (p. 610)

Coase theorem The proposition that if property rights exist, only a small number of parties are involved, and transactions costs are low, then private transactions are efficient and the outcome is not affected by who is assigned the property right. (p. 248)

Command system A system that allocates resources by the order of someone in authority. (p. 139)

Commercial bank A firm that is chartered by the Comptroller of the Currency in the U.S. Treasury (or by a state agency) to accept deposits and make loans. (p. 692)

Common resource A resource that can be used only once, but no one can be prevented from using what is available. (p. 267)

Comparative advantage The ability of a person to perform an activity or produce a good or service at a lower opportunity cost than anyone else. (p. 74)

Complement A good that is consumed with another good. (p. 88)

Complement in production A good that is produced along with another good. (p. 95)

Constant returns to scale Features of a firm's technology that keep average total cost constant as output increases. (p. 364)

Consumer Price Index A measure of the average of the prices paid by urban consumers for a fixed market basket of consumption goods and services. (p. 586)

Consumer surplus The marginal benefit from a good or service in excess of the price paid for it, summed over the quantity consumed. (p. 147)

Consumption expenditure The expenditure by households on consumption goods and services. (p. 535)

Consumption function The relationship between consumption

expenditure and disposable income, other things remaining the same. (p. 770)

Consumption goods and services Goods and services that are bought by individuals and used to provide personal enjoyment and contribute to a person's quality of life. (p. 32)

Core inflation rate The annual percentage change in the PCE price index excluding the prices of food and energy. (p. 595)

Correlation The tendency for the values of two variables to move together in a predictable and related way. (p. 12)

Cost of living index A measure of the change in the amount of money that people need to spend to achieve a given standard of living. (p. 592)

Cost-push inflation An inflation that begins with an increase in costs. (p. 761)

Creditor nation A country that during its entire history has invested more in the rest of the world than other countries have invested in it. (p. 874)

Cross elasticity of demand A measure of the responsiveness of the demand for a good to a change in the price of a substitute or complement when other things remain the same. (p. 129)

Cross-section graph A graph that shows the values of an economic variable for different groups in a population at a point in time. (p. 22)

Crowding-out effect The tendency for a government budget deficit to raise the real interest rate and decrease investment. (p. 678)

Currency Notes (dollar bills) and coins. (p. 688)

Currency appreciation The rise in the value of one currency in terms of another currency. (p. 879)

Currency depreciation The fall in the value of one currency in terms of another currency. (p. 880)

Current account Record of receipts from the sale of goods and services to other countries (exports), minus payments for goods and services bought from other countries (imports), plus the net amount of interest and transfers received from and paid to other countries. (p. 872)

Cyclical surplus or deficit The budget balance that arises because revenues and outlays are not at their full-employment levels. (p. 825)

Cyclical unemployment The fluctuating unemployment over the business cycle that increases during a recession and decreases during an expansion. (p. 576)

Deadweight loss The decrease in total surplus that results from an inefficient underproduction or overproduction. (p. 155)

Debtor nation A country that during its entire history has borrowed more from the rest of the world than it has lent to the rest of the world. (p. 874)

Decreasing marginal returns When the marginal product of an additional worker is less than the marginal product of the previous worker. (p. 350)

Deflation A situation in which the price level is *falling* and the inflation rate is *negative*. (p. 589)

Demand The relationship between the quantity demanded and the price of a good when all other influences on buying plans remain the same. (p. 85)

Demand curve A graph of the relationship between the quantity demanded of a good and its price when all the other influences on buying plans remain the same. (p. 86)

Demand for labor The relationship between the quantity of labor demanded and the real wage rate when all other influences on firms' hiring plans remain the same. (p. 615)

Demand for loanable funds The relationship between the quantity of loanable funds demanded and the real interest rate when all other influences on borrowing plans remain the same. (p. 667)

Demand for money The relationship between the quantity of money demanded and the nominal interest rate, when all other influences on the amount of money that people wish to hold remain the same. (p. 718)

Demand-pull inflation An inflation that starts because aggregate demand increases. (p. 760)

Demand schedule A list of the quantities demanded at each different price when all the other influences on buying plans remain the same. (p. 86)

Depreciation The decrease in the value of capital that results from its use and from obsolescence. (p. 542)

Deregulation The process of removing regulation of prices, quantities, entry, and other aspects of economic activity in a firm or an industry. (p. 420)

Derived demand The demand for a factor of production, which is derived from the demand for the goods and services that it is used to produce. (p. 485)

Diminishing marginal rate of substitution The general tendency for the marginal rate of substitution to decrease as the consumer moves down along the indifference curve, increasing consumption of the good measured on the x-axis and decreasing consumption of the good measured on the y-axis. (p. 338)

Diminishing marginal utility The general tendency for marginal utility to decrease as the quantity of a good consumed increases. (p. 322)

Diminishing returns The tendency for each additional hour of labor employed to produce a successively smaller additional amount of real GDP. (p. 614)

Direct relationship A relationship between two variables that move in the same direction. (p. 24)

Discount rate The interest rate at which the Fed stands ready to lend reserves to commercial banks. (p. 699)

Discouraged worker A marginally attached worker who has not made specific efforts to find a job within the past four weeks because previous unsuccessful attempts to find a job were discouraging. (p. 566)

Discretionary fiscal policy A fiscal policy action that is initiated by an act of Congress. (p. 824)

Discretionary monetary policy Monetary policy that is based on expert assessment of the current economic situation. (p. 862)

Diseconomies of scale Features of a firm's technology that make average total cost rise as output increases. (p. 364)

Disposable income Market income plus cash benefits paid by the government minus taxes. (p. 524)

Disposable personal income Income received by households minus personal income taxes paid. (p. 543)

Duopoly A market with only two firms. (p. 456)

Dumping When a foreign firm sells its exports at a lower price than its cost of production. (p. 232)

Earnings sharing regulation A regulation that requires firms to make refunds to customers when profits rise above a target level. (p. 425)

Economic depreciation An opportunity cost of a firm using capital that it owns—measured as the change in the *market value* of capital over a given period. (p. 345)

Economic freedom A condition in which people are able to make personal choices, their private property is protected by the rule of law, and they are free to buy and sell in markets. (p. 650)

Economic growth The sustained expansion of production possibilities. (pp. 71, 634)

Economic growth rate The annual percentage change of real GDP. (p. 634)

Economic model A description of some feature of the economic world that includes only those features assumed necessary to explain the observed facts. (p. 12)

Economic profit A firm's total revenue minus total cost. (p. 345)

Economics The social science that studies the choices that individuals, businesses, government, and entire societies make as they cope with *scarcity*, the *incentives* that influence those choices, and the arrangements that coordinate them. (p. 2)

Economies of scale Features of a firm's technology that make average total cost fall as output increases. (p. 363)

Efficiency wage A real wage rate that is set above the full-employment equilibrium wage rate to induce greater work effort. (p. 625)

Efficient scale The quantity at which average total cost is a minimum. (p. 441)

Elastic demand When the percentage change in the quantity demanded exceeds the percentage change in price. (p. 114)

Elastic supply When the percentage change in the quantity supplied exceeds the percentage change in price. (p. 124)

Entrepreneurship The human resource that organizes labor, land, and capital to produce goods and services. (p. 36)

Equation of exchange An equation that states that the quantity of money multiplied by the velocity of circulation equals the price level multiplied by real GDP. (p. 729)

Equilibrium expenditure The level of aggregate expenditure that occurs when aggregate *planned* expenditure equals real GDP. (p. 778)

Equilibrium price The price at which the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied. (p. 99)

Equilibrium quantity The quantity bought and sold at the equilibrium price. (p. 99)

Excess burden The amount by which the burden of a tax exceeds the tax revenue received by the government—the deadweight loss from a tax. (p. 192)

Excess capacity The amount by which the efficient scale exceeds the quantity that the firm produces. (p. 441)

Excess reserves A bank's actual reserves minus its desired reserves. (p. 702)

Excludable A good, service, or resource is excludable if it is possible to prevent someone from enjoying its benefits. (p. 266)

Expected inflation rate The inflation rate that people forecast and use to set the money wage rate and other money prices. (p. 803)

Explicit cost A cost paid in money. (p. 345)

Export goods and services Goods and services that are produced in one country and sold in other countries. (p. 32)

Exports The goods and services that firms in one country sell to households and firms in other countries. (p. 214)

Exports of goods and services Items that firms in the United States produce and sell to the rest of the world. (p. 536)

Externality A cost or a benefit that arises from production and that falls on someone other than the producer; or a cost or benefit that arises from consumption and that falls on someone other than the consumer. (p. 242)

Factor markets Markets in which the services of factors of production are bought and sold. (pp. 46, 484)

Factor price The price of the services of the factors of production. The wage rate is the price of labor, the interest rate is the price of capital, and rent is the price of land. (p. 484)

Factors of production The productive resources that are used to produce goods and services—land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship. (p. 34)

Federal budget An annual statement of the revenues, outlays, and surplus or deficit of the government of the United States. (p. 818)

Federal funds rate The interest rate at which banks can borrow and lend reserves (interbank loans) in the federal funds market. (pp. 694, 846)

Federal Open Market Committee The Fed's main policy-making committee. (p. 698)

Federal Reserve System (The Fed) The central bank of the United States. (p. 697)

Fiat money Objects that are money because the law decrees or orders them to be money. (p. 688)

Final good or service A good or service that is produced for its final user and not as a component of another good or service. (p. 534)

Financial institution A firm that operates on both sides of the market for financial capital: It borrows in one market and lends in another. (p. 663)

Financial stability A situation in which financial markets and institutions function normally to allocate capital resources and risk. (p. 845)

Firms The institutions that organize the production of goods and services. (p. 46)

Fiscal policy Changing taxes, transfer payments, and government expenditure on goods and services. (p. 753) The use of the federal budget to achieve the macroeconomic objectives of high and sustained economic growth and full employment. (p. 818)

Fiscal stimulus An increase in government outlays or a decrease in tax revenues designed to boost real GDP and create or save jobs. (p. 823)

Fiscal year A year that begins on October 1 and ends on September 30. Fiscal 2013 begins on October 1, 2012. (p. 818)

Foreign exchange market The market in which the currency of one country is exchanged for the currency of another. (p. 879)

Foreign exchange rate The price at which one currency exchanges for another. (p. 879)

Four-firm concentration ratio The percentage of the total revenue in an industry accounted for by the four largest firms in the industry. (p. 434)

Free rider A person who enjoys the benefits of a good or service without paying for it. (p. 269)

Frictional unemployment The unemployment that arises from normal labor turnover—from people entering and leaving the labor force, from quitting jobs to find better ones, and from the ongoing creation and destruction of jobs. (p. 575)

Full employment When there is no cyclical unemployment or, equivalently, when all the unemployment is frictional or structural. (p. 576)

Full-employment equilibrium When equilibrium real GDP equals potential GDP. (p. 757)

Full-time workers People who usually work 35 hours or more a week. (p. 567)

Game theory The tool that economists use to analyze *strategic behavior*—behavior that recognizes mutual interdependence and takes account of the expected behavior of others. (p. 465)

GDP price index An average of the current prices of all the goods and services included in GDP expressed as a percentage of base-year prices. (p. 595)

Goods and services The objects (goods) and the actions (services) that people value and produce to satisfy human wants. (p. 3)

Goods markets Markets in which goods and services are bought and sold. (p. 46)

Government goods and services Goods and services that are bought by governments. (p. 32)

Government expenditure multiplier The effect of a change in government expenditure on goods and services on aggregate demand. (p. 826)

Government expenditure on goods and services The expenditure by all levels of government on goods and services. (p. 536)

Government sector balance Net taxes minus government expenditure on goods and services. (p. 876)

Great Depression A period of high unemployment, low incomes, and extreme economic hardship that lasted from 1929 to 1939. (p. 569)

Gross domestic product (GDP) The market value of all the final goods and services produced within a country in a given time period. (p. 534)

Gross investment The total amount spent on new capital goods. (p. 660)

Gross national product (GNP) The market value of all the final goods and services produced anywhere in the world in a given time period by the factors of production supplied by the residents of the country. (p. 543)

Herfindahl-Hirschman Index The square of the percentage market share of each firm summed over the 50 largest firms (or summed over all the firms if there are fewer than 50) in a market. (p. 435)

Horizontal equity The requirement that taxpayers with the same ability to pay should pay the same taxes. (p. 206)

Households Individuals or groups of people living together. (p. 46)

Household production The production of goods and services in the home. (p. 551)

Human capital The knowledge and skill that people obtain from education, on-the-job training, and work experience. (p. 35)

Hyperinflation Inflation at a rate that exceeds 50 percent a *month* (which translate to 12,875 percent a year). (p. 732)

Implicit cost An opportunity cost incurred by a firm when it uses a factor of production for which it does not make a direct money payment. (p. 345)

Import quota A quantitative restriction on the import of a good that limits the maximum quantity of a good that may be imported in a given period. (p. 227)

Imports The goods and services that households and firms in one country buy from firms in other countries. (pp. 54, 214)

Imports of goods and services Items that households, firms, and governments in the United States buy from the rest of the world. (p. 536)

Incentive A reward or a penalty—a "carrot" or a "stick"—that encourages or discourages an action. (p. 11)

Income elasticity of demand A measure of the responsiveness of the demand for a good to a change in income when other things remain the same. (p. 130)

Increasing marginal returns When the marginal product of an additional worker exceeds the marginal product of the previous worker. (p. 350)

Indifference curve A line that shows combinations of goods among which a consumer is *indifferent*. (p. 313)

Individual transferable quota (ITQ) A production limit that is assigned to an individual, who is free to transfer (sell) the quota to someone else. (p. 284)

Induced taxes Taxes that vary with real GDP. (p. 824)

Inelastic demand When the percentage change in the quantity demanded is less than the percentage change in price. (p. 114)

Inelastic supply When the percentage change in the quantity supplied is less than the percentage change in price. (p. 124)

Infant-industry argument The argument that it is necessary to protect a new industry to enable it to grow into a mature industry that can compete in world markets. (p. 231)

Inferior good A good for which demand decreases when income increases and demand increases when income decreases. (p. 89)

Inflationary gap A gap that exists when real GDP exceeds potential GDP and that brings a rising price level. (p. 757)

Inflation rate The percentage change in the price level from one year to the next. (p. 589)

Inflation targeting A monetary policy strategy in which the central bank makes a public commitment to achieving an explicit inflation target and to explaining how its policy actions will achieve that target. (p. 862)

Instrument rule A decision rule for monetary policy that sets the policy instrument by a formula based on the current state of the economy. (p. 848)

Interest Income paid for the use of capital. (p. 37)

Interest rate parity Equal interest rates—a situation in which the interest rate in one currency equals the interest rate in another currency when exchange rate changes are taken into account. (p. 890)

Intermediate good or service A good or service that is used as a component of a final good or service. (p. 534)

Inverse relationship A relationship between two variables that move in opposite directions. (p. 25)

Investment The purchase of new *capital goods*—tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and additions to inventories. (p. 535)

Job A contract between a firm and a household to provide labor services. (p. 484)

Job rationing A situation that arises when the real wage rate is above the full-employment equilibrium level. (p. 624)

Job search The activity of looking for an acceptable vacant job. (p. 623)

Keynesian macroeconomics The view that the market economy is inherently unstable and needs active government intervention to achieve full employment and sustained economic growth. (p. 610)

***k*-percent rule** A monetary policy rule that makes the quantity of money grow at *k* percent per year, where *k* equals the growth rate of potential GDP. (p. 863)

Labor The work time and work effort that people devote to producing goods and services. (p. 35)

Labor force The number of people employed plus the number unemployed. (p. 564)

Labor force participation rate The percentage of the working-age population who are members of the labor force. (p. 566)

Labor productivity The quantity of real GDP produced by one hour of labor. (p. 638)

Labor union An organized group of workers that aims to increase wages and influence other job conditions of its members. (p. 494)

Land The "gifts of nature," or *natural resources*, that we use to produce goods and services. (p. 34)

Law of decreasing returns As a firm uses more of a variable input, with a given quantity of fixed inputs, the marginal product of the variable input eventually decreases. (p. 352)

Law of demand Other things remaining the same, if the price of a good rises, the quantity demanded of that good decreases; and if the price of a good falls, the quantity demanded of that good increases. (p. 85)

Law of diminishing marginal returns If the quantity of capital is small, an increase in capital brings a large increase in production; and if the quantity of capital is large, an increase in capital brings a small increase in production. (p. 639)

Law of market forces When there is a surplus, the price falls; when there is a shortage, the price rises. (p. 99)

Law of supply Other things remaining the same, if the price of a good rises, the quantity supplied of that good increases; and if the price of a good falls, the quantity supplied of that good decreases. (p. 92)

Legal monopoly A market in which competition and entry are restricted by the granting of a public franchise, government license, patent, or copyright. (p. 401)

Lemons problem The problem that when it is not possible to distinguish reliable products from lemons, there are too many lemons and too few reliable products. (p. 292)

Linear relationship A relationship that graphs as a straight line. (p. 24)

Loanable funds market The aggregate of all the individual financial markets. (p. 666)

Long run The time frame in which the quantities of *all* resources can be varied. (p. 348)

Long-run average cost curve A curve that shows the lowest average total cost at which it is possible to produce each output when the firm has had sufficient time to change both its plant size and labor employed. (p. 364)

Long-run Phillips curve The vertical line that shows the relationship between inflation and unemployment when the economy is at full employment. (p. 802)

Lorenz curve A curve that graphs the cumulative percentage

of income (or wealth) against the cumulative percentage of households. (p. 509)

Loss Income earned by an entrepreneur for running a business when that income is negative. (p. 37)

M1 Currency held by individuals and firms, traveler's checks, and checkable deposits owned by individuals and businesses. (p. 688)

M2 M1 plus savings deposits and small time deposits, money market funds, and other deposits. (p. 688)

Macroeconomic equilibrium When the quantity of real GDP demanded equals the quantity of real GDP supplied at the point of intersection of the *AD* curve and the *AS* curve. (p. 756)

Macroeconomics The study of the aggregate (or total) effects on the national economy and the global economy of the choices that individuals, businesses, and governments make. (p. 3)

Malthusian theory Another name for classical growth theory—named for Thomas Robert Malthus. (p. 646)

Margin A choice on the margin is a choice that is made by comparing *all* the relevant alternatives systematically and incrementally. (p. 10)

Marginal benefit The benefit that arises from a one-unit increase in an activity. The marginal benefit of something is measured by what you *are willing to* give up to get *one additional* unit of it. (p. 10)

Marginal cost The opportunity cost that arises from a one-unit increase in an activity. The marginal cost of something is what you *must* give up to get one additional unit of it. (p. 10)

The marginal cost of producing a good is the change in total cost that results from a one-unit increase in output. (p. 356)

Marginal cost pricing rule A rule that sets price equal to marginal cost to achieve an efficient output. (p. 420)

Marginal external benefit The benefit from an additional unit of a good or service that people other than the consumer of the good or service enjoy. (p. 254)

Marginal external cost The cost of producing an additional unit of a good or service that falls on people other than the producer. (p. 244)

Marginally attached worker A person who does not have a job, is available and willing to work, has not made specific efforts to find a job within the previous four weeks, but has looked for work sometime in the recent past. (p. 566)

Marginal private benefit The benefit from an additional unit of a good or service that the consumer of that good or service receives. (p. 254)

Marginal private cost The cost of producing an additional unit of a good or service that is borne by the producer of that good or service. (p. 244)

Marginal product The change in total product that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of labor employed. (p. 350)

Marginal propensity to consume The fraction of a change in disposable income that is spent on consumption—the change in consumption expenditure divided by the change in disposable income that brought it about. (p. 772)

Marginal propensity to import The fraction of an increase in real GDP that is spent on imports—the change in imports divided by the change in real GDP. (p. 774)

Marginal rate of substitution The rate at which a person will give up good y (the good measured on the y-axis) to get more of good x (the good measured on the x-axis) and at the same time remain on the same indifference curve. (p. 338)

Marginal revenue The change in total revenue that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity sold. (p. 373)

Marginal social benefit The marginal benefit enjoyed by society—by the consumer of a good or service and by everyone else who benefits from it. It is the sum of marginal private benefit and marginal external benefit. (p. 254)

Marginal social cost The marginal cost incurred by the entire society—by the producer and by everyone else on whom the cost falls. It is the sum of marginal private cost and marginal external cost. (p. 244)

Marginal tax rate The percentage of an additional dollar of income that is paid in tax. (p. 197) The fraction of a change in real GDP that is paid in income taxes—the change in tax payments divided by the change in real GDP. (p. 784)

Marginal utility The change in total utility that results from a one-unit increase in the quantity of a good consumed. (p. 322)

Marginal utility per dollar The marginal utility from a good relative to the price paid for the good. (p. 324)

Market Any arrangement that brings buyers and sellers together and enables them to

get information and do business with each other. (p. 46)

Market demand The sum of the demands of all the buyers in a market. (p. 87)

Market equilibrium When the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied—buyers' and sellers' plans are in balance. (p. 99)

Market failure A situation in which the market delivers an inefficient outcome. (p. 155)

Market income A household's wages, interest, rent, and profit earned in factor markets before paying income taxes. (p. 508)

Market supply The sum of the supplies of all the sellers in the market. (p. 94)

Markup The amount by which price exceeds marginal cost. (p. 441)

Means of payment A method of settling a debt. (p. 686)

Median voter theory The theory that governments pursue policies that make the median voter as well off as possible. (p. 526)

Medium of exchange An object that is generally accepted in return for goods and services. (p. 687)

Microeconomics The study of the choices that individuals and businesses make and the way these choices interact and are influenced by governments. (p. 2)

Minimum wage law A government regulation that makes hiring labor services for less than a specified wage illegal. (pp. 175, 625)

Monetarist macroeconomics The view that the market economy works well, that aggregate fluctuations are the natural consequence of an expanding economy, but that fluctuations in the quantity of money generate the business cycle. (p. 611)

Monetary base The sum of coins, Federal Reserve notes, and banks' reserves at the Fed. (p. 699)

Monetary policy Changing the quantity of money and the interest rate. (p. 753)

Monetary policy instrument A variable that the Fed can directly control or closely target and that influences the economy in desirable ways. (p. 846)

Money Any commodity or token that is generally accepted as a means of payment. (p. 686)

Money income Market income plus cash payments to households by the government. (p. 508)

Money multiplier The number by which a change in the monetary base is multiplied to find the resulting change in the quantity of money. (p. 707)

Monopolistic competition A market in which a large number of firms compete by making similar but slightly different products. (p. 372)

Monopoly A market in which one firm sells a good or service that has no close substitutes and a barrier blocks the entry of new firms. (pp. 372, 400)

Moral hazard The tendency for a person with private information to use it in ways that impose costs on an uninformed party with whom they have made an agreement. (p. 301)

Multiplier The amount by which a change in any component of autonomous expenditure is magnified or multiplied to determine the change that it generates in equilibrium expenditure and real GDP. (p. 782)

Nash equilibrium An equilibrium in which each player takes the best possible action given the action of the other player. (p. 466)

National debt The amount of government debt outstanding—the debt that has arisen from past budget deficits. (pp. 50, 819)

Natural monopoly A monopoly that arises because one firm can meet the entire market demand at a lower average total cost than two or more firms could. (p. 400)

Natural rate hypothesis The proposition that when the inflation rate changes, the unemployment rate changes *temporarily* and eventually returns to the natural unemployment rate. (p. 804)

Natural unemployment rate The unemployment rate when the economy is at full employment. (p. 576)

Needs-tested spending Spending on programs that entitle suitably qualified people and businesses to receive transfer payments that vary with need and with the state of the economy. (p. 824)

Negative externality A production or consumption activity that creates an external cost. (p. 242)

Negative income tax A tax and redistribution scheme that provides every household with a guaranteed minimum annual income and taxes all earned income at a fixed rate. (p. 527)

Negative relationship A relationship between two variables that move in opposite directions. (p. 25)

Net borrower A country that is borrowing more from the rest of the world than it is lending to the rest of the world. (p. 874)

Net domestic product at factor cost The sum of wages, interest, rent, and profit. (p. 541)

Net exports of goods and services The value of exports of goods and services minus the value of imports of goods and services. (p. 536)

Net investment The change in the quantity of capital—equals gross investment minus depreciation. (p. 660)

Net lender A country that is lending more to the rest of the world than it is borrowing from the rest of the world. (p. 874)

Net taxes Taxes paid minus cash benefits received from governments. (p. 536)

Net worth The total market value of what a financial institution has lent minus the market value of what it has borrowed. (p. 664)

New growth theory The theory that our unlimited wants will lead us to ever greater productivity and perpetual economic growth. (p. 646)

Nominal GDP The value of the final goods and services produced in a given year expressed in terms of the prices of that same year. (p. 544)

Nominal GDP targeting A monetary policy rule that adjusts the interest rate to achieve a target growth rate for nominal GDP. (p. 865)

Nominal interest rate The dollar amount of interest expressed as a percentage of the amount loaned. (p. 602)

Nominal wage rate The average hourly wage rate measured in *current* dollars. (p. 600)

Nonexcludable A good, service, or resource is nonexcludable if it is impossible (or extremely costly) to prevent someone from enjoying its benefits. (p. 266)

Nonrenewable natural resources Natural resources that can be used only once and that cannot be replaced once they have been used. (p. 484)

Nonrival A good, service, or resource is nonrival if its use by one person does not decrease the quantity available to someone else. (p. 266)

Normal good A good for which demand increases when income increases and demand decreases when income decreases. (p. 89)

Normal profit The return to entrepreneurship. Normal profit is part of a firm's opportunity cost because it is the cost of not running another firm. (p. 345)

Official settlements account Record of the change in U.S. official reserves. (p. 872)

Okun's Law For each percentage point that the unemployment rate is above the natural unemployment rate, real GDP is 2 percentage points below potential GDP. (p. 797)

Oligopoly A market in which a small number of independent firms compete. (p. 372)

Open market operation The purchase or sale of government securities—U.S. Treasury bills and bonds—by the New York Fed in the open market. (p. 699)

Opportunity cost The opportunity cost of something is the best thing you *must* give up to get it. (p. 9)

Output gap Real GDP minus potential GDP expressed as a percentage of potential GDP. (p. 578)

Part time for economic reasons People who work 1 to 34 hours per week but are looking for full-time work and cannot find it because of unfavorable business conditions. (p. 567)

Part-time workers People who usually work less than 35 hours a week. (p. 567)

Payoff matrix A table that shows the payoffs for each player for every possible combination of actions by the players. (p. 466)

PCE price index An average of the current prices of the goods and services included in the consumption expenditure component of GDP expressed as a percentage of base-year prices. (p. 595)

Perfect competition A market in which there are many firms, each selling an identical product; many buyers; no barriers to the entry of new firms into the industry; no advantage to established firms; and buyers and sellers are well informed about prices. (p. 372)

Perfect price discrimination Price discrimination that extracts the entire consumer surplus by charging the highest price that consumers are willing to pay for each unit. (p. 416)

Perfectly elastic demand When the quantity demanded changes by a very large percentage in response to an almost zero percentage change in price. (p. 114)

Perfectly elastic supply When the quantity supplied changes by a very large percentage in response to an almost zero percentage change in price. (p. 124)

Perfectly inelastic demand When the percentage change in the quantity demanded is zero for any percentage change in the price. (p. 114)

Perfectly inelastic supply When the percentage change in the

quantity supplied is zero for any percentage change in the price. (p. 124)

Physical capital The tools, instruments, machines, buildings, and other items that have been produced in the past and that are used to produce goods and services. (p. 660)

Pooling equilibrium The outcome when only one message is available and an uninformed person cannot determine quality. (p. 297)

Positive externality A production or consumption activity that creates an external benefit. (p. 242)

Positive relationship A relationship between two variables that move in the same direction. (p. 24)

Potential GDP The value of real GDP when all the economy's factors of production—labor, capital, land, and entrepreneurial ability—are fully employed. (pp. 547, 578, 613)

Poverty A state in which a household's income is too low to be able to buy the quantities of food, shelter, and clothing that are deemed necessary. (p. 513)

Predatory pricing Setting a low price to drive competitors out of business with the intention of setting a monopoly price when the competition has gone. (p. 475)

Price cap A government regulation that places an upper limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded. (p. 168)

Price cap regulation A rule that specifies the highest price that a firm is permitted to set—a price ceiling. (p. 424)

Price ceiling A government regulation that places an *upper* limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded. (p. 168)

Price-discriminating monopoly A monopoly that sells different units of a good or service for different prices not related to cost differences. (p. 402)

Price elasticity of demand A measure of the responsiveness of the quantity demanded of a good to a change in its price when all other influences on buyers' plans remain the same. (p. 112)

Price elasticity of supply A measure of the responsiveness of the quantity supplied of a good to a change in its price when all other influences on sellers' plans remain the same. (p. 124)

Price floor A government regulation that places a *lower* limit on the price at which a particular good, service, or factor of production may be traded. (p. 174)

Price support A price floor in an agricultural market maintained by a government guarantee to buy any surplus output at that price. (p. 181)

Price taker A firm that cannot influence the price of the good or service that it produces. (p. 373)

Principle of minimum differentiation The tendency for competitors to make themselves identical to appeal to the maximum number of clients or voters. (p. 274)

Prisoners' dilemma A game between two prisoners that shows why it is hard to cooperate, even when it would be beneficial to both players to do so. (p. 465)

Private good A good or service that can be consumed by only one person at a time and only by the person who has bought it or owns it. (p. 266)

Private information Information relevant to a transaction that is possessed by some market participants but not all. (p. 292)

Private sector balance Saving minus investment. (p. 876)

Producer surplus The price of a good in excess of the marginal cost of producing it, summed over the quantity produced. (p. 150)

Product differentiation Making a product that is slightly different from the products of competing firms. (p. 432)

Production efficiency A situation in which the economy is getting all that it can from its resources. (p. 62)

Production function A relationship that shows the maximum quantity of real GDP that can be produced as the quantity of labor employed changes and all other influences on production remain the same. (p. 614)

Production possibilities frontier The boundary between the combinations of goods and services that can be produced and the combinations that cannot be produced, given the available factors of production and the state of technology. (pp. 60, 141)

Productivity curve The relationship that shows how real GDP per hour of labor changes as the quantity of capital per hour of labor changes. (p. 640)

Profit Income earned by an entrepreneur for running a business. (p. 37)

Progressive tax A tax whose average rate increases as income increases. (p. 197)

Property rights Social arrangements that govern the protection of private property—legally established titles to the ownership,

use, and disposal of factors of production and goods and services that are enforceable in the courts. (pp. 247, 650)

Proportional tax A tax whose average rate is constant at all income levels. (p. 197)

Public good A good or service that can be consumed simultaneously by everyone and from which no one can be excluded. (p. 267)

Public provision The production of a good or service by a public authority that receives most of its revenue from the government. (p. 256)

Purchasing power parity Equal value of money—a situation in which money buys the same amount of goods and services in different currencies. (p. 888)

Quantity demanded The amount of any good, service, or resource that people are willing and able to buy during a specified period at a specified price. (p. 85)

Quantity of labor demanded The total labor hours that all the firms in the economy plan to hire during a given time period at a given real wage rate. (p. 615)

Quantity of labor supplied The number of labor hours that all the households in the economy plan to work during a given time period at a given real wage rate. (p. 617)

Quantity of money demanded The amount of money that households and firms choose to hold. (p. 717)

Quantity supplied The amount of any good, service, or resource that people are willing and able to sell during a specified period at a specified price. (p. 92)

Quantity theory of money The proposition that when real GDP equals potential GDP, an increase in the quantity of money brings an equal percentage increase in the price level. (p. 728)

Rate of return regulation A regulation that sets the price at a level that enables a firm to earn a specified target rate of return on its capital. (p. 424)

Rational choice A choice that uses the available resources to best achieve the objective of the person making the choice. (p. 8)

Rational expectation The forecast resulting from use of all the relevant data and economic science. (p. 809)

Rational ignorance The decision not to acquire information because the marginal cost of doing so exceeds the marginal benefit. (p. 274)

Real business cycle A cycle that results from fluctuations in the pace of growth of labor productivity and potential GDP. (p. 759)

Real GDP The value of the final goods and services produced in a given year expressed in terms of the prices in a *base year*. (p. 544)

Real GDP per person Real GDP divided by the population. (pp. 547, 634)

Real interest rate The goods and services forgone in interest expressed as a percentage of the amount loaned and calculated as the nominal interest rate minus the inflation rate. (p. 602)

Real wage rate The average hourly wage rate measured in the dollars of a given reference base year. (p. 600)

Recession A period during which real GDP decreases for at least two successive quarters; or defined by the NBER as "a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and trade, usually lasting from six months to a year, and marked by contractions in many sectors of the economy." (p. 548)

Recessionary gap A gap that exists when potential GDP exceeds real GDP and that brings a falling price level. (p. 757)

Reference base period A period for which the CPI is defined to equal 100. Currently, the reference base period is 1982–1984. (p. 586)

Regressive tax A tax whose average rate decreases as income increases. (p. 197)

Regulation Rules administered by a government agency to influence prices, quantities, entry, and other aspects of economic activity in a firm or an industry. (p. 420)

Relative price The price of one good in terms of another good—an opportunity cost. It equals the price of one good divided by the price of another good. (p. 320)

Rent Income paid for the use of land (p. 37)

Rent ceiling A regulation that makes it illegal to charge more than a specified rent for housing. (p. 168)

Rent seeking Lobbying and other political activity that aims to capture the gains from trade. The act of obtaining special treatment by the government to create economic profit or divert consumer surplus or producer surplus away from others. (pp. 235, 411)

Required reserve ratio The minimum percentage of deposits that the Fed requires banks and other financial institutions to hold in reserves. (p. 693)

Resale price maintenance An agreement between a manufacturer and a distributor on the

price at which a product will be resold. (p. 473)

Reserves The currency in the bank's vaults plus the balance on its reserve account at a Federal Reserve Bank. (p. 693)

Rival A good, service, or resource is rival if its use by one person decreases the quantity available to someone else. (p. 266)

Rule of 70 The number of years it takes for the level of any variable to double is approximately 70 divided by the annual percentage growth rate of the variable. (p. 635)

Saving The amount of income that is not paid in net taxes or spent on consumption goods and services. (p. 536)

Scarcity The condition that arises because wants exceed the ability of resources to satisfy them. (p. 2)

Scatter diagram A graph of the value of one variable against the value of another variable. (p. 22)

Screening When an uninformed person creates an incentive for an informed person to reveal relevant private information. (p. 302)

Search activity The time spent looking for someone with whom to do business. (p. 170)

Self-interest The choices that are best for the individual who makes them. (p. 4)

Separating equilibrium The outcome when signaling provides full information to a previously uninformed person. (p. 297)

Short run The time frame in which the quantities of some resources are fixed. In the short run, a firm can usually change the quantity of labor it uses but not its technology and quantity of capital. (p. 348)

Short-run Phillips curve A curve that shows the relationship between the inflation rate and the unemployment rate when the natural unemployment rate and the expected inflation rate remain constant. (p. 796)

Shutdown point The point at which price equals minimum average variable cost and the quantity produced is that at which average variable cost is at a minimum. (p. 377)

Signal An action taken by an informed person (or firm) to send a message to less-informed people. (p. 448)

Signaling When an informed person takes an action that sends information to uninformed persons. (p. 296)

Single-price monopoly A monopoly that must sell each unit of its output for the same price to all its customers. (p. 402)

Slope The change in the value of the variable measured on the y-axis divided by the change in the value of the variable measured on the x-axis. (p. 27)

Social interest The choices that are best for society as a whole. (p. 4)

Social interest theory The theory that regulation achieves an efficient allocation of resources. (p. 402)

Stagflation A combination of recession (falling real GDP) and inflation (rising price level). (p. 761)

Standard of living The level of consumption of goods and services that people enjoy, *on average;* it is measured by average income per person. (p. 547)

Statistical discrepancy The discrepancy between the expenditure approach and the income approach estimates of GDP, calculated as the GDP expenditure total minus the GDP income total. (p. 542)

Stock A certificate of ownership and claim to the profits that a firm makes. (p. 662)

Store of value Any commodity or token that can be held and exchanged later for goods and services. (p. 687)

Strategies All the possible actions of each player in a game. (p. 466)

Structural surplus or deficit The budget balance that would occur if the economy were at full employment. (p. 825)

Structural unemployment The unemployment that arises when changes in technology or international competition change the skills needed to perform jobs or change the locations of jobs. (p. 575)

Subsidy A payment by the government to a producer to cover part of the cost of production. (pp. 181, 229, 257)

Substitute A good that can be consumed in place of another good. (p. 88)

Substitute in production A good that can be produced in place of another good. (p. 95)

Supply The relationship between the quantity supplied and the price of a good when all other influences on selling plans remain the same. (p. 92)

Supply curve A graph of the relationship between the quantity supplied of a good and its price when all the other influences on selling plans remain the same. (p. 93)

Supply of labor The relationship between the quantity of labor supplied and the real wage rate

when all other influences on work plans remain the same. (p. 617)

Supply of loanable funds The relationship between the quantity of loanable funds supplied and the real interest rate when all other influences on lending plans remain the same. (p. 669)

Supply of money The relationship between the quantity of money supplied and the nominal interest rate. (p. 720)

Supply schedule A list of the quantities supplied at each different price when all the other influences on selling plans remain the same. (p. 93)

Supply-side effects The effects of fiscal policy on potential GDP and the economic growth rate (p. 830)

Tariff A tax imposed on a good when it is imported. (p. 223)

Targeting rule A decision rule for monetary policy that sets the policy instrument at a level that makes the central bank's forecast of the ultimate policy goals equal to their targets. (p. 848)

Taxable income Total income minus a personal exemption and a standard deduction (or other allowable deductions). (p. 196)

Tax incidence The division of the burden of a tax between the buyer and the seller. (p. 190)

Tax multiplier The effect of a change in taxes on aggregate demand. (p. 826)

Tax wedge The gap created by a tax between what a buyer pays and what a seller receives. In the labor market, it is the gap between the before-tax wage rate and the after-tax wage rate. (p. 831)

Time-series graph A graph that measures time on the x-axis and the variable or variables in which we are interested on the y-axis. (p. 22)

Total cost The cost of all the factors of production used by a firm. (p. 355)

Total fixed cost The cost of the firm's fixed factors of production—the cost of land, capital, and entrepreneurship. (p. 355)

Total product The total quantity of a good produced in a given period. (p. 349)

Total revenue The amount spent on a good and received by the seller and equals the price of the good multiplied by the quantity of the good sold. (p. 120)

Total revenue test A method of estimating the price elasticity of demand by observing the change in total revenue that results from a price change (with all other influences on the quantity sold remaining unchanged). (p. 121)

Total surplus The sum of consumer surplus and producer surplus. (p. 153)

Total utility The total benefit that a person gets from the consumption of a good or service. Total utility generally increases as the quantity consumed of a good increases. (p. 322)

Total variable cost The cost of the firm's variable factor of production—the cost of labor. (p. 355)

Tragedy of the commons The overuse of a common resourcde that arises when its users have no incentivesto conserve it and use it sustainably. (p. 278)

Tradeoff An exchange—giving up one thing to get something else. (pp. 8, 63)

Transactions costs The opportunity costs of making trades in a market or conducting a transaction. (pp. 157, 248)

Transfer payments Social Security benefits, Medicare and Medicaid benefits, unemployment benefits, and other cash benefits. (p. 819)

Transfer payments multiplier The effect of a change in transfer payments on aggregate demand. (p. 826)

Trend A general tendency for the value of a variable to rise or fall over time. (p. 22)

Tying arrangement An agreement to sell one product only if the buyer agrees to buy another, different product. (p. 475)

Underground production The production of goods and services hidden from the view of government. (p. 551)

Unemployment rate The percentage of the people in the labor force who are unemployed. (p. 565)

Union wage A wage rate that results from collective bargaining between a labor union and a firm. (p. 625)

Unit elastic demand When the percentage change in the quantity demanded equals the percentage change in price. (p. 114)

Unit elastic supply When the percentage change in the quantity supplied equals the percentage change in price. (p. 124)

Unit of account An agreed-upon measure for stating the prices of goods and services. (p. 687)

U.S. interest rate differential The U.S. interest rate minus the foreign interest rate. (p. 882)

U.S. official reserves The government's holdings of foreign currency. (p. 872)

Utility The benefit or satisfaction that a person gets from the consumption of a good or service. (p. 322)

Utility-maximizing rule The rule that leads to the greatest total utility from all the goods and services consumed. The rule is: 1. Allocate the entire available budget. 2. Make the marginal utility per dollar equal for all goods. (p. 324)

Value of marginal product The value to a firm of hiring one more unit of a factor of production, which equals the price of a unit of output multiplied by the marginal product of the factor of production. (p. 485)

Velocity of circulation The average number of times in a year that each dollar of money gets used to buy final goods and services. (p. 728)

Vertical equity The requirement that taxpayers with a greater ability to pay bear a greater share of the taxes. (p. 207)

Voucher A token that the government provides to households, which they can use to buy specified goods or services. (p. 258)

Wages Income paid for the services of labor. (p. 37)

Wealth The value of all the things that people own. (p. 660)

Working-age population The total number of people aged 16 years and over who are not in jail, hospital, or some other form of institutional care or in the U.S. Armed Forces. (p. 564)

Index

Ability-to-pay principle, 206
Absolute advantage, 73, 74–76
Accounting, 344
Addictive substances, 122
Advanced economies, 39, 40, 41
Advanced Micro Devices (AMD), 471
Adverse selection, 295, 301, 305
Advertising
  brand name, 449
  markup and, 447
  in monopolistic competition, 449
  oligopoly and, 468–469
  quality signals in, 448–449
Age distribution, 577
Aggregate demand (AD), 750
  AS-AD model and, 744, 762
  changes in, 752–754
  cost-push inflation, 761
  demand-pull inflation and, 760
  equilibrium expenditure and, 788–789
  fiscal/monetary policy influencing, 753
  fiscal policy and, 824
  fluctuations in, 799
  foreign exchange rate influencing, 753–754
  multiplier in, 754
  potential GDP and, 836–837
  price levels and real GDP in, 750
  real business cycle and, 759
  real interest rates and, 751–752
  world economy influencing, 753–754
Aggregate demand curve, 751
Aggregate demand schedule, 751
Aggregate expenditures, **770**
  with consumption expenditure, 855
  decreases in, 859
  equilibrium expenditure and, 778–779
  equilibrium expenditures and, 778
  federal funds rate changing, 855
  government expenditure in, 826, 827
  increases in, 783, 857
  induced and autonomous expenditures in, 776
  model, 770, 780
  real GDP and, 776–777, 779, 782, 786
  real interest rates and, 857
  schedule, 776–777
Aggregate planned expenditures
  multiplier in, 782
  real GDP and, 776–777, 779, 782, 786
  real interest rates and, 857
Aggregate supply (AS), 744–748
  in *AS-AD* model, 744, 762
  changes in, 747–748
  cost-push inflation, 761
  demand-pull inflation and, 760
  money wage rate in, 747–748, 757
  real business cycle and, 759
  real GDP and, 744–745, 756
  recession from, 763
  short-run Phillips curve and, 797–799
Aggregate supply curve (AS curve), 745, 761
Aggregate supply schedule, 745
Agriculture
  price elasticity of demand in, 122
  price floor in, 181
  price support of, 181–183
Airbus, 460–462, 468, 470
Airline industry, 217, 415–418, 540
Airplanes, 217, 460–462
Air pollution, 251
Akerlof, George, 292, 309
Allocative efficiency, 141
AMD. *See* Advanced Micro Devices
American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, 200, 835
Andreeson, Marc, 647
Antitrust laws, 473
  merger rules and, 476–477
  Microsoft and, 475–476
  policy debates in, 473–475
  predatory pricing and, 475
  tying arrangements in, 475
  in United States, 475–476
AS-AD model, 762
  aggregate supply and demand in, 744, 762
  fiscal stimulus in, 827
  with goods and services, 744
Asset prices, 664
Asymmetric information, 292, 300, 305
Auto insurance, 302–303
Automatic fiscal policy, 824, 835
Automatic stabilizers, 824
Autonomous consumption, 770
Autonomous expenditures, 776
Average cost, 357–358
Average cost curve, 358
Average cost pricing, 422
Average cost pricing rule, 422
Average fixed cost, 357
Average fixed cost curve, 358
Average income
  education and, 518
  in global economy, 44
  United States and, 44
Average product, 352–353
Average tax rate, 197
Average total cost, 357, 365
Average total cost curve, 358, 359, 382, 406
Average variable cost, 357

Baby boomers, 820
Balanced budget, 818
Balanced budget multiplier, 826
Balance of payments account, 872–874
  international trading with, 872
  of United States, 872–873
Banking system, 692–695
  commercial banks in, 692–694
  Europe's creation of, 693
  Federal Reserve System in, 692
  monetary base and, 702

Banking system (*continued*)
money market funds and, 695
thrift institutions in, 695
Bank loans
federal funds rate and, 855
households and businesses receiving, 661
interest rates and, 852
money and, 854–857
Bank reserves
currency drain ratio and, 864
federal funds rate and, 856–857
in financial crisis, 850
market equilibrium in, 849
of United States, 892
Banks
deposits of, 692
excess reserves of, 702
investment, 663
liquid assets of, 694
loans by, 694
regional, 698
reserves of, 693
Barriers to entry, 400
business turnover and, 436
legal, 401–402
monopoly caused by, 400–401
in oligopoly, 456–458
ownership and, 401
Barro, Robert J., 678, 786, 823
Barter, 687
Base-year prices, 559
BEA. *See* Bureau of Economic Analysis
Benefits, 9. *See also* External benefits; Marginal benefits
of education, 15
marginal external/private/social, 254
marginal private, 254
marginal social, 280
private, 254–255
social, 254–255
welfare, 48
Benefits principle, 206
Bentham, Jeremy, 323, 332
Bernanke, Ben, 697, 708, 862, 864
Bias
commodity substitution, 593
in CPI, 592–593
CPI consequences of, 594
magnitude of, 593
of new goods, 592
outlet substitution, 593
quality change, 593
Big tradeoff, 159, 208, 525
Black market, 169, 170
Board of Governors, 698
Boeing, 460–462, 468, 470
Bond markets, 662
Bonds, 662
Borrowers, 874–875, 877
Boskin, Michael, 593
Bradbury, Katharine, 511
Brand names, 449
Break-even income, 375
Brin, Sergey, 520
Budget deficit, 818
business cycles with, 825
crowding out and, 834
demand for loanable funds and, 834
economic growth and, 837
in global economy, 822
of government loanable funds, 677–678
government obligations influencing, 820
Social Security and, 6
tax revenues and, 818–819, 834–836
of United States, 822
Budget line, 316–317
opportunity costs and, 319–320
PPF similar to, 317
prices and slope of, 319–320
Budgets, 317
Budget surplus, 676–677, **818**–819
Bureaucrats, 274–275
Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), 540, 559
Business cycle, 548, 759
with budget deficits, 825
phases of, 548–550
real, 759
turning points in, 786
in United States, 549
Business cycle theory, 763
Businesses
bank loans received by, 661
barriers to entry/turnover of, 436
in circular flow, 46
cost/profit accounting of, 344, 346
demand for labor curve of, 487–488
demand for labor of, 486
economic loss and, 388–389
economic policy of, 14
economic profit incentive of, 388, 407
economic profits goal of, 373
failures of, 746
market entry of, 387–388
market exit of, 388–389
monopolistic competition involving, 432
output prices of, 488
profit-maximizing decisions of, 374–377, 439
profits maximization goal of, 344
profits squeezed in, 746
retained earnings of, 666
short-run supply curve of, 378–379
shutdown decisions of, 377–378
Buyers
decisions and demands of, 292–295
e-cash used by, 690
exchange rates and, 888
markets for sellers and, 46, 84, 650
markup and, 441
number of, 89
price discrimination among, 414–415
price gouging and, 160
profit-maximizing decisions influencing, 438
self-interest of, 153
tax incidence and, 190–191
Buying power, 750–751

CAFTA. *See* Central American Free Trade Agreement
Capacity, excess, 441
Cap-and-trade. *See* Marketable pollution permits
Cap Executive Officer Pay Act of 2009, 179
Capital, 35, 42, 516–517, **660**. *See also* Human capital; Physical capital
accumulation, 639
in factors of production, 35
financial, 35, 520

human, 35, 42, 516–518
income, 199, 200
increasing, 640
interest cost of, 345
investment and, 661
markets, 497
natural resources and, 497–501
services, 484, 497
specialization of, 363
Capital account, 872
Capital goods, 32, 535
Capture theory, 420
Card, David, 177
Career choices, 45
Cartel, 456
global oil, 463
monopolies and, 461
oligopoly and, 456, 462
CBO. *See* Congressional Budget Office
Celler-Kefauver Act of 1950, 473–474
Cell phones, 66, 71, 445
Central American Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA), 223
Central bank, 697
Ceteris paribus, 28
Chained-dollar real GDP, 559, 561
Change in demand, 88–89, 389
income and, 89
influence of, 88–89, 101, 104
quantity demanded changes and, 90
Change in quantity demanded, 90
Change in supply, 95–96
influence of, 95–96, 102, 104
quantity supplied changes and, 97
Change in the quantity supplied, 97
Charter schools, 257, 259
Checks, 689
Circular flows, 46
federal government and, 50
with financial market, 537
in global economy, 52–53
government in, 48, 49
households and businesses in, 46
income and expenditure in, 537
in loanable funds market, 666
local/state governments and, 51
markets with, 46
model of, 46, 47
money flows and, 46–47
real flows and, 46–47
in United States economy, 535–536
Classical growth theory, 646
Classical macroeconomics, 610–611
Clayton Act of 1914, 473–474
Clean Air Act, 249, 250
Clean technologies, 251
Climate change, 6
Clinton, Bill, 52
Close substitutes, 400
Coase, Ronald, 248
Coase theorem, 248
Collusion, 432, 456, 468
Command system, 139
Commercial banks, 663, **692**
in banking system, 692–694
deposits of, 692
financial crisis stressing, 695
liquid assets of, 694
loans by, 694
net worth of, 694
profit and risk of, 693
reserves of, 693
securities sold by, 704
Commodities, 686
Commodity substitution bias, 593
Common resources, 267
efficient use of, 282–285
external costs and, 279–280
fishing/overfishing and, 280, 281
overuse of, 279–281
public goods and, 156
quotas and, 284
tragedy of the commons and, 278
Comparative advantage, 74
absolute advantage compared to, 74–76
in international trade, 214
national, 214
opportunity cost compared to, 74–76
Comparisons, relevant, 442
Competition, 409–412. *See also* Monopolistic competition; Perfect competition
Competitive markets, 84, 153
Complement, 88
Complement in production, 95–96
Compromise, 161
Computer programs, 540
Concentration measures, 436
Concentration ratios, 434
Confusion costs, 736–737
Congress
federal budget role of, 818
law-making time lag and discretion of, 828
monetary policy role of, 846
taxes and, 200
Congressional Budget Office (CBO), 578, 825
Constant inflation, 730
Constant returns to scale, 364
Consumer Price Index (CPI), 586
bias consequences in, 594
bias sources in, 592–593
calculating, 588–589
goods and services and, 586–590
inflation rate and, 590, 603
market basket and, 586–587
measure of, 596
real GDP and, 599–600
real value calculations of, 598
Consumers
budget changes of, 317
equilibrium, 339–340
externalities and, 259
facing monopolies, 425
in globalization, 219
income redistribution of, 527
in international trade, 215, 235
perfect competition and, 393
resource allocation and, 161
selling costs encountered by, 448
Consumer surplus, 147
decrease in, 226
demand and, 147
demand curve and, 331
international trade with, 225–226
price discrimination and, 414–415
rent ceilings and, 171–172
value and, 329
Consumption
economic growth and, 71
possibilities, 316–320
taxing, 652
Consumption expenditures, 535
aggregate demand multiplier and, 754
aggregate expenditure with, 855
disposable personal income influencing, 543
expenditure approach and, 539–540

Consumption (*continued*)
government expenditure influencing, 827
income changes and, 763, 852
induced expenditure and, 776
influences on, 773
multipliers and, 782–784
opportunity cost of, 669
PCE price index and, 595
real GDP increases influencing, 786, 826
taxes on, 831, 832
Consumption functions, 770
disposable income relationship in, 770–773
slope of, 772
in United States, 774
Consumption goods and services, 32, 586, 595, 601
Contests, 139
Copyright laws, 276, 402
Core inflation rate, 595, 845
Correlation, 12
Cost curve, 360, 361
Cost of living index, 592
Cost-push inflation, 761
Costs. *See also* External costs; Long-run costs; Marginal costs; Opportunity cost; Selling costs; Short-run costs; Total costs
average fixed, 357
average total, 357, 365
of education, 15
explicit, 345
fixed, 423
glossary of, 359
implicit, 345
interest, 345
marginal external/private/social, 244
private, 244, 279
profits and, 344, 346
social, 279–280
total fixed, 355
total variable, 355
transactions, 157, 248
zero marginal, 423
CPI. *See* **Consumer Price Index**
Credit cards, 689–690, 722
Credit easing, 699
Creditor nation, 874–875
Credit Unions, 695
Cross elasticity of demand, 129–130
Cross-section graphs, 22–23
Crowding out, 834
Crowding-out effect, 678
Currency, 688
desired holding of, 702
drain, 702
drain ratio, 702, 864
Currency appreciation, 879
Currency depreciation, 880
Current account, 872
Current account balance (CAB), 875, 877
Cyclical surplus or deficit, 825
Cyclical unemployment, 576

Dargay, Joyce, 121
Deadweight loss, 155
average cost pricing generating, 422
efficient equilibrium and, 281
monopolies and, 410–411, 425
monopolistic competition creating, 442
natural monopolies and, 420
overproduction and, 155
political process with, 273
pollution causing, 246
price support creating, 183
regulations causing, 157
rent ceilings and, 171
rent seeking and, 412
subsidies and, 229
tariffs and, 226
taxes causing, 191–192
underproduction causing, 155
in used car market, 296–297
Dealers' warranties, 296–297
DeBeers, 401
Debit cards, 690
Debtor nation, 874–875
Debts, 821
Decreasing marginal returns, 350
Deductibles, 302
Default risk, 671
Defense goods, 69
Defense spending, 69
Deflation, 589
Great Depression and, 762
historical, 590
inflation and, 590, 733
nominal GDP and, 599
DeLong, J. Bradford, 636
Demand, 85. *See also* Change in demand; Market demand; Price elasticity of demand
buyers decisions creating, 292–295
change in, 88–90, 101, 104, 389, 673
consumer surplus and, 147
cross elasticity of, 129–130
derived, 485
effective, 780
elastic, 114, 193
in foreign exchange market, 880
income elasticity of, 130–131
individual, 87, 326–327
inelastic, 114
law of, 85, 86, 103
in loanable funds market, 666–667
marginal revenue and, 404
market equilibrium and, 101–102
in markets, 294–295
nominal interest rates determined by, 720–721
in perfect competition, 374
perfectly elastic, 114, 193
perfectly inelastic, 114, 193
selling costs and, 447
supply and, 102–103
unit elastic, 114
for used cars, 292–293
in your life, 103
Demand curve, 86
aggregate, 751
consumer surplus and, 331
deriving, 340–341
elasticity and, 114, 117
individual's, 326–327
marginal benefits and, 146
Demand for dollars, 881–882
Demand for labor, 615
of businesses, 486
changes in, 488
in factor markets, 486
in labor markets, 615–616
labor unions increasing, 495
technology influencing, 488
Demand for labor curve, 487–488
Demand for loanable funds, 667
budget deficit and, 834
changes in, 668
Demand for money, 718
financial technology changing, 720
in long run, 725

nominal interest rates and, 718
opportunity cost and, 717–718
price levels in, 719
real GDP in, 719
Demand-pull inflation, 760
Demand schedule, 86
Demand-side effects, 830, 836–837
Demographic changes, in job search, 623
Deposits, 688
of commercial banks, 692
loans and, 701–702
Depreciation, 542
Deregulation, 420
Derived demand, 880
Derived demand, 485
Developing economies
emerging markets and, 39
global economy with, 39, 42
human capital in, 42
physical capital in, 43
production in, 41
Diminishing marginal rate of substitution, 338
Diminishing marginal utility, 322
Diminishing returns, 614
Discount rate, 699
Discouraged worker, 566
Discretionary fiscal policy, 824, 826, 828, 835
Discretionary monetary policy, 862
Discrimination, 519
Diseconomies of scale, 365
Diseconomies of scale, 364
Disposable income, 524, 670, 770–773
Disposable personal income, 543
Dissaving, 771
Diversity, 234
Division of labor, 13, 73, 350–351
Dollars
demand for, 881–882
Euro compared to, 879
exchange rate and, 887
in foreign exchange market, 881
marginal utility per, 324, 326
rise and fall of, 887
supply of, 884–885
United States foreign exchange, 881
Domestic markets, 181–182
Domestic production, 225
Dual mandate, 844
Dumping, 232
Duopolists' dilemma, 467–468
Duopoly, 456
Durable goods, 535

Earnings differences, 519
Earnings sharing regulation, 425
E-cash, 690
E-checks, 690
E-commerce, 154
Economic(s), 2, 4
accounting, 346
beginning of, 13
business' loss in, 388–389
core ideas of, 8
forecasting in, 828
health-care problems and, 305–306
Hong Kong's growth in, 72
mobility, 510–511
models, 12, 24–26
personal policy of, 14
policies in, 14
production possibility expansion in, 71
rational choices in, 8–9
real GDP and tracking of, 550
short run loss in, 384, 439
Smith, Adam, in, 13
as social science, 13
unemployment benefits investigations in, 12
voodoo, 836
zero profits in, 382, 440
Economic depreciation, 345
Economic freedom, 650–651
Economic growth, 71, 634
budget deficit and, 837
calculating, 634–635
consumption and, 71
countries varying degrees of, 653
education quality and, 652
in global economy, 653
goods and services and, 650–651
Hong Kong's, 72
incentive mechanisms creating, 651
inflation trends and, 758–759
international trade in, 652
perpetual motion and, 647–648
PPF and, 71
preconditions for, 650–651
with quantity of labor, 642–644
rate of, 634
research and development in, 652
rule of 70 and, 635
saving encouraging, 651–652
sources of, 643
standard of living influenced by, 648
taxes influencing, 833–834
theories of, 646–647
in U.S. economy, 758–759
Economic growth rate, 634
Economic inequality
discrimination and, 519
family/personal characteristics and, 520
financial capital and, 520
Economic investigations, 12
Economic profits, 345–346
business' goal of, 373
business incentive of, 388, 407
revenue concepts in, 373–374
in short run, 382–383
single-price monopoly and, 415
total revenue/total cost and, 375
zero, 382, 440
Economies of scale, 363, 365
Economy. *See also* Advanced economies; Developing economies; Global economy; United States
emerging market, 39
fiscal policy influencing, 837
government's rescue plan of, 678–679
information age, 5–6, 36
Keynesian view of, 823
mainstream view of, 823
money, 716
post-industrial, 45
real, 716
real GDP tracking of, 550
recession in, 763
of United States, 33, 45
United States circular flows in, 535–536
United States insurance markets in, 299
Education
abilities signaled through, 309
average income and, 518
costs and benefits of, 15

Education (*continued*)
economic growth and quality of, 652
external benefits of, 254–255
influencing income, 512
quality of, 259
United States economy and, 259, 518
Effective demand, 780
Efficiency
allocative, 141
common resources and, 282–285
market, 152–157
of minimum wage, 178–179
of monopolistic competition, 442
of monopoly, 410
of natural monopolies, 420–421
of oligopoly, 471
of perfect competition, 392–393
of price discrimination, 418
production, 62–63, 74–76, 141
of public goods, 272
of public provision, 256, 273
regulation, 420–421
of rent ceiling, 171–172
in resource allocation, 141–144
of taxes, 191–192
in used car market, 297
vouchers achieving, 258
zero marginal cost and, 423
Efficiency wage, **625**
Efficient equilibrium, 281
Efficient scale, **441**
Ehrlich, Paul, 501
Elastic demand, **114**, 193
Elasticity
addictive substances and, 122
of demand, 114, 193
demand curve and, 114, 117
marginal revenue and, 405–406
of supply, 124, 194
Elastic supply, **124**
Electronic Arts, 444
Emerging market economy, 39
Employment. *See also* Full employment
human capital in, 516–518
labor income taxes and, 198
labor market equilibrium determining, 492–493
labor unions influencing, 494–495
maximum, 844–845
minimum wage and, 175–179
part-time, 573
production efficiency and, 62
Social Security tax and, 202–203
taxes and, 198, 834–836
in United States, 34
Energy, 42. *See also* Natural resources
England, 278
Entrepreneurial ability, 520
Entrepreneurship, **36**, 520
Entry
barriers to, 400–402, 436, 456–458
of businesses, 387–388
legal barriers to, 401–402
monopolies causing barriers to, 400–401
of monopolistic competition, 433
ownership barriers to, 401
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 249, 251
Environmental Standards, 234. *See also* Pollution
Equation of exchange, **729**
Equilibrium. *See also* Market equilibrium
consumer, 339–340
convergence to, 779
efficient, 281
exchange rate, 886
forces creating, 100
full-employment, 757
in insurance markets, 301
of labor markets, 492–493, 618–619
in loanable funds market, 672–673
long-run, 386
macroeconomic, 756, 757
money market, 721, 726
Nash, 466, 468
in nonrenewable natural resources, 501
pooling, 297, 300, 301
in prisoners' dilemma, 466–467
rent seeking, 412
separating, 297
short run, 382, 383, 384
Equilibrium expenditure, 776–779, **778**
aggregate demand and, 788–789
aggregate expenditures and, 778
price levels influencing, 788–789
Equilibrium price, **99**
Equilibrium quantity, **99**
Euro, 879
Europe
banking system created in, 693
potential GDP in, 613
United States production compared to, 620
Eurozone, 863
Excess burden, **192**
Excess capacity, **441**
Excess reserves, **702**
Exchange rates
buyers and sellers with, 888
changes in, 854
dollars and, 887
equilibrium, 886
expectations of, 888
expected future, 882
in international finance, 879–893
monetary policy and, 890
pegging, 890
volatility of, 888
of yuan, 893
Excludable, **266**
Exit
of businesses, 388–389
of monopolistic competition, 433
Expected future exchange rate, 885
Expected inflation rate, **803**–804, 809
Expenditure approach, 539–540
Expenditures. *See also* Aggregate expenditures; Aggregate planned expenditures; Consumption expenditures
autonomous, 776
circular flows of income and, 537
of federal government, 50
GDP measured using, 539–540
goods and services, 776, 819, 835–836
government multiplier of, 786, 826
health care, 307–308
income equals, 536–537
induced, 776
of local/state governments, 51
in marketing, 445–446
multipliers in, 782–786
Explicit costs, **345**
Export of goods and services, **32**, 52, **536**
Exports, **214**
airplane, 217, 460–462
dumping of, 232

gains/losses from, 221
in international finance, 52–53
in international trade, 52, 214–215
market with, 217
price levels influencing, 752
producer surplus influenced by, 220
subsidies, 229
United States, 33, 215, 216, 217
United States influenced by, 880
voluntary restraints on, 229
External benefits
of college education, 254–255
government actions with, 256–258
marginal, 254
underproduction with, 255
External costs
common resources and, 279–280
governments and, 249–250
inefficiency with, 246
marginal, 244
output and, 245
pollution as, 245–246
Externalities, 156, **242**. *See also* Negative externalities
consumers and, 259
positive, 242–243
public health, 307
types of, 242
Eye on the Global Economy. *See also* Global economy
fishing/overfishing and, 280
global current account balance in, 877
global standard of livings in, 511, 553
health-care expenditures in, 308
Hong Kong's economic growth and, 72
inflation and unemployment in, 799
inflation targeting in, 863
international trade and, 54
ITQs in, 285
natural unemployment rate in, 624
oil/metal prices in, 500
OPEC oil cartel in, 463
potential GDP in, 613
PPP in, 889
price elasticities of demand in, 119
tax wedges in, 831
unemployment benefits in, 624
unemployment rate in, 570
United States budget in, 822
women in, 571
yuan in, 893
Eye on the Past. *See also* United States
banking creation in, 693
dollar and Euro in, 879
economics born in, 13
effective demand in, 780
England's commons in, 278
federal government debts and revenues in, 821
German hyperinflation in, 732
governments growth and, 52
income tax origins in, 204
inflation and deflation in, 590, 733
lighthouse as public good in, 268
natural rate hypothesis in, 805
production changes and, 34
real GDP per person in, 636
tragedy of the commons and, 278
unemployment rates in, 622
United States tariffs in, 223
United States wage rates in, 601
U.S. balance of payments in, 873
utility in, 323
Eye on the U.S. economy. *See also* Economy; United States
airline price discrimination in, 418
air pollution trends in, 251
consumption function in, 774
consumption goods and services in, 33
credit cards and money in, 722
cyclical or structural deficits in, 825
defense goods/services and, 69
earnings differences in, 519
e-commerce in, 154
economic growth in, 758–759
education in, 259, 518
federal minimum wage in, 627
financial crisis in, 695
government's rescue plan in, 678–679
health care in, 306
import/exports and, 215
information economy and, 36
insurance in, 299
interest rate decisions in, 848
invisible hand's influence in, 154
labor productivity growth in, 644
Lucas wedge in, 612
mergers in, 476–477
minimum wage in, 177
monopolistic competition and, 436
nominal GDP and, 599
Okun gap in, 612
oligopoly in, 458
population survey in, 567
production in, 33
relative prices in, 320
soda mergers in, 477
software in, 540
specialization and trade in, 73
taxes in, 196
Eye on Your Life
AS-AD model in, 762
comparative advantage and, 76
demand and supply in, 103
externalities in, 259
fiscal policy in, 837
foreign exchange transactions in, 893
free rider problem and, 276
GDP contributions in, 552
global economy and, 45
grade point averages in, 353
income redistribution in, 527
international trade and, 235
job choice/income prospects in, 499
labor market activity in, 578
loanable funds market in, 679
marginal utility theory and, 332
monetary policy influence in, 865
money creating in, 701
money holding in, 723
monopolies in, 425
multipliers in, 785
natural unemployment in, 627
payoff matrix in, 470
perfect competition and, 393
PPF and, 64
price ceilings/price floors and, 64
price elasticities of demand and, 131
resource allocation in, 161
selling costs and, 448
short-run tradeoff in, 811
signaling ability in, 309

Eye on Your Life (*continued*)
student's CPI in, 603
Tax Freedom Day in, 204
United States economy and, 45

Facebook, 36
Factor markets, 46, 484
capital markets in, 497
demand for labor curve in, 487–488
demand for labor in, 486
land markets in, 498
marginal product value in, 485–486
market income in, 508
natural resources in, 484
nonrenewable natural resources in, 501
services in, 484
Factor prices, 360–361, **484**
Factors of production, 34
capital in, 35
entrepreneurship in, 36
labor in, 35
land in, 34
prices and, 488
Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938, 627
Fairness
big tradeoff and, 159
of markets, 159
of minimum wage, 179
of monopolies, 411
of perfect competition, 393
of price gouging, 160
of rent ceilings, 172
of resource allocation, 161
rules of, 159
Fannie Mae. *See* Federal National Mortgage Association
Federal budget, 818
Congress' role in, 818
of fiscal 2012, 819–820
from Great Depression, 818
time line of, 819
of United States, 822, 825
Federal funds rate, 694, 846
aggregate expenditure changed by, 855
bank loans and, 855
bank reserves and, 856–857
Federal Reserve and, 846–847, 849–850
Federal government, 48
circular flows and, 50
expenditures/revenues of, 50, 821
historical debts and revenues of, 821
Social Security and Medicare obligations of, 820
Social Security provided by, 48, 50
taxes received by, 50
Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (Freddie Mac), 663
Federal minimum wage, 627
Federal National Mortgage Association (Fannie Mae), 663
Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC), 698, 846
Federal Reserve Act, 844–845
Federal Reserve System (the Fed), 697
actions and influence of, 853
alternative monetary policy strategies of, 862–865
banking system and, 692
Board of Governors of, 698
crisis measures of, 699
decision-making strategy of, 847–849
discount rate used by, 699
districts of, 697
expected inflation rate influenced by, 809
federal funds rate and, 846–847, 849–850
FOMC of, 698
full employment maintained by, 845, 860
Great Depression and, 864
inflation fought by, 858–859
interest rate decisions in, 848, 853
monetary policy of, 844–850, 860, 865
money creation by, 708–709
money supply changes by, 716, 727
open market operation used by, 699
policies toward Inflation, 811
policy tools of, 698–699
quantity of money changes of, 727
recession actions of, 856–857
regional banks of, 698
required reserve ratio used by, 698
securities bought by, 703–705
securities sold by, 706
structure of, 697–698
Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 477
Feige, Edgar L., 551
Feldstein, Martin, 836
Fiat money, 688
Final good or service, 534
Finance, 660
Financial capital
financial institutions using, 663–664
is not capital, 35
markets for, 661–662
physical capital compared to, 520, 660
taxes influence on, 833
Financial crisis
bank reserves in, 850
commercial banks under stress from, 695
financial stability in, 850
in global economy, 674
loanable funds market creating, 674
in United States, 695, 763
Financial institutions, 663–664
Financial markets
bond markets in, 662
circular flow with, 537
financial stability of, 845
loanable funds markets grouped with, 666
loan markets in, 661–662
stock markets in, 662
types of, 661
Financial stability, 845
in financial crisis, 850
of financial markets, 845
risk and, 845
Financial technology, 720
Firms, 46. *See also* Businesses
Fiscal policy, 753, 818
aggregate demand and, 824
automatic, 824, 835
discretionary, 824, 826, 828, 835
economy influenced by, 837
full employment involving, 818–819
goods and services and, 753

long-run, 837
potential GDP and, 832–833
in United States, 837
Fiscal stimulus, 823, 827
in *AS-AD* model, 827
demand and supply-side effects in, 836–837
for full employment, 827
recession ended by, 835
Fiscal year, 818
Fishing/overfishing, 280, 281
Fixed costs, 423
Fixed plant, 348
FOMC. *See* Federal Open Market Committee
Food Stamp program, 258, 523
Force, 140–141
Foreign exchange market, 879
aggregate demand influence in, 753–754
demand in, 880
intervention in, 890–891
law of demand in, 880–881
law of supply in, 883–884
market equilibrium and, 886
People's Bank of China in, 891–893
supply in, 883
transactions in, 893
U.S. dollars in, 881
Foreign exchange rate, 753–754, **879**
Foreign labor, 233
Four-firm concentration ratios, 434, 458
Freddie Mac. *See* Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation
Free lunch, 63–64
Free markets, 182
Free riders, 269, 276
Frictional unemployment, 575, 577
Friedman, Milton, 611, 863, 864
FTC. *See* Federal Trade Commission
Full employment, 576
above or below, 757
expected inflation rate with, 803–804
Federal Reserve maintaining, 845, 860
fiscal policy involving, 818–819
fiscal stimulus for, 827
government intervention for, 610–611
income tax and, 832
inflation and, 858–859
job rationing and, 624–625
Keynesian macroeconomics and, 610–611
in long run, 725–726
long-run Phillips curve and, 802
natural rate hypothesis with, 804
potential GDP and, 578, 613, 619, 830
price levels and, 729–730, 761
real wage rate at, 716, 780
restoring, 761, 830, 856
short-run Phillips curve and, 796–800
structural surplus or deficit with, 825
unemployment rate and, 810–811
Full-employment equilibrium, 757
Full-time workers, 567
Functional distribution of income, 37
Future income, 670–671, 773
Future prices, 96

Games, 470
Game theory, 465, 465–471
duopolists' dilemma and, 467–468
in oligopoly, 465
prisoners' dilemma and, 465–467
Gasoline prices, 121
Gates, Bill, 6, 36, 425, 520
GDP price index, 595
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), 223
General Motors, 390–391
The General Theory of Employment, Interest, and Money (Keynes), 610
Germany, 732
GHG. *See* Greenhouse gases
Gifts of nature, 34
Glass-Steagall Act of 1933, 663
Global economy
advanced economies in, 39, 40
average incomes in, 44
budget deficits in, 822
career choices in, 45
circular flows in, 52–53
current account balance in, 877
developing economies in, 39, 42
economic growth in, 653
energy in, 42
financial crisis in, 674
goods and services in, 39, 42
income distribution in, 43–44
inequalities in, 43–44
inflation targeting used in, 862–863
international trade in, 54
natural unemployment rate in, 624
potential GDP in, 613
poverty in, 43–44
PPP in, 889
price elasticity of demand in, 119
production in, 40
real GDP per person and, 653
standard of living in, 511, 550, 553
unemployment benefits in, 624
unemployment in, 799
unemployment rate in, 570
women in, 571
Globalization
consumers in, 219
international outsourcing and, 5
Global oil cartel, 463
Gokhale, Jagadeesh, 820
Goldsmith, Samuel, 693
Gold standard, 865
Gone with the Wind, 602
Goods
bias of new, 592
capital, 32, 535
classifying, 266–267
defense, 69
durable, 535
GDP and import of, 552
inferior, 89
nondurable, 535
normal, 89
price elasticity of demand and, 112–113, 131
price level measures of, 592–596
private/public, 266–267
property rights of, 650
service, 69
used, 540
Goods and services, 3
account balances and, 875
AS-AD model with, 744
consumption of, 32, 33, 535
CPI measure of, 586–590
economic growth and, 650–651
expenditure approach on, 539–540

Goods and services (*continued*)
expenditures on, 776, 819, 835–836
explanation of, 3–4
exports of, 32, 52, 536
fiscal and monetary policies and, 753
GDP and omitted, 551
GDP measurement of, 534–535
GDP price index and, 595
in global economy, 39, 42
GNP and, 543
gold standard and, 865
government expenditure multiplier on, 786, 826
governments purchasing, 32, 824
imports of, 536
Keynesian macroeconomics and, 610–611
money used for, 686–690
net exports of, 536, 875–876
nominal GDP value of, 544
physical capital and, 660–661
production of, 551–552
public, 830
quantity of money demanded for, 717
real GDP value of, 544, 613
real interest rates and, 602
standard of living value of, 547, 550, 552
tax wedges influencing, 831
United States deficits from, 6
United States producing, 33
value of money for, 725–726
velocity of circulation in, 728–729
Goods markets, 46
Goodwin, Phil, 121
Google, 423
Government. *See also* Federal government
aggregate expenditure and, 826, 827
agricultural price support of, 181–183
budget deficit and obligations of, 820
in circular flow, 48, 49
consumption expenditure and, 827
economic rescue plan of, 678–679
external benefits and, 256–258
external costs and, 249–250
federal, 48
full employment intervention by, 610–611
goods and services purchased by, 32, 824
growth of, 52, 275
import quotas imposed by, 228–229
Income distribution/redistribution by, 522–523
investments, 876
license, 402
loanable funds/budget deficit of, 677–678
loanable funds/budget surplus of, 676–677
loanable funds market involvement of, 676–678
outlay increases of, 594
productivity role of, 830
securities issued by, 694
state/local, 48, 51
subsidy from, 181–182, 422
tariff revenue of, 225
United States budget of, 876
Government expenditure multiplier, 786, **826**
Government expenditure on goods and services, 536
Government goods and services, 32
Government sector balance, 876
Grade point average (GPA), 64, 353
Graphs
axes of, 21
ceteris paribus used in, 28
cross-section of, 22–23
economic models using, 24–26
making, 21
origin of, 21
relationships/variables in, 21, 28, 29
time-series, 22–23
Great Depression, 569, 864
classical macroeconomics during, 610–611
deflation and, 762
effective demand during, 780
federal budget from, 818
Federal Reserve and, 864
inflation and unemployment during, 799
money creation and, 708–709
Greenhouse gases (GHG), 252
Greenspan, Alan, 668, 845
Gross domestic product (GDP), 534
expenditures measuring, 539–540
goods and services in, 534–535
goods and services omitted from, 551
import of goods and, 552
income measuring, 541–542
measuring, 539–545
personal contributions in, 552
production and income measures in, 543
Gross investment, 660
Gross national product (GNP), 543
Growth rate
economic, 634
real GDP per person and, 636

Hamermesh, Daniel, 177
Hanly, Mark, 121
Health, 552
Health care
economic problems in, 305–306
expenditures, 307–308
global expenditures in, 308
moral hazards in, 305–306
in other countries, 307–308
poverty and, 306–307
reform ideas in, 309
in United States, 306
vouchers in, 309
Health insurance, 305–306
Health Maintenance Organizations (HMO), 306
Henderson, Fritz, 390
Herfindahl-Hirschman index, 435, 458, 477
High-speed rail networks, 276
Hilfiger, Tommy, 438–439
HMO. *See* Health Maintenance Organizations
Hong Kong, 72
Horizontal equity, 206–207
Household production, 551
Households, 46
bank loans received by, 661
in circular flows, 46
credit cards used by, 722
income, 512, 527
mortgages for, 662
Housing market, 168

Human capital, 35, 648
in developing economies, 42
in employment, 516–518
expansion of, 640–641
high/low skilled labor as, 516–517
technology and, 641–642
Hyperinflation, 732, 738
Illegal hiring, 176
Illiquidity, 664

Implicit costs, 345
Import quotas, 227
government imposing, 228–229
influence of, 227–229
international trade and, 227–229
producer surplus and, 227–229
profits from, 229
Imports, 214
gains/losses from, 220
of goods, 552
multiplier of income taxes and, 784
policy barriers of, 229
price levels influencing, 752
producer surplus influenced by, 220
real GDP and, 774
United States, 33, 215, 216, 217
United States influenced by, 883
Imports of goods and services, 536
Incentive mechanisms, 651
Incentives, 11
Income
break-even, 375
capital, 199, 200
change in demand and, 89
circular flows of expenditure and, 537
consumption expenditure and changes in, 763, 852
disposable, 524, 670
economic mobility and, 510–511
education influencing, 512
expected future, 89
expenditure equals, 536–537
functional distribution of, 37
future, 670–671, 773
GDP measured using, 541–542
GDP measures of production and, 543
household, 512, 527
inequality, 510
labor, 198
land, 199, 201
maintenance programs, 522
market, 508
money, 508
personal distribution of, 37, 43
price elasticity of demand and, 119
profit, 541
prospects for, 499
rent, 37, 201
taxable, 196
from taxes, 196–197
from wages, 37, 541
Income distribution
in global economy, 43–44
by governments, 522–523
Income elasticity of demand, 130–131
Income redistribution
of consumers, 527
by governments, 522–523
income maintenance programs for, 522
income taxes for, 522
negative income tax and, 527
normative theories of, 525
positive theories of, 526
poverty and, 526
scale of, 523–524
subsidized services and, 523
Income taxes, 196–197
full employment and, 832
income redistribution through, 522
labor income and, 198
labor markets influenced by, 832
from land, 199, 201
multiplier of imports and, 784
negative, 527
origins of, 204
personal, 196–197
in United States, 204
Increasing marginal returns, 350
Indifference curve, 337–341
marginal rate of substitution in, 338
preference map of, 337–338
Individual demand, 87, 326–327
Individual supply, 94
Individual transferable quota (ITQ), 284, 285
Induced expenditures, 776
Induced taxes, 824
Industrial Revolution, 636, 780
Inefficiency
with external costs, 246
in insurance markets, 301
of minimum wage, 178–179
of monopoly, 410
production, 62–63, 74–76, 141
of rent ceiling, 171–172
Inelastic demand, 114
Inelastic supply, 124
Inequalities, 43–44, 510. *See also* Economic inequality
Infant-industry argument, 231
Inferior goods, 89
Inflation
confusion costs in, 736–737
constant, 730
cost of, 735–738
cost-push, 761
cycles of, 760–761
deflation and, 590, 733
demand-pull, 760
economic growth trends of, 758–759
Federal Reserve fighting, 858–859
Federal Reserve policies toward, 811
full employment and, 858–859
in global economy, 799
during Great Depression, 799
historical, 590
money growth and, 731
price levels and, 797–798
quantity theory of money and, 730–731, 733
shoe-leather costs of, 736
taxes as, 735–736
uncertainly costs of, 737
Inflationary gap, 757, 760, 845
Inflation rate, 589
adjusting, 730
core, 595, 845
CPI and, 590, 603
expected, 803–804, 809
Federal Reserve influencing, 809
fluctuations in, 809
with full employment, 803–804
measures of, 595–596
unemployment and, 796, 799, 804–805, 807

Inflation rate (*continued*)
unemployment rate relationship with, 802–807
in United States, 589–590
Inflation targeting, 862–863
Information age economy, 5–6, 36
Information revolution, 5
Insolvency, 664
Instrument rule, 848
asymmetric information in, 300
auto, 302–303
companies, 663
deductibles in, 302
health, 305–306
life, 299
markets, 299–303
no-claim bonus in, 302
unemployment, 299
in United States economy, 299
Insurance markets, 299–303
inefficient pooling equilibrium in, 301
screening in, 302
in United States, 299
Intel Corporation, 471
Interest, 37, 345, 541
Interest payments, 50
Interest rate parity, 890
Interest rates
adjusting, 721, 722–723
asset prices and, 664
bank loans and, 852
Federal Reserve decisions on, 848, 853
holding money and, 723
long-term, 854
monetary policy changes in, 852
money and, 717–723
short-term, 854
as tax wedge, 834
unemployment influenced by, 860
United States changes in, 854, 882, 885
United States decisions on, 848
Intermediate good, 540
Intermediate good or service, 534
International finance
balance of payments accounts in, 872–874
borrowers and lenders in, 874–875, 877
current account balances in, 875
demand for dollars in, 881–882
exchange rates in, 879–893
exports in, 52–53
foreign exchange demand in, 880–881
foreign exchange supply in, 883–884
market equilibrium in, 886–888
net exports in, 875–877
People's Bank of China and, 891–893
PPP in, 888–889
supply of dollars in, 884–885
International Monetary Fund, 550
International outsourcing, 5
International trade
balance of payments account with, 872
comparative advantage in, 214
consumer/producers in, 215, 235
with consumer/producer surplus, 225–226
in economic growth, 652
exports in, 52, 214–215
in global economy, 54
import quotas and, 227–229
protection/restriction arguments of, 231–235
regulations in, 229
restrictions to, 223–229, 234–235
slump in, 54
of United States, 52–53, 214
Inverse relationships, 25
Investment banks, 663
Investments, 535
capital and, 661
government, 876
net, 660
physical capital and, 638–642
Invisible hand, 153, 154
iPhone, 41
ITQ. *See* Individual transferable quota

Japan, 862
Jevons, William Stanley, 323, 332
Job(s), 484
choices, 499
rationing, 626
Job rationing, 624–625
Job search, 623
activity, 176
demographic changes in, 623
structural change in, 624
unemployment benefits and, 623
wages and, 625–626
Jolie, Angelina, 201

Katz, Jane, 511
Keynes, John Maynard, 499, 610, 780
Keynesian macroeconomics, 610, 770
full employment and, 610–611
goods and services in, 610–611
Keynesian view, 823
Kimberly-Clark, 469
Kotlikoff, Laurence, 309
K-percent rule, 863
Kremer, Michael, 636
Krueger, Alan, 177
Krugman, Paul, 611, 823
Kydland, Finn E., 610

Labor, 35. *See also* Demand for labor
division of, 13, 73, 350–351
in factors of production, 35
foreign, 233
high/low skilled, 516–517
income, 198
income taxes from, 198
skill differentials/wage rates of, 517
specialization of, 73
supply of, 617
in United States, 35, 60, 492
Labor force, 564
categories of, 565
participation of, 618
unemployment rate in, 565
Labor force participation rate, 566
Labor market equilibrium
employment determined by, 492–493
quantity of labor and, 744
Labor markets
activity and status in, 578
demand for labor in, 615–616
equilibrium of, 492–493, 618–619
income tax influencing, 832
indicators in, 564–567
labor supply influences on, 490, 491–492
labor unions in, 494–495
participation rate in, 571
with price floor, 183

school/training in, 492
supply of labor in, 617
unemployment rate in, 569–570
wage rate in, 490, 492, 516–518
wages and, 492
Labor productivity, 638
growth in, 642–643, 644
physical capital and, 638–642
real GDP and, 644
United States growth in, 644
Labor unions, 494
demand for labor increased by, 495
employment influenced by, 494–495
in labor markets, 494–495
wages and, 494–495
Laffer, Arthur, 834, 836
Land, 34
in factors of production, 34
income taxes from, 199, 201
market for, 498
as natural resources, 34, 484
Law-maker discretion, 828
Law-making time lag, 828
Law of decreasing returns, 352
Law of demand, 85, 86, 103, 880–881
Law of diminishing marginal returns, 639–640
Law of market forces, 99–100
Law of supply, 92, 103, 377, 883–884
Legal barriers to entry, 401–402
Legal monopolies, 401
Leisure time, 551, 618
Lemons problem, 292–297
Lenders, 874–875
Lew, Jacob, 200
Life expectancy, 552
Life insurance, 299
Lighthouse, 268
Linear relationships, 24
Liquid assets, 694
Loanable funds market, 666
circular flows in, 666
demand in, 666–667
equilibrium in, 672–673
financial crisis created in, 674
financial markets grouped with, 666
government budget deficit in, 677–678
government budget surplus in, 676–677
government involved in, 676–678
savings and, 679
supply changes in, 671
supply in, 669–670
Loans
by banks, 694
deposits by making, 701–702
market for, 661–662
Local governments, 48, 51
Long run, 348, 363–372
demand for money in, 725
excess capacity and, 441
full employment in, 725–726
markup in, 441
money market in, 725–726
output/price/profit in, 440
plant size and cost in, 363–365
variable plant and, 348
zero economic profit in, 382, 440
Long-run average cost curve, 364–365
Long-run costs, 363
Long-run equilibrium, 386
Long-run fiscal policy, 837
Long-run Phillips curve, 802, 803
Long-term interest rates, 854
Long-term real interest rates, 855, 860
Lorenz curve, 509
disposable income and, 524
in United States, 509, 511
Lottery, 140
Lucas, Robert E., 612, 823
Lucas wedge, 612

M1, 688–689
M2, 688–689
Macroeconomic equilibrium, 756, 757
Macroeconomics, 3
classical, 610–611
Keynesian, 610–611, 770
monetarist, 611
nominal and real values in, 599
Mainstream economic view, 823
Majority rule, 139
Malthusian theory, 646
Margin, 10
Marginal analysis, 376–377
Marginal benefits, 10–11, 142
demand curve and, 146
marginal costs equal to, 142–143, 152–153
of public good, 270–271
rational choices and, 11
Marginal cost curve, 358, 406
Marginal cost pricing rule, 420–421
Marginal costs, 10, 356
average cost and, 357
marginal benefits equal to, 142–143, 152–153
natural monopolies pricing and, 420–421
of public goods, 270
short-run cost and, 356
supply and, 149
zero, 423
Marginal external benefits, 254
Marginal external costs, 244
Marginally attached worker, 566
Marginal private benefits, 254
Marginal private costs, 244
Marginal product, 350
average product and, 352–353
curve, 486
in factor markets, 485–486
total product and, 350, 351
value of, 485–486, 493, 516
Marginal propensity to consume (MPC), 772–773, 783–784
Marginal propensity to import, 774
Marginal rate of substitution, 338–339
Marginal returns, 350–352, 639
Marginal revenue, 373
curve, 404
demand and, 404
elasticity and, 405–406
in perfect competition, 373–374
price and, 404–405
total revenue and, 404–405
Marginal social benefits, 280
Marginal social benefits, 254
Marginal social costs, 244
Marginal tax rate, 197, 784
Marginal utility, 322–327
diminishing, 322
theory, 322–327, 332
total utility and, 323, 325, 329
Marginal utility per dollar, 324, **326**
Market(s), 46. *See also* Factor markets; Labor markets
for airplanes, 217, 460–462

Market(s) (*continued*)
alternatives to, 157
black, 169, 170
bond, 662
businesses entering, 387–388
businesses exiting, 388–389
buyers and sellers in, 46, 84, 650
capital, 497
for capital services, 484, 497
with circular flow, 46
competitive, 84, 153
demand in, 294–295
domestic, 181–182
economic freedom and, 650–651
efficient, 152–157
emerging, 39
with exports, 217
failure, 156–157
fairness of, 159
for financial capital, 661–662
free, 182
goods, 46
housing, 168
insurance, 299–303
for land, 498
loan, 661–662
scarce resources and prices in, 138
stock, 662
structure, 435
supply and demand in, 294–295
types of, 372
in used cars, 296, 297
Marketable pollution permits, 250, 252
Market demand, 87
Market equilibrium, 99
in bank reserves, 849
demand/supply changes influencing, 101–102
fishing/overfishing and, 281
foreign exchange and, 886
in international finance, 886–888
law of market forces and, 99–100
price influencing, 99–100
tax incidence and, 191–192
Market failure, 155
Market forces, law of, 99–100
Market income, 508
Marketing, 432–433, 445–446
Market price, 541
Market supply, 94
curve, 381, 491
in short run, 381
Market value, 534
Markup, 441, 447
Marriage tax penalty, 207–208
Maximum employment, 844–845
Maximum/minimum points, 26
Means of payment, 686
Median voter theory, 526
Medicaid, 306, 309, 523
Medicare, 306, 309, 820
Medium of exchange, 687
Merger rules, 476–477
Metal prices, 500
MFA. *See* Multifiber Arrangement
Microeconomics, 2
Microsoft, 36, 423, 425, 475–476
Midpoint method, 112–113
Mill, John Stuart, 610
Minimum differentiation, principle of, 274
Minimum wage
efficiency/inefficiency of, 178–179
employment and, 175–179
fairness of, 179
federal, 627
illegal hiring and, 176
job-search activity and, 176
law, 175–176
unemployment created by, 175, 177
in United States, 177, 627
Minimum wage law, 175, 625
Mishkin, Frederic S., 862
Monetarist macroeconomics, 611
Monetary base, 699
banking system and, 702
money multiplier and, 707–709, 864
open market operations changing, 703–704, 706–707
Monetary policy, 753
aggregate demand influenced by, 753
alternative strategies in, 862–865
Congress' role in, 846
discretionary, 862
exchange rate and, 890
of Federal Reserve, 844–850, 860, 865
Federal Reserve's alternative strategies of, 862–865
goods and services and, 753
individuals influenced by, 865
inflation targeting in, 862–863
interest rate changes in, 852
objectives of, 844–845
responsibilities for, 846
of United States, 846
Monetary policy instrument, 846
Money, 660
bank loans and, 854–857
buying power of, 750–751
defining, **686**
e-cash as, 690
economy, 716
Federal Reserve System changes and, 716, 727
Federal Reserve System's creation of, 708–709
fiat, 688
flows, 46–47
functions of, 686–687
for goods and services, 686–690
holding of, 717–718, 723
income, 508
individuals role in creating, 701
inflation and growth of, 731
interest rates and, 717–723
measures of, 688–689
prices, 748
quantity of, 864
regulating quantity of, 701–709
supply of, 720
in United States, 722
value of, 725–726
Money income, 508
Money market
equilibrium, 721, 726
funds, 695
in long run, 725–726
Money multiplier, 707–709, 864
Money wage rate, 747–748, 757
Monopolies, 156, **372, 400.** *See also* Natural monopolies
barriers to entry causing, 400–401
buying/creating, 411
cartels and, 461
causes of, 400
close substitutes and, 400
competition and, 409–412
consumers facing, 425

deadweight loss and, 410–411, 425
efficiency/inefficiency of, 410
fairness of, 411
Gates and, 425
legal, 401
markets, 372
natural resources and, 401
oligopoly and, 372, 460–461
output/price decisions of, 406, 409
price-discriminating, 402
price-setting strategies of, 402
profit-maximizing output/price of, 407
profits maximized by, 156, 407
regulation of, 420–425
rent seeking creating, 411–412
single-price, 402, 404–407, 415
Monopolistic competition, 372
advertising in, 449
businesses involved in, 432
concentration measures in, 436
deadweight loss created in, 442
efficiency of, 442
entry/exit in, 433
four-firm concentration ratios and, 434
Herfindahl-Hirschman index and, 435, 436
identifying, 433
output/prices in, 432–433, 438
perfect competition and, 441
product differentiation in, 432, 442
quality price and marketing in, 432–433
United States economy and, 436
Moore, Gordon, 6
Moral hazard, 301, 305–306
Mortgage
-backed securities, 662
for households, 662
lenders, 663
Moulton, Brent, 540
MP3 players, 191–193
MPC. *See* **Marginal propensity to consume**
Multifiber Arrangement (MFA), 233
Multiplier effect, 706–707
Multipliers, 782, 785
in aggregate demand, 754
in aggregate planned expenditures, 782
balanced budget, 826
consumption expenditure and, 782–784
in expenditures, 782–786
government expenditure, 786, 826
imports and income taxes with, 784
money, 707–709, 864
MPC and, 783–784
open market operations and effect of, 706–707
size of, 783
slope with, 785
tax, 826
transfer payments, 826
Murphy, Kevin, 177

NAFTA. *See* North American Free Trade Agreement
Nash, John, 466
Nash equilibrium, 466, 468
National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER), 548, 550
National comparative advantage, 214
National debt, 50, 819
National security, 231
Natural monopolies, 267, **400**
average cost pricing of, 422
deadweight loss and, 420
efficient regulation of, 420–421
marginal cost pricing in, 420–421
price cap regulations and, 424–425
second-best regulation of, 421–425
Natural oligopoly, 456–457
Natural rate hypothesis, 805
Natural rate hypothesis, 804
Natural resources
capital and, 497–501
in factor markets, 484
land as, 34, 484
monopolies and, 401
population growth influencing, 501
renewable, 378–379
supply of, 499–500
Natural unemployment, 576
Natural unemployment rate, 622–626, 627, 802
changes in, 805–806
in global economy, 624
job rationing increasing, 626
tradeoff and, 806–807
unemployment benefits and, 577
NBER. *See* National Bureau of Economic Research
Needs-tested spending, 824
Negative externalities, 242
Coase theorem and, 248
pollution as, 244–252
Negative income tax, 527
Negative relationships, 25
Net borrower, 874–875, 877
Net domestic product at factor cost, 541
Net exports of goods and services, 536, 875–877
Net investment, 660
Net lender, 874–875
Net operating surplus, 541
Net taxes, 536
Net worth, 664, 694
New growth theory, 646–647
Nintendo, 126
No-claim bonus, 302
Nominal GDP, 544, 599–600
calculating, 545
deflation and, 599
goods and services value expressed by, 544
real GDP and, 544
in United States, 599
Nominal interest rates, 602–603
demand and supply determining, 720–721
demand for money and, 718
Nominal values, 599
Nominal wage rate, 600–601
Nondurable goods, 535
Nonexcludable, 266
Nonrenewable natural resources, 484, 499–501
Nonrivals, 266
Normal goods, 89
Normal profits, 345–346
Normative statements, 13
Normative theories of income redistribution, 525
North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 223
Nozick, Robert, 159, 525

Obama, Barack, 835
Obama Affordable Care Act, 309
Official settlements account, 872
Oil prices, 500

Okun, Arthur B., 612, 797
Okun gap, 612
Okun's Law, 797
Oligopoly, 372, 456
advertising and, 468–469
barriers to entry in, 456–458
cartel dilemma and, 456, 462
collusion and, 456
duopolists' dilemma in, 467
efficiency of, 471
four-firm concentration ratios and, 458
game theory in, 465
Herfindahl-Hirschman index and, 458
identifying, 458
interdependence in, 456
monopoly outcome in, 372, 460–461
natural, 456–457
research games in, 468–469
in United States economy, 458
OPEC. *See* Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries
Open market operations, 699
Federal Reserve using, 699
monetary base changed by, 703–704, 706–707
money multiplier process with, 707–709
multiplier effect of, 706–707
Operation twist, 699
Opportunity cost, 9–10
budget line slope is, 319–320
of cell phones, 66
comparative advantage compared to, 74–76
of consumption expenditure, 669
demand for money and, 717–718
PPF slope and, 67
ratios in, 67
search activity and, 170
Orange prices, 122
Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), 463
Origin (of graphs), 21
Outlet substitution bias, 593
Output
business prices of, 488
changing rate of, 746
external costs and, 245
gaps in, 757
long run, 440
monopolies/price decisions of, 406, 409
in monopolistic competition, 432–433, 438
prices and, 406–407, 409
profit-maximizing, 407
Output gap, 578, 579, 845
Overproduction, 155, 274
Ownership barriers to entry, 401

Page, Larry, 520
Part-time employment, 573
Part time for economic reasons, 567
Part-time workers, 567
Patent, 402
Payoff matrix, 466–470
PCE price index, 595
Pension funds, 663
People's Bank of China, 891–893
Perfect competition, 372
consumers and, 393
demand/price/revenue in, 374
efficiency of, 392–393
fairness of, 393
marginal revenue and, 373–374
monopolistic competition and, 441
outcome of, 461
price taker in, 373
supply decisions in, 376–377
technological change in, 360
Perfectly elastic demand, 114, 193
Perfectly elastic supply, 124, 194
Perfectly inelastic demand, 114, 193
Perfectly inelastic supply, 124, 194
Perfect price discrimination, 416–417
Perpetual motion, 647–648
Personal characteristics, 140, 520
Personal Consumption Expenditure deflator (PCE deflator), 845
Personal Consumption Expenditure price index. *See* PCE price index
Personal contributions, 552
Personal distribution of income, 37, 43
Personal economic policy, 14
Personal income taxes, 196–197
Phelps, Edmund S., 805
Phillips, A. W. (Bill), 799
Phillips curve
long-run, 802, 803
short-run, 797–799
uses of, 800
Physical capital, 43, 520, **660**
in developing economies, 43
financial capital compared to, 520, 660
goods and services and, 660–661
investments and, 638–642
labor productivity and, 638–642
Pizza, 143–150
Plant size, 363–365
Policy
debates, 473–475
decisions, 652
tools, 698–699
Political freedom, 552
Political process, 273
Political support, 172
Pollution
air, 251
clean technologies and, 251
Coase theorem and, 248
deadweight loss caused by, 246
external costs of, 245–246
limits, 249
marketable permits for, 250, 252
as negative externalities, 244–252
standard of living and, 551
tax on, 249–250
in United States, 251
Pooling equilibrium, 297, 300, 301
Population growth, 501, 577
Population survey, 564, 567
Positive externalities, 242–243
Positive relationships, 24
Positive statements, 13
Positive theories of income redistribution, 526
Post-industrial economy, 45
Potential GDP, 547, 578, 613
aggregate demand and, 836–837
changes in, 747
estimating, 828
in European Union and United States, 613
fiscal policy and, 832–833
full employment and, 578, 613, 619, 830

in global economy, 613
per person, 548
real GDP and, 762, 858–859
of United Kingdom, 831
of United States, 548, 613, 831
Poverty, 513
duration of, 514
entrepreneurial ability and, 520
global inequity and, 43–44
health care and, 306–307
income redistribution and, 526
in United States, 513–514
PPF. See Production possibilities frontier
PPP. *See* Purchasing power parity
Predatory pricing, 232, **475**–476
Preferences, 89, 492
Prescott, Edward C., 610, 831
Price(s)
budget line slope of, 319–320
businesses output, 488
changes in, 318
factors of production and, 488
future, 96
gouging, 160
index measures of, 595–596
long run, 440
marginal revenue and, 404–405
market equilibrium influenced by, 99–100
Microsoft, 423
in monopolistic competition, 432–433, 438
output and, 406–407, 409
percent change in, 112
in perfect competition, 374
predatory, 232
predicting changes in, 100
regulations, 156
of resources, 96
support, 181–183
Price cap regulation, **424**–425
Price ceiling, 64, **168**, 183
Price-discriminating monopoly, 402
Price discrimination
in airline industry, 415–418
among buyers, 414–415
consumer surplus and, 414–415
efficiency and, 418
profiting by, 415–416
Price elasticity of demand, 112, 119, 131
in agriculture, 122
applying, 122
calculating, 116–118
food spending and, 119
gasoline prices and, 121
in global economy, 119
goods and, 112–113, 131
income and, 119
influences on, 114–116
interpreting, 117
midpoint method in, 112–113
price change in, 112, 116
quantity demanded changes and, 113–114
ranges of, 115
total revenue and, 120–121
Price elasticity of supply, 124
calculating, 126–127
influences on, 124–126
range of, 125
Price floor, 174
in agriculture, 181
labor market with, 183
price ceiling and, 64
unemployment caused by, 181
wage rates and, 174
Price levels, 728, 746
aggregate demand and, 750
in demand for money, 719
equilibrium expenditure depends on, 788–789
exports and imports influenced by, 752
full employment and, 729–730, 761
goods and measures of, 592–596
inflation and, 797–798
Price-setting strategies, 402
Price stability, 858–859
Price support, 181
Price survey, 587
Price taker, 373
Principle of minimum differentiation, 274
Prisoners' dilemma, 465
equilibrium in, 466–467
game theory and, 465–467
payoffs of, 466
rules of, 465
strategies of, 466
Private benefits, 254–255
Private contracts, 594
Private costs, 244, 279
Private goods, 266
Private information, 292
Private property, 282–283
Private provision, 272
Private sector balance, 876
Procter & Gamble, 469
Producer surplus, 150
import quotas influencing, 227–229
imports/exports influencing, 220
international trade and, 225–226
rent ceilings and, 171–172
supply and, 150
tariffs influencing, 224–226
taxes and, 192
total surplus and, 153
Product
curve, 360, 361
development, 444
differentiation, 442, 445
Product differentiation, 432
Production. *See also* Factors of production; Overproduction; Underproduction
in advanced economies, 41
changes in, 34
complement in, 95–96
in developing economies, 41
domestic, 225
efficient/inefficient, 62–63, 74–76, 141
Europe and United States compared, 620
factor prices of, 360–361, 488
GDP measures of income and, 543
in global economy, 40
of goods and services, 551–552
household, 551
public provisions and, 273
quotas, 283
short-run, 349–353
substitute in, 95
technological change in, 389–392
in United States economy, 33
value, 560
Production efficiency, 62
Production function, 614–615
Production possibilities frontier (*PPF*), 60–61, **141**
attainable/unattainable combinations in, 62
budget line similar to, 317

Production (*continued*)
economic growth and, 71
efficient/inefficient production in, 62–63, 74–76, 141
opportunity costs and slope of, 67
tradeoffs/free lunches in, 63–64
Productivity, 73, 96, 830
Productivity curve, 640
Profit-maximizing decisions, 374–377, 439
buyers influenced by, 438
quantity of labor in, 616
Profit-maximizing output, 407
Profits, 37. *See also* Economic profits
businesses and, 746
businesses maximizing, 344
of commercial banks, 693
cost and, 344, 346
entrepreneurship seeking, 36
import quota bringing, 229
income, 541
long run, 440
maximizing, 423, 444
monopolies maximizing, 156, 407
normal, 345–346
price discrimination for, 415–416
shutdown decisions and, 377–378
taxes on, 199
zero economic, 382, 440
Progressive tax, 197, 207
Property rights, 247, 282–283, **650**
Proportional tax, 197
Protection, arguments for, 231–235
Public franchise, 401–402
Public goods, 156, 267, **268**, 830
common resources and, 156
efficient quantities of, 272
lighthouse as, 268
marginal benefit of, 270–271
marginal cost of, 270
Public goods and services, 830
Public health, 307
Public provisions, 256
with efficient outcome, 256, 273
overproduction and, 274
private subsidy compared to, 257
production and, 273
Purchasing power parity (PPP), 550, **888**–889

QE. *See* Quantitative Easing
Quality
advertising signals of, 448–449
change bias, 593
of education, 259, 652
in monopolistic competition, 432–433
Quantitative Easing (QE), 699
Quantity demanded, 85, 90, 113–114
Quantity of labor
economic growth with, 642–644
labor market equilibrium and, 744
production function in, 614–615
profit-maximizing, 616
real wage rate and, 626, 745–746, 780, 804, 830
tax wedge influencing, 831
unemployment and, 797
Quantity of labor demanded, 615
Quantity of labor supplies, 617
Quantity of loanable funds demanded, 666
Quantity of loanable funds supplied, 669
Quantity of money, 727
Quantity of money demanded, 717
Quantity supplied, 92, 97
Quantity theory of money, 728–731, 733
Quantity theory prediction, 729–730
Quotas. *See also* Import quotas
common resources and, 284
production, 283

Rate of return regulation, 424
Rational choices, 8–9, 11
Rational expectation, 809
Rational ignorance, 274–275
Rawls, John, 525
Reagan, Ronald, 52, 69, 834, 836
Real business cycle, 759
Real economy, 716
Real flows, 46–47
Real GDP, 544
aggregate demand and, 750
aggregate planned expenditures and, 776–777, 779, 782, 786
aggregate supply and, 744–745, 756
calculating, 544–545, 560–561
chained-dollar, 559
consumption expenditure and increases in, 786, 826
CPI and, 599–600
in demand for money, 719
economic tracking of, 550
goods and services value of, 544, 613
imports and, 774
labor productivity and, 644
measuring, 559–561
nominal GDP and, 544
potential GDP and, 762, 858–859
production function and, 614–615
unemployment and, 577–578, 797
Real GDP per person, 547, 634
global economy and, 653
growth rate and, 636
historical, 636
rule of 70 applied to, 635
in United States, 548, 553
Real interest rates, 602–603, 773
aggregate demand and, 751–752
aggregate planned expenditures and, 857
goods and services and, 602
long-term, 855, 860
taxes and, 834
Real values
CPI calculations of, 598
nominal values and, 599
Real wage rate, 577, **600–601**
at full employment, 716, 780
quantity of labor and, 626, 745–746, 780, 804, 830
Recession, 548, 570
from aggregate supply, 763
in economy, 763
Federal Reserve taking actions against, 856–857
fiscal stimulus ending, 835
of United States, 763
Recessionary gap, 757, 825, 827, 845
Reference base period, 586
Regressive tax, 197
Regulations, 420
deadweight loss caused by, 157
earnings sharing, 425
efficient, 420–421
in international trade, 229
of monopoly, 420–425
of natural monopolies, 421–425
price, 156
price cap, 424–425
rate of return, 424
second-best, 421–425
Relationships
disposable income, 770–773
inflation rate, 802–807

inverse/negative, 25
linear, 24
maximum/minimum points in, 26
output gap's, 579
positive, 24
slope of, 27
variables in, 21, 28, 29
Relative price, **320**, 560
Relevant comparisons, 442
Renewable resources, 278–279, 378–379
Rent, **37**, 541
Rent ceilings, **168**, 169
black market and, 169, 170
consumer/producer surplus and, 171–172
deadweight loss and, 171
efficiency/inefficiency of, 171–172
fairness of, 172
political support for, 172
shortages created by, 169
Rent income, 37, 201
Rent seeking, **235**, **411**
deadweight loss and, 412
equilibrium, 412
monopolies created by, 411–412
Repeated games, 470
Required reserve ratio, **693**, 698
Resale price maintenance, 473
Resale price maintenance, **473–474**
Research and development, 652
Research games, 468–469
Reserves, **693**
Resource allocation
command system and, 139
consumers and, 161
contests and, 139
efficiency in, 141–144
fairness of, 161
first-come first-served and, 139–140
force used in, 140–141
lotteries in, 140
majority rule and, 139
methods of, 138–141
personal characteristics in, 140
Resources, 96. *See also* Common resources; Natural resources; Nonrenewable natural resources; Scarce resources
Restarts, 746
Retained earnings, 666
Revenue. *See also* Marginal revenue; Total revenue
economic profits and concepts of, 373–374
of federal government, 50, 821
of local/state governments, 51
in perfect competition, 374
from tariffs, 225
Ricardo, David, 610, 678
Ricardo-Barro effect, 678
Risk
of commercial banks, 693
default, 671
financial stability and, 845
Rivals, **266**
Robinson-Patman Act of 1936, 473–474
Rodriguez, Alex, 15
Romer, Christina, 786, 823
Rule of 70, **635**
Running shoes, 448

Saban, Nick, 493
Sala-i-Martin, Xavier, 44
Saving, **536**, 660
economic growth from, 651–652
loanable funds market and, 679
Savings and loan association, 695
Savings bank, 695
Say, Jean-Baptiste, 780
Say's Law, 780
Scarce resources, 138
Scarcity, **2**
Scatter diagrams, **22–23**
Schwartz, Anna J., 864
Scientific method, 12
Screening, **302–303**
Search activity, **170**
Securities
commercial banks selling, 704
Federal Reserve System buying, 703–705
Federal Reserve System selling, 706
government issuing, 694
mortgage-backed, 662
Self-interest, **4–5**, 153
Sellers
decisions, 294
exchange rates and, 888
markets for buyers and, 46, 84, 650
price gouging and, 160
self-interest of, 153
tax incidence and, 190–191
Selling costs
consumers encountering, 448
demand and, 447
total costs and, 446
Separating equilibrium, **297**
Service goods, 69
Services. *See* Goods and services
7-Eleven, 365
Shepperson, John, 160
Sherman Act, 473–474
Shoe-leather costs, of inflation, 736
Shortage, 169
Short run, **348**
economic loss in, 384, 439
economic profit in, 382–383
equilibrium/bad times, 384
equilibrium/good times, 383
equilibrium/normal times, 382
market supply in, 381
Short-run costs
average cost and, 357–358
curve, 360
marginal cost and, 356
in total costs, 355–356
Short-run Phillips curve, **796**, 803
aggregate supply and, 797–799
full employment and, 796–800
uses of, 800
Short-run production, 349–353
Short-run supply curve, 378–379
Short-run tradeoff, 811
Short-term interest rates, 854
Shutdown decisions, of businesses, 377–378
Shutdown point, **377**
Signal, **448**
Signaling, **296**
Simon, Julian, 501
Single-price monopoly, **402**, 404–407, 415
Slope, **27**
calculating, 27
of consumption function, 772
with multiplier, 785
PPF, 67
prices and budget line, 319–320
of relationships, 27
Smetters, Kent, 820
Smith, Adam, 13, 73, 153, 329, 610, 780

Smoot-Hawley Act, 223
Smoothie bars, 74–76, 355–358
Social benefits, 254–255
Social costs, 279–280
Social interest, 4–5
Social interest theory, 420
Social justice, 552
Social science, 12, 13
Social Security
  budget deficits and, 6
  federal government obligation of, 820
  federal government providing, 48, 50
  programs, 6, 48, 522
  tax, 196, 200, 202–203
Soda mergers, 477
Software, 540
Song downloads, 330–331
Specialization
  of capital, 363
  of labor, 73
  productivity gains from, 73
  trade gains from, 76–77
Spence, Michael, 309
SSI. *See* Supplemental Security Income program
Stability, 234, 845, 850, 858–859
Stable prices, 844–845
Stagflation, 761
Standard of living, 547
  economic growth influencing, 648
  in global economy, 511, 550, 553
  goods and services value in, 547, 550, 552
  influences on, 552
  pollution and, 551
Startups, 746
State governments, 48, 51
Statistical discrepancy, 542
Stiglitz, Joseph, 309
Stock, 662
Stock markets, 662
Store of value, 687
Strategies, 466
Structural change, 577, 624
Structural surplus or deficit, 825
Structural unemployment, 575, 577
Subsidies, 156, **181, 229**, 232, **257**
  deadweight loss and, 229
  export, 229
  farmers receiving, 181–182
  from governments, 181–182, 422
  private, 257
Subsidized services, 523
Substitute in production, 95–96
Substitutes, 88, 114
Supplemental Security Income program (SSI), 523
Supply, elasticity of, 194
Supply, 92. *See also* Change in supply; Market supply; Price elasticity of supply
  change in, 95–97, 102, 104, 673
  decisions, 376–377
  demand and, 102–103
  elastic/inelastic, 124, 194
  Federal Reserve changes in money, 716
  in foreign exchange market, 883–884
  individual, 94
  of labor, 617
  law of, 92, 103, 377, 883–884
  in loanable funds market, 669–670
  loanable funds market changes of, 671
  marginal costs and, 149
  market equilibrium and, 101–102
  in markets, 294–295
  of money, 720
  of natural resources, 499–500
  nominal interest rates determined by, 720–721
  perfectly elastic, 124, 194
  perfectly inelastic, 124, 194
  producer surplus and, 150
  unit elastic, 124
  of used cars, 294–295
  in your life, 103
Supply curve, 93, 103
Supply of dollars, 884–885
Supply of labor, 617
Supply of loanable funds, 669
Supply of money, 720
Supply schedule, 93
Supply-side effects, 830, 834–837
Surplus.
  budget, 676–677, 818–819
  cyclical, 825
  net operating, 541
  structural, 825
  total, 153
Sustainable use, 278–279

TANF. *See* Temporary Assistance for Needy Families
Targeting rule, 848
Tariffs, 223
  deadweight loss and, 226
  governmental revenue from, 225
  producer surplus influenced by, 224–226
  in United States, 223
Taxable income, 196
Taxes, 156
  on capital income, 199, 200
  change in rate of, 832
  Congress and, 200
  on consumption, 652
  on consumption expenditure, 831, 832
  deadweight loss caused by, 191–192
  decreases in, 594
  economic growth influenced by, 833–834
  efficiency of, 191–192
  employment and, 198, 834–836
  federal government receiving, 50
  financial capital influenced by, 833
  income from, 196–197
  inflation as, 735–736
  land income and, 199, 201
  local/state governments receiving, 51
  on pollution, 249–250
  producer surplus and, 192
  on profits, 199
  progressive, 197, 207
  real interest rates and, 834
  Social Security, 196, 200, 202–203
  in United States, 196
Tax Foundation, 204
Tax Freedom Day, 204
Tax incidence, 190
  buyers and sellers with, 190–191
  elasticity of demand and, 193
  elasticity of supply and, 194
  market equilibrium and, 191–192
Tax multiplier, 826
Tax revenues, 818–819, 834–836

Tax wedge, 831
goods and services influenced by, 831
interest rates as, 834
quantity of labor influenced by, 831
Taylor, John, 786, 823, 848
Taylor Rule, 848
Technology
clean, 251
demand for labor influenced by, 488
financial, 720
human capital and, 641–642
perfect competition and, 360
production changes of, 389–392
short-run cost curve and, 360
Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF), 523, 526
Temporary shutdowns, 746
Third World debt crisis, 875
Thrift institutions, 695
Time-series graphs, 22–23
Token, 686
Total costs, 355
average, 357, 365
average curve of, 358, 359, 382, 406
curve, 356
selling costs and, 446
short-run costs in, 355–356
total revenue/economic profit and, 375
Total fixed costs, 355
Total product, 349–351
Total revenue, 120
marginal revenue and, 404–405
orange prices and, 122
price elasticity of demand and, 120–121
total cost/economic profit and, 375
Total revenue test, 121
Total surplus, 153
Total utility, 322
marginal utility and, 323, 325, 329
maximizing, 324–326
Total variable costs, 355
Trade gains, 76–77
Tradeoffs, 8, 63–64, 69, 806–807
Tragedy of the commons, 278, 283
Training, 492
Transaction costs, 157, 248
Transfer payments, 819, 824
Transfer payments multiplier, 826
Treasury bills, 662, 852
A Treatise on Political Economy (Say), 780
Trends, 22
T-shirts, 216, 224–226
Tying arrangements, 475

Uncertainly costs, 737
Underground production, 550
Underproduction, 155, 255
Unemployment, 12, 175
alternative measures of, 572–573
compensation, 523
cyclical, 576
duration of, 576
frictional, 575, 577
global, 570
in global economy, 799
during Great Depression, 799
inflation rate and, 796, 799, 804–805, 807
insurance, 299
interest rates influencing, 860
job rationing and, 626
marginally attached workers in, 566
maximum employment and, 844–845
measures of, 572–573
minimum wage creating, 175, 177
natural, 576
output gap's relationship with, 579
part-time workers in, 567
price floors causing, 181
quantity of labor and, 797
real GDP and, 577–578, 797
structural, 575, 577
types of, 575–576
Unemployment benefits
economic investigations of, 12
in global economy, 624
job search and, 623
natural unemployment rates and, 577
state government providing, 48
as transfer payments, 819
Unemployment rate, 565–566
full employment and, 810–811
in global economy, 570
inflation rate relationship with, 802–807
in labor force, 565
in labor markets, 569–570
measures of, 573
targeting, 810–811
in United States, 569, 622, 811
Union wage, 625–626
United Kingdom, 831
United States
aging population of, 820
air pollution in, 251
antitrust laws in, 475–476
average incomes and, 44
balance of payments account of, 872–873
bank reserves of, 892
budget deficits of, 822
business cycle in, 549
circular flows in economy of, 535–536
consumption function in, 774
economic growth in, 758–759
economy of, 33, 45
education in, 259, 518
education influencing income in, 512
employment in, 34
European production compared to, 620
exports influence on, 880
federal budget of, 822, 825
financial crisis in, 695, 763
fiscal policy in, 837
foreign exchange market dollars of, 881
goods and services deficits of, 6
goods and services produced in, 33
government budget of, 876
health care in, 306
high-speed rail networks in, 276
imports/exports of, 33, 215, 216, 217
imports influence on, 883
income taxes in, 204
inflation rate in, 589–590
insurance markets in, 299
interest rates changes in, 854, 882, 885
interest rates decisions of, 848

United States (*continued*)
international trade of, 52–53, 214
ITQs working in, 285
labor in, 35, 60, 492
labor productivity growth in, 644
Lorenz curves in, 509, 511
minimum wage in, 177, 627
monetary policy of, 846
money and credit cards in, 722
Monopolistic competition in, 436
natural rate hypothesis in, 805
as net borrower, 874–875, 877
nominal GDP in, 599
oligopoly in, 458
pollution in, 251
post-industrial economy of, 45
potential GDP of, 548, 613, 831
potential GDP per person in, 548
poverty in, 513–514
presidential wage rates in, 601
production in, 33
real GDP per person in, 548, 553
recession of, 763
tariffs in, 223
taxes in, 196
unemployment rates in, 569, 622, 811
used car market in, 296
wealth distribution in, 508, 509
welfare challenge in, 526
Unit elastic demand, 114
Unit elastic supply, 124
Unit of account, 687
Unrelated variables, 26
U.S. interest rate differential, 882
U.S. official reserves, 872
Used cars, 292–295
deadweight loss in, 296–297
dealers' warranties in, 296–297
demand in, 292–293
efficiency of market for, 297
market, 296, 297
supply in, 294–295
United States market for, 296
Used goods, 540
Utilitarianism, 525
Utility, 322. *See also* Marginal utility; Total utility
birth of, 323
diminishing marginal, 322
marginal, 322–323
total, 322
Utility-maximizing rule, 324

Value
consumer surplus and, 329
goods and services, 544, 613
marginal product, 485–486, 493, 516
market, 534
of money, 725–726
nominal, 599
nominal GDP, 544
paradox of, 329–330
production, 560
real, 598, 599
real GDP, 544, 613
standard of living, 547, 550, 552
store of, 687
Value of marginal product, 485–486, 493, 516
Variable plant, 348
Variables, 21, 26, 28, 29
Velocity of circulation, 728–729
Vertical equity, 207
Voluntary export restraints, 229
von Neumann, John, 465
Voodoo economics, 836
Vouchers, 258, 259, 309

Wage gap, 495
Wage rate
job choices and, 499
in labor market, 490, 492, 516–518
labor skill differentials and, 517
money, 747–748, 757
nominal and real, 600–601
price floor and, 174
United States presidents, 601
Wages, 37
career choices and, 45
efficiency, 625
explicit cost of, 345
income from, 37, 541
job search and, 625–626
labor markets and, 492
labor union and, 494–495
minimum, 177
union, 625–626
Wal-Mart, 36, 365
Walton, Sam, 36
Water, 318, 324–327, 341
Waxman, Henry, 252
Wealth, 660, 670, 773
Wealth distribution, 508, 509
Wealth of Nations (Smith), 13, 153, 780
Welch, Finis, 177
Welfare benefits, 48
Welfare programs, 523, 526
Wind power, 68
Women, 571
Working-age population, 564
World economy, 753–754
World Trade Organization (WTO), 223

Yuan, 891–893

Zero economic profit, 382, 440
Zero marginal costs, 423
Zuckerberg, Mark, 36, 520

Photo Credits

Chapter 1: p. 1: Yuri Arcurs/Shutterstock; p. 2: Frank Modell/The New Yorker Collection/Cartoon Bank; p. 3 top: Owen Franken/Alamy; p. 3 bottom: Andia/Alamy; p. 4: Photodisc/Getty Images; p. 5 top: Imaginechina/AP Images; p. 5 bottom: Christian Prandl/Alamy; p. 6 top: Digital Vision/Getty Images; p.6 bottom: Manuel Balce Ceneta/AP Images; p. 9 left: Jeff Greenberg/Alamy; p. 9 right: David R. Frazier Photolibrary, Inc./Alamy; p. 11 left: Yun Arcurs/Shutterstock; p. 11 right: Ron Buskirk/Alamy; p. 13 bottom: Classic Image/Alamy; p. 15 top: Yuri Arcurs/Shutterstock; p. 15 bottom: Brian Kersey/UPI/Newscom.

Chapter 2: p. 31: Ryan Anson/AFP/Getty Images/Newscom; p. 33a: Digital Vision/Getty Images; p. 33b: Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; p. 33c: Photodisc/Getty Images; p. 33d: Digital Vision/Getty Images; p. 36 top left: EyeWire/Getty Images; p. 36 bottom left: PhotoDisc/Getty Images; p. 36 top right: Jean Schweitzer/Shutterstock; p. 36 bottom right: Digital Vision/Getty Images; p. 41 top: Ryan Anson/AFP/Getty Images/Newscom; p.41 bottom: Ace Stock Limited/Alamy; p. 43 top: Panorama Media (Beijing), Ltd./Alamy; p. 43 bottom: Keren Su/China Span/Alamy.

Chapter 3: p. 59: Trekandshoot/Alamy; p. 68: Trekandshoot/Alamy; p. 72: Steve Vidler/SuperStock; p. 73a: From Encyclopédie, ou Dictionnaire raisonné des sciences, des arts et des métiers, par une société de gens de lettres (Encyclopedia, or A Systematic Dictionary of the Sciences, Arts and Crafts), ed. Denis Diderot (1751). Volume IV, Plate III, "Epinglier" ("Pin Factory"). The Pierpont Morgan Library/Art Resource, New York; p. 73b: Jim West/Alamy; p. 73c: Irin-k/Shutterstock; p. 74 top: Sara Piaseczynski/Pearson Education, Inc.; p. 74 bottom: Jack Hollingsworth/Corbis.

Chapter 4: p. 83: Mario Tama/Getty Images; p. 84a: Jeff Greenberg/Alamy; p. 84b: Howard Grey/Digital Vision/Getty Images; p. 84c: Pearson Education, Inc.; p. 103 top: Mario Tama/Getty Images.

Chapter 5: p. 111: Bertys30/Dreamstime; p. 121: Bertys30/Dreamstime; p. 122a: Wayne Eastep/Getty Images; p. 122b: Johan Ordonez/AFP/Getty Images; p. 122c: U.S. Coast Guard/Newscom; p. 126: Scott David Patterson/Shutterstock.

Chapter 6: p. 137: Mark Boster/Los Angeles Times/Newscom; p. 138: Onoky/Photononstop/Alamy; p. 139a: Jordan Tan/Shutterstock; p. 139b: Frontpage/Shutterstock; p. 139c: Neil Tingle/Alamy; p. 139d: Anya Ponti/Shutterstock; p. 140a: Iofoto/Shutterstock; p. 140b: PCN Photography/Alamy; p. 140c: Sandra Cunningham/Shutterstock; p. 140d: Natalia Bratslavsky/Shutterstock; p. 154 top: Mike Twohy/The New Yorker Collection/Cartoon Bank; p. 154 bottom: Goldenangel/Shutterstock; p. 160: Mark Boster/Los Angeles Times/Newscom.

Chapter 7: p. 167: Jim LoScalzo/Newscom; p. 172: Stephen B. Goodwin/Shutterstock; p. 177: Stephen Coburn/Shutterstock; p. 179: Jim LoScalzo/Newscom.

Chapter 8: p. 189: J. Scott Applewhite/AP Images; p. 190: Cindy Yamanaka/The Orange County Register/Newscom; p. 200 top: J. Scott Applewhite/AP Images; p. 200 bottom: Cindy Yamanaka/The Orange County Register/Newscom; p. 207: Carlush/Shutterstock.

Chapter 9: p. 213: Iain Masterton/Alamy; p. 215 top: John Froschauer/AP Images; p. 215 bottom: Anna Sheveleva/Shutterstock; p. 219 icon: Iain Masterton/Alamy; p. top left: Chris O'Meara/AP Images; p. 219 top right: Index Stock Imagery/Newscom; p. 219 bottom left: Sokolovsky/Shutterstock; p. 219 bottom right: Lucian Coman/Shutterstock.

Chapter 10: p. 241: Armin Rose/Shutterstock; p. 242 left: Corbis; p. 242 right: Mark J. Barrett/Alamy; p. 243 left: PhotoAlto/Alamy; p. 243 right: Oksana Perkins/Shutterstock; p. 249: Vishnevskiy Vasily/Shutterstock; p. 252: Armin Rose/Shutterstock; p. 259: Courtesy of Caroline Hoxby.

Chapter 11: p. 265: Peter & Georgina Bowater Stock Connection Worldwide/Newscom; p. 268: Richard Semik/Shutterstock; p. 269 top left: Corbis; p. 269 top right: Mike Moore/FEMA/Newscom; p. 269 bottom left: Jose Luis Pelaez, Inc./Photolibrary New York; p. 269 bottom right: Mike Brake/Shutterstock; p. 276: Peter & Georgina Bowater Stock Connection Worldwide/Newscom; p. 278: *High Pasture* (ca. 1845), George Shalders. Oil on canvas. Haynes Fine Art Gallery, Broadway, Worcester, England. Fine Art Photographic Library, London/Art Resource, New York; p. 279: Jeff Rotman/Alamy.

Chapter 12: p. 291: Ilene MacDonald/Alamy; p. 292: Michael Kleinfeld/UPI/Newscom; p. 293: Spencer Grant/PhotoEdit, Inc.; p. 296 top: Ilene MacDonald/Alamy; p. 296 bottom: Igor Dimovski/iStockphoto; p. 309: Courtesy of Boston University.

Chapter 13: p. 315: Stocksearch/Alamy; p. 318: Magicinfoto/Shutterstock; p. 323 left: World History Archive/Alamy; p. 323 right: Hulton Archive/Getty Images; p. 326: Ace Stock Limited/Alamy; p. 330: Stocksearch/Alamy; p. 340: Jose Luis Pelaez, Inc./Getty Images.

Chapter 14: p. 343: Jeff Greenberg/Alamy; p. 363: Arteki//Shutterstock; p. 365: Jeff Greenberg/Alamy.

Chapter 15: p. 371: Jim West/Alamy; p. 373 top: Oriently/Shutterstock; p. 373 bottom: Novembergale/Dreamstime; p. 387: David Askham/Alamy; p. 388: Geraint Lewis/Alamy; p. 390: Jim West/Alamy.

Chapter 16: p. 399: Jeffrey Blackler/Alamy; p. 400: Zulufoto/Shutterstock; p. 414: Michael Ledray/Shutterstock; p. 418 left: William Hamilton; p. 418 right: Courtesy of Travelosity; p. 423: Jeffrey Blackler/Alamy; p. 425: Scott Gries/Getty Images.

Chapter 17: p. 431: John Powell/Bubbles Photolibrary/Alamy; p. 432: Losevsky Pavel/Shutterstock; p. 444: SHNS photo courtesy EA Sports/Newscom; p. 445: John Powell/Bubbles Photolibrary/Alamy.

Chapter 18: p. 455 left: Yoshikazu Tsuno/AFP/Getty Images/Newscom; p. 455 right: Maurice Tsai/Bloomberg News/Getty Images; p. 459: Beth Anderson/Pearson Education, Inc.; p. 460: Alastair Miller/Bloomberg News/Getty Images; p. 463: Ronald Zak/AP Images; p. 471 left: Yoshikazu Tsuno/AFP/Getty Images/Newscom; p. 471 right: Maurice Tsai/Bloomberg News/Getty Images.

Chapter 19: p. 483: Derick Hingle/Icon SMI/Newscom; p. 490 top: Beth Anderson/Pearson Education, Inc.; p. 490 bottom: Forestpath/Shutterstock; p. 493: Derick Hingle/Icon SMI/Newscom.

Chapter 20: p. 507: David Crausby/Alamy; p. 512: David Crausby/Alamy.

Chapter 21: p. 533: Jim West/Alamy; p. 540: Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit, Inc.; p. 550: Jim West/Alamy.

Chapter 22: p. 563: Jeff Greenberg/Alamy; p. 564: 2010StockVS/Alamy; p. 567: U.S. Census Bureau; p. 575 top: Dmitry Yashkin/Shutterstock; p. 575 bottom: SuperStock; p. 575: SuperStock; p. 576: Jeff Greenberg/Alamy.

Chapter 23: p. 585: Mike Kemp/Alamy; p. 592: Avava/Shutterstock; p. 593a: Fedor Selivanov/Shutterstock; p. 593b: Monkey Business Images/Fotolia; p. 593c: Ioana Davies/Shutterstock; p. 598: Brendan Howard/Shutterstock; p. 602: Mike Kemp/Alamy.

Chapter 24: p. 609 left: Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; p. 609 right: Ingram Publishing/SuperStock; p. 620 left: Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; p. 620 right: Ingram Publishing/SuperStock. p. 627: PhotoDisc/Getty Images.

Chapter 25: p. 633: JLImages/Alamy; p. 639 left: Mucha Josef/Alamy; p. 639 right: Rick Dalton-Ag/Alamy; p. 641 top: Culver Pictures, Inc./SuperStock; p. 641 bottom: TongRo Image Stock/Brand X/Corbis RF; p. 653: JLImages/Alamy.

Chapter 26: p. 659: Eightfish/Alamy; p. 674 icon: Eightfish/Alamy; p. 674 top: Frontpage/Shutterstock; p. 674 bottom: Frontpage/Shutterstock.

Chapter 27: p. 685: Rita Selle/Fotolia; p. 690: Courtesy of Bitcoin.org; p. 693: *The Goldsmith's Shop* (ca. 1572), Alessandro Fei. Collection of Palazzo Vecchio, Studiolo, Florence/Art Resource, New York; p. 697: Kevin Dietsch/UPI/Newscom; p. 703: Joe Pavel/Reuters; p. 708: Rita Selle/Fotolia.

Chapter 28: p. 715: Alex Wong/Getty Images; p. 732: Bettmann/Corbis; p. 733: Alex Wong/Getty Images.

Chapter 29: p. 743 left: Greg Pickens/Fotolia; p. 743 right: Jim West/Alamy; p. 763 left: Greg Pickens/Fotolia; p. 763 right: Jim West/Alamy.

Chapter 30: p. 769 left: Jim Parkin/Alamy; p. 769 right: Juice Images/Alamy; p. 780 top: SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; p. 780 bottom: ClassicStock/Alamy; p. 786 left: Jim Parkin/Alamy; p. 786 right: Juice Images/Alamy.

Chapter 31: p. 795: Jay Mallin/Bloomberg/Getty Images; p. 807: Jay Mallin/Bloomberg/Getty Images.

Chapter 32: p. 817: Yuri Gripas/Reuters; p. 820: Dennis Hallinan/Alamy; p. 827: Gabriel Bouys/Newscom; p. 835: Yuri Gripas/Reuters.

Chapter 33: p. 843: Stan Honda/AFP/Getty Images; p. 864 icon: Stan Honda/AFP/Getty Images; p. 864 left: Chuck Nacke/Alamy; p. 864 right: Gary Spector Photography.

Chapter 34: p. 871: Greg Balfour Evans/Alamy; p. 887: Greg Balfour Evans/Alamy.

The Pearson Series in Economics

Abel/Bernanke/Croushore
*Macroeconomics**

Bade/Parkin
*Foundations of Economics**

Berck/Helfand
The Economics of the Environment

Bierman/Fernandez
Game Theory with Economic Applications

Blanchard
*Macroeconomics**

Blau/Ferber/Winkler
The Economics of Women, Men and Work

Boardman/Greenberg/Vining/ Weimer
Cost-Benefit Analysis

Boyer
Principles of Transportation Economics

Branson
Macroeconomic Theory and Policy

Brock/Adams
The Structure of American Industry

Bruce
Public Finance and the American Economy

Carlton/Perloff
Modern Industrial Organization

Case/Fair/Oster
*Principles of Economics**

Caves/Frankel/Jones
World Trade and Payments: An Introduction

Chapman
Environmental Economics: Theory, Application, and Policy

Cooter/Ulen
Law & Economics

Downs
An Economic Theory of Democracy

Ehrenberg/Smith
Modern Labor Economics

Ekelund/Ressler/Tollison
*Economics**

Farnham
Economics for Managers

Folland/Goodman/Stano
The Economics of Health and Health Care

Fort
Sports Economics

Froyen
Macroeconomics

Fusfeld
The Age of the Economist

Gerber
*International Economics**

Gordon
*Macroeconomics**

Greene
Econometric Analysis

Gregory
Essentials of Economics

Gregory/Stuart
Russian and Soviet Economic Performance and Structure

Hartwick/Olewiler
The Economics of Natural Resource Use

Heilbroner/Milberg
The Making of the Economic Society

Heyne/Boettke/Prychitko
The Economic Way of Thinking

Hoffman/Averett
Women and the Economy: Family, Work, and Pay

Holt
Markets, Games and Strategic Behavior

Hubbard/O'Brien
*Economics**

*Money, Banking, and the Financial System**

Hughes/Cain
American Economic History

Husted/Melvin
International Economics

Jehle/Reny
Advanced Microeconomic Theory

Johnson-Lans
A Health Economics Primer

Keat/Young
Managerial Economics

Klein
Mathematical Methods for Economics

Krugman/Obstfeld/Melitz
*International Economics: Theory & Policy**

Laidler
The Demand for Money

Leeds/von Allmen
The Economics of Sports

Leeds/von Allmen/Schiming
*Economics**

Lipsey/Ragan/Storer
*Economics**

Lynn
Economic Development: Theory and Practice for a Divided World

Miller
*Economics Today**

Understanding Modern Economics

Miller/Benjamin
The Economics of Macro Issues

Miller/Benjamin/North
The Economics of Public Issues

Mills/Hamilton
Urban Economics

Mishkin
*The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets**

*The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets, Business School Edition**

*Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice**

Murray
Econometrics: A ModernIntroduction

Nafziger
The Economics of Developing Countries

O'Sullivan/Sheffrin/Perez
*Economics: Principles, Applications and Tools**

Parkin
*Economics**

Perloff
*Microeconomics**

*Microeconomics: Theory and Applications with Calculus**

Perman/Common/McGilvray/Ma
Natural Resources and Environmental Economics

Phelps
Health Economics

Pindyck/Rubinfeld
*Microeconomics**

Riddell/Shackelford/Stamos/Schneider
Economics: A Tool for Critically Understanding Society

Ritter/Silber/Udell
*Principles of Money, Banking & Financial Markets**

Roberts
The Choice: A Fable of Free Trade and Protection

Rohlf
Introduction to Economic Reasoning

Ruffin/Gregory
Principles of Economics

Sargent
Rational Expectations and Inflation

Sawyer/Sprinkle
International Economics

Scherer
Industry Structure, Strategy, and Public Policy

Schiller
The Economics of Poverty and Discrimination

Sherman
Market Regulation

Silberberg
Principles of Microeconomics

Stock/Watson
Introduction to Econometrics

Introduction to Econometrics, Brief Edition

Studenmund
Using Econometrics: A Practical Guide

Tietenberg/Lewis
Environmental and Natural Resource Economics

Environmental Economics and Policy

Todaro/Smith
Economic Development

Waldman
Microeconomics

Waldman/Jensen
Industrial Organization: Theory and Practice

Weil
Economic Growth

Williamson
Macroeconomics

* denotes MyEconLab titles Log onto www.myeconlab.com to learn more

Macroeconomic Data

These macroeconomic data series show some of the trends in GDP and its components, the price level, and other variables that provide information about changes in the standard of living and the cost of living—the central questions of macroeconomics. You will find these data in a spreadsheet that you can download from your MyEconLab Web site.

	NATIONAL INCOME AND PRODUCT ACCOUNTS	1965	1966	1967	1968	1969	1970	1971	1972	1973	1974
	EXPENDITURE APPROACH										
the sum of	1 Personal consumption expenditures	444	481	508	558	605	648	702	770	852	933
	2 Gross private domestic investment	118	131	129	141	156	152	178	208	245	249
	3 Government expenditure	151	172	193	209	221	234	246	263	282	318
	4 Exports	37	41	44	48	52	60	63	71	95	127
less	5 Imports	32	37	40	47	51	56	62	74	91	128
equals	6 Gross domestic product	719	788	832	910	984	1,038	1,127	1,238	1,382	1,500
	INCOME APPROACH										
	7 Compensation of employees	400	443	475	524	578	617	659	725	811	890
plus	8 Net operating surplus	190	203	206	219	226	219	243	275	310	314
equals	9 Net domestic product at factor cost	589	646	681	743	803	837	902	1,001	1,121	1,204
plus	10 Indirect taxes less subsidies	58	59	64	72	79	87	96	101	112	122
	11 Depreciation (capital consumption)	71	77	83	90	99	108	118	127	141	164
equals	12 GDP (income approach)	718	782	828	906	982	1,031	1,116	1,229	1,374	1,490
plus	13 Statistical discrepancy	2	6	5	4	3	7	11	9	8	10
equals	14 GDP (expenditure approach)	719	788	832	910	985	1,038	1,127	1,238	1,382	1,500
	15 Real GDP (billions of 2005 dollars)	3,607	3,842	3,939	4,130	4,258	4,266	4,410	4,644	4,913	4,886
	16 Real GDP growth rate (percent per year)	6.4	6.5	2.5	4.8	3.1	0.2	3.4	5.3	5.8	−0.6
	OTHER DATA										
	17 Population (millions)	194	197	199	201	203	205	208	210	212	214
	18 Labor force (millions)	74	76	77	79	81	83	84	87	89	92
	19 Employment (millions)	71	73	74	76	78	79	79	82	85	87
	20 Unemployment (millions)	3	3	3	3	3	4	5	5	4	5
	21 Labor force participation rate (percent of working-age population)	58.9	59.2	59.6	59.6	60.1	60.4	60.2	60.4	60.8	61.3
	22 Unemployment rate (percent of labor force)	4.5	3.8	3.8	3.5	3.5	5.0	6.0	5.6	4.9	5.6
	23 Real GDP per person (2005 dollars per year)	18,560	19,543	19,820	20,573	21,004	20,802	21,231	22,121	23,180	22,841
	24 Growth rate of real GDP per person (percent per year)	5.1	5.3	1.4	3.8	2.1	−1.0	2.1	4.2	4.8	−1.5
	25 Quantity of money (M2, billions of dollars)	443	471	504	545	579	602	674	758	832	881
	26 GDP price index (2005 = 100)	19.9	20.5	21.1	22.0	23.1	24.3	25.6	26.7	28.1	30.7
	27 GDP price index inflation rate (percent per year)	1.8	2.8	3.1	4.3	5.0	5.3	5.0	4.3	5.5	9.1
	28 Consumer price index (1982–1984 = 100)	31.5	32.5	33.4	34.8	36.7	38.8	40.5	41.8	44.4	49.3
	29 CPI inflation rate (percent per year)	1.6	3.0	2.8	4.2	5.4	5.9	4.2	3.3	6.3	11.0
	30 Current account balance (billions of dollars)	5.4	3.0	2.6	0.6	0.4	2.3	−1.4	−5.8	7.1	2.0

1975	1976	1977	1978	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
1,034	1,151	1,278	1,428	1,591	1,756	1,940	2,076	2,289	2,501	2,718	2,897	3,097
230	292	361	438	493	479	572	517	564	736	736	747	785
358	383	414	454	501	566	628	680	733	797	879	949	999
139	150	159	187	230	281	305	283	277	302	302	320	364
123	151	182	212	253	294	318	303	329	405	417	453	509
1,638	1,825	2,030	2,294	2,562	2,788	3,127	3,253	3,535	3,931	4,218	4,460	4,736
949	1,059	1,181	1,336	1,498	1,648	1,820	1,920	2,036	2,246	2,412	2,559	2,737
351	392	444	509	546	561	653	669	756	911	971	996	1,078
1,300	1,452	1,625	1,844	2,045	2,208	2,473	2,589	2,792	3,156	3,383	3,555	3,815
131	141	153	162	172	191	224	226	242	269	287	299	317
190	208	232	261	299	344	393	434	451	474	505	539	571
1,621	1,801	2,009	2,268	2,515	2,743	3,090	3,248	3,485	3,899	4,175	4,392	4,703
16	24	21	26	47	45	37	5	50	32	42	68	33
1,638	1,825	2,030	2,294	2,562	2,788	3,127	3,253	3,535	3,931	4,217	4,460	4,736
4,875	5,137	5,373	5,673	5,850	5,834	5,982	5,866	6,131	6,572	6,843	7,081	7,307
−0.2	5.4	4.6	5.6	3.1	−0.3	2.5	−1.9	4.5	7.2	4.1	3.5	3.2
216	218	220	223	225	228	230	232	234	236	239	241	243
94	96	99	102	105	107	109	110	112	114	115	118	120
86	89	92	96	99	99	100	100	101	105	107	110	112
8	7	7	6	6	8	8	11	11	9	8	8	7
61.2	61.6	62.2	63.2	63.7	63.8	63.9	64.0	64.0	64.4	64.8	65.3	65.6
8.5	7.7	7.0	6.1	5.9	7.2	7.6	9.7	9.6	7.5	7.2	7.0	6.2
22,573	23,554	24,391	25,481	25,988	25,619	26,008	25,260	26,163	27,799	28,693	29,418	30,089
−1.2	4.3	3.6	4.5	2.0	−1.4	1.5	−2.9	3.6	6.3	3.2	2.5	2.3
964	1,087	1,221	1,322	1,426	1,540	1,679	1,833	2,057	2,221	2,419	2,616	2,786
33.6	35.5	37.8	40.4	43.8	47.8	52.3	55.5	57.7	59.8	61.6	63.0	64.8
9.4	5.7	6.4	7.0	8.3	9.1	9.4	6.1	4.0	3.8	3.0	2.2	2.9
53.8	56.9	60.6	65.2	72.6	82.4	90.9	96.5	99.6	103.9	107.6	109.7	113.6
9.1	5.8	6.5	7.6	11.3	13.5	10.4	6.2	3.2	4.4	3.5	1.9	3.6
18.1	4.3	−14.3	−15.1	−0.3	2.3	5.0	−5.5	−38.7	−94.3	−118.2	−147.2	−160.7